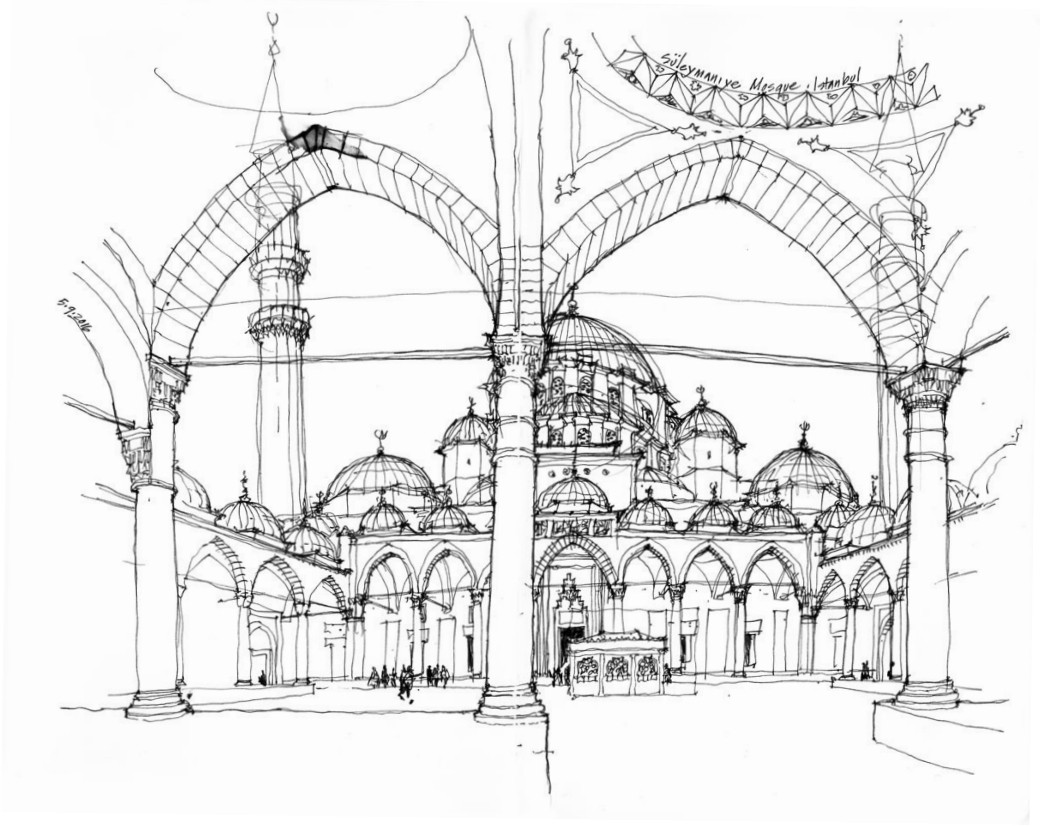
FRANCIS D. K. CHING
WITH STEVEN P. JUROSZEK

DESIGN DRAWING

THIRD EDITION



VIDEOS AVAILABLE

WILEY

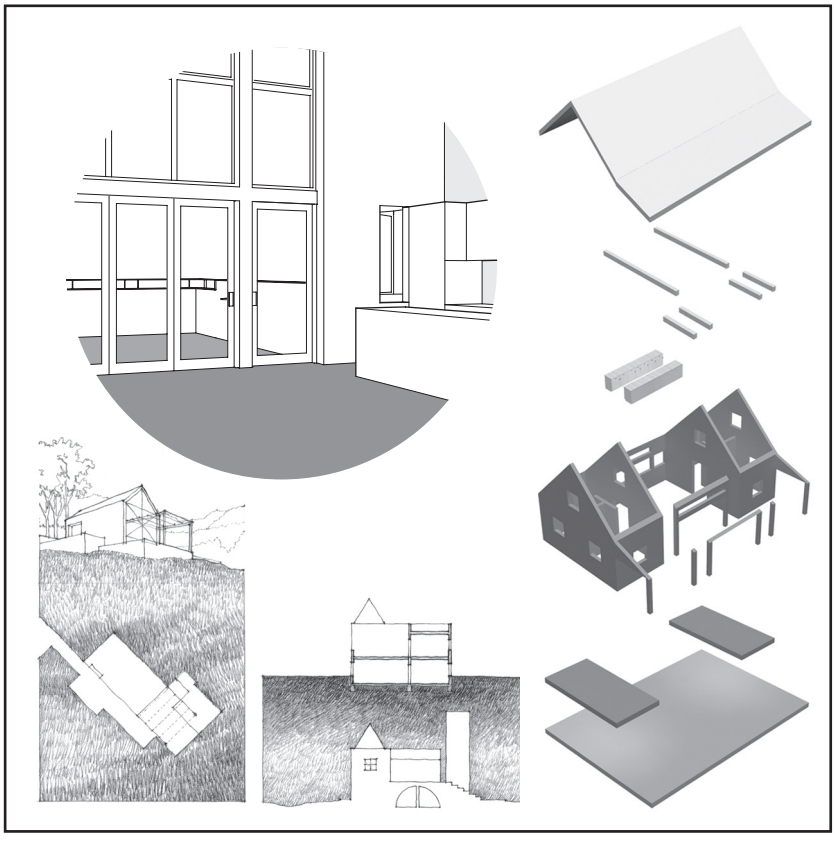
DESIGN DRAWING

Third Edition

Papal Audience 11am 9/27

DESIGN DRAWING

Third Edition



Francis D. K. Ching
with Steven P. Juroszek

WILEY

Cover Design: Wiley
Cover Illustration: Francis D. K. Ching

This book is printed on acid-free paper. ∞

Copyright © 2018 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved.

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey
Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at www.wiley.com/go/permissions.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom.

For general information about our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at (800) 762-2974, outside the United States at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at http://booksupport.wiley.com. For more information about Wiley products, visit www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data:

Names: Ching, Francis D. K., 1943- author, illustrator. | Juroszek, Steven P.
Title: Design drawing / Francis D.K. Ching ; with Steven P. Juroszek.
Description: Third edition. | Hoboken, New Jersey : Wiley, 2019. | Includes index. |
Identifiers: LCCN 2018041507 (print) | LCCN 2018042131 (ebook) | ISBN 9781119508533 (Adobe PDF) | ISBN 9781119508588 (ePub) | ISBN 9781119508595 (paperback)
Subjects: LCSH: Architectural drawing—Technique. | BISAC: ARCHITECTURE / Design, Drafting, Drawing & Presentation.
Classification: LCC NA2708 (ebook) | LCC NA2708 .C49 2019 (print) | DDC 720.28/4—dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2018041507

Printed in the United States of America.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Preface vii

Introduction 1

Drawing from Observation 13

1 Line and Shape 15

2 Tone and Texture 39

3 Form and Structure 67

4 Space and Depth 83

Drawing Systems 123

5 Pictorial Systems 125

6 Multiview Drawings 143

7 Paraline Drawings 207

8 Perspective Drawings 239

Drawing from the Imagination 303

9 Speculative Drawing 305

10 Diagramming 335

11 Drawing Composition 367

12 Presentation Drawing 409

Index 433

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

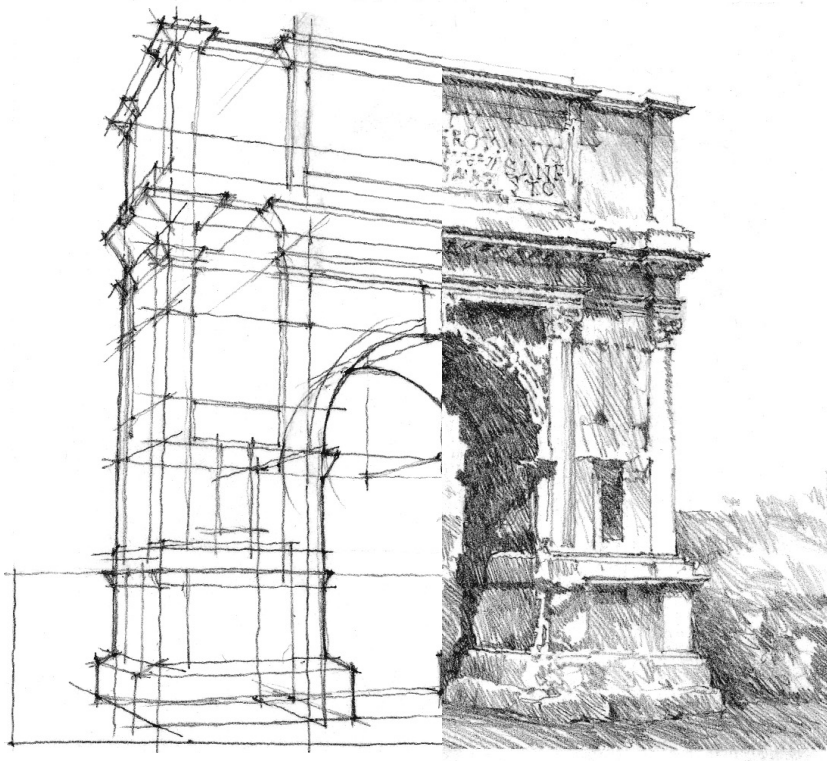
This manual began as a reader for a sequence of design drawing courses offered by the Department of Architecture at the University of Washington. Its subsequent development was largely the result of the many discussions, suggestions, and contributions of a skilled and dedicated group of teachers—Catherine Barrett, Cynthia Esselman, Kevin Kane, Anita Lehmann, Alan Maskin, Ben Sharpe, Judith Swain, Carol Thomas, Mark Wolfe, and Gail Wong. Special thanks go to Nan-Ching Tai, who offered his invaluable expertise and assistance in preparing the examples of digital lighting and the drawing system animations on the companion CD.

This text is also a testimony to the efforts, accomplishments, and critical feedback of the many students who regularly and enthusiastically tested the pedagogical soundness of the material.

Finally, I would like to acknowledge those instructors who have gathered regularly at the conferences of the Design Communication Association to passionately and unselfishly share their thoughts about teaching and drawing. Their insights nurtured the progress and enhanced the dimensions of this work.

The first edition of this book was prepared in part through a grant from the Graham Foundation for Advanced Studies in the Fine Arts.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION



This is a comprehensive drawing manual for students of architecture, interior design, and related design disciplines. Drawing guides typically range from beginning texts on how to draw certain subjects, such as landscapes or the human figure, to more advanced treatises on drawing as art. Some focus on a specific medium, such as pencil or pen-and-ink; others dwell on a particular technique, such as perspective drawing. Further, the discussion is often limited to learning how to draw from observation. This book is based on the premise that drawing is central to the design process. It therefore focuses on drawing as a medium for visualizing and communicating design ideas.

The work begins with an introduction to the drawing process, which involves seeing, imagining, and representing. The remaining content is divided into three parts. *Part 1: Drawing from Observation* introduces the graphic elements that constitute the vocabulary of drawing—line, shape, tone, form, and space. This largely remains the province of freehand drawing because we can best learn to see, understand, and represent these elements through direct examination.

Part 2: Drawing Systems describes the formal systems for representing three-dimensional objects and space, which constitute the language of design drawing. Regardless of the drawing medium or technique we use, each system represents a uniquely different way of seeing and describing the visible world that we experience directly, or a future world that we imagine in design.

Part 3: Drawing from the Imagination addresses issues that arise as we think in a speculative manner to stimulate the design process, develop our design ideas through drawing, and plan how to present our design proposals in the best possible light. It is in this arena where digital drawing and modeling tools have made major advances, both in academia and the profession.

Accompanying each section are a series of short exercises for developing skills and suggestions for longer projects that test the understanding and application of concepts. Like any discipline, drawing takes perseverance and regular exercise to develop mastery and fluency. The information in this manual cannot be received passively but must be learned by actively participating in the process of drawing.

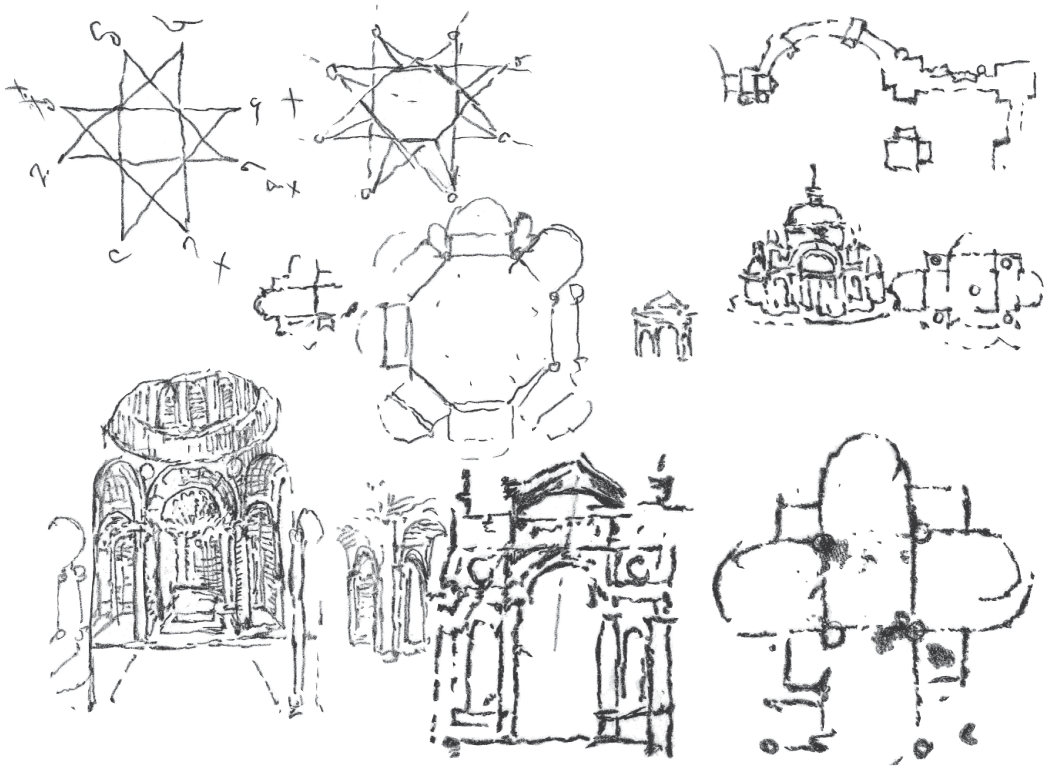
The emphasis remains on drawing by hand, which is the most direct and intuitive means we have to express our visual thoughts and perceptions. Through the tactile nature of drawing in direct response to our visual thoughts and perceptions, we develop an understanding of spatial concepts and the critical ability to think and visualize in three dimensions.

Nevertheless, we cannot ignore the advances in computer technology that have significantly altered the process of architectural drawing and design. Current graphics software ranges from 2D drawing programs to 3D surface and solid modelers that aid in the design and representation of buildings, from small houses to large and complex structures. It is therefore important to acknowledge the unique opportunities and challenges digital tools offer in the production of architectural graphics. While the second edition augmented the material in the first edition with discussions and examples of digital graphic techniques where appropriate to the task at hand, this third edition goes further and provides more examples of strictly digital as well as hybrid processes of producing drawings in the design process.

Whether a drawing is executed by hand or developed with the aid of a computer, the standards and judgments governing the effective communication of design ideas in architecture remain the same, just as the rules of spelling, grammar and punctuation for the written language remain applicable, whether jotted by hand traditionally, typed on a manual or electric typewriter, or entered by keyboard into a word processor.

Introduction

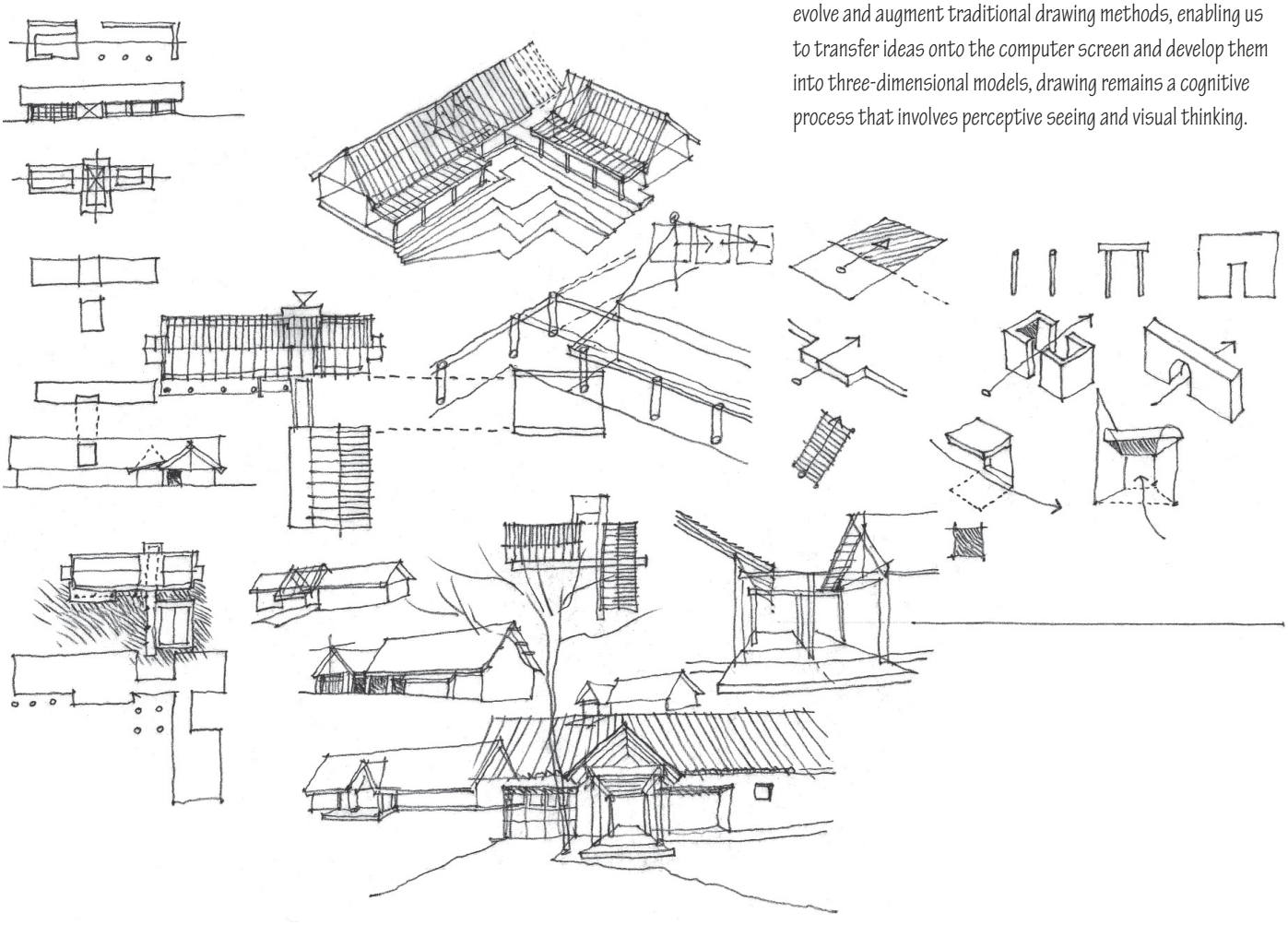
Drawing is the process or technique of representing something—an object, scene, or idea—by making lines on a surface. This definition implies that delineation is different from painting and the coloring of surfaces. While drawing is generally linear in nature, it may include other pictorial elements, such as dots and brush strokes, which can also be interpreted as lines. Whatever form a drawing takes, it is the principal means by which we organize and express our visual thoughts and perceptions. We therefore regard drawing not only as artistic expression but also as a practical tool for formulating and working through design problems.



DESIGN DRAWING

The term *design drawing* brings to mind the presentation drawings used to persuade the viewer of the merits of a design proposal. Also familiar are the construction or working drawings that provide graphic instructions for producing or building a project. But designers use both the process and products of drawing in other ways as well. In design, the role of drawing expands to include recording what exists, working out ideas, and speculating about and planning for the future. Throughout the design process, we use drawing to develop an idea from concept to proposal to constructed reality.

To learn how to draw and to use drawing effectively as a design instrument, it is necessary to acquire certain fundamental skills, such as inscribing lines and laying down tonal values. Over time and with enough practice, anyone can learn these techniques. Skillful technique is of little value, however, unless accompanied by understanding of the perceptual principles on which these techniques are based. Even as digital drawing tools evolve and augment traditional drawing methods, enabling us to transfer ideas onto the computer screen and develop them into three-dimensional models, drawing remains a cognitive process that involves perceptive seeing and visual thinking.



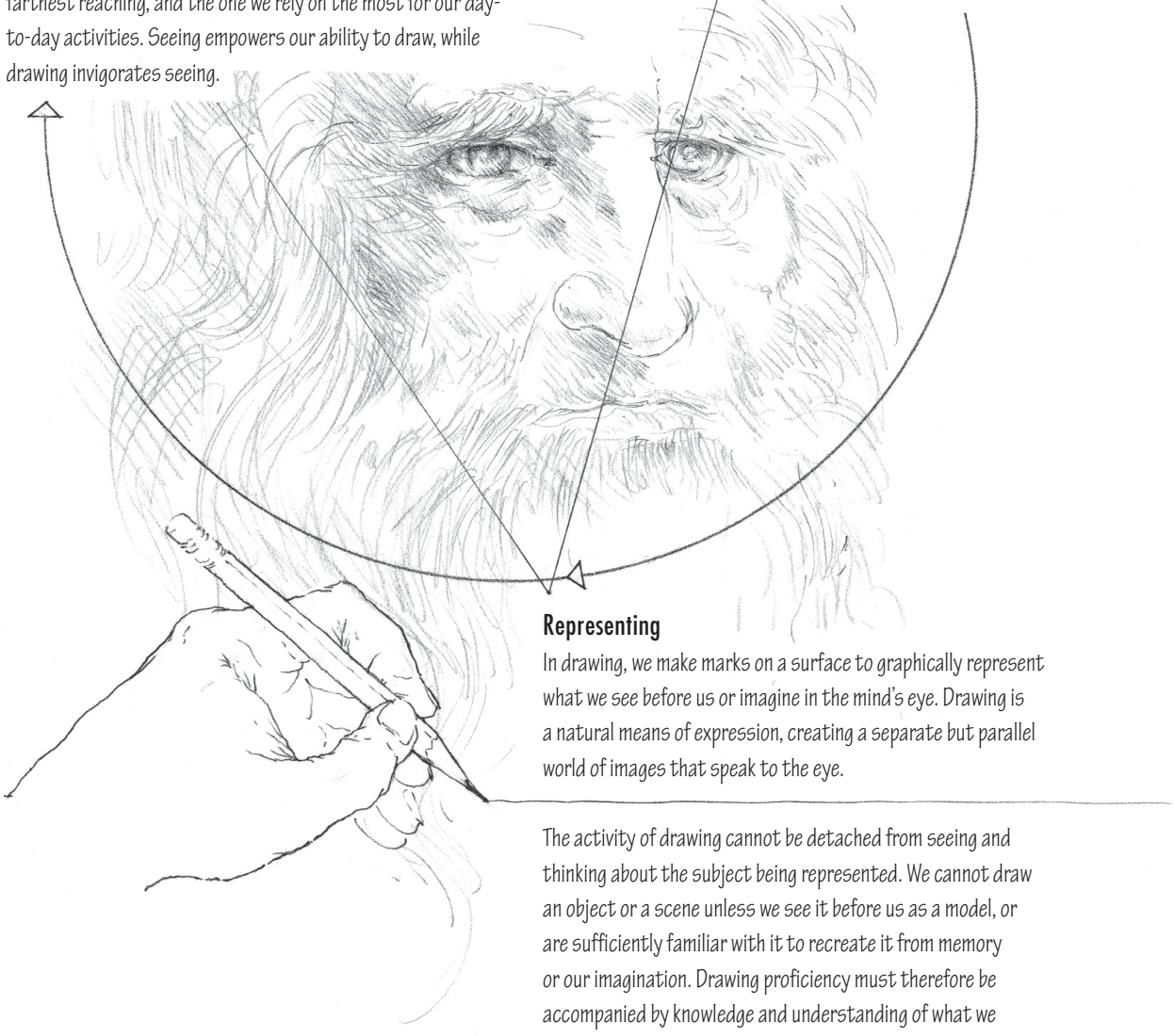
At the heart of all drawing is an interactive process of seeing, imagining, and representing images. Seeing creates the images of external reality we perceive with our eyes open, which give rise to our discovery of the world. With our eyes closed, the mind's eye presents images of an inner reality—visual memories of past events or projections of an imagined future. And then there are the images we create on paper, drawings that we use to express and communicate our thoughts and perceptions.

Seeing

Vision is the primary sensory channel through which we make contact with our world. It is our best-developed sense, the farthest reaching, and the one we rely on the most for our day-to-day activities. Seeing empowers our ability to draw, while drawing invigorates seeing.

Imagining

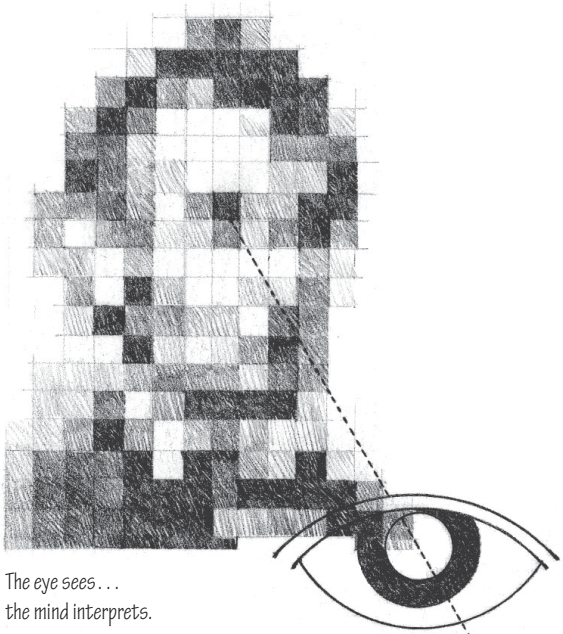
The visual data received by the eye is processed, manipulated, and filtered by the mind in its active search for structure and meaning. The mind's eye creates the images we see, and these are the images we attempt to represent in drawing. Drawing is therefore more than a manual skill; it involves visual thought that stimulates the imagination, while imagining provides impetus for drawing.



Representing

In drawing, we make marks on a surface to graphically represent what we see before us or imagine in the mind's eye. Drawing is a natural means of expression, creating a separate but parallel world of images that speak to the eye.

The activity of drawing cannot be detached from seeing and thinking about the subject being represented. We cannot draw an object or a scene unless we see it before us as a model, or are sufficiently familiar with it to recreate it from memory or our imagination. Drawing proficiency must therefore be accompanied by knowledge and understanding of what we endeavor to represent in graphic form.



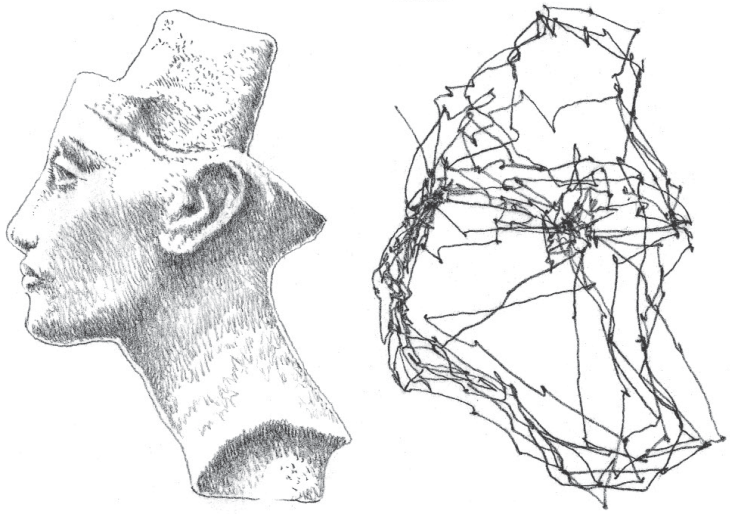
The eye sees . . .
the mind interprets.

The act of seeing is a dynamic and creative process. It is capable of delivering a stable, three-dimensional perception of the moving, changing images that make up our visual world. There are three phases in the swift and sophisticated processing that results in the images we see:

- Reception: our eyes receive energy input in the form of light—either its source or its reflection from illuminated surfaces. The optics of the eye form an upside-down image of incoming light rays on the retina, a collection of nerve cells that are an extension of the brain. These photosensitive cells convert electromagnetic energy into electrochemical signals and provide a point-by-point assessment of the intensity of light received.

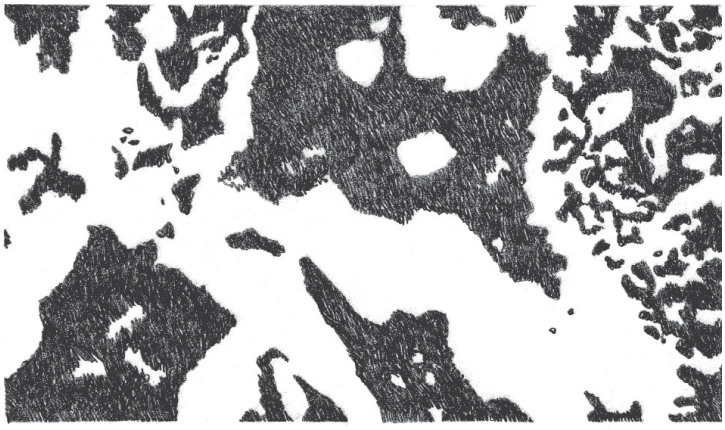
- Extraction: the mind extracts basic visual features from this input. The input—basically a pattern of lights and darks—is further processed by other nerve cells in the retina and moves down the optic nerve. After an intermediate stop it arrives at the visual cortex of the brain, which has cells that extract specific features of visual input: the location and orientation of edges, movement, size, and color.

- Inference: on the basis of these extracted features, we make inferences about our world. Only a very small area of the retina is capable of distinguishing fine detail. Our eyes must therefore continuously scan an object and its environment to see it in its entirety. When we look at something, what we see is actually constructed from a rapid succession of interconnected retinal images. We are able to perceive a stable image even while our eyes are scanning. Our visual system thus does more than passively and mechanically record the physical features of a visual stimulus; it actively transforms sensory impressions of light into meaningful forms.



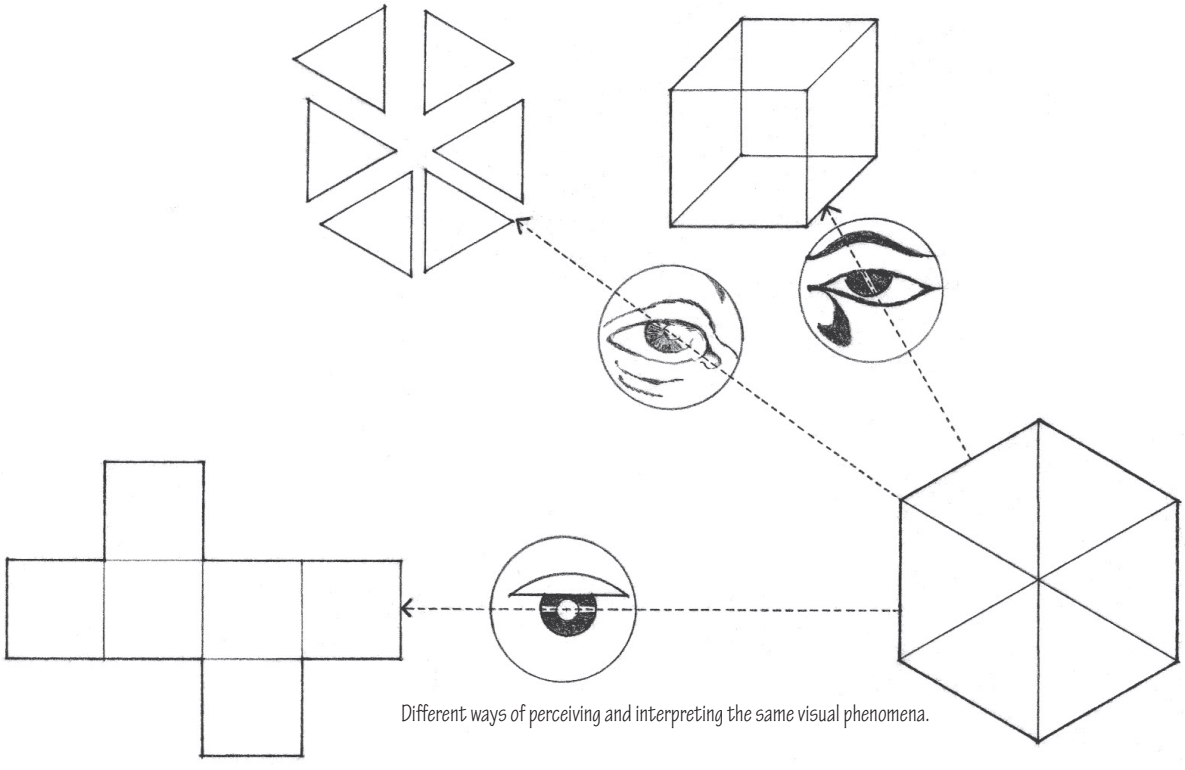
Bust of Queen Nefertiti
The pattern of eye movement of a person viewing a figure, from research by Alfred L. Yarbus of the Institute for Problems of Information Transmission in Moscow.

Seeing is a vigorous, pattern-seeking process. The mind's eye uses the input extracted from the retinal image as the basis for making educated guesses about what we encounter. Inference is easy for the mind. The mind's eye actively seeks those features that fit our image of the world. It looks for closure—for meaning and understanding in the patterns it receives. We are able to form images from the barest scaffolding of visual data, filling out the images if necessary with information that is not really there. For example, we may not understand this incomplete pattern of lights and darks, but once recognized, it cannot not be seen.

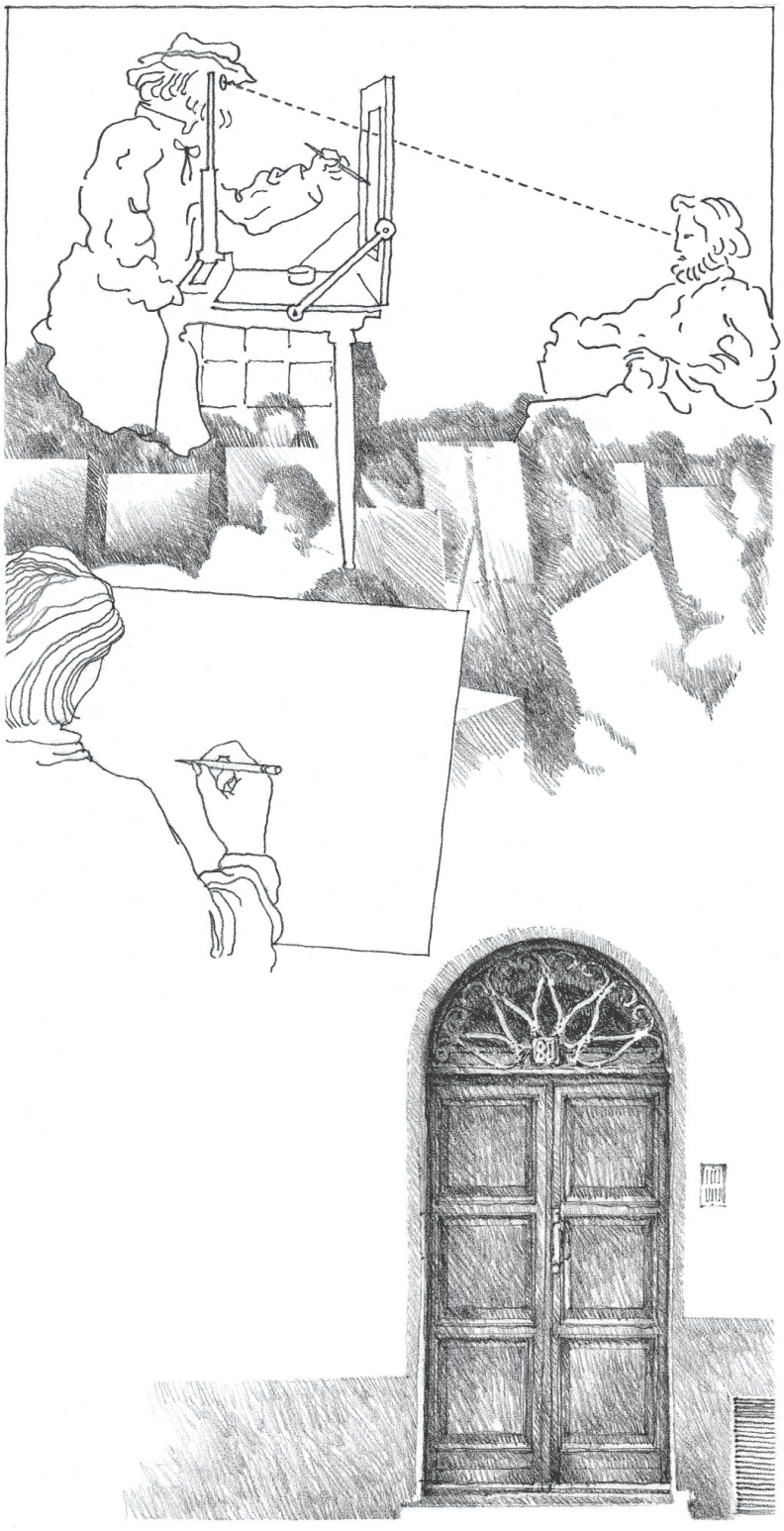


Visual perception thus is a creation of the mind's eye. The eye is blind to what the mind does not see. The picture in our head is not only based on input extracted from the retinal image but is also shaped by our interests and the knowledge and experiences each of us brings to the act of seeing. Our cultural environment also modifies our perceptions and teaches us how to interpret the visual phenomena we experience.

In this illusion designed by psychologist E. G. Boring in 1930, one can see either the profile of a younger woman or the head of an older woman.



Different ways of perceiving and interpreting the same visual phenomena.



Seeing Facilitates Drawing

The drawing of things we see before us, including the careful copying of a master's work, has traditionally been fundamental training for artists and designers. Drawing from observation is the classic method for developing eye-mind-hand coordination. Experiencing and examining the visible world in a direct manner through drawing makes us more conscious of the dynamics of sight. This understanding, in turn, helps us to draw.

Drawing Invigorates Seeing

We normally do not see all that we are capable of seeing. Preconceived notions of what we expect or believe to be out there usually direct our seeing. Through familiarity, we tend to pass over things we confront and use every day without really seeing them. These perceptual prejudices make our life simpler and safer. We do not have to pay full attention to each and every visual stimulus as if seeing it for the first time each day. Instead we can select out only those that provide information pertinent to our momentary needs. This expeditious kind of seeing leads to our common use of stereotypical images and visual clichés.

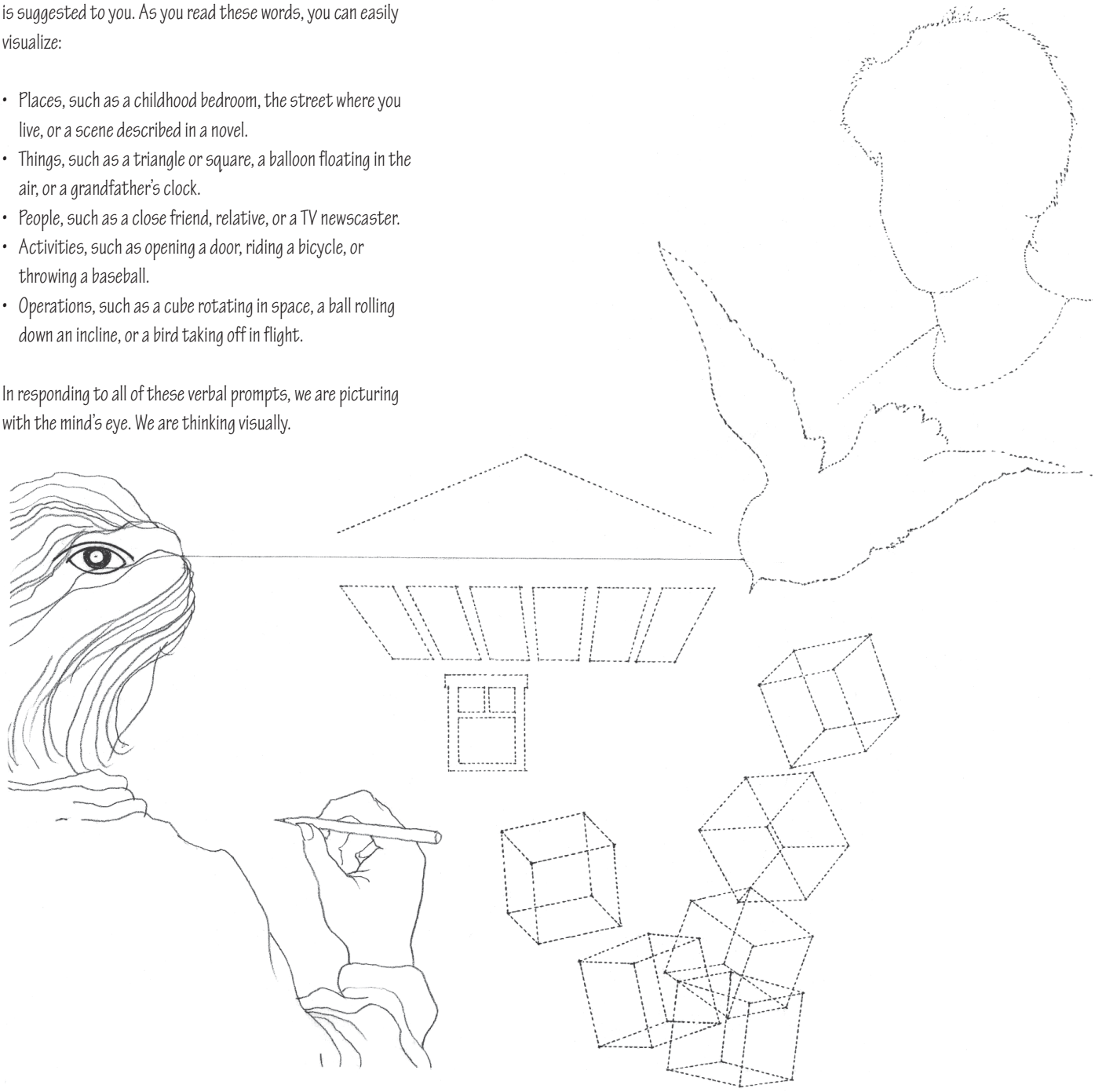
The labeling of visual stereotypes, while necessary to avoid perceptual chaos, can also prevent us from looking anew at what we see as familiar. The visual environment is usually fuller and richer than what we normally perceive at a glance. To make full use of our visual faculty—to see more than symbols—we must learn to see things as if we were going to draw them.

Drawing encourages us to pay attention and to experience the full range of visual phenomena and appreciate the uniqueness of the most ordinary things. In fostering a heightened and critical awareness of the visual environment, drawing also nurtures understanding and improves our visual memory. In drawing from the imagination, we recall past perceptions and draw on these memories.

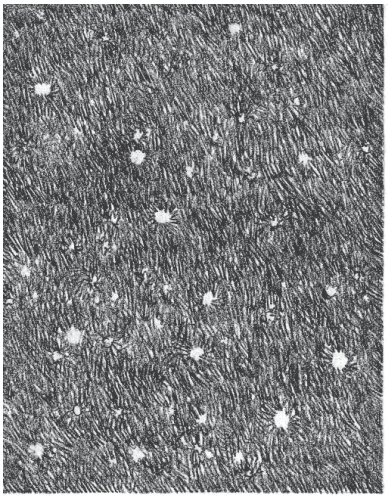
Our perception is not limited to what we can see in the here and now. Images often appear spontaneously in response to a sensory perception—something seen, touched, or smelled. Even without any sort of sensory stimulation, we have the mental faculty of recalling or recreating images. Easily, almost effortlessly, you can imagine something as soon as it is suggested to you. As you read these words, you can easily visualize:

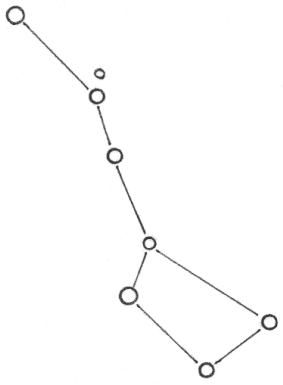
- Places, such as a childhood bedroom, the street where you live, or a scene described in a novel.
- Things, such as a triangle or square, a balloon floating in the air, or a grandfather's clock.
- People, such as a close friend, relative, or a TV newscaster.
- Activities, such as opening a door, riding a bicycle, or throwing a baseball.
- Operations, such as a cube rotating in space, a ball rolling down an incline, or a bird taking off in flight.

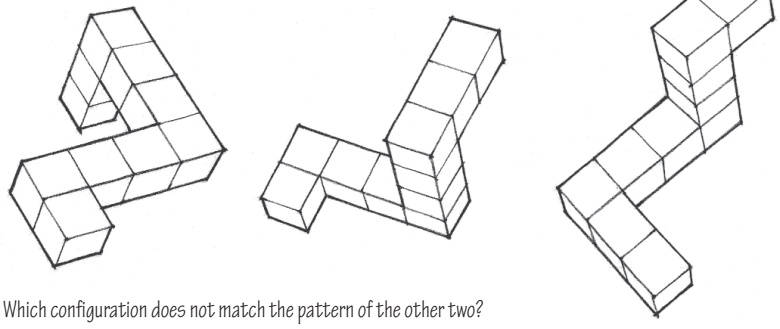
In responding to all of these verbal prompts, we are picturing with the mind's eye. We are thinking visually.



VISUAL THINKING



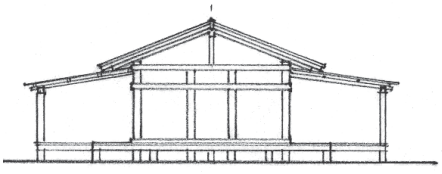




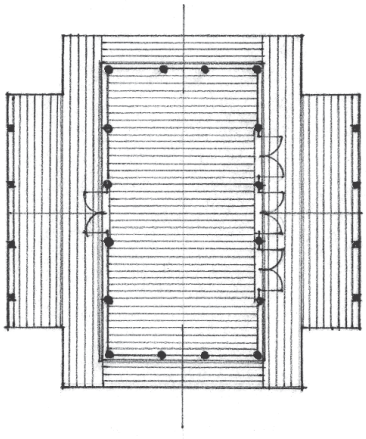
Which configuration does not match the pattern of the other two?

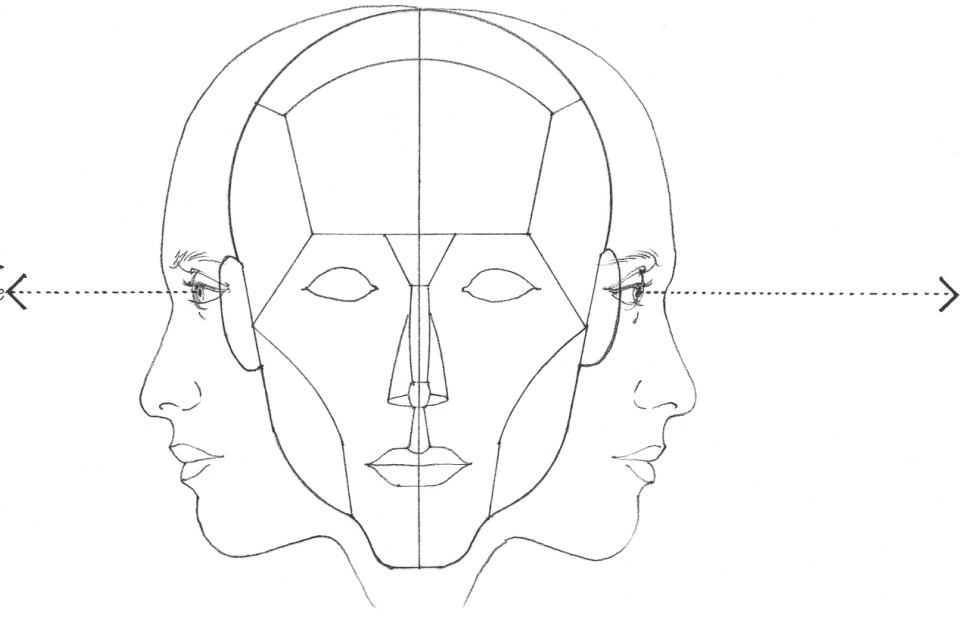
Visual thinking—thinking in images—pervades all human activity. It is an essential part of everyday life. We think in visual terms when we drive down a street looking for an address, set the table for a dinner party, or contemplate a move in a game of chess. Our thought has visual form when we search for constellations in the night sky, build a cabinet from a set of drawings, or design a building. In each of these activities, we actively seek to match the images we see with the images we hold in the mind's eye.

The images in our head are not limited to what we see in the present. The mind is capable of forming, exploring, and recombining images beyond the normal bounds of time and space. With hindsight we visualize memories of things, places, and events from the past. With foresight, we are also able to look forward in time—to use our imagination to envision a possible future. Imagination therefore enables us to have both a sense of history as well as a plan for the future. It establishes connections—visual bridges—between the past, present, and future.



Remembering the past: an 8th-century Japanese structure



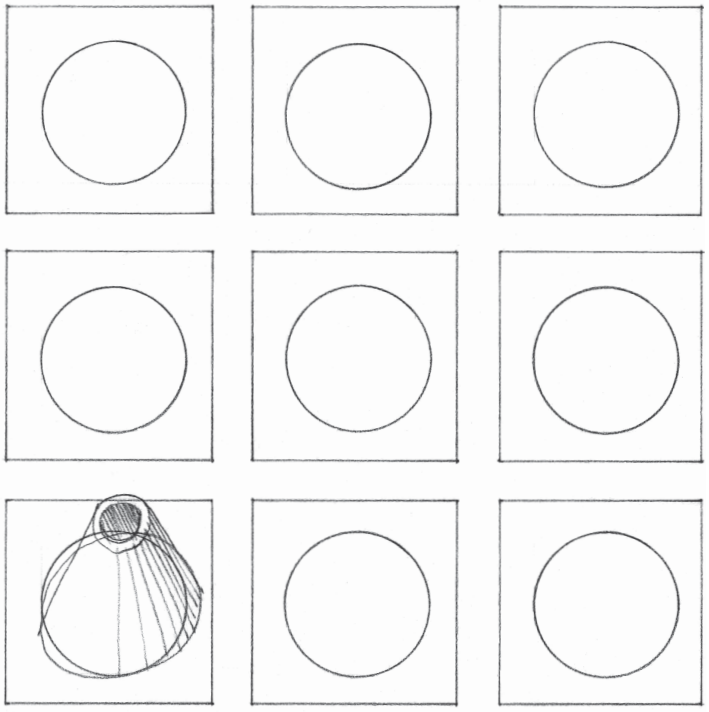


Imagination Inspires Drawing

The images we conjure up in the mind's eye are often hazy, brief, and all too elusive. Even if vivid and clear, they can come to mind and just as suddenly disappear. Unless captured in a drawing, they can easily be lost in awareness and replaced by others in the stream of consciousness. Drawing thus is a natural and necessary extension of visual thought. As the mental picture guides the movement of our eyes and hand on paper, the emerging drawing simultaneously tempers the image in our head. Further thoughts come to mind and are integrated into the process of imagining and drawing.

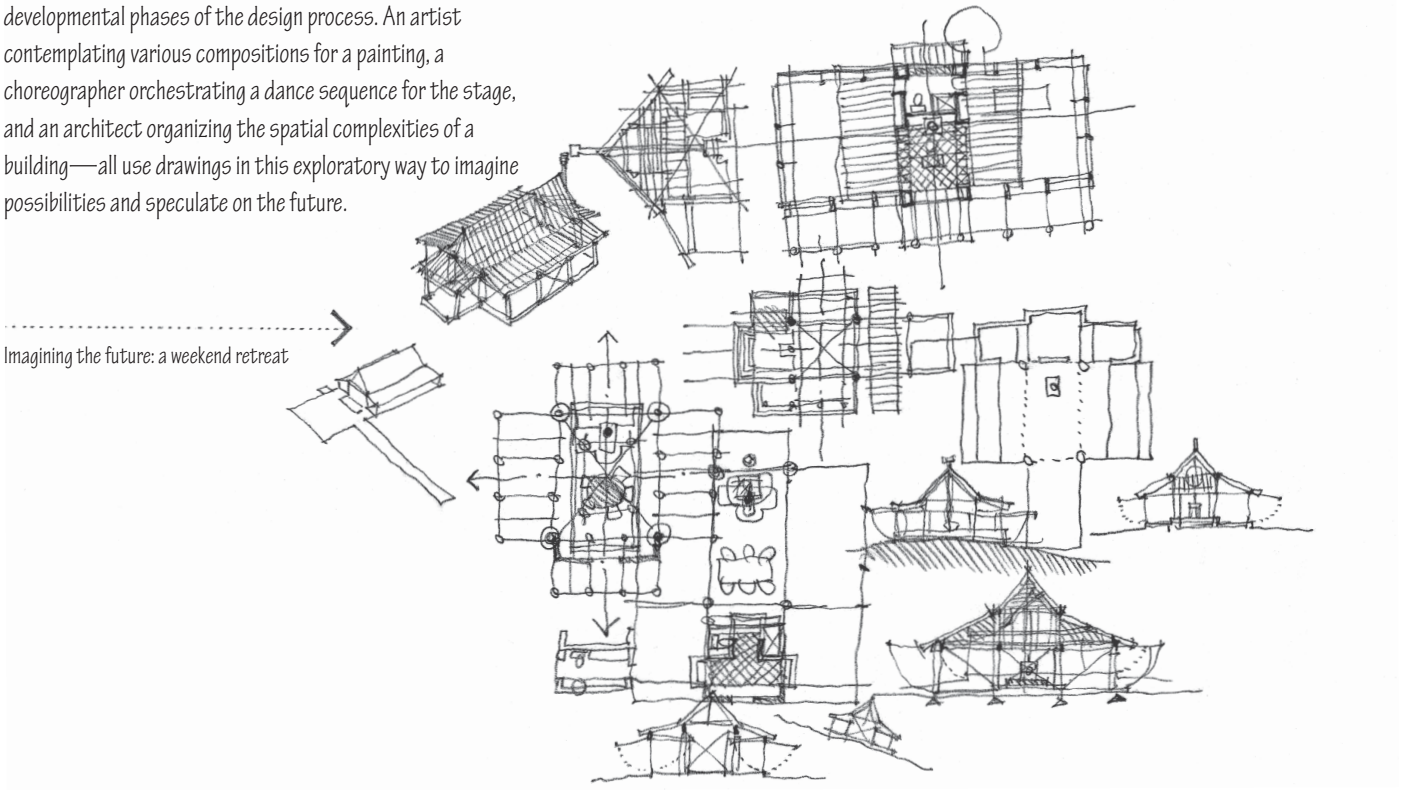
Drawing Stimulates the Imagination

Drawing is a medium that influences thought just as thought directs drawing. Sketching an idea on paper enables us to explore and clarify it in much the same way as we can form and order a thought by putting it into words. Making thoughts concrete and visible enables us to act on them. We can analyze them, see them in a new light, combine them in new ways, and transform them into new ideas. Used in this way, design drawings further stimulate the imagination from which they spring.

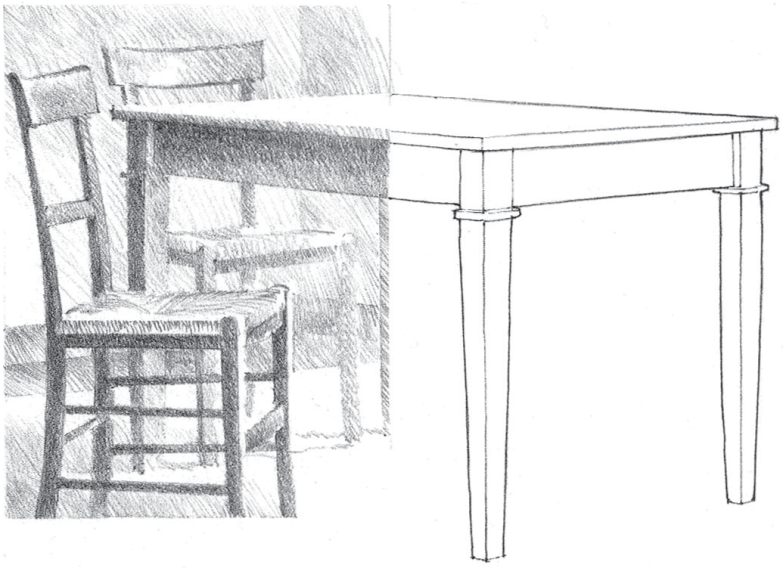


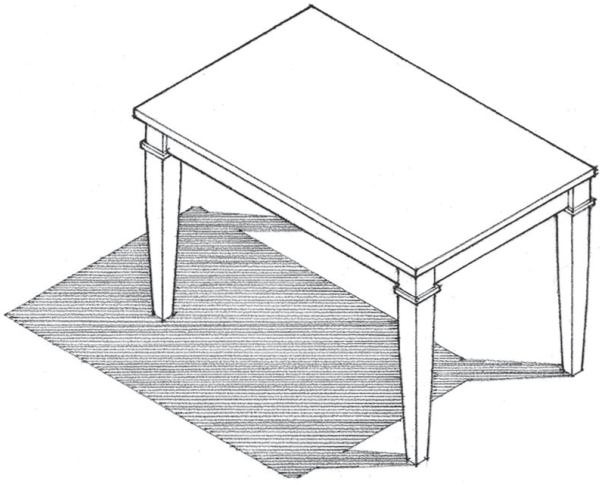
Imagine how you could transform these circles into other things by simply drawing a few lines.

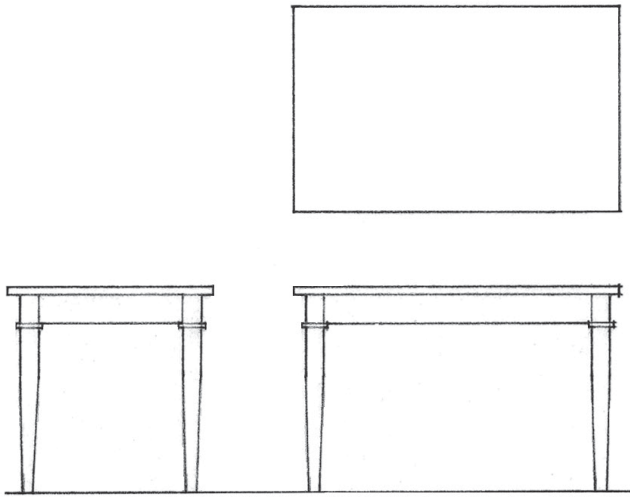
This type of drawing is essential to the initial and developmental phases of the design process. An artist contemplating various compositions for a painting, a choreographer orchestrating a dance sequence for the stage, and an architect organizing the spatial complexities of a building—all use drawings in this exploratory way to imagine possibilities and speculate on the future.



Imagining the future: a weekend retreat







A drawing can never reproduce reality; it can only make visible our perceptions of that outer reality and the inner visions of the mind's eye. In the process of drawing, we create a separate reality, which parallels our experiences.

Our perceptions are holistic, incorporating all the information we possess about the phenomena we experience. A single drawing, however, can only express a limited portion of our experience. In drawing from observation, we direct our attention to particular aspects of our vision and we choose either consciously or unconsciously to ignore others. The choice of medium and technique we elect to use also affects what we are able to convey in a drawing.

We can also draw what we know about a subject, which can be expressed in ways other than how it appears to the eye. In drawing from the imagination, for example, we are not limited to the perceptual views of optical reality. We can draw instead a conceptual view of what the mind sees. Both perceptual and conceptual views are legitimate means of representation. They represent complementary ways of seeing and drawing. The choice of one over the other depends on the purpose of the drawing and what we want to communicate of the subject.

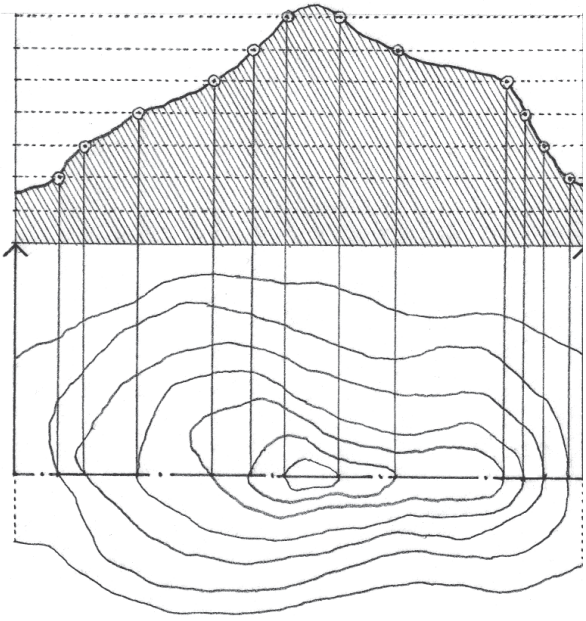
Different ways of representing the same objective reality.

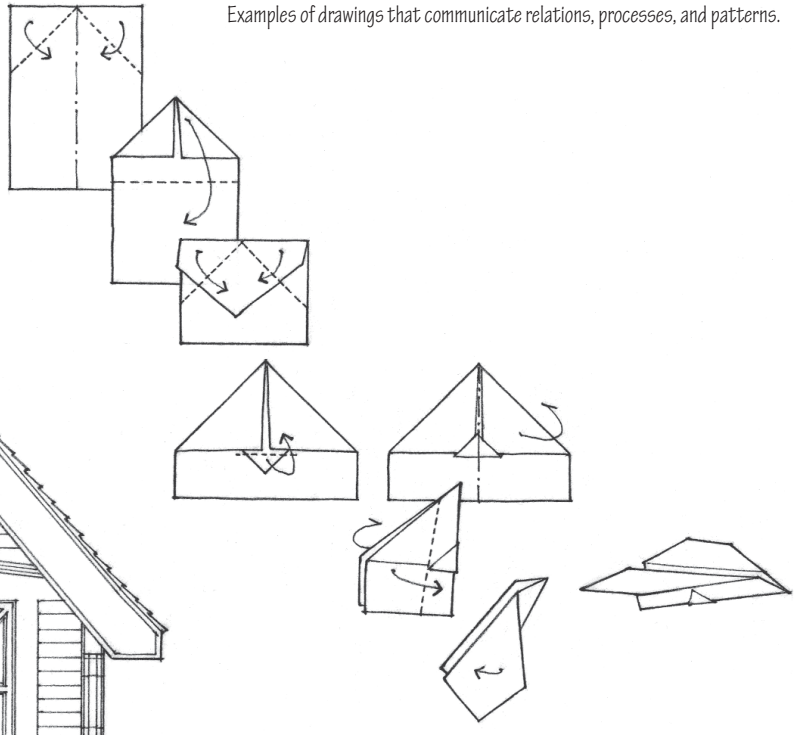
Visual Communication

All drawings communicate to the extent they stimulate an awareness on the part of those who view them. Drawings must catch the eye before they can communicate or instruct. Once they engage the viewer, they should assist their imagination and invite a response.

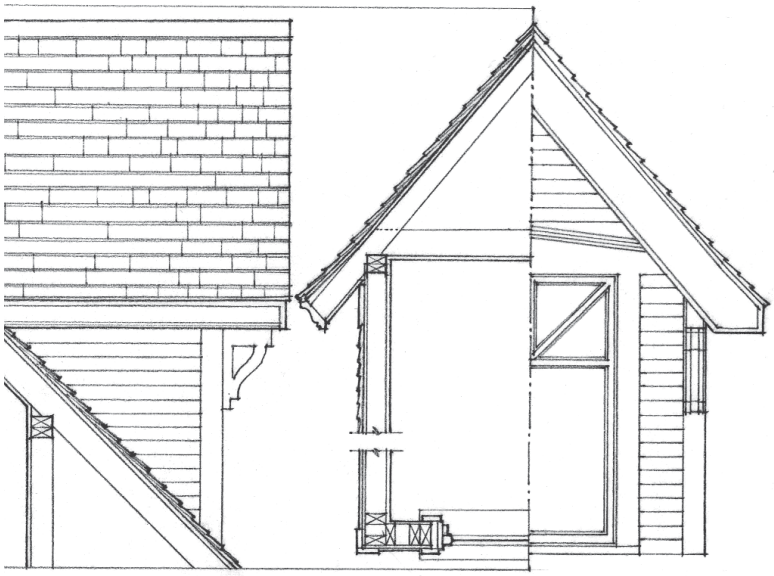
Drawings are by nature information-rich. It would be difficult to adequately describe with words what a drawing is able to reveal at a glance. But just as we each see in a different way, we can each view the same drawing and interpret it differently. Even the most realistic drawing is subject to interpretation. Any drawing we use to communicate visual information should therefore represent things in a way that is comprehensible to others. The more abstract a drawing, the more it must rely on conventions and text to communicate a message or convey information.

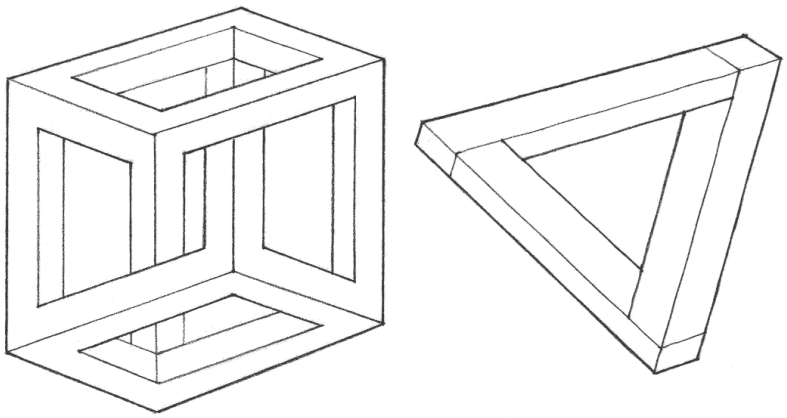
A common form of visual communication is the diagram, a simplified drawing that can illustrate a process or action, clarify a set of relationships, or describe a pattern of change or growth. Another example is the set of presentation drawings that offer a design proposal to others for their review and evaluation. More utilitarian forms of graphic communication include design patterns, working drawings, and technical illustrations. These visual instructions guide others in the construction of a design or the transformation of an idea into reality.



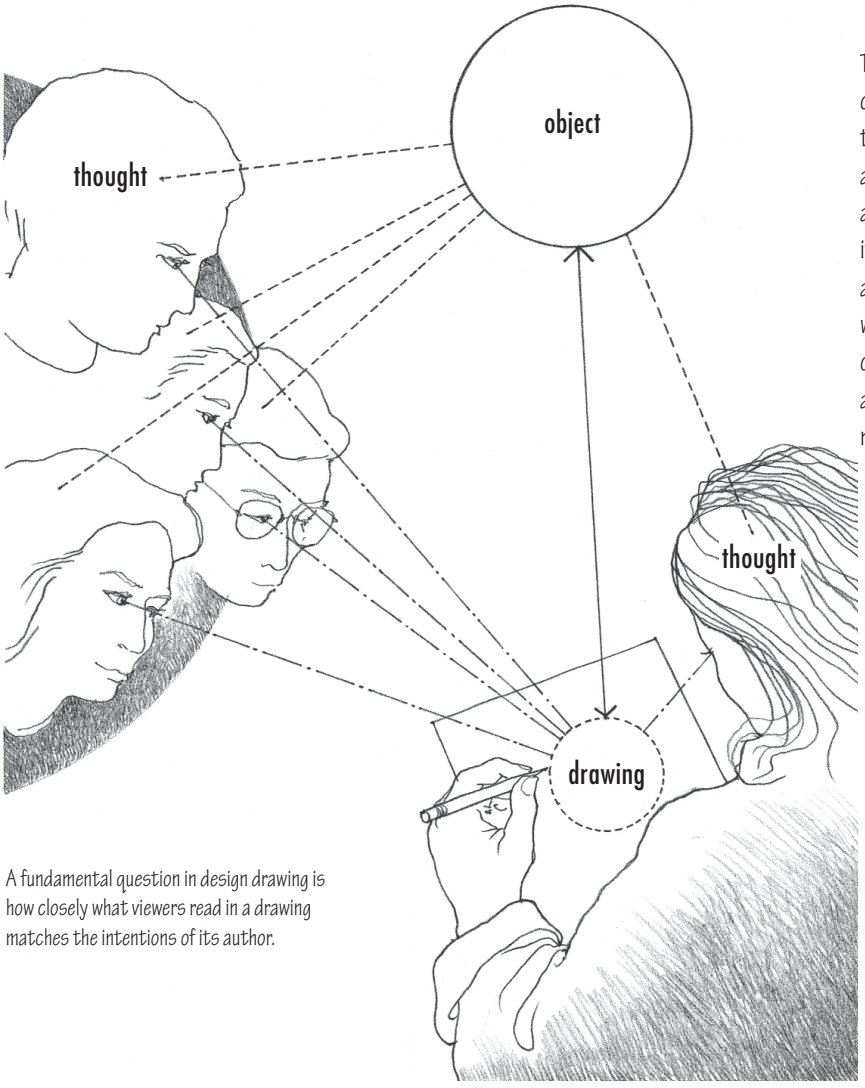


Examples of drawings that communicate relations, processes, and patterns.





What appears to work on paper may not be possible in objective reality.



A fundamental question in design drawing is how closely what viewers read in a drawing matches the intentions of its author.

Reading Drawings

While we are able to read drawings we do not author or that we are incapable of executing, the converse is not true. We cannot construct a drawing unless we are able to decipher the graphic marks we make and understand the way others might see and interpret them. An essential part of learning how to draw is learning to read the drawings we encounter as well as the ones we execute ourselves.

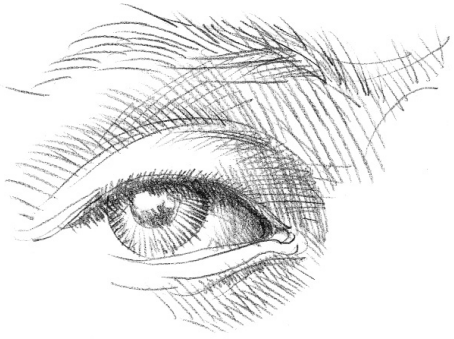
Being able to read a drawing means that we understand the relationship between a subject and how it is represented in a drawing. For example, any drawing, whether generated on a computer screen or created by hand, can be improperly constructed and misconstrue the three-dimensional idea that it represents. We should be able to recognize when a drawing conveys something that is not possible in reality, even though the graphic image may give the opposite impression.

To better critique and improve our own drawings, we should cultivate the habit of reading them the way others might see them. It is easy to convince our eyes that one of our drawings actually stands for what we believe it represents. It is just as easy to see mistakes in another's drawing because we see it with fresh eyes. Looking at a drawing upside down, from a distance, or through a mirror causes us to see it in a new way. The sudden changes of view enable us to see problems our minds predisposed us to ignore. Even small errors that appear to be trivial are of some consequence if they muddy the message or meaning of a drawing.

Drawing from Observation

"Learning to draw is really a matter of learning to see—to see correctly—and that means a good deal more than merely looking with the eye. The sort of 'seeing' I mean is an observation that utilizes as many of the five senses as can reach through the eye at one time."

Kimon Nicolaïdes
The Natural Way to Draw

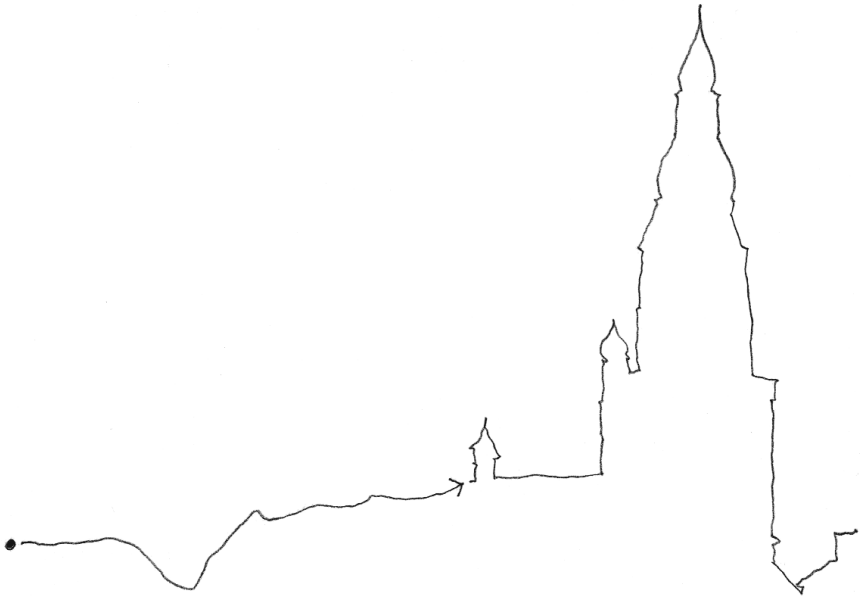


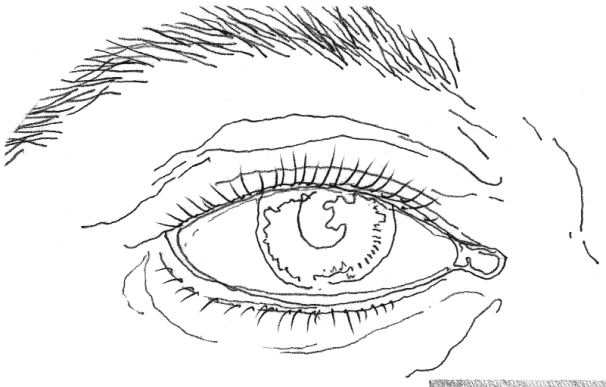
Despite the subjective nature of perception, sight is still the most important sense for gathering information about our world. In the seeing process, we are able to reach out through space and trace the edges of objects, scan surfaces, feel textures, and explore space. The tactile, kinesthetic nature of drawing in direct response to sensory phenomena sharpens our awareness in the present, expands our visual memories of the past, and stimulates the imagination in designing the future.

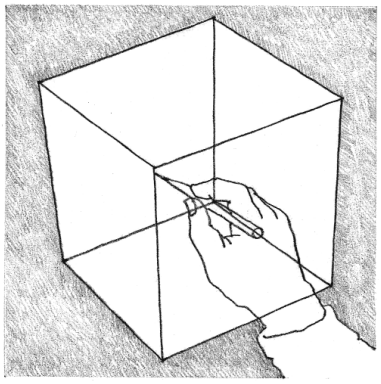
1

Line and Shape

A point has no dimension or scale. When made visible as a dot, the point establishes a position in space. As the dot moves across a surface, it traces the path of a line—the quintessential element of drawing. We rely principally on the line to portray the edges and contours of objects we see in visual space. In delineating these boundaries, the line naturally begins to define shape—the pictorial element that establishes the figures in our visual field and organizes the composition of a drawing.



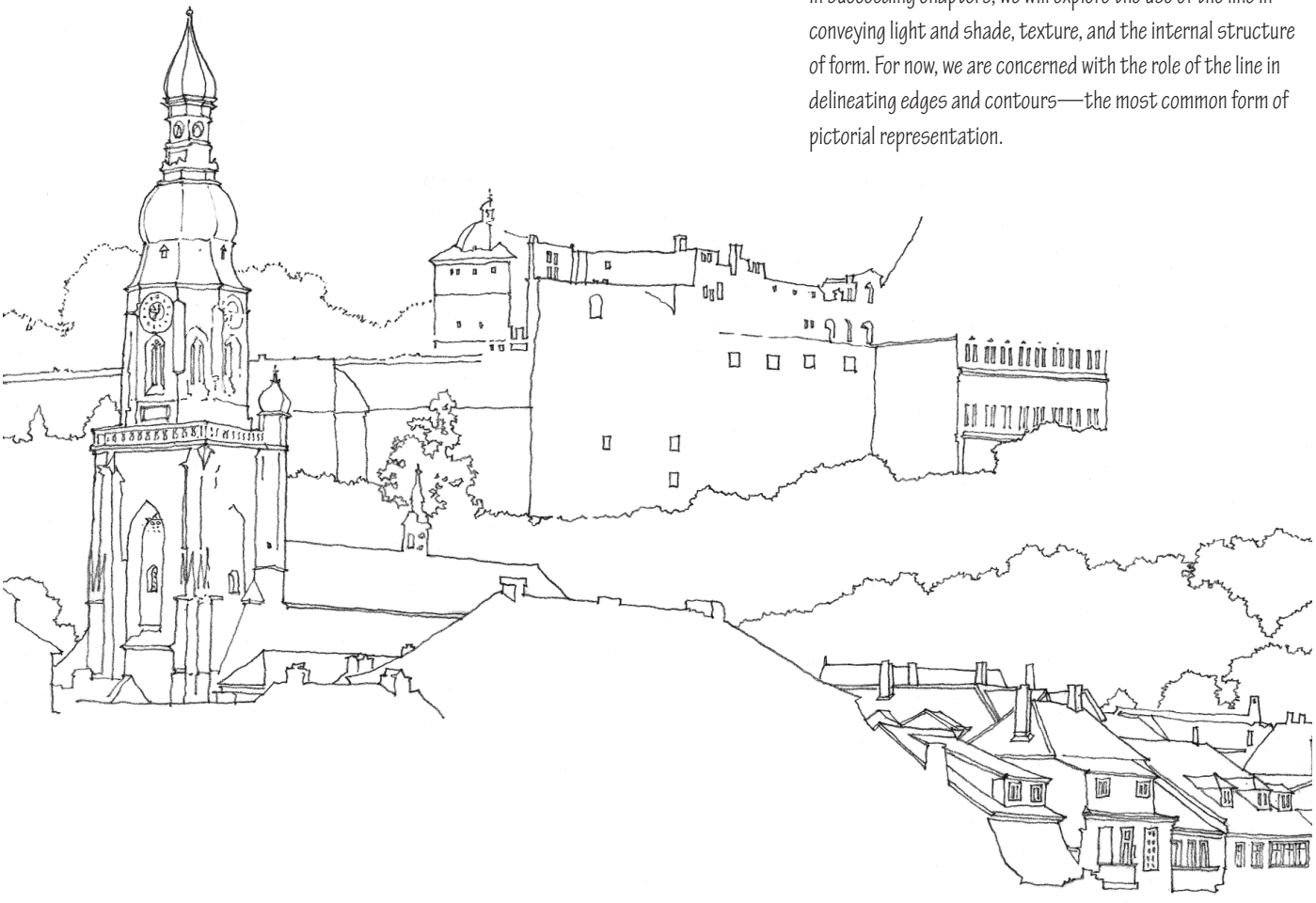




Conceptually, a line is a one-dimensional element having a continuous extent of length but no breadth or thickness. Such a line does not actually exist in the physical world of matter. Whatever we regard as a line is in fact a thin, solid volume, such as a strand of wire; or a very narrow depression, such as a crease; or a discontinuity in color or tonal value, such as where an object meets its shadow. Yet our vision perceives all of these as lines. Just as lines are critical to the way we perceive our world, they are essential in representing our perceptions in a drawing.

In drawing, we pull or drag the point of a tool across a receptive surface to produce a line. As a graphic element, the line is a one-dimensional trace on a two-dimensional surface. Yet, it is the most natural and efficient means we have to circumscribe and describe the three-dimensional form of a subject. We construct these lines as we do in sight in order to recreate a sense of the form's existence in space. And as viewers, we readily associate the drawn lines with the physical boundaries of a form and the edges of parts within it.

In succeeding chapters, we will explore the use of the line in conveying light and shade, texture, and the internal structure of form. For now, we are concerned with the role of the line in delineating edges and contours—the most common form of pictorial representation.



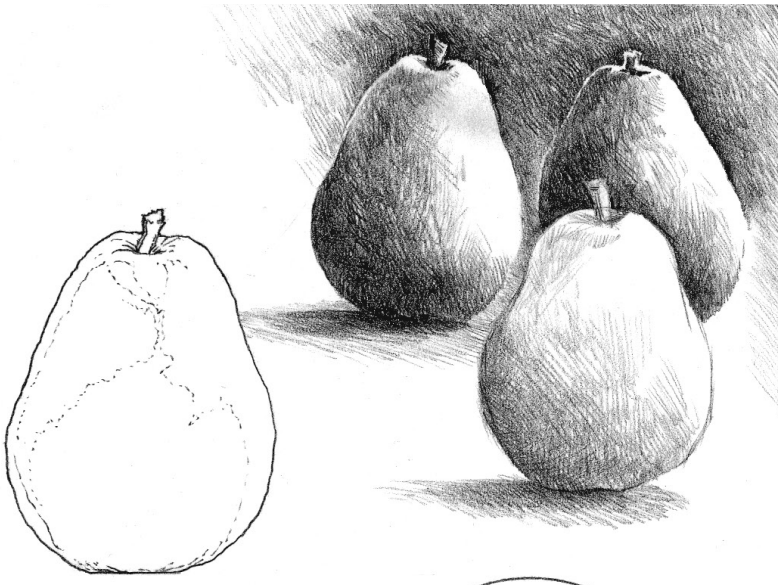
Contours dominate our perception of the visual world. The mind infers the existence of contours from the patterns of light and dark the eyes receive. Our visual system seeks out and creates a cognitive line along the points where two fields of contrasting light or color meet. Some of these edges are clear; others are lost in the background as they change color or tonal value. Still, in its need to identify objects, the mind is able to fabricate a continuous line along each edge. In the seeing process, the mind enhances these edges and sees them as contours.

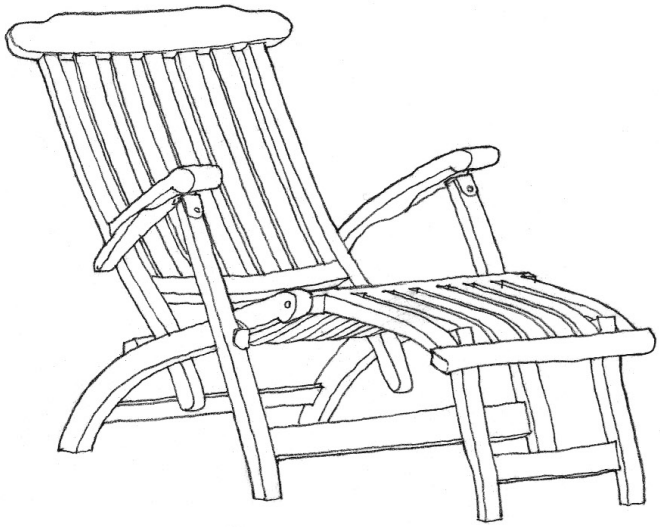
The most noticeable contours are those that separate one thing from another. These contours give rise to the images of objects we see in visual space. They circumscribe an object and define the outer boundary between the figure and its background. In limiting and defining the edges of things, contours also describe their shape.

But contours do more than describe the outline of a flat, two-dimensional silhouette.

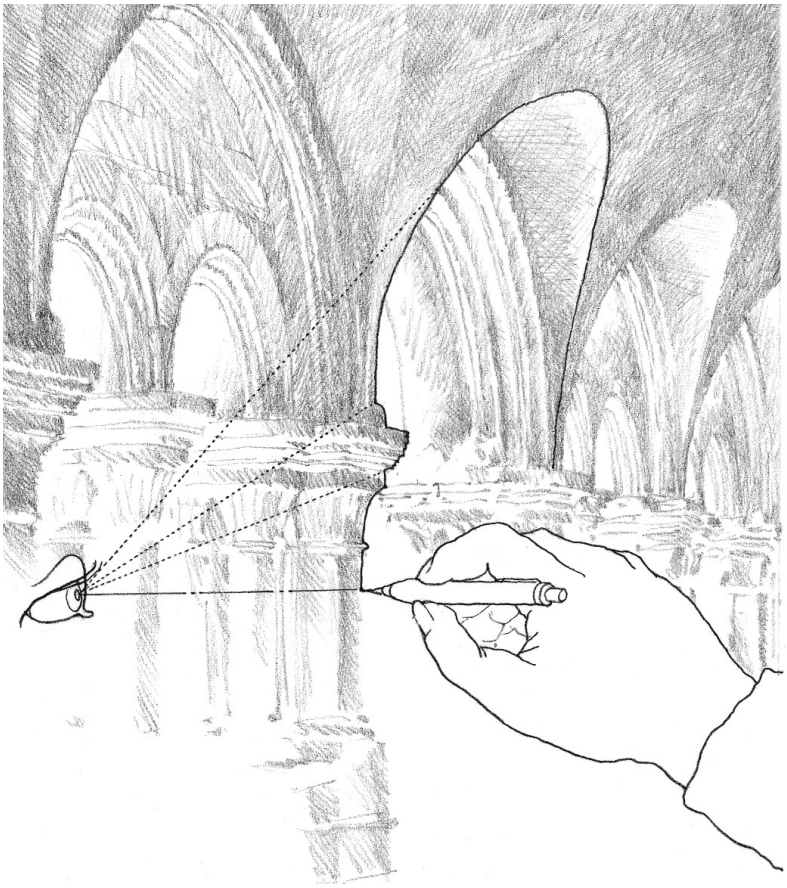
- Some contours travel inward at folds or breaks in a plane.
- Others are formed by overlapping or projecting parts.
- Still other contours describe the shapes of spaces and shadows within the form.

In both seeing and drawing, we are able to follow these contours as they eloquently describe the three-dimensional nature of forms in space.





CONTOUR DRAWING

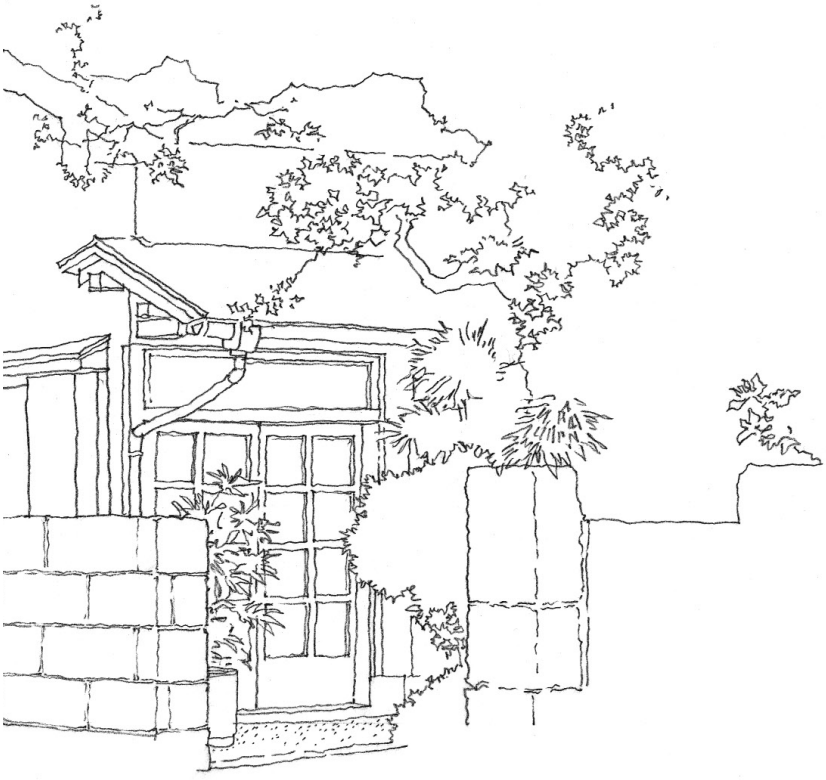


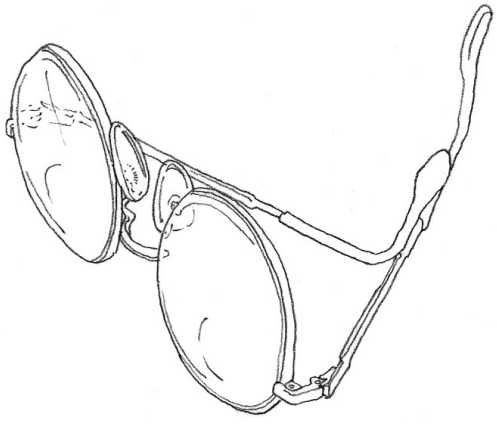
Contour drawing is one approach to drawing from observation. Its primary purpose is to develop visual acuity and sensitivity to qualities of surface and form. The process of contour drawing suppresses the symbolic abstraction we normally use to represent things. Instead, it compels us to pay close attention, look carefully, and to experience a subject with both our visual and tactile senses.

Our goal in contour drawing is to arrive at an accurate correspondence between the eye as it follows the edges of a form and the hand as it draws the lines that represent those edges. As the eye slowly traces the contours of a subject, the hand moves the drawing instrument at the same slow and deliberate pace and responds to every indentation and undulation of form. This is a meticulous and methodical process that involves working from detail to detail, part to part, and form to form.

The process is as much tactile as visual. Imagine the pencil or pen is in actual contact with the subject as you draw. Do not retrace over lines or erase them. Most importantly, draw slowly and deliberately. Avoid the temptation to move the hand faster than the eye can see; move in pace with the eye and examine the shape of each contour you see in the subject without considering or worrying about its identity.

Contour drawing is best done with either a soft, well-sharpened pencil or a fine-tipped pen that is capable of producing a single incisive line. This fosters a feeling of precision that corresponds to the acuity of vision contour drawing promotes.



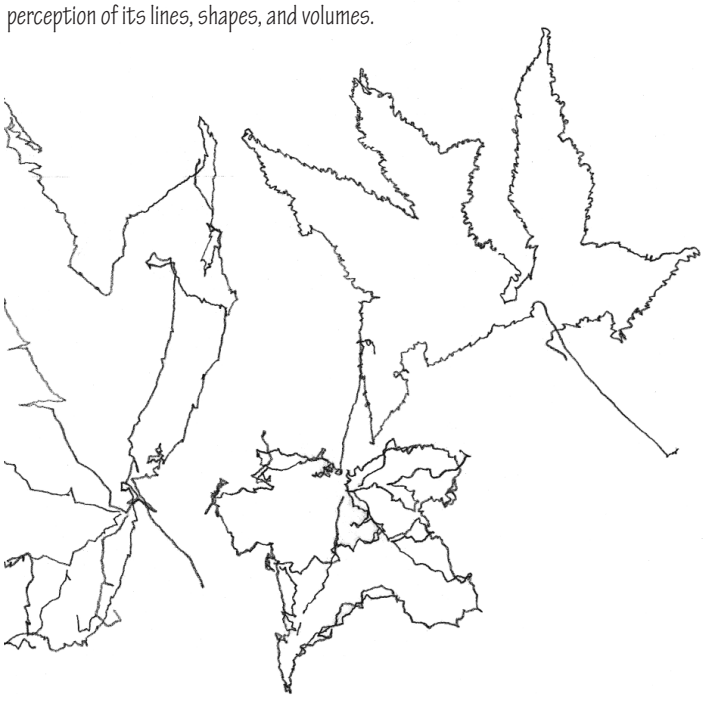


Blind contour drawing involves the drawing of contours while looking only at the subject, not the surface upon which we are drawing or the evolving image. Turn your body away from the paper and concentrate all of your attention on the subject. Your eyes should remain on the subject as the hand attempts to record on paper what you see.

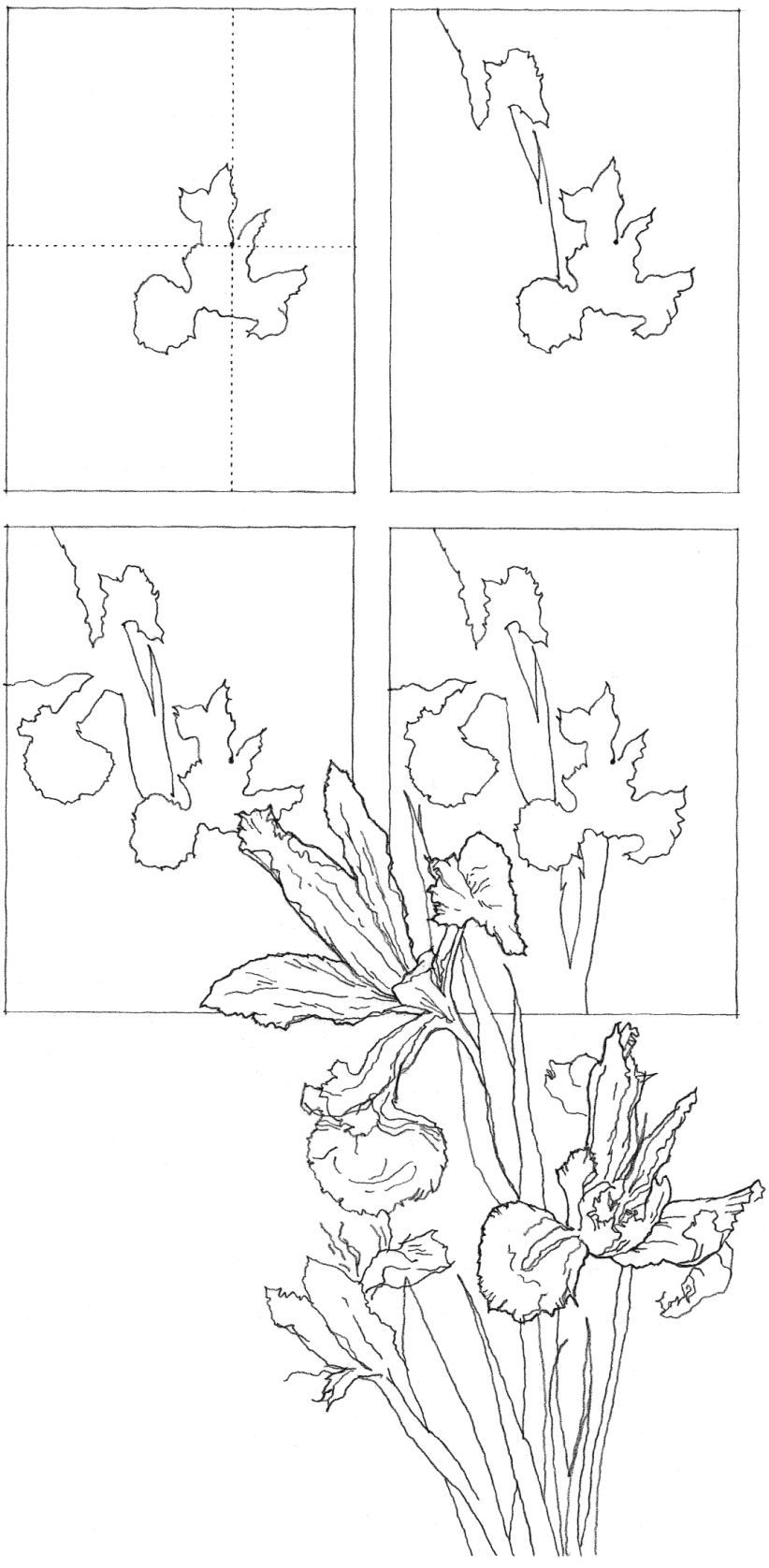
Focus the eye on a clearly defined point along a contour of the subject. Place the tip of the pen or pencil on the paper and imagine it is actually touching the subject at that point. Slowly and painstakingly follow the contour with your eyes, observing every minute shift or bend in the contour. As your eyes move, also move your pen or pencil on the paper at the same deliberate pace, recording each variation in contour that you see.

Continue to draw each edge you see, bit by bit, at a slow, even pace. You may have to stop periodically as you continue to scan the subject, but avoid making these stopping points too conspicuous. Strive to record each contour at the very instant you see each point along the contour. Allow the eye, mind, and hand to respond simultaneously to each and every critically perceived event.

In this mode of drawing, distorted and exaggerated proportions often result. The final drawing is not intended to look like the object but rather to document and express your careful perception of its lines, shapes, and volumes.



MODIFIED CONTOUR DRAWING



In modified contour drawing, we begin as in blind contour drawing. But in order to check relationships of size, length, and angle, we allow ourselves to glance at the emerging drawing at certain intervals.

Begin as in blind contour drawing. Select any convenient point along a contour of the subject. Place the tip of the pen or pencil on the sheet of paper and imagine it is in contact with the same point on the subject. Check the relationship of the contour to an imaginary vertical or horizontal line. As your eyes follow the contour in space, carefully draw the contour line at the same slow and deliberate pace.

Work from contour to contour, along, across, or around the edges and surfaces of a form. Respond to each and every surface modulation with equivalent hand movements. At certain points—breaks in planes or folds across contours—a contour line may disappear around a bend or be interrupted by another contour. At these junctures, look at the drawing and realign your pen or pencil with the previously stated edge to maintain a reasonable degree of accuracy and proportion. With only a glance for realignment, continue to draw, keeping your eyes on the subject.

The more we focus on what we see, the more we will become aware of the details of a form—the thickness of a material, how it turns or bends around a corner, and the manner in which it meets other materials. When confronted with a myriad of details, we must judge the relative significance of each detail and draw only those contours that are absolutely essential to the comprehension and representation of the form. Strive for economy of linework.

Do not worry about the proportions of the whole. With experience and practice, we eventually develop the ability to scan each contour of a subject, hold an image of that line in the mind's eye, visualize it on the drawing surface, and then draw over the projected trace.

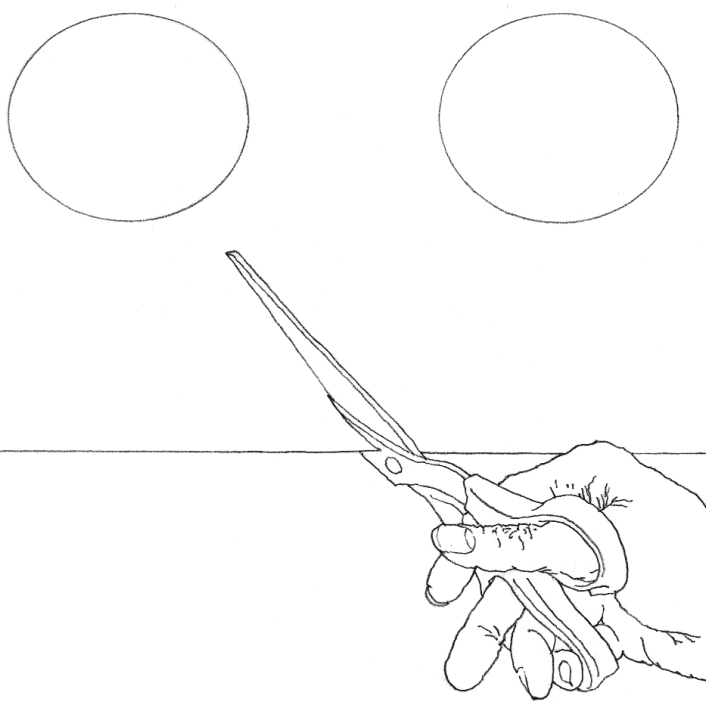
While a true contour drawing uses a single line weight, varying the width of a line while drawing enables one to be more expressive. Thickening a line can provide emphasis, create a sense of depth, or imply a shadow. The characteristics of the line used to define a contour can communicate the nature of the form—its materiality, surface texture, and visual weight.

Exercise 1.1

Pick a subject that has interesting contours, as your own hand, a pair of sneakers, or a fallen leaf. Focus all of your attention on the contours of the subject and draw a series of blind contour drawings. Blind contour drawing develops visual acuity, sensitivity to contours, and hand-eye-mind coordination.

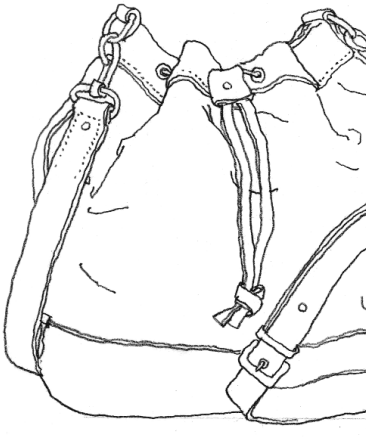
Exercise 1.2

Pair up with a friend. Draw a contour drawing of your friend's left eye using your right-hand. Then draw a contour drawing of your friend's right eye using your left-hand. Compare the drawing done with your normal drawing hand with that executed with the opposite hand. Drawing with your "unfamiliar hand" forces you to draw more slowly and be more sensitive to the contours you see. This exercise may also be done by looking in a mirror and drawing your own pair of eyes.

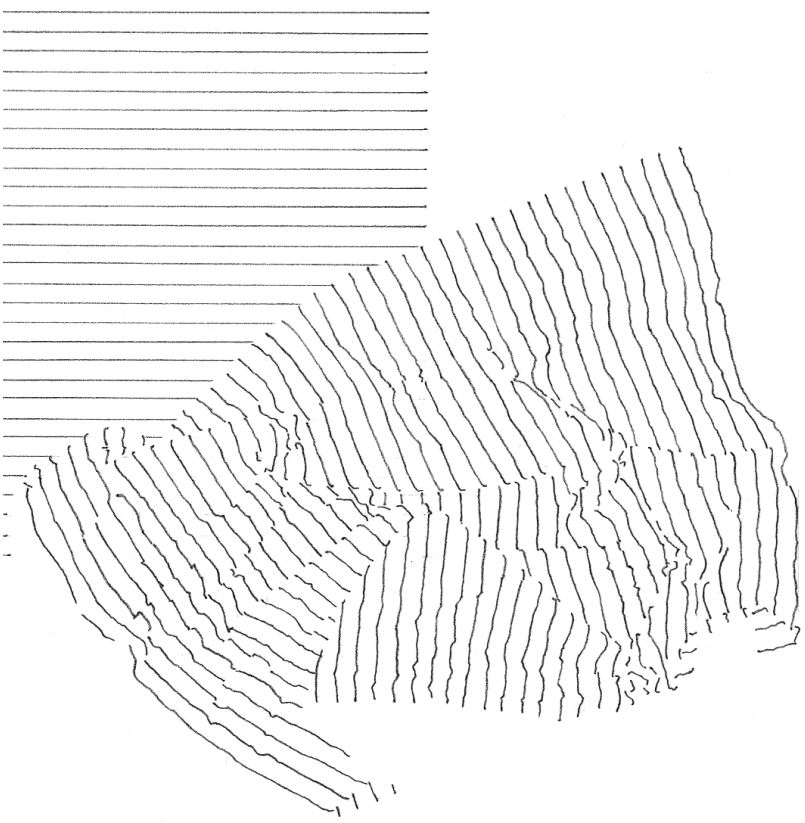


Exercise 1.3

Compose a still life of objects having different forms—flowers and a hand tool, several fruit and bottles, leaves and a handbag. Draw a series of modified contour drawings of the composition. Try not to name or identify the things you are drawing, which can lead to the drawing of symbols. Rather, pay close attention to, sense, and record the differing nature of the edges and contours as you see them.



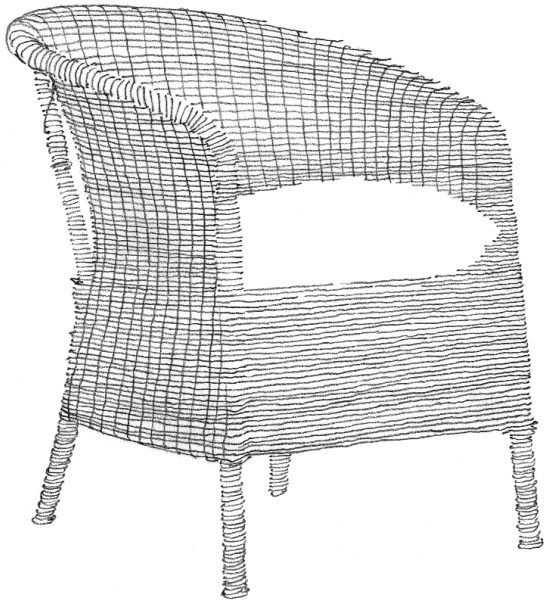
CROSS-CONTOUR DRAWING

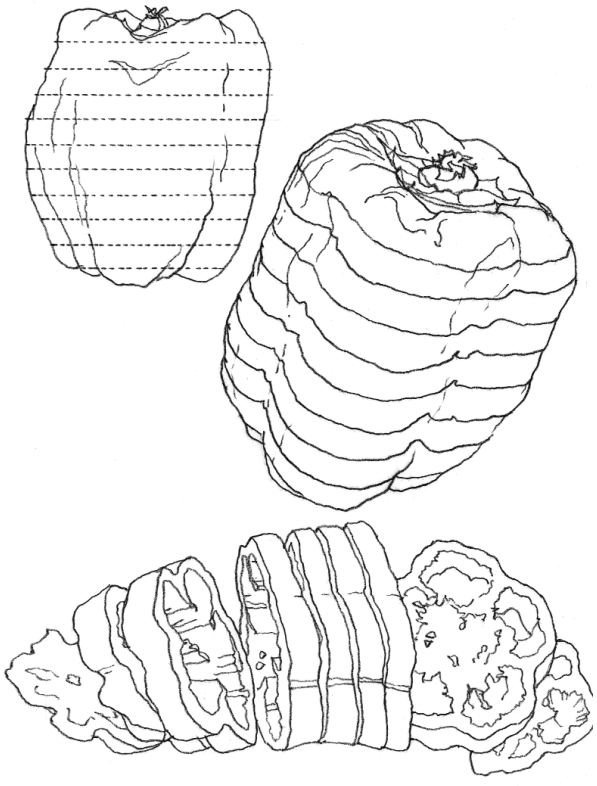


In cross-contour drawing, we draw lines not as we perceive them but as they would appear if inscribed across the surfaces of an object. So rather than depict the spatial edges of a form, cross-contours emphasize the way its surfaces turn and shift in space.

We use cross-contours to explore and represent the volumetric nature of an object, especially when its form is not composed of flat planes or is organic in character. Cross-contours flow over the ridges and along the hollows of a surface. Where the surface is indented, the cross-contour line indents; where the surface rises, then the cross-contour line rises as well.

To better visualize the spatial turns and shifts that occur along the surfaces of an object, imagine cutting a series of equally spaced, parallel planes through the form. Then draw the series of profiles that result from the cuts. Through the series of closely spaced cross-contour lines, the form of the object will emerge.

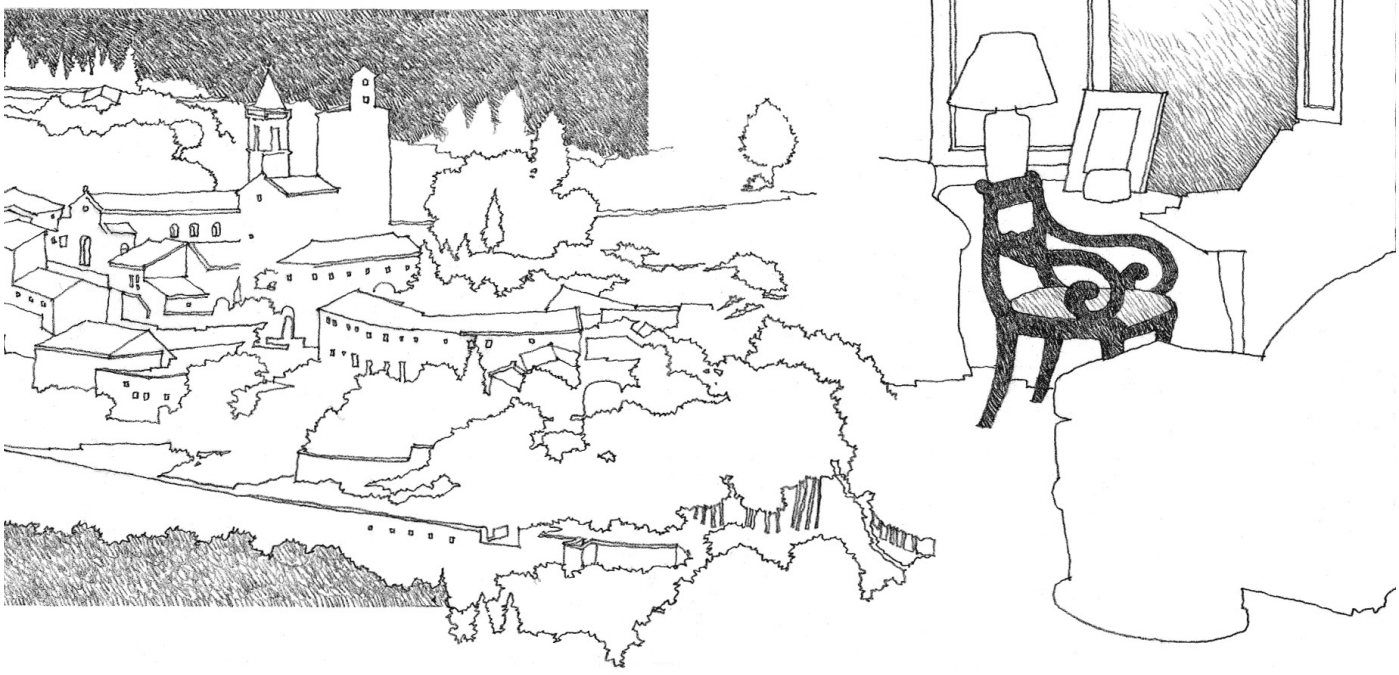




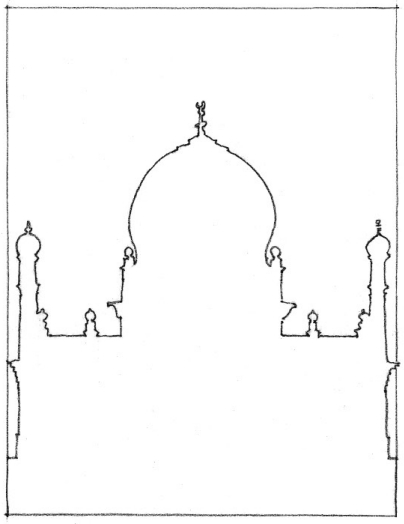
The lines we see in visual space correspond to discernible changes in color or tonal value. In contour drawing, we use visible lines to represent these lines of contrast that occur along the edges of objects and spaces. The contour lines delineate where one area or volume begins and another apparently ends. Our perception and drawing of the boundary lines that separate one thing from another leads to our recognition and description of shape.

Shape is the characteristic outline or surface configuration of a figure or form. As a visual concept in drawing and design, shape refers specifically to a two-dimensional area enclosed by its own boundaries and cut off from a larger field. Everything we see—every area in our field of vision enclosed by a contour line or bounded by an edge between contrasting colors or tonal values—has the quality of shape. And it is by shape that we organize and identify what we see.

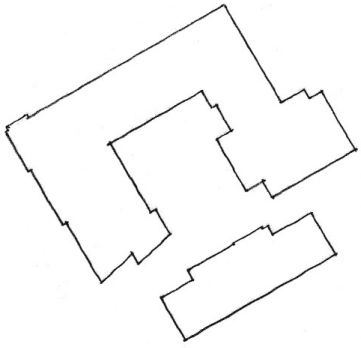
A shape can never exist alone. It can only be seen in relation to other shapes or the space surrounding it. Any line that defines a shape on one side of its contour simultaneously carves out space on the other side of its path. As we draw a line, therefore, we must be conscious not only of where it begins and ends, but also how it moves and the shapes it carves and molds along the way.



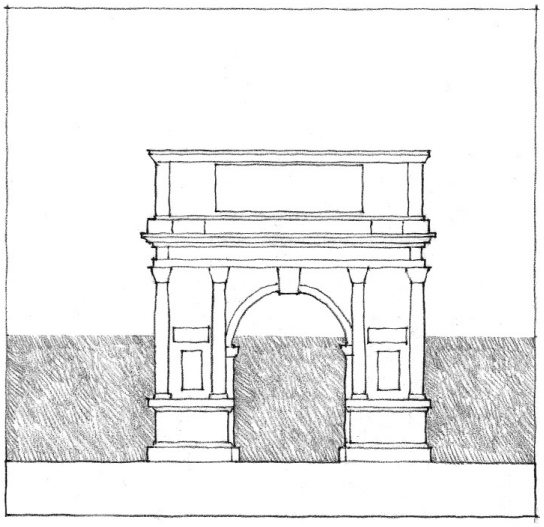
At the threshold of perception, we begin to see parts of a visual field as solid, well-defined objects standing out against a less distinct background. Gestalt psychologists use the term *figure-ground* to describe this property of perception. Figure-ground is an essential concept in the ordering of our visual world: without this differentiation of figure from ground, we would see as if through a fog. A figure emerges from a background when it has certain characteristics.



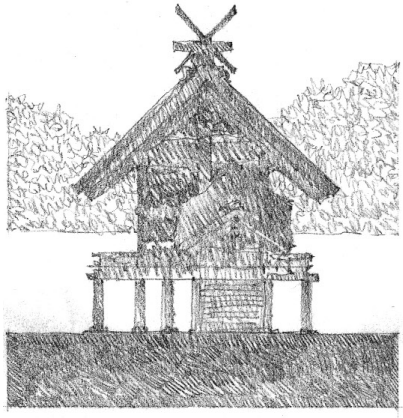
The contour line that borders a figure appears to belong to it rather than to the surrounding background.



The figure appears to be a self-contained object, while its background does not.



The figure appears to advance in front of a continuous, receding background.

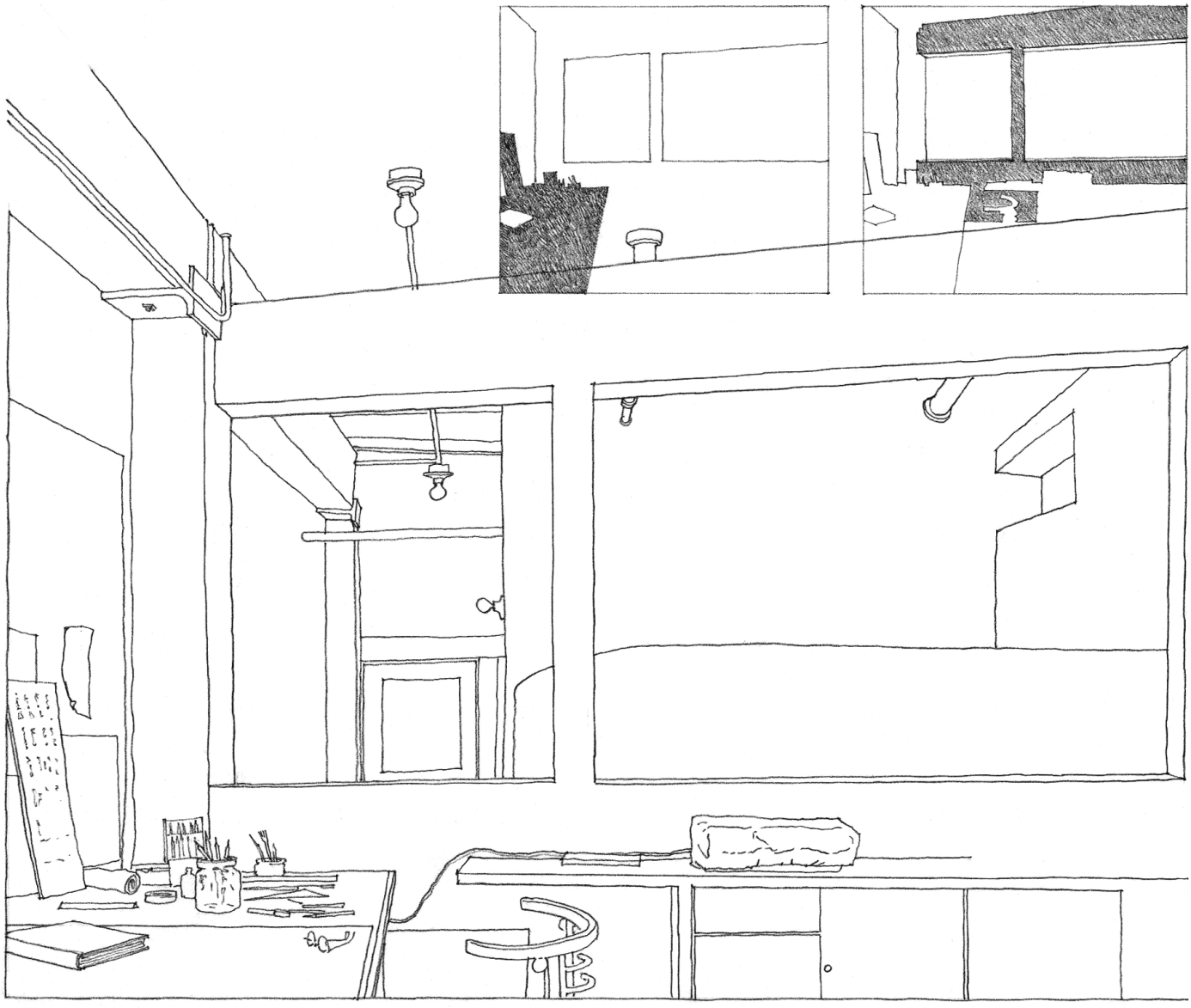


The figure has a color or tonal value that is more solid or substantial than that of the background.

The figure appears to be closer and the background more distant.

The figure appears to dominate its field and be more memorable as a visual image.

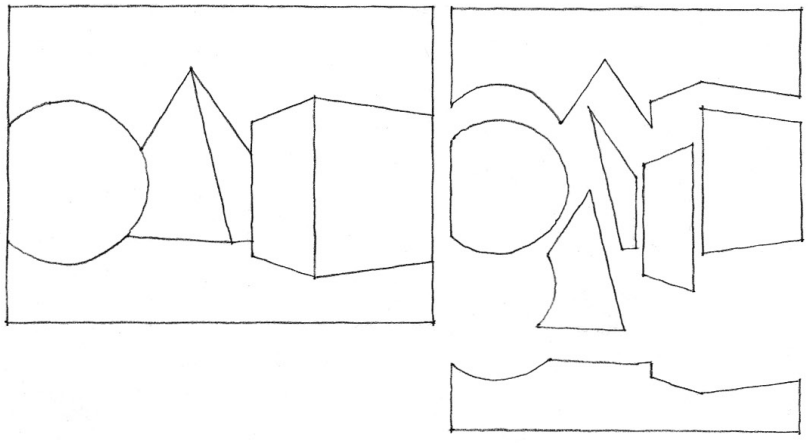
The visual environment is in reality a continuous array of figure-ground relationships. No part of a visual field is truly inert. A thing becomes a figure when we pay attention to it. When we fix our gaze on a book on a crowded desk, it becomes a figure while the rest of the desktop dissolves into the background. As we shift our awareness to another book, a stack of papers, or a lamp, each can become a figure seen against the ground of the desktop. Broadening our view, the desk can be seen as a figure against the ground of a wall, and the wall can become a figure seen against the enclosing surfaces of the room.



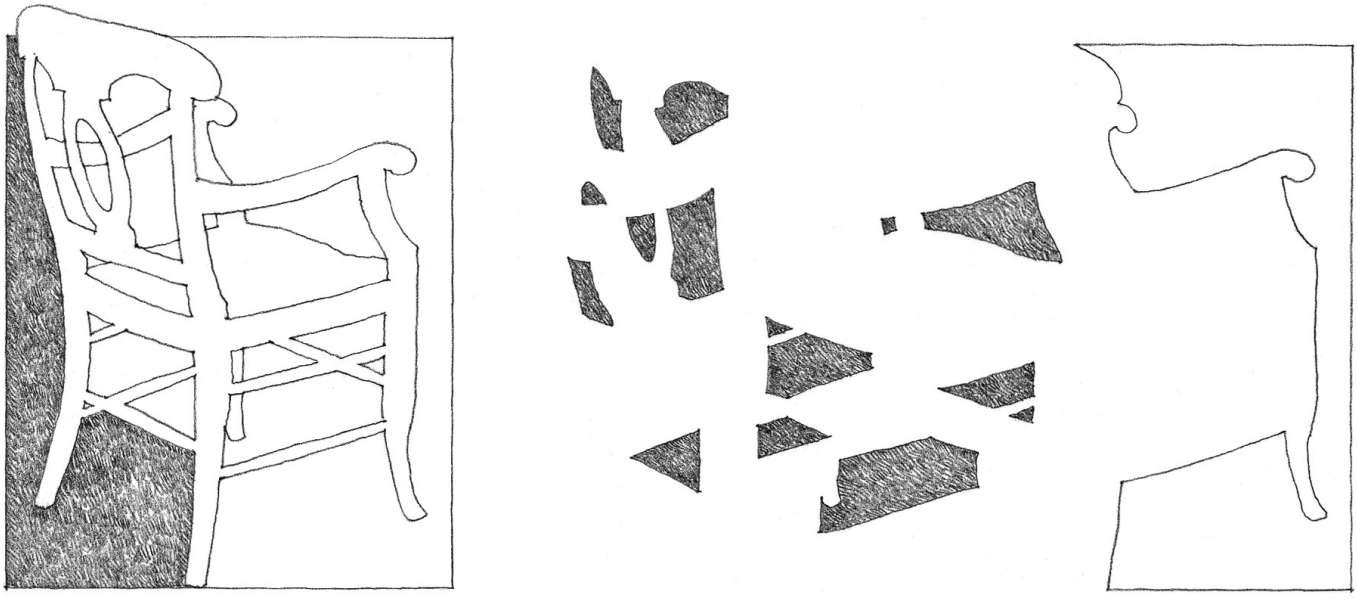
POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE SHAPES

A figure that we can see relatively clearly against a background is said to have a positive shape. By comparison, the figure's rather shapeless background is said to have a negative shape. The positive shapes of figures tend to advance and be relatively complete and substantial, while their background appears to recede and be comparatively incomplete and amorphous.

We are conditioned to see the shapes of things rather than the shapes of the spaces between them. While we normally perceive spatial voids as having no substance, they share the same edges as the objects they separate or envelop. The positive shapes of figures and the shapeless spaces of backgrounds share the same boundaries and combine to form an inseparable whole—a unity of opposites.

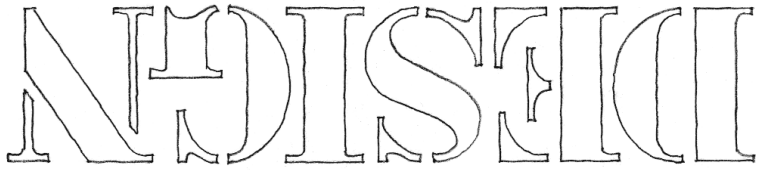


In drawing, also, negative shapes share the contour lines that define the edges of positive shapes. The format and composition of a drawing consists of positive and negative shapes that fit together like the interlocking pieces of a jigsaw puzzle. In both seeing and drawing, we should raise the shapes of negative spaces to the same level of importance as the positive shapes of figures and see them as equal partners in the relationship. Since negative shapes do not always have the easily recognizable qualities of positive shapes, they can be seen only if we make the effort.



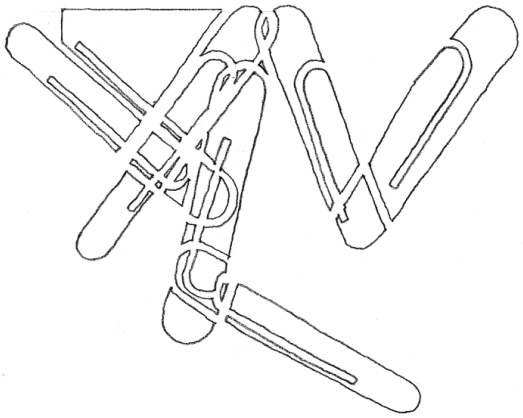
Exercise 1.4

Copy these letter shapes line by line using the guidelines provided. Drawing something upside-down compels us to be less concerned with its identity and more focused on the shapes of the contours and spaces we see.



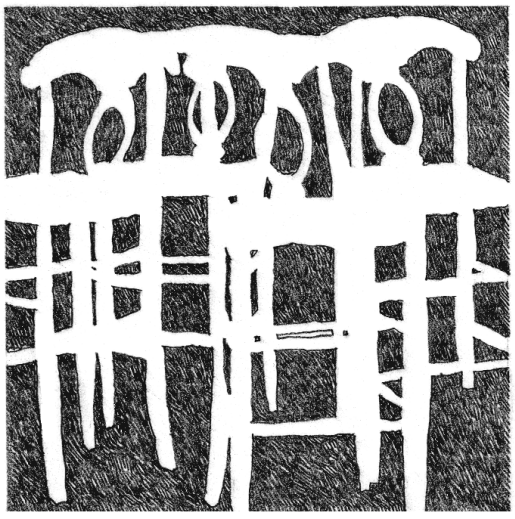
Exercise 1.5

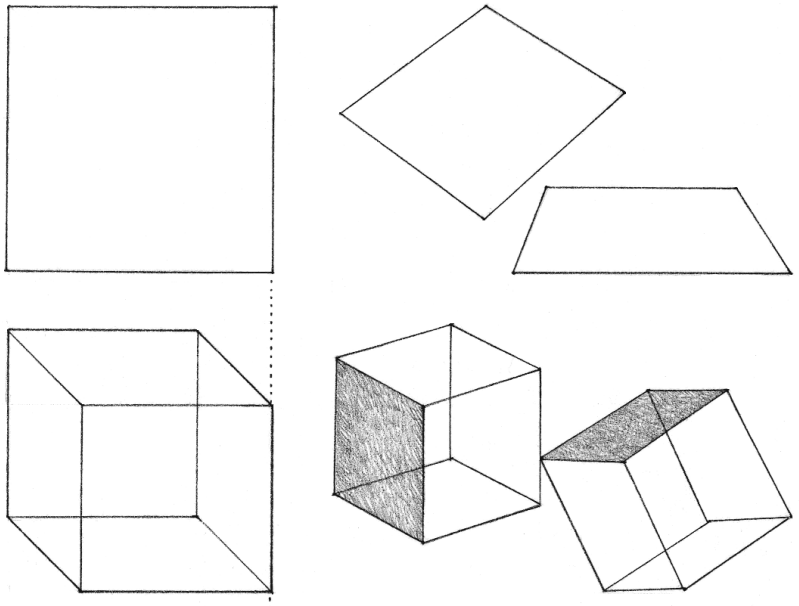
Place several paper clips on a sheet of paper, overlapping them to create a number of interesting spaces. Using a sharp, soft pencil or fine-tipped black pen, focus on and draw the shapes of the paper surface you see within and in between the paper clips. Do similar drawings of negative shapes by substituting compositions of small objects that have notched, indented, or complex profiles, such as leaves, keys, or silverware.



Exercise 1.6

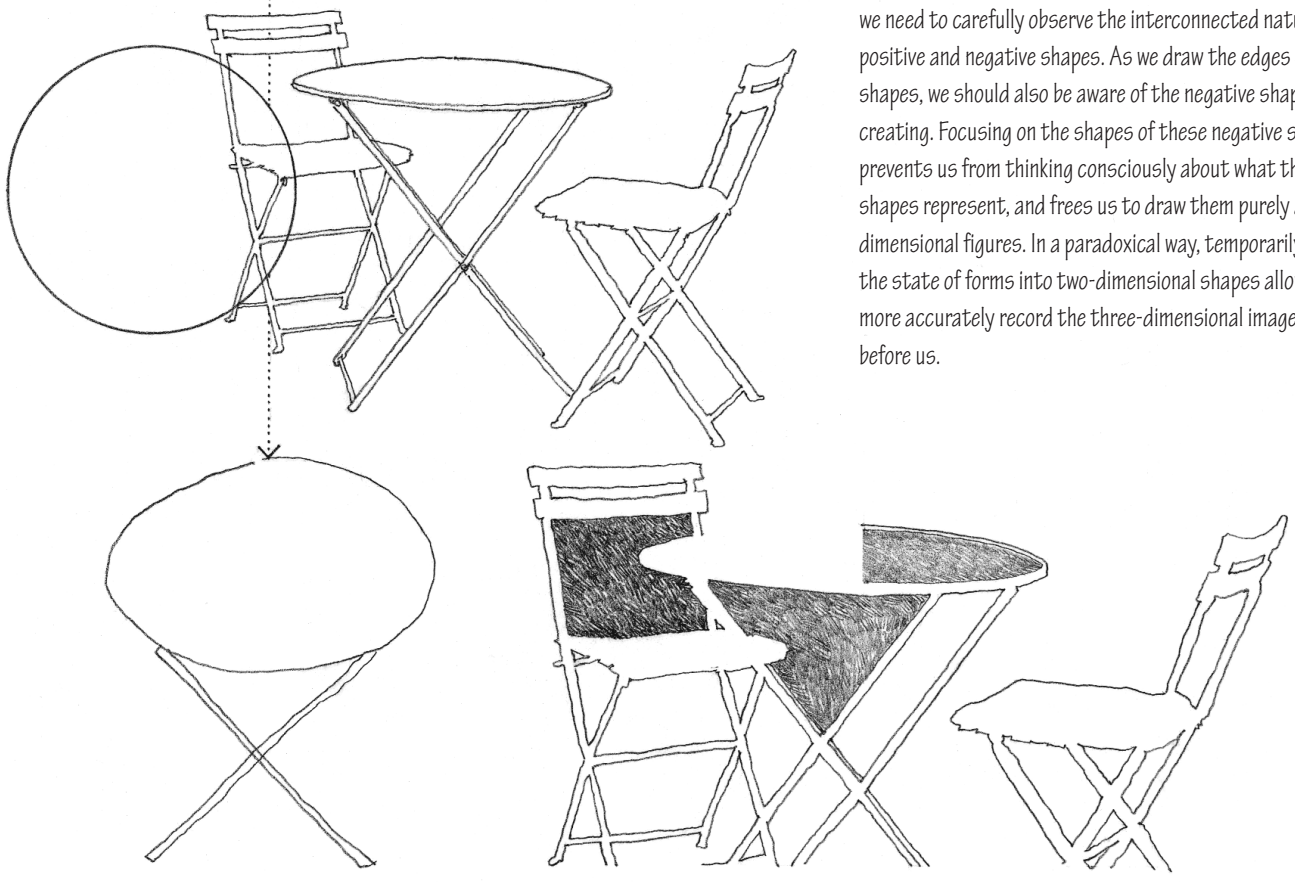
Compose several chairs containing openings within their form. Overlap them to create interesting spaces. Using a sharp, soft pencil or fine-tipped black pen, focus on and draw the shapes of the negative spaces created by the overlapping chairs.





• Objective reality

• Optical reality



What we draw is often a compromise between what we know of an object and the optical image we see.

The perceived shape of an object is necessarily altered or transformed by viewing distance and angle. This may simply be a change in size or a more complex transformation of formal relationships. We can nevertheless identify things even when the particular images we see shift and move in our perception. This phenomenon, known as shape constancy, enables us to grasp the structural features of something irrespective of the perceptual phenomena we experience.

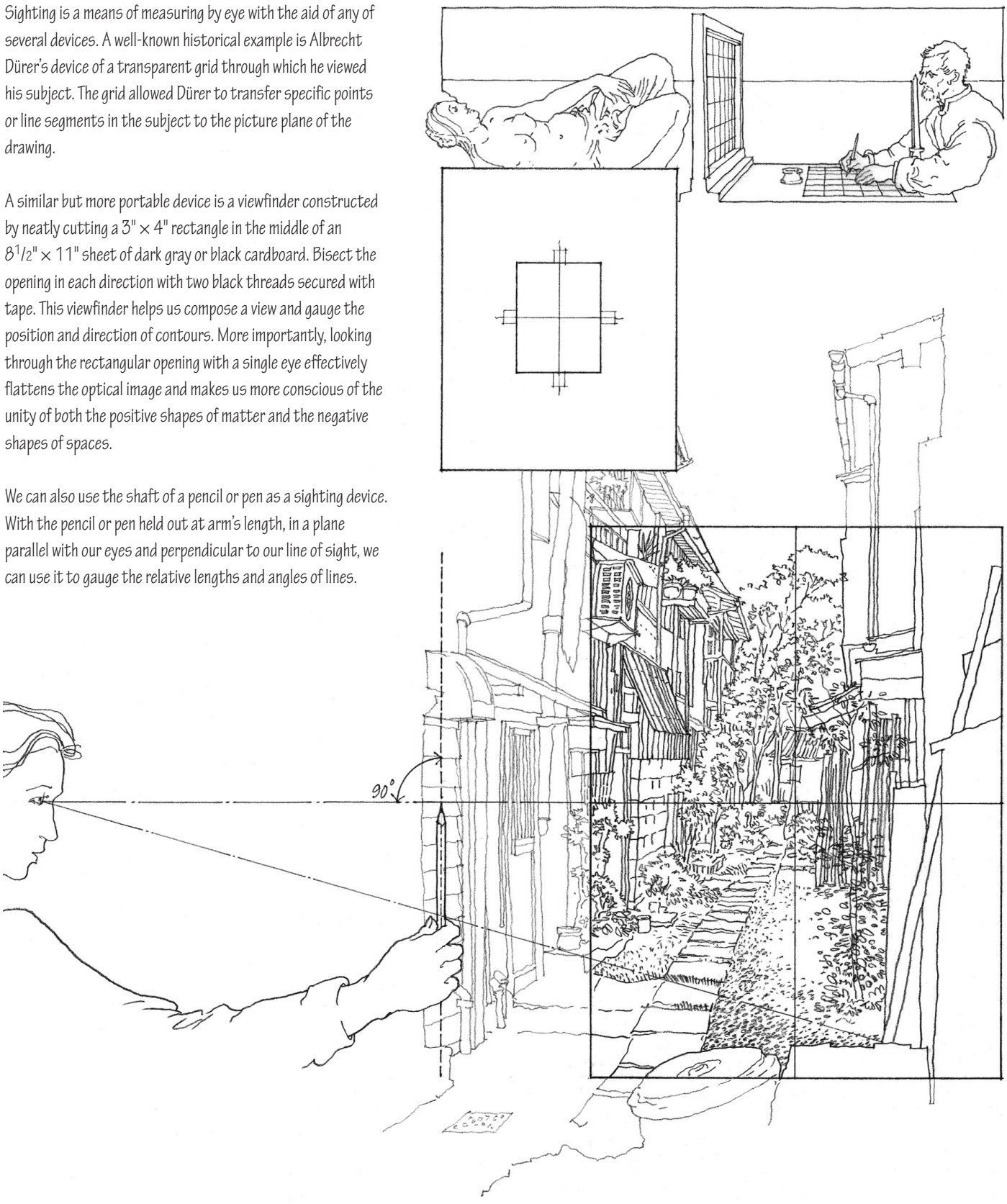
What we know about an object, however, often interferes with our drawing of how its shape appears to the eye. For example, we may be inclined to draw a foreshortened shape in a way that suggests that we are seeing it from above or from the side. Although a round tabletop manifests itself as an elliptical shape, we may be disposed to draw it as a circle. While none of the faces of a cube appear to the eye to be square shapes, we may tend to draw one or more faces as squares.

To avoid drawing a preconceived notion of a class of forms, we need to carefully observe the interconnected nature of positive and negative shapes. As we draw the edges of positive shapes, we should also be aware of the negative shapes we are creating. Focusing on the shapes of these negative spaces prevents us from thinking consciously about what the positive shapes represent, and frees us to draw them purely as two-dimensional figures. In a paradoxical way, temporarily flattening the state of forms into two-dimensional shapes allows us to more accurately record the three-dimensional image we see before us.

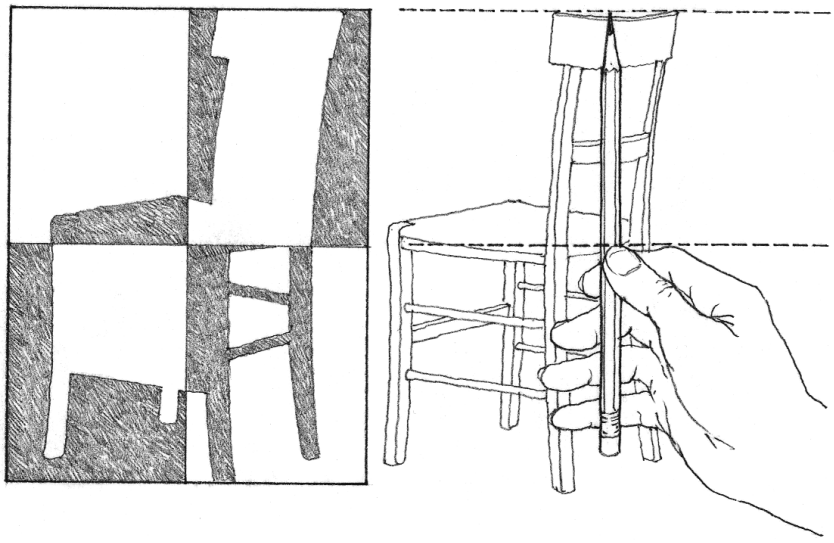
Sighting is a means of measuring by eye with the aid of any of several devices. A well-known historical example is Albrecht Dürer's device of a transparent grid through which he viewed his subject. The grid allowed Dürer to transfer specific points or line segments in the subject to the picture plane of the drawing.

A similar but more portable device is a viewfinder constructed by neatly cutting a 3" × 4" rectangle in the middle of an $8\frac{1}{2}$" × 11" sheet of dark gray or black cardboard. Bisect the opening in each direction with two black threads secured with tape. This viewfinder helps us compose a view and gauge the position and direction of contours. More importantly, looking through the rectangular opening with a single eye effectively flattens the optical image and makes us more conscious of the unity of both the positive shapes of matter and the negative shapes of spaces.

We can also use the shaft of a pencil or pen as a sighting device. With the pencil or pen held out at arm's length, in a plane parallel with our eyes and perpendicular to our line of sight, we can use it to gauge the relative lengths and angles of lines.



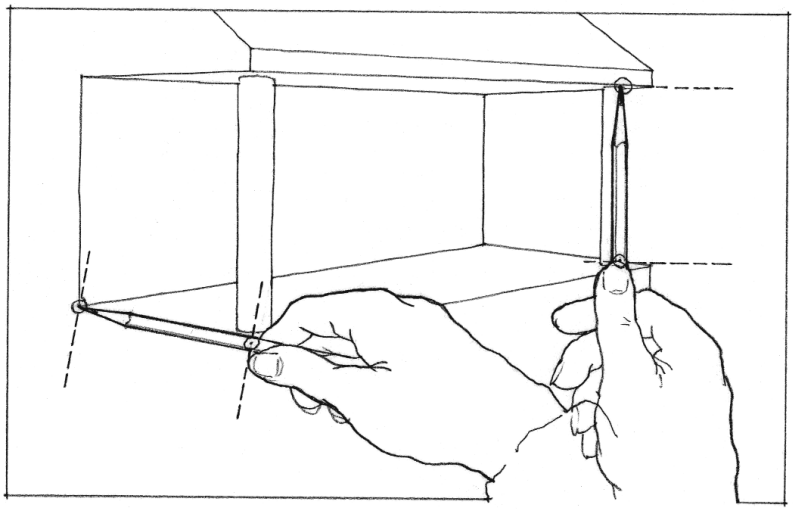
SIGHTING TECHNIQUES

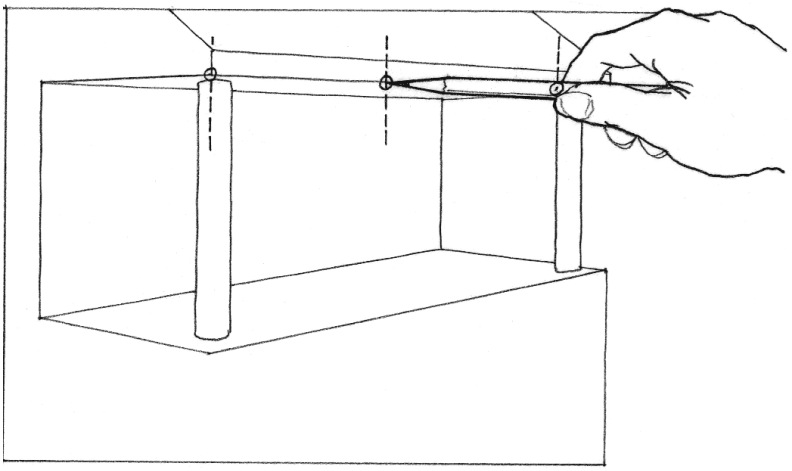


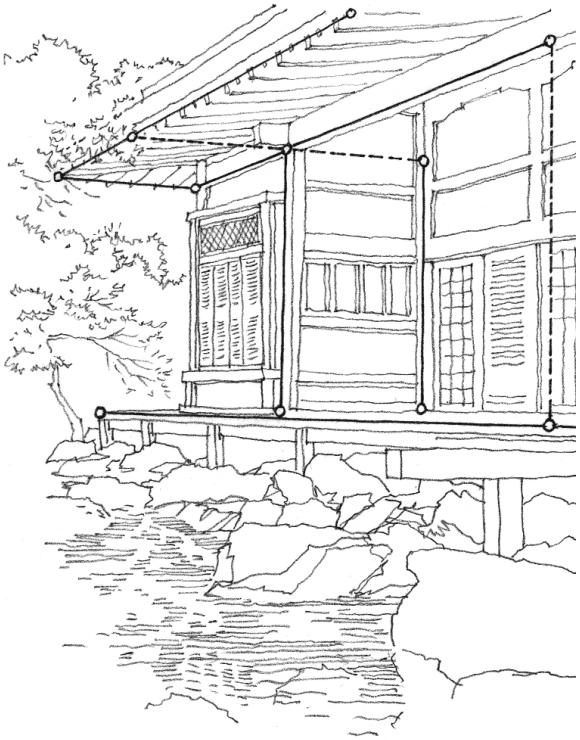
We can use either the viewfinder or the shaft of a pen or pencil to measure and compare the relationships of points, lengths, angles, and alignments in what we see and draw.

Finding the midpoint of the image is a simple matter of using the crosshairs of the viewfinder. Dividing the image into halves helps to place the image on the sheet of paper and sharpens our perception of shapes. To find the midpoint of a shape or group of shapes, we use the shaft of the pen or pencil to first estimate where the center is. Then we check to see if one half equals the other.

To make a linear measurement, we align the pencil's tip with one end of a line we see and use our thumb to mark the other end. We then shift the pencil to another line and, using the measurement as a unit of length, gauge the second line's relative length. We normally use a short line segment to establish the unit of measurement so that other, longer line segments are multiples of that unit.



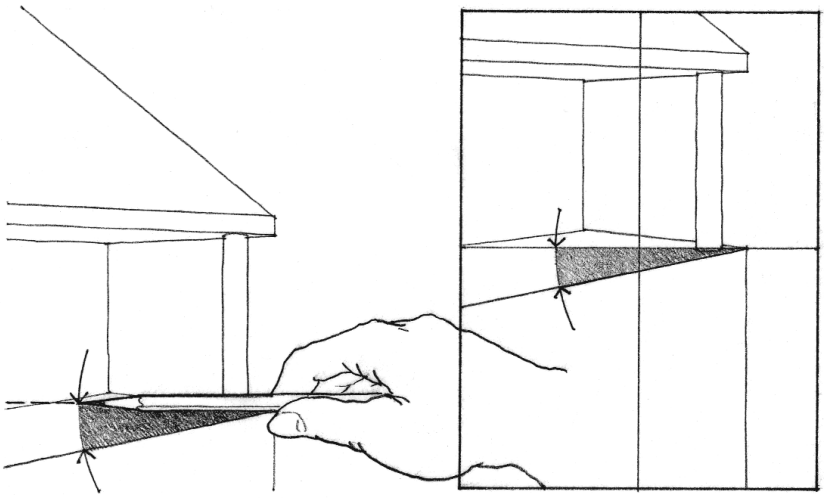


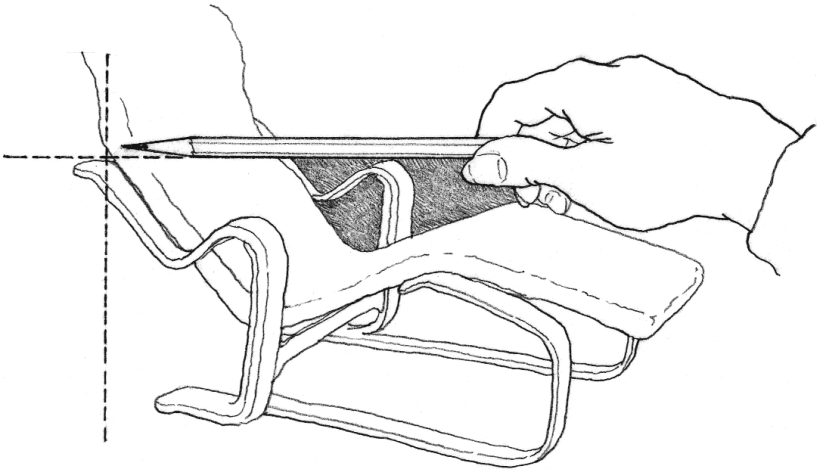


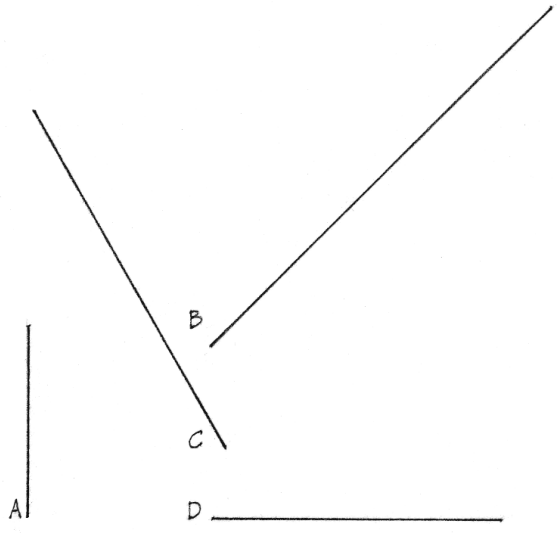
To gauge the apparent slopes or angles of lines, we use vertical and horizontal lines. These reference lines may be the edges or crosshairs of the viewfinder, or the shaft of the pen or pencil held horizontally or vertically at arm's length. We align one end of an angled line with the vertical or horizontal reference line and visually gauge the angle between the two. We then transfer this angular measurement to the drawing, using as guides the edges of the drawing surface that correspond to the horizontal and vertical reference lines.

We can also use the same reference lines to see which points in the image align vertically or horizontally with other points. Checking alignments in this way effectively controls the proportions and relations of both positive and negative shapes.

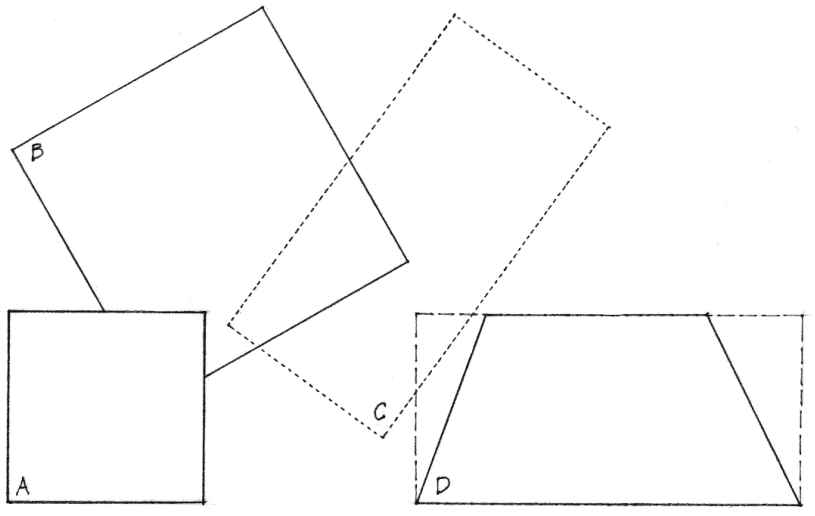
With training and experience, we can learn sighting techniques without an external device, such as a viewfinder or pencil. Instead, we can develop the ability to measure the dimensions of a form and gauge relationships with our eyes alone. To do this, we must be able to hold in our mind's eye a visual measuring stick, based on one aspect of a form. We can then project this image over other parts or aspects of what we are drawing. When making visual judgments, it is important that any preliminary assumptions be checked against what we actually see. When drawing from the imagination or memory, we must be able to evaluate what we have drawn in light of what we want to convey.



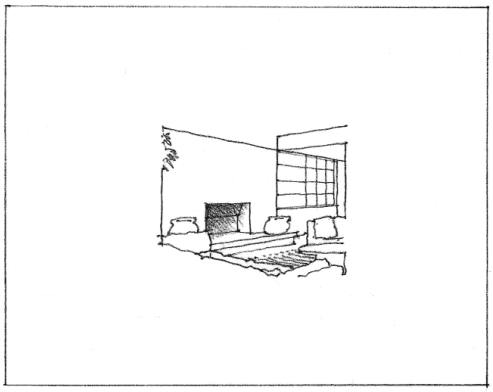




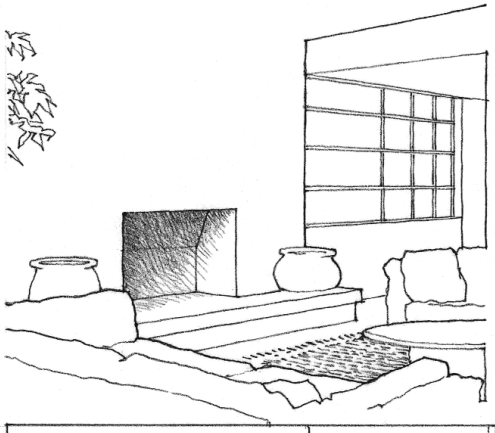
If line A is one unit length, how many units long is line B? Line C? Line D?



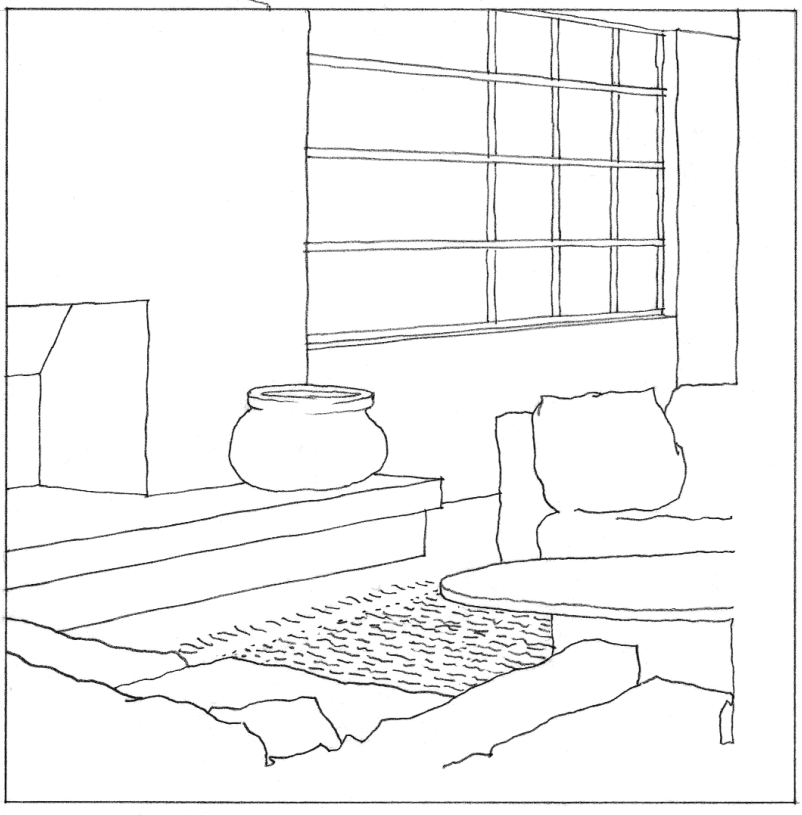
If A is a square, what proportion is rectangle B? Rectangle C? The rectangle that encloses the quadrilateral D?



1



12

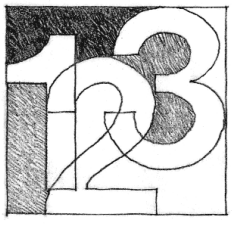


Organizing the composition of a drawing or design is basically the arrangement of shapes. When we begin to draw on a piece of paper, we face decisions as to how large the image will be, where it will be, and what orientation it will have, relative to the size, shape, and edges of the sheet. We also have to determine what is to be included and what is to be omitted from what we see or envision. These decisions affect the way we perceive the resulting figure-ground relationships between positive and negative shapes.

When a figure floats, isolated in a sea of empty space, its presence is emphasized. This type of figure-ground relationship is easy to see. The figure stands out clearly as a positive shape against an empty, diffuse, and shapeless background.

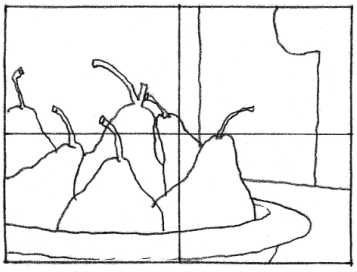
When a figure crowds its background field or overlaps other figures in its field, it begins to organize the surrounding spaces into recognizable shapes. A more interactive and integrated figure-ground relationship develops. Visual movement occurs between positive and negative shapes and the resulting visual tension creates interest.

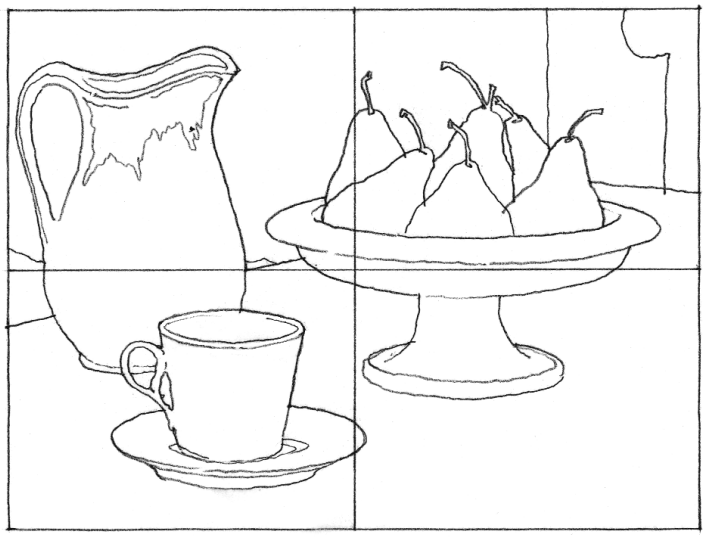
When figures and background both have positive shape qualities or when we render overlapping shapes transparently, then the figure-ground relationship becomes ambiguous. Initially, we may see certain shapes as figures. Then, with a shift in view or understanding, we might see what were formerly background shapes as the positive figures. This ambiguous relationship between positive and negative shapes can be desirable in certain situations and distracting in others, depending on the purpose of a drawing. Any ambiguity in a figure-ground relationship should be intentional, not accidental.



Exercise 1.7

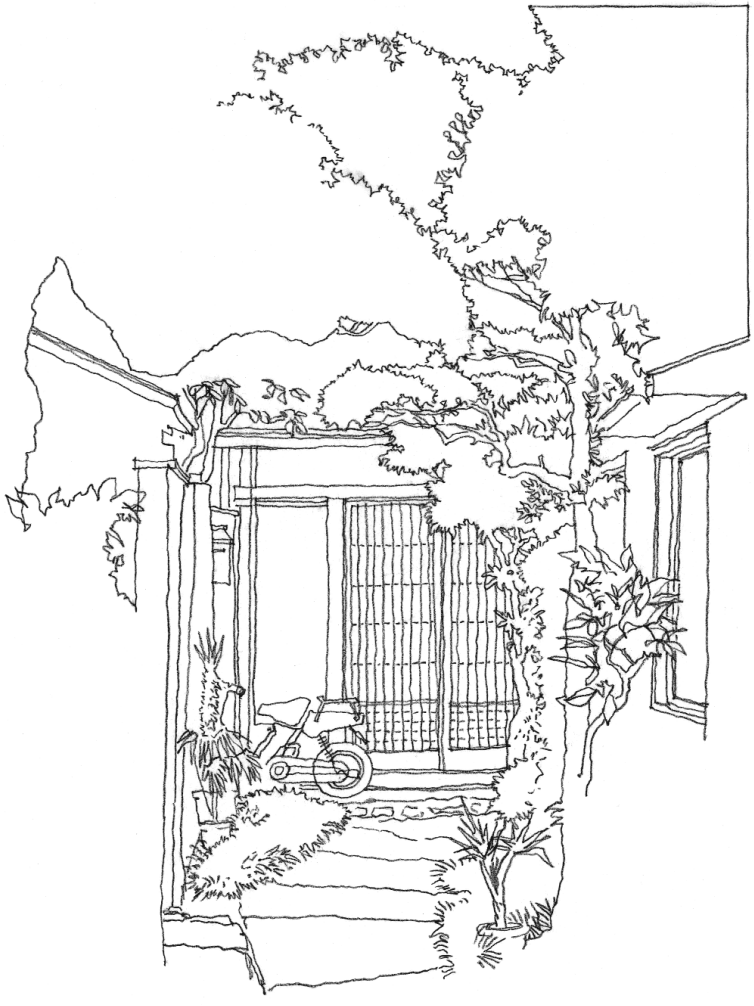
Arrange a still life of objects and use your viewfinder to study alternative compositions. Vary your viewing distance to create an isolated figure against a shapeless background, an interactive figure-ground pattern of shapes, and finally, a composition of ambiguous figure-ground relationships.

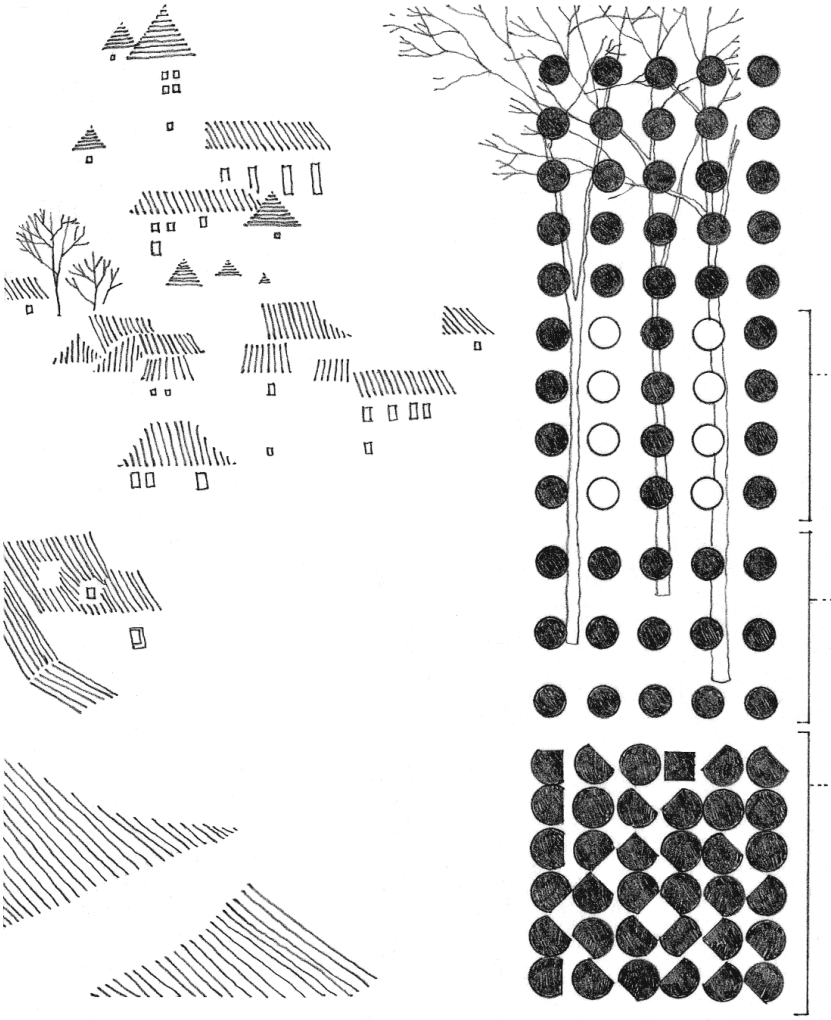




Exercise 1.8

Do similar studies of how you might frame an outdoor scene to create a vignette, an interactive figure-ground pattern of shapes, and finally, a composition of ambiguous figure-ground relationships.





A Search for Pattern

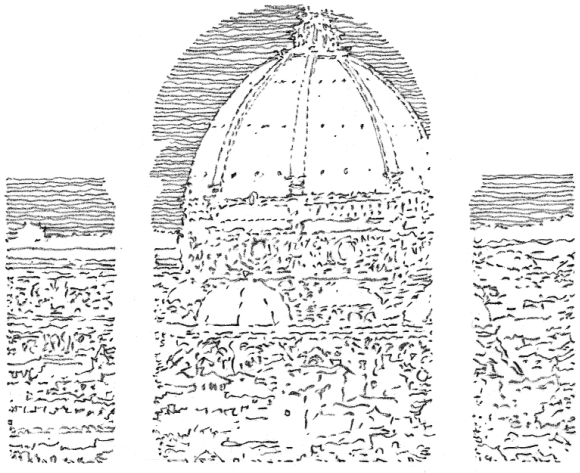
What we see and draw often consists of a complex composition of lines and shapes. There may exist not one but a whole array of interrelated sets of figure-ground patterns. How do we make sense of such a complex visual field? We see not individual shapes, but rather a pattern of relationships. According to the Gestalt theory of perception, we tend to simplify what we see, organizing complex stimuli into simpler, more holistic patterns. This grouping can occur according to certain principles.

- Similarity
  We tend to group things that have some visual characteristic in common, such as a similarity of shape, size, color, detail, alignment, or orientation.

- Proximity
  We tend to group elements that are relatively close together, to the exclusion of those farther away.

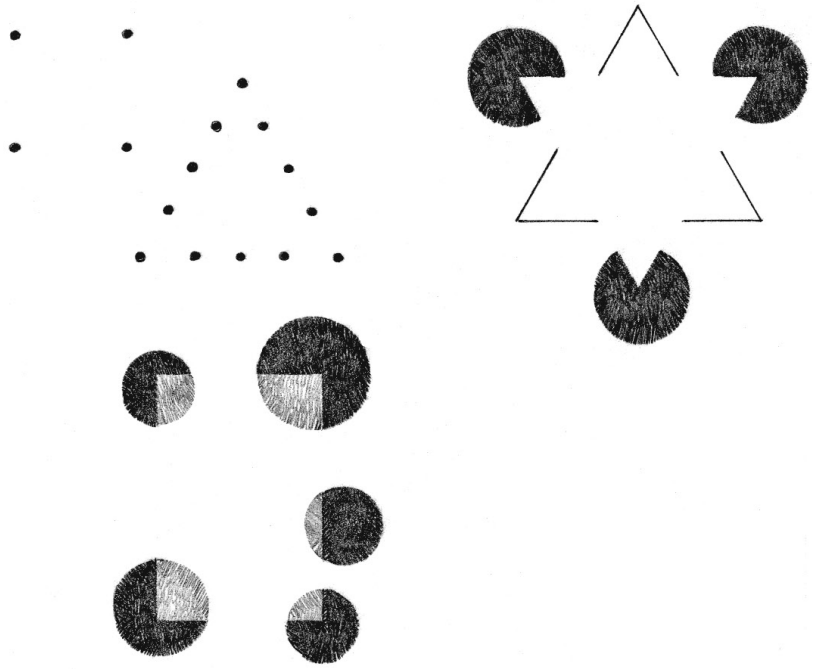
- Continuity
  We tend to group elements that continue along the same line or in the same direction.

These perceptual tendencies lead us to see the relationships between the graphic elements of a composition. If these relationships form a relatively regular pattern of shapes, then they can organize a complex composition into a perceptually simpler and more comprehensible whole. The principle of grouping thus helps promote the coexistence of unity, variety, and visual richness in a drawing.



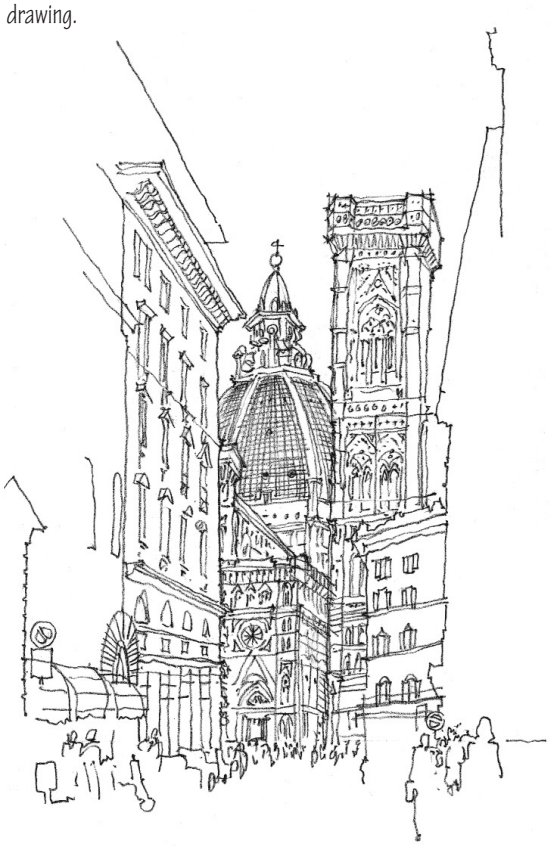
A Search for Stability

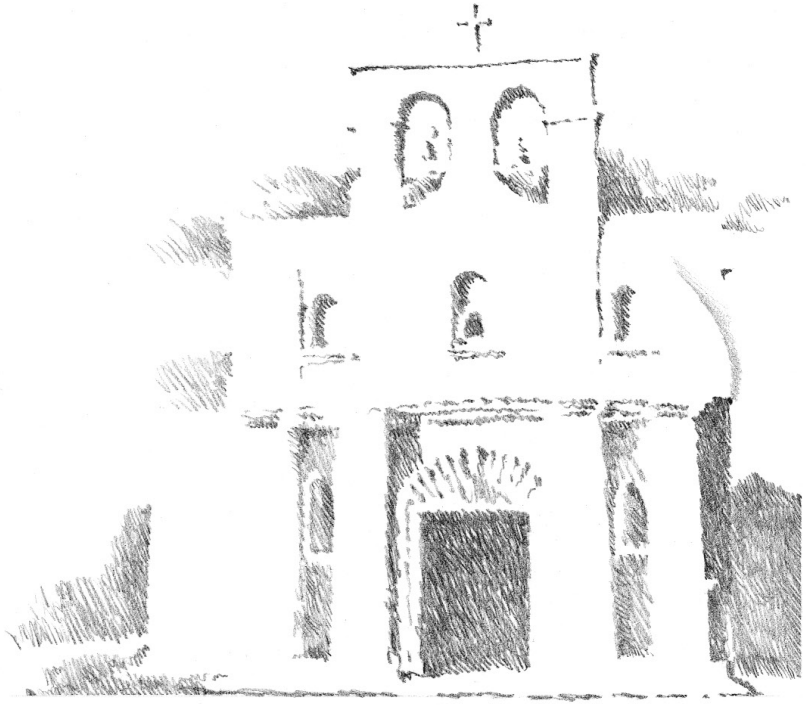
Closure refers to the tendency for an open or discontinuous figure to be seen as if it were a complete and stable shape. Given a pattern of dots, virtual lines connect the points in such a way that a regular, stable shape results. These lines are similar to the ones that complete a regular shape even when part of that shape is hidden. Incomplete figures tend to complete themselves according to simplicity and regularity of form.



There are situations where, even if a line does not in fact exist, the mind's eye creates the line in an attempt to regularize a shape and make it visible. These seen but nonexistent lines are illusory and have no physical basis. We see them in visual areas that are completely homogeneous. They can be either straight or curved. While they appear to define opaque shapes, the figures can also be transparent. In any case, what we tend to perceive are the simplest, most regular structure of lines that can complete the shape we see.

The principle of closure prompts the viewers of a drawing to mentally complete interrupted lines and fill in discontinuous shapes. We can therefore use this property of perception to suggest shapes without actually drawing them. This can lead to a more economical use of line and greater efficiency in drawing.





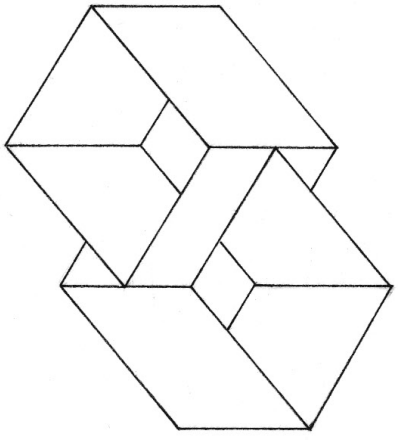
What do you see in this pattern of light and dark shapes?

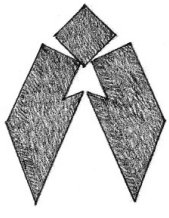
A Search for Meaning

The grouping principles of similarity, proximity, and continuity operate without regard for representational meaning. They aid us in organizing even the most abstract patterns. Because the mind's eye constantly searches for meaning in what we see, we also tend to group shapes into familiar images.

Merely looking at an apparently amorphous shape can sometimes bring to a prepared, interested, and searching mind a more specific image. In its search for meaning, the mind's eye imagines and projects familiar images onto seemingly shapeless patterns until it finds a match that makes sense. It attempts to complete an incomplete pattern, or find a meaningful pattern embedded in a larger one, in accordance with what it already knows or expects to see. Once seen and understood, it is difficult to not see the image.

The manner in which the mind assigns meaning to what it encounters is often unpredictable. We must therefore be continuously aware that others may see something other than what we intend or expect them to see in our drawings.





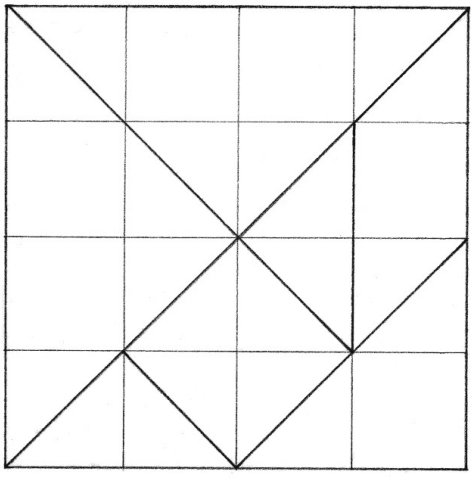
Drawings do not speak for themselves. What possible meanings could this drawing have for the viewer?

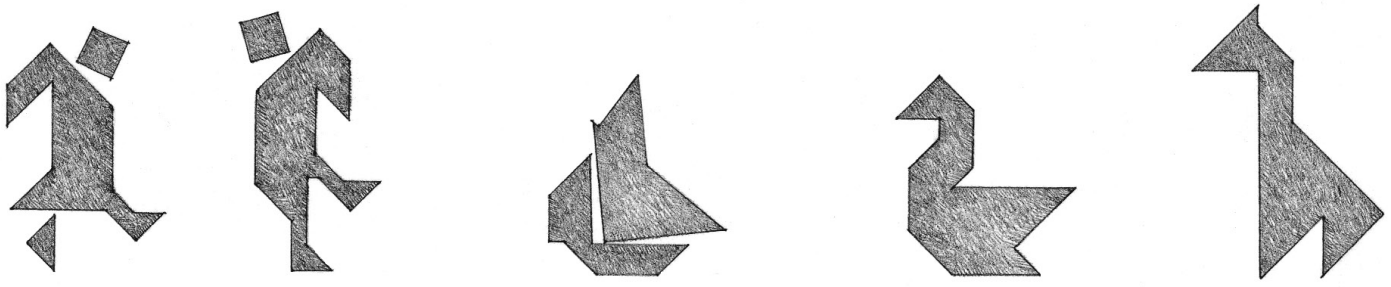
Exercise 1.9

Exercise your mind's tendency to project meaning onto unfamiliar or ambiguous images. How many different things can you see in this inkblot?

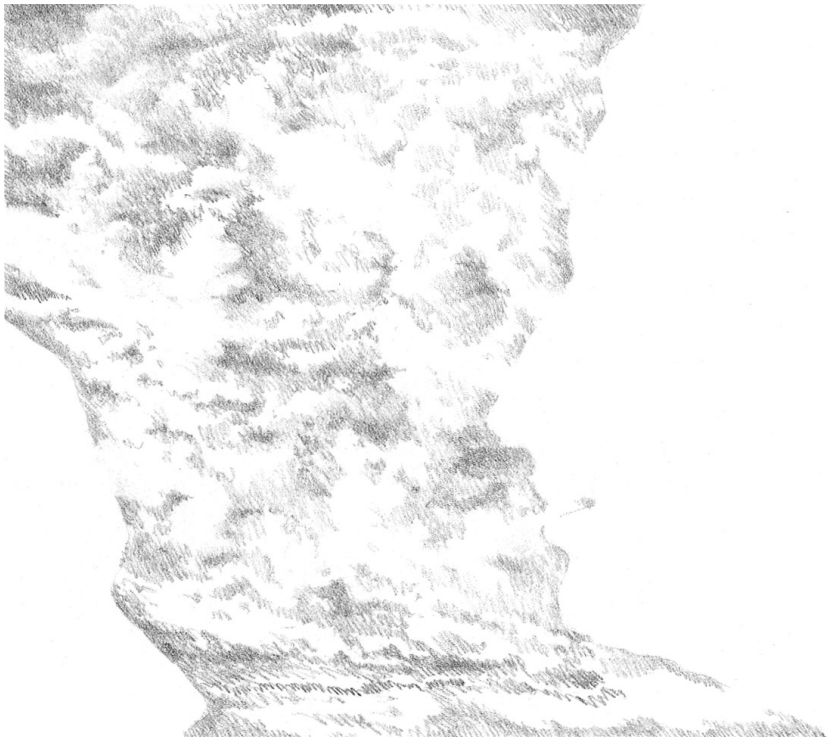
Exercise 1.10

A tangram is a Chinese puzzle consisting of a square cut into five triangles, a square, and a rhomboid, which can be reassembled into a great variety of figures. Make a copy of the tangram and cut apart on the heavy lines. Can you arrange the pieces to form the examples? How many other identifiable patterns can you form?



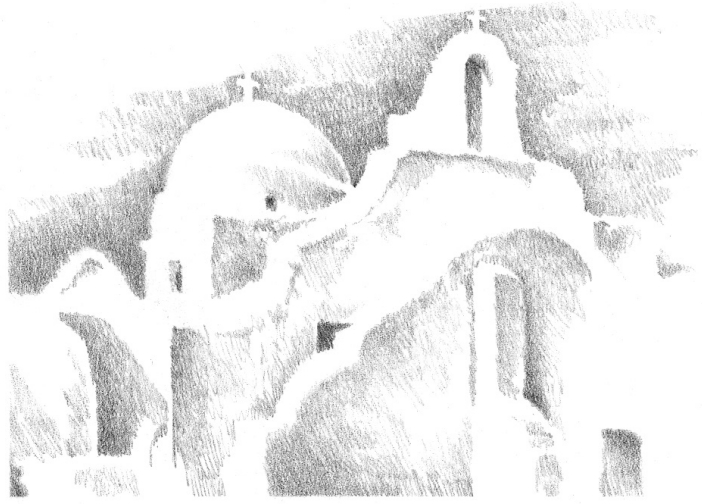


"...when you look at a wall spotted with stains, you may discover a resemblance to various landscapes, beautified with mountains, rivers, rocks, trees.... Or again you may see battles and figures in action, or strange faces and costumes and an endless variety of objects which you could reduce to complete and well-known forms. And these appear on such walls confusedly, like the sound of bells in whose jangle you may find any name or word you choose to imagine."
—Leonardo da Vinci



2
Tone and Texture

While lines are essential to the task of delineating contours and shapes, certain visual qualities of surface and volume cannot be fully described by line alone. Even when we vary the weight of a line to imply a shift in the direction of a surface or an overlapping of forms, the effect is subtle. To accentuate shape and model the surfaces of forms, we rely on the rendering of tonal values. Through the interplay of tonal values we are able to convey a vivid sense of light, mass, and space. And through a combination of lines and tonal values, we create the tactile sensation and appearance we call texture.

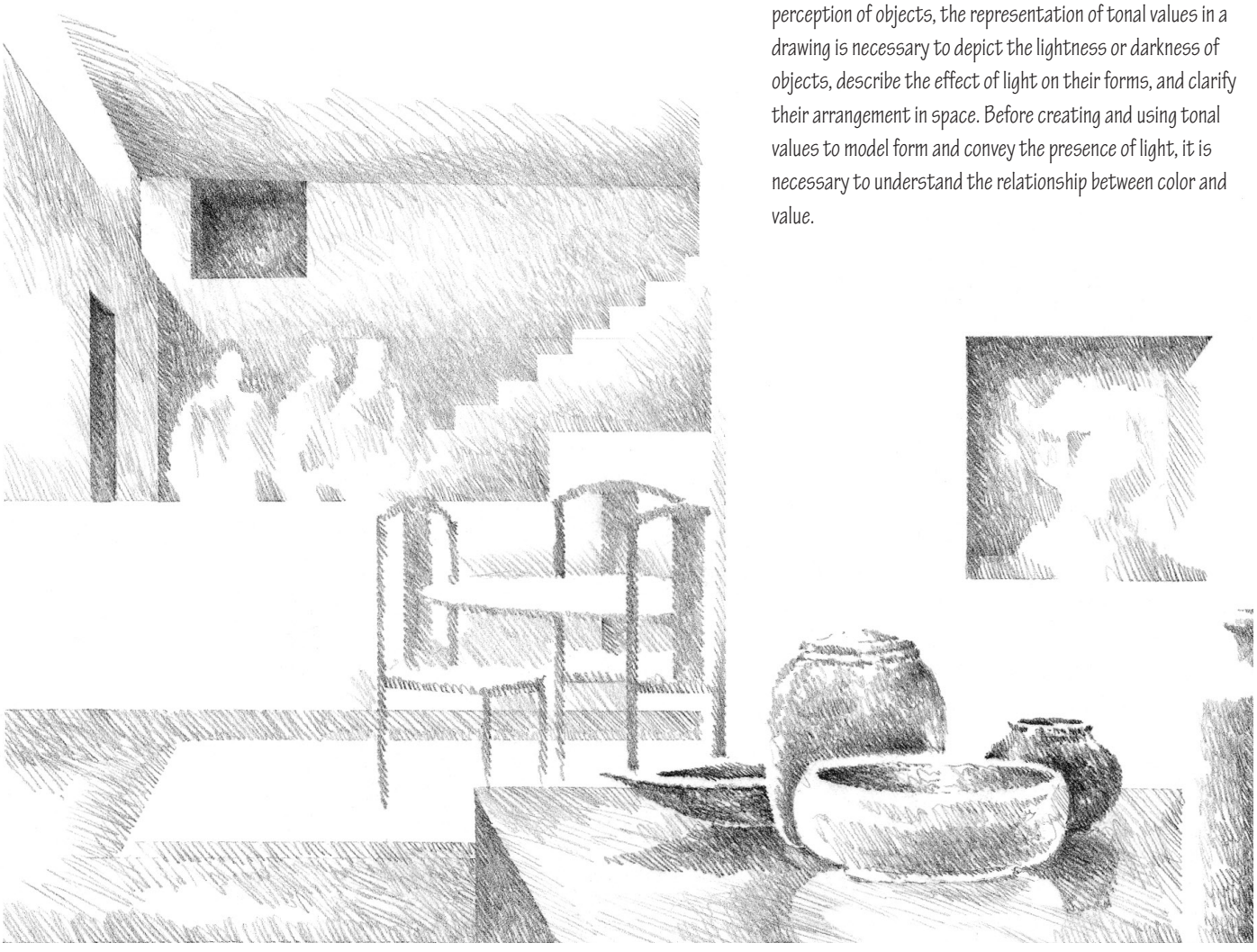


TONAL VALUE

Vision results from the stimulation of nerve cells in the retina of the eye, signaling patterns of light intensity and color. Our visual system processes these patterns of light and dark and extracts specific features of our environment—edges, contours, size, movement, and color. This assessment gives rise to our perception of separate objects in space.

The light and dark patterns we see emanate from the interaction of light with the surfaces of objects around us. The reflection of radiant energy from illuminated surfaces creates areas of light, while comparatively darker areas occur where there is an absence of light, either because surfaces are turned away from a light source or an opaque body intercepts the rays from the light source.

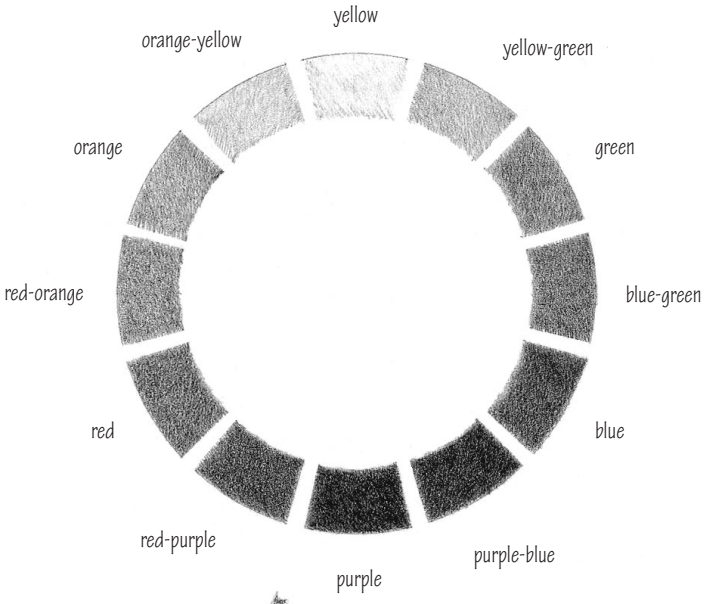
Just as seeing patterns of light and dark is essential to our perception of objects, the representation of tonal values in a drawing is necessary to depict the lightness or darkness of objects, describe the effect of light on their forms, and clarify their arrangement in space. Before creating and using tonal values to model form and convey the presence of light, it is necessary to understand the relationship between color and value.

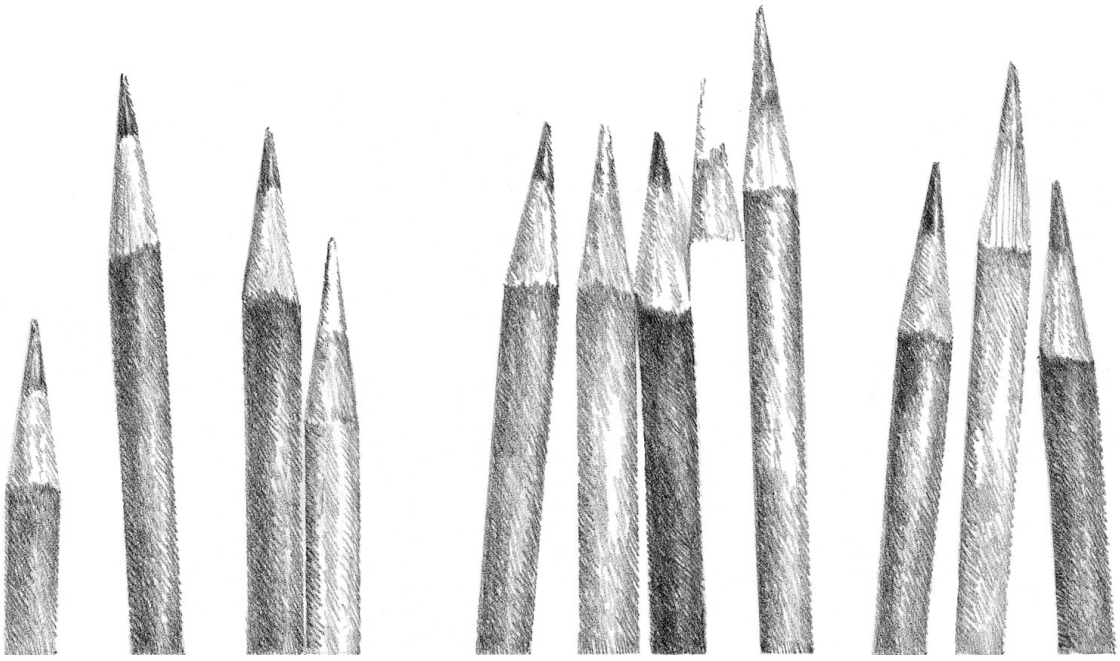


Color is a phenomenon of light and visual perception that may be described in terms of an individual's perception of hue, saturation, and lightness for objects, and hue, intensity, and brightness for light sources. We refer to the relative lightness or brightness of a color as value. Of the properties of color, value is the most critical in seeing and drawing.

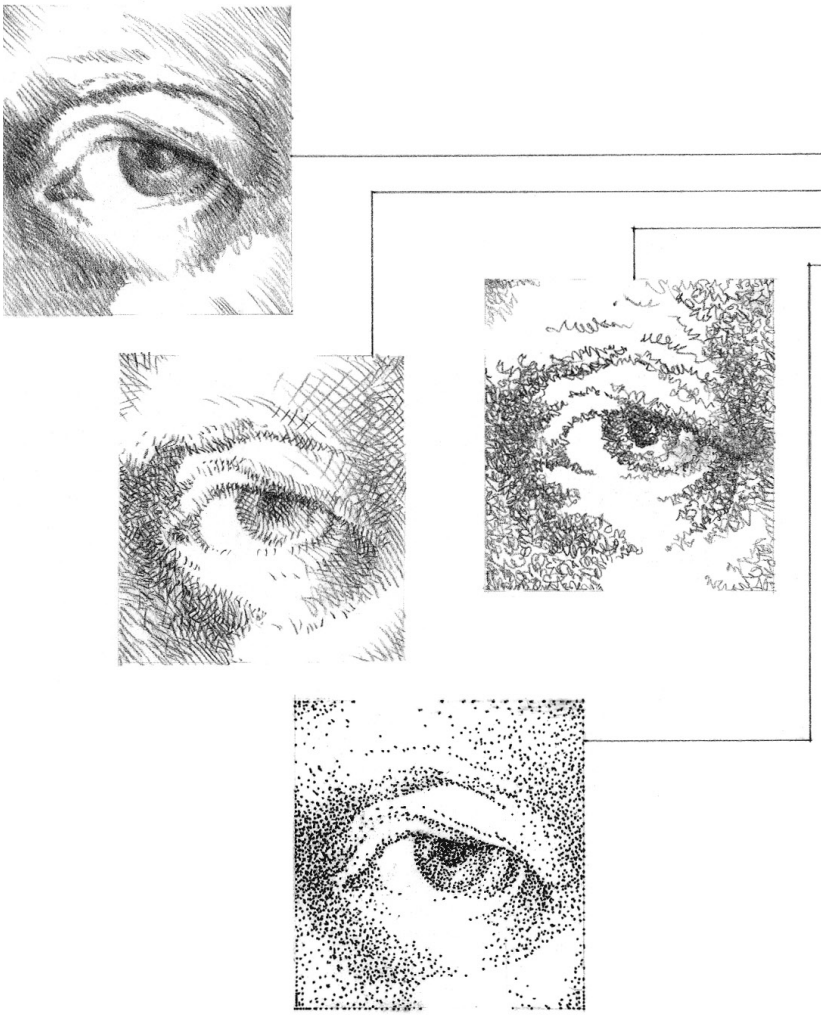
- Some hues reflect more light than others, which is why we perceive them as being lighter or paler than others.
- Shades of the same hue vary in tonal value. For example, sky blue and indigo blue are the same hue, but the former is inherently lighter in value than the latter.
- The way light illuminates a color and makes it visible affects its apparent value. A highlight on a colored surface will appear much lighter than the same hue seen in shade or within a shadow.
- Surrounding hues or values alter our perception of a color or value.

Every color has a tonal value, but it is often difficult to discern. If we squint at an object or scene, however, our perception of hues diminishes and patterns of light and dark values begin to emerge. Seeing color values in this way and being able to translate them into equivalent tonal values are essential tasks in drawing with the traditional media of pencil and pen.





CREATING VALUES

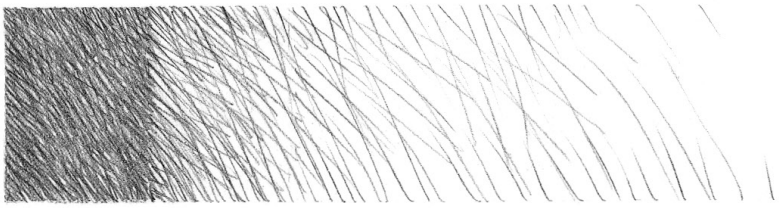


Using the traditional media of pencil and pen-and-ink to make dark marks on a light surface, there are several basic techniques for creating tonal values.

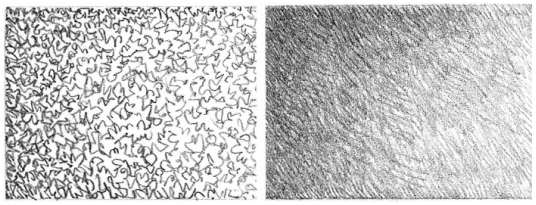
- Hatching
- Crosshatching
- Scribbling
- Stippling

These shading techniques all require a gradual building up or layering of strokes or dots. The visual effect of each technique varies according to the nature of the stroke, the medium, and the texture of the drawing surface. Regardless of the shading technique we use, we must be fully aware of the tonal value being achieved.

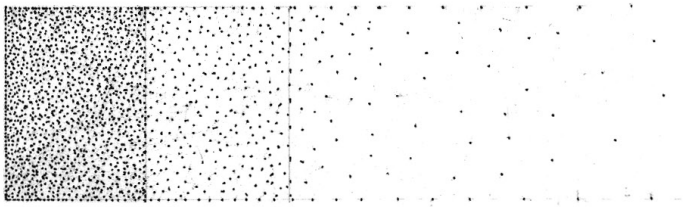
Since tonal value is expressed primarily through the relative proportion of light to dark areas on the drawing surface, the most important characteristic of these techniques is the spacing and density of the strokes or dots. Secondary characteristics include the visual texture, grain, and direction of the strokes. When rendering the darkest values, we should be careful not to lose the white of the paper. Totally obscuring the presence of the paper surface with an opaque technique can cause a drawing to lose depth and vitality.



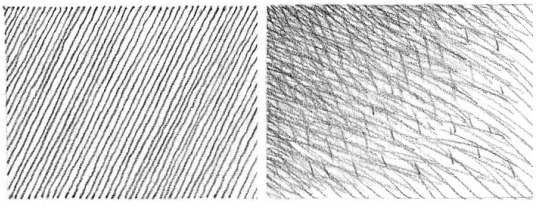
Spacing



Texture



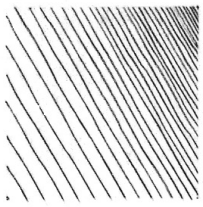
Density

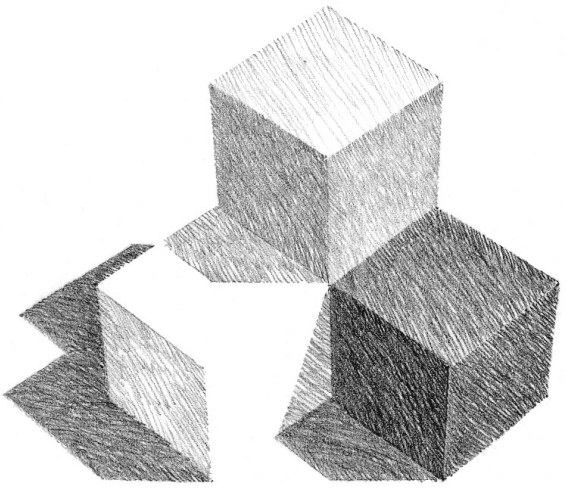


Direction

Hatching

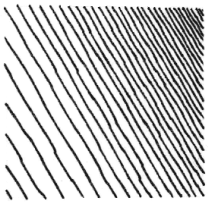
Hatching consists of a series of more or less parallel lines. The strokes may be long or short, mechanically ruled or drawn freehand, and executed with either a pen or a pencil on smooth or rough paper. When spaced closely, the lines lose their individuality and merge to form a tonal value. Therefore, we rely primarily on the spacing and density of lines to control the lightness or darkness of a value. While thickening the linear strokes can deepen the darkest values, using too thick of a line can result in an unintentional coarseness and heaviness of texture.



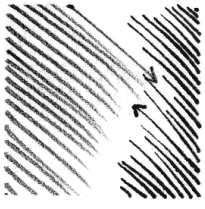


To produce a range of values with a pencil, we can vary the grade of lead as well as the pressure with which we draw. Be careful not to use too dense a grade of lead or press so hard that the pencil point embosses the drawing surface.

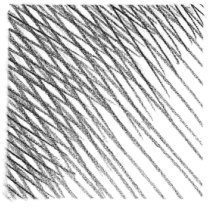
Unlike a pencil line, the tonal value of an ink line remains constant. We can only control the spacing and density of the hatching. When using a pen with a flexible nib, however, we can alter the pressure to subtly alter the thickness of the stroke.



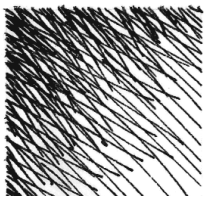
The most flexible freehand technique for hatching uses relatively short, rapid, diagonal strokes. To define a precise edge, fix the beginning of each stroke with slight pressure. Feather the ends of the strokes to depict curved surfaces, a texture gradient, or subtleties of light and shade. When extending a tonal value over a large area, avoid the effect of banding by softening the edges and overlapping each set of strokes in a random manner.

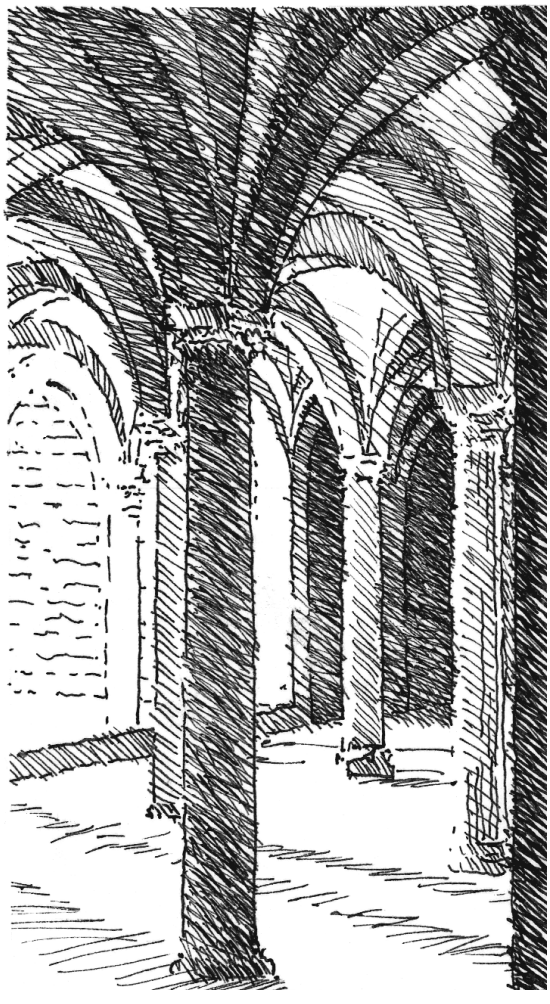


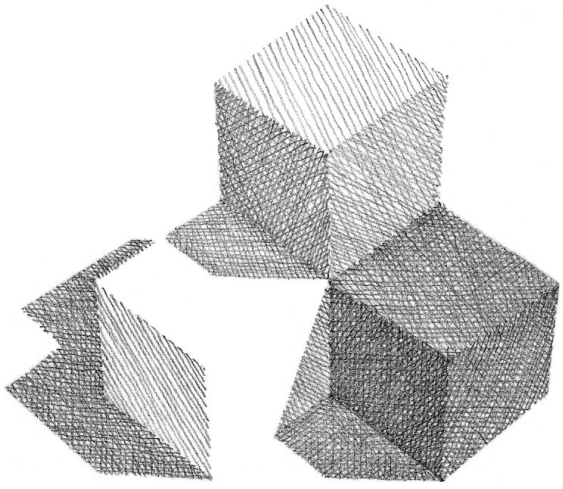
By applying additional layers of diagonal strokes at only slightly different angles to the preceding sets, we can build up the density and therefore the tonal value of an area. Maintaining the diagonal direction of the strokes in this manner avoids confusion with the underlying drawing and unifies the various tonal areas of a drawing composition.

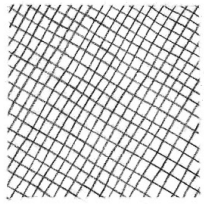


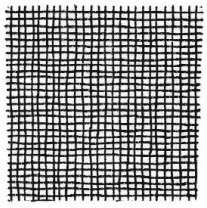
The direction of hatching can also follow the contours of a form and emphasize the orientation of its surfaces. Remember, however, that direction alone has no impact on tonal value. With texture and contour, the series of lines can also convey material characteristics, such as the grain of wood, the marbling of stone, or the weave of fabric.

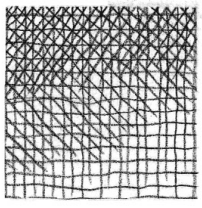












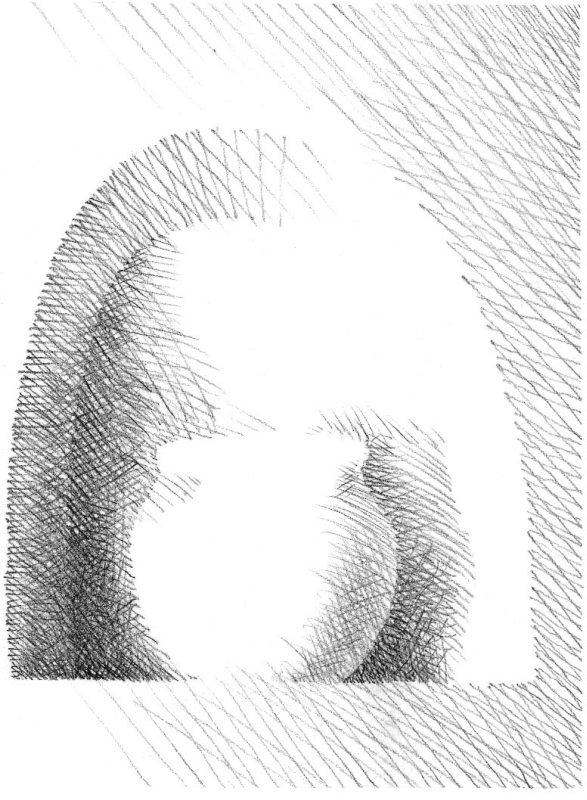
Crosshatching

Crosshatching uses two or more series of parallel lines to create tonal values. As with hatching, the strokes may be be long or short, mechanically ruled or drawn freehand, and executed with either a pen or a pencil on smooth or rough paper.

The simplest crosshatching consists of two perpendicular sets of parallel lines. While the resulting weave may be appropriate for describing certain textures and materials, the pattern can also produce a stiff, sterile, and mechanical feeling, especially when the lines are ruled and widely spaced.

Using three or more sets or layers of hatching provides more flexibility in generating a greater range of tonal values and surface textures. The multidirectional nature of the hatching also makes it easier to describe the orientation and curvature of surfaces.

In practice, we often combine hatching and crosshatching into a single technique. While simple hatching creates the lighter range of values in a drawing, crosshatching renders the darker range.

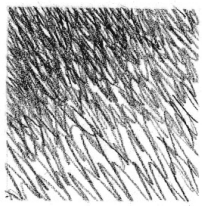


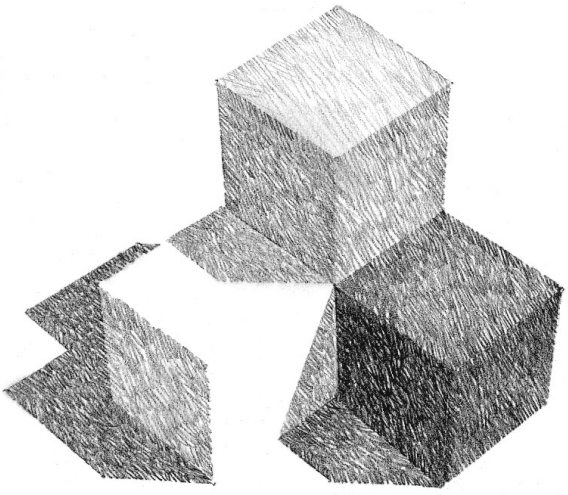
Scribbling

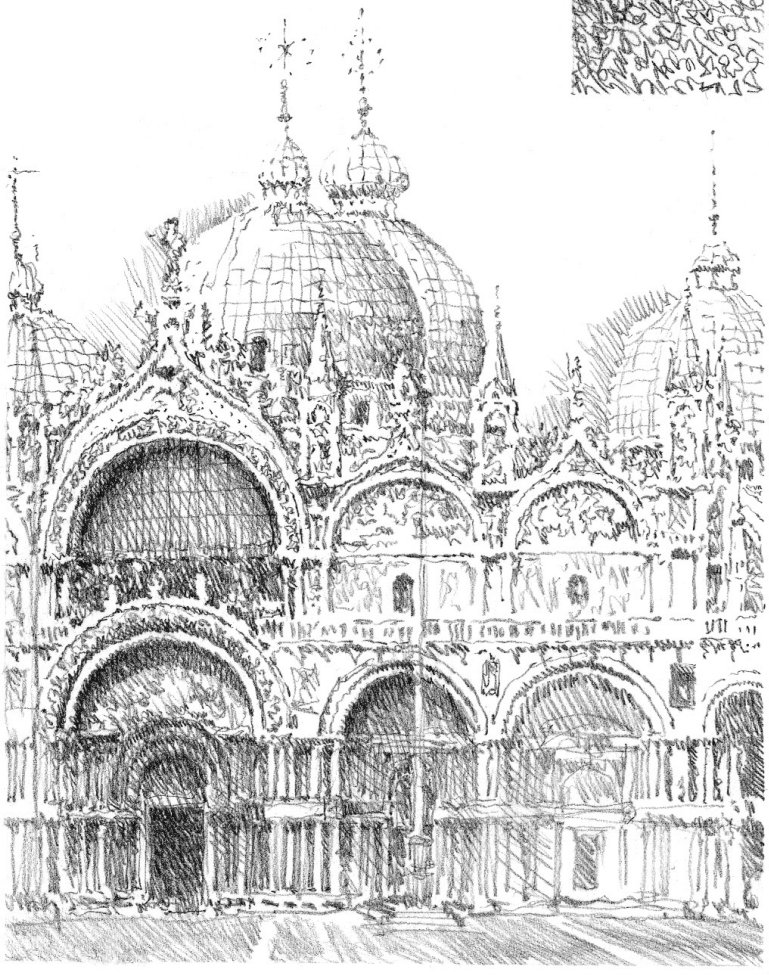
Scribbling is a shading technique that involves drawing a network of random, multidirectional lines. The freehand nature of scribbling gives us great flexibility in describing tonal values and textures. We can vary the shape, density, and direction of the strokes to achieve a wide range of tonal values, textures, and visual expression.

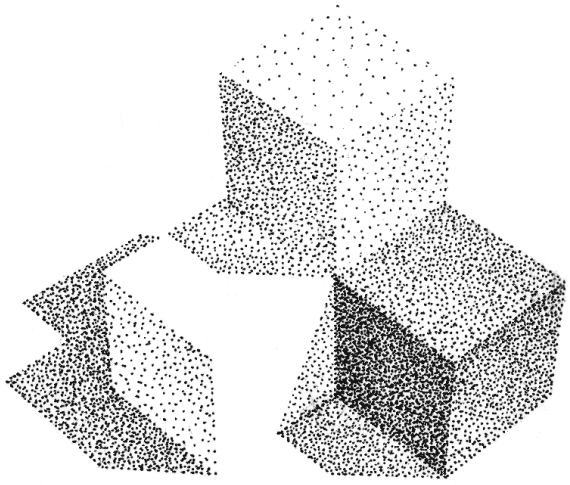
The strokes may be broken or continuous, relatively straight or curvilinear, jagged or softly undulating. By interweaving the strokes, we create a more cohesive structure of tonal value. By maintaining a dominant direction, we produce a grain that unifies the various areas and shades of value.

As with hatching, we must pay attention to both the scale and density of the strokes and be aware of the qualities of surface texture, pattern, and material they convey.









Stippling

Stippling is a technique for shading by means of very fine dots. The best results occur when using a fine-tipped ink pen on a smooth drawing surface.

Applying stippling is a slow and time-consuming procedure that requires the utmost patience and care in controlling the size and spacing of the dots. Rely on density to control tonal value. Resist the temptation to deepen a value by enlarging the dots. If the scale of the dots is too large for the toned area, too coarse a texture will result.

We use stippling to establish tonal values in pure-tone drawings—drawings that rely on value alone to define edges and contours. We apply stippling over faintly drawn shapes of the areas to be toned. We first cover all shaded areas with an even spacing of dots to create the lightest value. Then we establish the next value step with additional stippling. We continue to add stippling in a methodical manner until the darkest tonal values are established.

Since there are no objective lines to describe contour and shape in a pure-tone drawing, we must rely on a series of dots to profile spatial edges and define the contours of forms. We use tightly spaced dots to define sharp, distinct edges, and a looser spacing of dots to imply softer, more rounded contours.

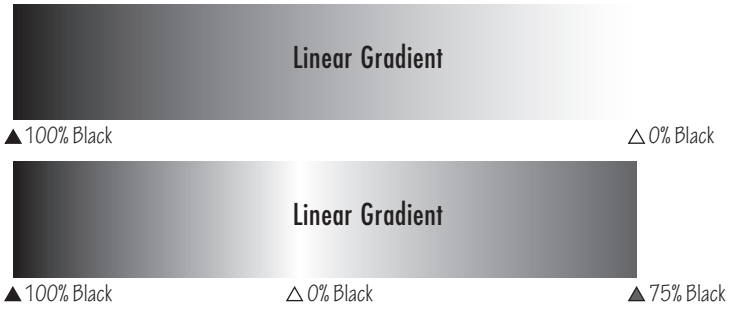
Digital Fills

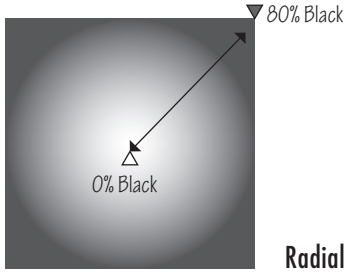
In addition to manual techniques for creating tones with a pen or pencil, there are digital tools for filling the area of a shape or object with color and value. There are two primary types of digital fills: solid and gradient. Solid fills apply a consistent color or value to a shape, while gradient fills create a transition from one color or value to another color or value across a shape.

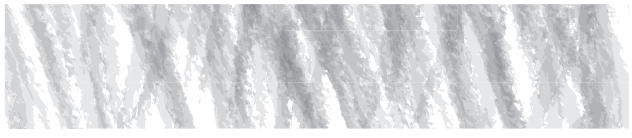
Gradients can be either linear or radial in nature. By adjusting the location and values of the beginning and ending points of a gradient, we can fine-tune the three-dimensional effect of the fill.

In a manner similar to manual hatching techniques, digital strokes can be used to build up tonal values and texture. The type of brush, pencil, or pen stroke selected, as well as the line width and opacity of the stroke, determine the density and texture of the value created.

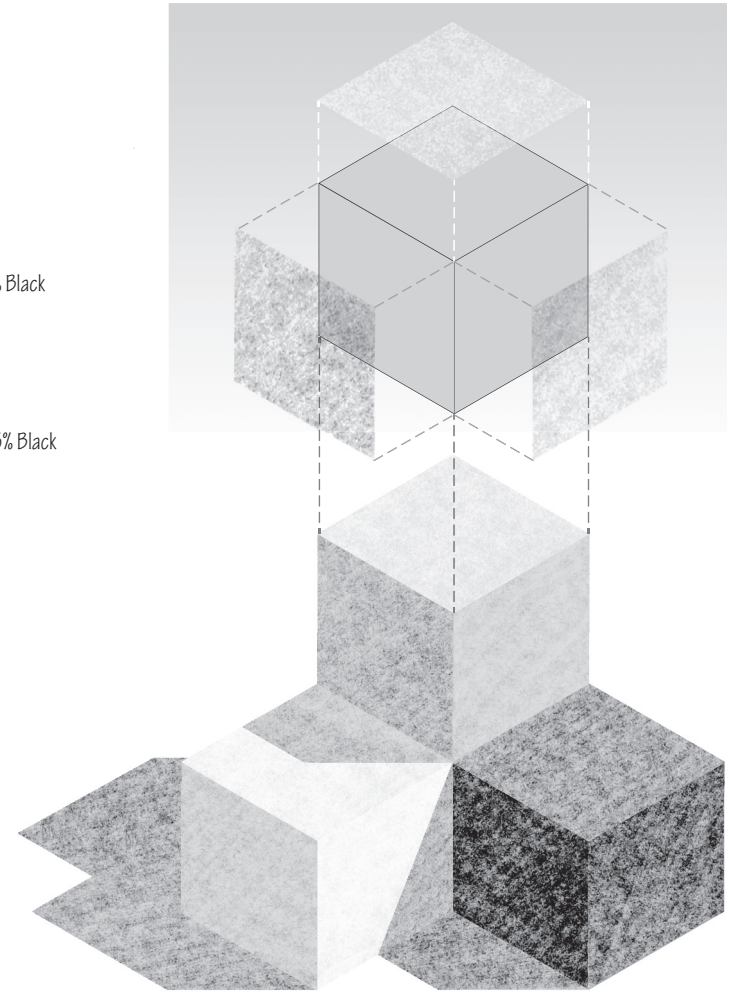
Once placed, the fill of a shape or object can be lightened or darkened by adjusting the transparency of the fill, adding transparent layers of white or dark values, or by using digital dodge and burn techniques in a raster-based image.





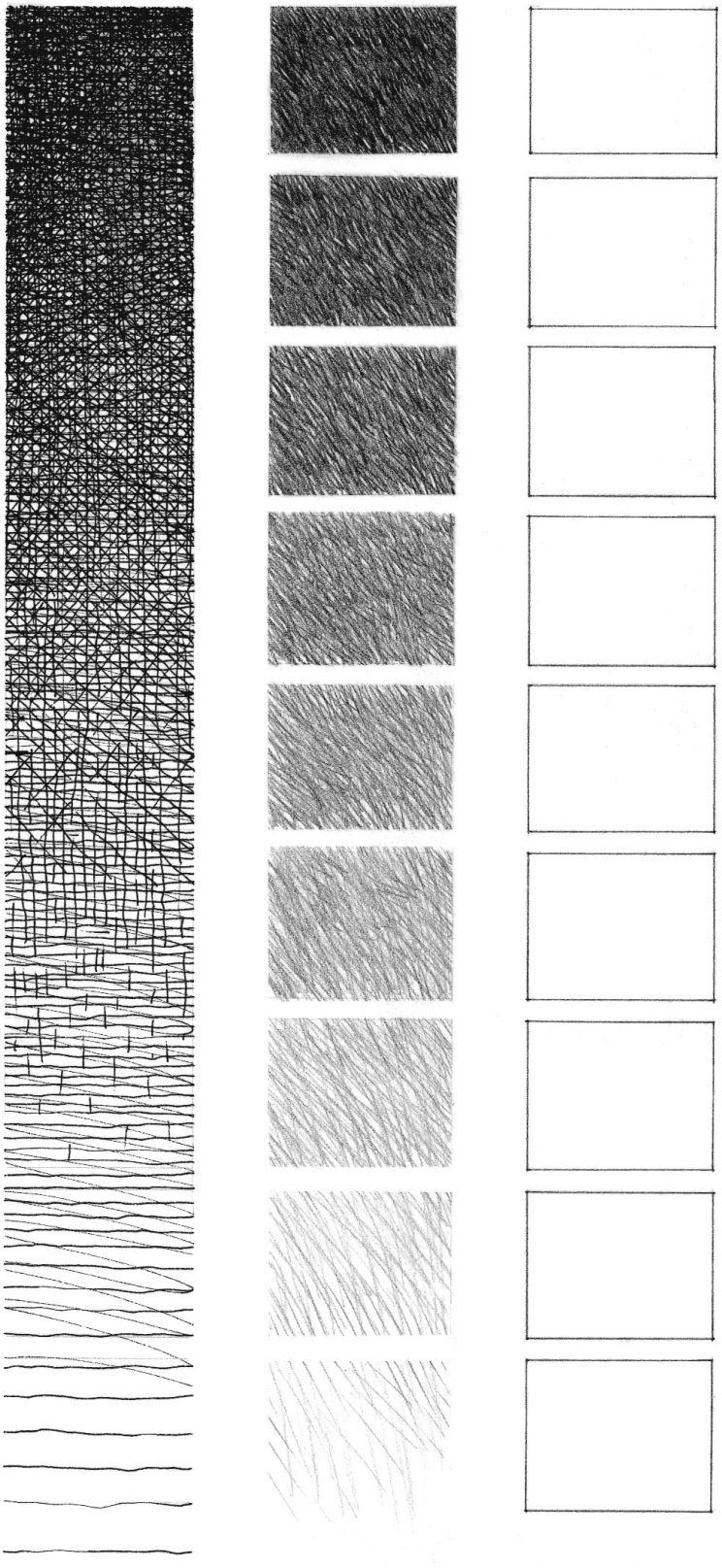


Digital strokes masked to create a boundary.



Dodged and burned faces using a textured brush.

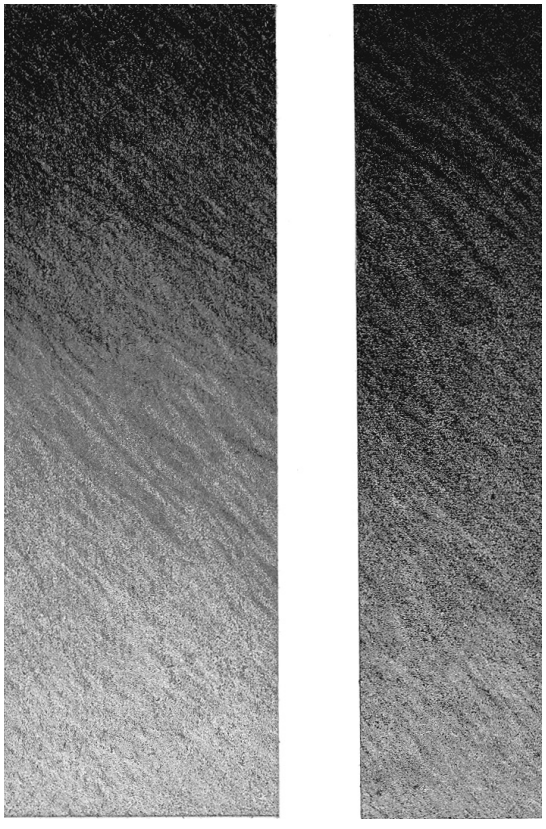
VALUE SCALE



White represents the lightest possible value and black the darkest. In between exists an intermediate range of grays. A familiar form of this range is represented by a value or gray scale having ten equal gradations from white to black.

As we begin to see value relationships, we must develop the ability to create corresponding tones using a variety of media and techniques. To this end, producing both a stepped series and a graduated scale of tonal values is beneficial and rewarding. Explore all of the shading techniques described on the preceding pages. Also investigate the possibility of executing a gray scale on a tinted or colored surface, using a black pencil to define values darker than the tone of the surface and a white pencil to establish the lighter values.

After each attempt, carefully evaluate the tonal order from a distance. Check to see if there are any breaks in value and if an even progression of values exists from white to black. With disciplined practice, we should be able to develop the control necessary to replicate any desired tone and maintain the required value contrasts in a drawing.

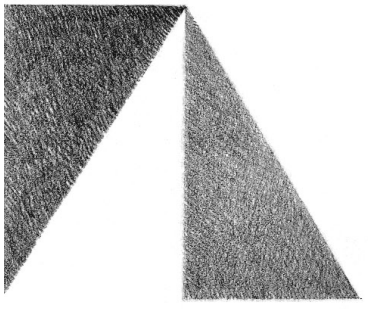


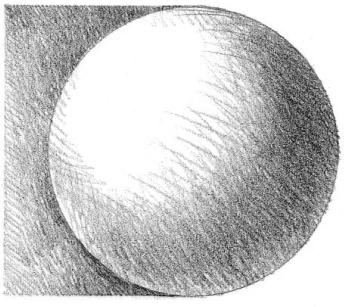
Modeling refers to the technique of rendering the illusion of volume, solidity, and depth on a two-dimensional surface by means of shading. Shading with tonal values extends a simple drawing of contours into the three-dimensional realm of forms arranged in space.

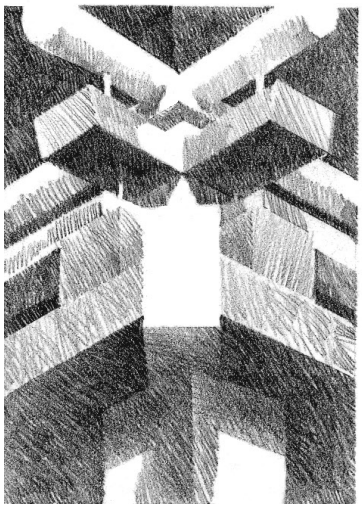
The modeling of values from light to dark can describe the nature of a surface—whether it is flat or curved, smooth or rough. Areas of light can emerge from a dark background like mounds rising from the earth, while dark areas can appear to recede into the depth of the drawing surface. Gradual transitions from light to dark occur along the surfaces of cylinders, cones, and organic forms, whereas abrupt changes in value pronounce the angular meeting of planes in cubes, pyramids, and other prismatic forms.

Since defining edges helps us recognize shape, we look to edges to discover the configuration of the surfaces of a three-dimensional form. We must be careful how we define the nature of the edge or boundary where two shapes of contrasting values meet. The skillful manipulation of tonal edges is critical to defining the nature and solidity of a surface or object.

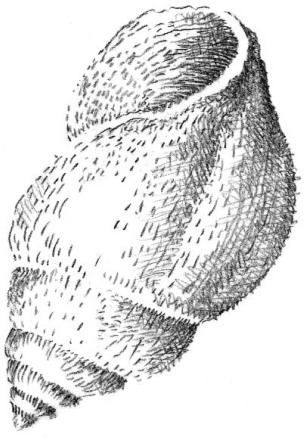
Hard edges delineate sharp breaks in form or describe contours that are separated from the background by some intervening space. We define hard edges with an abrupt and incisive shift in tonal value. Soft edges describe indistinct or vague background shapes, the gently curving surfaces of rounded forms, and areas of low contrast. We create soft edges with a gradual change in tonal value or diffuse tonal contrast.



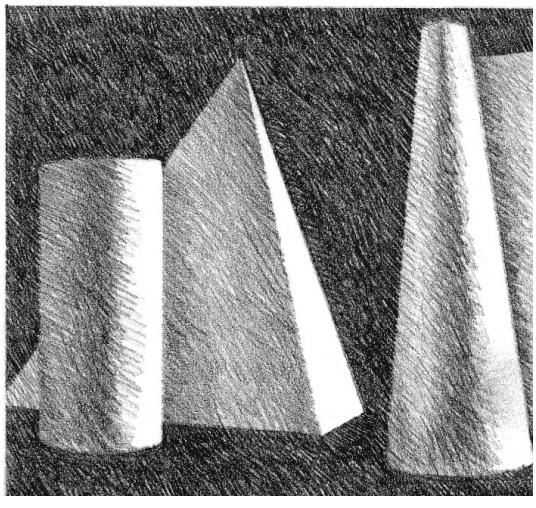




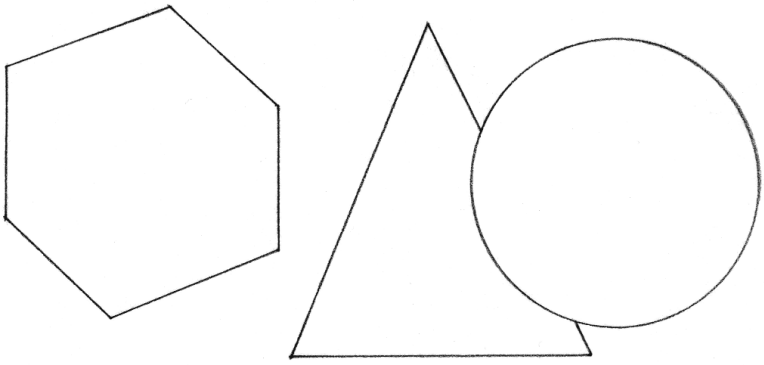
Hard edges



Soft edges



Hard and soft edges

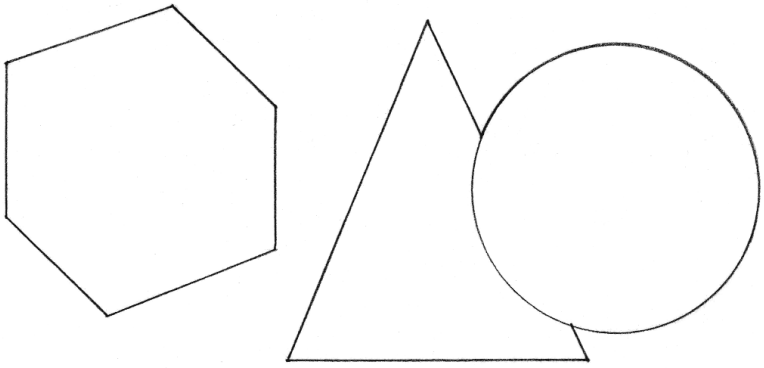


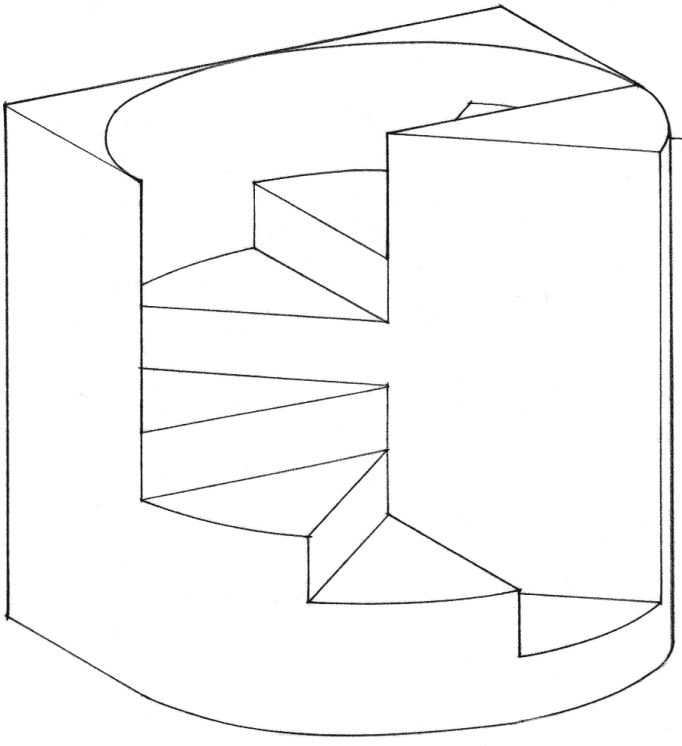
Exercise 2.1

Use a soft pencil to create a range of tonal values that converts the two-dimensional circle, triangle, and polygon into a three-dimensional sphere, cone, and cube. Experiment with hatching, crosshatching, and scribbling techniques to create the desired range of tonal values.

Exercise 2.2

Repeat the above exercise but this time use a fine-tipped black pen and experiment with hatching, crosshatching, and stippling techniques to create the desired range of tonal values.



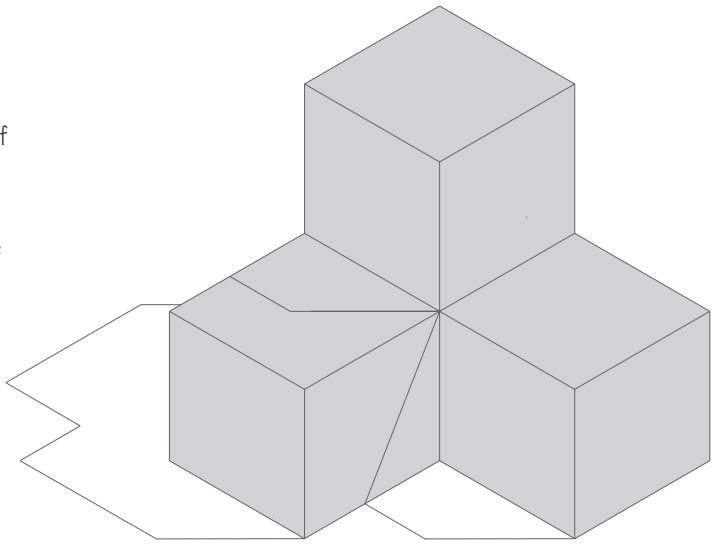


Exercise 2.3

Use a soft pencil to create a range of tonal values that clarifies the three-dimensional form of this object. Experiment with hatching, crosshatching, and scribbling techniques to create the desired range of tonal values. Repeat this exercise using a fine-tipped black pen and experiment with hatching, cross-hatching, and stippling techniques to create the tonal values.

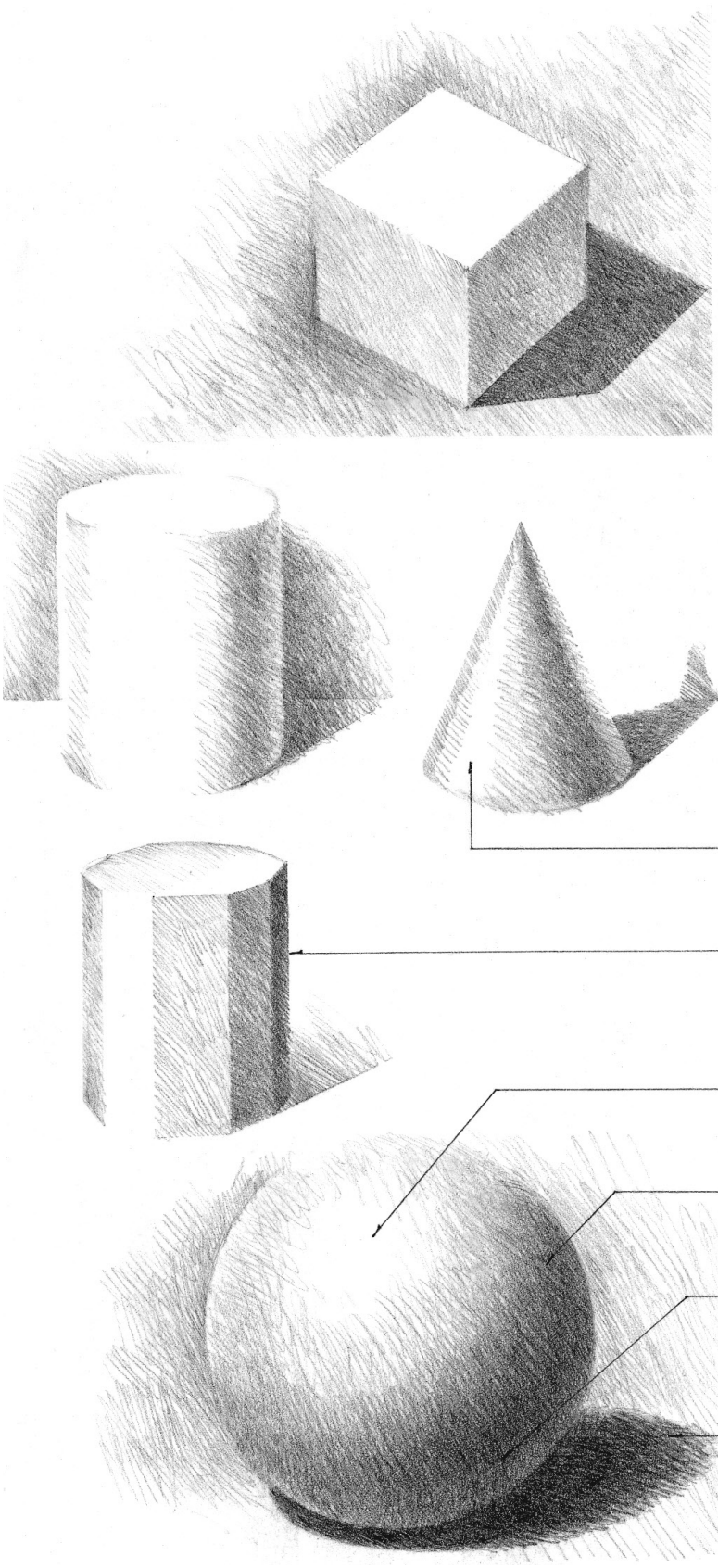
Exercise 2.4

Scan or reproduce the three-cube drawing and experiment using a range of digital fills and gradients to differentiate the various faces of each cube and distinguish between the areas of shade and shadow. Adjust the transparency of the fills or use dodge and burn techniques to lighten and darken the areas of each shape. If necessary, use selections or masks to define the edges of each shape.



Exercise 2.5

Scan the perspective view and repeat the above exercise, this time to depict the variable qualities of daylighting and shadows that might occur in the space.



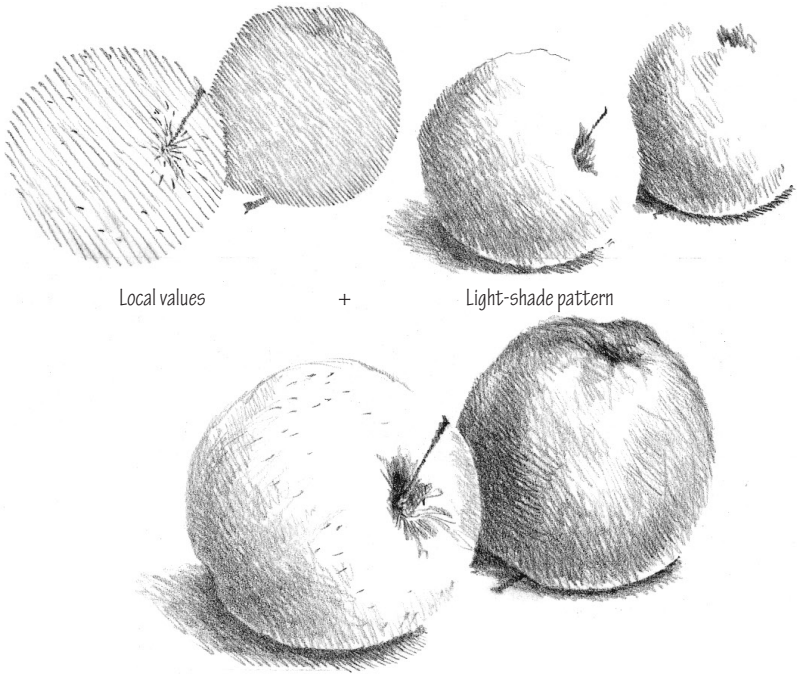
While tonal values can imply depth on a flat drawing surface, we turn to light to more vividly describe the three-dimensional qualities of forms and spaces in our environment. Light is the radiant energy that illuminates our world and enables us to see three-dimensional forms in space. We do not actually see light but rather the effects of light. The way light falls on and is reflected from a surface creates areas of light, shade, and shadow, giving us perceptual clues about its three-dimensional qualities. Tonal value is the graphic equivalent of shade and shadow and can only indicate light by describing its absence. In rendering the resulting patterns of light and dark shapes, we invest a form with mass and volume and create a sense of spatial depth.

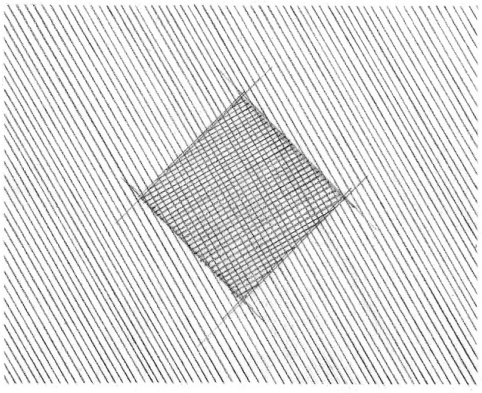
Almost everything we see comprises a combination of one or more relatively simple geometric forms—the cube, the pyramid, the sphere, the cone, and the cylinder. If we understand that light illuminates each of these fundamental solids in a logical and consistent way, we can better render the effects of light on more complicated subjects. When light strikes an object, it creates a light side, a shaded side, and a cast shadow. Within this light-dark pattern, we can recognize the following elements:

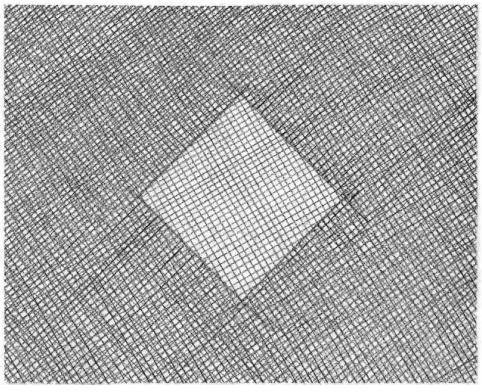
- Light values occur on any surface turned toward a light source.
- Tonal values shift as a surface turns away from a light source, with intermediate values occurring on surfaces tangent to the direction of the light rays.
- Highlights appear as luminous spots on smooth surfaces that directly face or mirror a light source.
- Shade refers to the comparatively dark values of surfaces turned away from a light source.
- Areas of reflected light—light cast back from a nearby surface—lighten the tonal value of a portion of a shaded surface or a shadow.
- Shadows are the comparatively dark values cast by an object or part of an object upon a surface that would otherwise be illuminated by a light source.

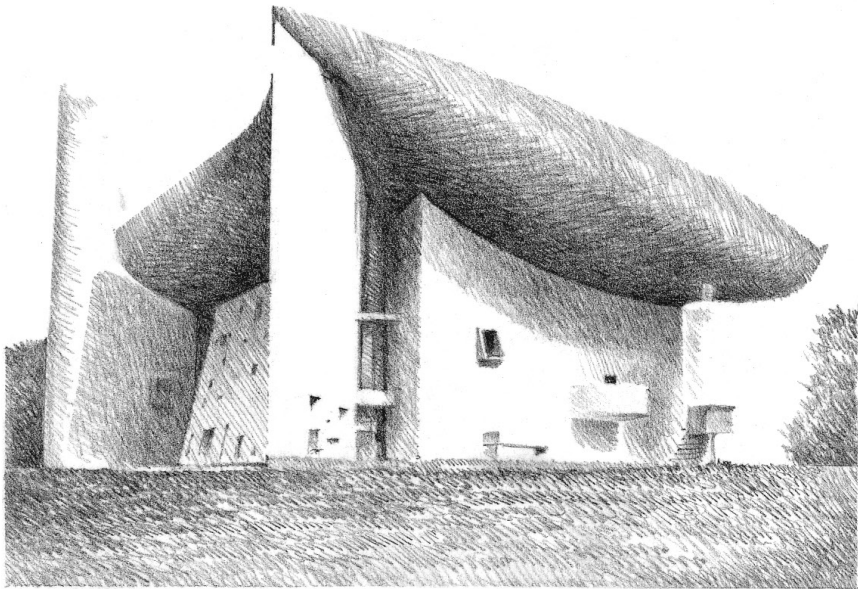
In modeling, we tend to consider first the local value of a surface. Local value describes how light or dark the material of a surface is. It is a constant property of the surface and has nothing to do with light. The quality of light that illuminates a surface, however, modifies its local value. For example, naturally light colors can appear darker in shade than those that are normally deeper in value but illuminated by light. In rendering tonal values, we should attempt to communicate this interplay of local value, light, and shade.

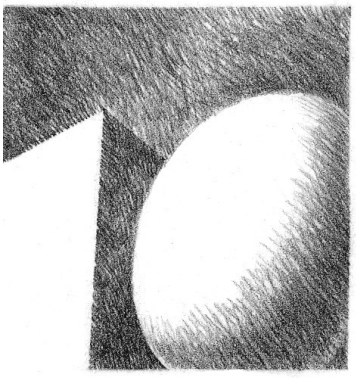
It is important to remember that we perceive tonal values relative to their context. The law of simultaneous contrast states that the stimulation of one color or tonal value leads to the sensation of its complement, which is projected instantaneously on a juxtaposed color or value. For example, when two colors of contrasting value are juxtaposed, the lighter color will deepen the darker color while the darker color will lighten the lighter one. In a similar manner, a tonal value superimposed upon a darker tone will appear lighter than the same value set against a lighter tone.



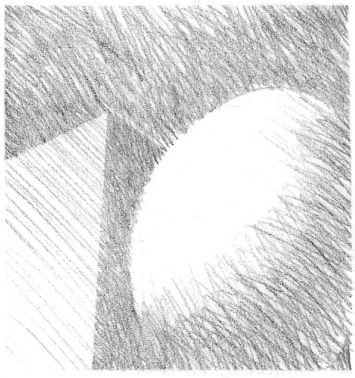








Brilliant light



Diffused light

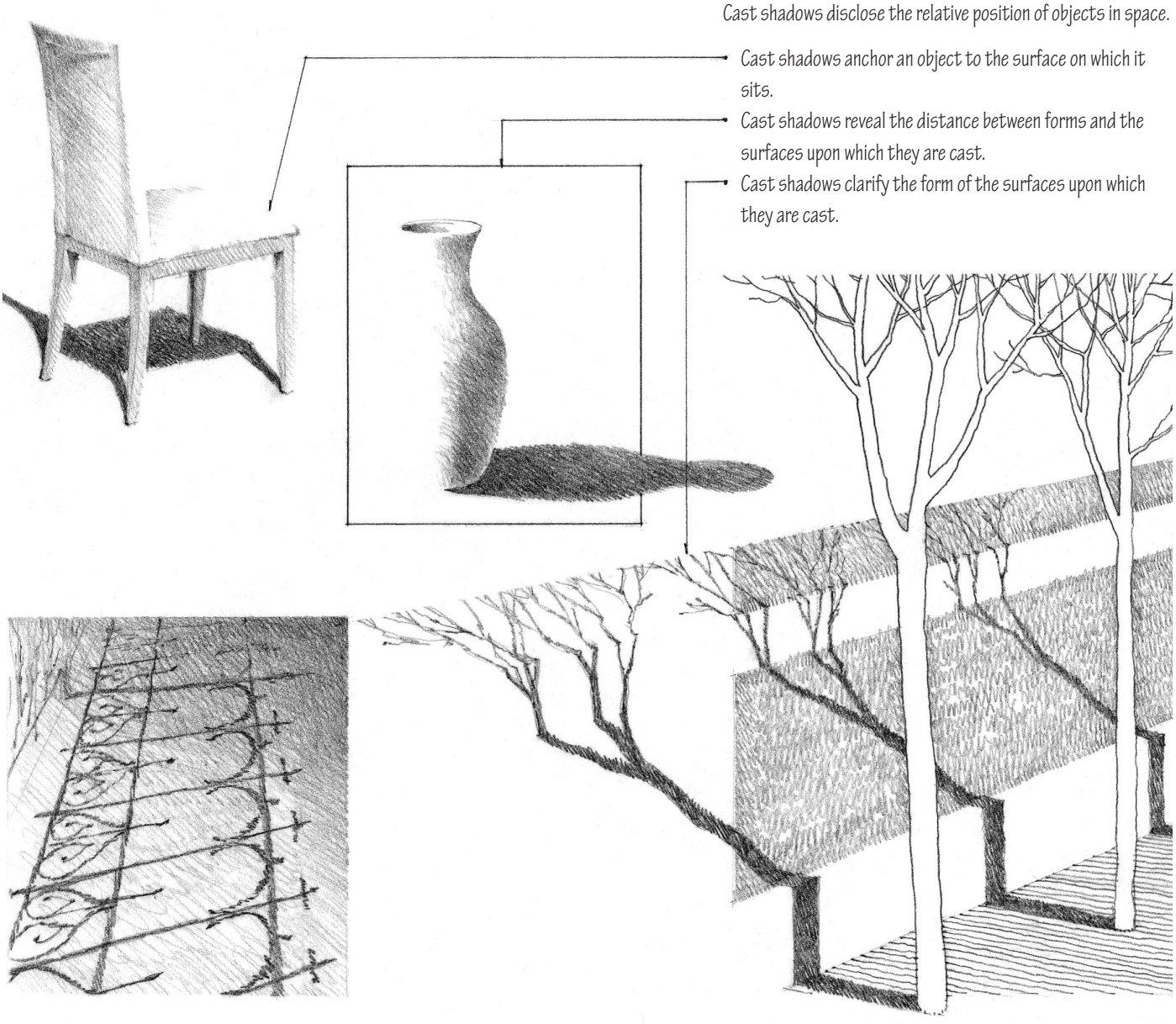
To render the effects of light, we must be able to comprehend the nature of the light source, its spatial relationship to the objects it illuminates, and the three-dimensional nature of the forms themselves.

The clarity and tonal value of shaded surfaces and cast shadows provide clues to the quality of the light source.

- Brilliant light produces strong light-dark contrasts with sharply defined shadows.
- Diffused light creates less value contrast between lit surfaces and shadows.

Cast shadows disclose the relative position of objects in space.

- Cast shadows anchor an object to the surface on which it sits.
- Cast shadows reveal the distance between forms and the surfaces upon which they are cast.
- Cast shadows clarify the form of the surfaces upon which they are cast.

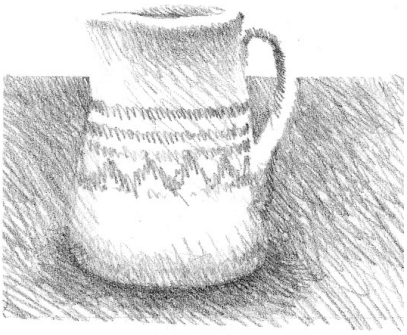


Even when forms are hidden from view, the shadows they cast can reveal their shape.

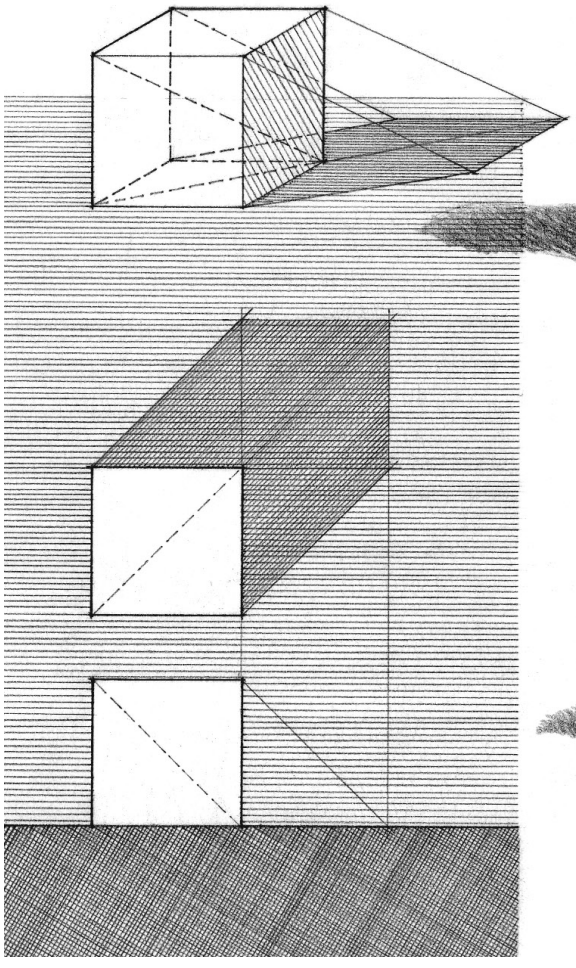
The shape and path of a shadow convey both the location of a light source and the direction of its rays.

- Cast shadows retreat in the direction opposite that of the light source.
- Frontlighting creates deep shadows behind the subject that recede from the viewer.
- Toplighting creates shadows that are shallow or directly beneath the subject.
- Sidelighting throws one side of the subject into shade and casts shadows in the direction opposite of the light source.
- Three-quarter lighting, from above and over the shoulder of the viewer, creates a strong sense of volume and reveals the surface texture of the subject.
- Backlighting creates deep shadows toward the viewer and emphasizes the silhouette of the subject.

Frontlighting

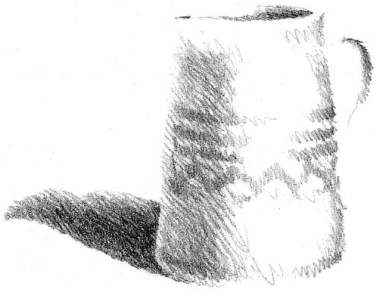


Toplighting



Sidelighting

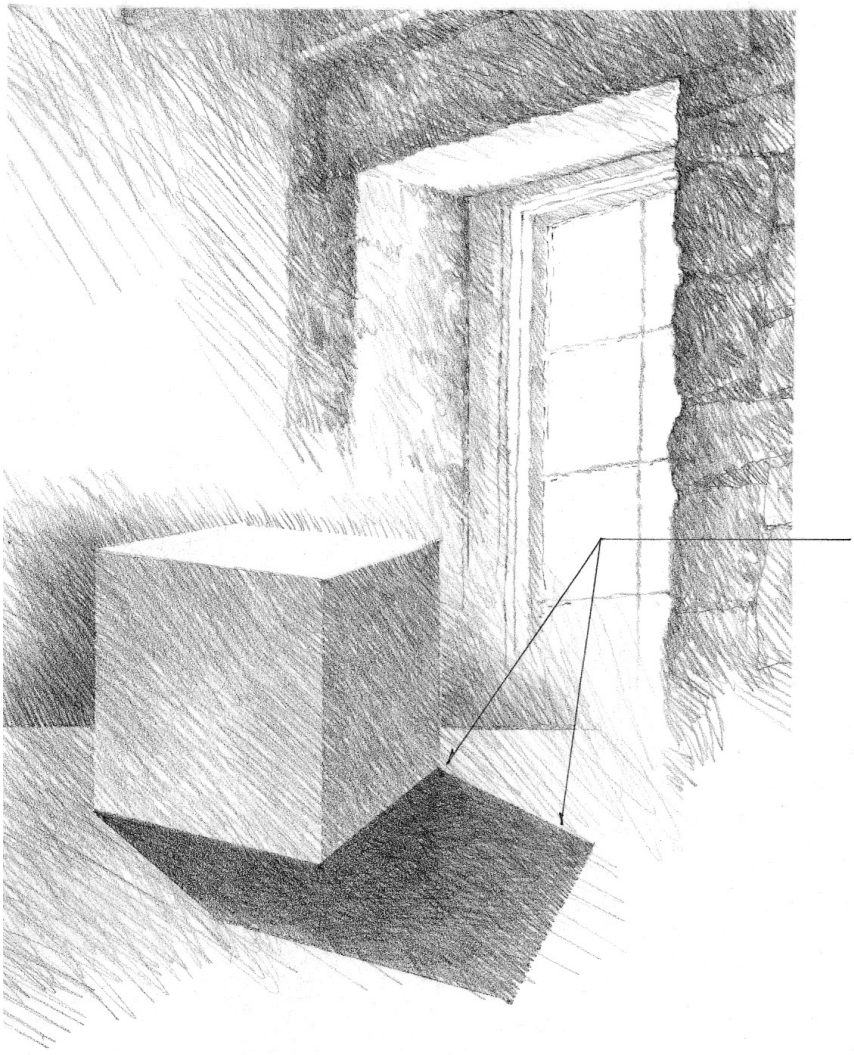
Backlighting



Three-quarter lighting

For the formal construction of shade and shadows in architectural drawings, refer to Chapter 6, "Multiview Drawings."

RENDERING SHADE AND SHADOWS



Shaded surfaces and cast shadows are usually neither opaque nor uniform in value. We should avoid employing large areas of solid dark tones that obliterate detail and disrupt our reading of the form of a surface. Instead, apply shades and shadows as transparent washes that belong to the form and through which we can read the texture and local color of the surface.

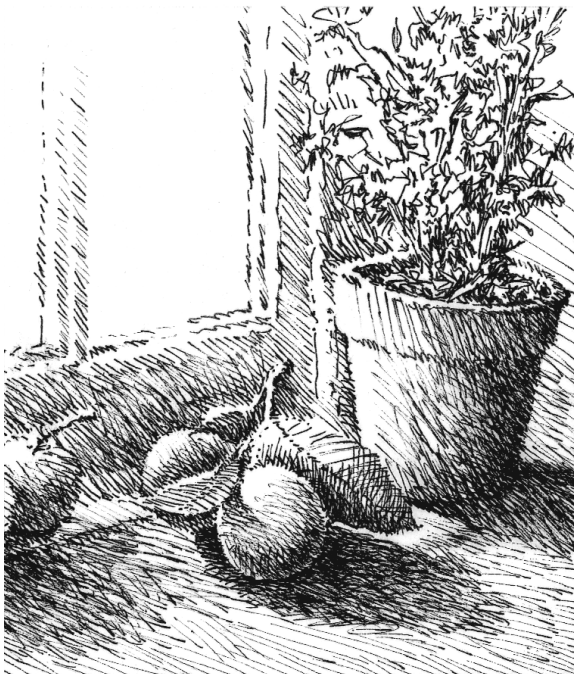
Shade becomes shadow along spatial edges or shifts in planes. To retain a sense of three-dimensional forms occupying space, we should distinguish between the values of surfaces in shade and those of cast shadows. Shaded surfaces are often lighter in value than shadows, but this value relationship should be confirmed by careful observation.

Cast shadows are generally darkest where they meet a surface in shade, becoming lighter toward its outer edges.The boundaries of cast shadows are distinct in brilliant light, but softer in diffuse light. In either case, we should define the outer edges of shadows with a contrast in value, never with a drawn line.

Areas of shade or shadow are almost never uniform in value. Light reflecting back from nearby surfaces illuminates surfaces in shade or on which shadows are cast. To depict the modifying effects of reflected light, we vary the tonal value of surfaces in shade and those on which shadows are cast. The effects of reflected light, however, should be suggested in a subtle way so as not to obscure the nature of the surface in shade or shadow.

Exercise 2.6

Arrange a still-life composition on a horizontal surface near a window or under a desk lamp so that clear and distinct shadows are cast by the objects. Squint and focus on the shapes and tonal values of the shaded areas and cast shadows. Use a soft pencil and your choice of modeling technique to render the tonal values you observe.

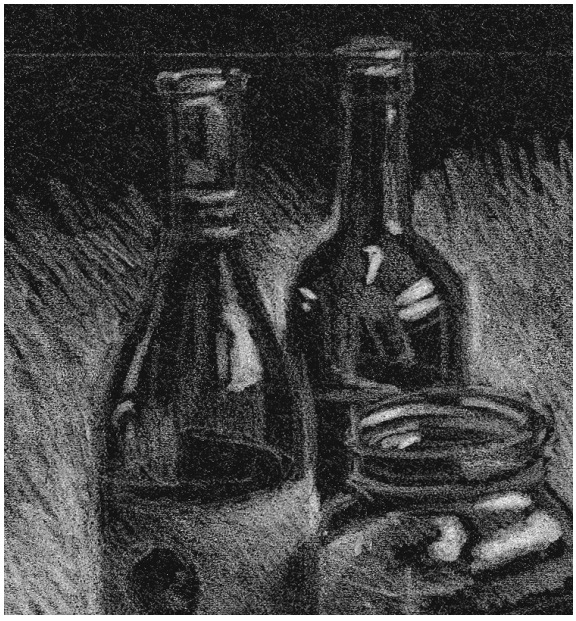


Exercise 2.7

Repeat the above exercise, using a fine-tipped black pen to render the shaded areas and cast shadows.

Exercise 2.8

Arrange another still-life composition by a window or under a desk lamp. This time, instead of rendering the darker tones with a graphite pencil or ink pen, draw the lighter values on black construction paper with a white pencil.



MAPPING VALUES

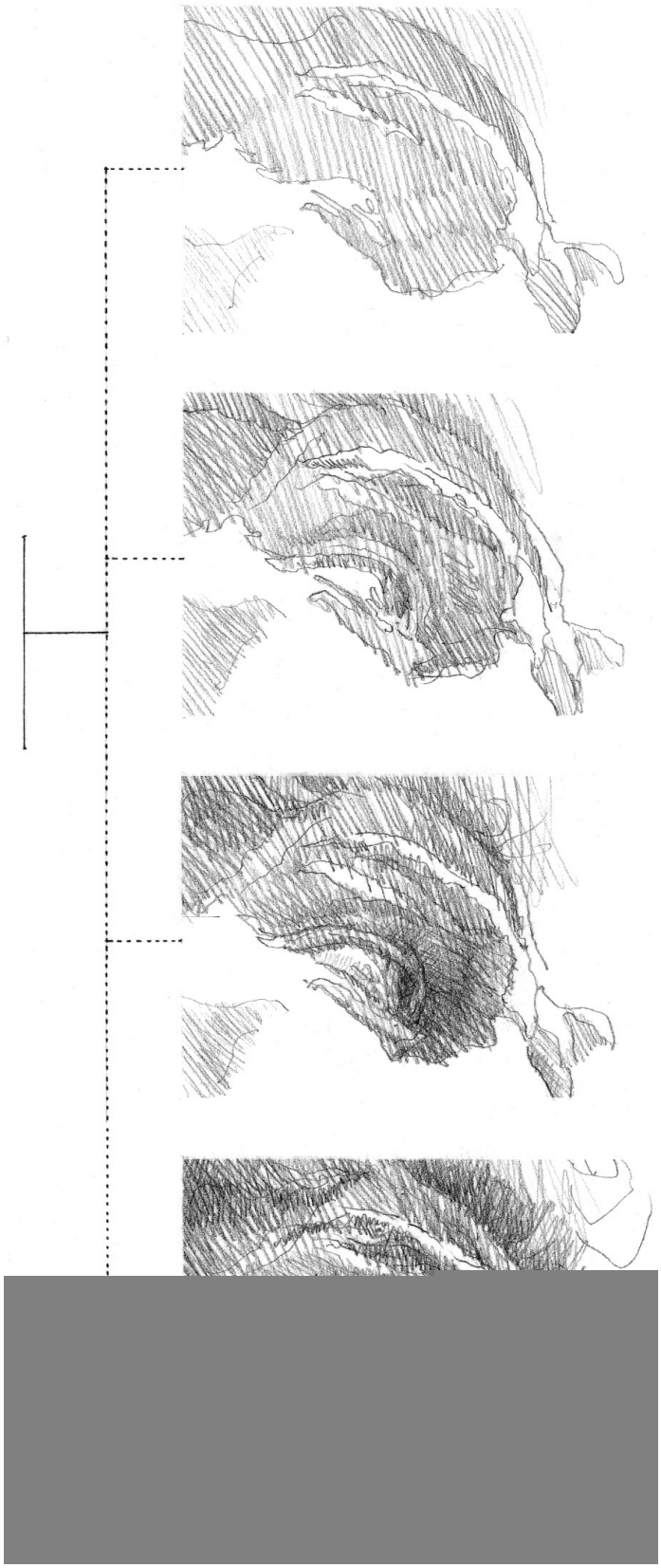
The mapping of light-dark patterns is the easiest way to begin modeling. Mapping involves breaking down all areas of light, shade, and shadow that we see on a subject or in a scene into definite shapes. Decisiveness is necessary. When a shade or shadow seems indistinct, we must impose boundaries anyway. In doing this, we create an organized map of interlocking shapes that serves as a starting point for later refinements.

Mapping requires reducing the many tonal variations that we see into just a few. We begin by sorting the range of tonal values into two groups—light and dark; or three—light, medium, and dark. Within each group, the tonal value can vary to articulate the nature of the surfaces, but the overall mapping of the values should remain clear. Squinting through half-closed eyes makes this task easier. Another method is to view a scene through tinted glass or acetate, which reduces the number of colors and simplifies the values we see.

The pattern of values establishes the underlying structure that holds a modeled drawing together and gives it unity and strength. If the value pattern is fragmented, then the composition will be incoherent, no matter how carefully rendered or technically competent the individual drawing elements may be. Thumbnail sketches are effective devices for studying alternative value patterns and developing a strategy for the range, placement, and proportion of tonal values in a drawing.

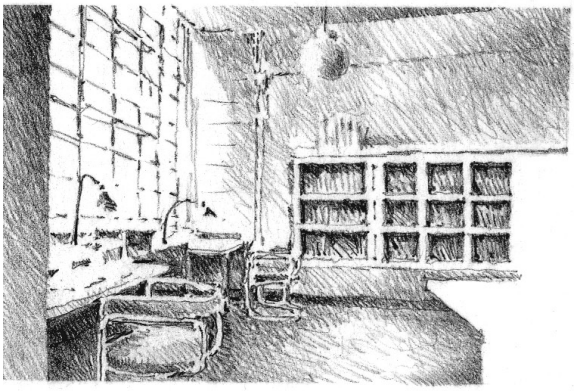
Once the overall value pattern is established, we work from light to dark. We can always darken a tonal value, but once a tone has been darkened, it is difficult to reestablish a lighter value. Here are a few additional points to remember in modeled drawing:

- Layer areas of value. Avoid drawing values sequentially from one part to another part of a drawing. Doing so can fragment a drawing and obscure our reading of a form. Establish broad groupings of tonal value before layering the smaller, more specific tones that constitute them. Establish each increase in value with an additional layer of tone. Continue to add layers of tone until the darkest tonal values are established.
- Establish grain. Maintaining a consistent direction to the strokes unifies the various areas of tonal value and infuses a drawing with a cohesive quality.
- Maintain the distinction between the sharp tonal contrasts of hard edges and the diffuse contrasts of soft edges.
- Retain highlights. It is extremely important not to lose areas in light. While these areas can be reclaimed in a pencil drawing by erasure, no such opportunity exists when drawing with a pen and ink.

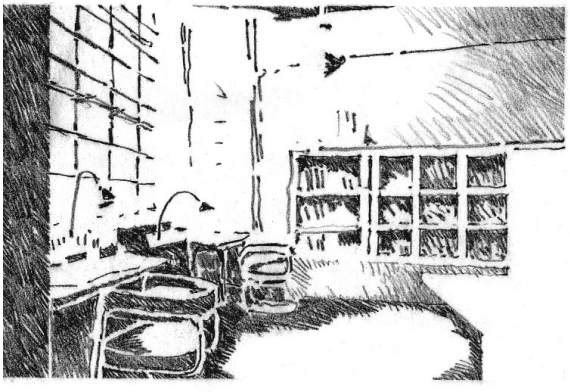


TONAL RANGE

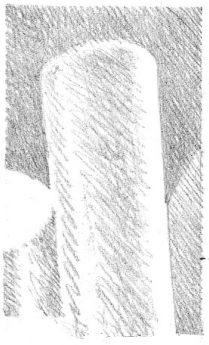
Tight range

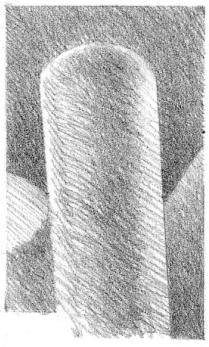


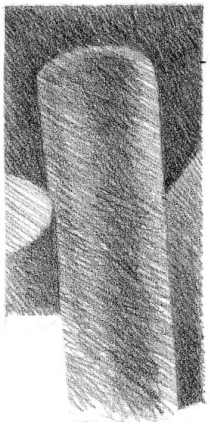
Broad range



High contrast





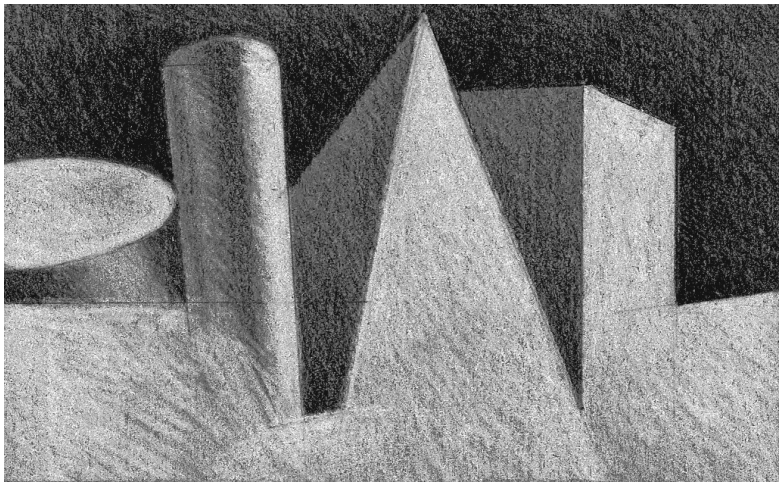


The range of tonal values we use in a drawing influences the weight, harmony, and atmosphere of the composition. Sharp contrasts in value vividly define and draw attention to the tonal shapes. A broad range of tonal values, with intermediate values providing a transition from the lightest to the darkest tones, can be rich and visually active. Too broad a range of values, however, can fragment the unity and harmony of a drawing's composition. Closely related values tend to produce more restful, subtle, and restrained effects.

The relative proportion of light and dark values defines the dominant tonal value or key of a drawing.

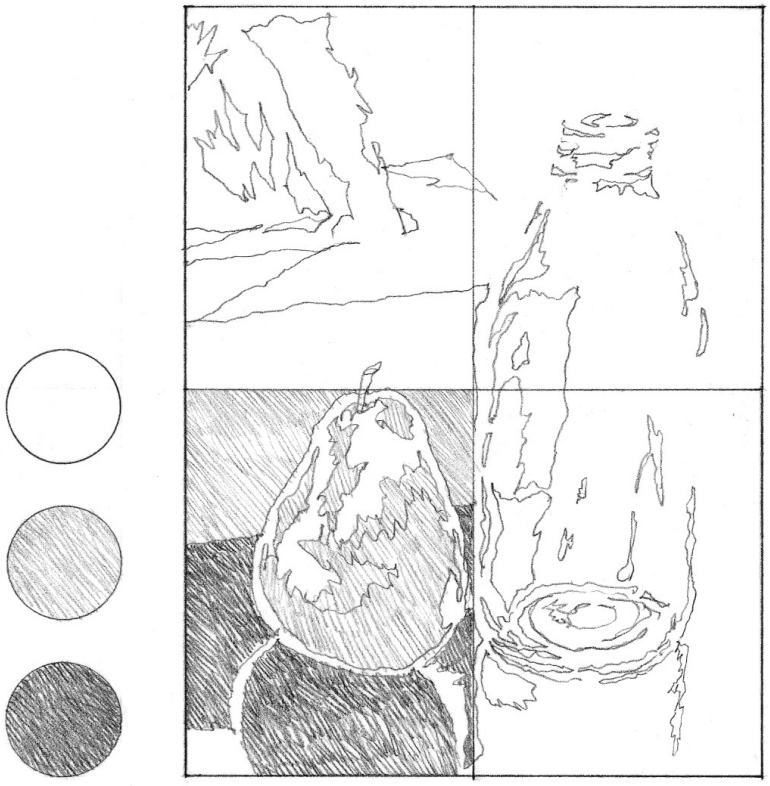
- A predominantly light range of values or high key conveys delicacy, elegance, and a sense of illuminating light.
- A medium range of tonal values or middle key imparts a feeling of harmony and balance. Without some positive contrasts, however, a middle-key drawing can become bland and lifeless.
- On the other hand, the somber quality of a moderately dark tonal range or low key can have a calming effect and establish a feeling of strength and stability.

When an intermediate tone is the dominant value of a drawing, it can be convenient to draw on a gray or colored surface, which automatically establishes the median tonal value. This surface tint can serve as an effective foil for darker values established with a black pencil and lighter values rendered with a white pencil.



Exercise 2.9

Arrange a still life on a windowsill or under a desk lamp so that a clear pattern of light, shade, and shadow emerges. Using only the white of the paper plus two values—a light and a middle gray—develop a mapping study of the composition.

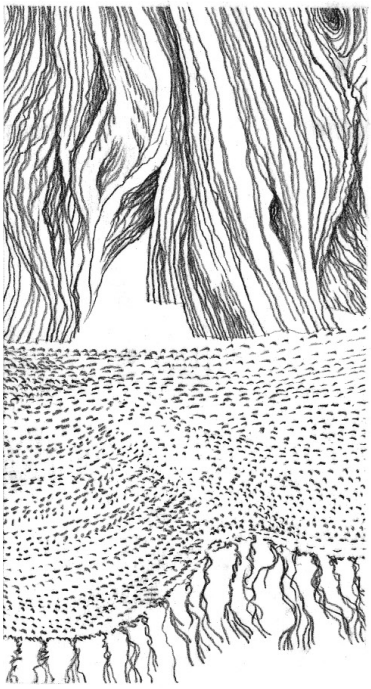


Exercise 2.10

Find an exterior landscape containing both near and distant elements. Using a viewfinder to establish the limits of your visual field, develop a value pattern that describes the shapes and tonal values you see in the landscape.

Exercise 2.11

Repeat the above exercises, but this time develop each drawing further by layering additional, intermediate tonal values within each value area.



Physical texture

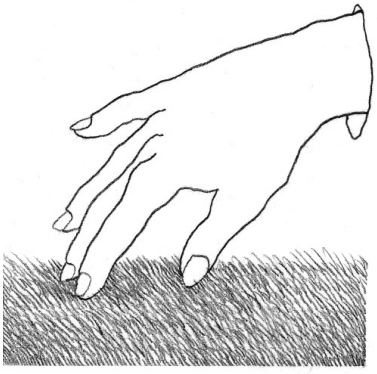
Visual texture

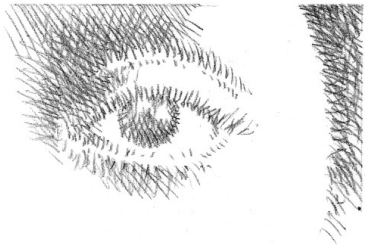
Whenever we use hatching or stippling to create a tonal value, we simultaneously create texture. Likewise, as soon as we begin to describe the nature of a material with lines, we simultaneously create a tonal value. We should always be aware of this relationship between tonal value and texture, whether smooth or rough, hard or soft, polished or dull. In most cases, tonal value is more critical than texture to the representation of light, shade, and the way it models forms in space.

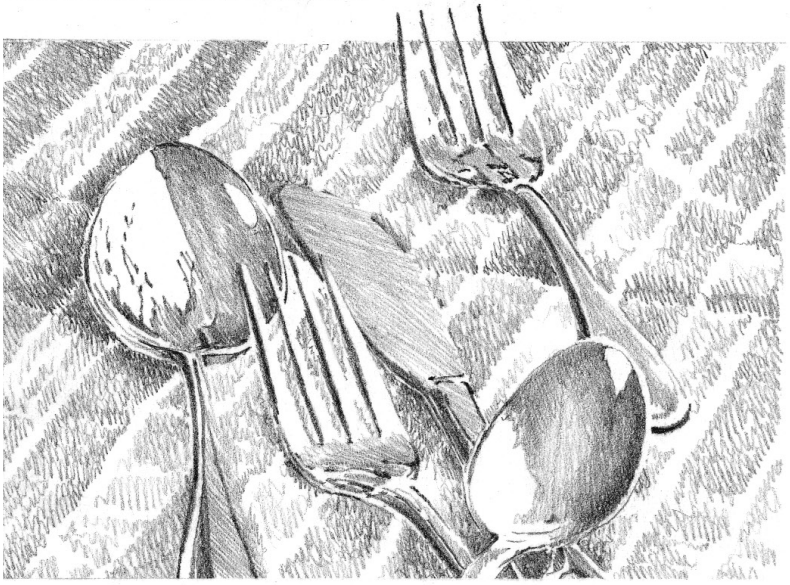
We use the term *texture* most often to describe the relative smoothness or roughness of a surface. It can also describe the characteristic surface qualities of familiar materials, such as the hewn appearance of stone, the grain of wood, and the weave of a fabric. This is tactile texture that can be felt by touch.

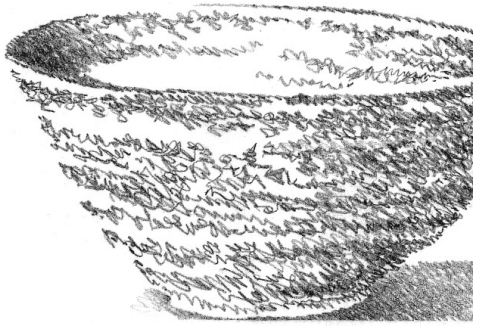
Visual texture is the representation of the structure of a surface as distinct from color or form. It can be either felt or perceived in a drawing. All tactile textures provide visual texture as well. Visual texture, on the other hand, may be illusory or real.

Our senses of sight and touch are closely intertwined. As our eyes read the visual texture of a surface, we often respond to its apparent tactile quality without actually touching it. The visual texture prompts memories of past experiences. We remember what certain materials felt like as we ran our hands across their surfaces. We base these physical reactions on the textural qualities of similar materials we have experienced in the past.





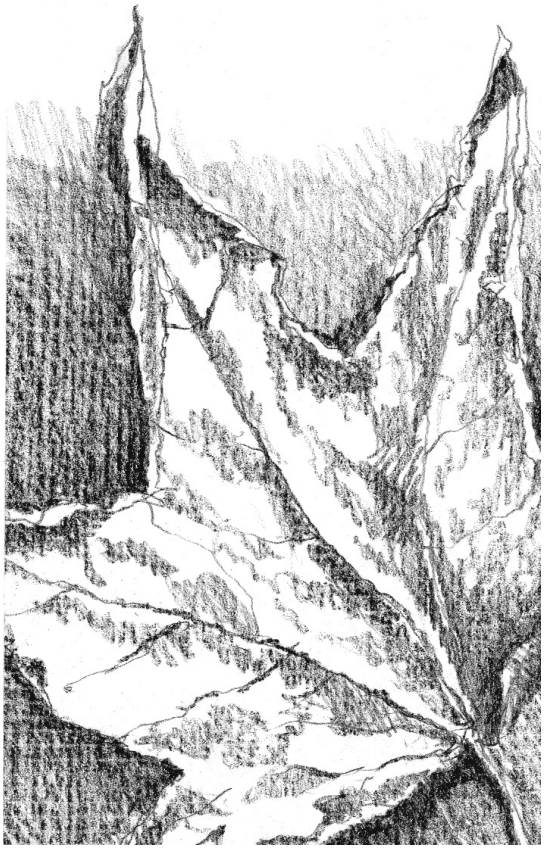




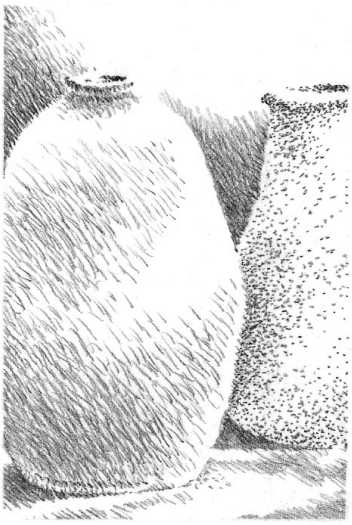
The scale of the strokes or dots we use to create a tonal value, relative to the size of the toned area and the drawing composition, inherently conveys the visual texture of a surface.

Visual texture can also result from the interaction between medium and drawing surface. Drawing on a rough surface breaks up the deposits of ink or graphite. Lightly drawn strokes deposit the medium only on the raised portions of the surface, while increased pressure forces the medium also into the low-lying areas. In effect, the physical texture of the drawing surface bestows a visual grain and texture on the drawing itself.

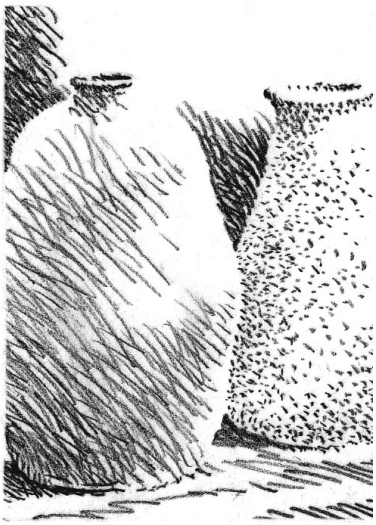
Another way to impose a textural quality on an area of tonal value is through frottage. Frottage refers to the technique of obtaining textural effects by rubbing graphite or charcoal over paper laid on a granular, pitted, or other roughly textured surface. This method of producing a textured tonal value is especially useful to prevent overworking a dark tonal value, which can cause a drawing to lose its freshness and spontaneity.



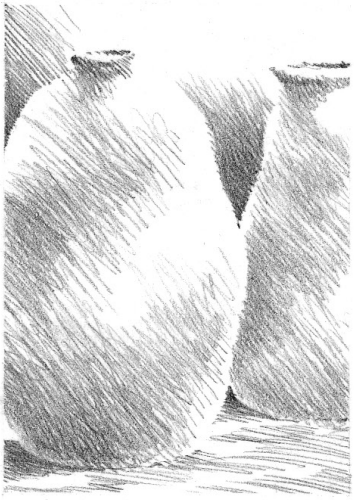
Frottage



Small-scale strokes and dots

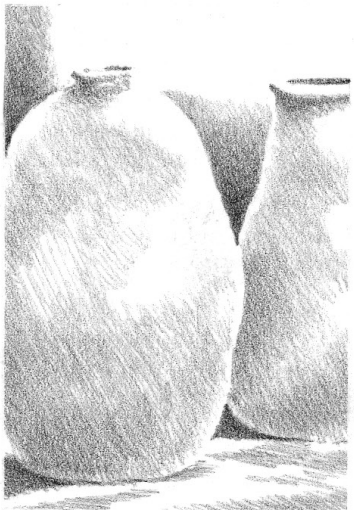


Large-scale strokes and dots

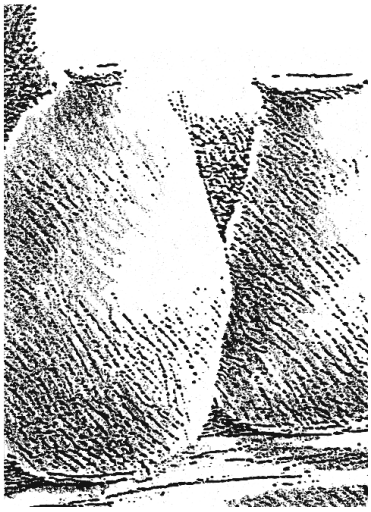


Smooth strokes

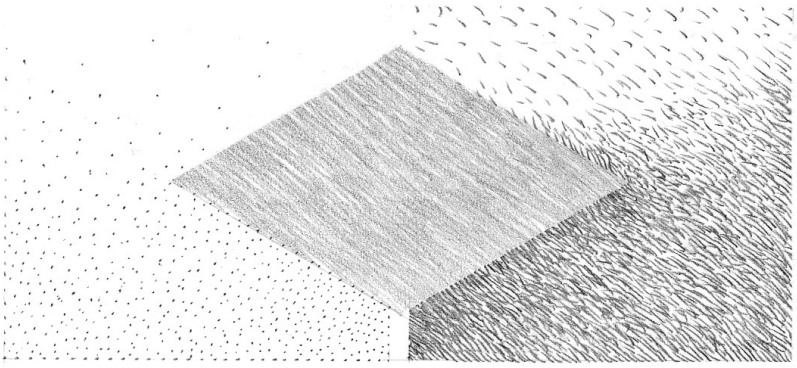
Irregular strokes



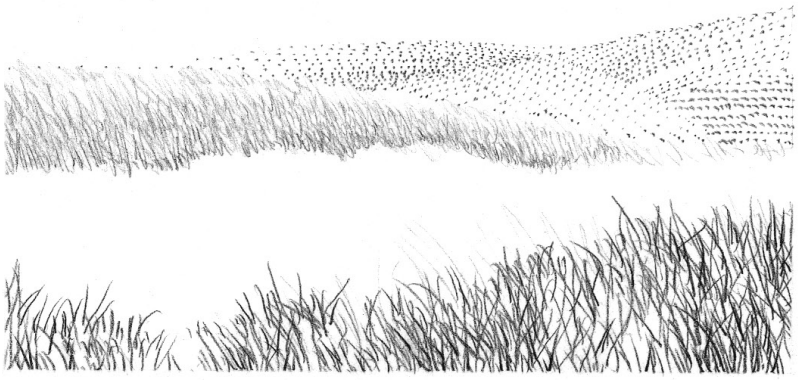
Smooth drawing surface



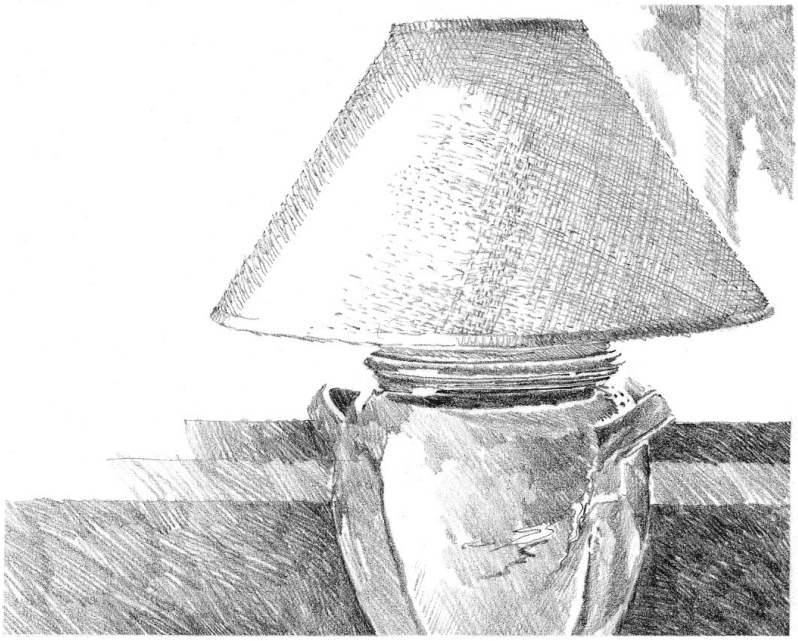
Coarse drawing surface



Contrast



Scale and distance



Light

Modifying Factors

Contrast, scale, distance, and light are important modifying factors in our perception of texture and the surfaces they articulate. Whenever representing texture in a drawing, consider the following factors.

Contrast influences how strong or subtle a texture will appear to be. A texture seen against a uniformly smooth background will appear more obvious than when placed in juxtaposition with a similar texture. When seen against a coarser background, the texture will appear to be finer and reduced in scale.

The relative scale of a drawing determines whether we read a texture as blades of grass, a field of grain, or a patchwork quilt of fields. The relative scale of a texture also affects the apparent shape and position of a plane in space. Textures with directional grain can accentuate the length or width of a plane. Coarse textures can make a plane appear closer, reduce its scale, and increase its visual weight. In general, textures tend to visually fill the space they occupy.

All materials have some degree of texture, but the finer the scale of a texture, the smoother it will appear to be. Even coarse textures, when seen from a distance, can appear to be relatively smooth. Only upon closer viewing would the coarseness of a texture become evident.

Light influences our perception of texture and, in turn, is affected by the texture it illuminates. Smooth, shiny surfaces reflect light brilliantly, appear sharply in focus, and attract our attention. Surfaces having a matte texture absorb and diffuse light unevenly and therefore appear less bright than a similarly colored but smoother surfaces. Coarse surfaces, when illuminated with direct lighting, cast distinct shadow patterns of light and dark upon themselves and disclose their textural quality. Diffused lighting de-emphasizes physical texture and can even obscure the three-dimensional structure of a texture.

Exercise 2.12

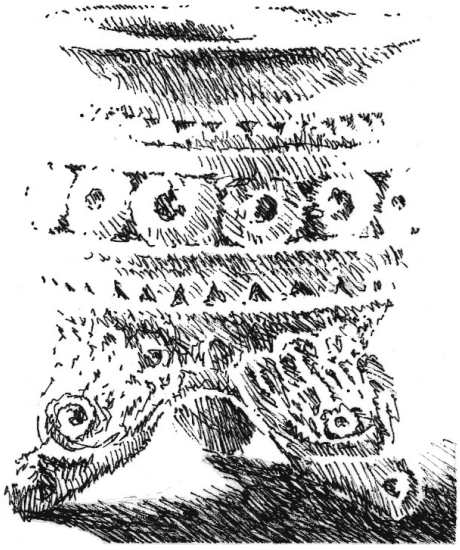
Select two or more objects having decidedly different textures. Possibilities include a paper bag and a glass bottle, an egg and a spoon or fork on a piece of fabric, or various fruit in a ceramic bowl. Arrange the objects on a windowsill or under a desk lamp so that the lighting emphasizes the various textures. Describe the contrasting textures using any of the modeling techniques.

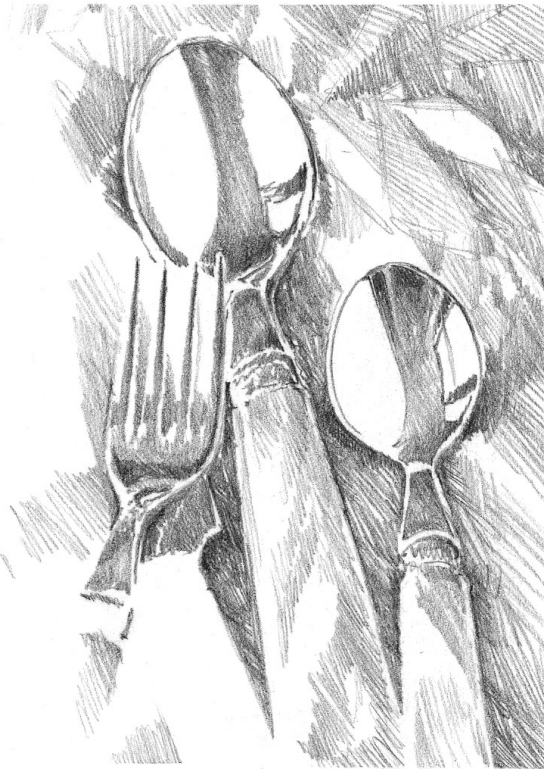
Exercise 2.13

Repeat the above exercise, but this time move in very close to one of the overlapping edges. Focus on this edge and describe the enlarged surface textures where they meet.

Exercise 2.14

Repeat the above exercises several times, experimenting with both pencil and pen-and-ink media, and working on both smooth as well as rough drawing surfaces.



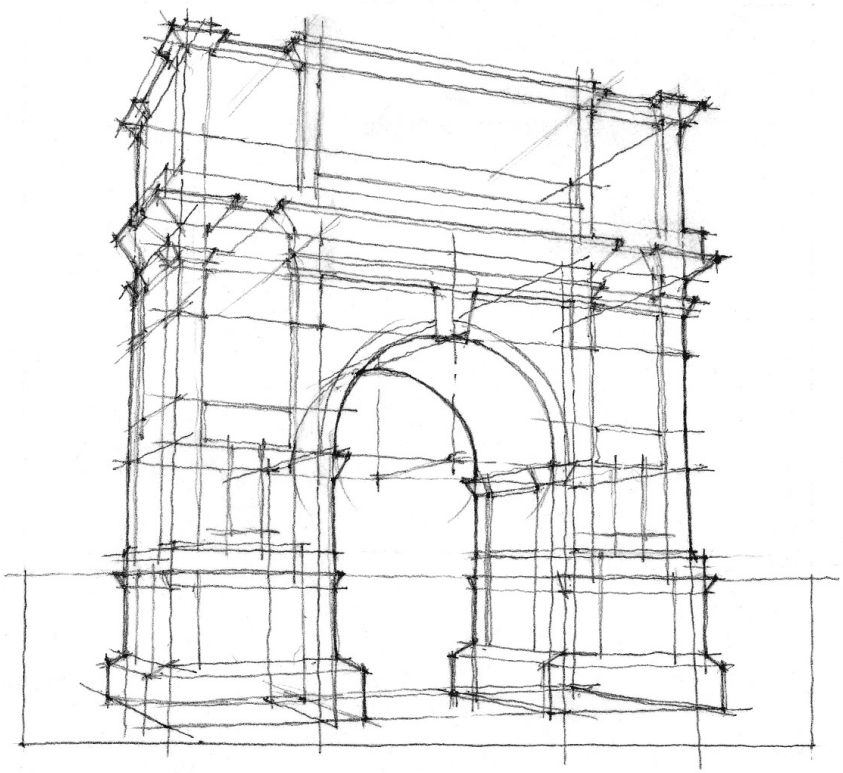


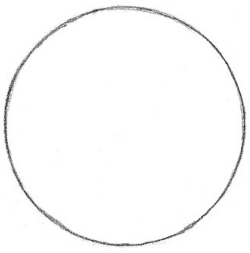
3

Form and Structure

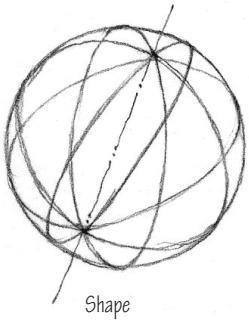
"All pictorial form begins with the point that sets itself in motion . . .
The point moves . . . and the line comes into being—the first dimension.
If the line shifts to form a plane, we obtain a two-dimensional element.
In the movement from plane to spaces, the clash of planes gives rise to a
(three-dimensional) body. . . . A summary of the kinetic energies which move
the point into a line, the line into a plane, and the plane into a spatial
dimension."

—Paul Klee
The Thinking Eye

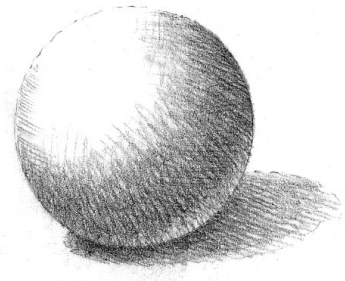




Figure



Shape



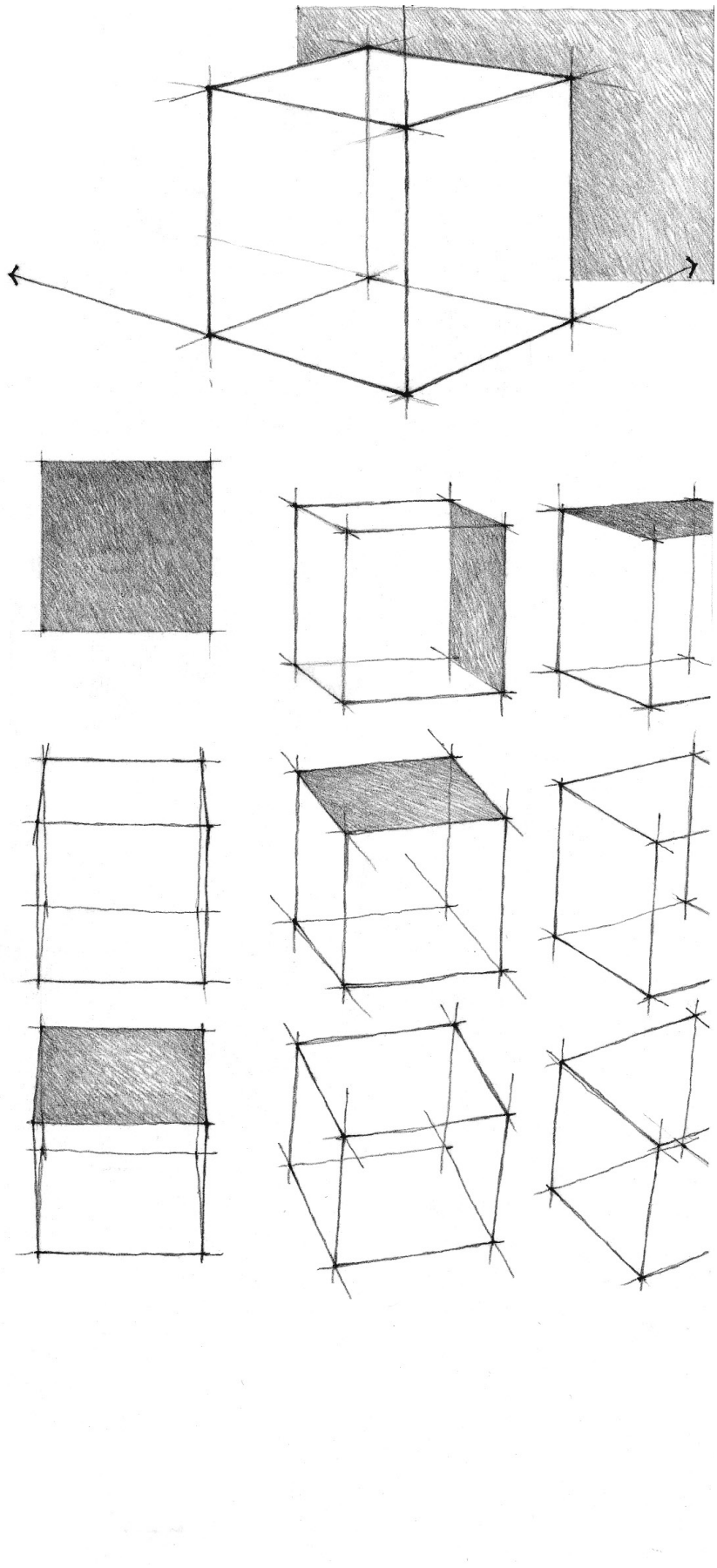
Form

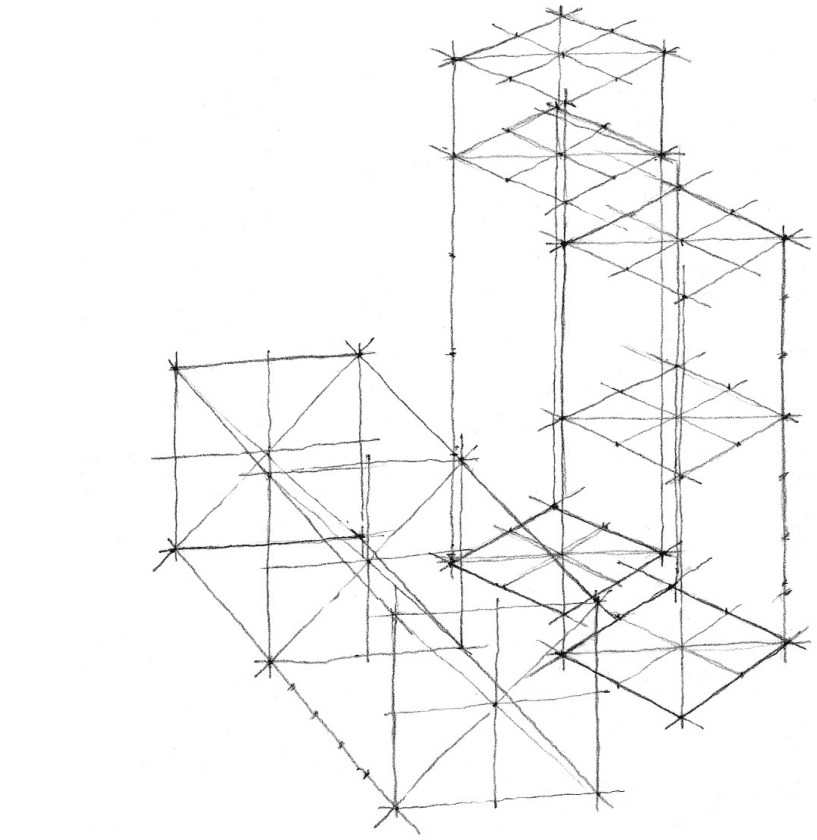
Shape, figure, and form have similar meanings. All refer to a distinctive, recognizable appearance of a thing as determined by its visible contours. Figure is the identifying outline of a shape or form. Shape may refer to either the characteristic outline of a figure or the surface configuration of a form. Form, a more inclusive term than either shape or figure, makes reference to both internal structure and external outline and includes a sense of three-dimensional mass or volume. It also refers to the principle that gives unity to the whole.

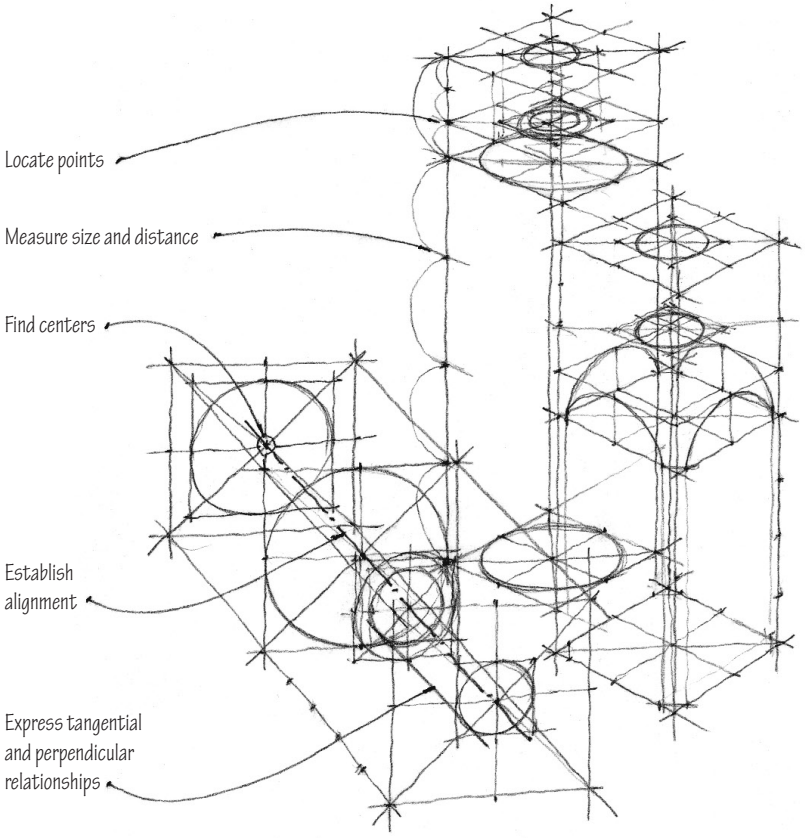
Volume refers to the three-dimensional extent of an object or region of space. Conceptually, a volume is bound by planes and has three dimensions of width, height, and depth. In drawing, we endeavor to convey the illusion of three-dimensional volumes of mass and space on a two-dimensional surface.

All objects fill a volume of space. Even thin, linear objects occupy space. We can pick up a small object and turn it around in our hands. Each turning of the object displays a different shape because the relationship between the object and our eyes changes. In seeing the object from different angles and distances, our vision assembles the shapes into a three-dimensional form.

A drawing presenting a view from a fixed angle and distance can only illustrate a single moment of our perception. If this is a frontal view that shows only width and height, the image would appear flat. But turning the view to expose three adjacent sides of the object reveals the third dimension of depth and clarifies its form. Paying attention to the planar shapes helps us see how they combine to convey the three-dimensional form of the volume.







A drawing can describe the outer configuration of surfaces of an object or explain its inner structural nature and the way its parts are arranged and joined in space. In drawing analytically, we seek to merge these two approaches.

Unlike contour drawing, in which we proceed from part to part, analytical drawing proceeds from the whole to the subordinate parts and finally the details. Subordinating parts and details to the structure of the overall form prevents a piecemeal approach that can result in faulty proportional relationships and a lack of unity.

We begin an analytical drawing with light, freely drawn lines using a soft, well-sharpened pencil. We draw these lines in a tentative and exploratory manner to block out and establish a transparent volumetric framework for a form. Imagine a transparent box whose sides touch the front, back, top, bottom, and both sides of an object. This imaginary container describes the extent and relations of the object's three dimensions. Visualizing this enveloping volume of an object helps us to draw its three-dimensional form.

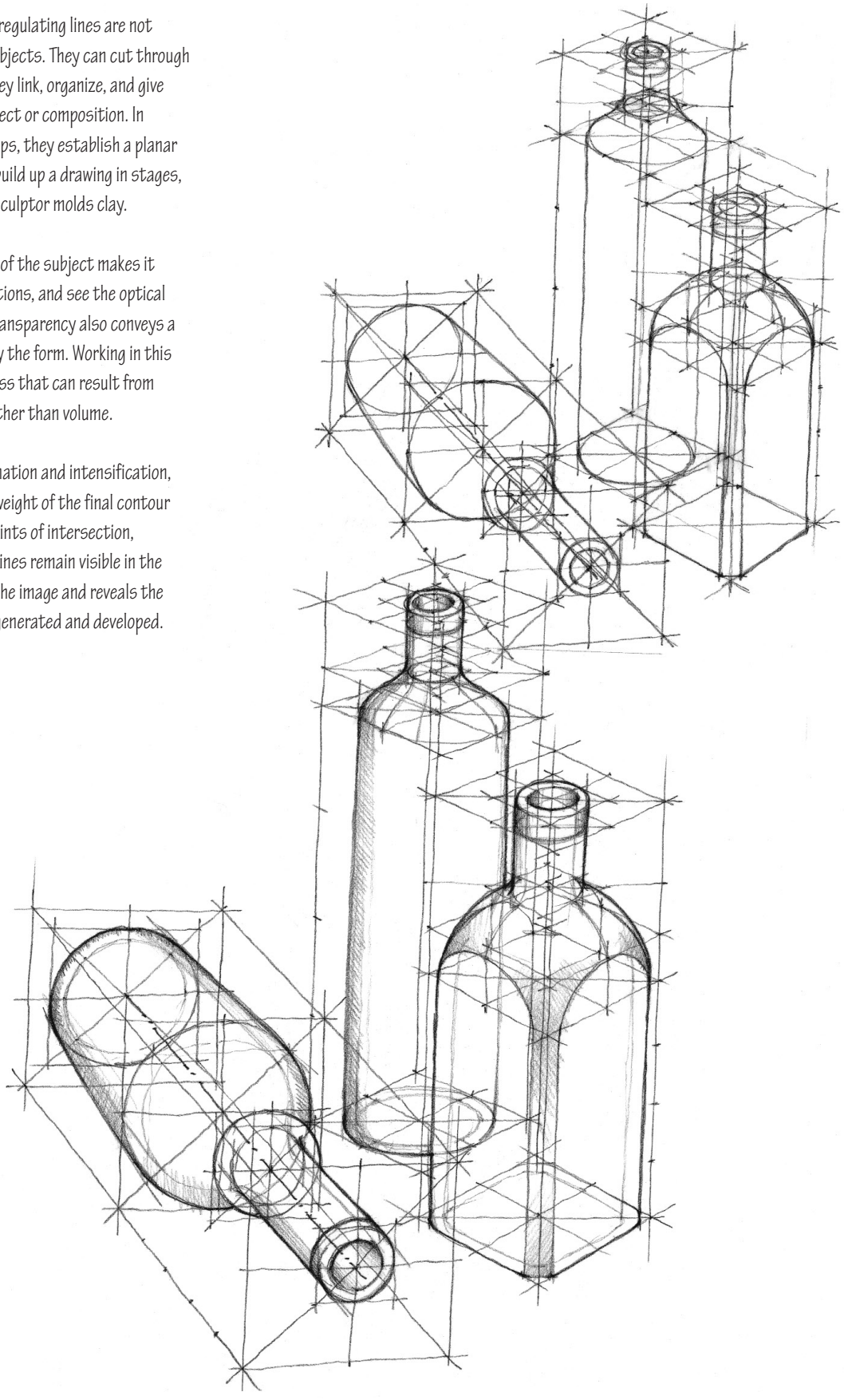
These lines are diagrammatic in nature, serving to establish and explain not only the appearance of exterior surfaces but also the underlying geometry and structure of the subject. We call these initial lines regulating lines since they order relationships and control the placement, size, and proportion of the fundamental parts of a form. In the process of blocking out the enveloping shapes and volume of an object, we use regulating lines to locate points, measure size and distance, find centers, express perpendicular and tangential relationships, and establish alignments and offsets.

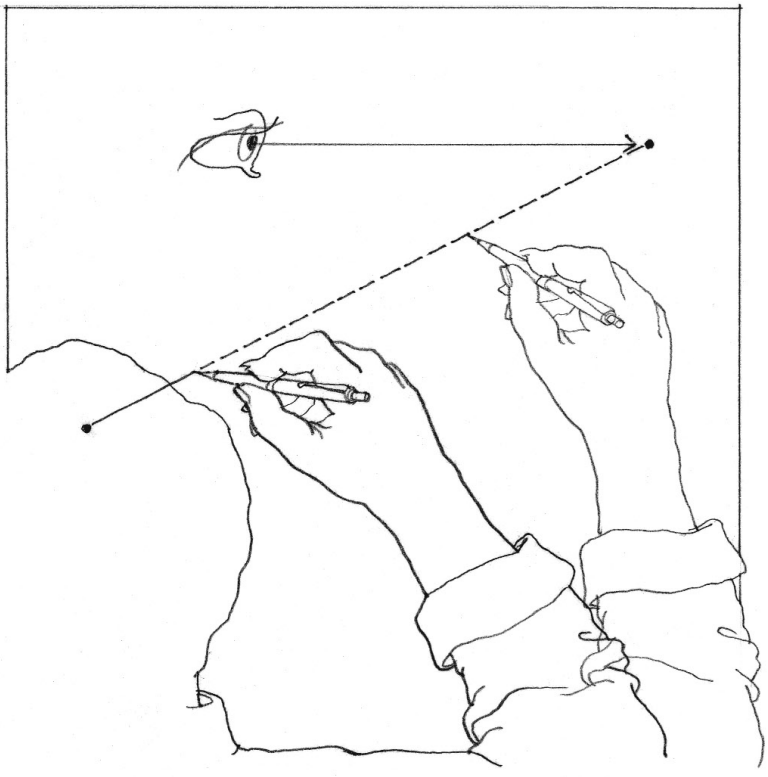
Drawing approximate lines first helps the eye seek the correct ones. They represent visual judgments to be confirmed or adjusted. We do not erase any previously drawn lines. If necessary, we restate a line, correcting basic shapes and checking the relative proportions between the parts, always striving for incremental improvement over the last line drawn.

Because of their constructive nature, regulating lines are not limited by the physical boundaries of objects. They can cut through forms and extend through space as they link, organize, and give measure to the various parts of an object or composition. In ordering formal and spatial relationships, they establish a planar or spatial framework on which we can build up a drawing in stages, similar to the armature upon which a sculptor molds clay.

Drawing both unseen and visible parts of the subject makes it easier to gauge angles, control proportions, and see the optical appearance of shapes. The resulting transparency also conveys a convincing sense of volume occupied by the form. Working in this way prevents the appearance of flatness that can result from concentrating too much on surface rather than volume.

Through a continuous process of elimination and intensification, we gradually build up the density and weight of the final contour or object lines, especially at critical points of intersection, connection, and transition. Having all lines remain visible in the final drawing intensifies the depth of the image and reveals the constructive process by which it was generated and developed.

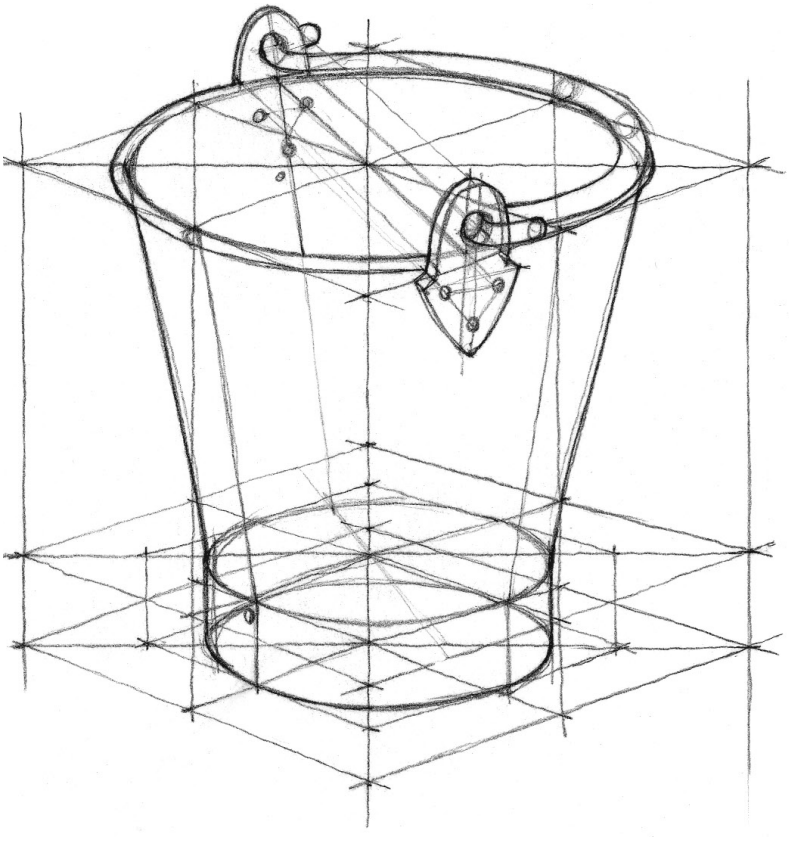


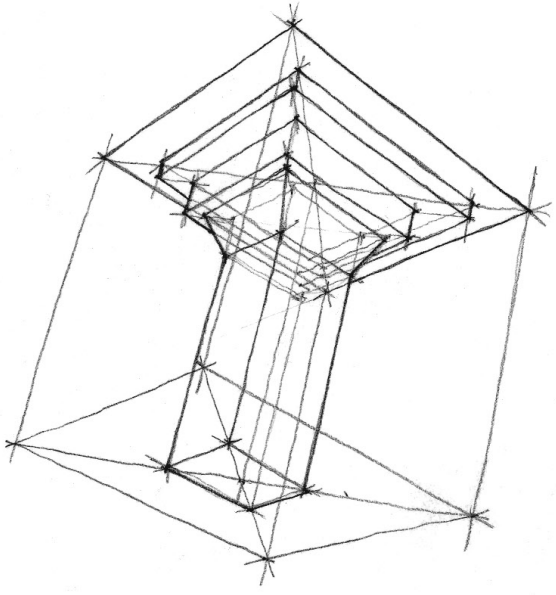


When blocking out light construction lines, hold the pen or pencil lightly as you draw. Squeezing the pen or pencil too tightly creates tension that interrupts the fluid nature of a freehand line. Instead, try to feel the drawing surface through the tip of the instrument.

Before actually drawing a line, practice the eye-mind-hand movement by marking the beginning and end of the intended line with dots. Draw lines by pulling the pencil, never pushing it. For right-handers, this means drawing lines from left to right and from top to bottom; left-handers should draw lines from right to left and from top to bottom. Keep a disciplined eye on where the line is headed, not where it's been. Avoid scratching in lines with short, feeble strokes. Instead, draw lines slowly but continuously.

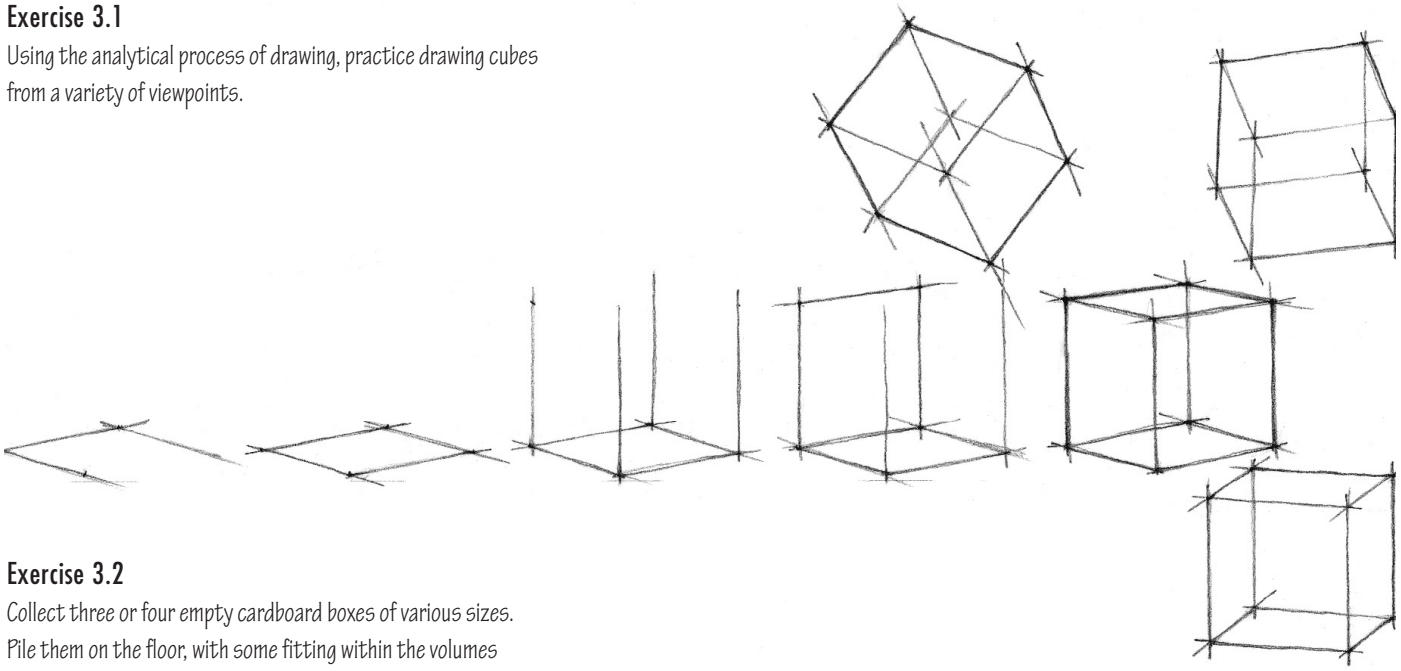
For short strokes or when applying considerable pressure, swing the hand at the wrist, or let the fingers perform the necessary motions. For longer strokes, swing the entire forearm and hand freely from the elbow, with a minimum of wrist and finger movement. Only as you approach the end of the stroke should you bring the wrist and fingers into motion to control where the line ends.





Exercise 3.1

Using the analytical process of drawing, practice drawing cubes from a variety of viewpoints.

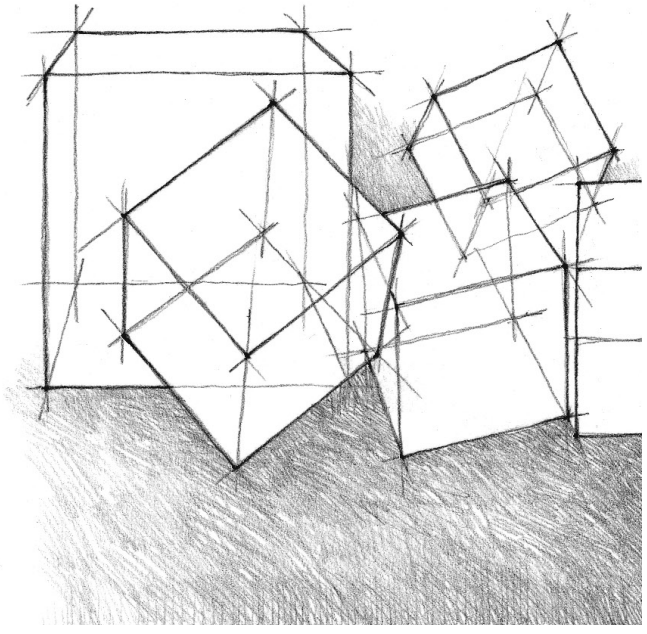


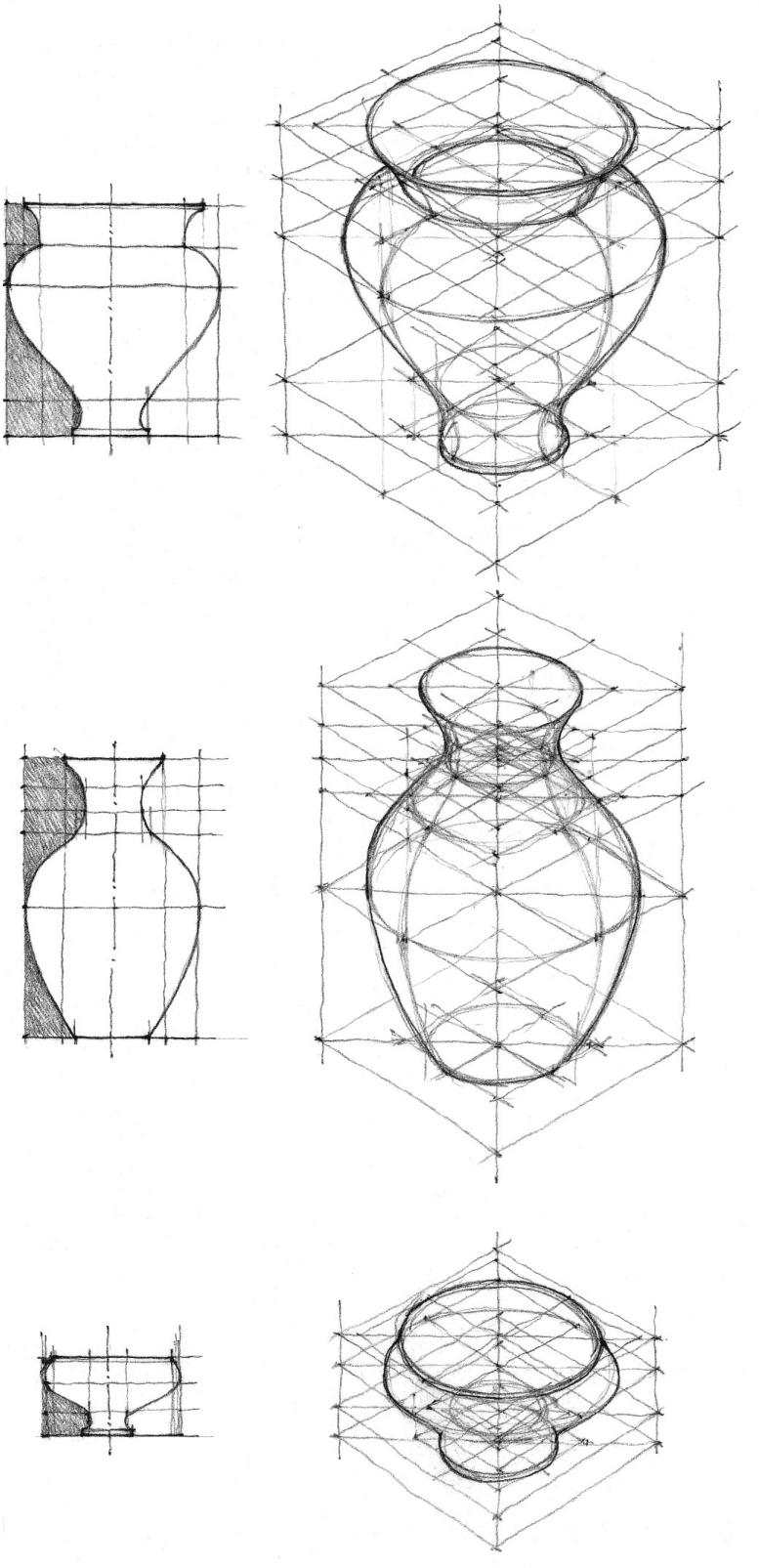
Exercise 3.2

Collect three or four empty cardboard boxes of various sizes. Pile them on the floor, with some fitting within the volumes of others. See the boxes as geometric forms having smooth rectangular planes intersecting along straight lines. Using the analytical process of drawing, describe the geometric forms of the boxes.

Exercise 3.3

Collect two glass bottles, one having a tall, cylindrical body and another having a square or rectilinear cross section. Arrange the bottles with one standing on its end and the other laying on its side. Using the analytical process of drawing, describe the geometric forms of the bottles. Pay careful attention to important axial and proportional relationships.

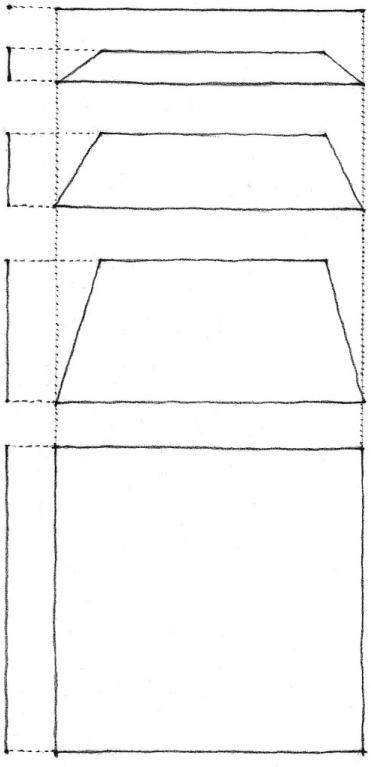




As we become more sensitive to the unique visual characteristics of what we see and draw, we should not lose sight of the total image. No single element in a drawing stands alone in the composition. All of the parts depend on one another for their visual impact, function, and meaning. To ensure things remain in their proper place and relationship to one another—to see both the trees and the forest and to avoid making mountains out of molehills—we must pay attention to proportion.

Proportion is the comparative, proper, or harmonious relation of one part to another or to the whole with respect to magnitude, quantity, or degree. Proportional relations are a matter of ratios, and ratio is the relationship between any two parts of a whole, or between any part and the whole. In seeing, we should pay attention to the proportional relationships that regulate our perception of size and shape.

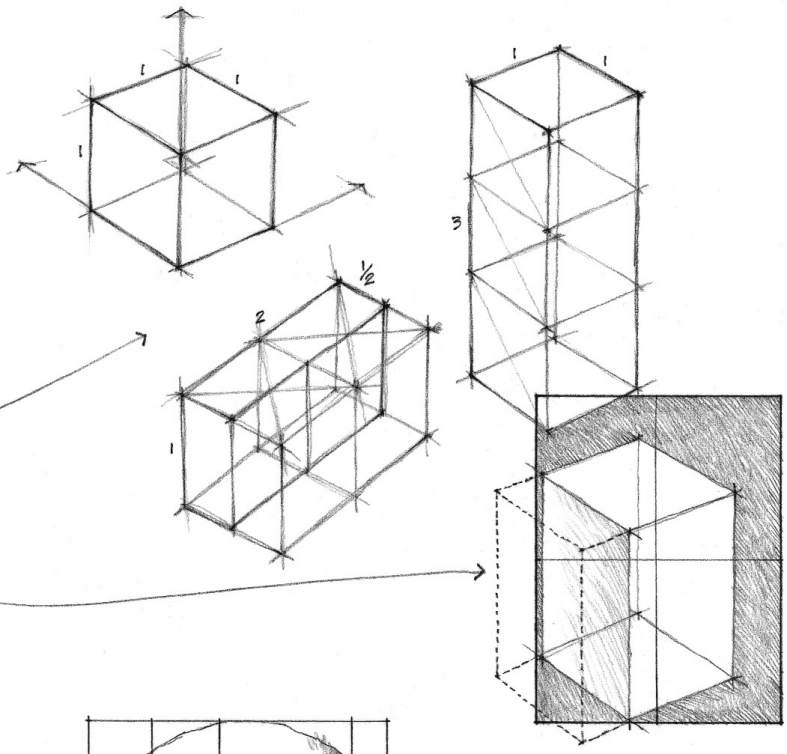
Although often defined in mathematical terms, proportion refers to any consistent set of visual relationships among the parts of a composition. It can be a useful design tool in promoting unity and harmony. Our perception of the physical dimensions of things is, however, often imprecise. The foreshortening of perspective, viewing distance, and even cultural bias can distort our perception.

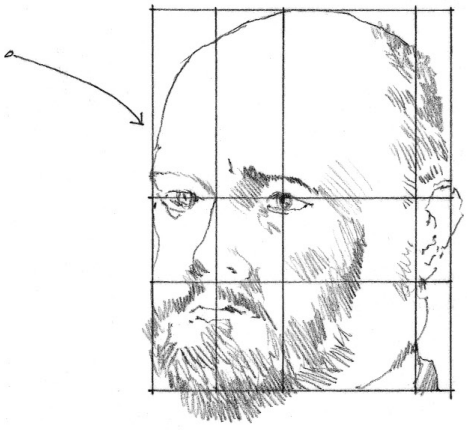


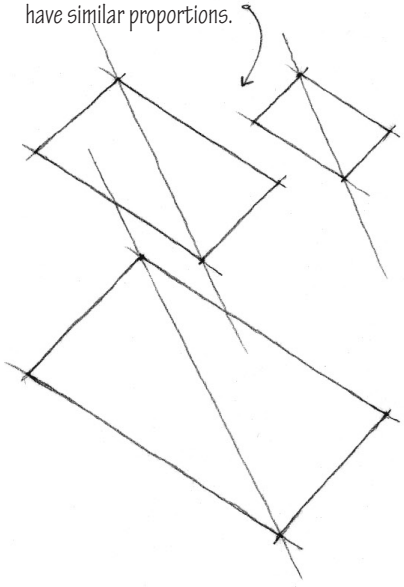
Proportion is primarily a matter of critical visual judgment. In this respect, significant differences in the relative dimensions of things are important. Ultimately, a proportion will appear to be correct for a given situation when we sense that neither too little nor too much of an element or characteristic is present.

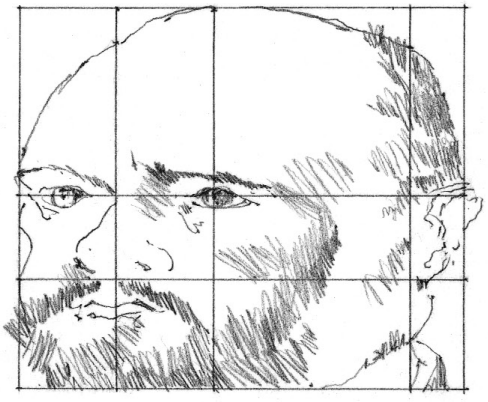
These are some important points to remember in gauging or using proportion in a drawing:

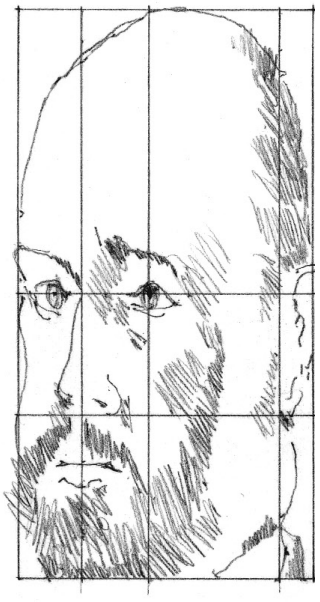
- The apparent size of an object is influenced by the relative size of other objects in its environment.
- When dealing with the form of volumes, we must be concerned with proportion in three dimensions.
- Verbalize the proportions as you draw to remind yourself of the proper ratios.
- Be careful not to rectify the shape to correspond to the shape of the format or the sheet of paper on which you are drawing.
- When drawing complex shapes, look for shapes you understand, such as squares.
- Even subtle changes in proportion can have a powerful effect on the visual identity and aesthetic quality of an image. Cartoonists use this deliberate distortion to advantage in creating caricatures.
- If the diagonals of two rectangles are either parallel or perpendicular to one another, they indicate the two shapes have similar proportions.



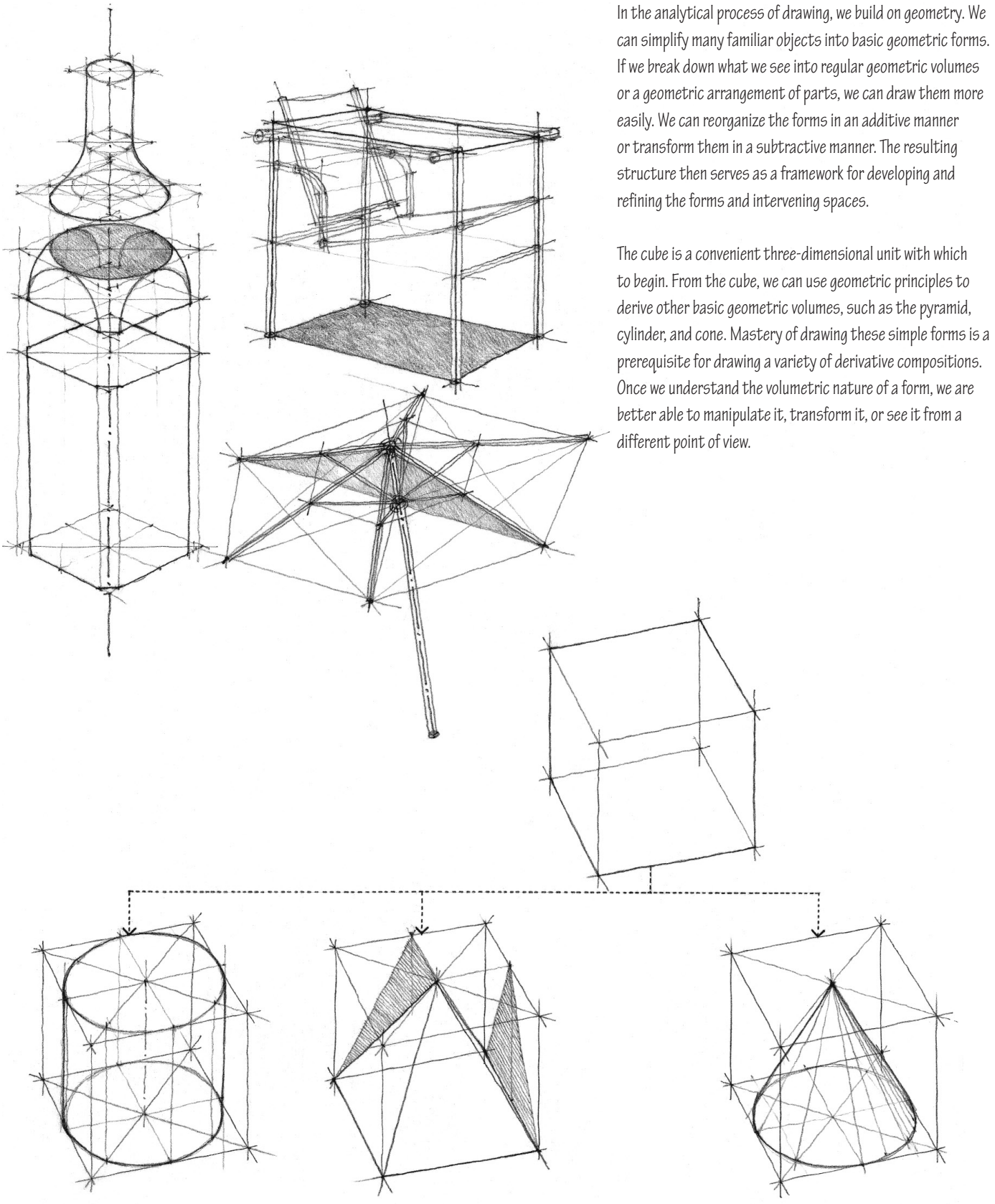








BUILDING ON GEOMETRY



In the analytical process of drawing, we build on geometry. We can simplify many familiar objects into basic geometric forms. If we break down what we see into regular geometric volumes or a geometric arrangement of parts, we can draw them more easily. We can reorganize the forms in an additive manner or transform them in a subtractive manner. The resulting structure then serves as a framework for developing and refining the forms and intervening spaces.

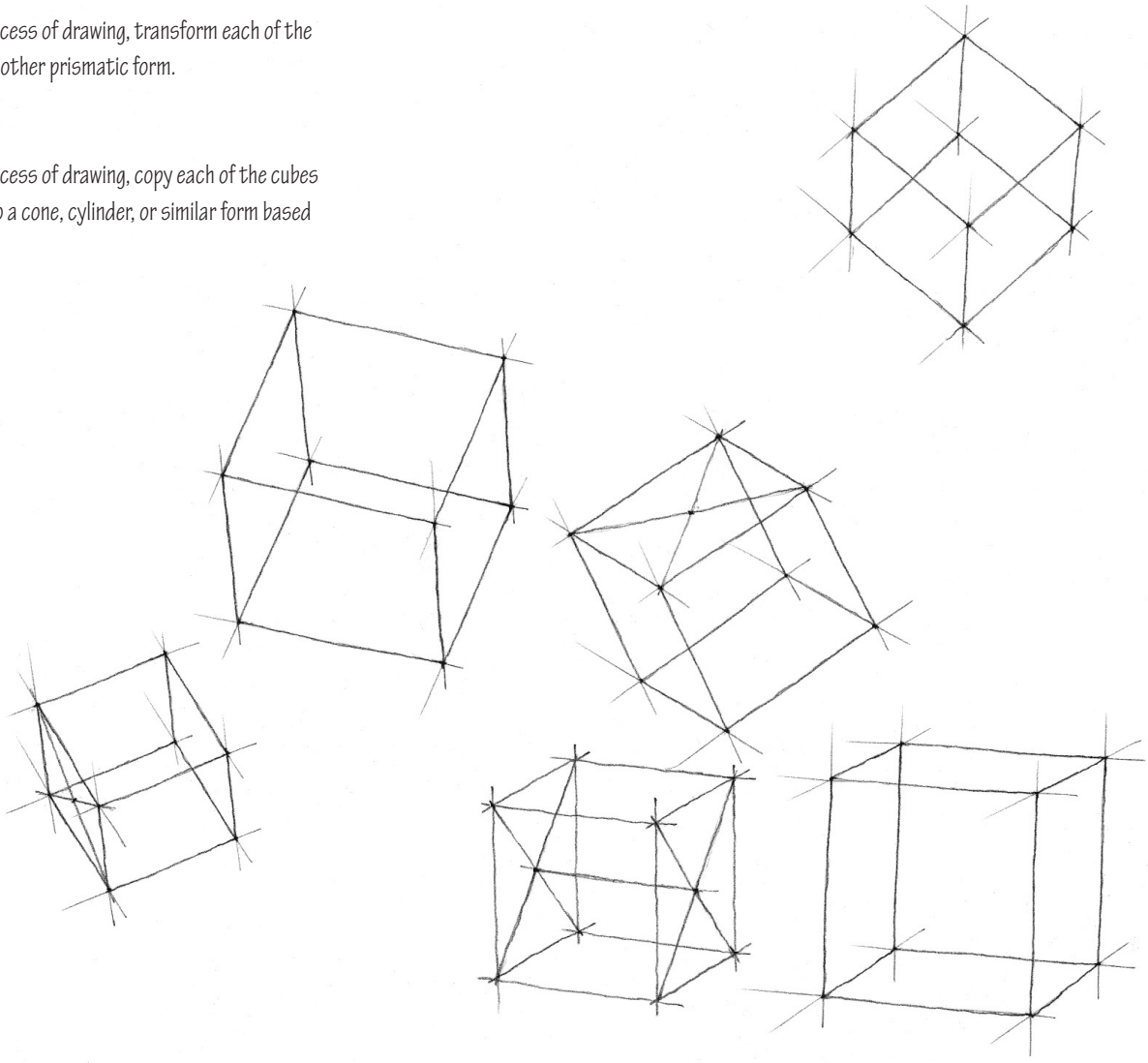
The cube is a convenient three-dimensional unit with which to begin. From the cube, we can use geometric principles to derive other basic geometric volumes, such as the pyramid, cylinder, and cone. Mastery of drawing these simple forms is a prerequisite for drawing a variety of derivative compositions. Once we understand the volumetric nature of a form, we are better able to manipulate it, transform it, or see it from a different point of view.

Exercise 3.4

Using the analytical process of drawing, transform each of the cubes into a pyramid or other prismatic form.

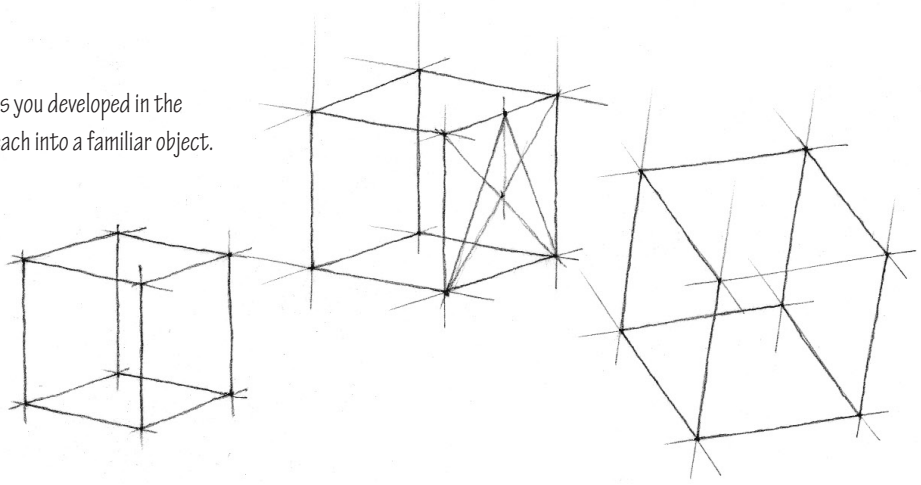
Exercise 3.5

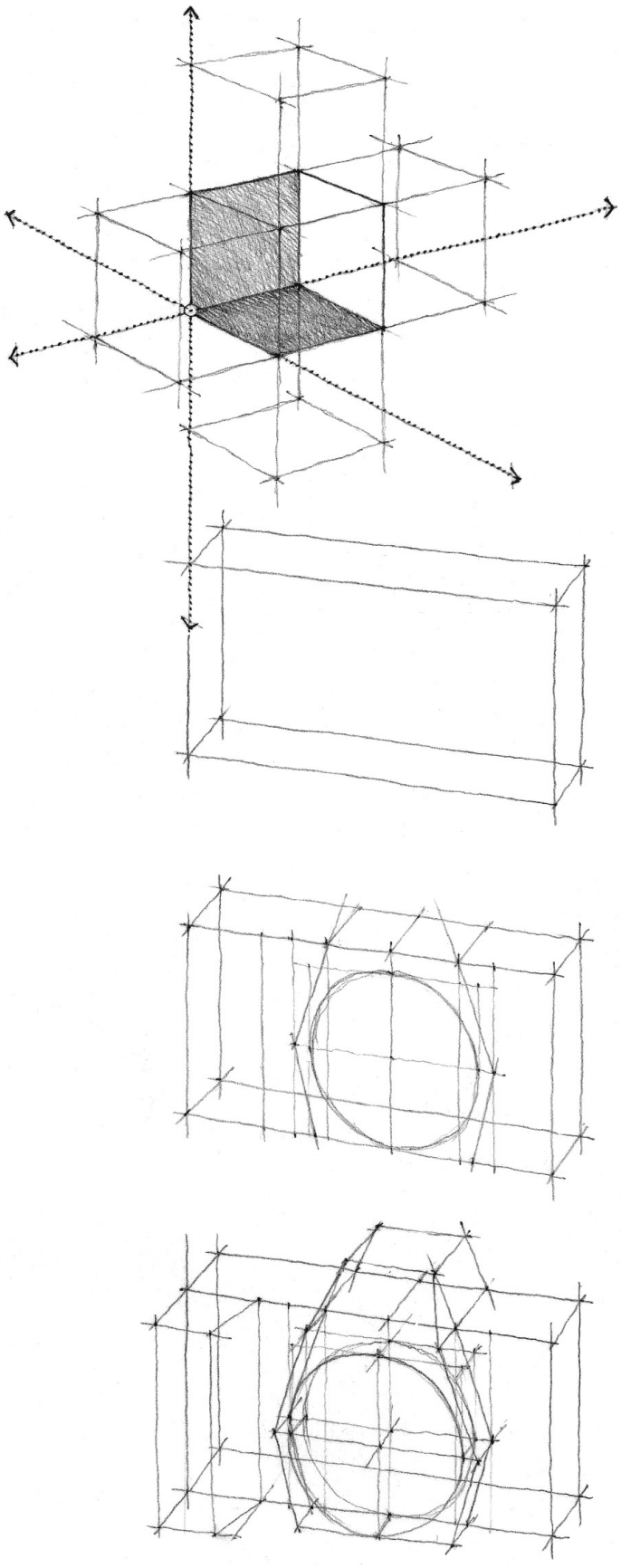
Using the analytical process of drawing, copy each of the cubes and transform each into a cone, cylinder, or similar form based on the circle.



Exercise 3.6

Building on the geometry of the forms you developed in the preceding two exercises, transform each into a familiar object.

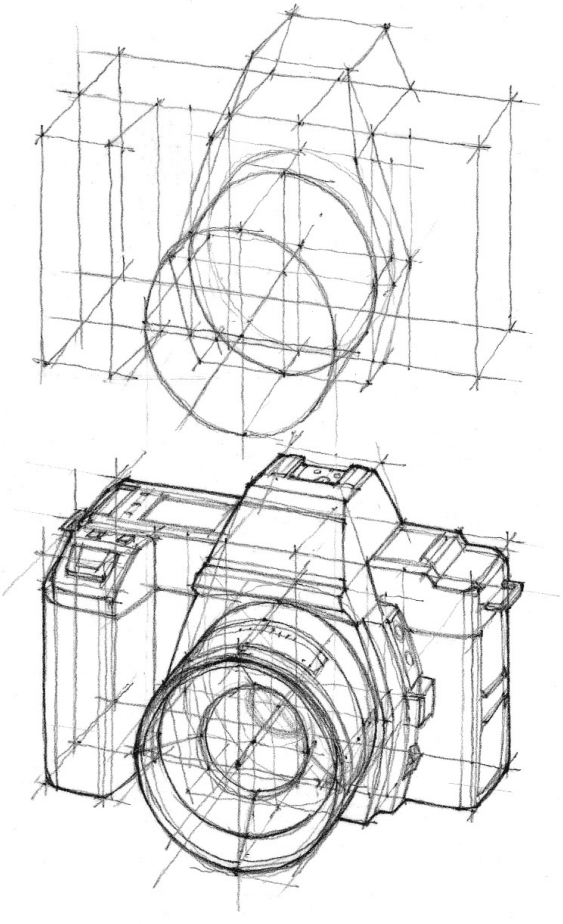




Additive Forms

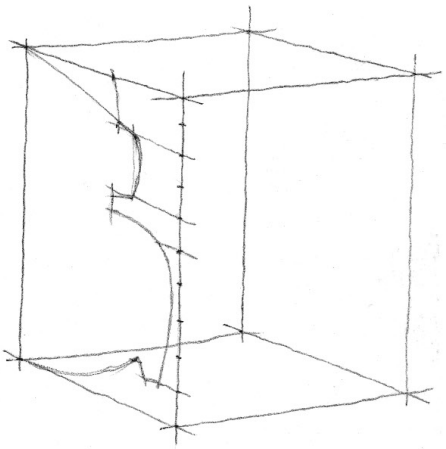
We can extend a cube horizontally, vertically, and into the depth of a drawing. A number of cubic volumes or derivative forms can link, extend, or grow along axes and tangents into centralized, linear, symmetrical, or clustered compositions.

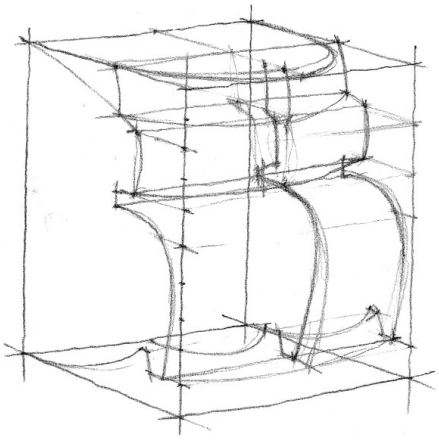
We can also extend the base of a cube into a two-dimensional grid upon which we can explore relationships of shape and size. A grid may consist of dots, lines, or shapes. Dots are subtle reminders of position. Lines represent the vertical and the horizontal, and regulate the spacing of elements. Shapes define areas and emphasize space rather than position.

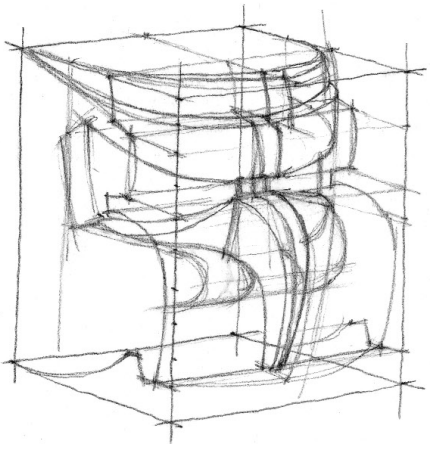


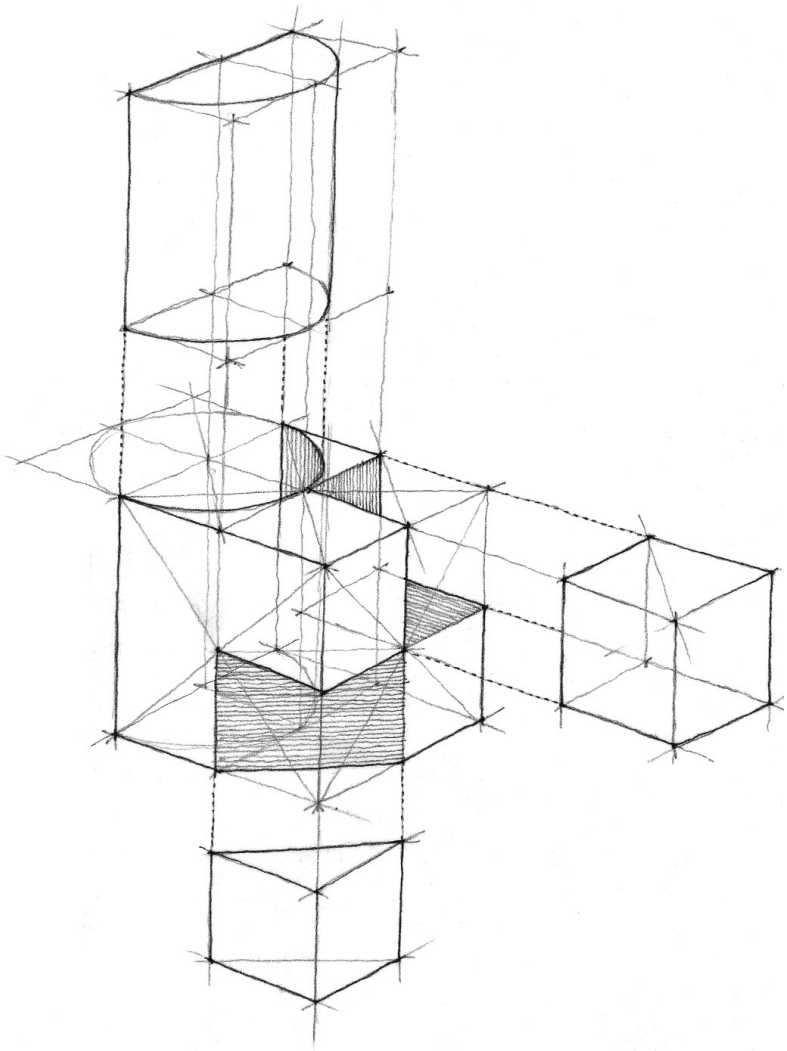
Subtractive Forms

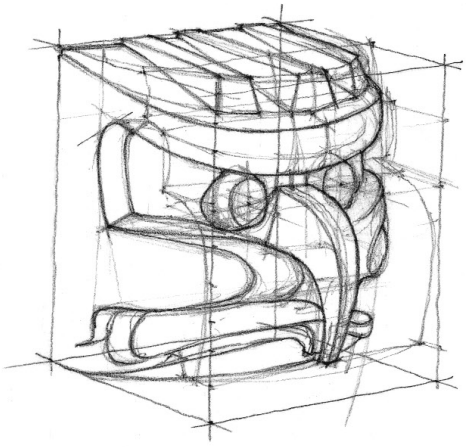
Working from a simple, regular form, we can selectively remove or carve out portions to generate a new form. In this subtractive process, we use the solid-void relationship between mass and space to guide us as we draw the proportion and development of the parts. The procedure is similar to a sculptor who projects a mental image onto a block of stone and systematically carves away material until the image is realized.

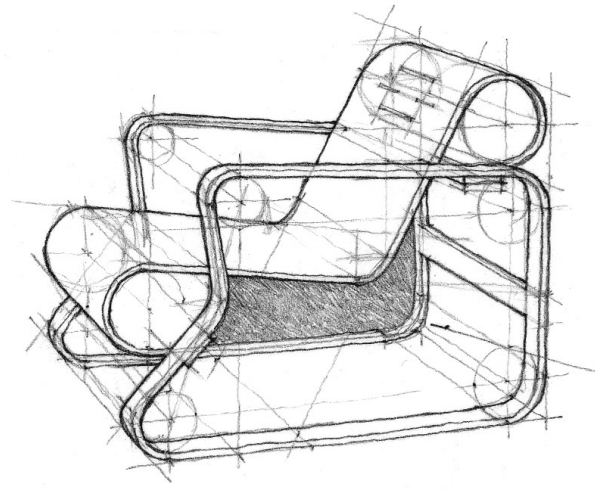










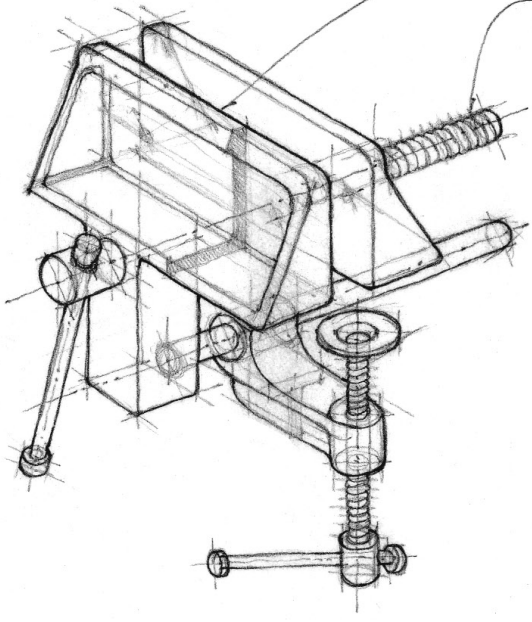


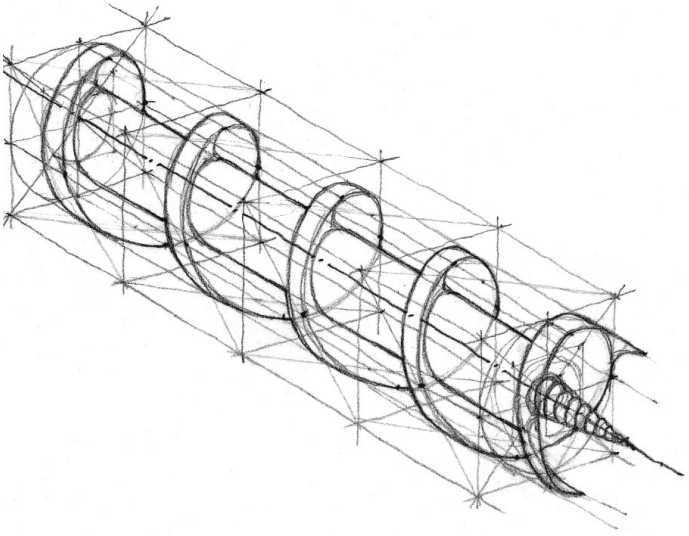
Complex Forms

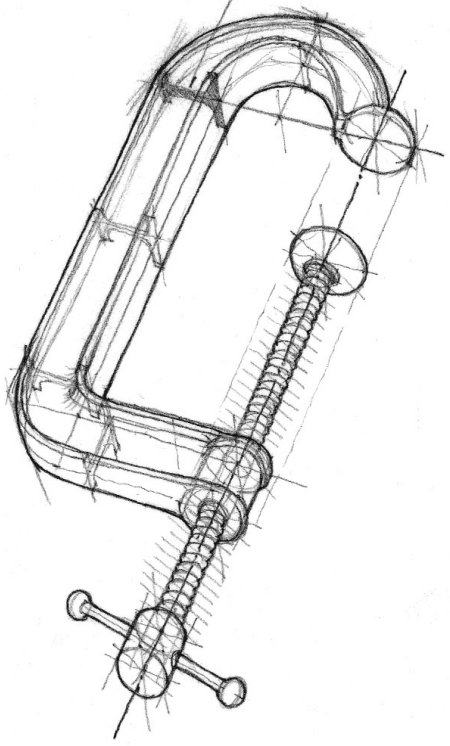
When drawing a complex organization of forms, we can work in both an additive and a subtractive manner. The resulting formal and spatial composition is usually an outcome of structure, whether physical, visually perceived, or conceptual. In this process of seeking structure, we must first create the organizing framework before filling out and refining the image.

In drawing complex forms, keep the following points in mind:

- Pay close attention to overlapping forms and negative spaces in the composition.
- Distinguish overlapping forms with linear accents.
- Subordinate details to the overall form.
- Use scattered lines to indicate the transitional surfaces of curved forms.
- Use cross-sectional contours to develop the form of complicated shapes. These imaginary slices strengthen the three-dimensional effect of the drawing and show the volume of the object.





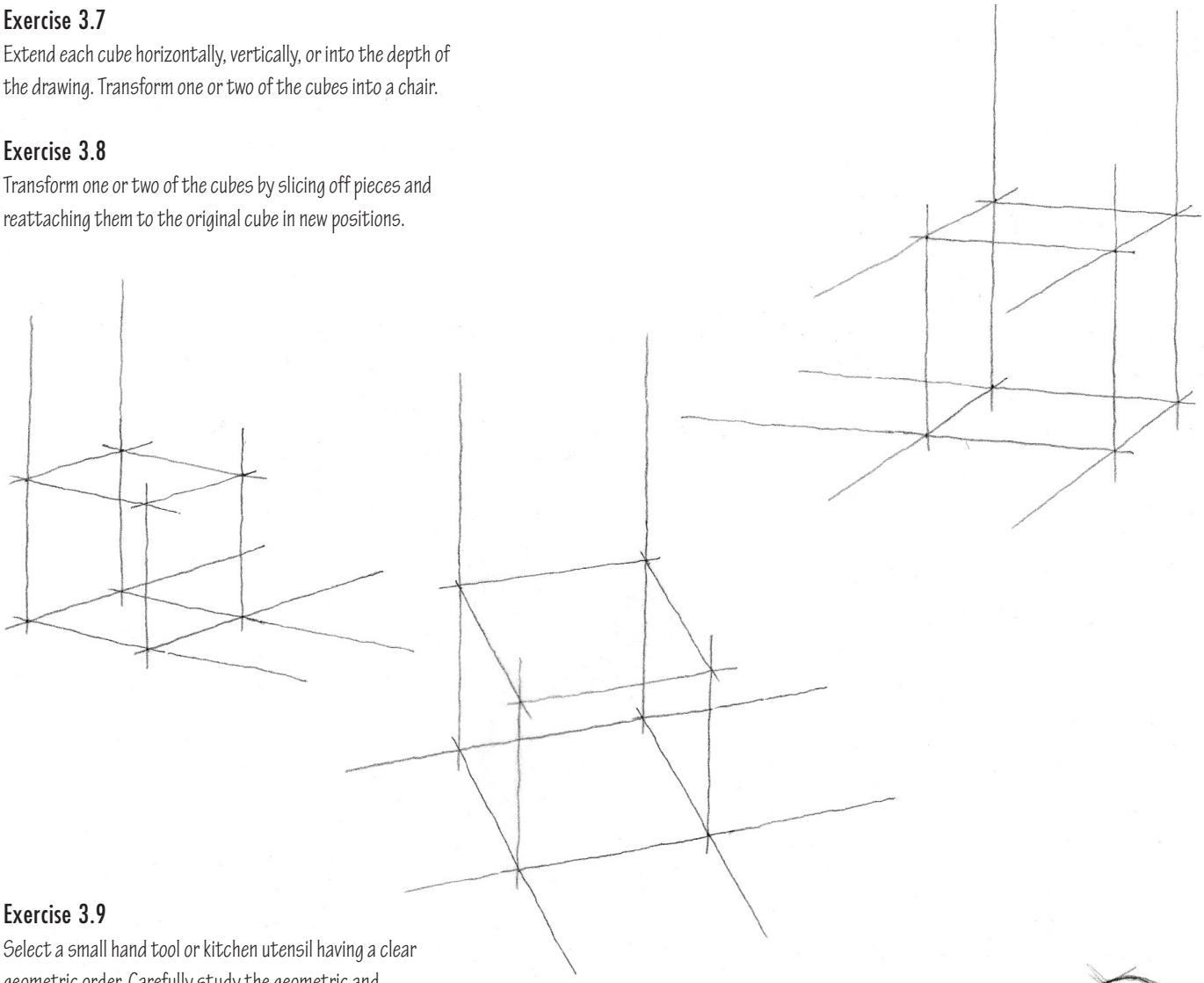


Exercise 3.7

Extend each cube horizontally, vertically, or into the depth of the drawing. Transform one or two of the cubes into a chair.

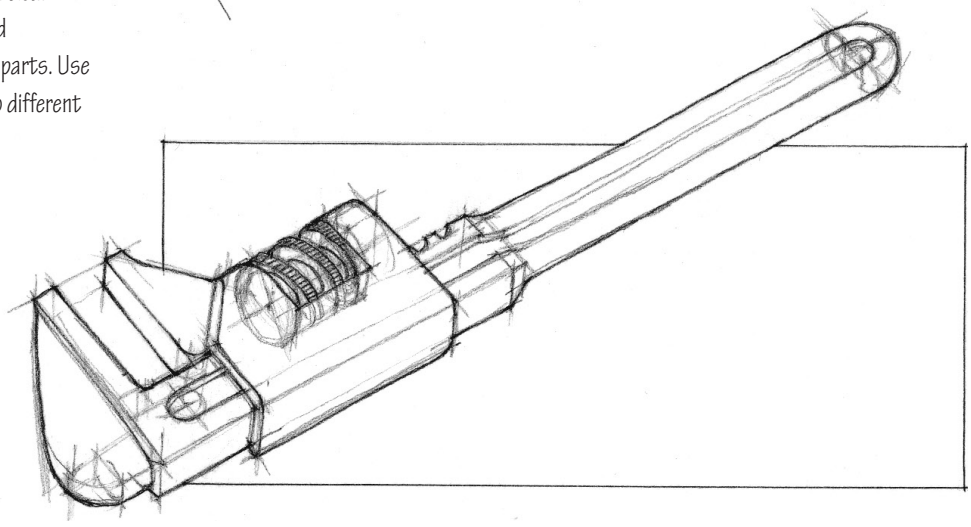
Exercise 3.8

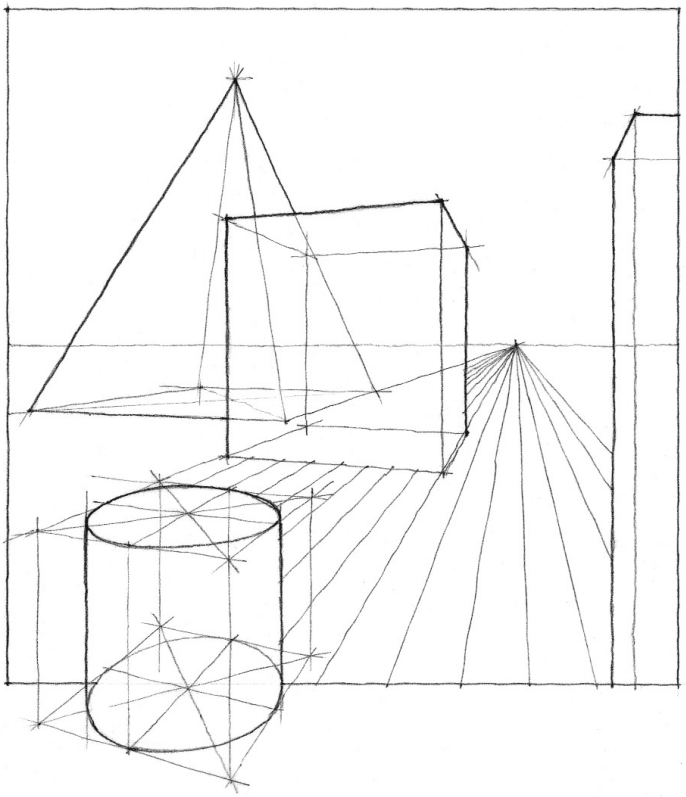
Transform one or two of the cubes by slicing off pieces and reattaching them to the original cube in new positions.



Exercise 3.9

Select a small hand tool or kitchen utensil having a clear geometric order. Carefully study the geometric and proportional relationships among the constituent parts. Use the analytical process to draw the object from two different points of view.

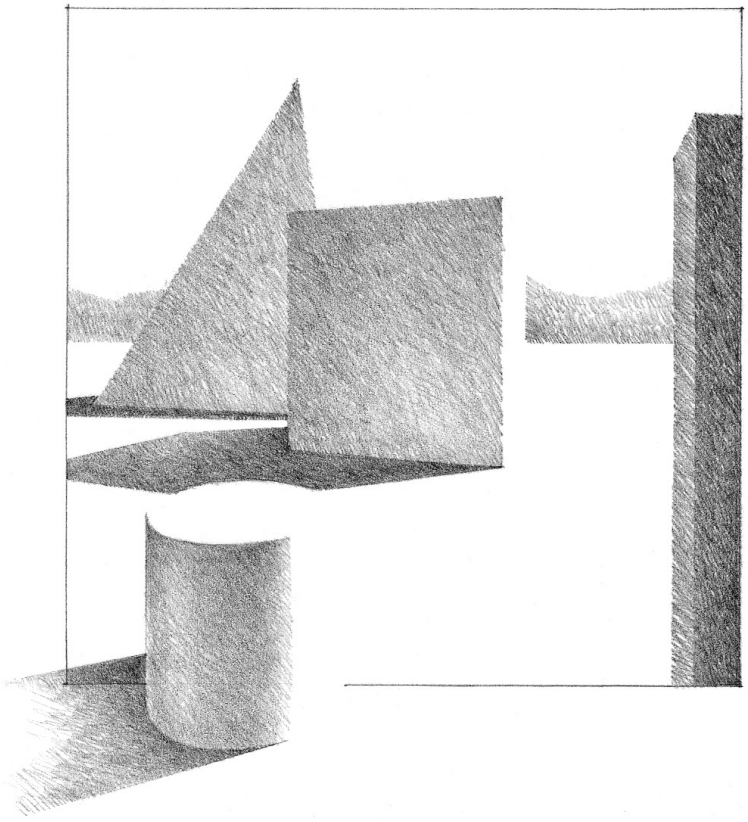


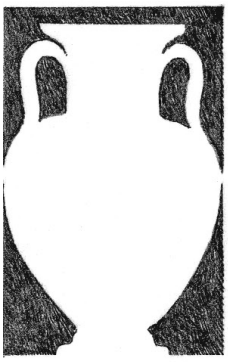


4

Space and Depth

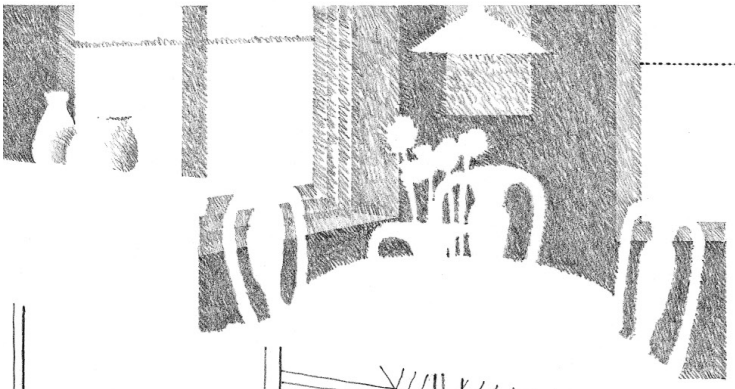
We live in a three-dimensional world of objects and space. Solid objects occupy, define the limits of, and give form to space. Space, on the other hand, surrounds and colors our vision of objects. A fundamental challenge in drawing is how to convey the existence of three-dimensional objects in space by describing lines, shapes, and tonal values on a flat, two-dimensional surface.

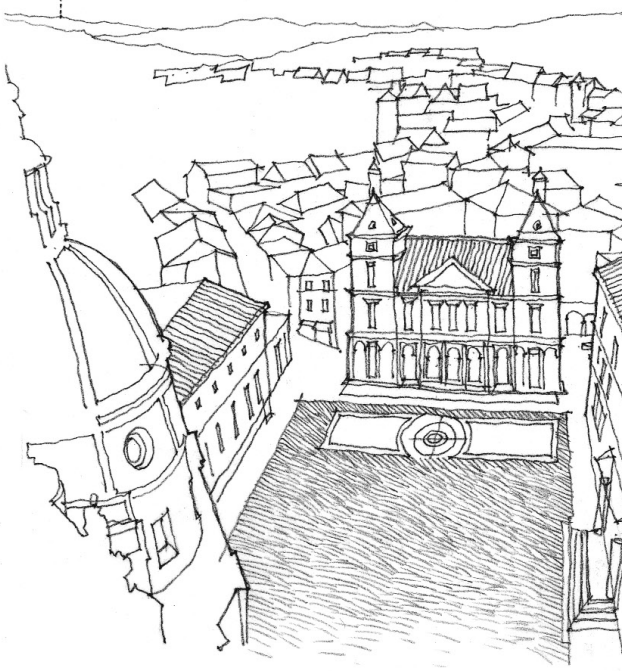




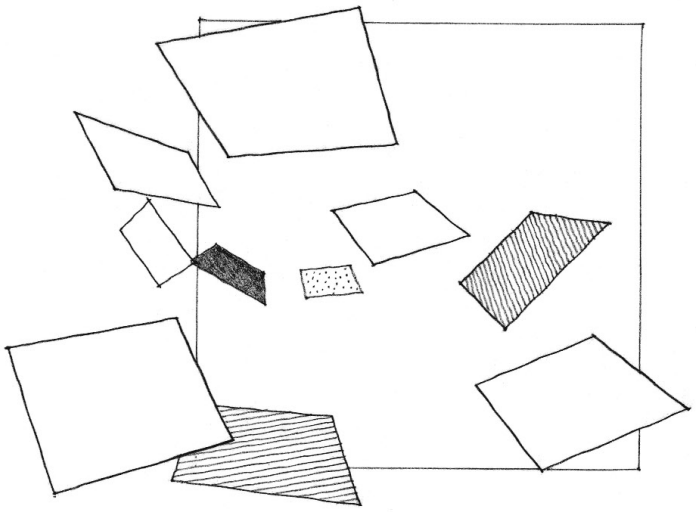
Objects not only occupy a volume of space. They also stand in space in relation to one another and their surroundings. Just as figures and their background comprise a unity of opposites on a two-dimensional surface, solid masses and spatial volumes together constitute the three-dimensional reality of our environment. The symbiotic relationship of solid mass and spatial volume in environmental design can be examined and found to exist at several scales.

- At the scale of an object, a solid-void relationship exists between the form of a solid mass and the volume of space occupied by or contained within it.
- At the scale of a room, the solid-void relationship occurs between the form of the space contained by walls, ceiling and floor, and the forms of objects contained within the space.
- At the scale of a building, we perceive the solid-void relationship between the configurations of walls, ceilings and floors, and the forms and pattern of the spaces they define.
- At an urban scale, the solid-void relationship emerges between the form of a building and the spatial context within which it exists, whether it continues the existing fabric of a place, forms a backdrop for other buildings, defines an urban space, or stands free as an object in space.



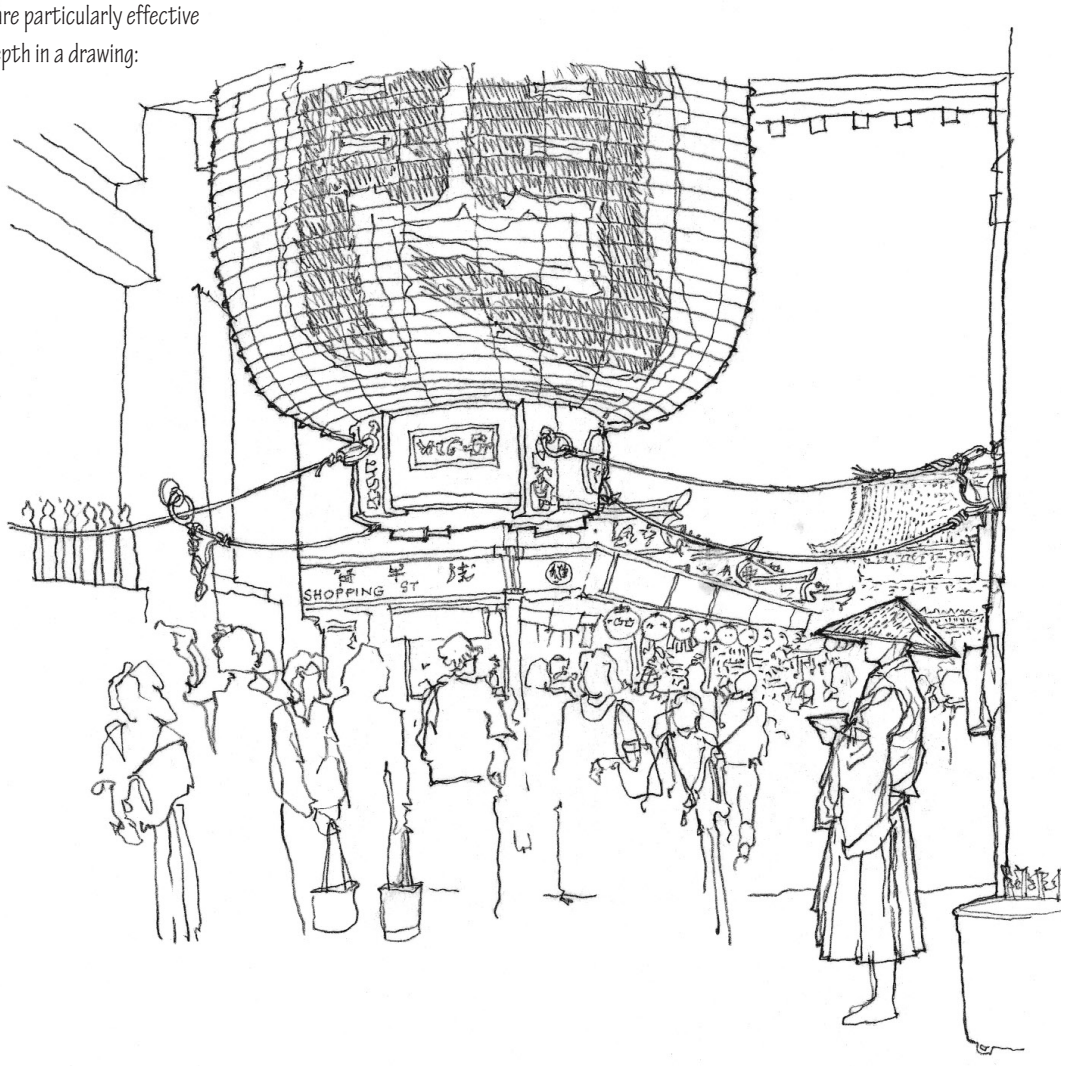


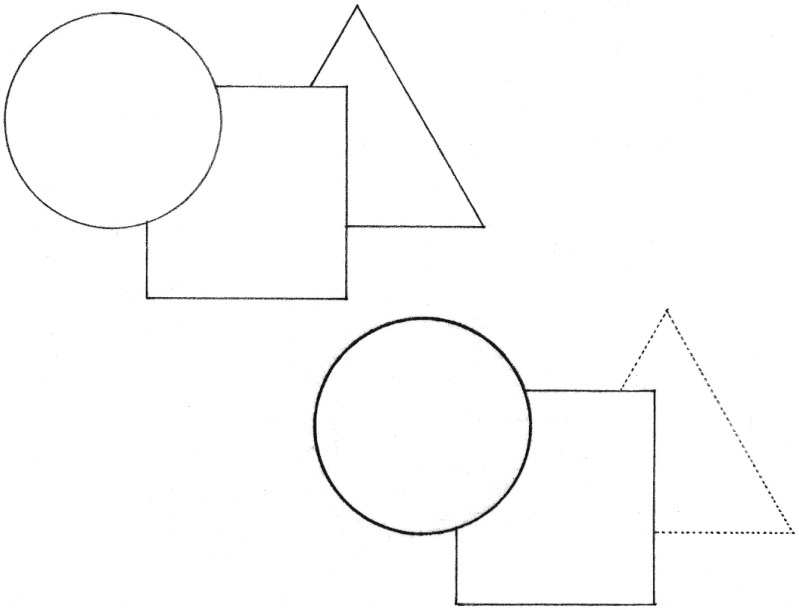
Pictorial space is the illusion of space or depth depicted on a two-dimensional surface by various graphic means. This pictorial space may be flat, deep, or ambiguous, but in all cases, it is illusory. Certain arrangements of lines, shapes, values, and textures on a drawing surface, however, can trigger the perception of a three-dimensional world by our visual system. If we understand how we infer three-dimensional form and space in what we see, we can use this information to make the drawn image of an object appear flat or volumetric. We can project the image forward toward the viewer or recede deeply into the depth of a drawing. We can, on a two-dimensional surface, establish and illuminate the three-dimensional relationships between objects.

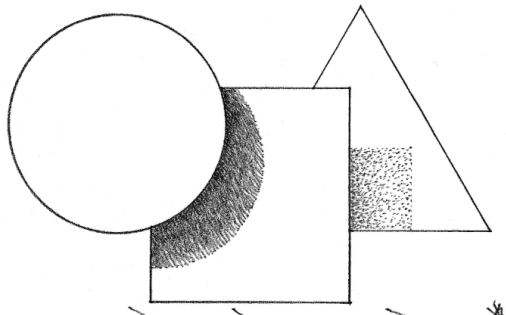


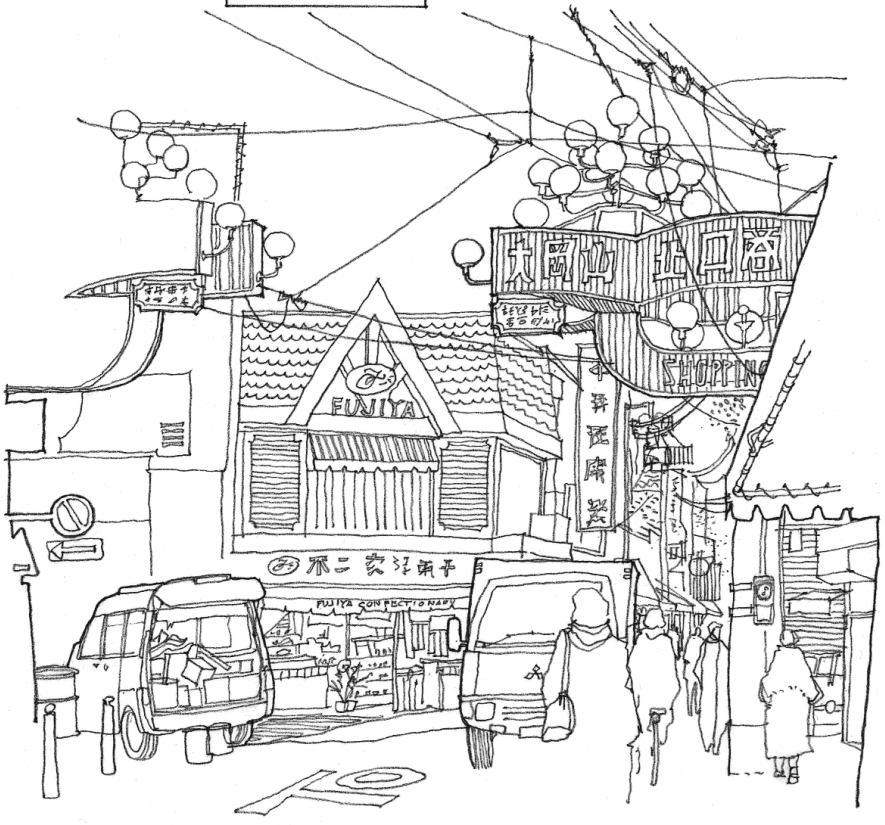
In *The Perception of the Visual World*, the psychologist James J. Gibson identifies 13 varieties of perspective. Gibson uses the term *perspective* to describe various "sensory shifts"—visual impressions that accompany our perception of depth over a continuous surface. Of these 13, nine are particularly effective in provoking the illusion of space and depth in a drawing:

- Continuity of outline
- Size perspective
- Vertical location in the visual field
- Linear perspective
- Atmospheric perspective
- Perspective of blur
- Texture perspective
- Shift of texture or linear spacing
- Transitions between light and shade









Continuity of Outline

Continuity of the outline of an object helps us identify its depth relative to other objects in our visual field. A shape having a continuous outline visibly disrupts or obscures the profile of an object behind it. Therefore, we tend to perceive any shape having a complete outline as being in front of and concealing from our view a part of the shape behind it. Since this visual phenomenon relies on nearer objects overlaying or projecting in front of objects farther away, we often refer to the depth cue simply as overlap.

By itself, overlap tends to create relatively shallow intervals of space. However, we can achieve a greater sense of intervening space and depth if we combine overlap with other depth cues, such as atmospheric perspective or a shift in texture, and upward location in the visual field.

For example, we can enhance the spatial effect of overlapping shapes by varying the line weights of a pure-line drawing. Darker and thicker profile or contour lines tend to advance and appear to be in front of lighter and thinner outlines.

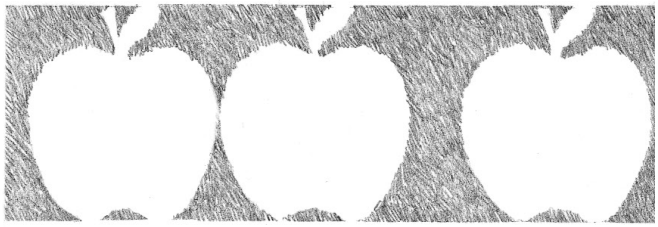
In a similar manner, any shift in texture or sharp contrast in tonal value along an overlapping edge amplifies the perception that space intervenes between two overlapping shapes.

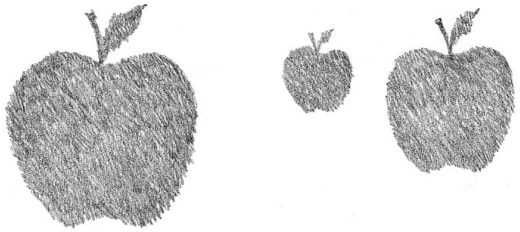
Size Perspective

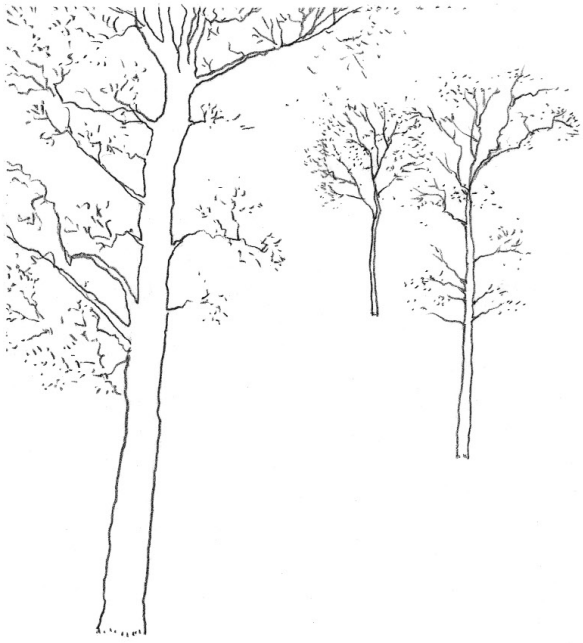
Size perspective refers to the apparent reduction in size of an object as it moves farther away from us. Our perception of size differences is based on the phenomenon known as size or object constancy, which leads us to imagine categories of objects as being uniform in size with constant color and texture. If we understand or know two objects to be the same size, but they appear to be different in size, then the larger will seem to be nearer than its smaller counterpart.

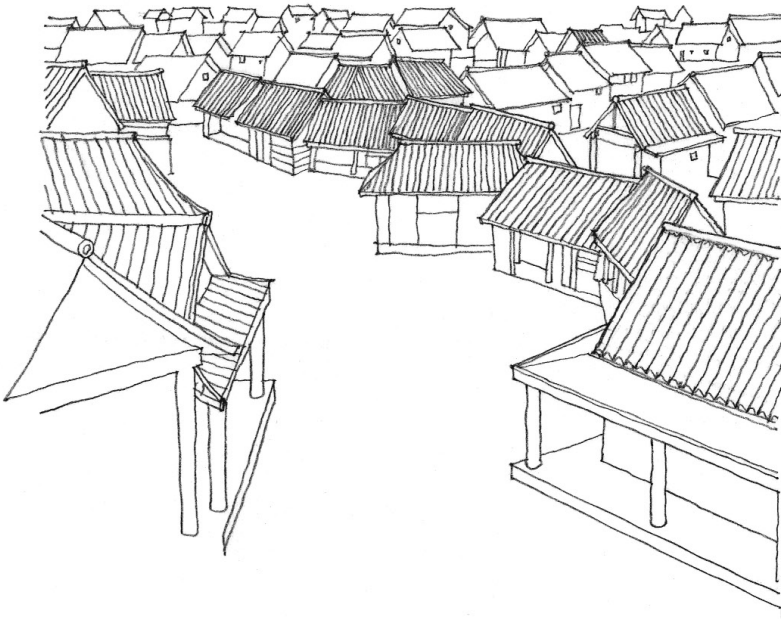
In reading size differences to assess scale and depth in a drawing, we must base our visual judgment on objects of known size, such as human figures, or on objects of similar size in the visual field, such as a series of windows, tables, or lamp posts.

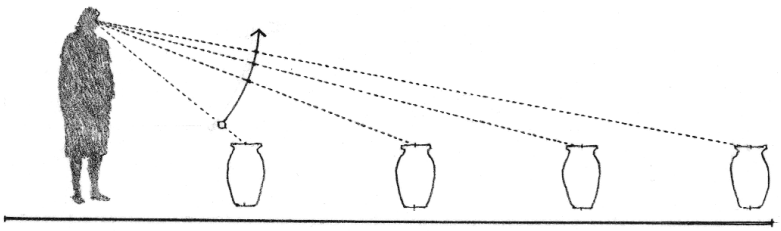
Consider this example. When we observe two people, we naturally assume they are approximately the same height and possess similar proportions. If in a photograph or drawing we perceive one to be discernibly larger than the other, we conclude the smaller image represents a person that is more distant than the other. Otherwise, one would be a child and the other an adult.

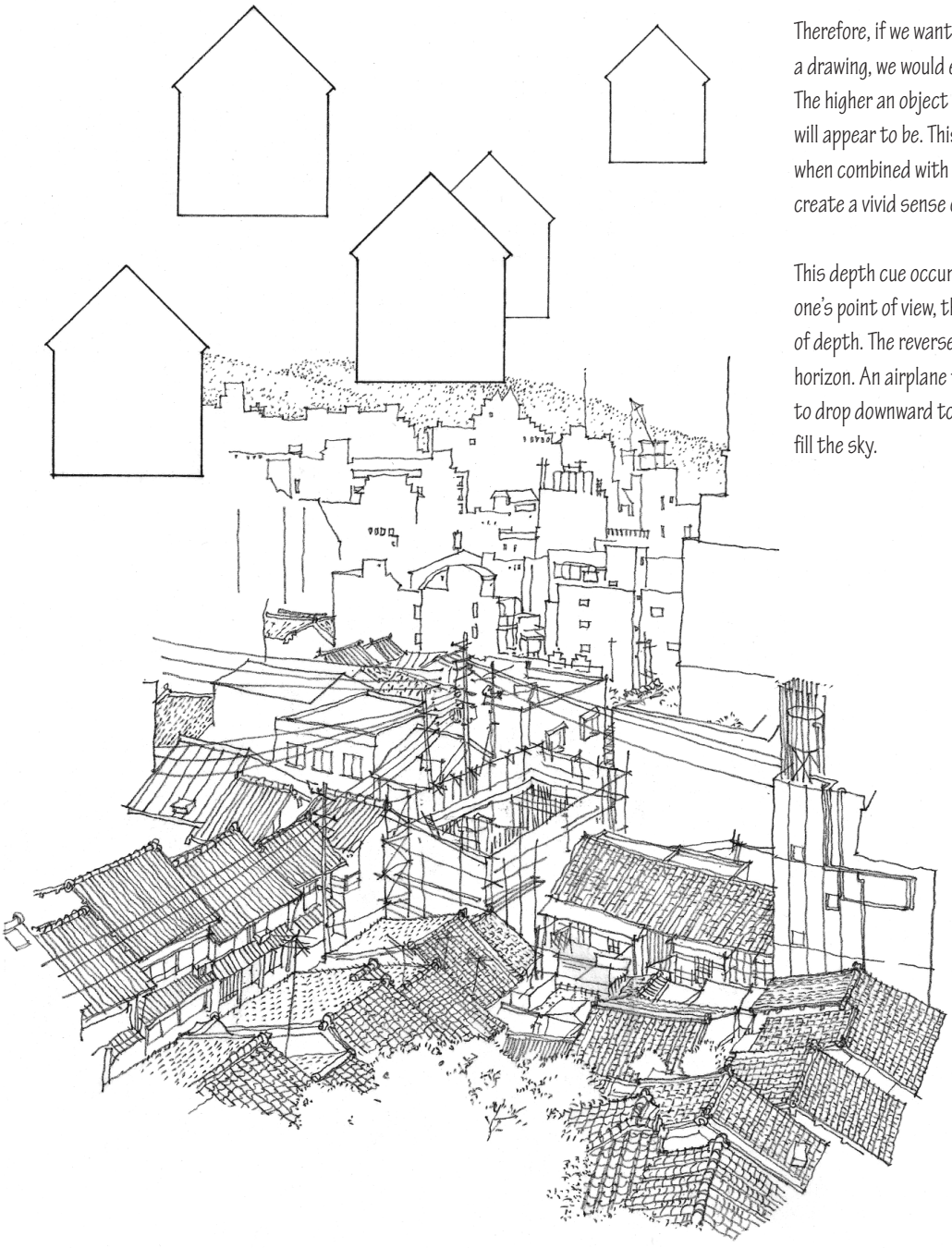












Vertical Location in the Visual Field

The vertical location of an object in a visual field is a cue to its distance from the observer. One typically looks down on objects that are close and up at objects that are farther away.

Imagine standing on a level plot of ground. The ground plane appears to move upward toward the horizon as it recedes into the distance. We would look down to view an object at our feet. To track the object as it moves farther away, our gaze would have to shift gradually upward or higher in our visual field.

Therefore, if we want to convey something as being distant in a drawing, we would elevate its position in the composition. The higher an object is in the picture plane, the farther away it will appear to be. This creates a stacked series of images that, when combined with both size differences and overlapping, can create a vivid sense of depth and space.

This depth cue occurs naturally in linear perspective. The higher one's point of view, the more pronounced the pictorial effect of depth. The reverse occurs for objects that exist above the horizon. An airplane flying a level path away from us will appear to drop downward toward the horizon, as will the clouds that fill the sky.

Exercise 4.1

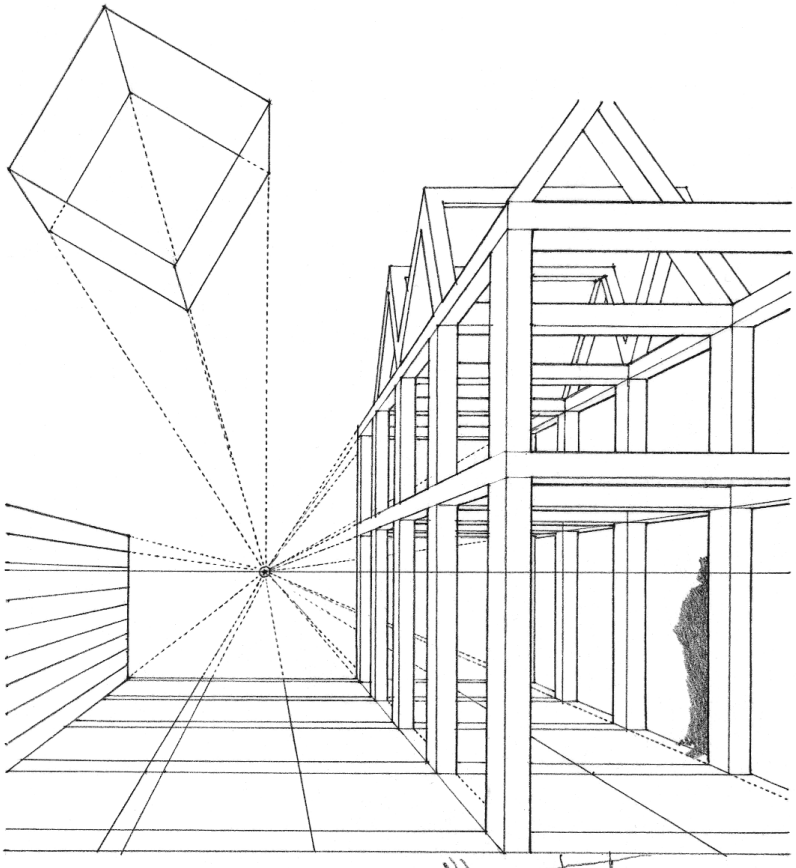
Analyze the photograph below for examples of overlap indicating which objects are closer and which are farther away. Lay a sheet of tracing paper over the photograph and draw the examples you discover.

Exercise 4.2

Repeat the above exercise, but this time search for examples of size perspective indicating which objects are closer and which are farther away.

Exercise 4.3

Repeat Exercise 4.1, but this time search for examples of vertical location indicating which objects are closer and which are farther away.



Linear Perspective

Linear perspective properly refers to a specific drawing system derived from perspective projection. As a depth cue, linear perspective relies on its chief pictorial characteristic—the apparent convergence of parallel lines to a common vanishing point as they recede into the distance.

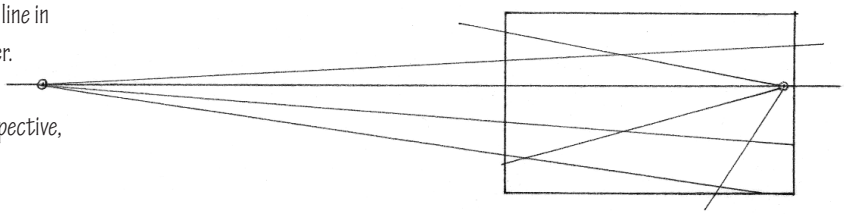
The pictorial effect of convergence is visible in almost any photograph or perspective drawing. There is, of course, the familiar sight of railroad tracks drawing closer together as they extend toward the horizon. It is fairly easy to recognize the parallel but converging lines of walls, windows, railings, or a pavement pattern, all of which can evoke a compelling sense of depth in a drawing.

The laws of linear perspective incorporate the phenomena of reduced size and diminished spacing that give rise to both texture and size perspective. In fact, the convergence of parallel lines in linear perspective often helps regulate the pictorial effects of texture and size perspective.

For a more detailed discussion of this drawing system and its pictorial effects, see Chapter 8.

Exercise 4.4

Analyze the photograph below for examples of convergence of parallel lines. Make a photocopy of the photograph and lay a large sheet of tracing paper over it. Draw the lines that are parallel in space and appear to converge in linear perspective. Extend them until they meet at their respective vanishing points. Note that there are two major sets of horizontal lines, one converging toward the left and the other converging toward the right. Connecting the vanishing points for each set should establish a horizontal line in the drawing that represents the horizon line of the observer.



How many examples of the depth cues of overlap, size perspective, and vertical location can you find in the photograph?

Exercise 4.5

Find a window that looks onto a scene exhibiting lines that are parallel in space. How many sets of converging parallel lines can you observe?

Tape a sheet of acetate to the glass. Focus on a point in the scene, hold your head steady, and maintain a level line of sight. With one eye closed, use a pen that will mark on the acetate to draw the sets of parallel lines you observe. Extend them to see if each set meets at a common vanishing point.

Atmospheric Perspective

Atmospheric perspective refers to the progressive muting of hues, tonal values, and contrast that occurs with increasing distance from the observer. Objects seen up close in the foreground of our visual field typically possess saturated colors and sharply defined contrasts in value. As they move farther away, their colors become lighter and more subdued, and their tonal contrasts more diffuse. In the background, we see mainly shapes of grayed tones and muted hues.

These apparent changes in color and definition result from the diffusing quality of dust particles or pollution in the intervening atmosphere between viewer and object. This haze obscures the colors and distinctness of more distant forms. Since atmospheric perspective represents the combined effect of distance and the quality of the air that separates an object from the observer, it is also referred to as aerial perspective. This term should not be confused with a linear perspective drawn from an aerial point of view.

The graphic technique for rendering atmospheric perspective involves executing scaled variations of color and tone.

To move objects back:

- mute colors
- lighten values
- soften contrast

To bring objects forward:

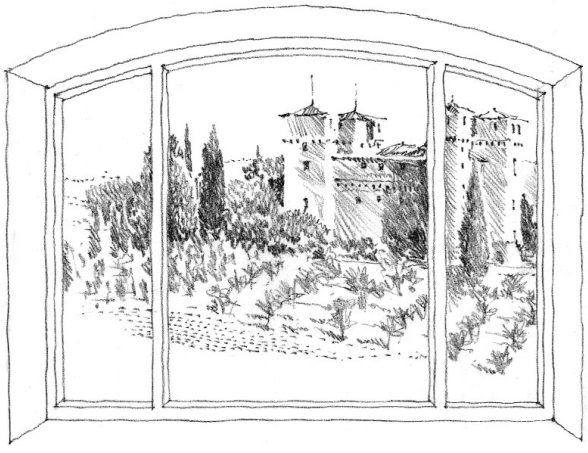
- saturate colors
- darken values
- sharpen contrast

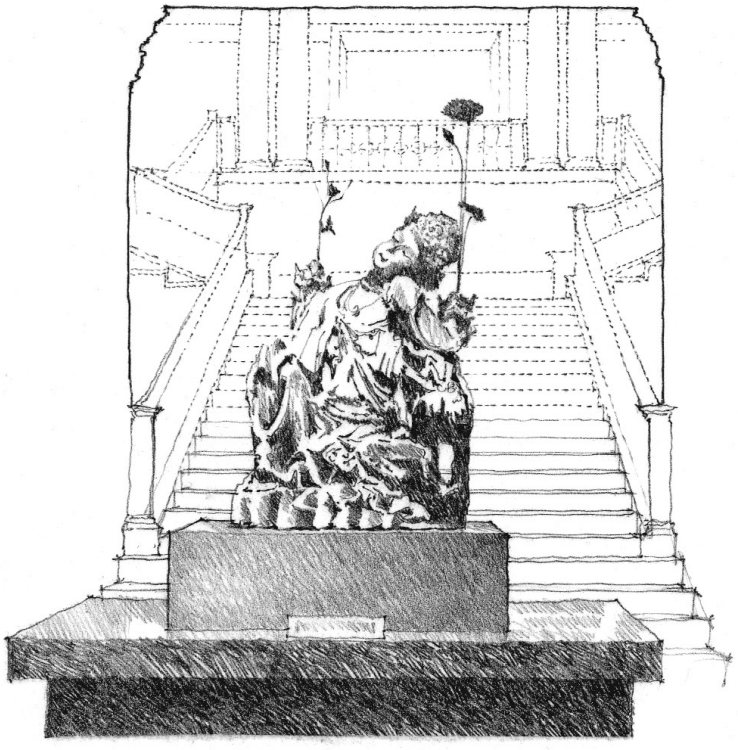
Perspective of Blur

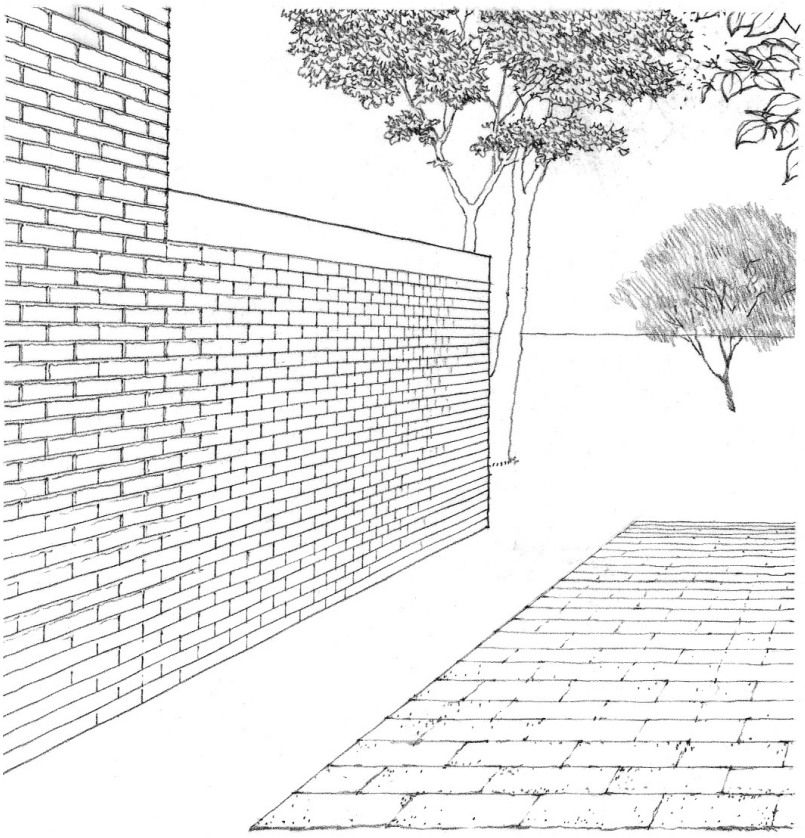
Perspective of blur refers to the indistinct form or outline of objects in any visual plane other than the one on which the eyes are focused. This depth cue reflects the fact that we normally associate clarity of vision with nearness and blurring of outlines with farness.

When we focus on an object within our visual field, there exists a range of distances through which we see sharply defined images. Within this depth of field, we see the edges, contours, and details of objects clearly. Beyond this range, the shape and form of objects appear less distinct and more diffuse. This visual phenomenon is closely related to and often incorporated into the pictorial effects of atmospheric perspective.

Critical to the reading of perspective blur in a drawing is a discernible contrast between the sharply defined edges and contours of foreground elements and the more indistinct shapes that occur in the background. The graphic equivalent of perspective blur is a diminishing or diffusion of the edges and contours of more distant objects. We can use either a lightly drawn line or a broken or dotted line to delineate these edges of shapes and contours of forms that exist beyond the focus of a drawing.







Texture Perspective

Texture perspective refers to the gradual increase in the density of the texture of a surface as it recedes into the distance. The texture gradient that we perceive on a receding surface results from the continuous reduction in size and diminished spacing of the elements that comprise the surface texture.

Consider this example. When we view a brick wall up close, we can discern the individual bricks as well as the thickness of the mortar joints. As the wall surface recedes in perspective, the brick units diminish in size and the mortar joints appear simply as lines. As the wall continues to recede still farther, the brick surface becomes denser and consolidates into a tonal value.

The graphic technique for depicting the visual phenomenon of texture perspective involves gradually diminishing the size, proportion, and spacing of the graphic elements used to portray a surface texture or pattern, whether they be dots, lines, or shapes of tonal values. Proceed from identifying units in the foreground to delineating a textured pattern in the middleground, and finally to rendering a tonal value in the background. Strive for smooth transitions and be careful that the resulting tonal values do not negate the principles of atmospheric perspective.

Exercise 4.6

Draw the scene in the photograph below. Use the depth cue of atmospheric perspective to convey a sense of depth as one moves from the passage in the foreground to the gateway in the middleground and finally to the space beyond.

Exercise 4.7

Redraw the scene in the photograph, but this time focus on the middleground and use perspective of blur to provoke a sense of depth in the scene.

Exercise 4.8

Analyze the photograph for examples of texture perspective. Can you also find examples of size perspective and overlap in the photograph? Draw the scene a third time, employing these depth cues to convey the illusion of space and depth in your drawing.

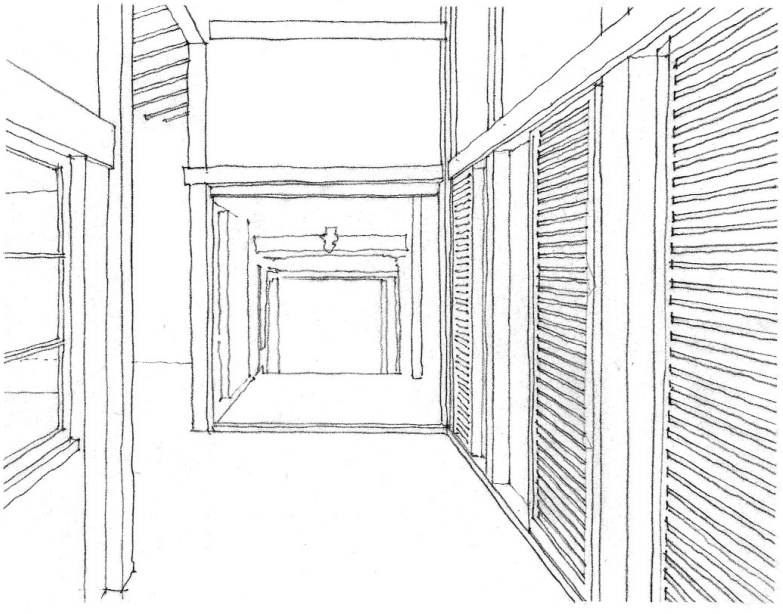
Shift of Texture or Linear Spacing

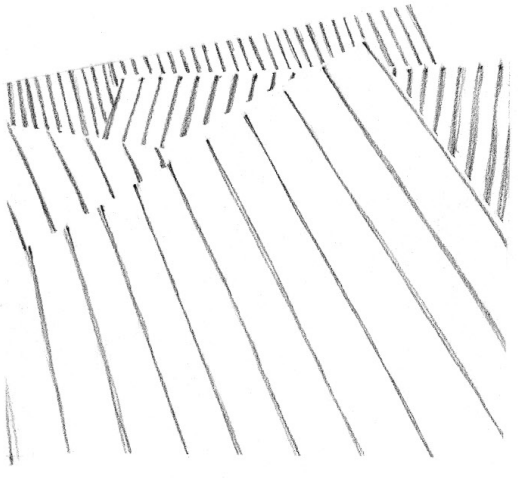
A discernible shift of texture or linear spacing conveys an interval of space between foreground and background. The degree of change depends on the actual distance that exists between the surface or object nearer to us and a more distant one.

Consider this example. We see the individual leaves of a tree that is close to us, but perceive the foliage of a tree farther away as a textured aggregate of leaves. Trees in the distance emerge simply as masses of tonal value. The sudden changes in scale, texture, and spacing of the leaves signal significant intervals of depth.

Any shift in texture is related to texture perspective. If we take a receding plane of fabric and fold it over unto itself, what was originally a gradual increase in density of texture will now appear as a sudden shift in texture. The foreground pattern will overlap and juxtapose itself against a smaller background pattern.

Similarly, any shift in linear spacing is related to size perspective. The intervals between the edges of equally spaced objects gradually diminish as they recede into the distance. Any sudden change in this interval will evoke a jump in distance between the foreground elements and those in the background.



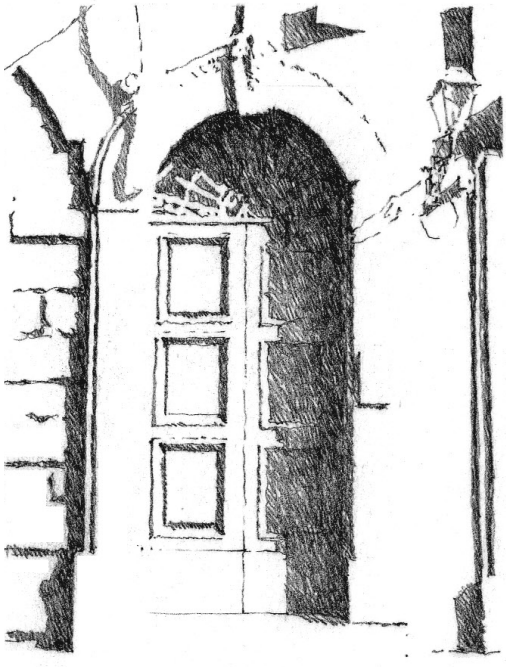


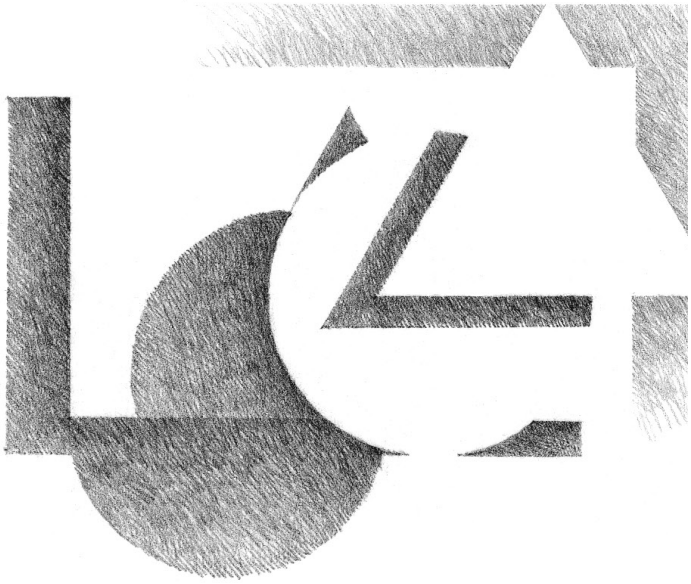
Transition between Light and Shade

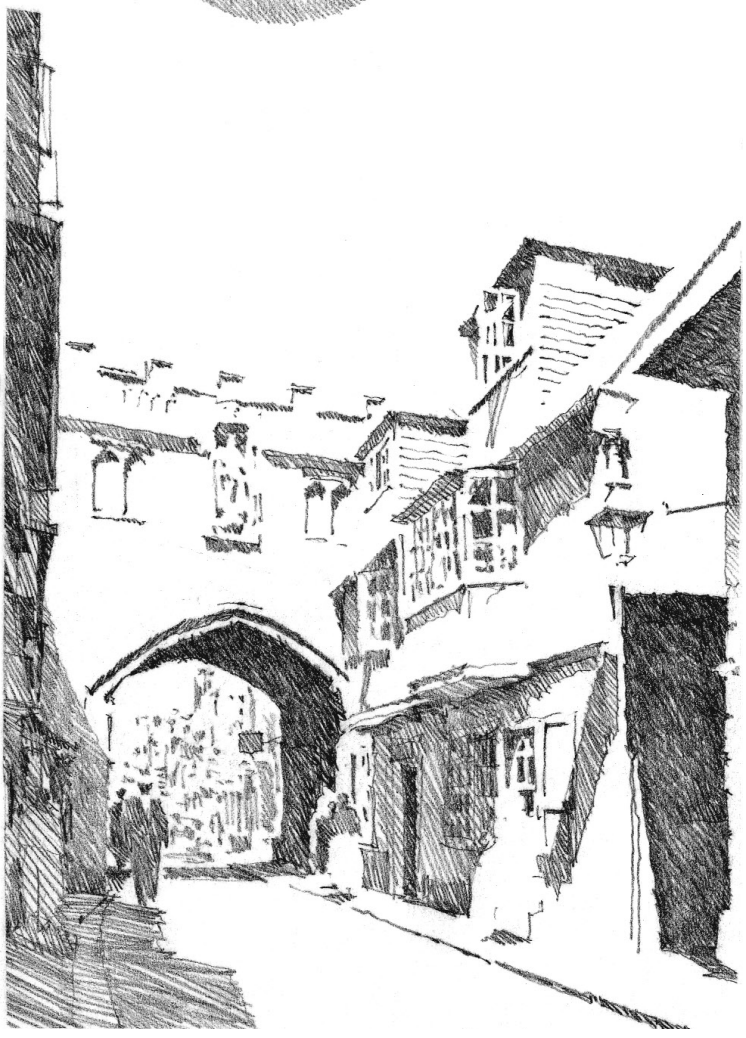
Any abrupt shift in brightness stimulates the perception of a spatial edge or profile separated from a background surface by some intervening space. This depth cue implies the existence of overlapping shapes and the use of contrasting tonal values in a drawing.

Any line of tonal contrast is a potent depth cue that can enhance the sense of overlap and the pictorial effect of atmospheric perspective. The greater the spatial interval between overlapping shapes, the sharper the contrast between light and dark tonal values. While an abrupt change in tonal value indicates the profile of a corner or a spatial edge, a gradual transition in brightness leads to a perception of curvature and roundness.

In the three-dimensional modeling of forms, we rely on a discernible range of tonal values to depict and differentiate surfaces in light, shaded surfaces, and cast shadows. The resulting shifts in brightness can intensify the illusion of depth in multiview, paraline, and perspective drawings. For more information on the construction of architectural shade and shadows in these drawing systems, refer to the respective sections in Chapters 6, 7, and 8.





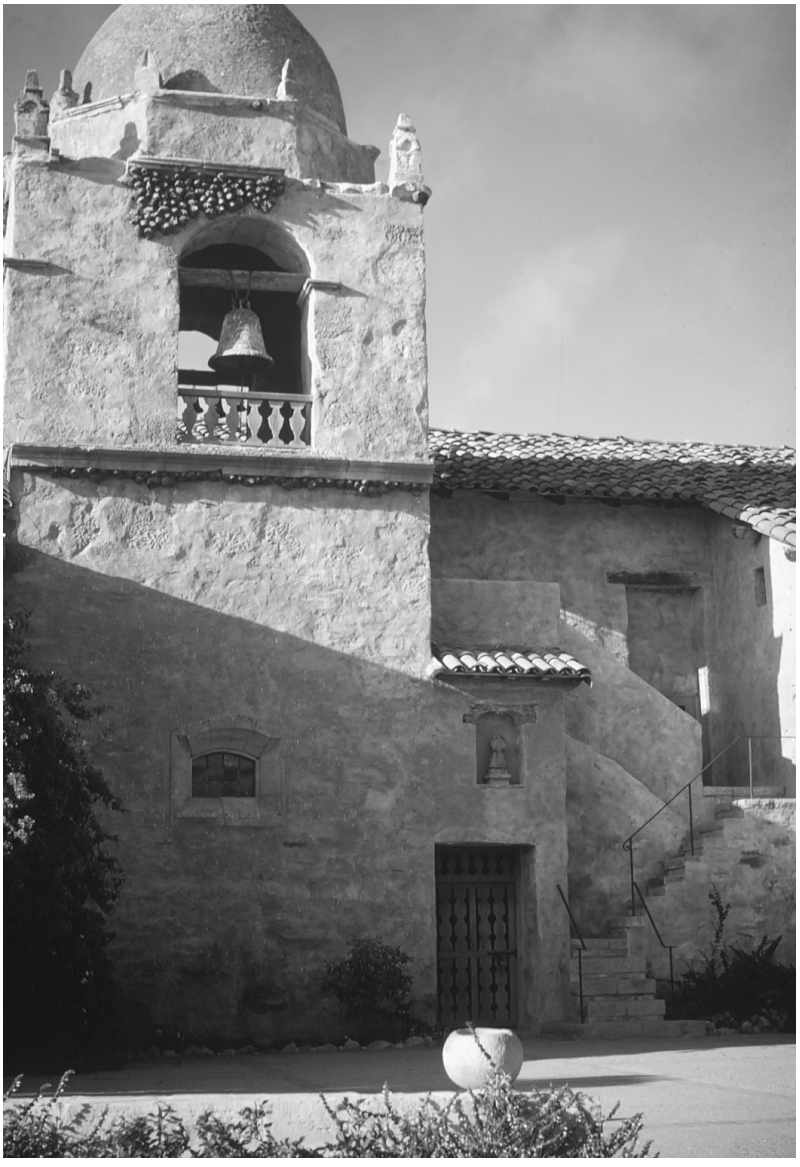


Exercise 4.9

Observe where shifts in texture occur in the photograph below. Draw the setting, employing this depth cue to convey a sense of depth as the wall planes step away from the observer.

Exercise 4.10

Draw the scene in the photograph again, this time ignoring the colors and textures of the forms. Instead, record only the shapes and values of the shaded surfaces and cast shadows you see. To articulate the spatial edges of overlapping forms, emphasize the lines of contrast where shifts in brightness or tonal value occur.



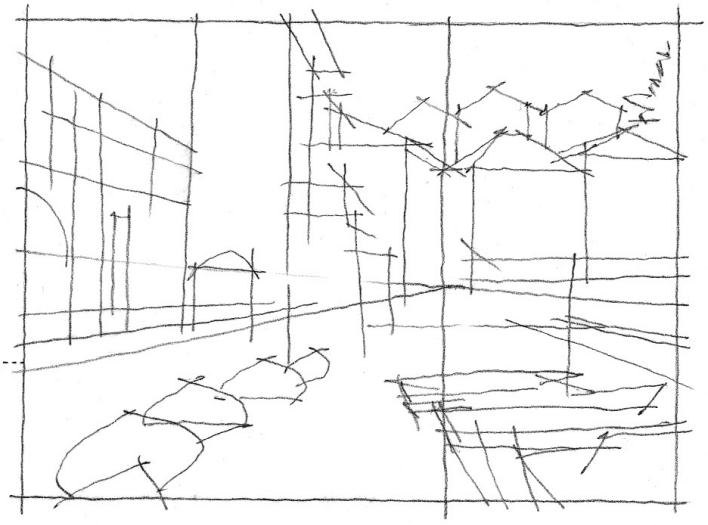
Every drawing evolves over time. Knowing where to begin, how to proceed, and when to stop are crucial to the process of drawing. Whether we are drawing from observation or the imagination, we should develop a strategy for organizing the sequence in which we draw.

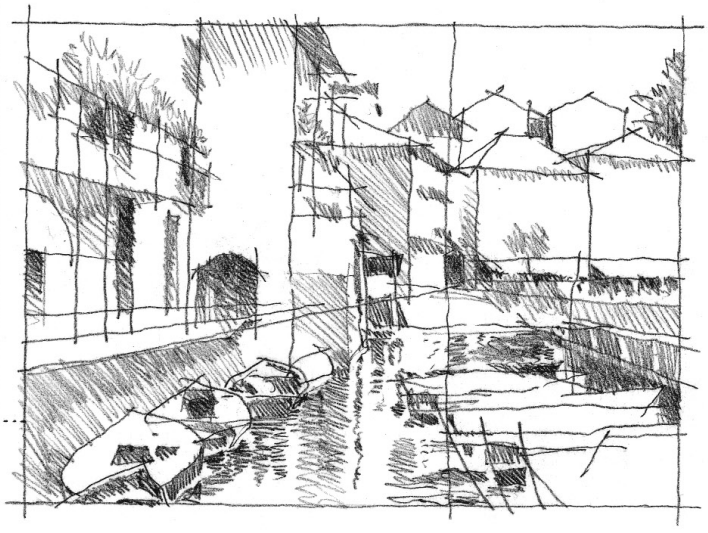
Building up a drawing in a systematic way is an important concept. We should advance by progressive stages and construct a drawing from the ground up. Each successive iteration or cycle through the drawing process should first resolve the relationships between the major parts, then resolve the relationships within each part, and finally readjust the relationships between the major parts once again.

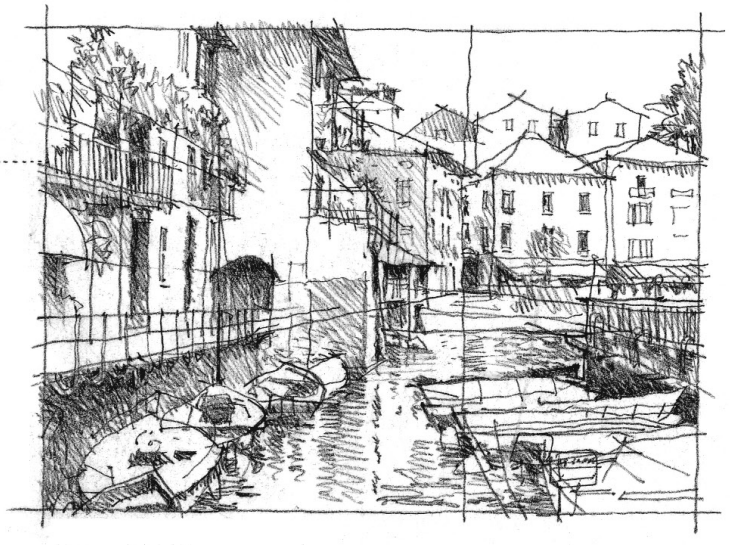
A sequential approach of tediously finishing one part of a drawing before going on to the next can easily result in distorting the relationships between each part and the rest of the composition. Maintaining a consistent level of completeness or incompleteness across the entire surface of a drawing is important to preserving a unified, balanced, and focused image.

The following procedure prescribes a way of seeing as well as drawing. It involves building up a drawing in the following stages:

- Establish composition and structure
- Layer tonal values and textures
- Add significant details





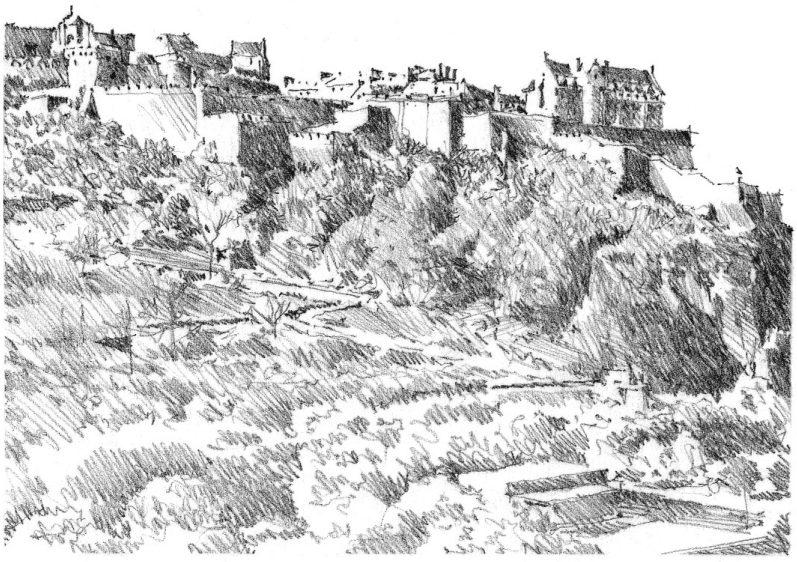


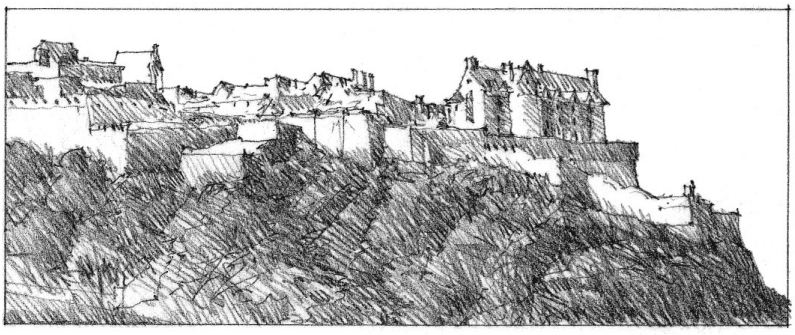
COMPOSING A VIEW

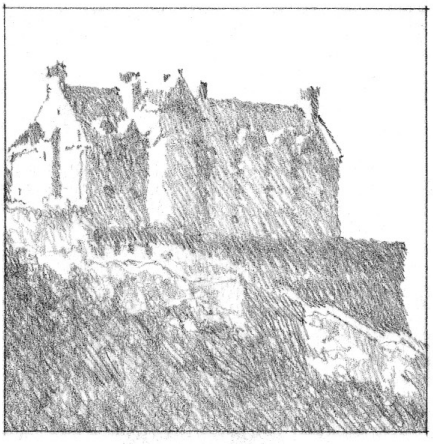
From what we see, we normally select what is of interest to us. Since our perception is discriminating, we should also be selective in what we draw. How we frame and compose a view, and what we emphasize with our drawing technique, will tell others what attracted our attention and what visual qualities we focused on. In this way, our drawings will naturally communicate our perceptions with an economy of means.

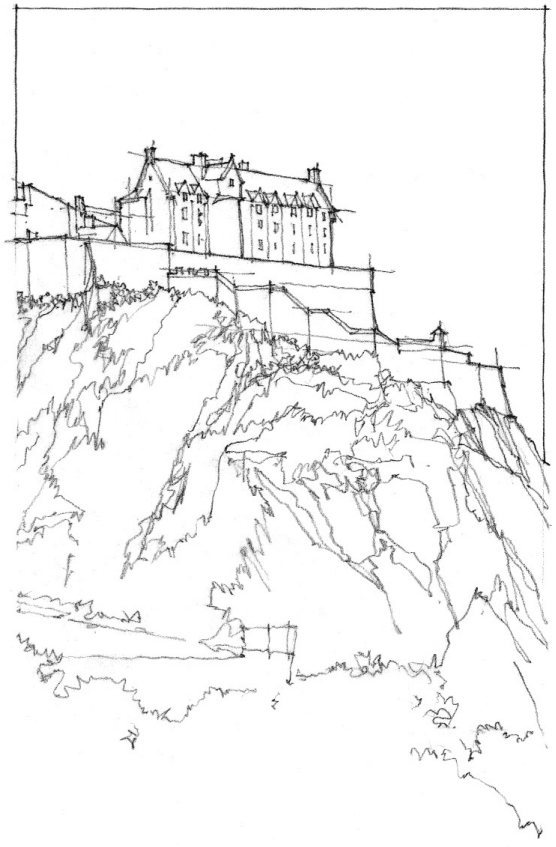
Composing a view of a scene involves positioning ourselves at a particular point in space and deciding how to frame what we see. To convey the sense that the viewer is within a space rather than on the outside looking in, we must establish three pictorial regions: a foreground, a middleground, and a background. All three should not have equal emphasis; one should dominate to heighten the pictorial space of the drawing.

When portraying a specific aspect of an object or scene, a closer viewpoint may be necessary so that the size of the drawing can accommodate the rendering of tonal value, texture, and light.



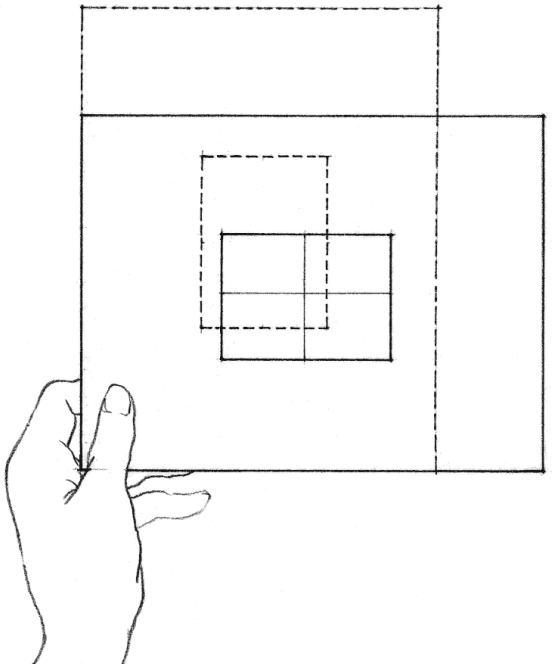






Exercise 4.11

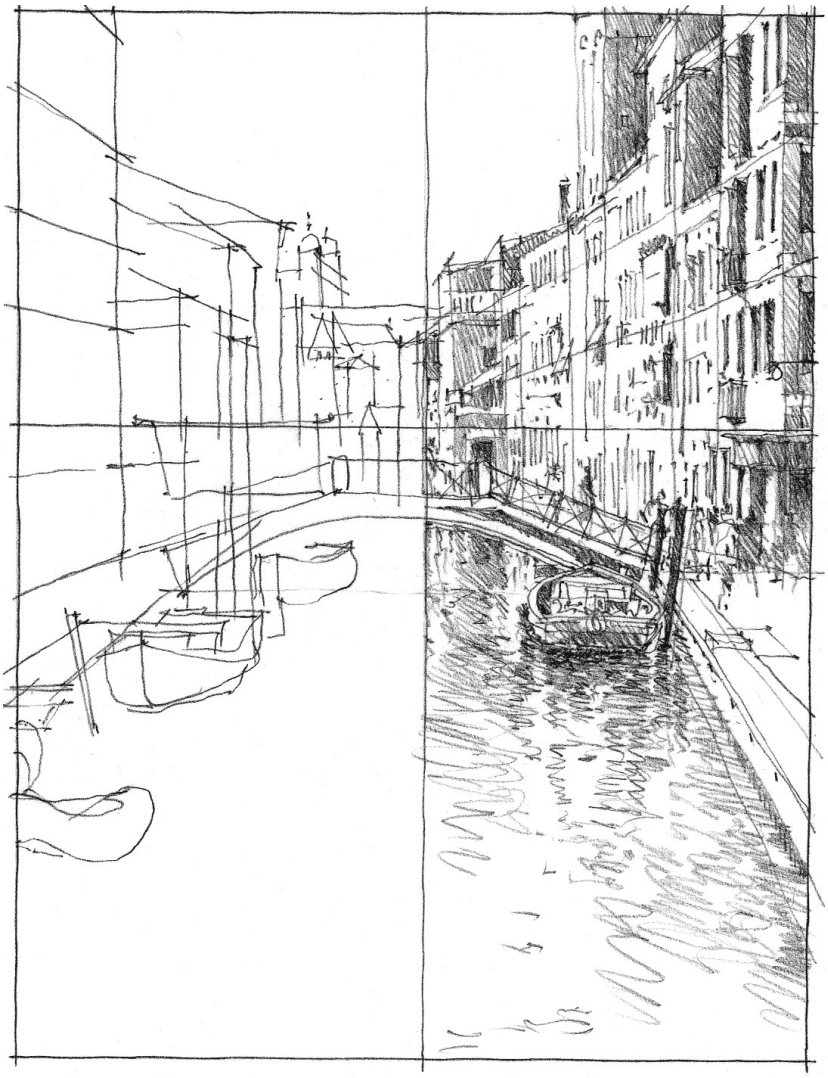
Explore alternative ways of composing the view in the photograph below. The shape and orientation of the frame and the positions of elements within the frame interact to influence the pictorial space and composition of a drawing. Compare the spatial effects of a vertical or portrait format with those of a horizontal or landscape layout. How does a square format alter these effects?



Exercise 4.12

Explore alternative ways of cropping the view in the photograph below. Compare a broad or distant view with close-in views that focus on only certain aspects or features of the scene.

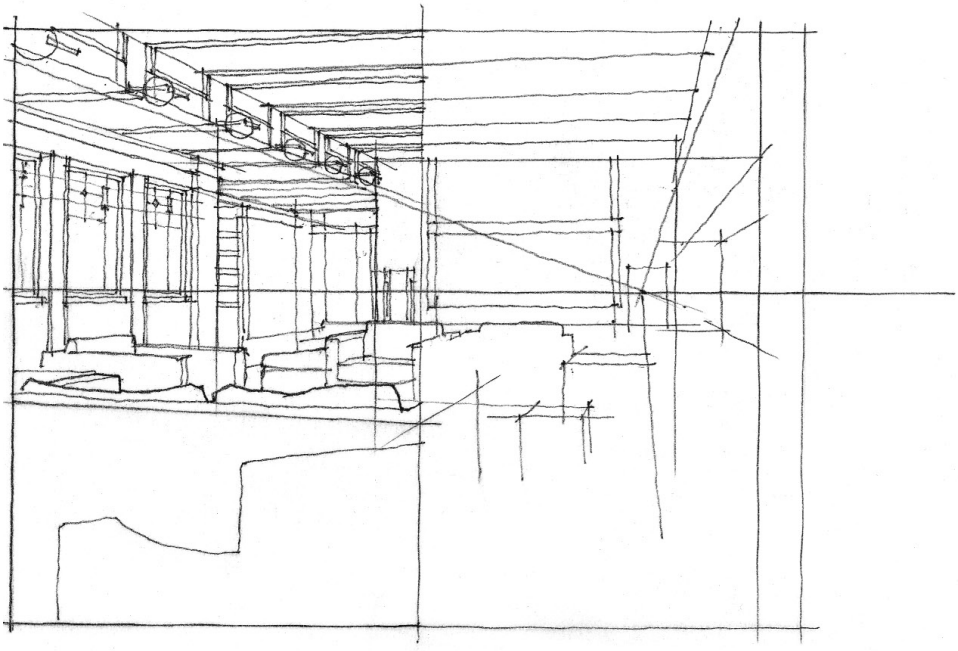
ESTABLISHING STRUCTURE



Without a cohesive structure to hold it together, the composition of a drawing collapses. Once the composition for a view is established, we use the analytical process of drawing to establish its structural framework. We begin with regulating lines that examine and verify the position, shape, and proportions of major elements. As we establish these first few lines, a tentative armature emerges that both holds and guides further observations. We draw further perceptions over this framework, which in turn is adjusted in response to our perceptions. Let this structure remain visible, for it clarifies pictorial relationships and serves as a preparatory underdrawing for what comes later.

We see little dimensional foreshortening in relatively small objects. The eye perceives vertical lines as parallel and perpendicular to the ground plane, in contrast to optical reality. Therefore, in drawing small-scale objects, we preserve the verticality of vertical edges.

In drawing an environment—an outdoor space or an interior room—we view the scene from a fixed position in space. The structure, therefore, must be regulated by the principles of linear perspective. We are concerned here principally with the pictorial effects of linear perspective—foreshortening and the convergence of parallel lines. Our mind interprets what we see and presents an objective reality based on what we know of an object. In drawing a perspective view, we attempt to illustrate the visual aspects of an optical reality. These two are often at odds, and the mind often wins out.



Begin by drawing the perceived shape of a vertical plane facing you. This plane may be the wall of a room, the facade of a building, or an implied plane defined by two vertical elements, such as the corners of two buildings. Use any of the sighting techniques described in Chapter 2 to ensure that the shape of the plane is properly proportioned.

Next, establish your eye level relative to that plane. Focus on a specific point, and draw a horizontal or horizon line through that point. Notice that horizontal elements situated above your eye level slope downward toward the horizon, while horizontal elements below rise upward as they recede from your position. Draw human figures in the foreground, middleground, and background to establish a vertical scale.

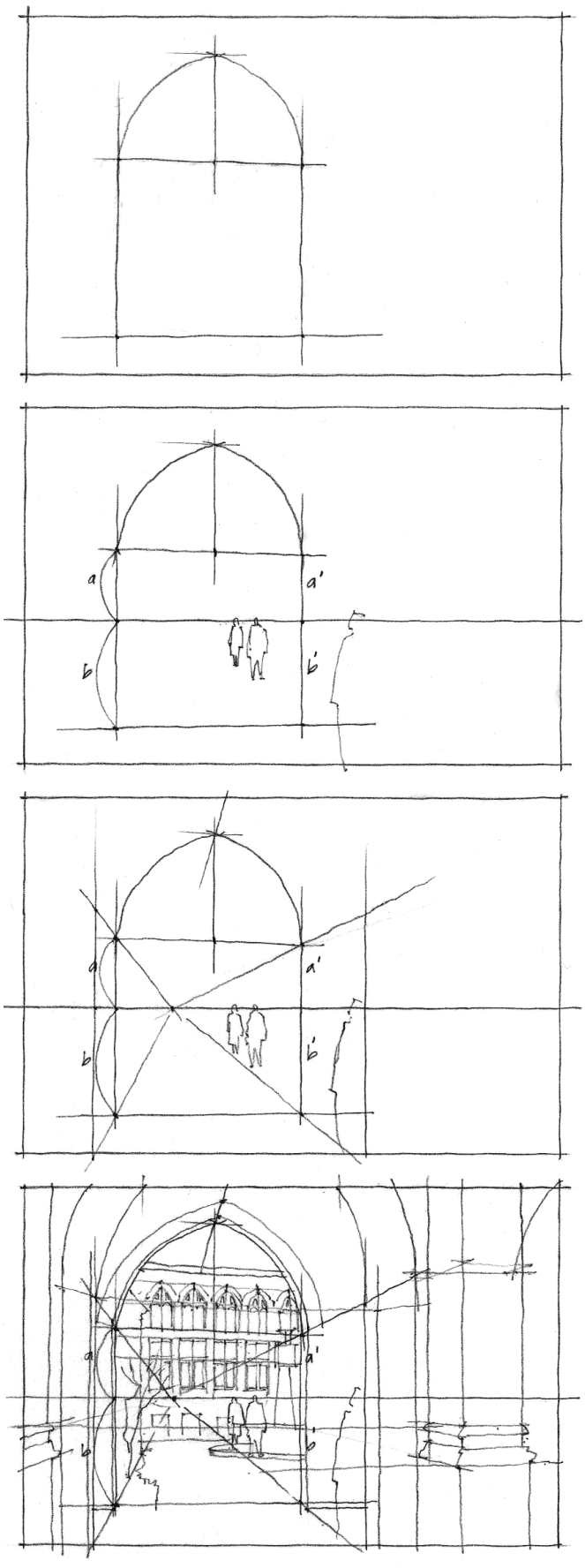
Use sighting techniques to gauge the slopes of horizontal edges that pass through points in the vertical plane and recede into the distance. Visually extend these lines to determine their vanishing points. If these vanishing points lie off the sheet of the drawing, draw the front and rear vertical edges of a receding face and judge what proportion of the vertical leading edge lies above the horizon line and what lies below. Reproduce the same proportions for the rear vertical edge. Use the established points to guide the drawing of the inclined lines in perspective. These receding lines along with the horizon line then serve as visual guides for any other lines that converge at the same point.

To ensure the correct foreshortening of receding planes, you must be able to flatten their state into two-dimensional shapes and correctly judge the relative proportion between their width and depth.

Remember to draw these regulating lines in a continuous manner to construct a spatial framework for the drawing. As you proceed, compare every part in its proper relation to others in the perspective layout. Recalling the following depth cues will help regulate the shapes you see in perspective:

- Overlap
- Size perspective
- Vertical location in the visual field

For a more detailed discussion of this drawing system and the pictorial effects of convergence and foreshortening, see Chapter 8.



Exercise 4.13

Use the analytical process of drawing to establish the underlying structure of the scene in the photograph below. Do not add tonal values or details. Start with a series of five-minute sketches before proceeding on to longer drawings.

Exercise 4.14

Find an outdoor or interior space that exhibits a clear geometric structure and the convergence of parallel lines in linear perspective. Use the analytical process of drawing to establish the underlying structure of the scene. Do not add tonal values or details. Start with a series of five-minute sketches before proceeding on to longer drawings.

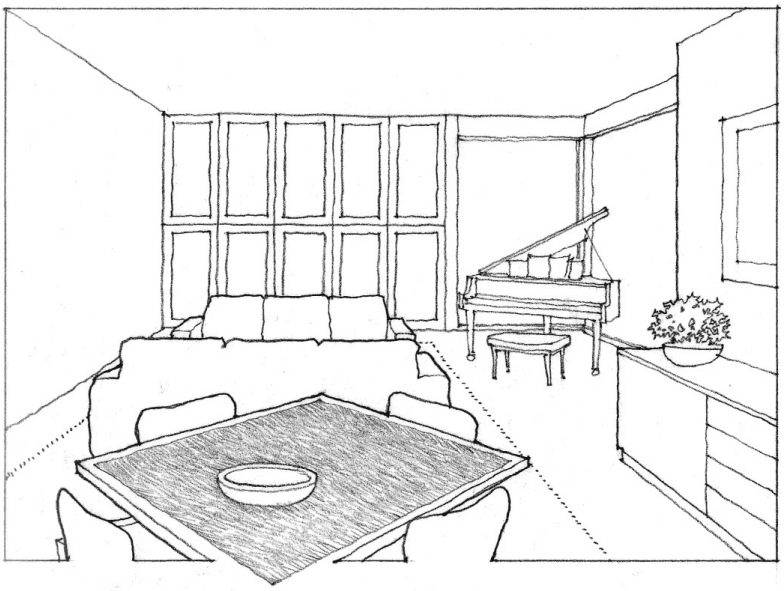
Scale refers to apparent size—how large or small a thing appears to be relative to some other thing. To measure scale, therefore, we must have something of known size to which we can refer.

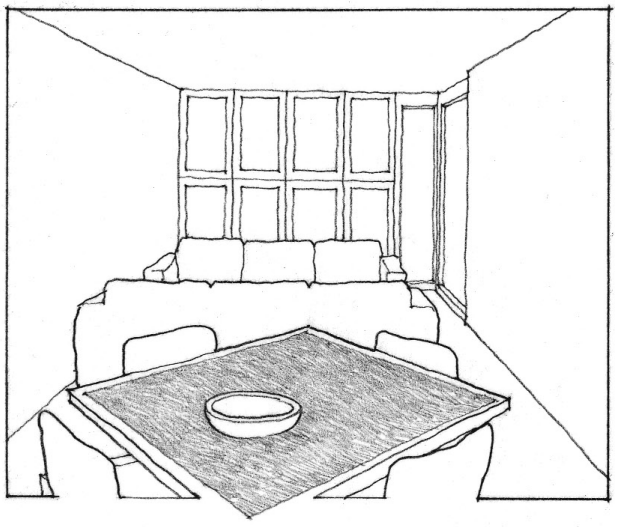
Visual Scale

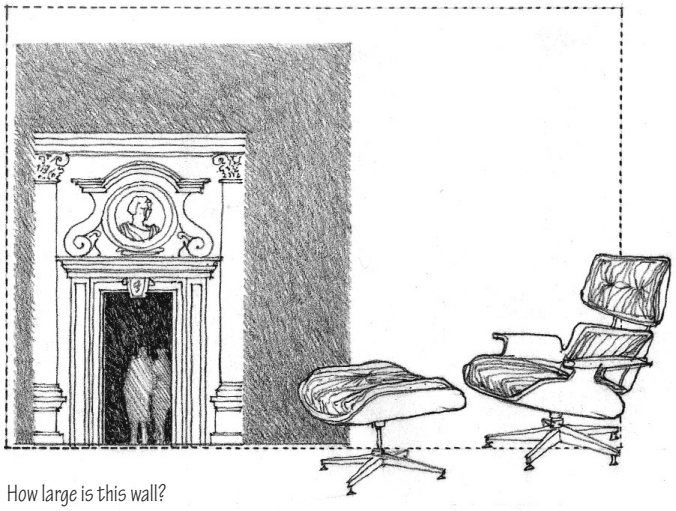
Visual scale refers to how big something appears to be when measured against other things around it. Thus, an object's scale is often a judgment we make based on the relative or known size of nearby or surrounding elements. For example, a table can appear to be in scale or out of scale with a room, depending on the relative size and proportions of the space. In drawing, we can emphasize or reduce the significance of an element by manipulating its scale relative to other elements.

Depending on the scale of what we are drawing, what we judge to be significant or trivial affects what we measure and the degree of accuracy that is required. The overall proportions of an object are important, as is its scale, relative to other things around it. But the degree of accuracy required really depends on whether or not we perceive differences. Are these differences significant and can we see them?

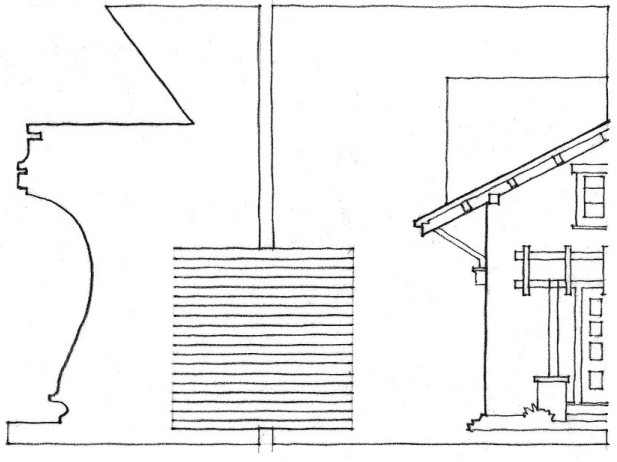
We are speaking of relative dimensions, not absolute meters, feet, or inches. Therefore, if something is $3\frac{29}{32}$ of an inch thick, this dimension is perhaps not as significant as whether we see it as being thin. And whether we see it as being thin really depends on what we are measuring it against. In other words, if it is thin, then something else must be thick. If something is short, we must be measuring it against something that is long.





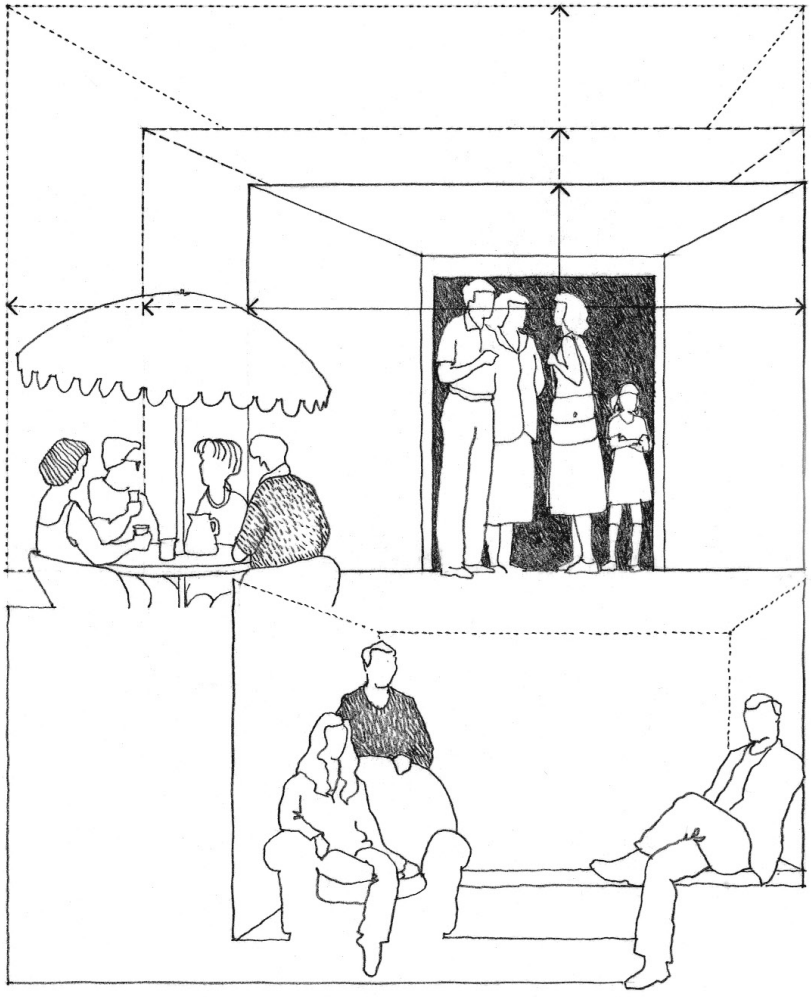


How large is this wall?



How large is this square?

HUMAN SCALE



Human scale refers to how big or small something makes us feel. If the dimensions of an interior space or the size of elements within it make us feel small, we can say they lack human scale. If, on the other hand, the space does not dwarf us or if the elements offer a comfortable fit with our dimensional requirements of reach, clearance, or movement, we can say they are human in scale.

In what we see and draw, we often use the human figure to establish how large or small other things are. This comparison is based on our familiarity with our own body dimensions. The result can make us feel large or small, or it can make the thing we are measuring seem large or small. Other scale-giving elements are implements we use often and are sized to our dimensions, such as chairs and tables.

Human figures give a sense of size and scale, while furniture arrangements define areas of use. Therefore, in recording a scene or developing a design idea, it is important to draw at a scale that allows people and the furnishings they use to be included. For more information about drawing the human figure, see Chapter 11.

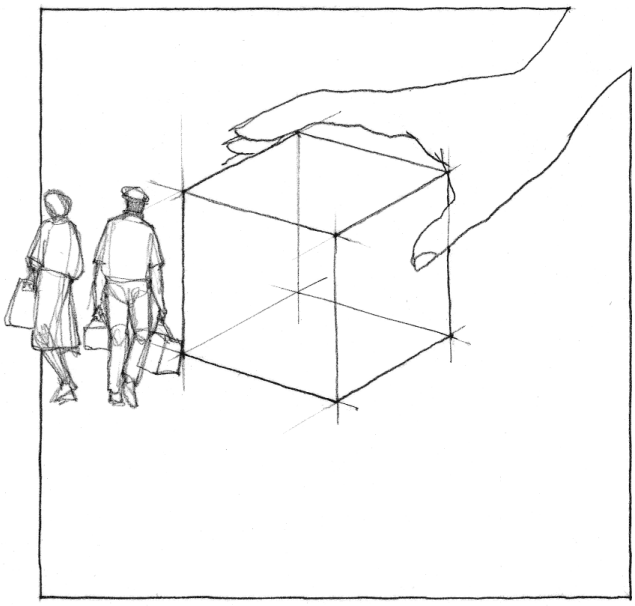
In linear perspective, the heads of people will appear to be approximately at your eye level if they are standing or walking on the same horizontal plane as the one on which you are standing.

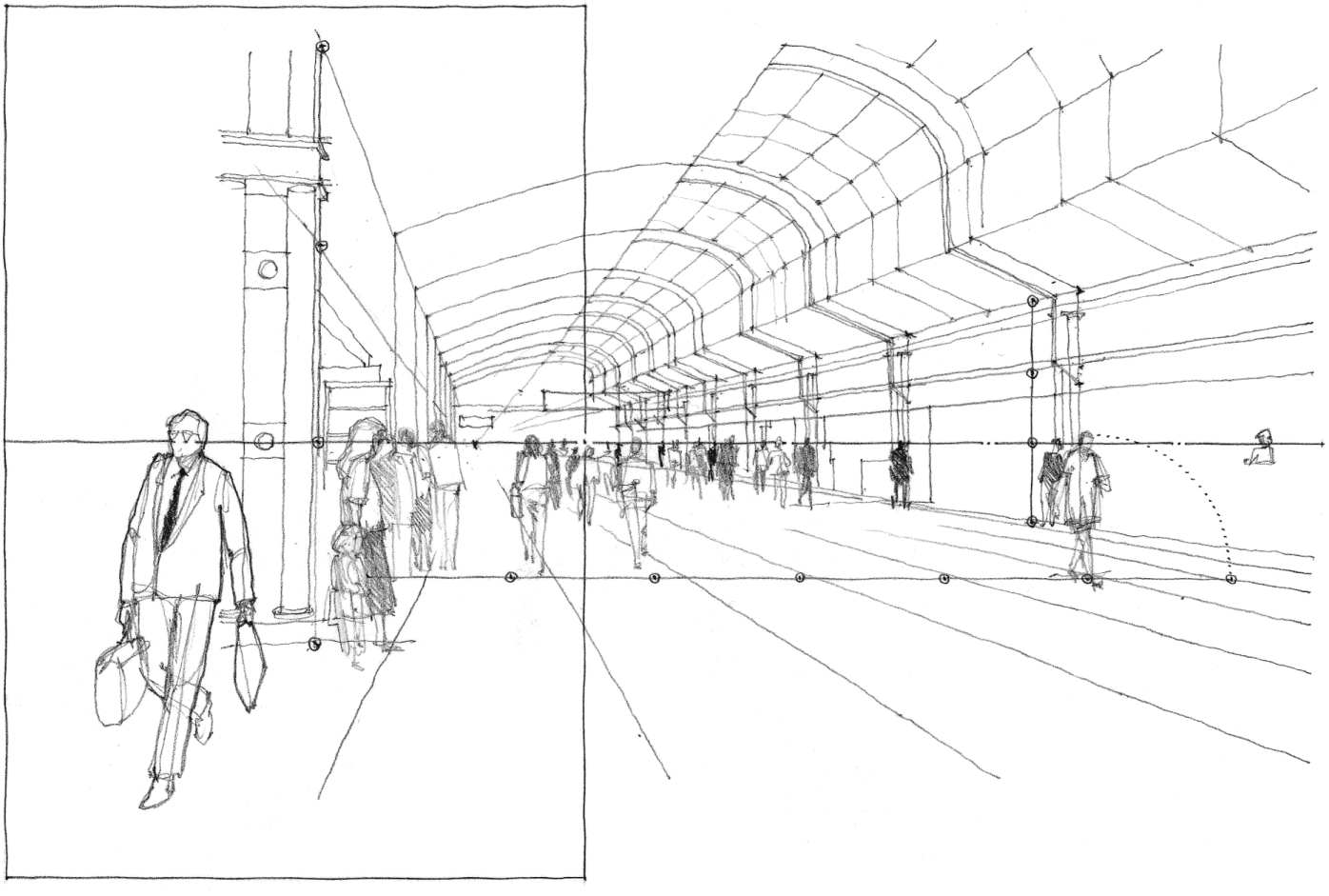
Exercise 4.15

Draw a series of cubes. Alter the relative scale of the cubes by drawing different-sized human figures next to each. Then transform each of the cubes into something in scale with the human figures: e.g., a chair, a room, or a building.

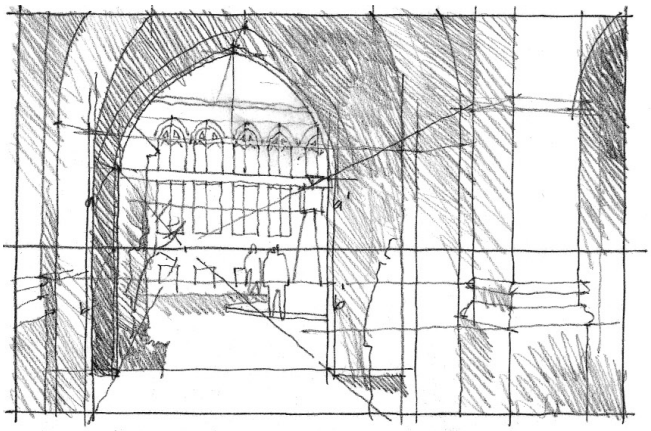
Exercise 4.16

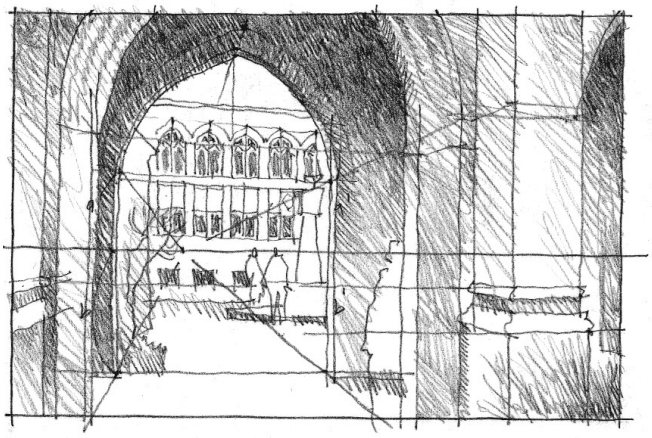
Visit two public spaces occupied by a number of people, one that is relatively small in scale and the other having a larger, more monumental scale. Draw the people in each space, paying attention to their relative heights and positions in space. Use the figures as measuring devices to establish the structure and scale of each space. In addition to size and proportion, what other attributes contribute to the perceived scale of each space?





LAYERING TONAL VALUES



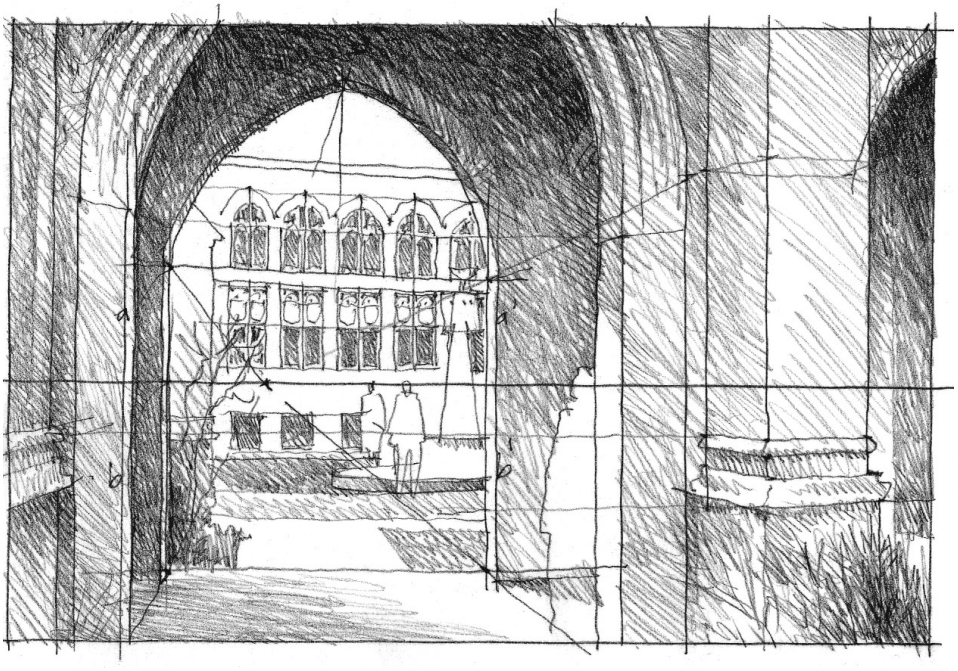


In composing and establishing the structure of a drawing, we create a framework of lines. To this scaffolding, we add tonal values to represent light and dark areas of the scene, define planes in space, model their form, describe surface color and texture, and convey spatial depth.

We should work from light to dark by mapping and layering shapes of tonal value over preceding areas of value. If an area is too light, we can always darken it. But once an area has been darkened too much and becomes muddy, it is difficult to correct. The freshness and vitality of a drawing is fragile and easily lost.

In rendering tonal values, keep in mind the depth cues of:

- Atmospheric perspective
- Texture perspective
- Perspective of blur

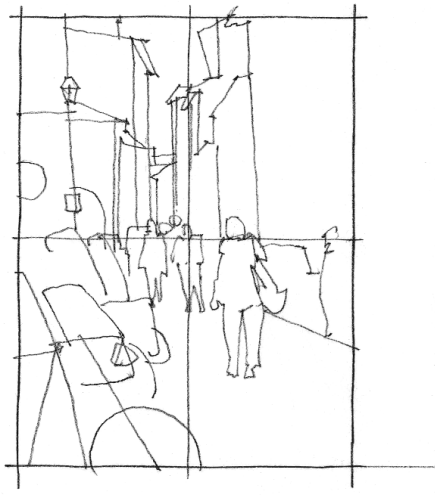


Exercise 4.17

Follow the procedure outlined in Exercises 4.13 and 4.14 to establish the underlying structure of the scene in the photograph below. Over this framework, add tonal values to define planes in space, model forms, and convey spatial depth. Pay careful attention to the shapes, pattern, and range of tonal values; work from large areas of similar value, and then layer darker tones within these areas. Allow about five minutes for establishing the structure and another five minutes for the rendering of tonal values.

Exercise 4.18

Find a suitable public outdoor or interior space. Compose the scene with your viewfinder and repeat the above exercise. Practice a series of ten-minute structure-and-value sketches before proceeding on to longer drawings.



ADDING DETAILS

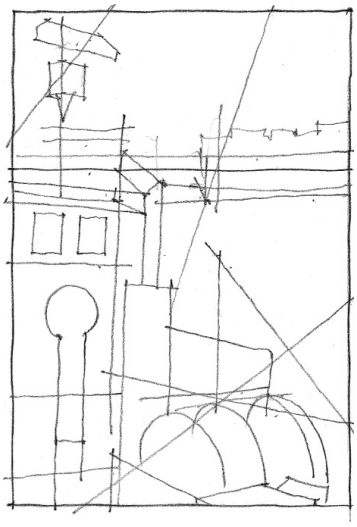
The final stage in building a drawing is the addition of those details that help us identify the various elements of an object or scene. Through these details, we sense and communicate the inherent qualities of a subject or uniqueness of a place. The smaller parts and details of a drawing should join in a way that further explains the whole.

Details must be placed within a structured pattern to make sense. This structure provides a framework for a particular area or feature to be worked on in greater detail and more elaborately. At the same time, a drawing needs contrast with areas of little or no detail. By this contrast, those areas with detail will naturally be given more emphasis.

Remember to be selective. We need not be concerned with the rendering of a photographic reality. We can never include every detail in a drawing. Some editing is necessary as we attempt to communicate particular qualities of form and space, and this often means tolerating a degree of incompleteness. The very incompleteness of a drawn image invites the viewer to participate in its completion. Even our perception of optical reality is usually incomplete, being edited by the knowledge we bring to the act of seeing and our momentary needs and concerns.

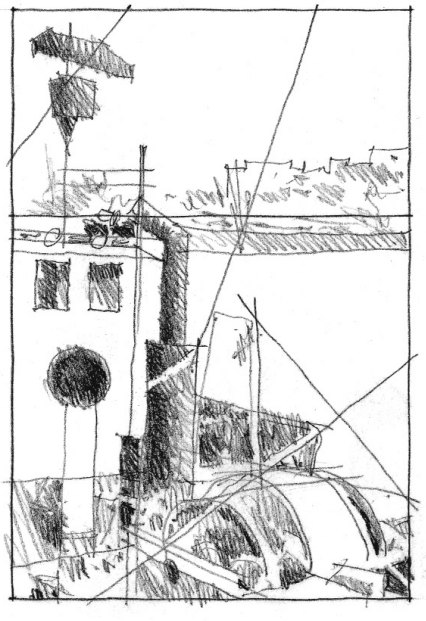
Exercise 4.19

Follow the procedures outlined in Exercises 4.13 and 4.17 to establish the underlying structure and value pattern of the scene in the photograph below. To this, add those details that help identify and clarify objects in the foreground. Deepen tonal values as necessary to emphasize spatial edges and convey spatial depth. Allow about ten minutes for establishing the structure and rendering the tonal values, and another five minutes for adding significant details.



Exercise 4.20

Find a suitable public outdoor or interior space. Compose the scene with your viewfinder and build a drawing by establishing the structure, layering tonal values, and adding details. Practice a series of fifteen-minute sketches before proceeding on to longer drawings.



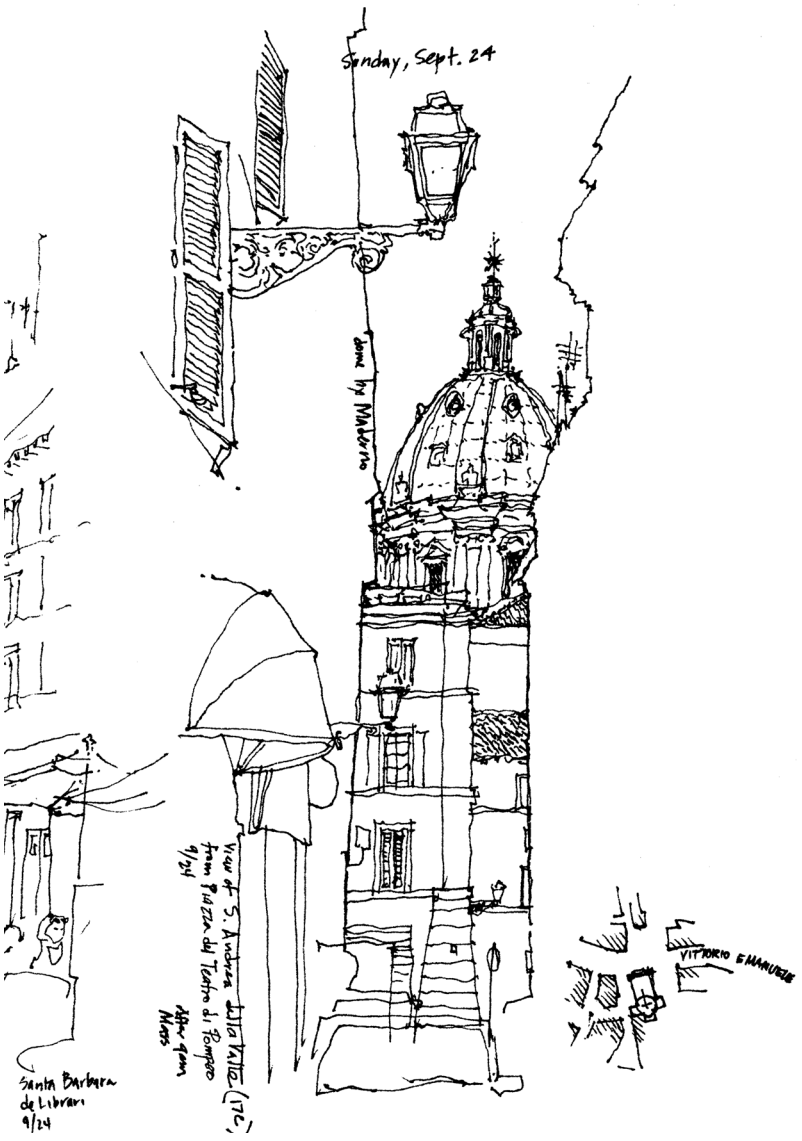
DRAWING ON LOCATION

While it is necessary to use photographs as the basis for some of the illustrations and exercises in this chapter, it should be clear that drawing from a photograph is a much different experience than drawing on location, from direct observation. A camera flattens the information gleaned from a three-dimensional environment onto a two-dimensional film or sensor. Based on the focal length of the lens used and the amount of light it admits, the camera translates optical data into a two-dimensional array. When presented on a two-dimensional medium—a sheet of paper, a computer monitor, or a projector screen—the foreshortening of shapes, the direction of lines, and other pictorial relationships become easier to discern. So while drawing from photographs can be a useful teaching and learning activity, we should understand that drawing on location can be more difficult.

When drawing from direct observation, we rely on our visual system to interpret the three-dimensional information taken in through our eyes as we attempt to portray a scene on a two-dimensional surface. Our eyes, however, are blind to what our minds are not prepared to see. We often see what we expect to be out there, and in the process, skip over elements of equal or greater importance in the scene. We tend to notice those things that are of personal interest to us and ignore others. We may perceive individual elements but not their relationships to one another.

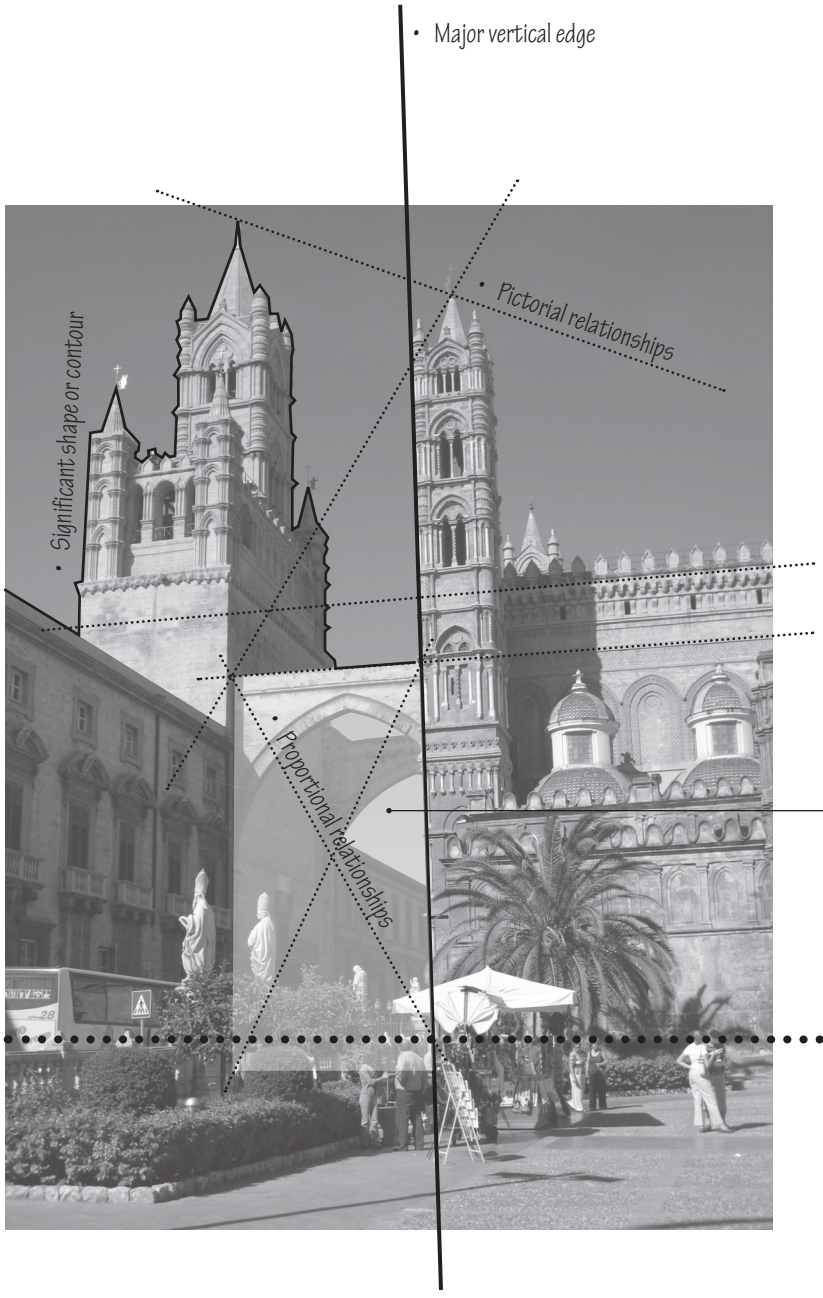
Most importantly, when drawing perspective views, what we know about something (its objective size, shape, and proportions) and how it might appear in real life (its optical appearance) are often in conflict and can lead to our striking a compromise between the two realities. We may end up drawing not what we see, but rather the image held in the mind's eye, which, in attempting to resolve the conflict between objective and optical realities, can lead us to distort the perspectival effects of convergence, foreshortening, and reduction in size. To truly see in perspective, we may have to temporarily suspend identifying and naming the subject matter of our drawing so we perceive the purely visual phenomena before us. For more information on the pictorial effects of perspective, see pages 244–247.

Despite these difficulties, the iterative practice of sketching onsite can be beneficial. Being contemplative in nature, done with quiet concentration in a spontaneous manner in response to impressions gained through observation, the drawing process engages the eye and the mind, focuses attention on the present, and creates vivid visual memories that can be recalled at a later time.

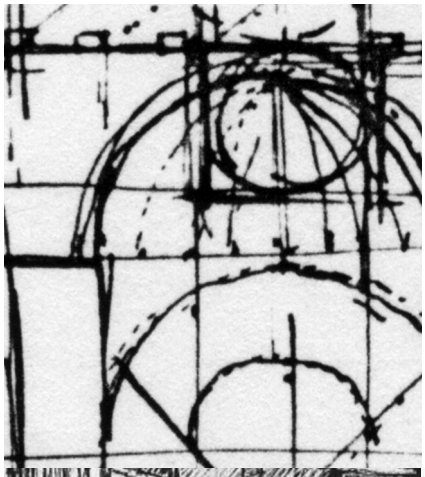


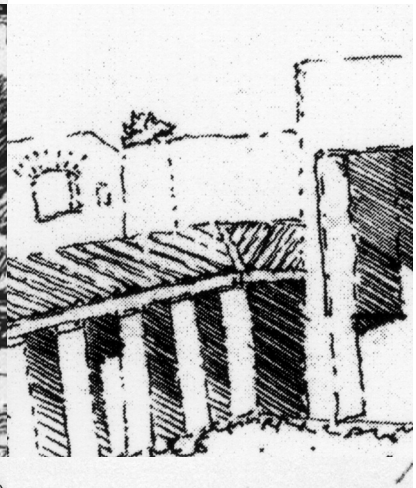
Establishing the compositional structure of a scene, layering tonal values to define qualities of light, texture and materiality, and adding significant details—this process as described on pages 100–109 provides a firm foundation for learning how to build up a drawing in stages. In practice, however, there is more than a single approach to drawing from observation.

In surveying and taking in a scene, where does one start to draw? This is a question often asked, to which the answer is: it depends on how one responds to the subject matter. There is no one correct way to begin a drawing. We could start with a dominant vertical edge or plane in the scene, or with a cross-sectional view of a space, such as when looking down a street. We could begin with a unique contour, such as the path of a walkway, an articulated roofline, or the shape of the sky. We could decide to work from the inside out, starting with a unique shape, or from the outer edges in. The second step, however, is almost always establishing the horizon line and the scale of a person in the scene. Most importantly, throughout the process, as we move from structure to tones and details, we should continuously check the two-dimensional, pictorial relationships between points, lines and planes.

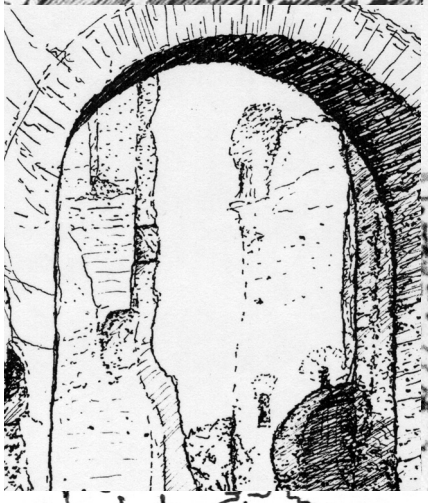


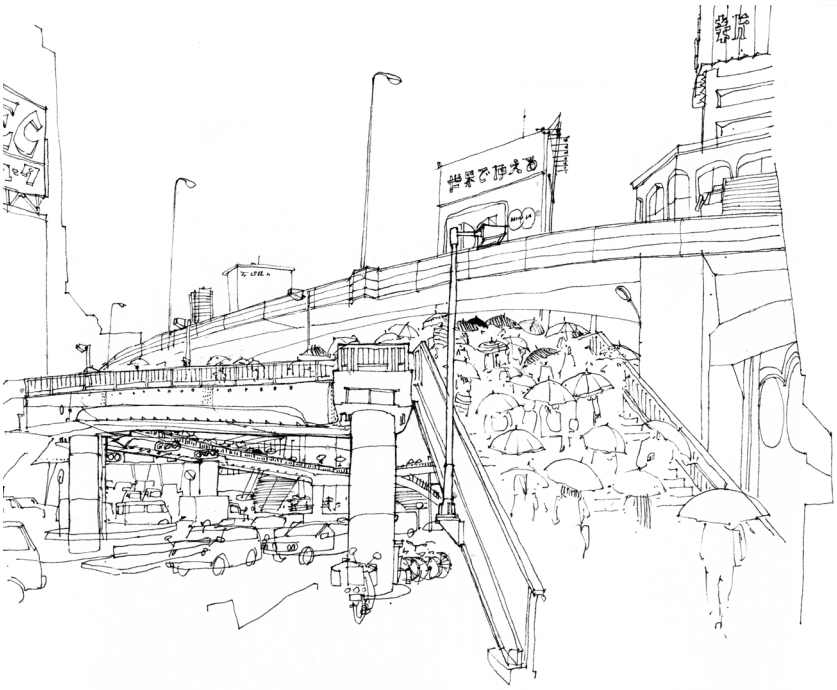
Drawing on location is a uniquely human activity and remains the province of freehand drawing. Digital tools and techniques have not yet been developed to offer the same degree of portability, convenience, and most importantly, the feel of a pen or pencil on the page of a journal or sketchbook. When executed with a free hand, a drawing naturally takes on the personality and viewpoint of its author. Just as our individual handwriting is unique and readily recognizable, so too are our personal sketches, which are revealed not only in the character of the strokes used to draw lines, create tonal values, and capture a scene; our sketches also reveal how we see, what we take note of, and the particular aspects we choose to emphasize.





Even if two of us were to stand side-by-side, look in the same general direction, and take in the same visual phenomena, we may not see the same thing. What we each see depends on how each of us responds to and interprets the visual data. Just as our perceptions are limited by what we bring to the seeing process, so too are our drawings, which are based on our perceptions. Like a conversation, we do not know precisely where the drawing process will lead. Even though we may have an objective in mind when we begin to draw, the sketch itself takes on a life of its own as it evolves on paper, and we should remain open to the possibilities the emerging image suggests.

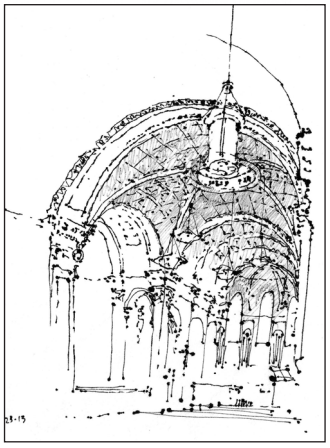


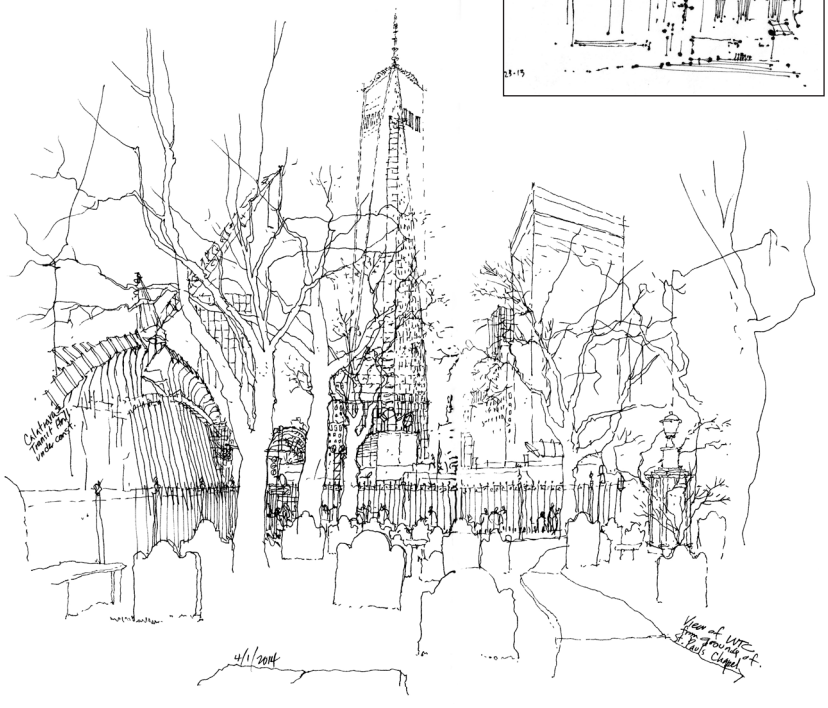


Maintaining a journal, especially while traveling, is a worthwhile endeavor. No matter what one chooses to call these bound collections of pages—sketchbooks, notebooks, or visual diaries—they all provide a physical sense of permanence and chronology and, in use, they become a repository of images and writings capable of reminding us of where we have been, what we have seen, and what we have experienced.

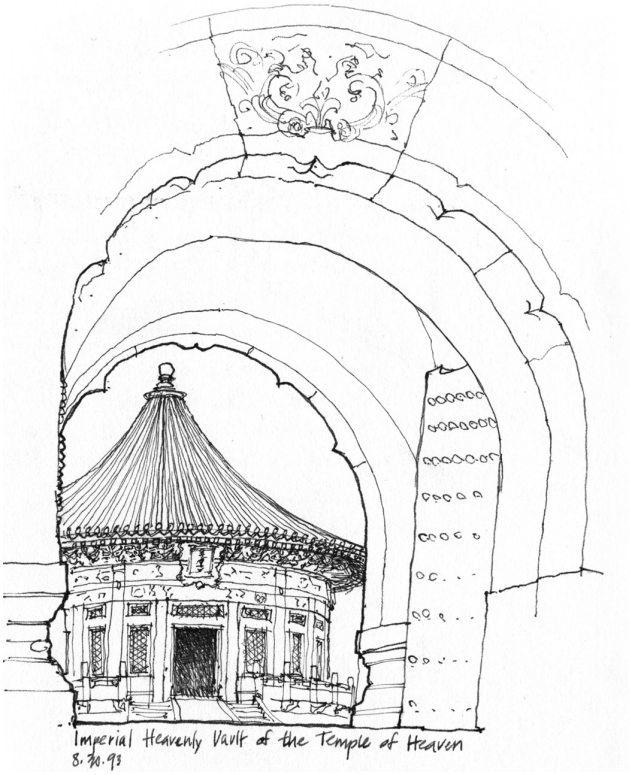
Even as we acknowledge the pleasure of perusing these collections, we should also appreciate the process by which they are made. No single page in a journal is precious; not all pages must be perfect. In the act of making visible our experiences, reflections, and discoveries, we become more sensitive to and connected with our surroundings, expand our visual memories, and stimulate our imagination.

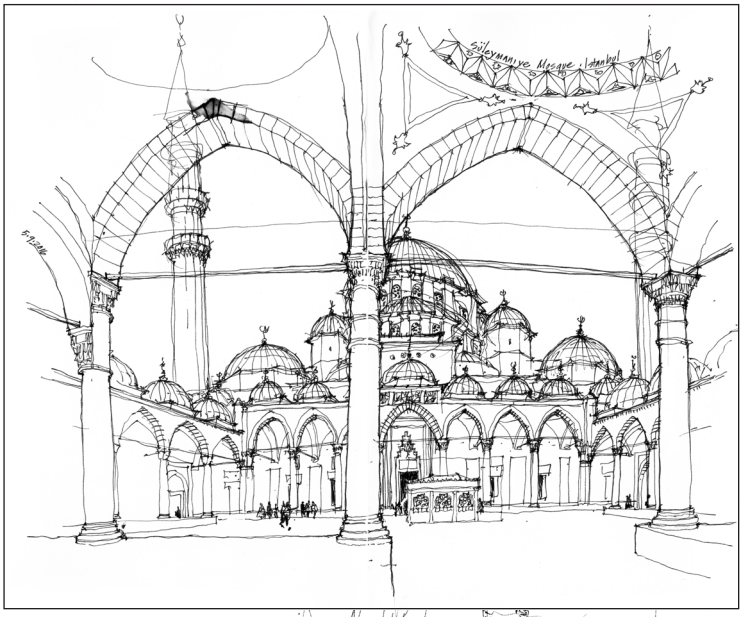
On this and following pages are examples of places visited and experienced, illustrating a variety of subject matter.

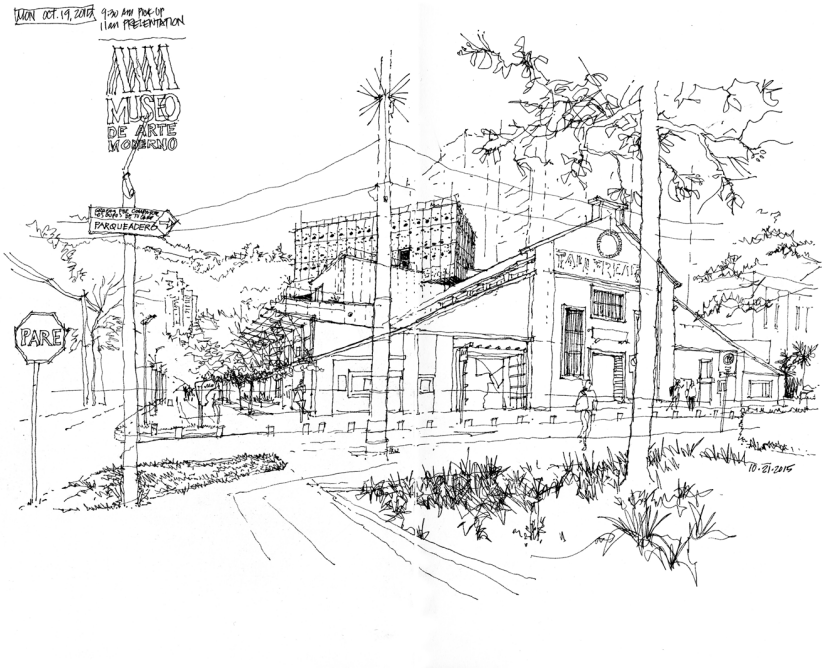


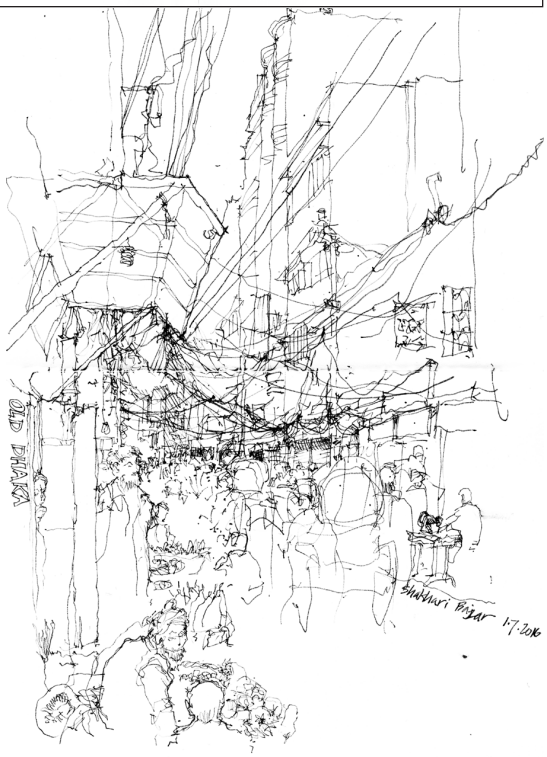


Five Rathas
Mamallapuram

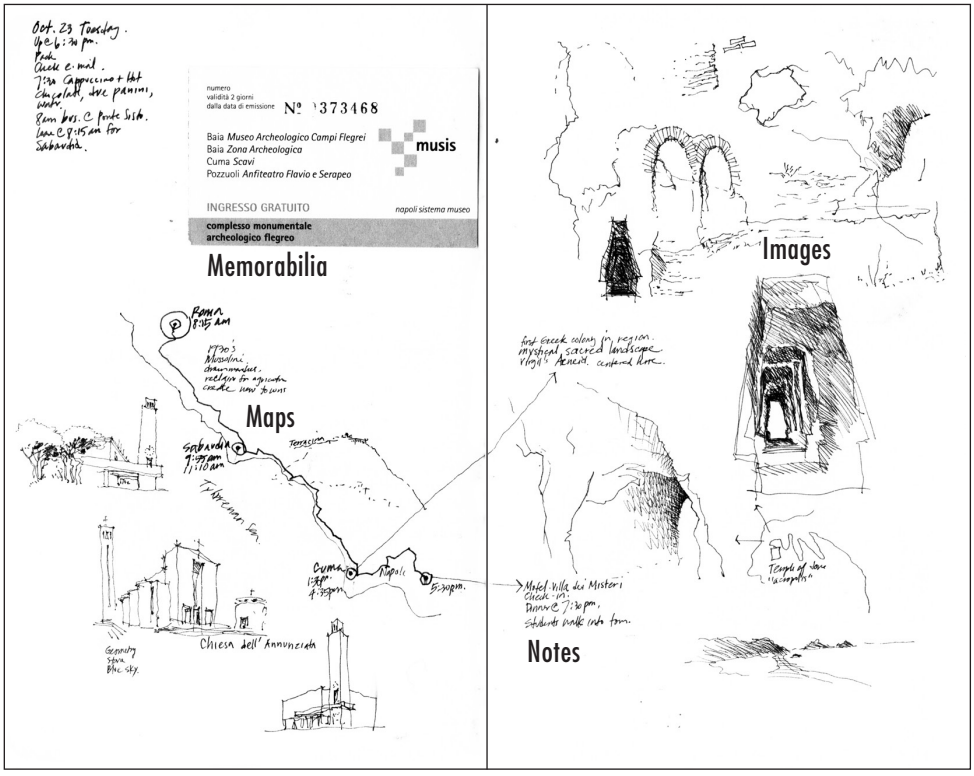

Imperial Heavenly Vault of the Temple of Heaven
8.30.93


Süleymaniye Mosque Istanbul

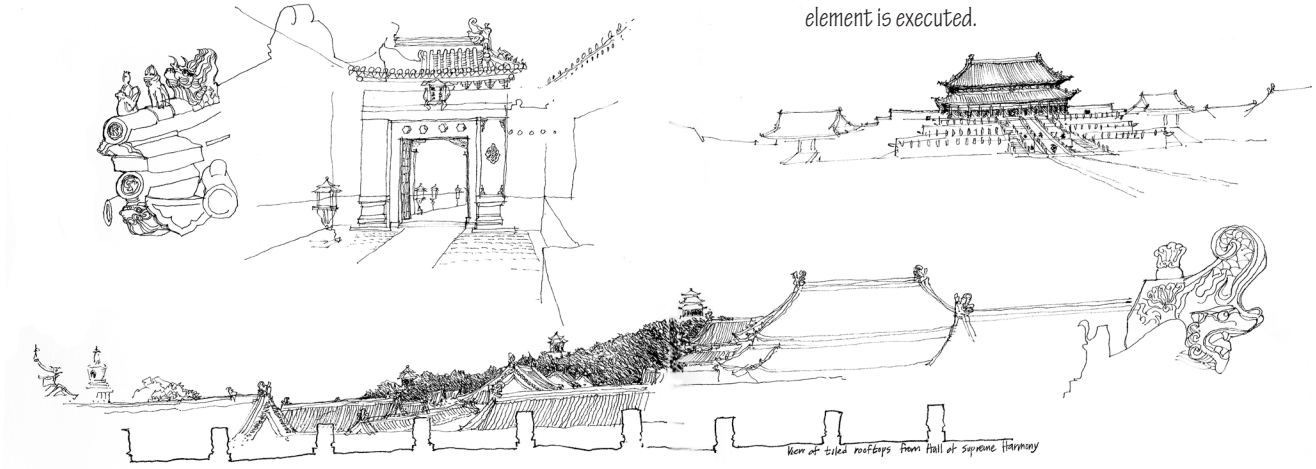

MUSEO DE ARTE MODERNO
PARQUEADERO
PARE
10.21.2015


OLD DHAKA
Shahbari Bazar 1.7.2016

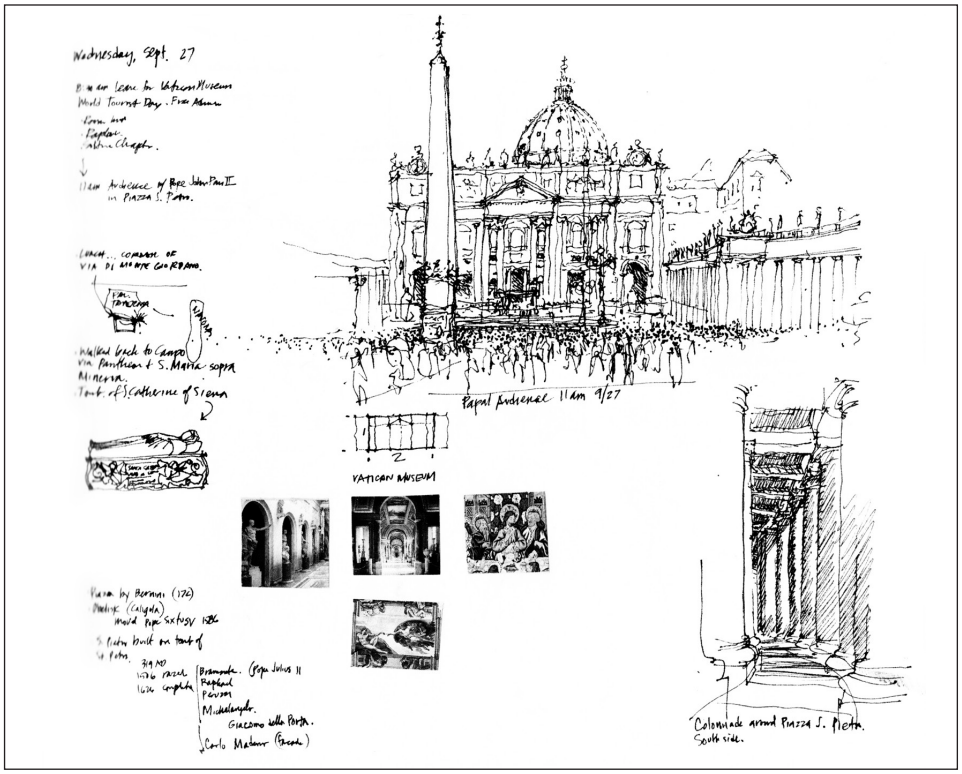
In addition to the imagery of drawings and sketches, the pages of our journals can also include other elements that contribute to the making of memories. We can paste clippings and memorabilia onto the pages; we can draw maps of our journeys through towns and across the countryside; and we can write down notes to supplement the images we draw.

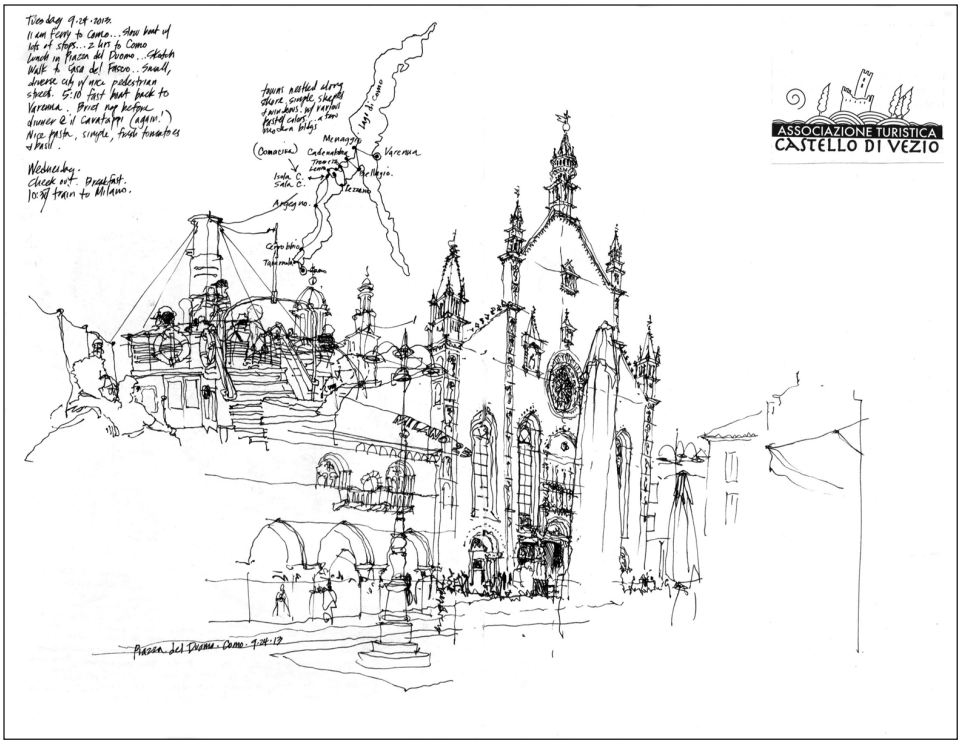


Composing each page of a journal or sketchbook, like the act of sketching itself, is an extemporaneous act. We may have a plan for how to organize the drawings and notes on a page before we begin, but we should also be open to altering the plan as each element is executed.



Keep in mind that adding these elements to a page is a balancing act in composition. For example, we may find that having executed a drawing, its size, shape, and proportions may differ, as so often happens, from what we originally intended. By carefully considering the visual shape and weight of the drawing, we can rebalance the page or give it a more dynamic quality with the placement of the next element, whether graphic or textual in nature. With the addition of further elements, we continue to encounter this opportunity to recompose the page.

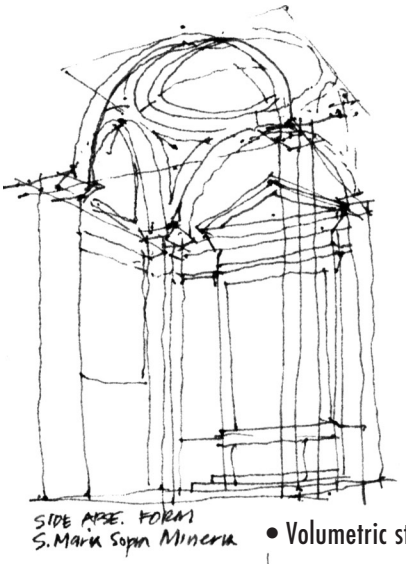




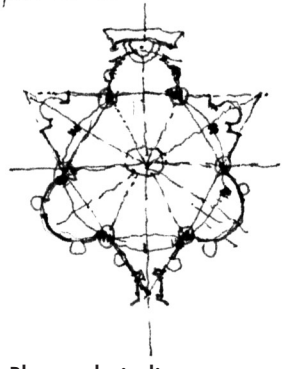
Sometimes, the result is purely accidental and happily so. Here is one such example showing how the first view on the left from the open deck of a ferry traveling from Varenna to Como merges with a later, more expansive view of the cathedral in Como.

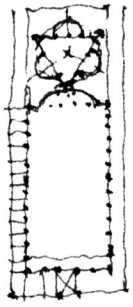
In drawing from observation, we do not have to restrict ourselves to the perspective views typified by travel postcards, although these are indeed the most tempting to replicate.

In lieu of simply recording the optical image presented to us, we can use drawing as a means of gaining understanding, insight, and perhaps even inspiration. Drawing stimulates the mind and can make visible aspects that cannot be seen by the naked eye and captured through the lens of a camera. We can imagine—in our mind's eye—dismantling an existing building to better understand its parts and how they are related and organized in design and assembled in construction. We can use the drawing process to decipher and understand two-dimensional plan and sectional relationships as well as three-dimensional, volumetric qualities of the architecture we experience. We can draw analytical diagrams to describe a path of movement, explain the proportions of a pleasing space, or illustrate the pattern of solids and voids in an attractive urban setting. We can even attempt to describe the smells, sounds, or tactile qualities that drew our attention in the first place.

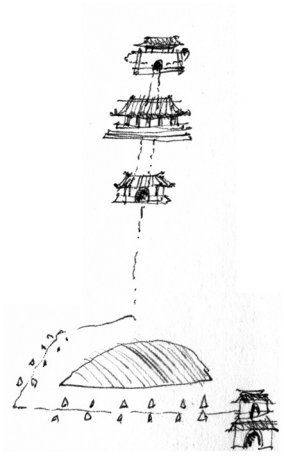


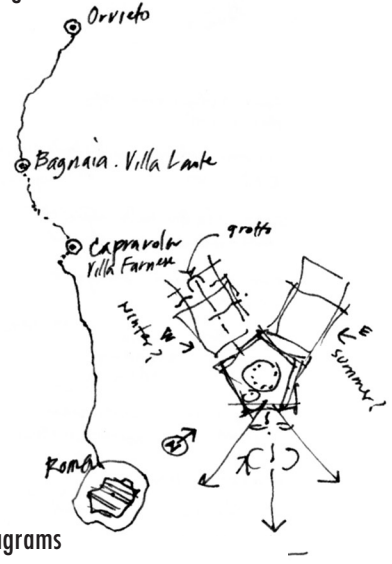
• Volumetric studies



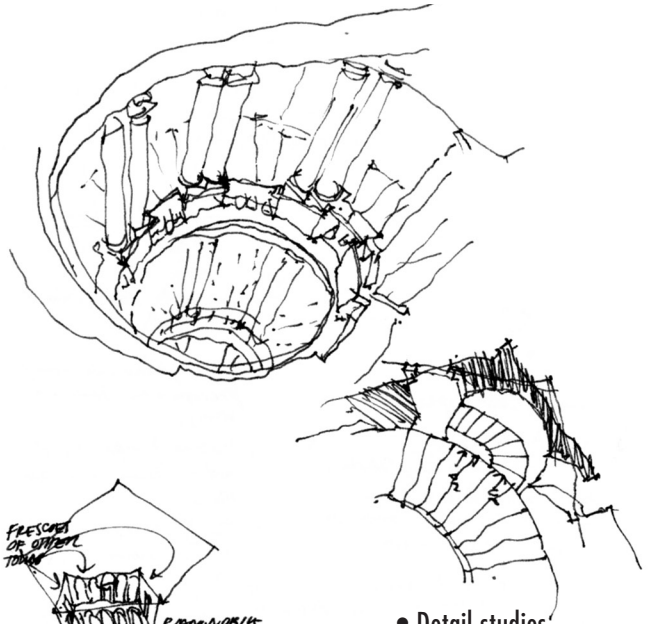


• Plan analysis diagrams

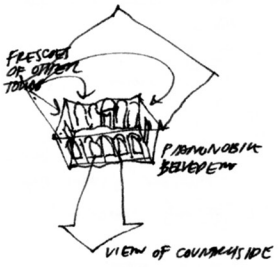




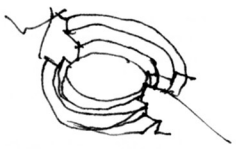
• Maps and path diagrams



• Detail studies

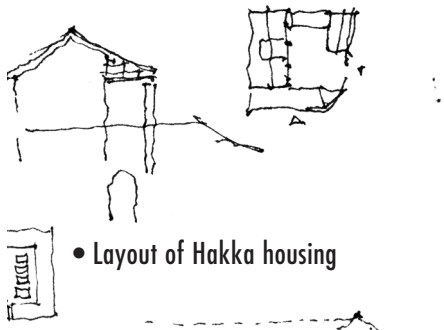


• Contextual studies

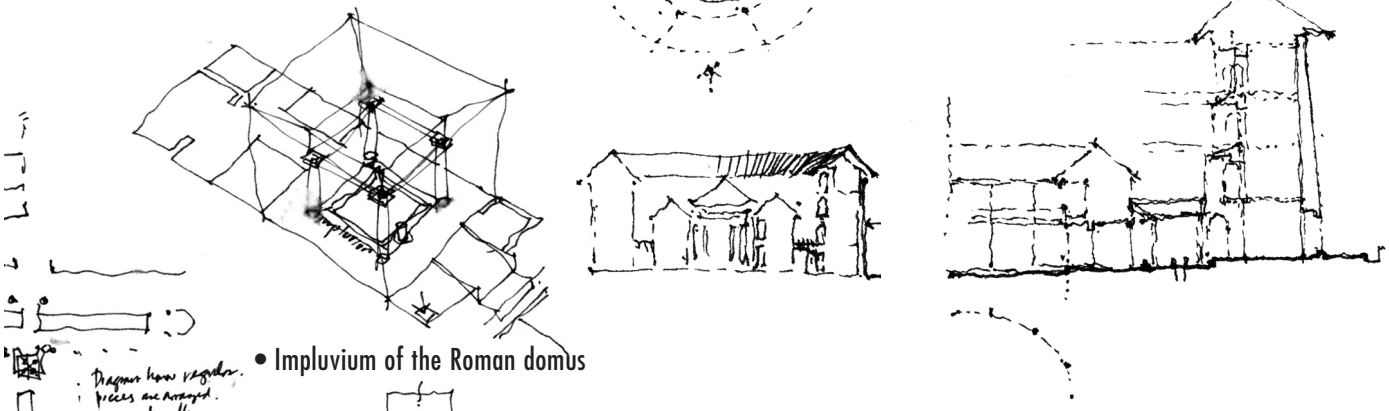


Alternatives to the perspective view

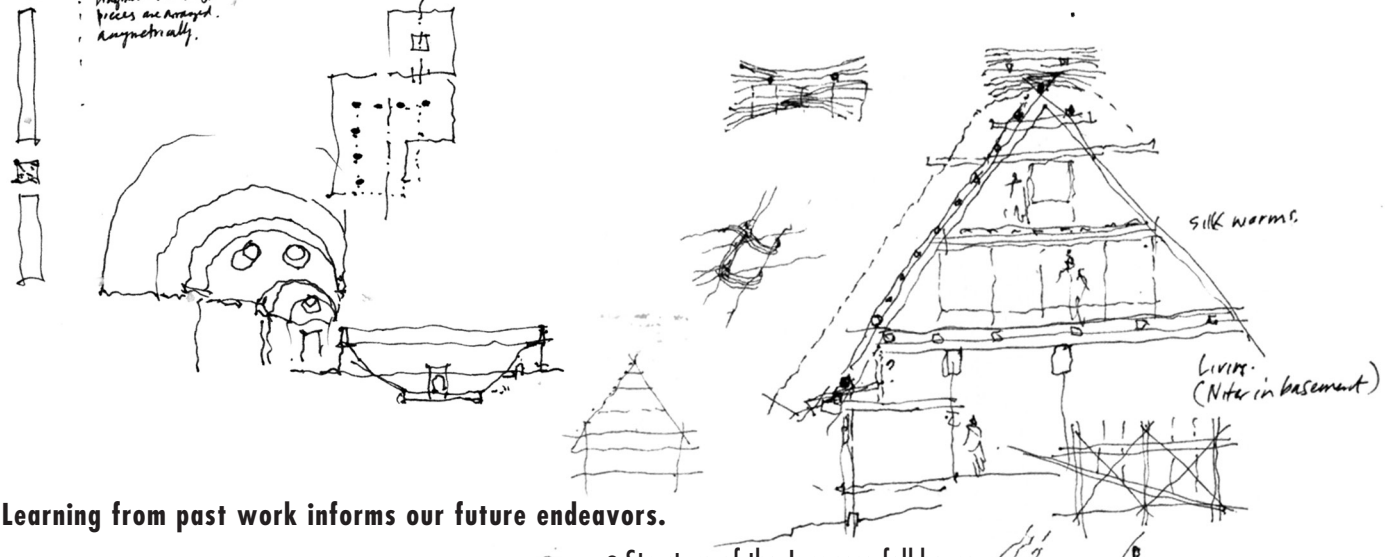
In this way, we can use the drawing process to figure things out on paper, thinking not only with the pen or pencil but with the head as well. In the end, drawing from observation, and the visual thinking that it fosters, is an activity that establishes a sound foundation for later design work, incorporating the practices that comprise the language of design drawing (Part II: Drawing Systems) and are employed during the process of design (Part III: Drawing from the Imagination).



• Layout of Hakka housing

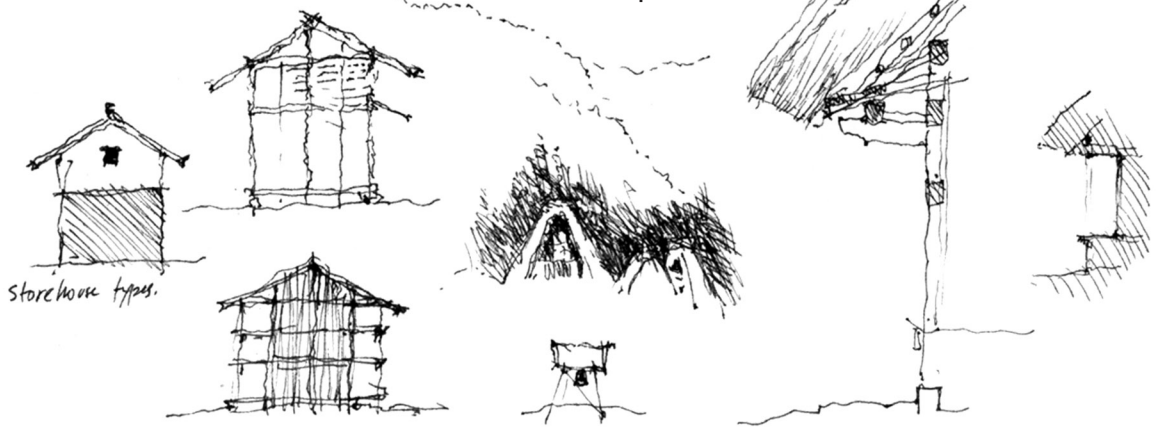


• Impluvium of the Roman domus



Learning from past work informs our future endeavors.

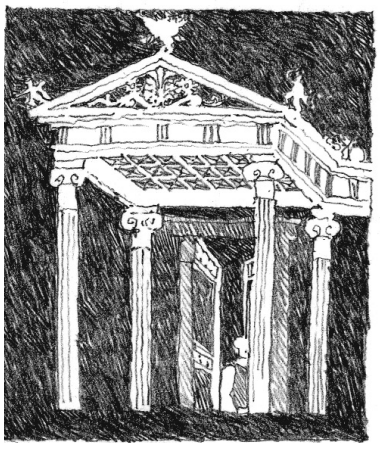
• Structure of the Japanese folkhouse



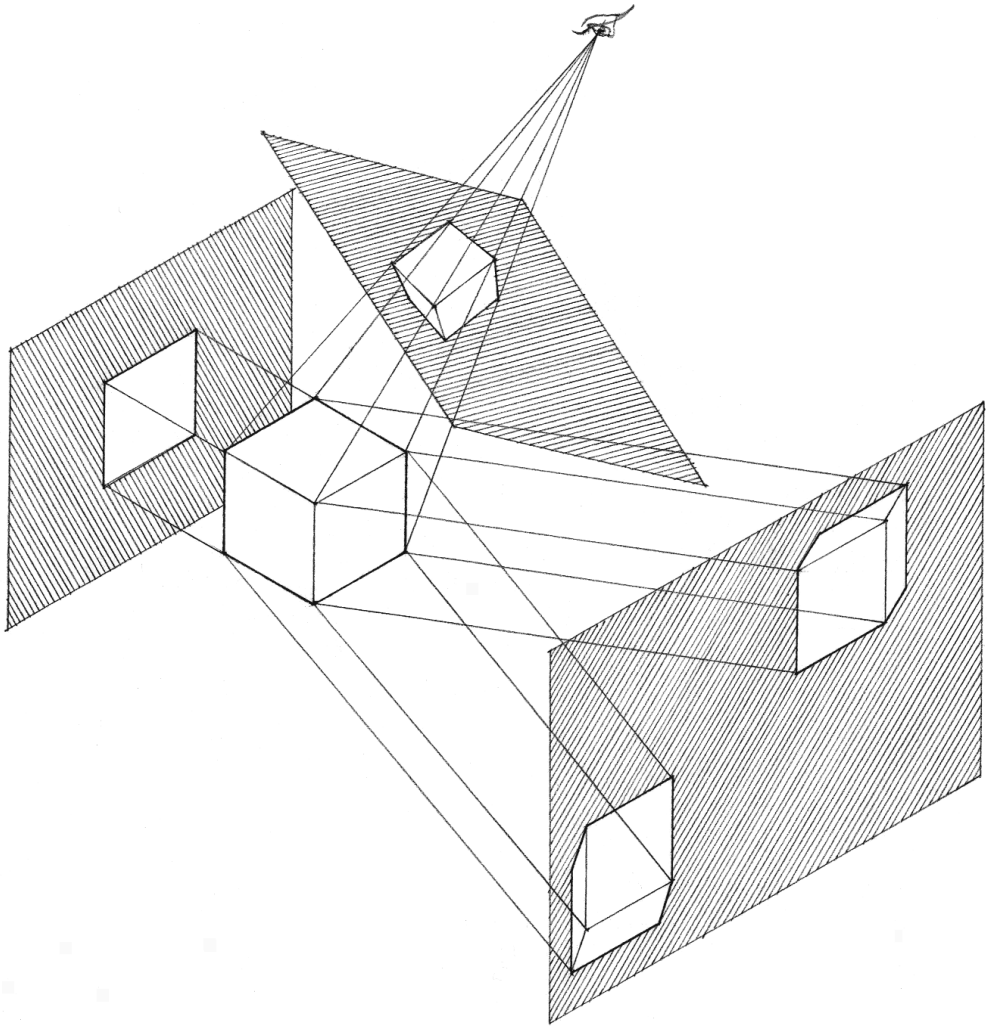
Drawing Systems

A central problem in drawing is how to represent aspects of three-dimensional reality on a surface that has only two dimensions. In the course of human history, various empirical methods evolved to represent the depth of space and objects within it. Manifestations of what we now call orthographic projection occur on Egyptian temple walls and in Greek vase paintings. There are numerous examples of oblique projection in Indian, Chinese, and Japanese art. We even find instances of linear perspective in Roman murals.

Today, these visual systems of representation constitute a formal language of design drawing governed by a consistent set of theories, principles, and conventions. We categorize these modes of representation into distinct types of drawing systems. We refer to these as systems to distinguish them from drawing techniques, which pertain to how we make marks on a sheet of paper or a computer screen.



In design, drawing systems provide alternative ways of thinking about and representing what we see before us or envision in the mind's eye. Each drawing system involves a built-in set of mental operations that directs our exploration of a design problem. In selecting one drawing system over another to convey visual information, we make conscious as well as unconscious choices as to which aspects of our perception or imagination can or should be expressed. The choice of a drawing system is as much a question of what to conceal as it is a decision about what to reveal.



5
Pictorial Systems

We classify drawing systems according to method of projection as well as by resulting pictorial effect. Projection refers to the process or technique of representing a three-dimensional object by extending all its points by straight lines, called projectors, to a picture plane, an imaginary transparent plane assumed to be coextensive with the drawing surface. We also call the picture plane the plane of projection.

There are three major types of projection systems—orthographic projection, oblique projection, and perspective projection. The relationship of the projectors to one other, and the angle at which they strike the picture plane, differentiate each projection system from the other two. We should recognize the particular nature of each projection system and understand the principles that guide the construction of each drawing type within the system. These principles define a common language that allows us to read and understand one another's drawings.

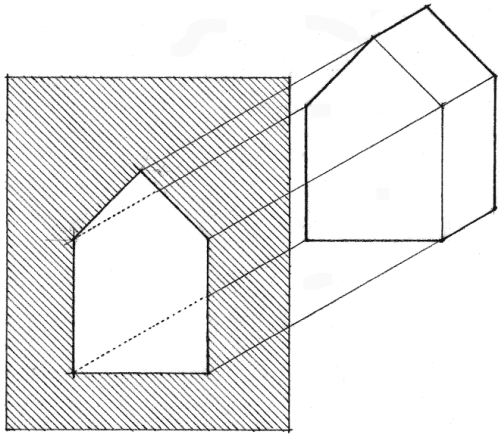
In addition to its utility as a means of communication, projection drawing both requires and facilitates learning how to think spatially in three dimensions. In working through the process of constructing a projection, we navigate through a three-dimensional field of space in order to locate points, determine the length and direction of lines, and describe the shape and extent of planes. Projection drawing thus embraces the system of Cartesian coordinates and the principles of descriptive geometry.

PICTORIAL SYSTEMS

When we lay out the major types of projection systems, it becomes apparent that the images they present of an object vary in appearance. It is easiest to discern both the pictorial similarities and differences by studying how each projection system represents the same cubic form having mutually perpendicular sets of lines and planes.

Based on similarities of appearance, there are three major categories of pictorial systems—multiview drawings, paraline drawings, and perspective drawings. Multiview drawings represent a three-dimensional subject through a series of distinct but related two-dimensional views. Both paraline and perspective drawings, on the other hand, depict two or more facets of a three-dimensional structure in a single image. The major pictorial difference between the two is that parallel lines remain parallel in paraline drawings, while they appear to converge in perspective drawings.

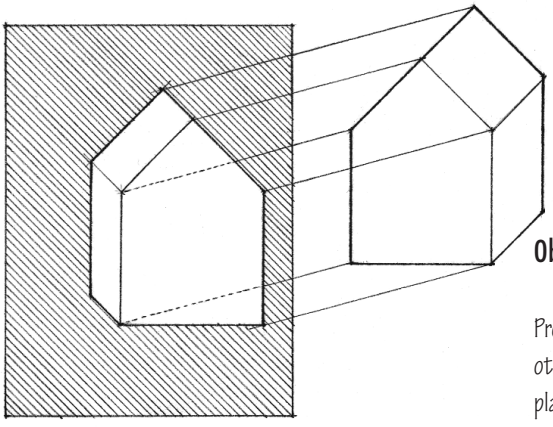
Multiview, paraline, and perspective drawings represent a range of choices for the designer. We should not only know how to construct each drawing type but also understand the particular pictorial effects that each projection system produces. No one drawing system is superior to the others; each has inherent pictorial characteristics that influence how we think about what we are illustrating and what others read into it. Each defines a unique relationship between subject and viewer and describes different aspects of a subject. For every aspect revealed by a particular drawing system, other aspects are concealed. In the end, the selection of a drawing system should be appropriate to the nature of the subject and the requirements of communication.



Projection System

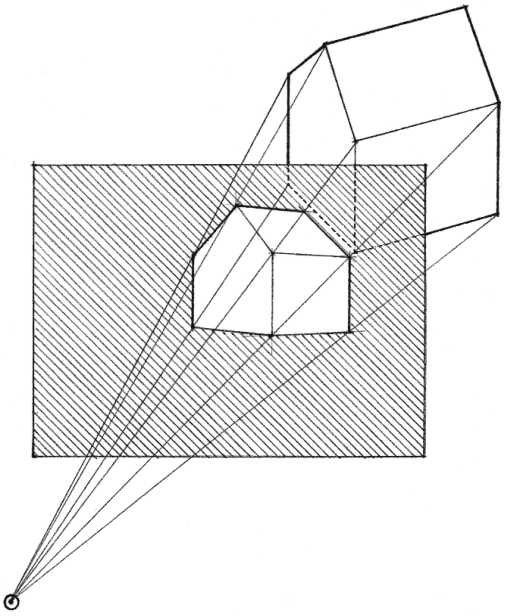
Orthographic Projection

Projectors are parallel to each other and perpendicular to picture plane; see Chapter 6.



Oblique Projection

Projectors are parallel to each other and oblique to picture plane; see Chapter 7.



Perspective Projection

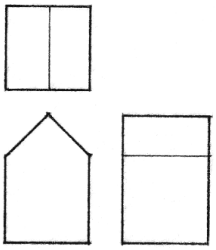
Projectors converge to a point that represents the eye of the observer; see Chapter 8.

Projection System

Pictorial System

Orthographic Projection

Plan, section, elevation
Principal face of rectangular form in each view is parallel to the picture plane.

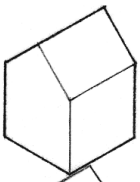


Multiview Drawings

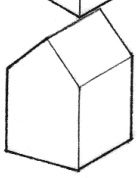
Axonometric Projection

See Chapter 7.

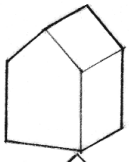
Isometric
Three major axes make equal angles with the picture plane.



Dimetric
Two of the three major axes make equal angles with the picture plane.



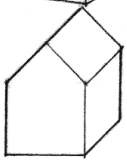
Trimetric
Three major axes make different angles with the picture plane.



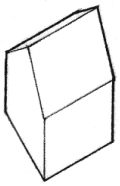
Paraline Drawings

Oblique Projection

Elevation Oblique
Principal vertical face of rectangular form is parallel with the picture plane.

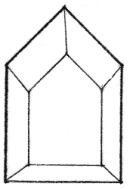


Plan Oblique
Principal horizontal face of rectangular form is parallel with the picture plane.

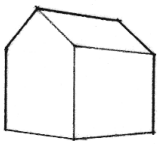


Perspective Projection

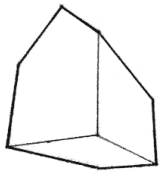
1-point Perspective
One horizontal axis is perpendicular to the picture plane; the other horizontal axis and the vertical axis are parallel with the picture plane.



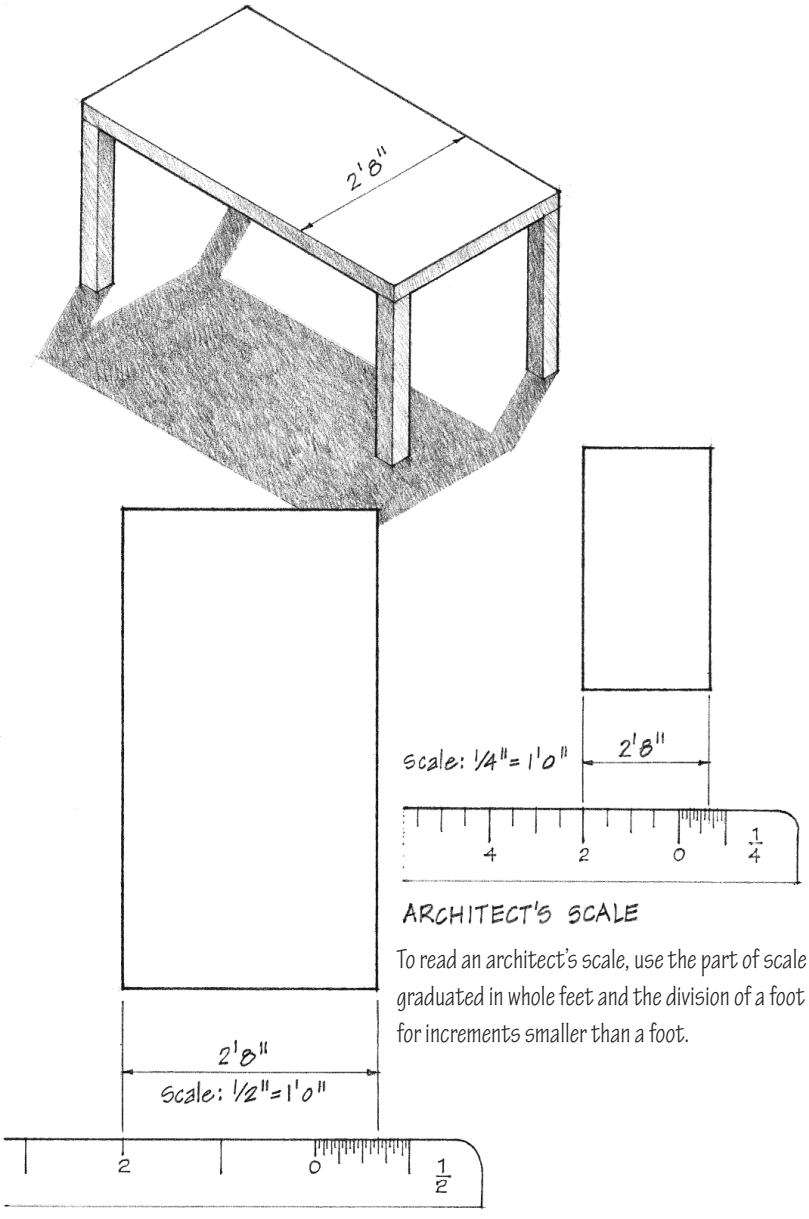
2-point Perspective
Both horizontal axes are oblique to the picture plane; vertical axis remains parallel with the picture plane.



3-point Perspective
Three major axes of rectangular form are oblique to the picture plane.



Perspective Drawings



ARCHITECT'S SCALE

To read an architect's scale, use the part of scale graduated in whole feet and the division of a foot for increments smaller than a foot.

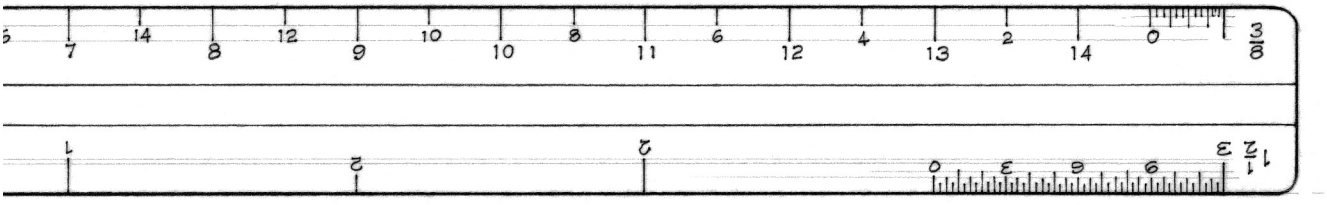
Mechanical scale is the calculation of the physical dimensions of an object according to a standard system of measurement. For example, we can say that a table, according to the U.S. Customary System, measures 5' long, 32" wide, and 29" high. If we are familiar with this system and to objects of similar size, we can visualize how big the table is. Using the International Metric System, however, the same table would measure 1524 mm long, 813 mm wide, and 737 mm high.

The drawings we use to represent this table or any other design must fall within the confines of the drawing surface. Since a design object or construction is usually much larger than the drawing surface, we must reduce the size of the drawing to fit. We refer to the proportional reduction in drawing size as the scale of the drawing.

To construct an accurate representation of a design, we use a proportional measuring system. When we say a drawing is made to scale, we mean that all of its dimensions are related to the full-size object or construction by a chosen ratio. For example, when we draw at a scale of $^1/_4$" = 1'0", each $^1/_4$" in the drawing represents a foot in the full-size object or construction. In a large-scale drawing, the size reduction is relatively small, while in a small-scale drawing, the size reduction is considerable.

Architect's Scales

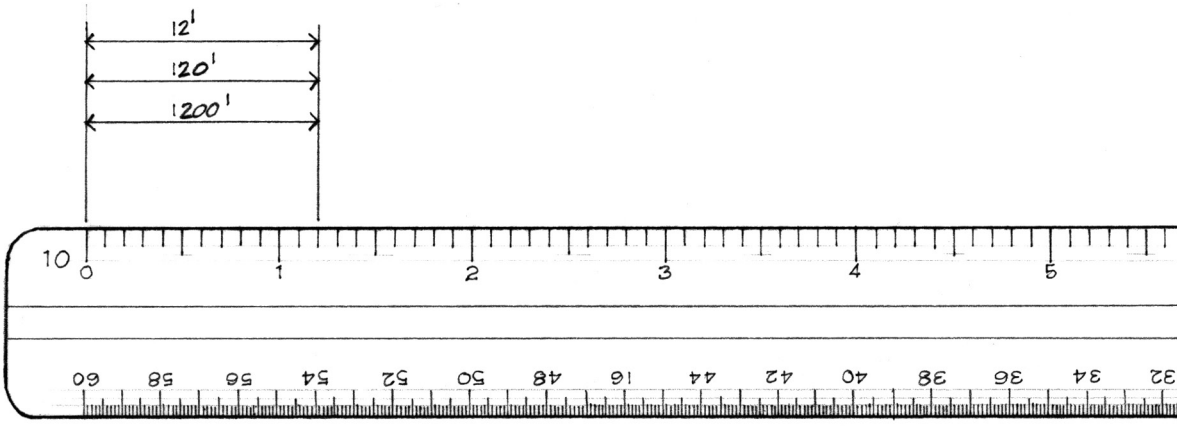
The term *scale* also refers to the device we use to accurately make measurements. Architect's scales have one or more sets of graduated and numbered spaces, each set establishing a proportion of a fractional part of an inch to one foot. Triangular scales have 6 sides with a full-size scale in $^1/_{16}$" increments, as well as the following architectural scales: $^3/_{32}$", $^3/_{16}$", $^1/_8$", $^1/_4$", $^1/_2$", $^3/_8$", $^3/_4$", 1", 1$^1/_2$", and 3" = 1'0". Flat-beveled scales have either 2 sides with 4 scales or 4 sides with 8 scales. Scales should have precisely calibrated graduations and engraved, wear-resistant markings.



- The larger the scale of a drawing, the more information it can and should contain.
- Scales should never be used as a straightedge for drawing lines.

Engineer's Scales

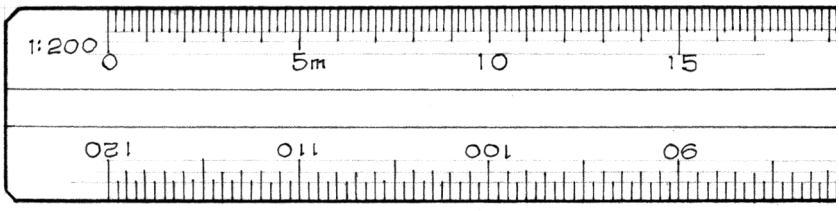
An engineer's scale has one or more sets of graduated and numbered spaces, each set being divided into 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, or 60 parts to the inch.



Metric Scales

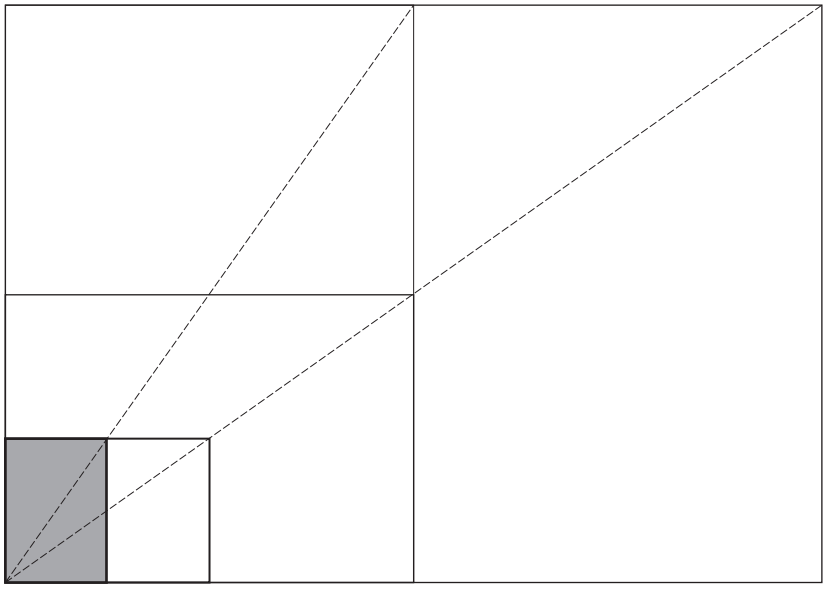
Metric scales consist of one or more sets of graduated and numbered spaces, each set establishing a proportion of one millimeter to a specified number of millimeters.

- Common metric scales include the following: 1:5, 1:50, 1:500, 1:10, 1:100, 1:1000, 1:20, and 1:200

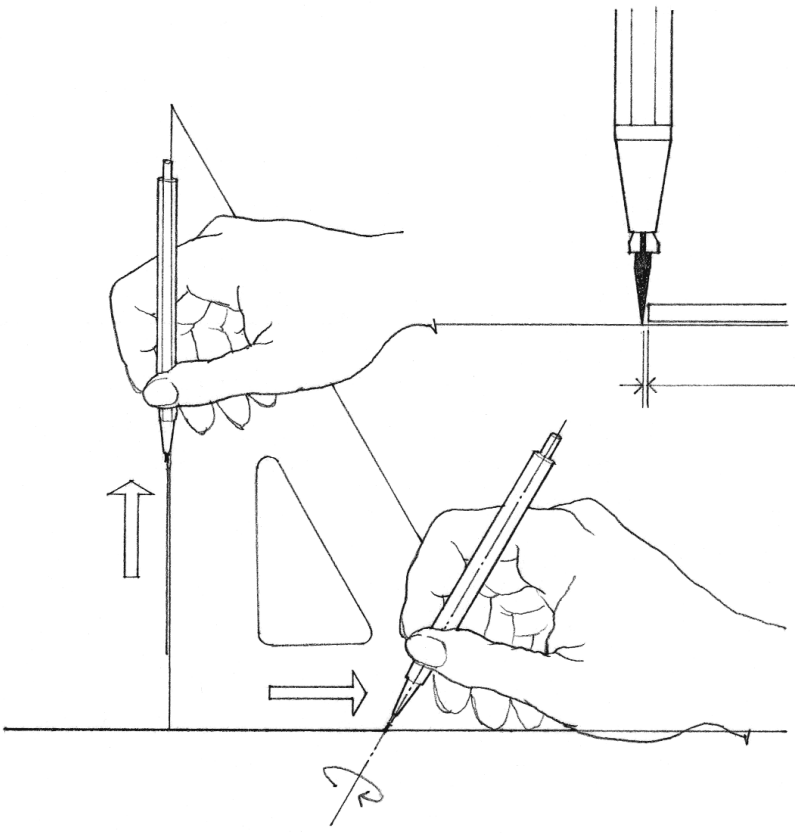


Digital Scale

In traditional drawing, we think in real-world units and use scale to reduce the drawing to a manageable size. In digital drawing, we actually input information in real-world units, but we should be careful to distinguish between the size of the image viewed on a monitor, which can be reduced and enlarged independent of its real-world size, and the scale of the output from a printer or plotter.



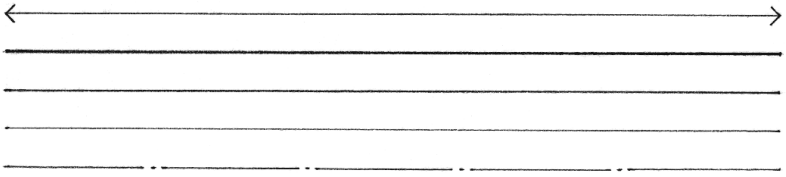
DRAWING LINES



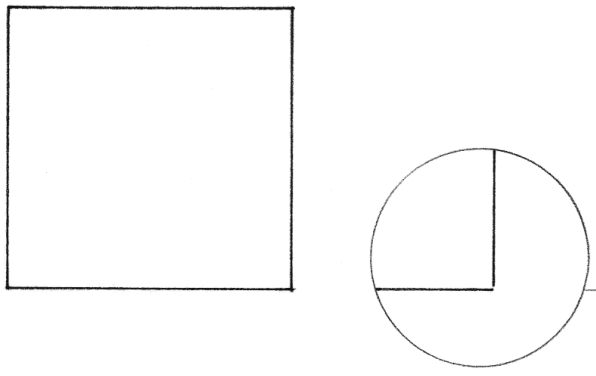
Drafting lines is necessary when clarity, precision, and accuracy are paramount in the communication of a design. Drafted lines should therefore be uniform in thickness and density, have definite endpoints, and meet other lines cleanly.

When drafting by hand, we use the straightedge of a T-square, parallel rule, or triangle as a guide as we pull a pencil point or pen nib in the direction of the line being drawn. When drafting by hand, keep the following points in mind:

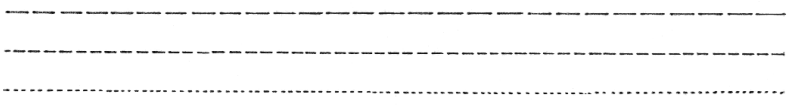
- Always draw over the straightedge, leaving a very slight gap between the edge and the point of the pencil or tip of the pen.
- Hold the barrel of the pen or shaft of the pencil in a vertical plane perpendicular to the drawing surface and tilt it in the direction of movement. With pens, maintain an angle of about 80°; hold pencils at an angle from 45° to 60°.
- Always pull the pen or pencil in the direction of the line being drawn. Never push the pen tip or pencil point, as this makes it difficult to control the quality of the line, and can also damage both the pen tip and the drawing surface.
- When drafting with a pencil, it is important to have a well-sharpened point that is neither too stubby nor too rounded. To maintain the sharpness of a pencil point and maintain a uniform thickness, practice rotating the pencil between thumb and forefinger as you draw each line.



- Strive for consistently crisp, taut lines. Each object line should start and end in a precise manner. Back up slightly and exert a little extra pressure at both the beginning and the end of each stroke so that every line begins and ends in a positive manner.
- Draw at a steady pace and strive for a line that is uniform in thickness and density. A hand-drafted line should appear as if it were stretched tightly between two points.

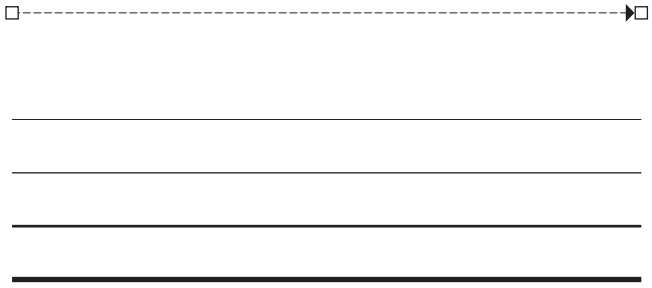


- Define corners with a very slight overlap.
- Avoid exaggerating the length of the overlap; the amount of overlap depends on the scale of the drawing.
- Corners appear rounded when lines do not meet in an explicit manner.



Analogous to traditional hand-drafting tools are the software capabilities of 2D vector-based drawing programs, which incorporate a number of graphic primitives—software routines for drawing such elements as points, straight lines, curves, and shapes, all based on mathematical formulae and from which more complex graphic elements can be created.

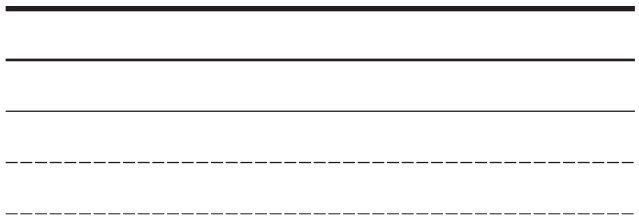
- A straight line segment can be created by clicking two endpoints.
- The weight of the stroke can be selected from a menu or by specifying its width in absolute terms (millimeters, fractions of an inch, or number of points, where 1 point = $^{1}/_{72}$").
- When using a digital drawing program, what one sees on a computer monitor does not necessarily reflect what the printed or plotted output will be. Judgment of line quality and weight in a digital drawing must be deferred until one sees the actual output from a printer or plotter.



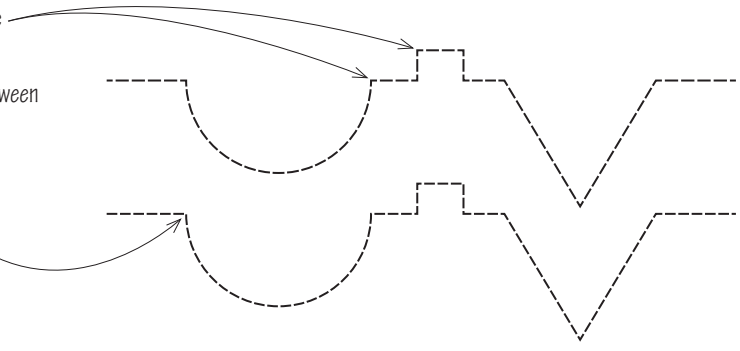
Line Types

All lines serve a purpose in drawing. It is essential that, as you draw, you understand what each line represents, whether it be an edge of a plane, a change in material, or simply a construction guideline. The following types of lines, whether drawn by hand or on a computer, are typically used to make architectural graphics easier to read and interpret:

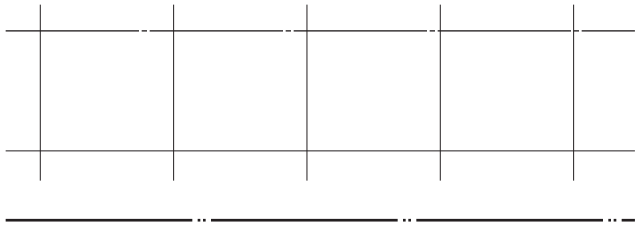
- Solid lines delineate the form of objects, such as the edge of a plane or the intersection of two planes. The relative weight of a solid line varies according to its role in conveying depth.



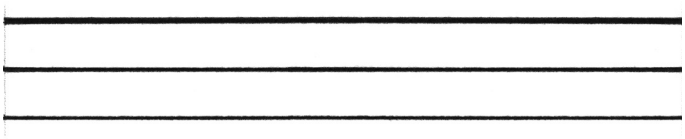
- Dashed lines indicate elements hidden or removed from our view. The dashes should be relatively uniform in length and be closely spaced for better visual continuity.
- When dashed lines meet at a corner, a dash should continue across the angle. To achieve this when using a digital drawing program, it may be necessary to adjust the length of the dashes and the space or gap between the dashes.
- A space in the corner position will soften the angle.



- Centerlines, consisting of thin, relatively long segments separated by single dashes or dots, represent the axis of a symmetrical object or composition.
- Grid lines are a rectangular or radial system of light solid lines or centerlines for locating and regulating the elements of a plan.
- Property lines, consisting of relatively long segments separated by two dashes or dots, indicate the legally defined and recorded boundaries of a parcel of land.

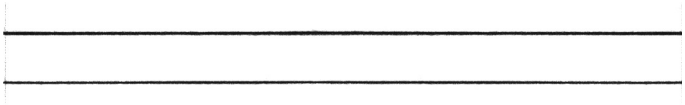


In theory, all lines should be uniformly dense for ease of readability and reproduction. Line weight is therefore primarily a matter of width or thickness. While inked lines are uniformly black and vary only in width, pencil lines can vary in both width and tonal value, depending on the hardness of the lead used, the tooth and density of the surface, and the speed and pressure with which you draw. Strive to make all pencil lines uniformly dense and vary their width to achieve differing line weights.



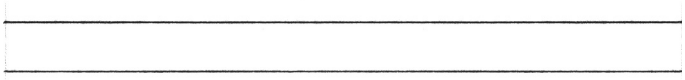
Heavy

- Heavy solid lines are used to delineate the profiles of plan and section cuts (see pages 156 and 188) as well as spatial edges (see page 133).
- Use H, F, HB, or B leads; pressing too hard to draw a bold line indicates that you are using too hard of a lead.
- Use a lead holder or draw a series of closely spaced lines with a 0.3 mm or 0.5 mm mechanical pencil; avoid using a 0.7 mm or 0.9 mm pencil for drawing heavy line weights.



Medium

- Medium-weight solid lines indicate the edges and intersections of planes.
- Use H, F, or HB leads.

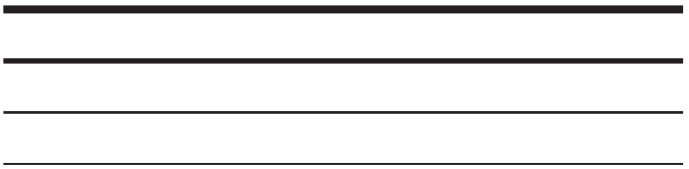


Light

- Lightweight solid lines suggest a change in material, color, or texture, without a change in the form of an object.
- Use 2H, H, or F leads.

Very Light

- Very light solid lines are used to lay out drawings, establish organizing grids, and indicate surface textures.
- Use 4H, 2H, H, or F leads.

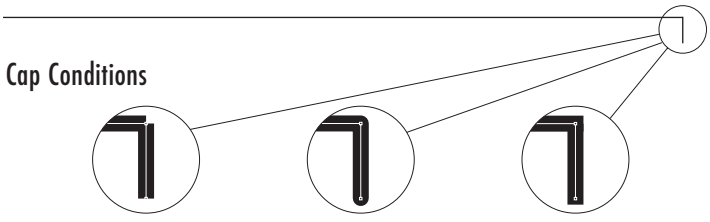


- The visible range and contrast of line weights should be in proportion to the size and scale of a drawing.

Digital Line Weights

- One advantage to drawing or drafting by hand is that the results are immediately discernible to the eye. When using drawing or computer-aided drafting (CAD) software, one may select a line weight from a menu or by specifying a stroke width in absolute units (millimeters, fractions of an inch, or number of points, where 1 point = $^{1}/_{72}$"). In either case, what one views on a monitor may not match the output from a printer or plotter. One should therefore always run a test print or plot to ascertain whether or not the resulting range and contrasts in the line weights of a drawing are appropriate. Note, however, that if changes in line weight are necessary, it is often much easier to make them in a digital drawing than in a hand drawing.

Cap Conditions



Butt cap creates stroked lines with squared ends.

Round cap creates stroked lines with semicircular ends.

Projecting cap creates stroked lines with squared ends that extend half the line width beyond the end of the line.

In all drawing systems, object lines define the shape and form of the physical entity or construction we are designing. We draw all object lines visible to the eye as solid, continuous lines. Depending on our point of view, however, the contour that an object line represents may appear to be a spatial edge, an intersection of two visible planes, or simply a change in material or color. To represent and communicate these distinctions, we use a hierarchy of line weights.

Spatial Edges

The most important object lines are those that depict the edges where solid matter meets spatial void. These contours define the shape and profile of objects and distinguish one object from another where they overlap in space. We typically use the heaviest line weight to delineate these edges of space.

Planar Corners

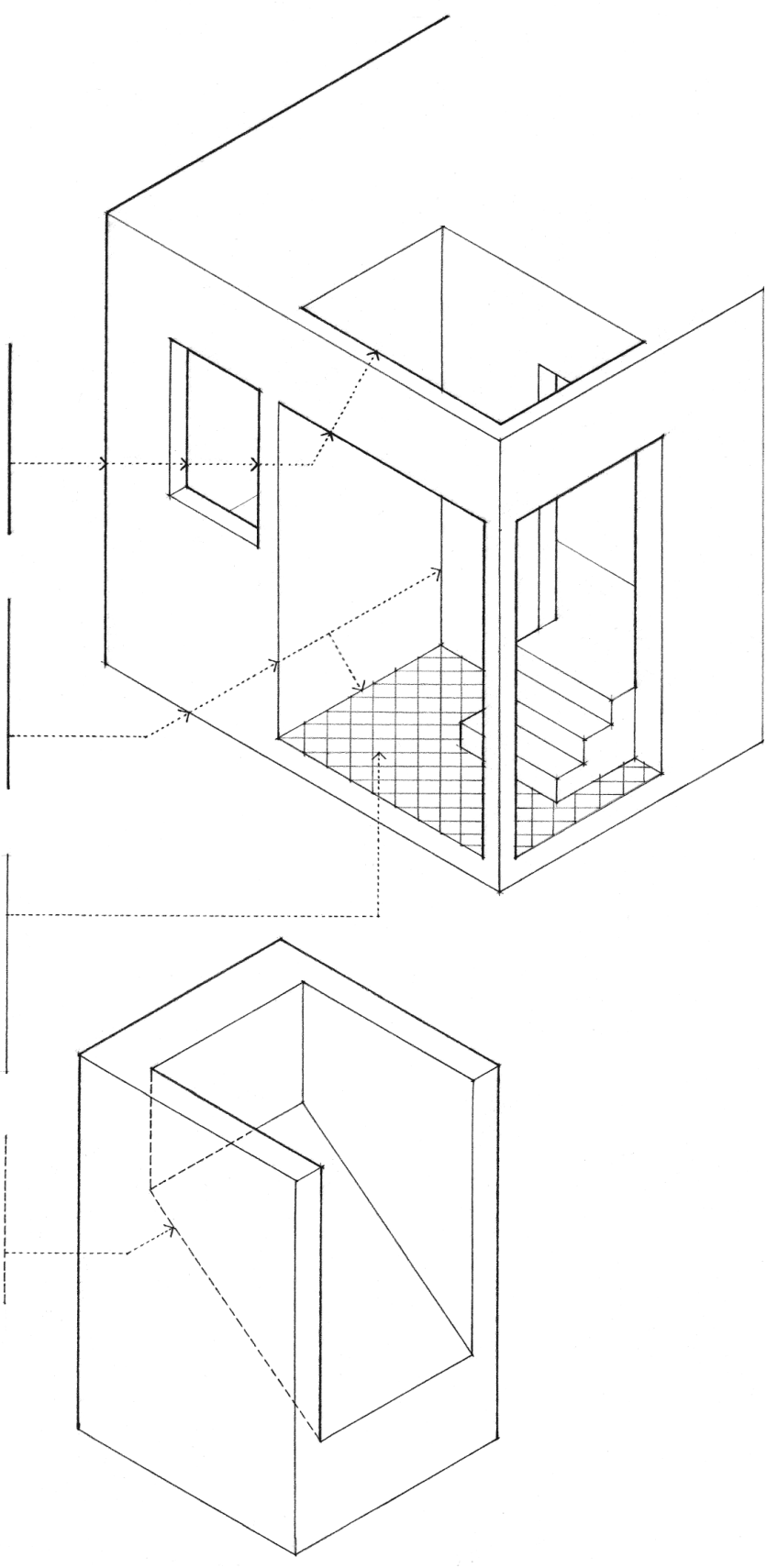
The second most important object lines are those that describe contours appearing within the outer silhouette of a three-dimensional volume. These interior contours articulate the surface structure of a three-dimensional volume. To distinguish these inner edges from the outer profile of a form, we use an intermediate range of line weights.

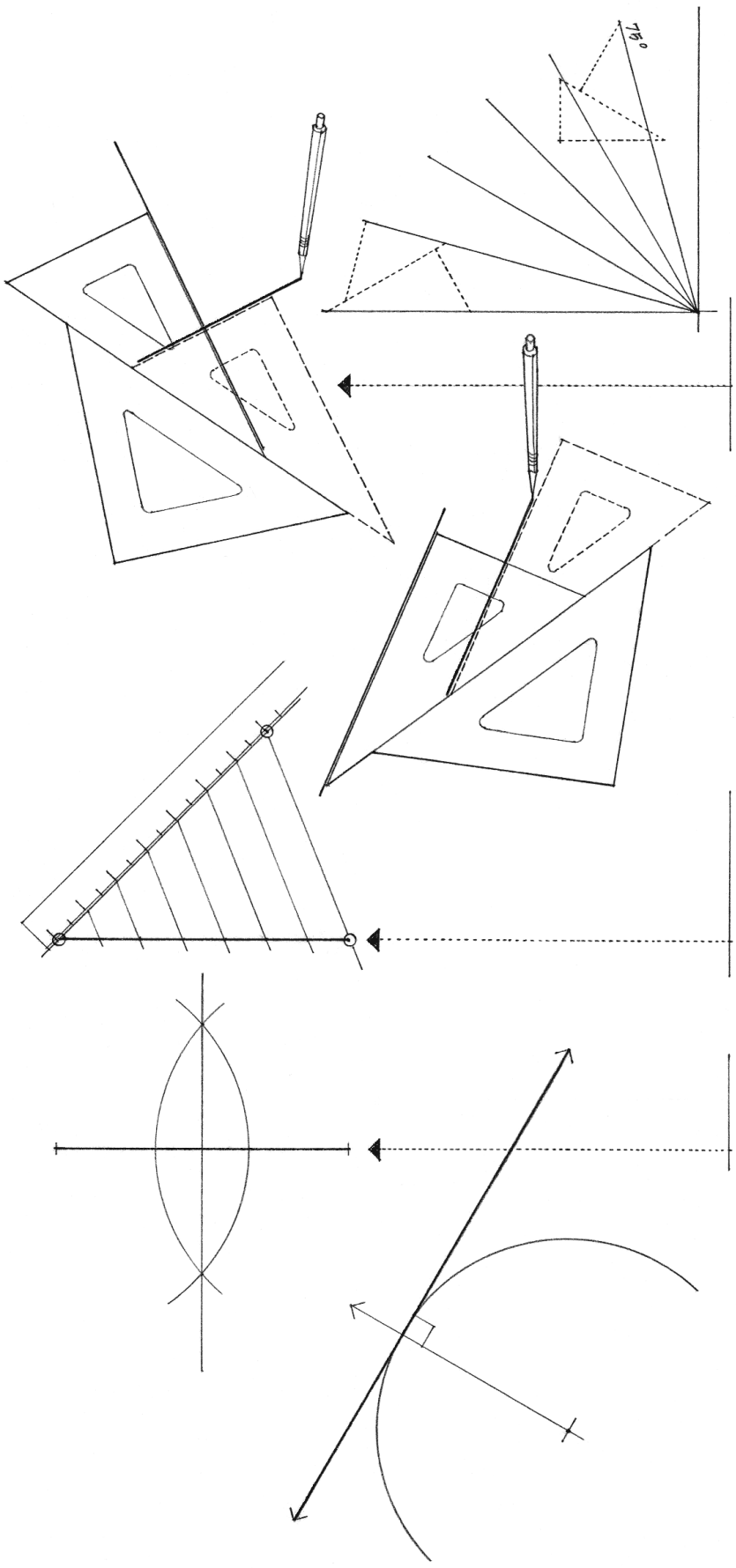
Surface Lines

The third type of object line simply indicates discernible changes in color, tonal value, or texture on the surface of a plane or volume. To indicate these lines of tonal or textural contrast, we use the lightest range of line weights. When the slimmest possible solid line is not light enough in value, a dashed or dotted line may be used to preserve the hierarchy of line weights.

Hidden Lines

Hidden lines reveal edges that would be concealed otherwise by another part of the object in a particular view. Hidden lines consist of a series of closely spaced dashes or dots.





It is useful to understand how to draw common geometric shapes and perform certain drawing operations when drafting by hand.

Angled Lines

We can use the standard 45°-45° and 30°-60° triangles either singly or in combination to draw angled lines in 15° increments from 15° to 90°.

Drawing a Perpendicular

We can use a pair of triangles to draw a perpendicular to any line. First position the hypotenuse of each triangle against each other and align one side of the upper triangle with the line. Then hold the bottom triangle in position while you slide the upper triangle until the perpendicular side is in the proper position.

Drawing a Series of Parallel Lines

We can use a pair of triangles to draw a series of lines parallel to one already drawn. First position the hypotenuse of each triangle against each other and align the longer side of the upper triangle with the drawn line. Then hold the second triangle in position and slide the first triangle to the desired positions of the parallel lines.

Subdividing a Line

To subdivide a line AB into a number of equal parts, draw a second line at any angle between 10° and 90° from point A. Use a scale to mark off the desired number of equal divisions along the second line. Draw line BC. Then use a pair of triangles to draw a series of parallel lines that transfer the scaled divisions to line AB.

Bisecting a Line

To bisect a line, construct circular arcs with a compass from each of the endpoints of the line. Then draw a line through the two points where the arcs intersect. This line not only bisects the first line but is also perpendicular to it.

Drawing a Tangent to a Circular Arc

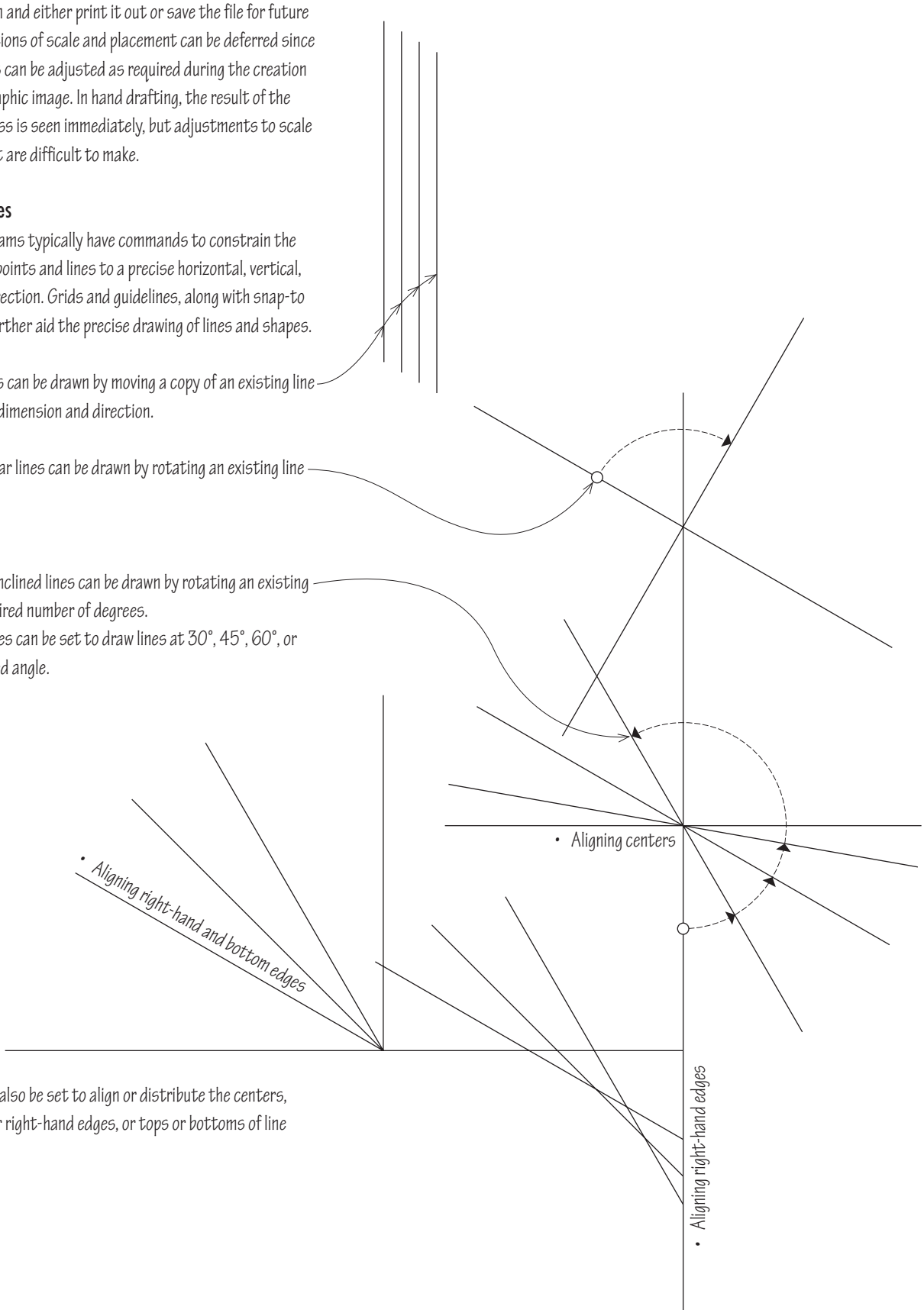
To draw a tangent to a circle or circular arc, first draw the radius from the center of the circle or circular arc to the point of tangency. Then construct a line perpendicular to the radius through the point of tangency.

Digital drawing programs allow us to try out graphic ideas and easily undo them if unworkable. We can lay out and develop work on screen and either print it out or save the file for future editing. Questions of scale and placement can be deferred since these aspects can be adjusted as required during the creation of the final graphic image. In hand drafting, the result of the drawing process is seen immediately, but adjustments to scale and placement are difficult to make.

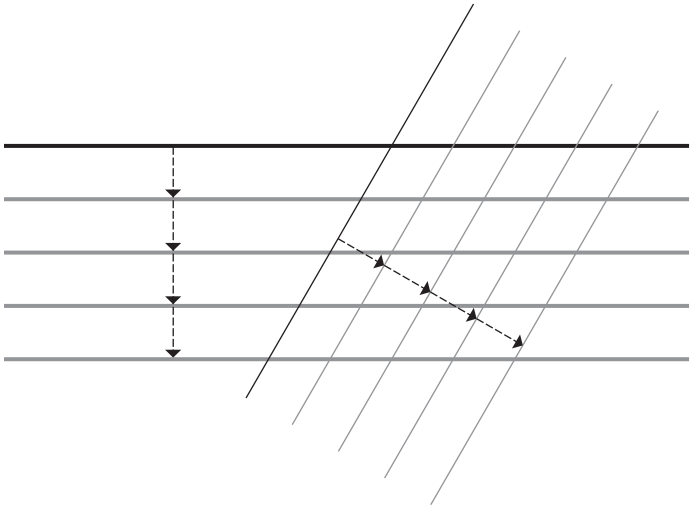
Digital Guides

Drawing programs typically have commands to constrain the movement of points and lines to a precise horizontal, vertical, or diagonal direction. Grids and guidelines, along with snap-to commands, further aid the precise drawing of lines and shapes.

- Parallel lines can be drawn by moving a copy of an existing line a specified dimension and direction.
- Perpendicular lines can be drawn by rotating an existing line 90°.
- Sloping or inclined lines can be drawn by rotating an existing line the desired number of degrees.
- Smart guides can be set to draw lines at 30°, 45°, 60°, or any specified angle.



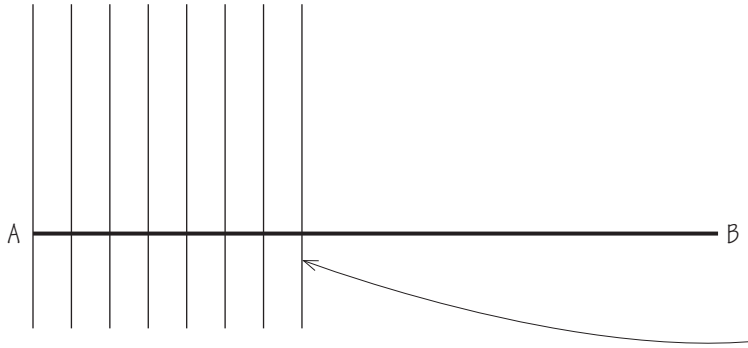
- Guides can also be set to align or distribute the centers, left-hand or right-hand edges, or tops or bottoms of line segments.



Digital Multiplication

The ability to create, move, and place copies of a line or shape is easily accomplished in digital drawing programs.

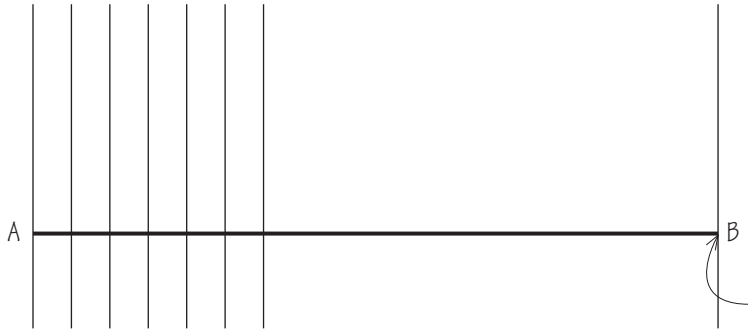
- We can copy and move any line or shape a specified distance in a given direction, repeating this process as many times as necessary to achieve the desired number of equally spaced copies.



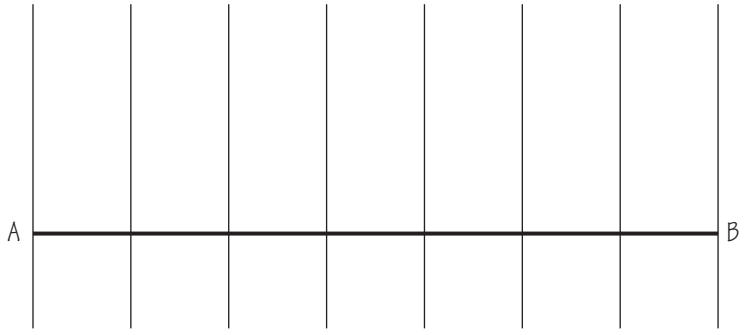
Digital Subdivision

We can subdivide any line segment in a manner similar to the process we use in hand drafting. We can also distribute lines and shapes evenly between the two endpoints of the line segment. Whether subdividing by hand drafting or in a digital drawing program, the process of working from the general to the specific, from the larger whole to the smaller parts, remains the same.

- Given line segment AB, draw a line segment at any angle through point A and copy the line segment as many times as necessary to equal the desired number of subdivisions.



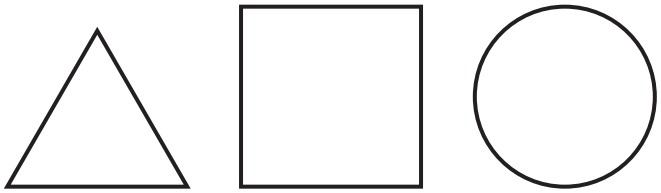
- Move the last line segment to point B.



- Select all of the line segments and distribute them evenly to create the desired number of equal divisions.

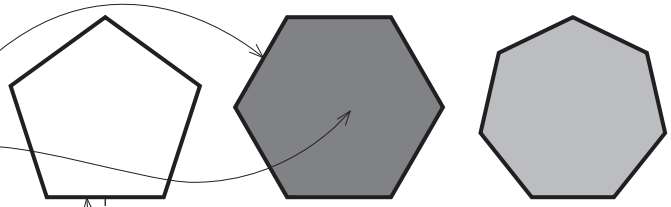
Digital Shapes

2D vector-based drawing and CAD programs include digital templates of geometric shapes, furnishings, fixtures, and user-defined elements. Whether a template is physical or digital, its purpose remains the same—to save time when drawing repetitive elements.



Digital shapes have two attributes: stroke and fill.

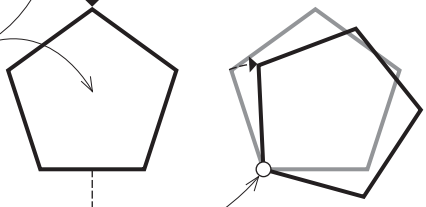
- The stroke is the path that defines the boundary of a shape.
- The fill is the area within the boundary of the shape, which can be left as a void or be given a color, pattern, or gradient.



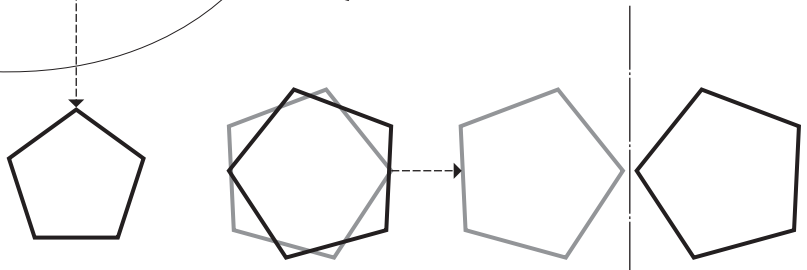
Digital Transformations

Once created, a digital shape can be transformed by scaling, rotating, reflecting, or shearing. Any vector-based shape is easy to modify because the mathematical description of its underlying geometry is embedded in the software routine.

- Vector images can be reduced or enlarged horizontally, vertically, or in both directions without degrading the quality of the image. Because vector images are resolution independent, they can be output to the highest quality at any scale.

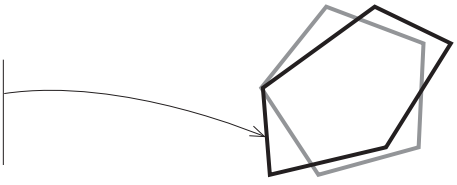


- Vector images can be rotated about a designated point to any specified angle.

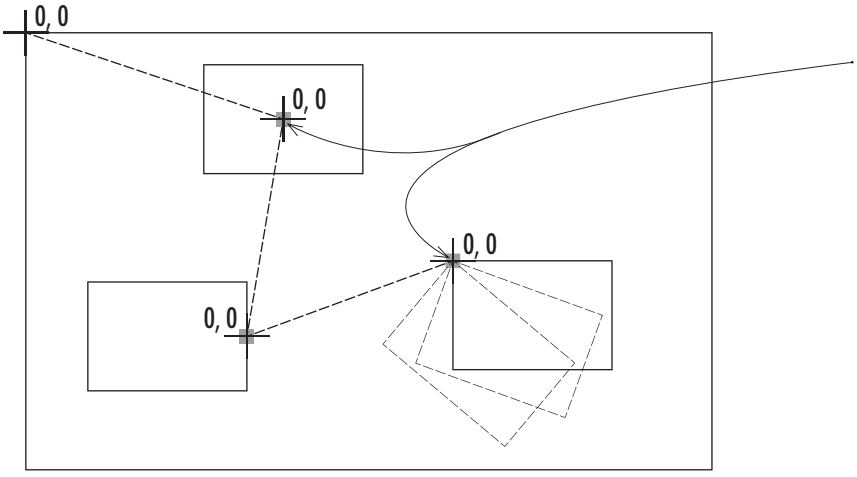


- Vector images can be reflected or mirrored about any specified axis.

- Vector images can be sheared or skewed along a horizontal or vertical axis, or at a specified angle relative to a horizontal or vertical axis.

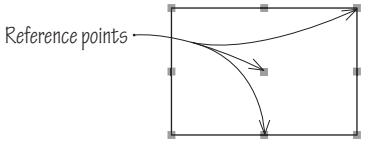


Any of these transformations can be repeated a number of times until the desired image is achieved.



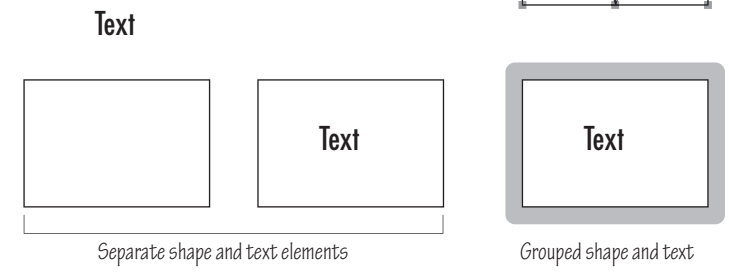
Origin Point

In digital drawing environments, there is a default origin point of (0, 0) for two-dimensional applications, and (0, 0, 0) in three-dimensional programs. The origin point establishes the location from which all X, Y, and Z measurements are made. This origin point can be moved to different locations within the drawing environment, which allows objects to be quickly and accurately placed.



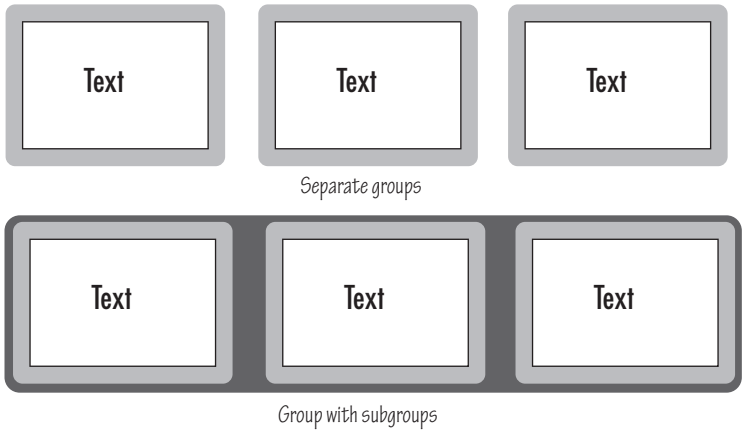
Reference Point

Objects, lines, and images have a reference point that can be used to locate them relative to the position of the origin point. The reference point can also serve as the point around which a rotation can occur, as well as the point from which a scaling operation can take place. The default reference point is the center of a shape or its bounding box. Other reference points can be set manually at each corner or center of each side of the shape or bounding box.



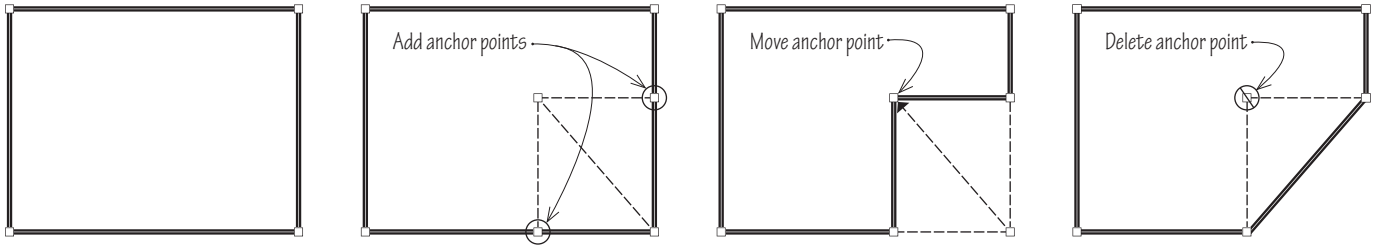
Grouping

Grouping allows multiple lines, shapes, images, and text to be combined into a single set. By selecting one of the objects in the group, all are selected, allowing for the quick selection, movement, or transformation of the group. Multiple groups can themselves be grouped together. Making changes to individual objects within each group is made by isolating the group, typically done by clicking twice on a group or subgroup in order to edit individual objects.



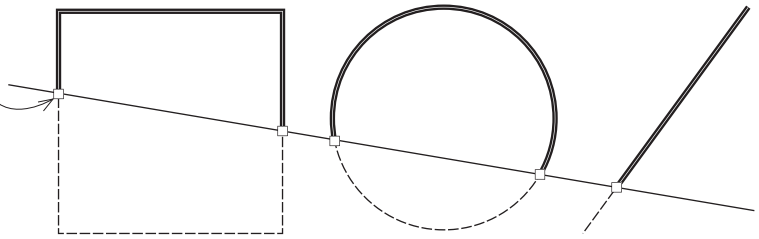
Anchor Point

Anchor points can be added to an existing vector path, allowing the newly created path segments to be moved or manipulated. Similarly, an anchor point can be subtracted from an existing vector path, resulting in the path being redrawn to reconnect the remaining anchor points on either side of the deleted anchor point.



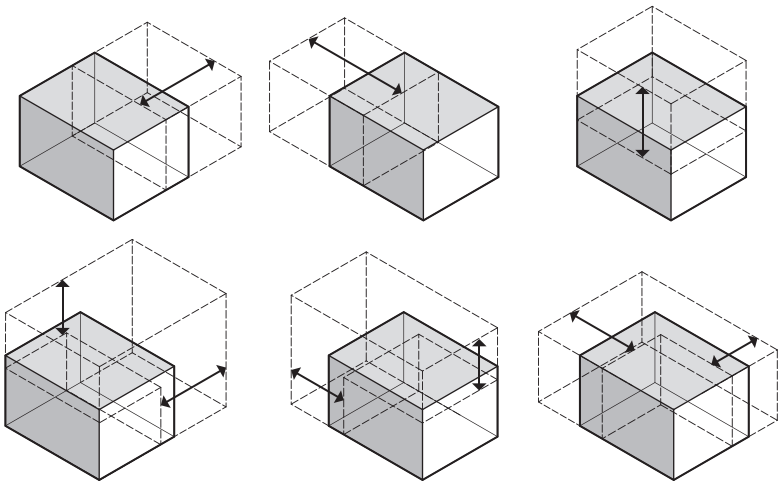
Trim

Objects can be trimmed or sliced to alter their original shape. Trimming creates new anchor points along a vector path allowing for a portion of the original object to be transformed or deleted.



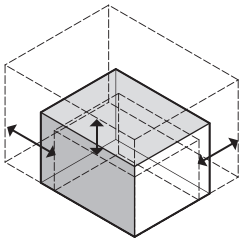
Scale

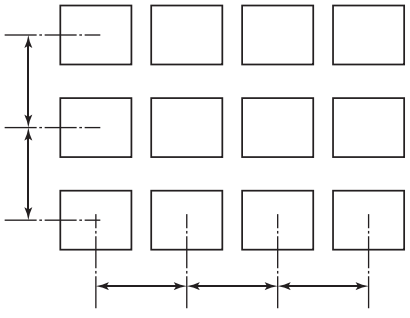
The scale of objects can be changed in one direction, X, Y, or Z; in two directions, XY, XZ, or YZ; or in all three directions, XYZ, providing flexibility in exploring multiple options and ideas.



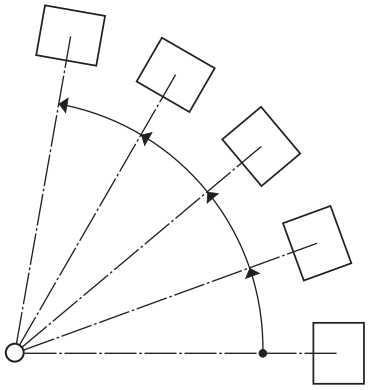
Array

Objects can be arrayed to create multiple copies of the original object. The array can take place in a rectangular layout, with the option of variable spacing between objects horizontally and vertically, or in a polar (circular) layout around a selected point. In three-dimensional applications, rectangular arrays can include objects copied in the Z direction.

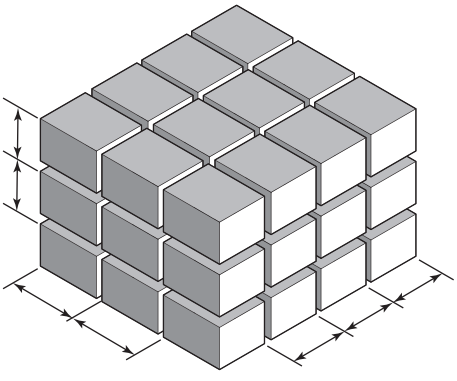




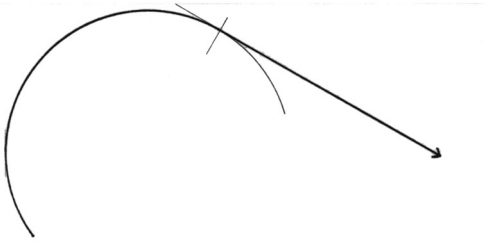
Rectangular array



Polar array

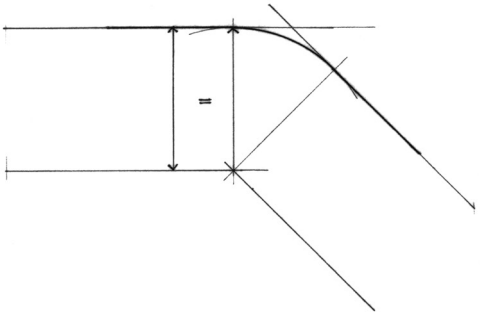


Three-dimensional array

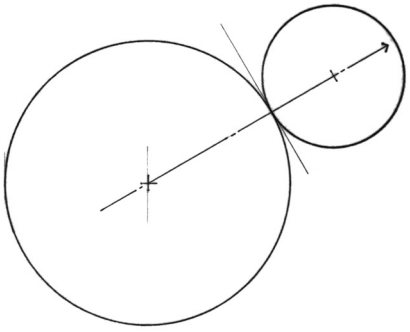


Curved Lines

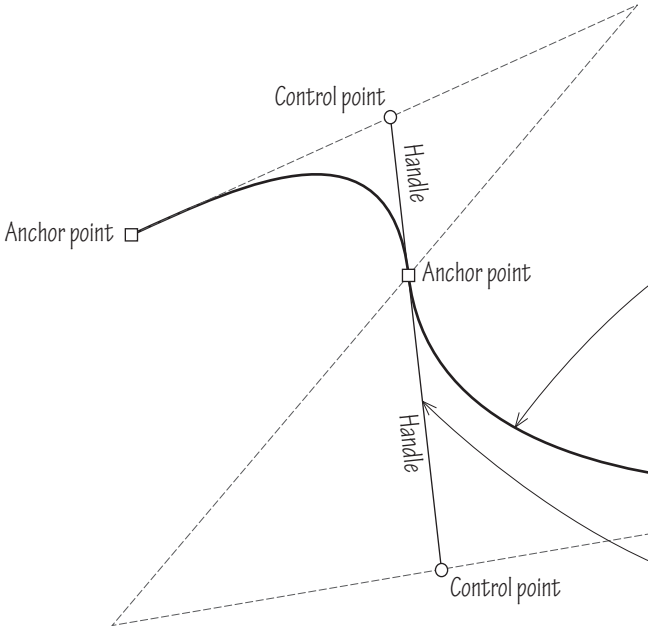
- To avoid drawing a mismatched tangent to a circle or curved line segment, draw the curvilinear element first.
- Then draw the tangent from the circle or arc.
- Care should be taken to match the pen or pencil line weights of circles and arcs to the rest of the drawing.



- To draw an arc of a given radius tangent to two given straight line segments, first draw lines parallel to the given lines at a distance equal to the desired radius of the arc.
- The intersection of these lines establishes the center of the desired arc.



- To draw two circles that are tangent to each other, first draw a line from the center of one to the desired tangential point on its circumference.
- The center of the second circle must lie along the extension of this line.



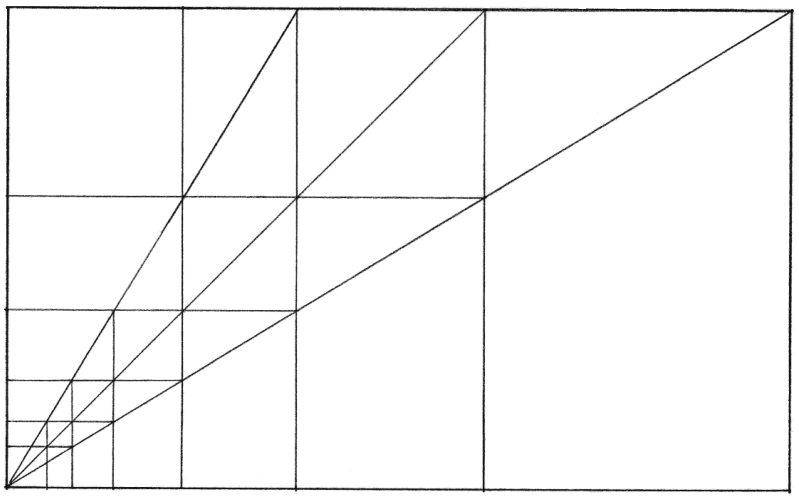
Bézier Curves

Bézier curves refers to a class of mathematically derived curves developed by French engineer Pierre Bézier for CAD/CAM operations.

- A simple Bézier curve has two anchor points, which define the endpoints of the curve, and two control points, which lie outside the curve and control the curvature of the path.
- A number of simple Bézier curves can be joined to form more complex curves.
- The colinear relationship between the two handles at an anchor point ensures a smooth curvature wherever the path changes curvature.

Exercise 5.1

With a mechanical pencil, a drafting triangle, and a T-square or parallel rule, draw a composition of three squares with sides of 1", 2 1/2", and 4 3/4". Is there a consistency of line density and thickness? Do the lines meet crisply at corners? Repeat this exercise twice more, once using a mechanical pen and then with a 2D drawing program.

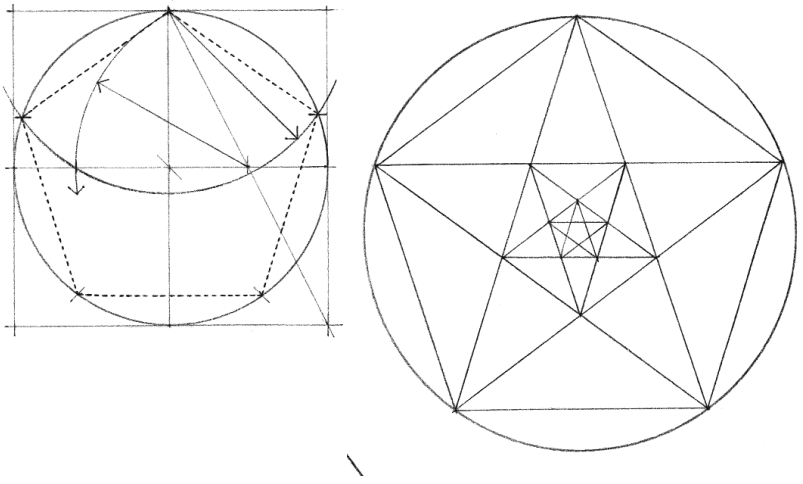


Exercise 5.2

With a mechanical pencil, a drafting triangle, and a T-square or parallel rule, draw this diagram at twice its size. Use an architect's scale to determine the overall dimensions of the largest rectangle when measured at the following scales: 1/8" = 1'0", 1/4" = 1'0", 3/4" = 1'0", 1" = 1'0", 1 1/2" = 1'0".

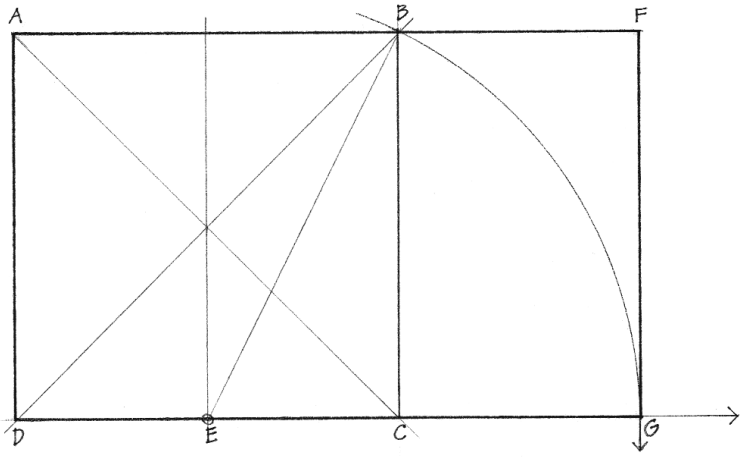
Exercise 5.3

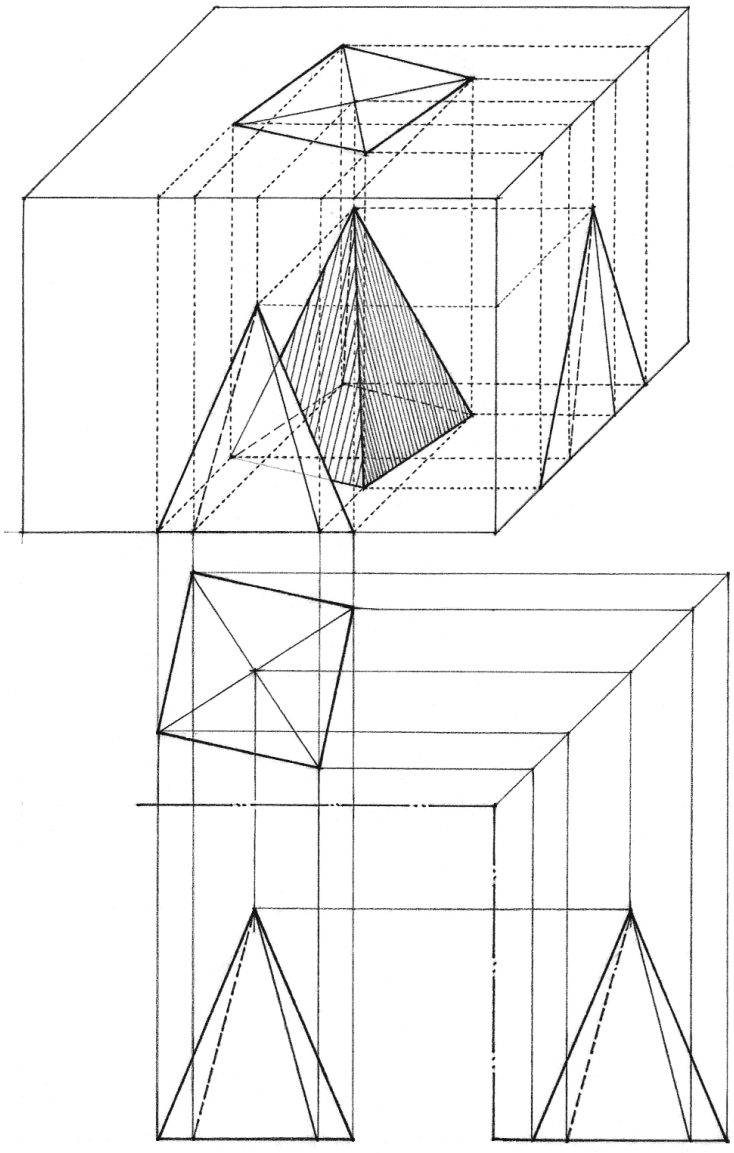
With a compass, draw a 6"-diameter circle. Construct a pentagon as shown in the diagram to the right. Within this pentagon, draw a graduated series of pentagrams.



Exercise 5.4

Construct a rectangle for which the ratio between the shorter and the longer sides is the Golden Section or Golden Mean. First draw the square ABCD with 2" sides. Find the center of the square by drawing two diagonals. Through this center draw a vertical line down to the base of the square to locate point E midway between DC. With E as the center and EB as the radius, swing an arc down to a horizontal extension of the base of the square. Then draw the rectangle AFGD. The ratio of AD to DG is the Golden Section, a ratio of approximately 0.618 to 1.000. Repeat this exercise using a 2D drawing program.





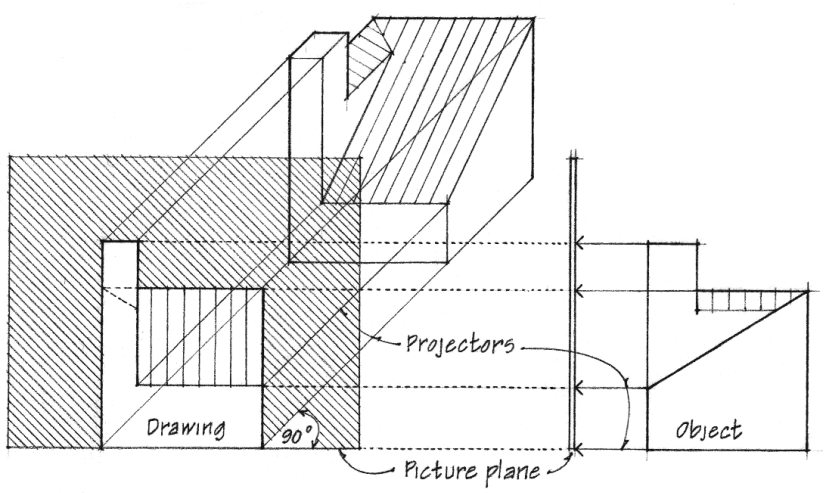
6
Multiview Drawings

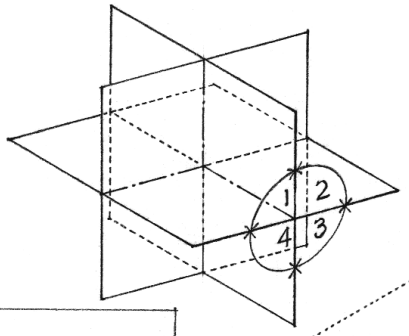
Multiview drawings comprise the drawing types we know as plans, elevations, and sections. Each is an orthographic projection of a particular aspect of an object or construction. These orthographic views are abstract in the sense that they do not match optical reality. They are a conceptual form of representation based on what we know about something rather than on the way it is seen from a point in space. There is no reference to an observer, or if there is, the spectator's eye is an infinite distance away.

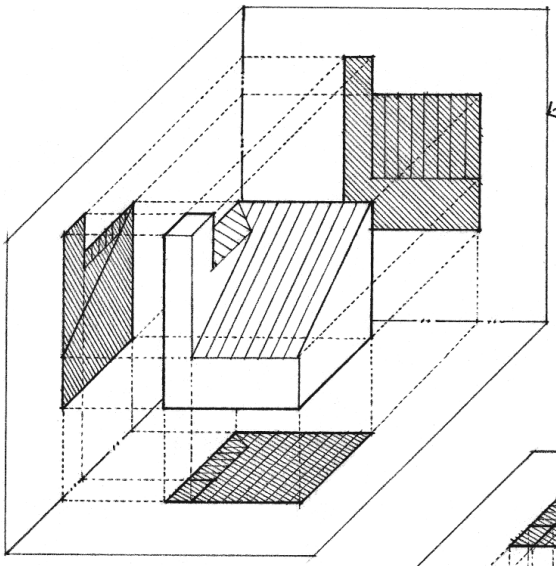
In orthographic projection, parallel projectors meet the picture plane at right angles. Therefore, the orthographic projection of any feature or element that is parallel to the picture plane remains true in size, shape, and configuration. This gives rise to the principal advantage of multiview drawings—the ability to precisely locate points, gauge the length and slope of lines, and describe the shape and extent of planes.

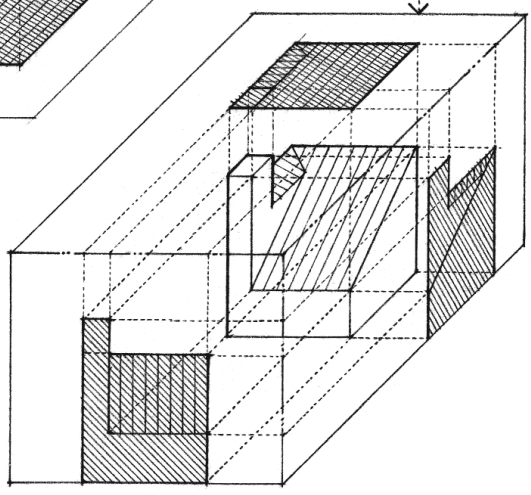
During the design process, multiview drawings establish two-dimensional planar fields on which we can study formal patterns and scale relationships in a composition, as well as impose an intellectual order on a design. The ability to regulate size, placement, and configuration also makes multiview drawings useful in communicating the graphic information necessary for the description, fabrication, and construction of a design.

On the other hand, a single multiview drawing can only reveal partial information about an object or construction. There is an inherent ambiguity of depth as the third dimension is flattened onto the picture plane. Whatever depth we read in a solitary plan, section, or elevation must be implied by such graphic depth cues as hierarchical line weights and contrasting tonal values. While a sense of depth can be inferred, it can be known with certainty only by looking at additional views. We therefore require a series of distinct but related views to fully describe the three-dimensional nature of a form or composition—hence the term multiview.









Orthographic projection is a system of projection that represents an object by projecting lines perpendicular to the picture plane. To construct an orthographic projection, we draw parallel projectors from the various points in the object to intersect the picture plane at right angles. We then connect the projected points in their proper order to obtain the view of the object on the picture plane. We refer to the resulting image on the picture plane as an orthographic view.

A single orthographic view is insufficient to fully describe a three-dimensional object. We need a set of related orthographic views. There are two conventions for regulating the relationship between orthographic views: first-angle projection and third-angle projection. To understand the distinction between the two, imagine three mutually perpendicular picture planes—one horizontal and two vertical. The frontal picture plane and the horizontal picture plane intersect to form four dihedral angles, numbered 1 through 4 in a clockwise direction starting with the upper front quadrant.

First-angle Projection

Gaspard Monge, a French physicist and military engineer responsible for the design of fortifications, devised first-angle projection in the eighteenth century. In first-angle projection, we locate the object in the first quadrant and project the images of the object back like shadows to the inner faces of the picture planes. What is projected back through the object are those aspects of the object nearest to the viewer.

Third-angle Projection

If we place the object in the third quadrant, the result is third-angle projection. Since the picture planes lie between the object and viewer, we project the images of the object forward to the picture planes. We therefore draw and view the images on the outer faces of the transparent picture planes.

If we enclose an object within a transparent picture-plane box, we can name the principal picture planes and the images projected orthographically onto these planes. Each orthographic view represents a different orientation and a particular vantage point from which to view the object. Each plays a specific role in the development and communication of a design.

Principal Planes

A principal plane is any of a set of mutually perpendicular picture planes on which the image of an object is projected orthographically.

Horizontal Plane

The principal level picture plane on which a plan or top view is projected orthographically.

Frontal Plane

The principal vertical picture plane on which an elevation or front view is projected orthographically.

Profile Plane

The principal vertical picture plane on which a side or end view is projected orthographically.

Fold Line

The trace representing the intersection of two perpendicular picture planes.

Trace

A line representing the intersection of two planes.

Principal Views

The principal orthographic views are the plan, the elevation, and the section.

Plan

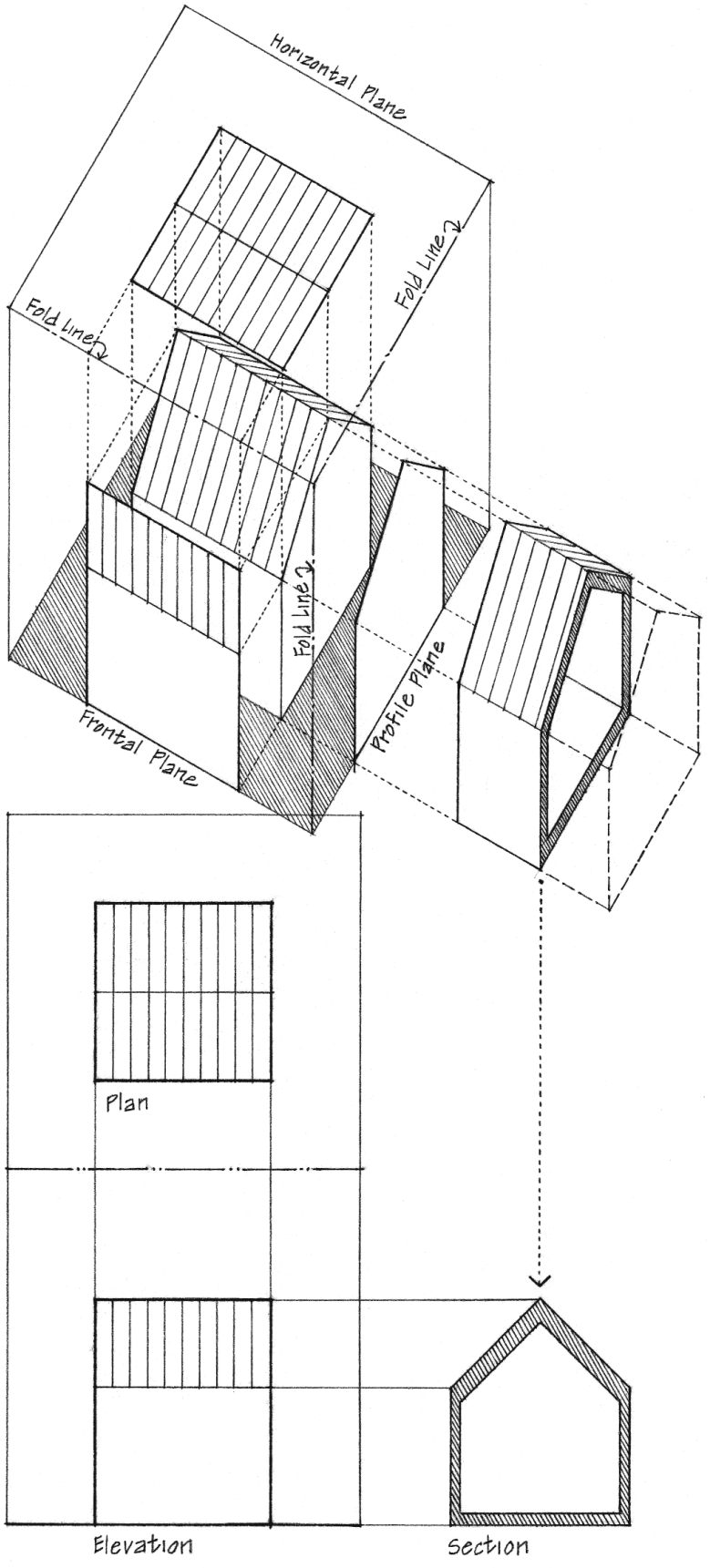
A principal view of an object projected orthographically on a horizontal picture plane; also called top view. In architectural drawing, there are distinct types of plan views for representing various horizontal projections of a building or site.

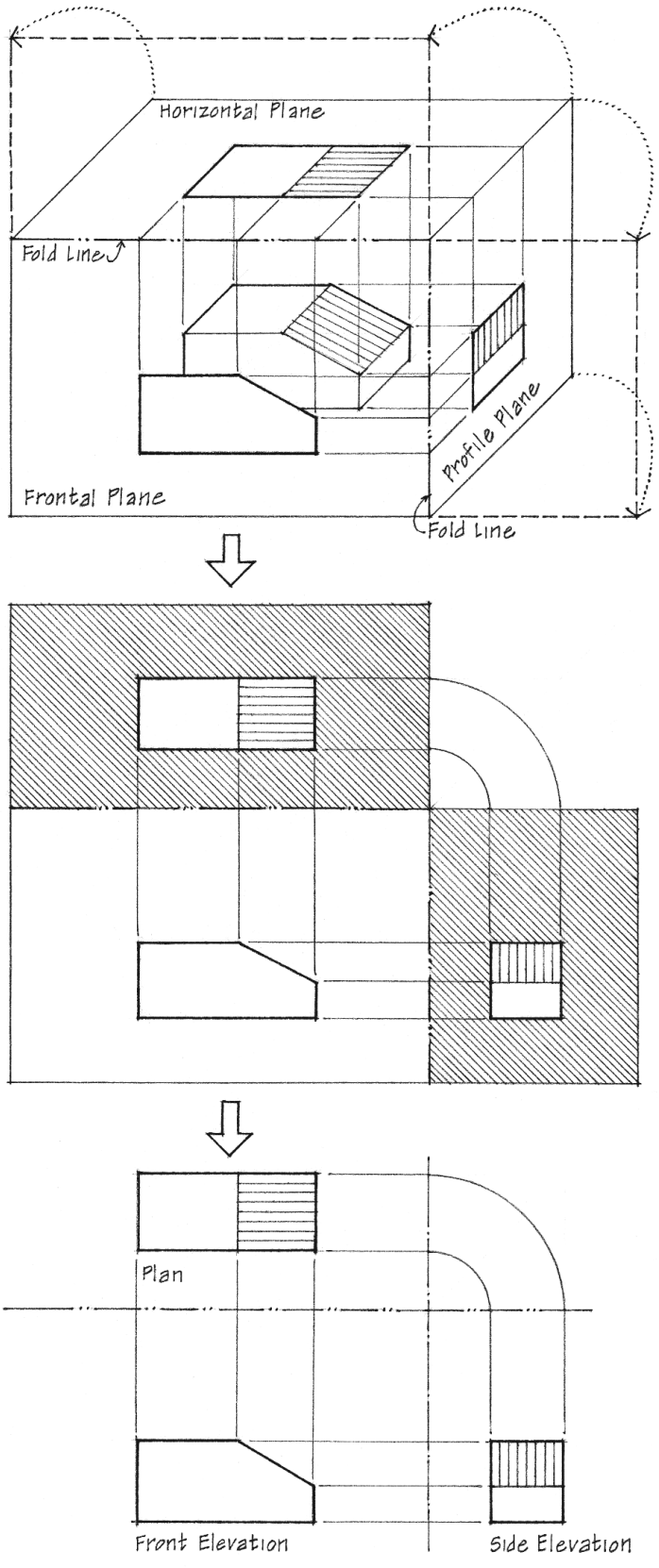
Elevation

A principal view of an object projected orthographically on a vertical picture plane. An elevation view may be a front, side, or rear view, depending on how we orient ourselves to the object or assess the relative significance of its faces. In architectural graphics, we label elevation views in relation to the compass directions or to a specific feature of a site.

Section

An orthographic projection of an object as it would appear if cut through by an intersecting plane.

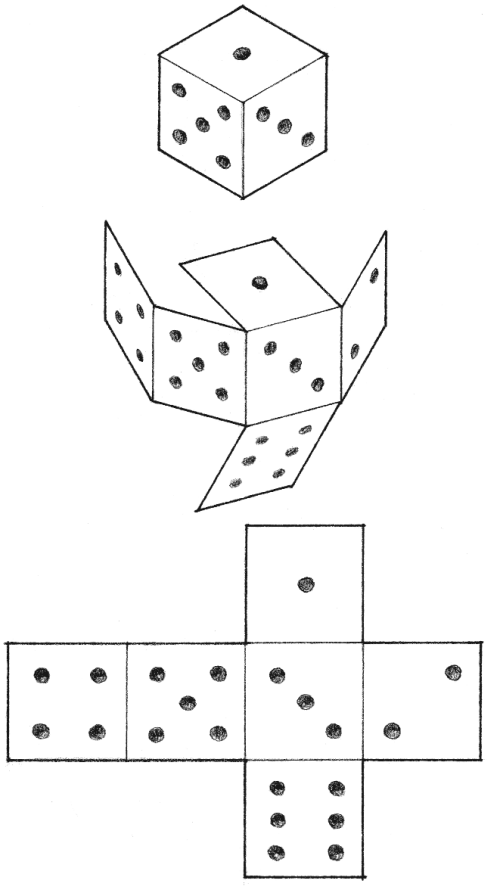




Arranging Views

To make it easier to read and interpret how a series of orthographic views describes a three-dimensional whole, we arrange the views in an orderly and logical fashion. The most common arrangement of plan and elevations results from unfolding the transparent picture-plane box in third-angle projection.

After each view is projected, we rotate the views about the fold lines into a single plane represented by the drawing surface. The top or plan view revolves upward to a position directly above and vertically aligned with the front or elevation view, while the side or profile view revolves to align horizontally with the front view. The result is a coherent set of related orthographic views separated by fold lines.

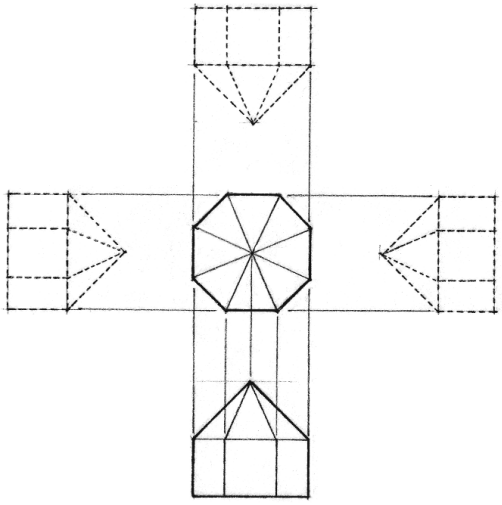


Number of Views

The number of orthographic views necessary to completely describe the three-dimensional form of an object varies with its geometry and complexity.

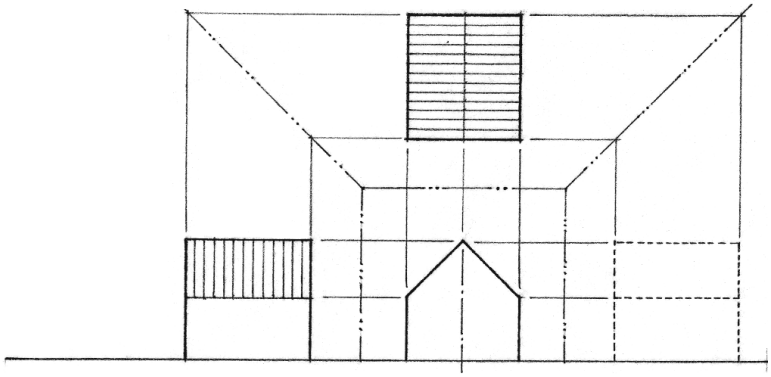
Symmetrical conditions often eliminate the need for one or more views. For example, a form or composition characterized by axial or bilateral symmetry has two sides that are mirror images of each other. Therefore, one side view would be redundant and could be omitted. Similarly, multiple elevation views of a radially symmetrical form or composition would be unnecessary if a single elevation replicated the same information. The omission of a view, however, can lead to ambiguity if a symmetrical condition does not in fact exist.

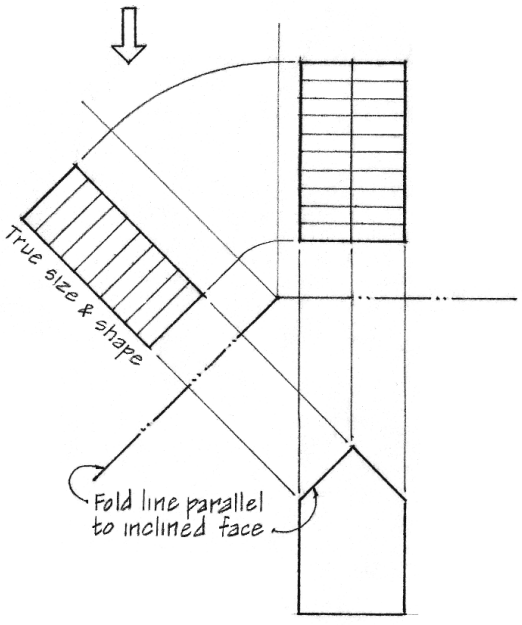
Most objects require a minimum of three related views to describe their form. Complex forms and compositions may require four or more related views, especially if they have a number of oblique faces.

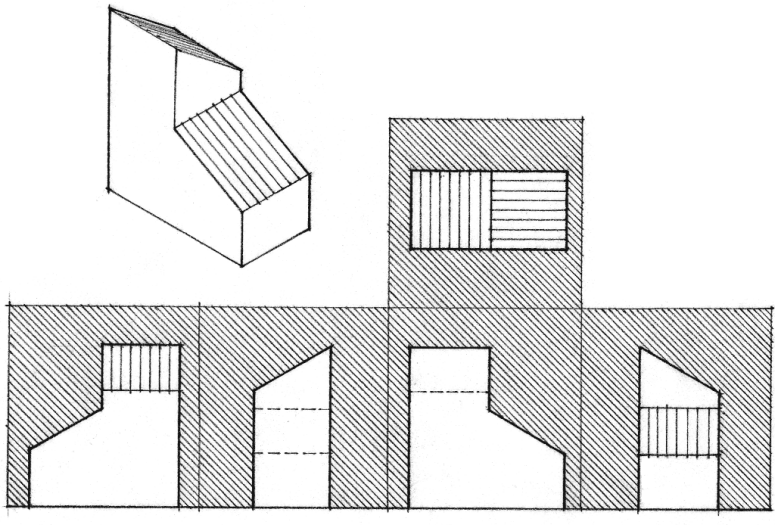


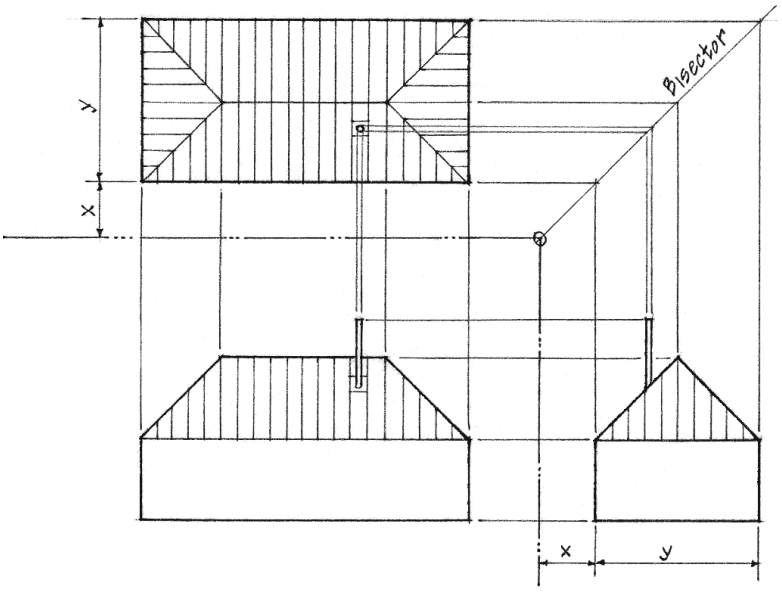
Auxiliary Views

For each oblique face of an object or construction, an auxiliary view is necessary to describe its true size and shape. We establish an auxiliary view by inserting a fold line that represents the edge view of an auxiliary picture plane parallel to the inclined or oblique face.





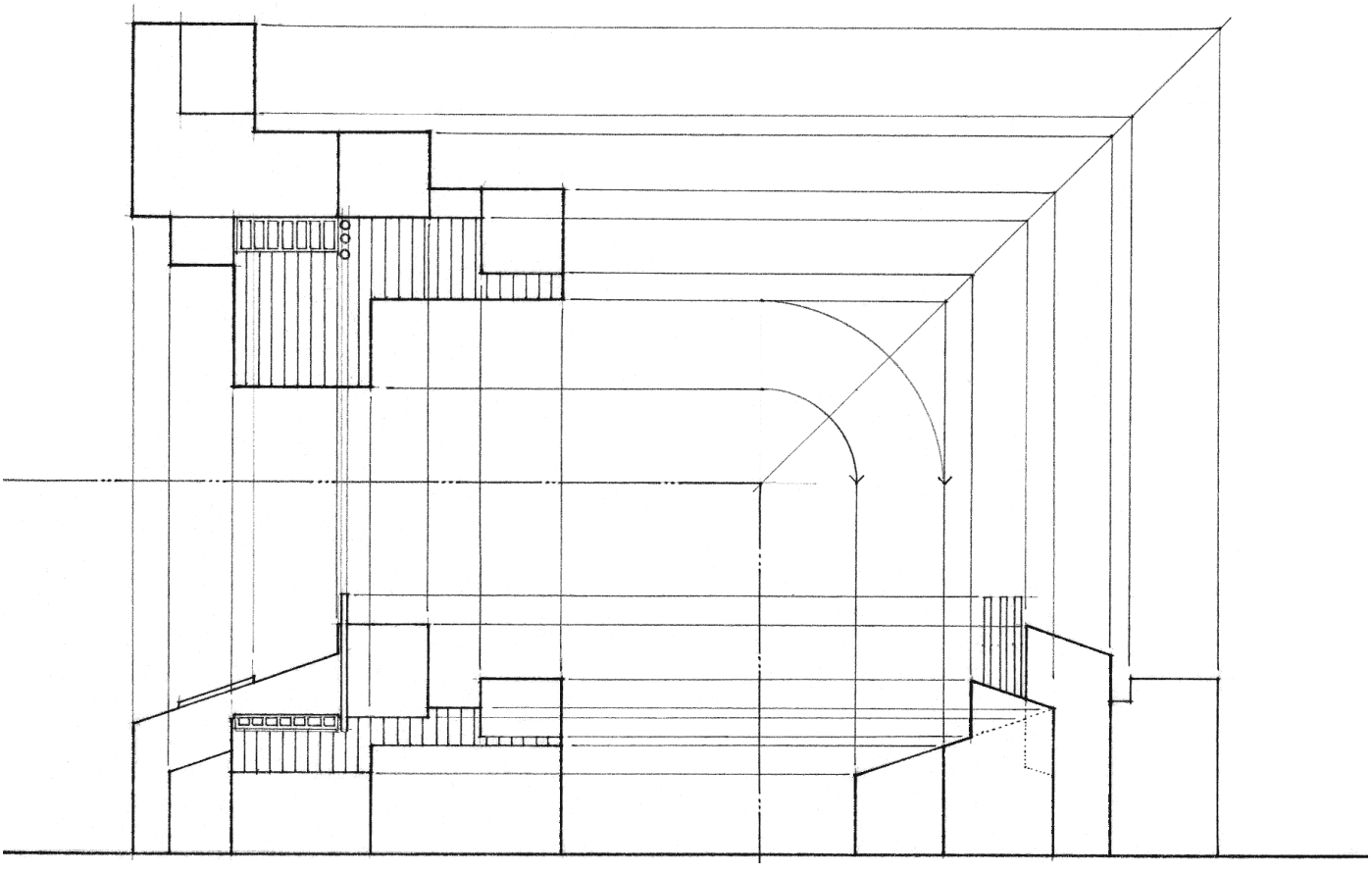




Constructing Views

Whenever possible, align related orthographic views so that points and dimensions can be transferred easily from one view to the next. This relationship will not only facilitate the construction but also make the drawings more understandable as a coordinated set of information. For example, once a plan is drawn, we can efficiently transfer the horizontal dimensions of length vertically on the drawing surface to the elevation below. In a similar manner, we can project the vertical dimensions of height horizontally on the drawing surface from one elevation to one or more adjacent elevations.

Always project points to an adjacent view with projectors drawn perpendicular to the common fold line. Since any point is the same distance away from the fold line in all views related to a common view, we can transfer a distance from the horizontal plane to the profile plane by constructing a diagonal bisector at the intersection of the fold lines. An alternative is to use the intersection of the fold lines as the center for a series of quarter-circular arcs.



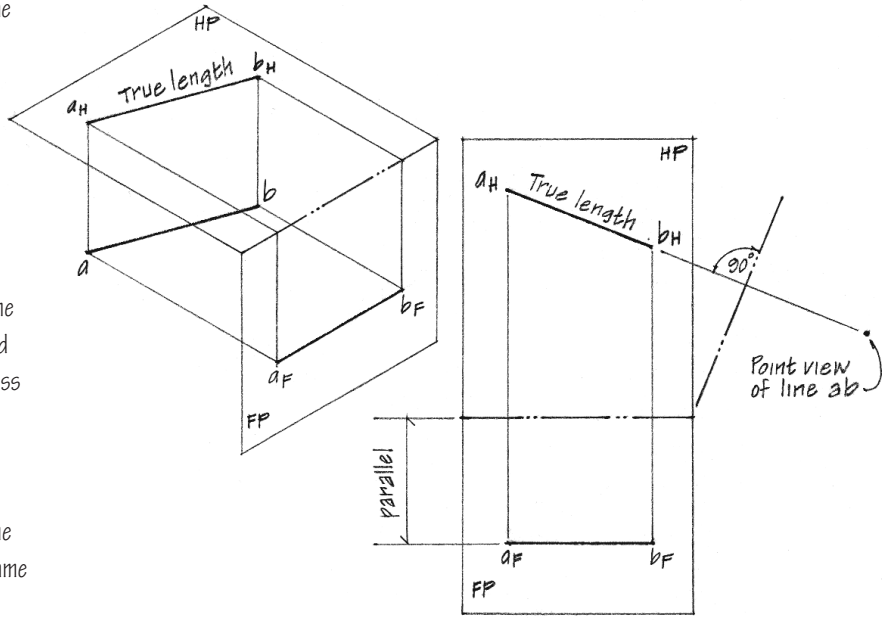
Principles and Techniques

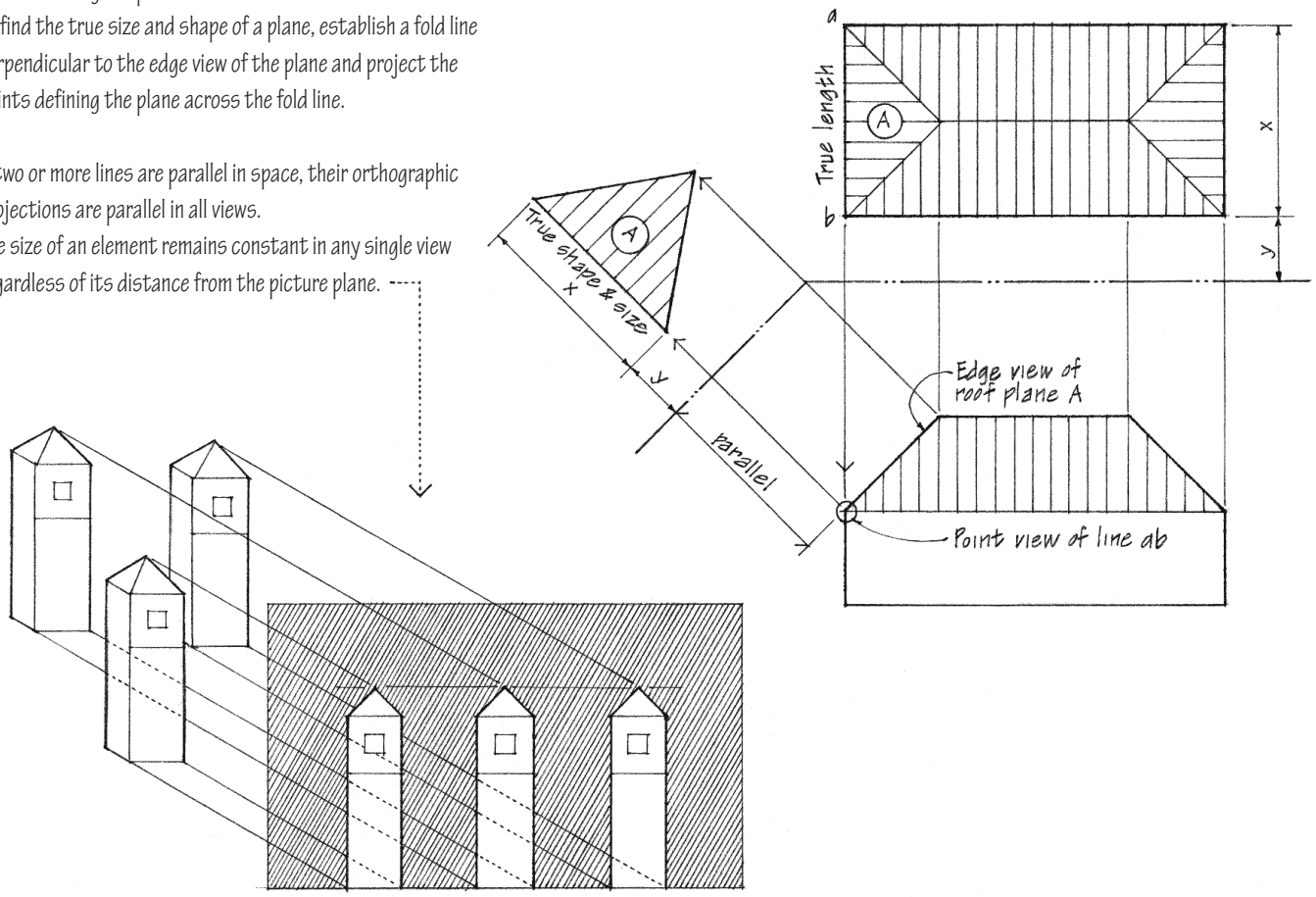
The orthographic projection of any line or plane parallel to the picture plane is true to whatever scale to which a drawing is being constructed.

- To determine the true length of a line, establish a fold line parallel to the line and project its endpoints across the fold line.
- The orthographic projection of any line perpendicular to a picture plane is a point. To show the point view of a line, one view must first reveal its true length. Then establish a fold line perpendicular to the true-length line and project across the fold line.

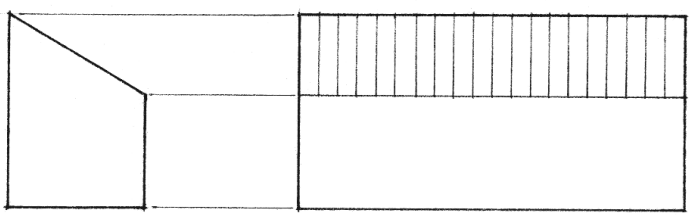
- The orthographic projection of any plane perpendicular to a picture plane is a straight line. If a line that lies in a plane appears as a point, the plane will appear as a line in the same view. Therefore, to show the edge view of a plane, find the point view of a true-length line in the plane and project the points defining the plane into the same view.
- To find the true size and shape of a plane, establish a fold line perpendicular to the edge view of the plane and project the points defining the plane across the fold line.

- If two or more lines are parallel in space, their orthographic projections are parallel in all views.
- The size of an element remains constant in any single view regardless of its distance from the picture plane.

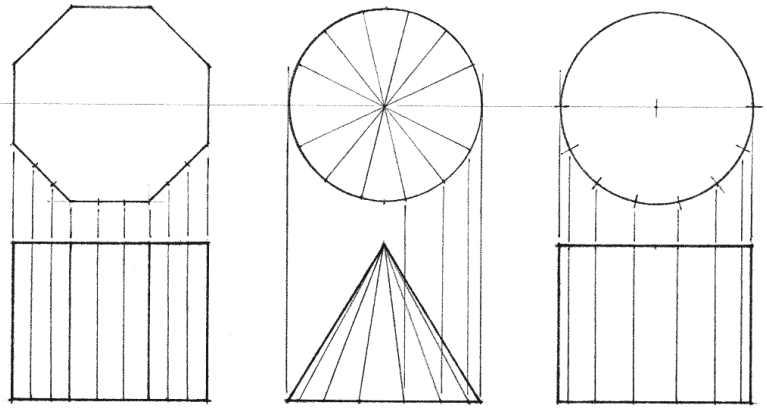




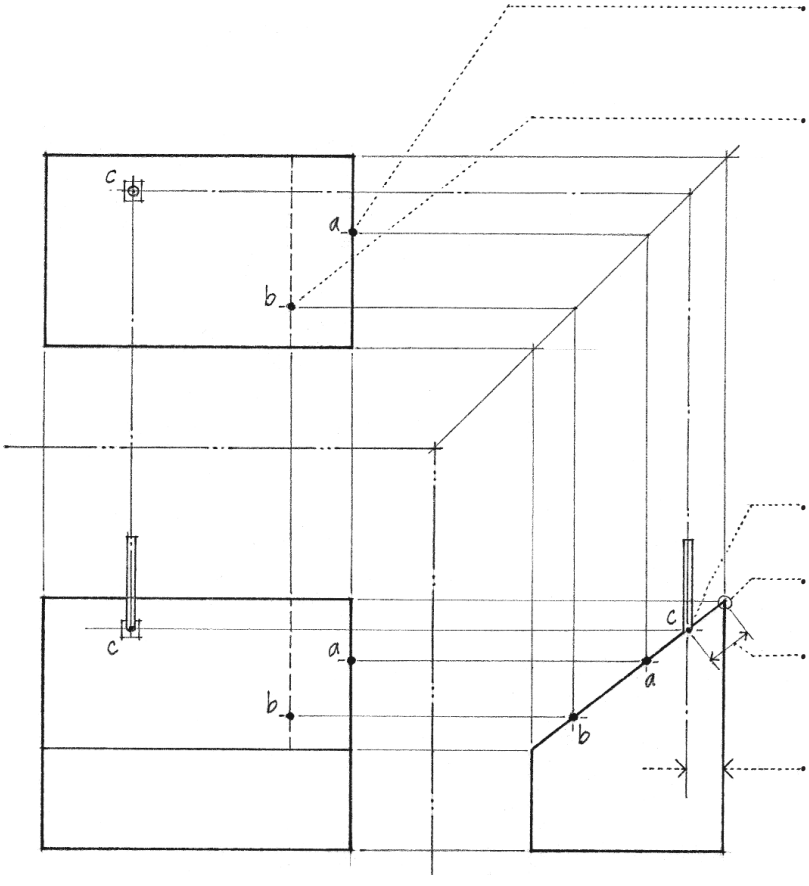
Principles and Techniques



- The orthographic projection of any line or plane oblique to the picture plane is always foreshortened. To draw the foreshortened view of an oblique line or plane, one view must show the true length of the line or the edge view of the plane.



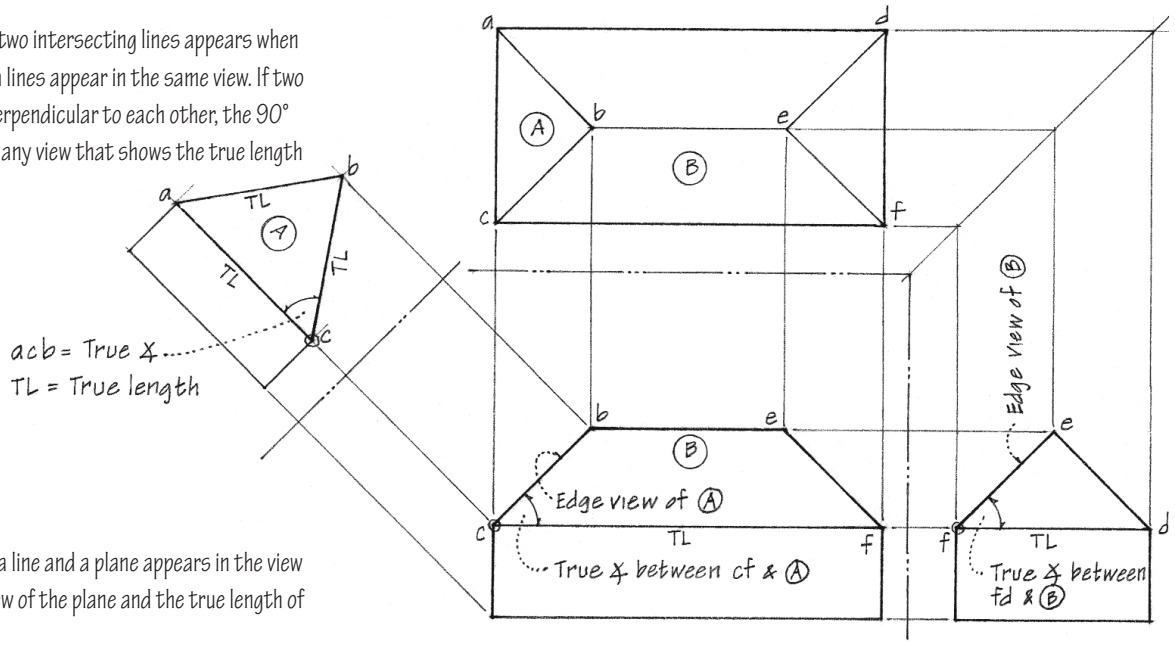
- To determine an orthographic projection of a curve, first draw the curve in the view that shows its true shape or contour. Then establish equidistant points along this profile and transfer them to the related view. The finer the divisions, the smoother and more accurate the representation.



- To project a point on a line in one view to the same location in an adjacent view, project the point across the fold line until it meets the line in the adjacent view.
- To project a point on a plane from one view to another, construct a line within the plane that contains the point. Project this line from one view to the next and then project the point from line to line.
- The point of intersection between a line and a plane appears in the view that shows the edge view of the plane.
- The line of intersection between two nonparallel planes appears in a view that shows one of the planes as an edge.
- The shortest distance between a point and a line appears in a view where the line appears as a point. The perpendicular distance is a straight line connecting the two points.
- The shortest distance from a point to a plane appears in a view that shows the edge view of the plane. The perpendicular extends from the point to the edge view of the plane.

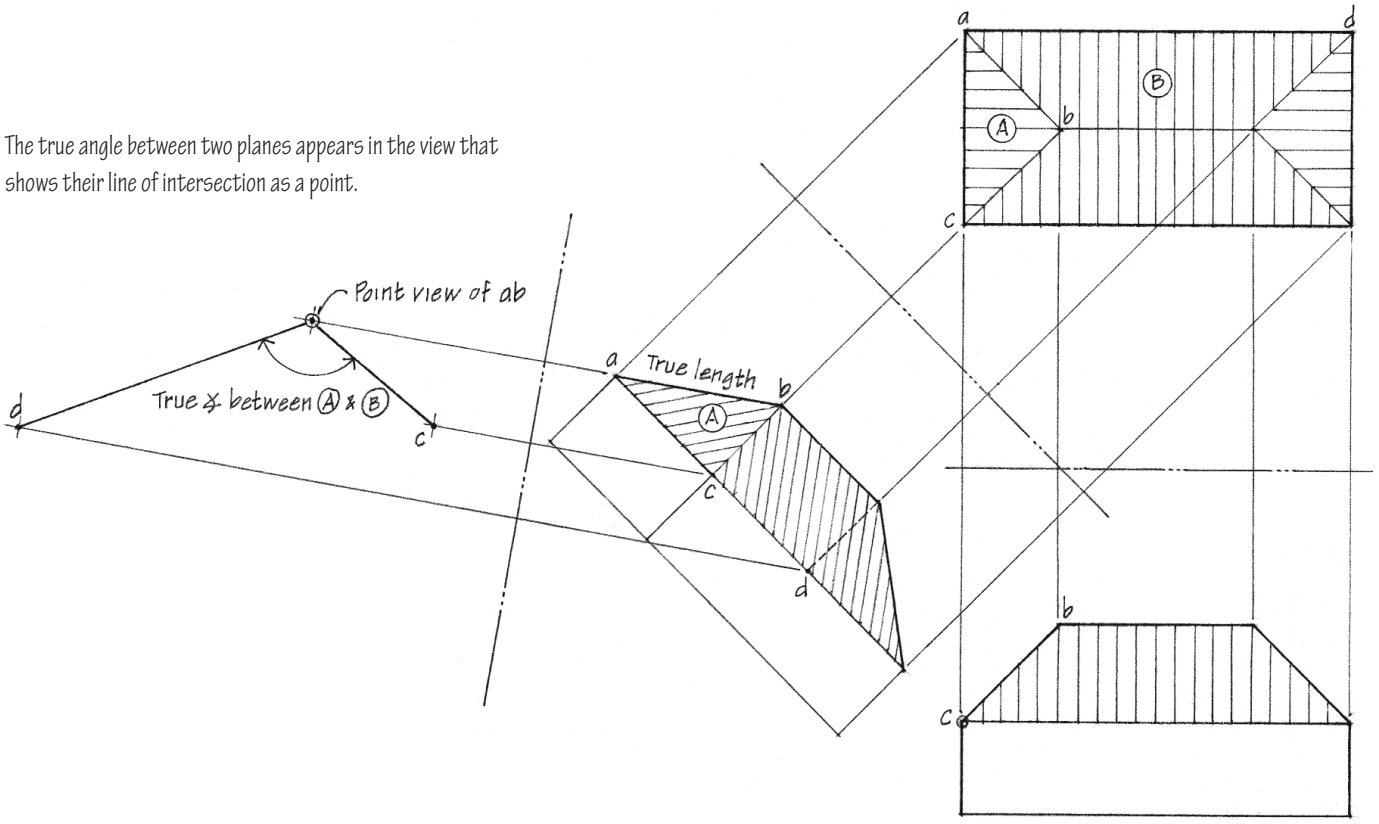
Principles and Techniques

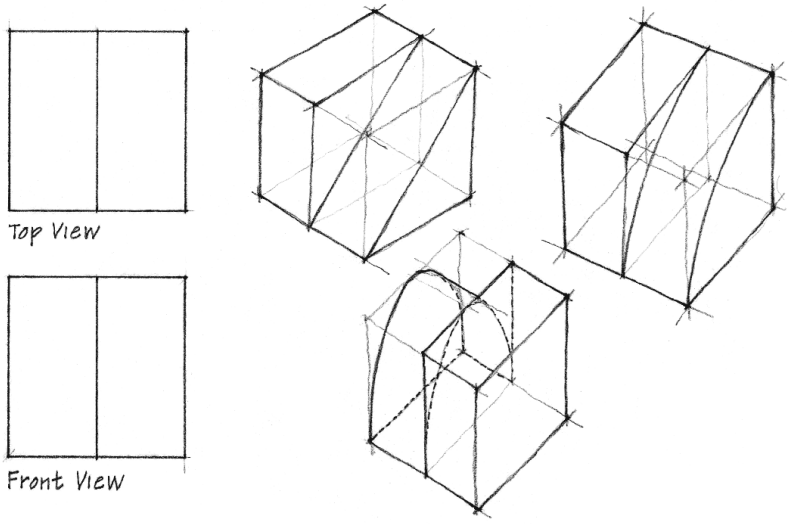
- The true angle between two intersecting lines appears when the true lengths of both lines appear in the same view. If two intersecting lines are perpendicular to each other, the 90° angle will remain true in any view that shows the true length of one of the lines.



- The true angle between a line and a plane appears in the view that shows the edge view of the plane and the true length of the line.

- The true angle between two planes appears in the view that shows their line of intersection as a point.



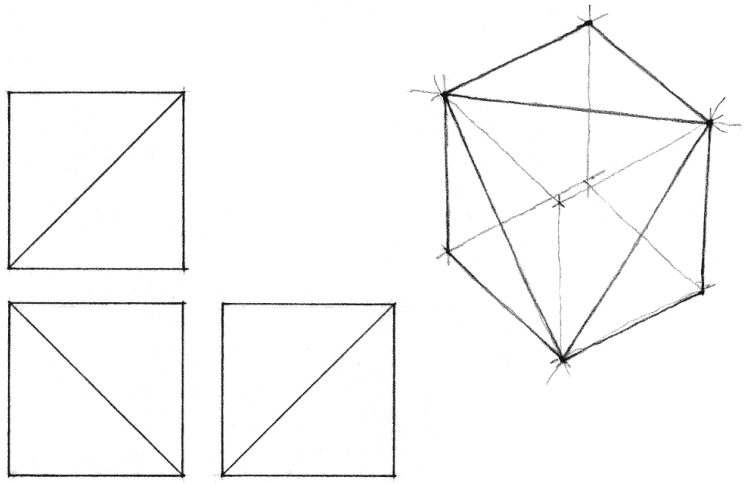


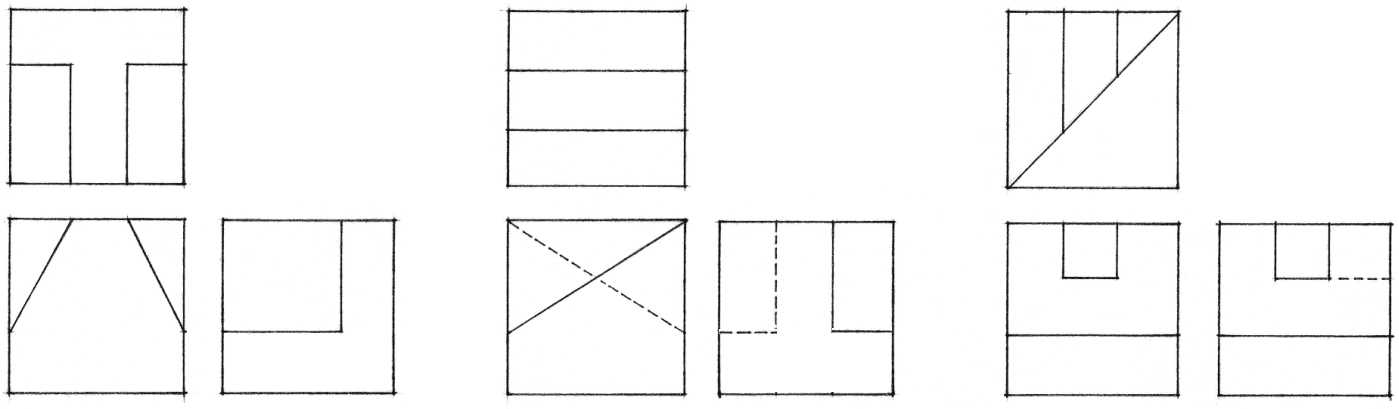
The top and front views can describe a number of different objects. Presented here in pictorial form are three possibilities. How many more can you visualize?

Multiview drawings comprise a series of related but partial views of a three-dimensional reality. Orthographic plans, sections, and elevations do not convey how we normally see our visual world. Even when embellished with visual depth cues, they remain essentially a conceptual system of representation that is more abstract than pictorial. Learning to draw plans, sections, and elevations, therefore, also requires learning how to read and interpret the graphic language of multiview drawings. Anyone using multiview drawings to think about, make, and communicate design decisions must understand how the individual views relate to each other to describe a three-dimensional object or space. From this reading, one should be able to assemble the series of partial and fragmentary views in the mind's eye to recreate an understanding of the whole. Similarly, given a three-dimensional construct, one should be able to develop a representation of the whole through a series of multiview drawings.

Exercise 6.1

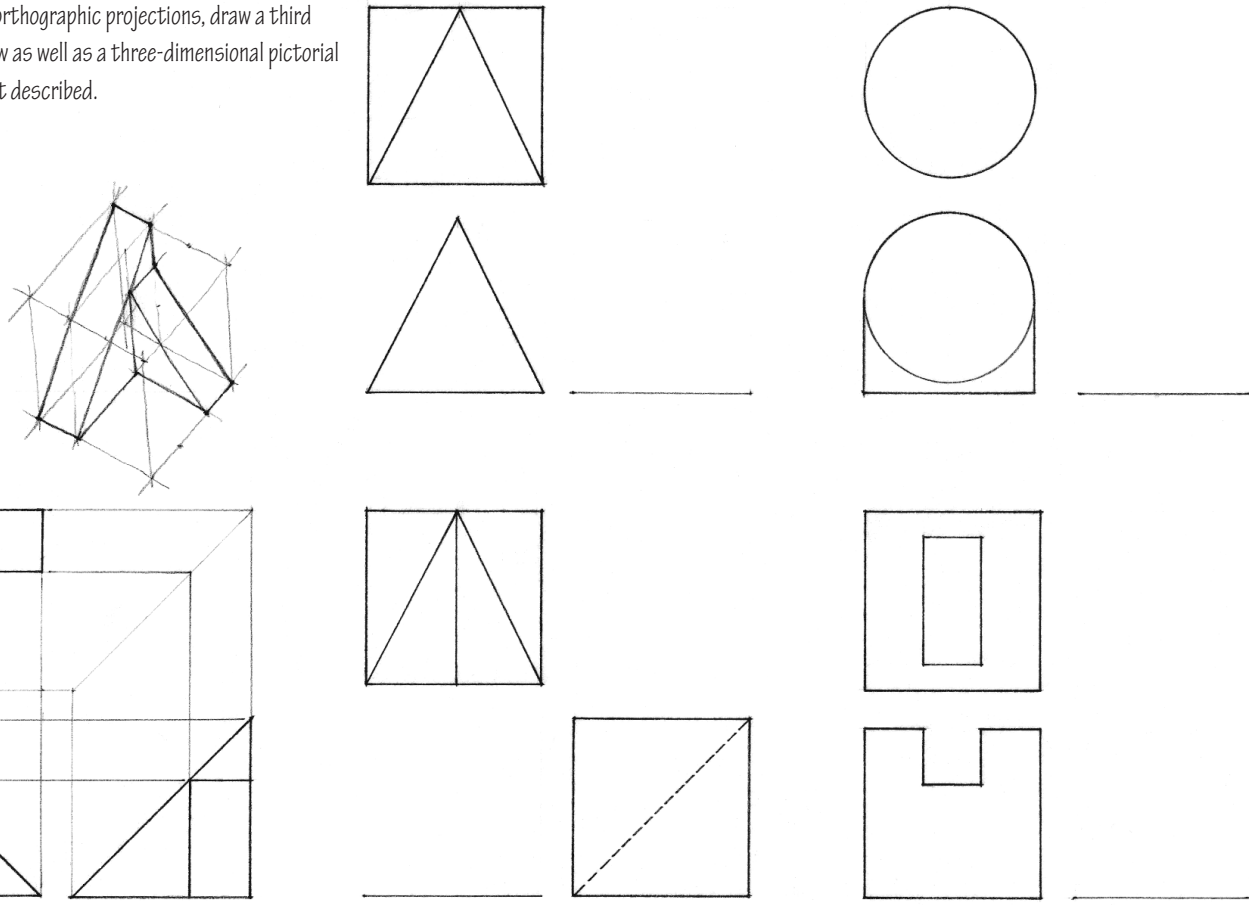
Visualizing the three-dimensional form of an object described in a set of multiview drawings requires mental trial and error. Drawing possible solutions out on paper helps us work through the problem. To experience this, try to sketch a pictorial view of the object described in each set of orthographic projections.





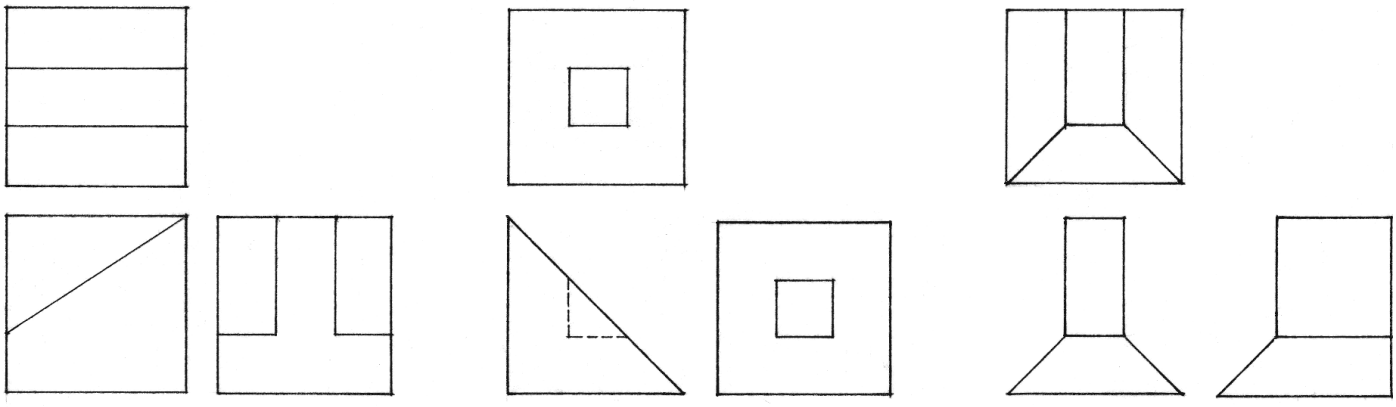
Exercise 6.2

For each pair of orthographic projections, draw a third orthographic view as well as a three-dimensional pictorial view of the object described.

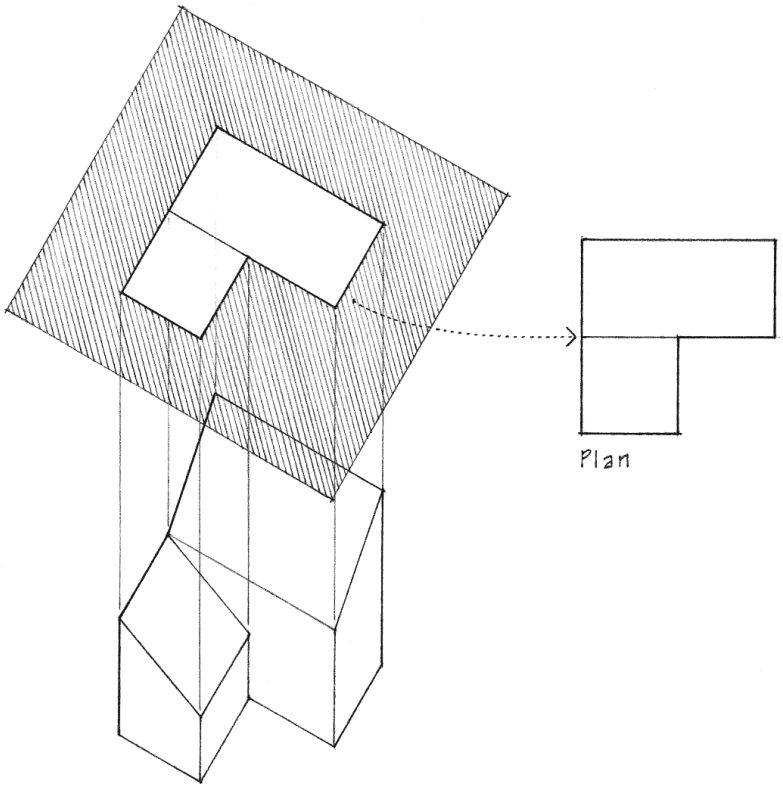


Exercise 6.3

Study each set of orthographic projections and try to visualize the object described. Which set, if viewed in third-angle projection, contains views that are inconsistent or illogical?



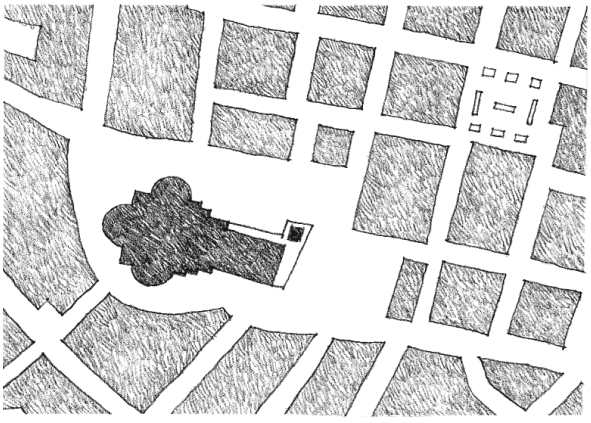
PLAN DRAWINGS

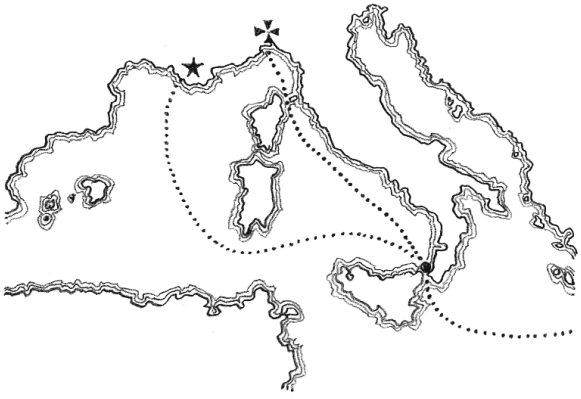


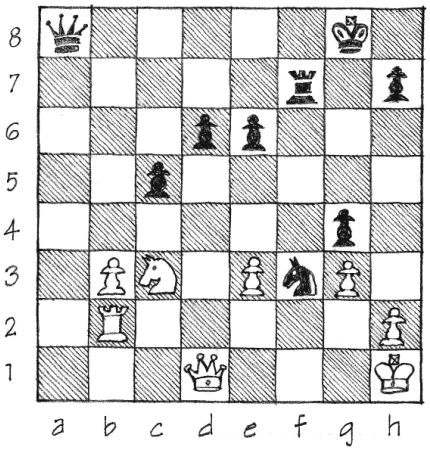
Plans are drawings of orthographic projections on a horizontal picture plane, usually drawn to scale. They represent a view looking down on an object, building, or scene from above. All planes parallel to the picture plane maintain their true-scale size, shape, and proportions.

Plans reduce the three-dimensional complexity of an object to its two-dimensional horizontal aspects. They depict width and length but not height. This emphasis on the horizontal is both the plan's limitation as well as its strength. It is ironic that while plan drawings are relatively easy to generate in comparison to the intricacies of linear perspectives, they are essentially abstract constructs, which can be difficult to read and understand. They depict an aerial viewpoint that we seldom experience except in the mind's eye.

In eliminating certain aspects from consideration, however, plans emphasize the horizontal arrangements and patterns of what we see or envision. These may be relationships of function, form, interior or exterior space, or of parts within a greater whole. In this way, plans match our mental map of the world and display a field of action for our thoughts and ideas.







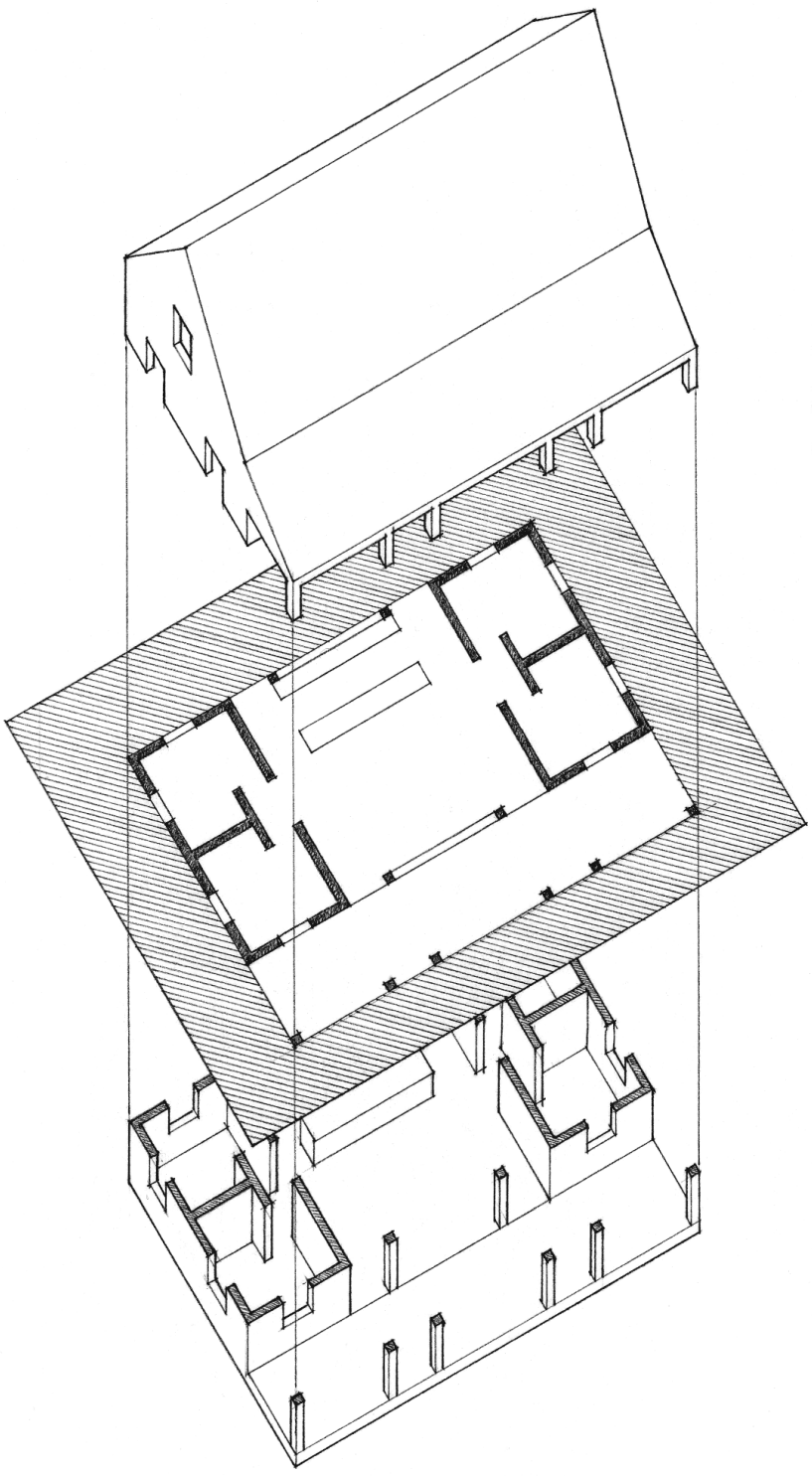
Charles Bradley's Twist: Black to move and mate in three.

A floor plan represents a horizontal section of a building as it would appear if cut through by an intersecting plane. After a horizontal plane slices through the construction, we remove the upper part. The floor plan is an orthographic projection of the portion that remains.

Floor plans open up the interior of a building to reveal a view that otherwise would not be possible. They unveil horizontal relationships and patterns not easily detected when walking through a building. On a horizontal picture plane, floor plans are able to disclose the configuration of walls and columns, the shape and dimensions of spaces, the layout of window and door openings, and the connections between spaces as well as between the interior and exterior.

The horizontal plane of a plan slices through walls, columns, and other vertical elements of a building, as well as through all window and door openings. The plane of the cut is usually about 4 feet above the floor, but its height can vary according to the nature of the building design. Below the plane of the cut, we see the floor, counters, tabletops, and similar horizontal surfaces.

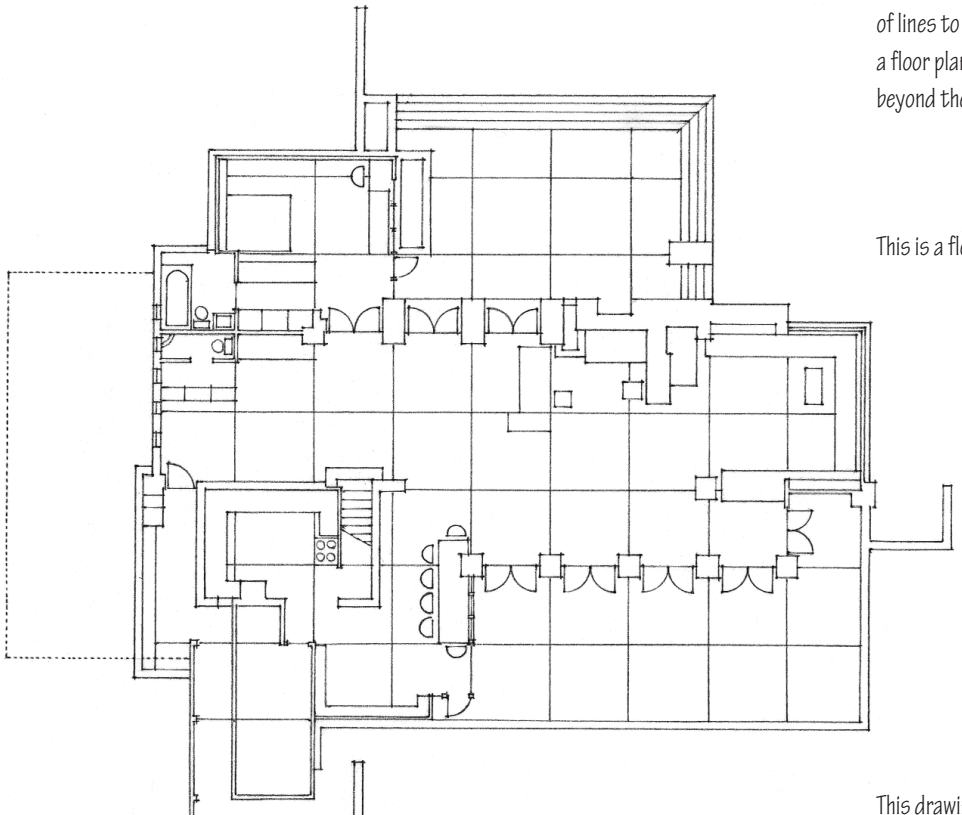
Critical to reading a floor plan is the ability to distinguish between solid matter and spatial void and to discern precisely where mass meets space. It is therefore important to emphasize in a graphic way what is cut in a floor plan, and to differentiate the cut material from what we can see through space below the plane of the cut. To convey a sense of the vertical dimension and the existence of a spatial volume, we must use a hierarchy of line weights or a range of tonal values. The technique we use depends on the scale of the floor plan, the drawing medium, and the required degree of contrast between solid matter and spatial void.



The Plan Cut

These drawings illustrate how we can use the relative weights of lines to emphasize the vertical elements that are cut in a floor plan as well as infer the relative depth of elements beyond the plane of the cut.

This is a floor plan drawn with a single line weight.

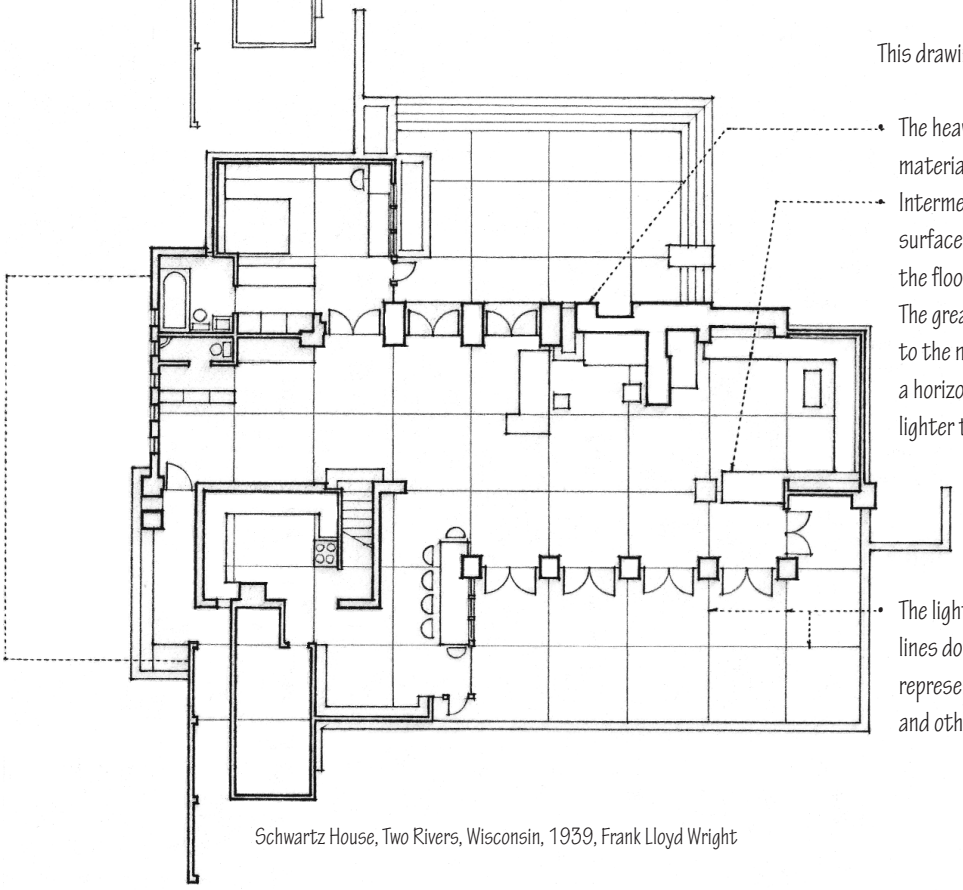


This drawing uses a hierarchy of line weights to convey depth.

The heaviest line weight profiles the plan shapes of cut materials, such as walls and columns.

Intermediate line weights delineate edges of horizontal surfaces that lie below the plane of the plan cut but above the floor, such as windowsills, countertops, and railings. The greater the vertical drop from one horizontal surface to the next, the heavier the line weight; the farther away a horizontal surface is from the plane of the plan cut, the lighter the line weight.

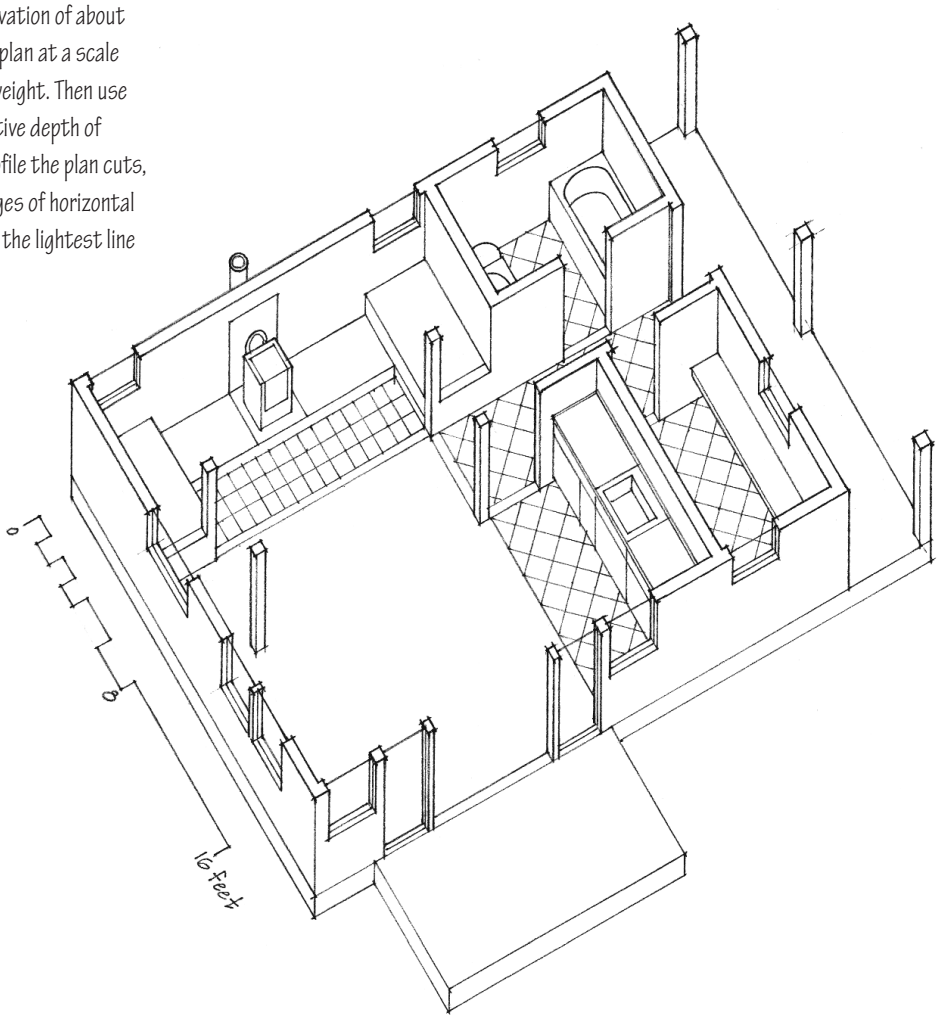
The lightest line weights represent surface lines. These lines do not signify any change in form. They simply represent the visual pattern or texture of the floor plane and other horizontal surfaces.



Schwartz House, Two Rivers, Wisconsin, 1939, Frank Lloyd Wright

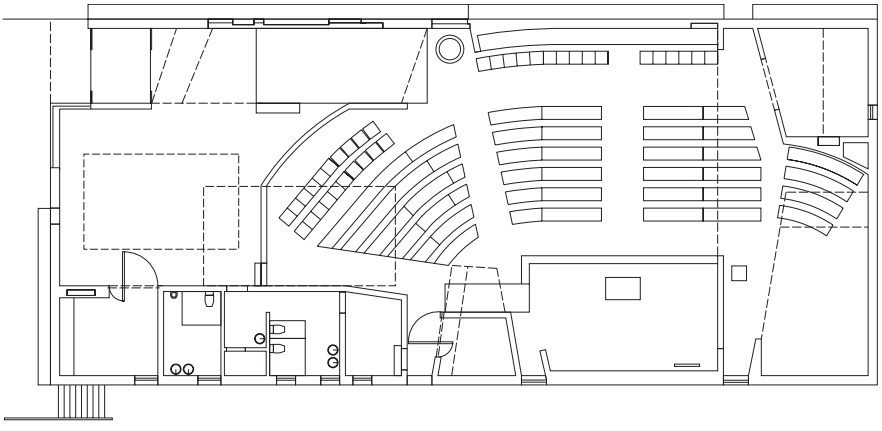
Exercise 6.4

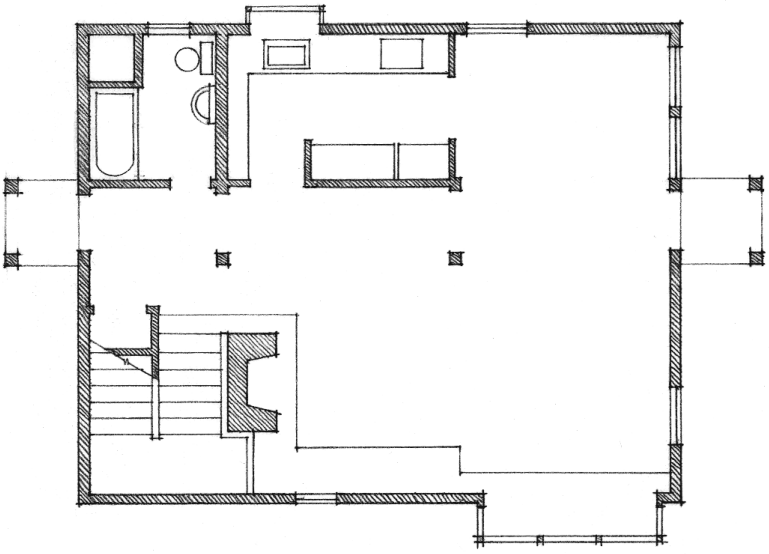
The pictorial view to the right is cut at an elevation of about four feet above the floor level. Draw the floor plan at a scale of 1/4" = 1'0". Initially use a single, thin line weight. Then use a hierarchy of line weights to convey the relative depth of elements. Use the heaviest line weight to profile the plan cuts, intermediate line weights to describe the edges of horizontal surfaces below the plane of the plan cut, and the lightest line weight to indicate surface lines.

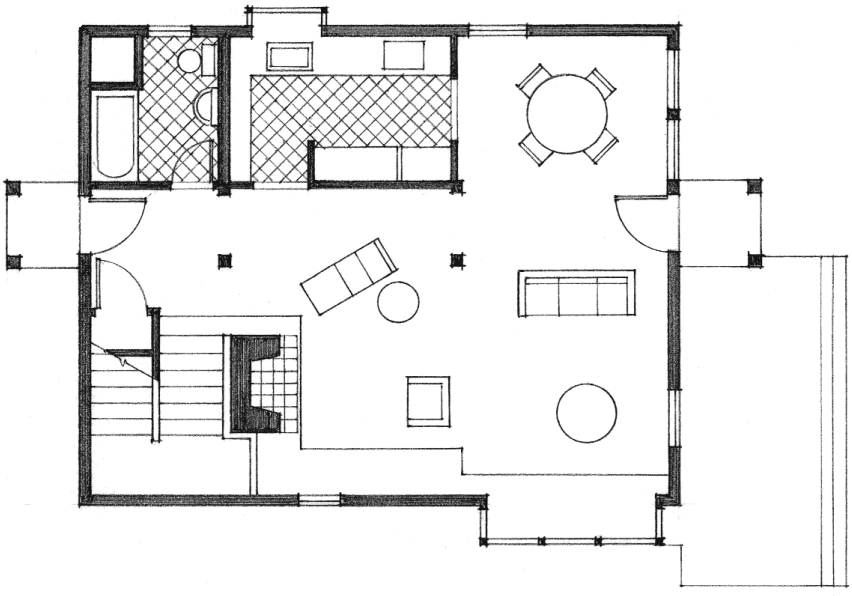


Exercise 6.5

To the right is the floor plan of the St. Ignatius Chapel at Seattle University, designed by Steven Holl in 1994. Draw the plan at twice the scale. Follow the same procedure outlined in the previous exercise. Initially use a single, thin line weight. Then use a hierarchy of line weights to convey the relative depth of elements in the floor plan. If there are doubts regarding what is cut, draw out the possibilities on overlays of tracing paper and try to visualize which alternatives would make the most sense if extended into the third dimension.





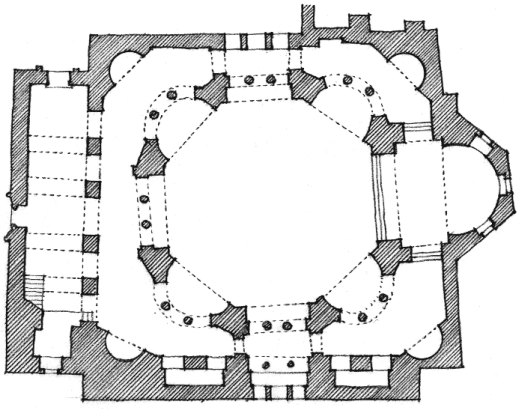


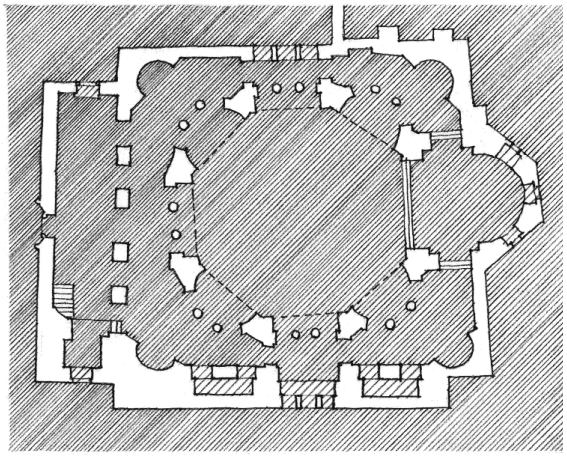
Poché

In a line-and-tone or pure tone drawing, we emphasize the shape of cut elements with a tonal value that contrasts with the spatial field of the floor plan. We refer to this darkening of cut walls, columns, and other solid matter as poché.

It is typical to blacken the cut elements in small-scale plans to give them prominence. If only a moderate degree of contrast with the drawing field is desired, use a middle-gray value to illuminate the shape of the cut elements. This is especially important in large-scale plans when large areas of black can carry too much visual weight or create too stark a contrast. However, if plan elements such as flooring patterns and furniture give the field of the drawing a tonal value, a dark gray or black tone may be necessary to produce the desired degree of contrast between solid matter and spatial void.

Poché establishes a figure-ground relationship between solid and void—between container and contained. We tend to read the cut elements of a floor plan as figures and the bounded space as background. To focus on the shape of space as figure, we can reverse the normal pattern of dark marks drawn on a light surface and instead produce light marks on a dark surface.

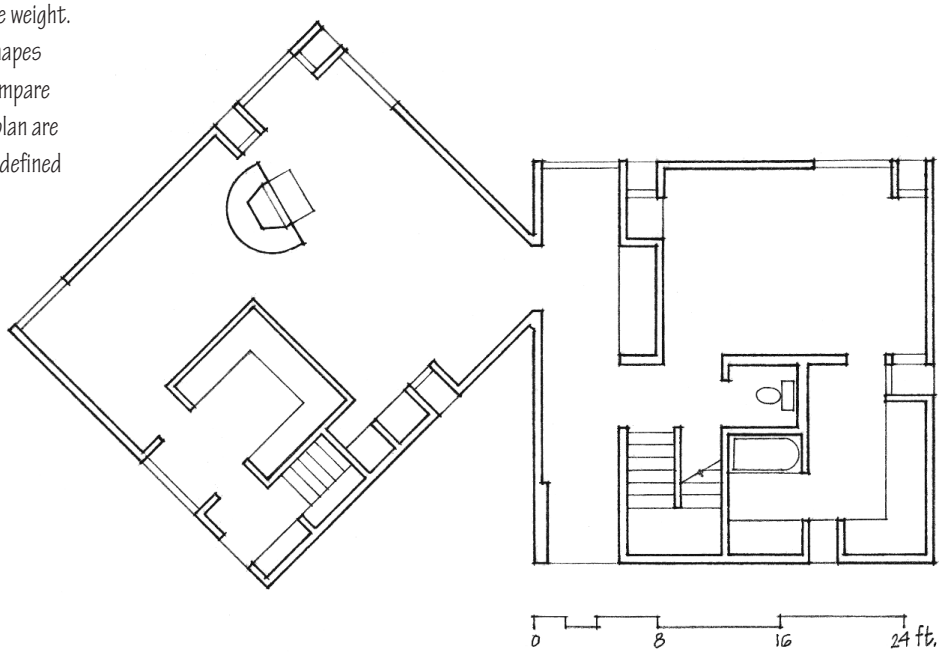




SS. Sergius and Bacchus, Constantinople (Istanbul), 525–30 A.D.

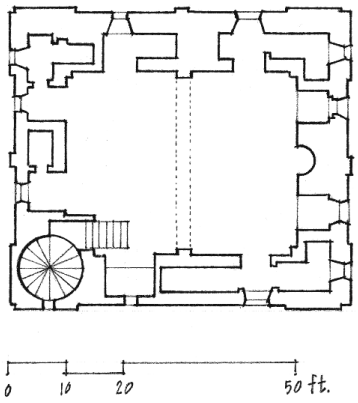
Exercise 6.6

To the right is illustrated the first-floor plan of the Fisher House in Hatboro, Pennsylvania, designed by Louis Kahn in 1960. Draw the floor plan at a scale of 1/4" = 1'0", profiling the elements that are cut in the plan view with a heavy line weight. Redraw the floor plan a second time and render the shapes of the cut elements with poché or dark tonal value. Compare the differences between the two floor plans. In which plan are the shapes and pattern of both the cut elements and defined spaces more dominant?

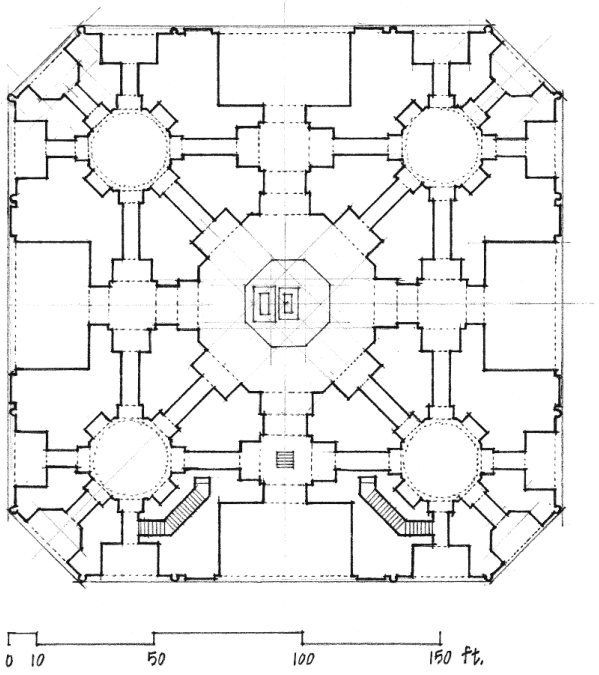


Exercise 6.7

Make two drawings of each of the floor plans. On the first set of drawings, render the shapes of the cut elements with poché. On the second set, reverse the dark-light pattern and render the shapes of the spaces defined by the cut elements. Compare the two sets of drawings. In which set of floor plans are the shapes of the enclosed spaces more dominant or easier to read?



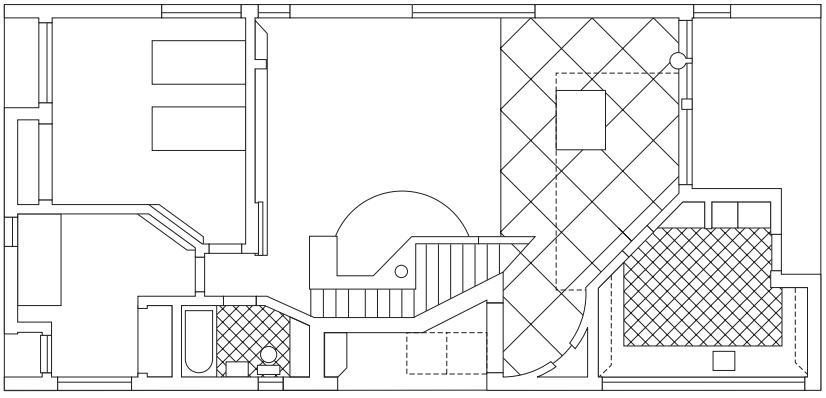
Hedingham, a Romanesque castle in Essex County, England



Ground Floor Plan of the Taj Mahal, the Tomb of Mumtaz Mahal in Agra, India, 1632–54

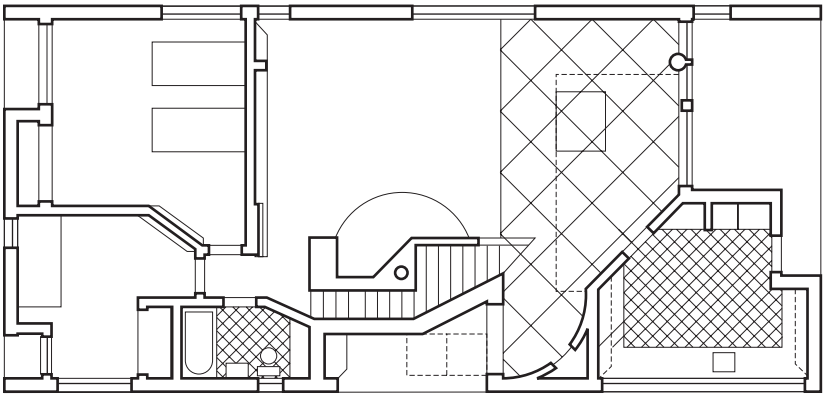
Digital Floor Plans

When using drawing or CAD software to create floor plans, distinguishing between solid matter and spatial void remains important. As with hand drafting, we should use a range of contrasting line weights to distinguish the profile of the elements that are cut in plan from the elements seen below the plane of the cut.

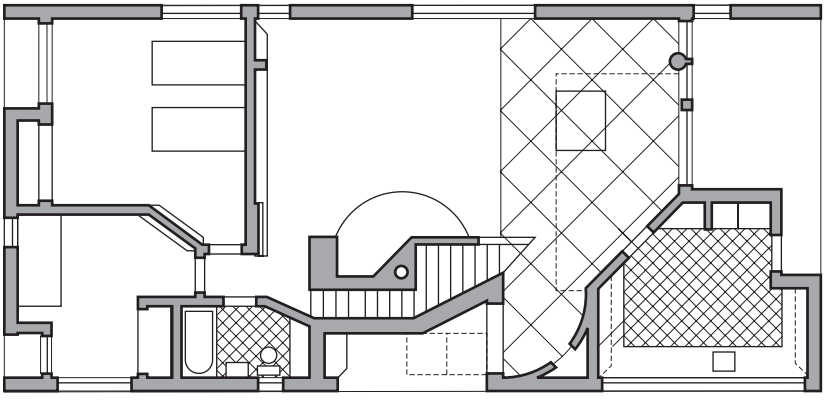


First-floor plan, Vanna Venturi House, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, Robert Venturi, 1962

- This floor plan uses the same line weight throughout. At a glance, it is difficult to discern what is cut in plan.



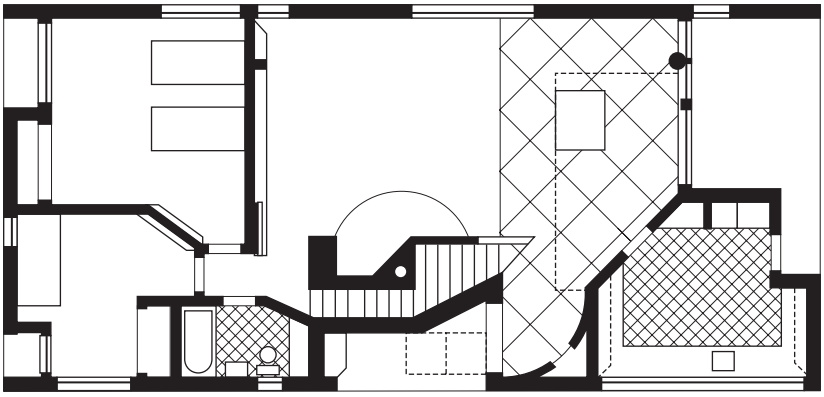
- This floor plan uses the heaviest line weight to profile the plan shapes of cut elements; intermediate line weights to delineate edges of horizontal surfaces that lie below the plane of the plan cut but above the floor; and the lightest line weight to represent surface lines.



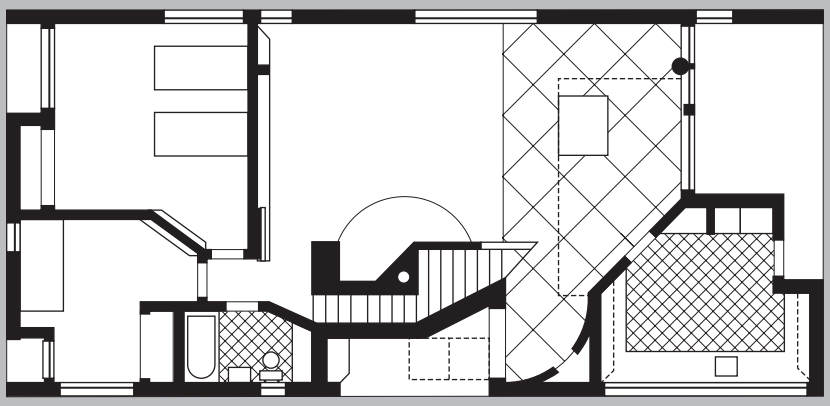
- This floor plan emphasizes the shape of cut elements with a tonal value or poché that contrasts with the spatial field of the floor plan.

When using drawing or CAD software to create floor plans, avoid using colors, textures, and patterns to make the drawings more pictorial than they need to be. The primary emphasis should remain on articulating the plan cut and the relative depth of elements below the plane of the cut.

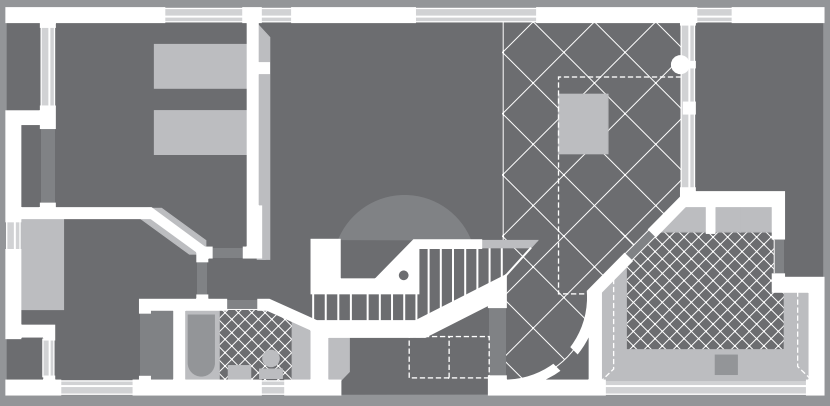
- A dark gray or black tone may be necessary to produce the desired degree of contrast between solid matter and spatial void in a floor plan, especially at small drawing scales.

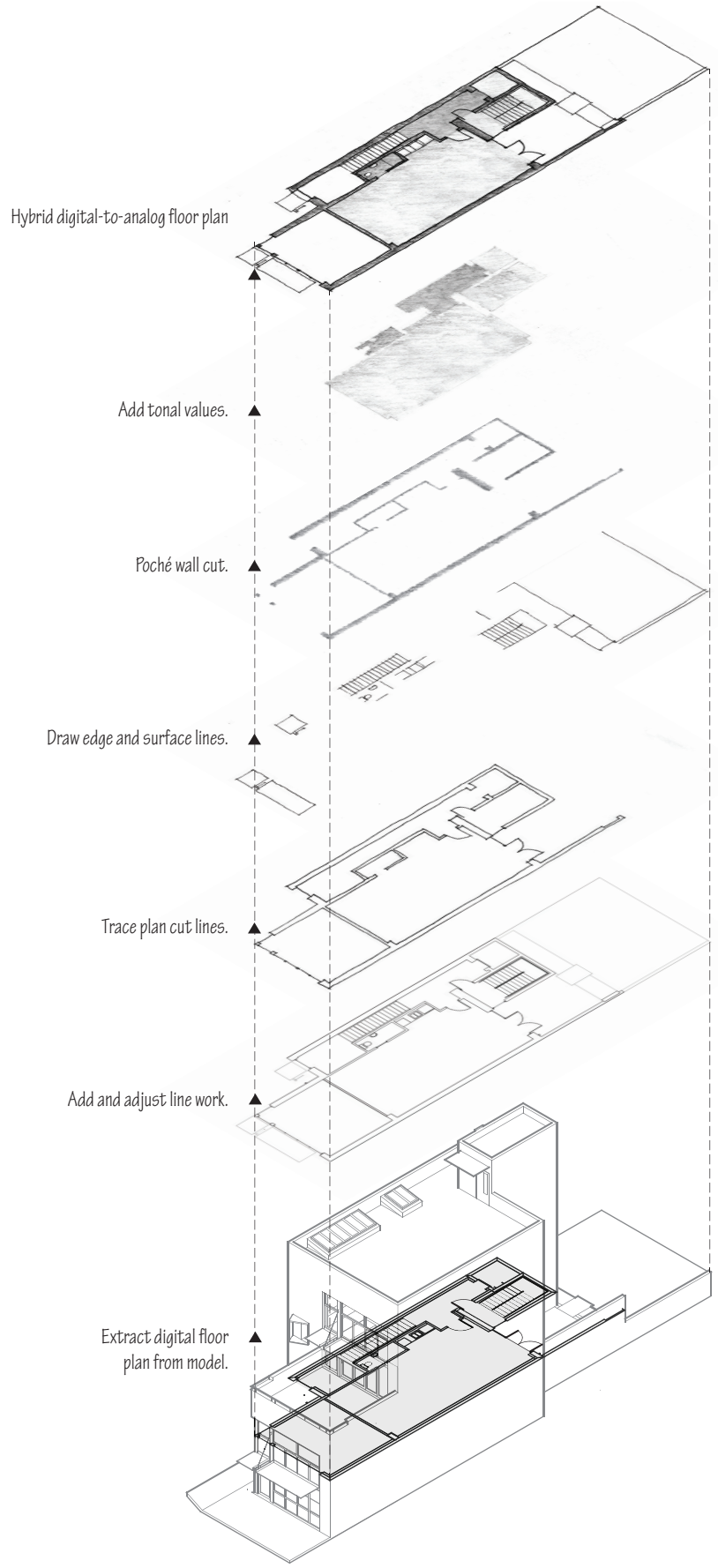


- An advantage of digital drawing programs is the relative ease with which they can create large areas of tonal value. This can be useful when contrasting a floor plan with its context.



- This last example illustrates how the tonal value scheme can be reversed, with the cut elements being assigned the lightest value and the space being rendered with a range of darker values.





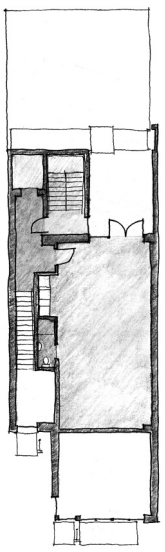
Hybrid Floor Plans

Hybrid floor plans result from using a combination of analog and digital drawing techniques and processes. The best hybrid approaches move back and forth between digital and analog workspaces multiple times.

Developing a hybrid floor plan begins in the digital workspace by cutting a horizontal section through a three-dimensional model. To this plan cut, additional information—the edges of casework and furniture, surface lines on flooring and other horizontal surfaces, and hidden overhead lines—can be added as necessary.

Printing this digital floor plan to the appropriate scale provides a base drawing for tracing the line work either freehand or with a straight edge. If desired, the floor plan can be printed on watercolor or other high-quality drawing paper that can accept a variety of dry or wet media. Different analog methods can then be used for adding poché, tonal values, and context to the traced floor plan.

Plan elements can be hand-drawn separately and scanned at each step for later post-processing, or the finished hand drawing can be scanned to move back into the digital workspace. Either process will allow for photo collages, gradients, or fills to be layered on top of the hand drawing. Being back in a digital workspace also allows for text to be layered atop the drawing and for the drawing to be assembled on a presentation board, completing a digital-to-analog-to-digital hybrid workflow.

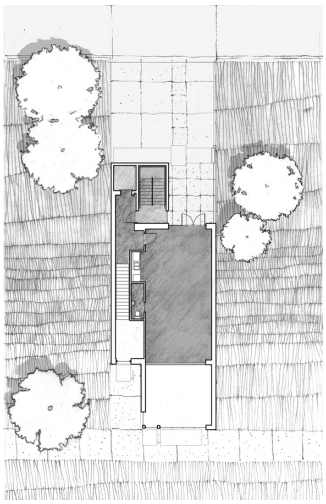


Conversely, developing a hybrid floor plan can begin with a hand-drawn floor plan that is scanned and then moved into the digital workspace. The scanned floor plan can be transformed by using digital fills and gradients for poché and background values, collaging photos for context and textures, and adjusting line weights to emphasize the plan cut.

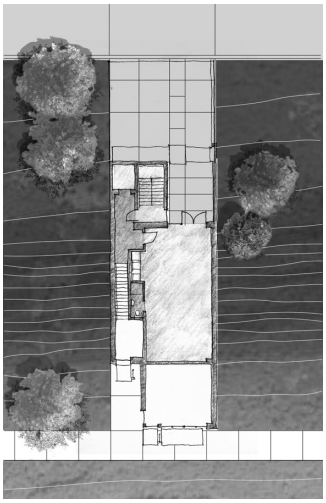
Placing different elements on separate layers—plan cut lines, secondary line work, poché, furnishings, contours, trees, paving, and other contextual features—provides flexibility in manipulating the transparency, brightness, and contrast levels of each layer.

Once printed, we can use hand-drawn techniques to add a final layer of texture or value on top of the finished digital floor plans—completing an analog-to-digital-to-analog process.

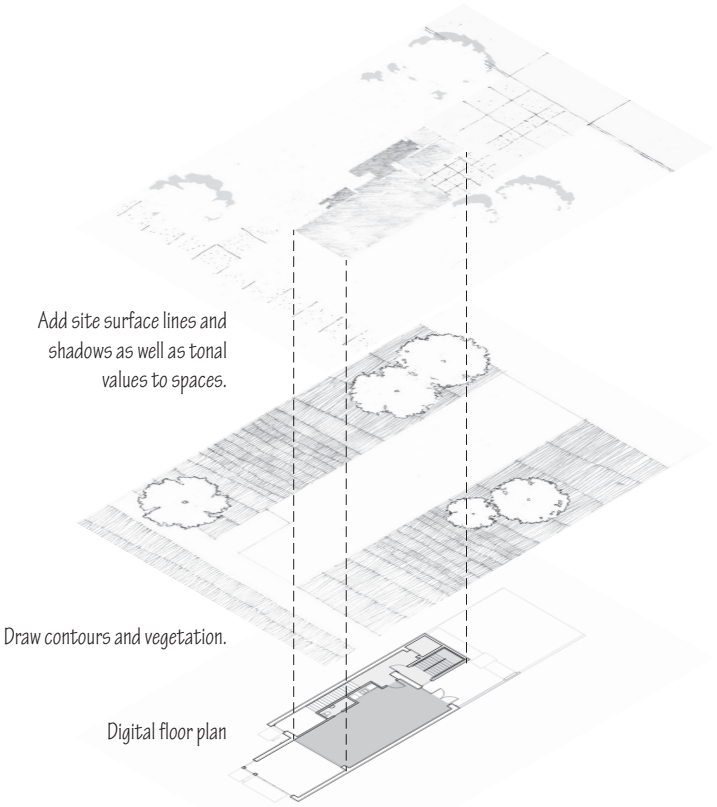
Regardless of the sequence of workspaces used to develop a hybrid drawing, the correct usage of line weights, tonal values, and drawing accuracy remains critical to the final quality of the drawing.

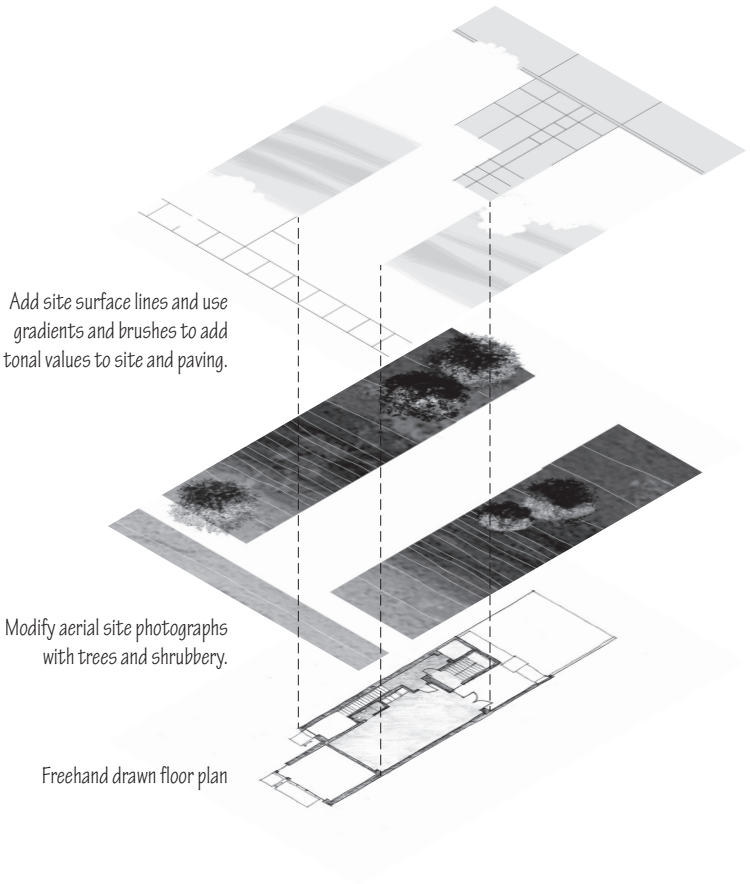


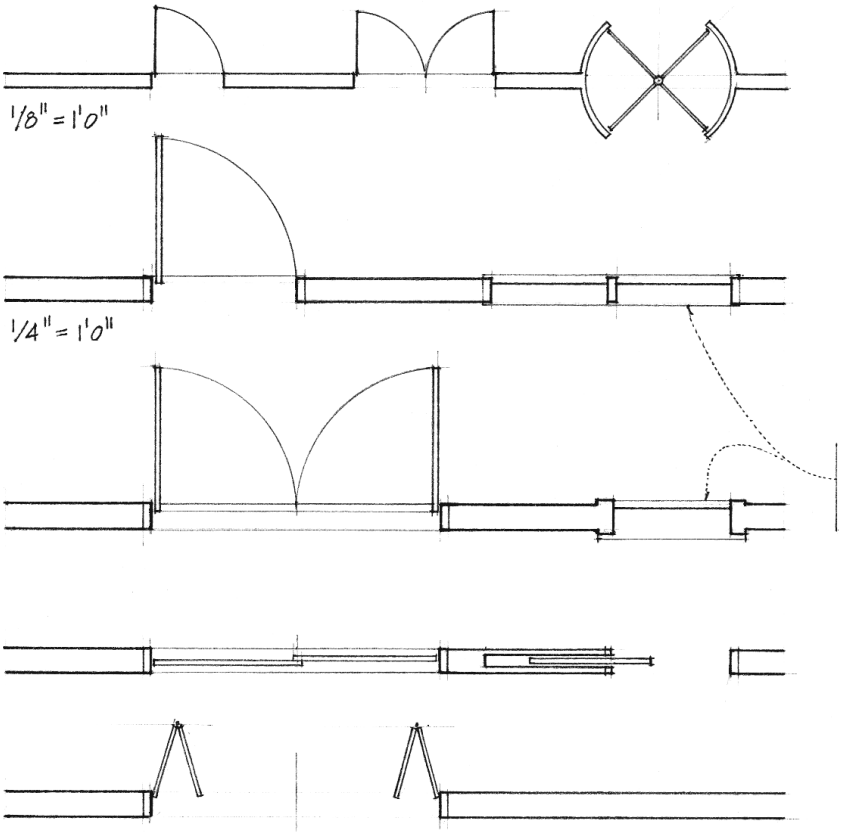
Digital floor plan with freehand drawn context



Freehand floor plan with digitally created context



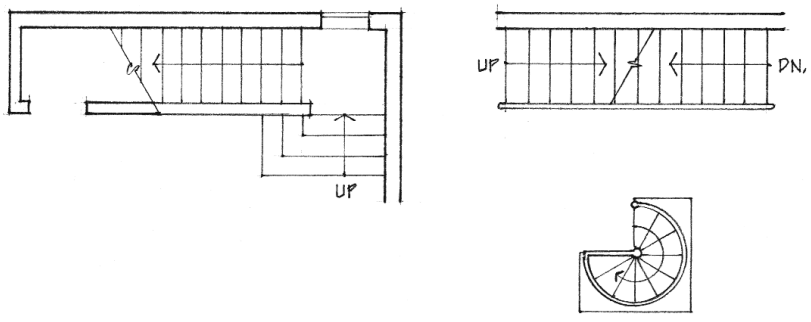




Doors and Windows

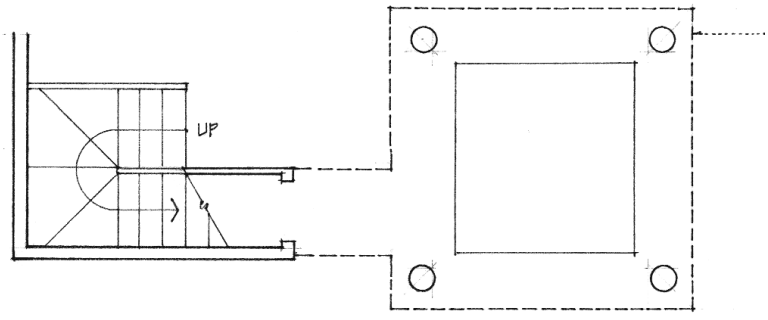
We are not able to show the appearance of doors in a plan view. For this information, we must rely on elevations. What a floor plan does show, however, are the location and width of door openings, and to a limited degree, the door jambs and type of door operation—whether a door swings, slides, or folds open. For example, we typically draw a swinging door perpendicular to the plane of the wall and denote the door swing with a lightly drawn quarter circle.

Neither can we show the appearance of windows in a plan view. A floor plan does disclose the location and width of window openings, and to a limited degree the presence of window jambs and mullions. But the plan view should include the windowsill below the plane of the plan cut, which passes through the glass panes and frame of a window.



Stairs

Plan views are able to show the run of a stairway—its horizontal treads and landings—but not the height of the vertical risers. The path of travel terminates where the stairway passes through the plane of the plan cut. We use a diagonal line to indicate this cut in order to more clearly distinguish it from the parallel lines of the stair treads. An arrow specifies the direction up or down from the level of the floor plan. Above the plan cut, we can use a dashed line to complete the opening through which a stairway rises.

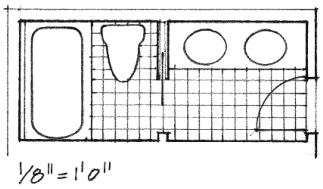


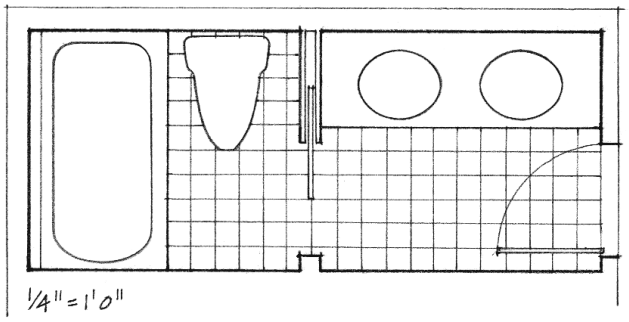
Elements above or below Plan Cut

Dashed lines indicate major architectural features that occur above the plane of the plan cut, such as lofts, lowered ceilings, exposed beams, skylights, and roof overhangs. Dashed lines may also disclose the hidden lines of features concealed from view by other opaque elements. The common convention is to use longer dashes to signify elements that are removed or above the plane of the plan cut, and shorter dashes or dots for hidden elements below the plan cut.

Drawing Scale

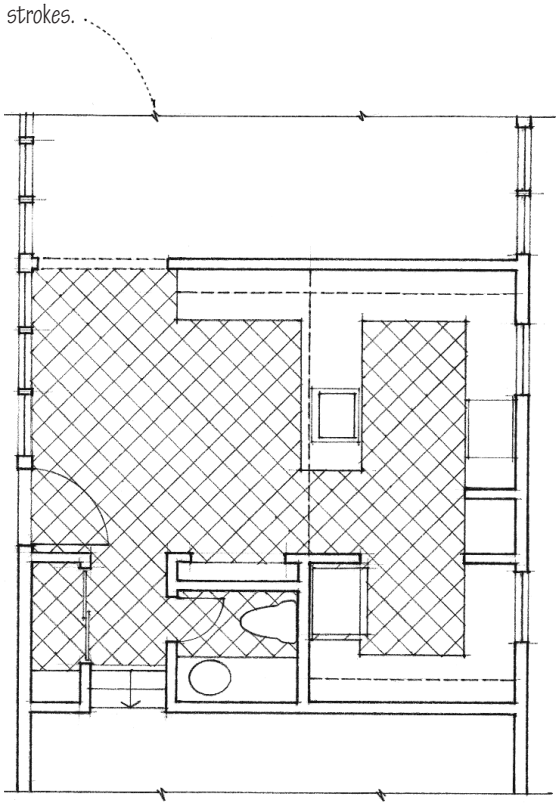
We normally draw floor plans at a scale of 1/8" = 1'0" or 1/4" = 1'0". We may use a smaller scale for large buildings and complexes, or a larger scale for the floor plan of a single room. Room plans are especially useful for studying and presenting highly detailed spaces, such as kitchens, bathrooms, and stairways. The larger scale enables information about floor finishes, fittings, and trimwork to be included.

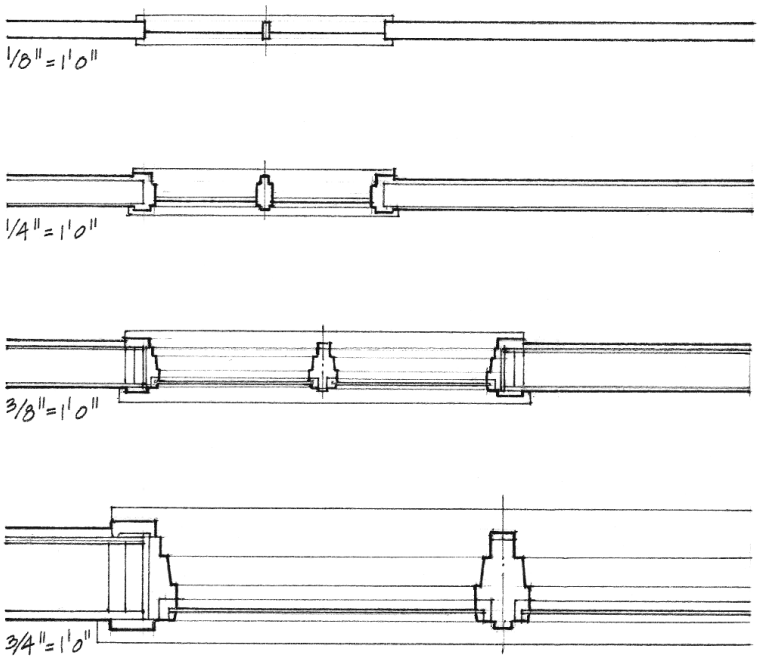


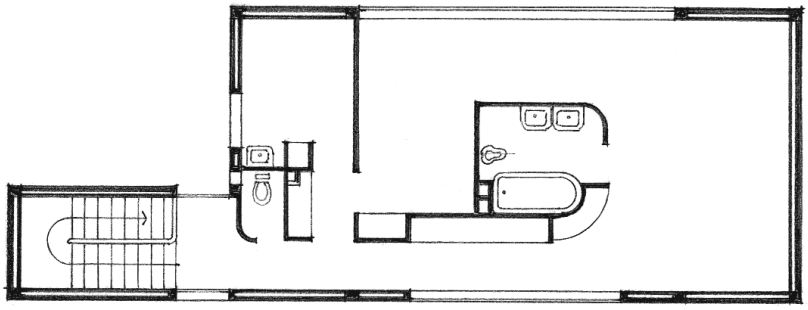


The larger the scale of a floor plan, the more detail we must include. This attention to detail is most critical when drawing the thickness of construction materials and assemblies that are cut in the plan view. Pay careful attention to wall and door thicknesses, wall terminations, corner conditions, and stair details. A general knowledge of how buildings are constructed is therefore extremely beneficial when executing large-scale floor plans.

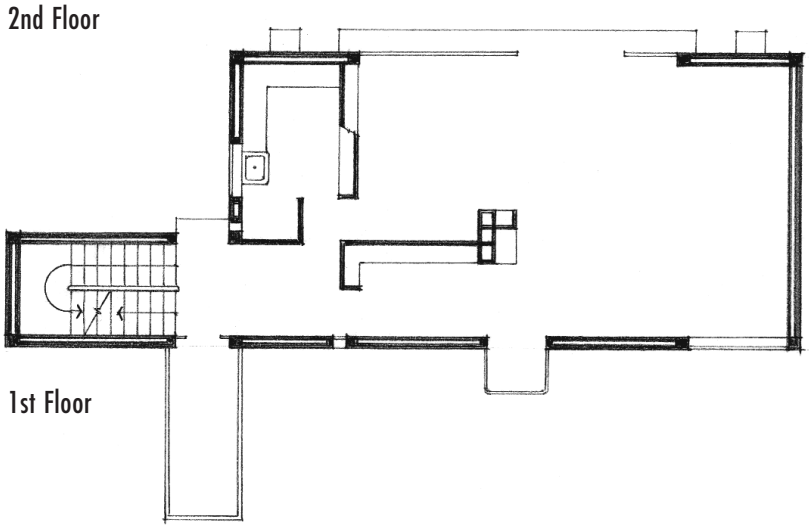
We crop a drawing either when its size is too large to fit on a single sheet or when the entire drawing is not required to convey the desired information. To indicate where a portion of a drawing has been cut off and removed, we use a break line—a broken line consisting of relatively long segments joined by short zigzag strokes.



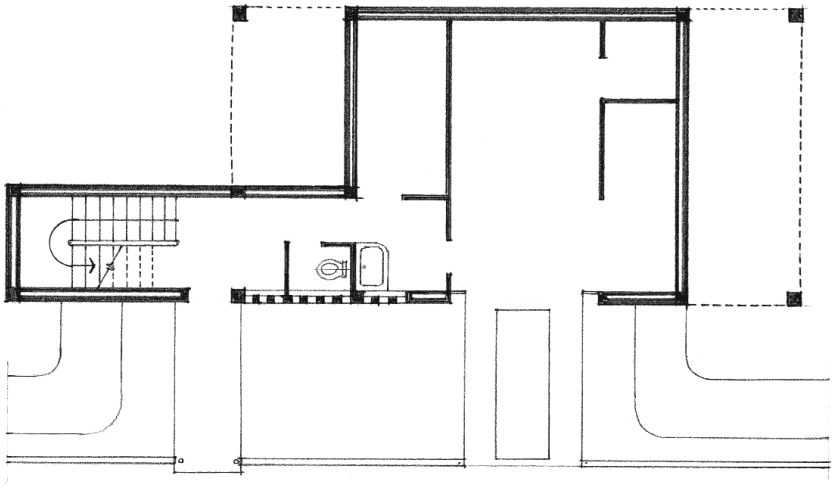




2nd Floor



1st Floor



Ground Floor

Villa at Vaucresson, France, 1922, Le Corbusier

Orientation

To orient the viewer to the surrounding environment, we accompany a floor plan with a north arrow. The normal convention is to orient floor plans with north facing up or upward on the drawing sheet.

If a major axis of the building is less than 45° east or west of north, we can use an assumed north to avoid wordy titles for the building elevations, such as "north-northeast elevation," or "south-southwest elevation."

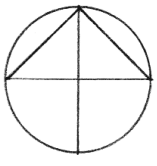
Whenever possible, orient the floor plan of a room with its entrance at the bottom of the drawing so that we can imagine entering the room in an upward direction. When keying a room plan to a floor plan of a building, however, orienting both plans in the same manner takes precedence.

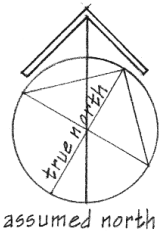
Arrangement

In laying out the floors plans of a multistory building, align the plans either vertically, directly above one another, or horizontally side by side. Vertical arrangements should begin with the lowest level at the bottom and rise to the highest level at the top. Horizontal arrangements should generally proceed from the lowest floor to the upper levels, reading from left to right.

Aligning a series of floor plans in these two ways makes it easier to read and understand the vertical relationships between elements that occur or rise through two or more floor levels of a building. To strengthen this reading, relate the plans of linear buildings along their long side whenever possible.

The first or ground floor plan often extends out to include adjacent outdoor spaces and features, such as courtyards, landscaping, and garden structures.





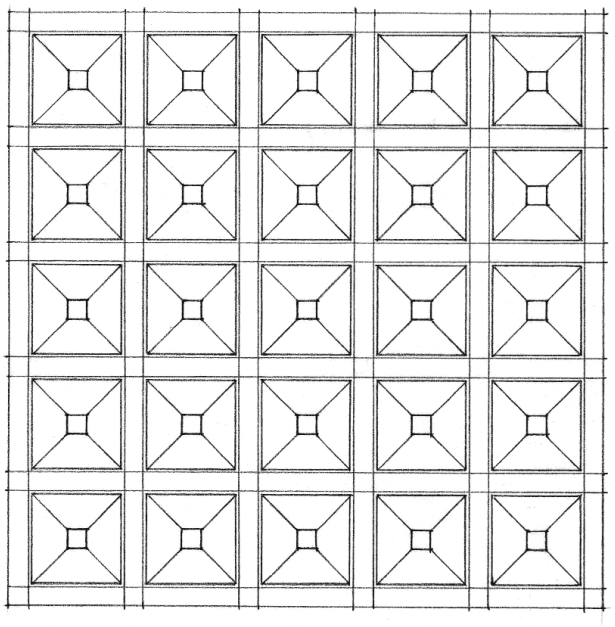
A ceiling plan involves a horizontal cut through the vertical walls and columns that define the space of a room. Once a horizontal plane slices through the room, we flip the upper part so that we can project its image orthographically onto a horizontal picture plane. This results in a ceiling plan that is a mirror image of the floor plan.

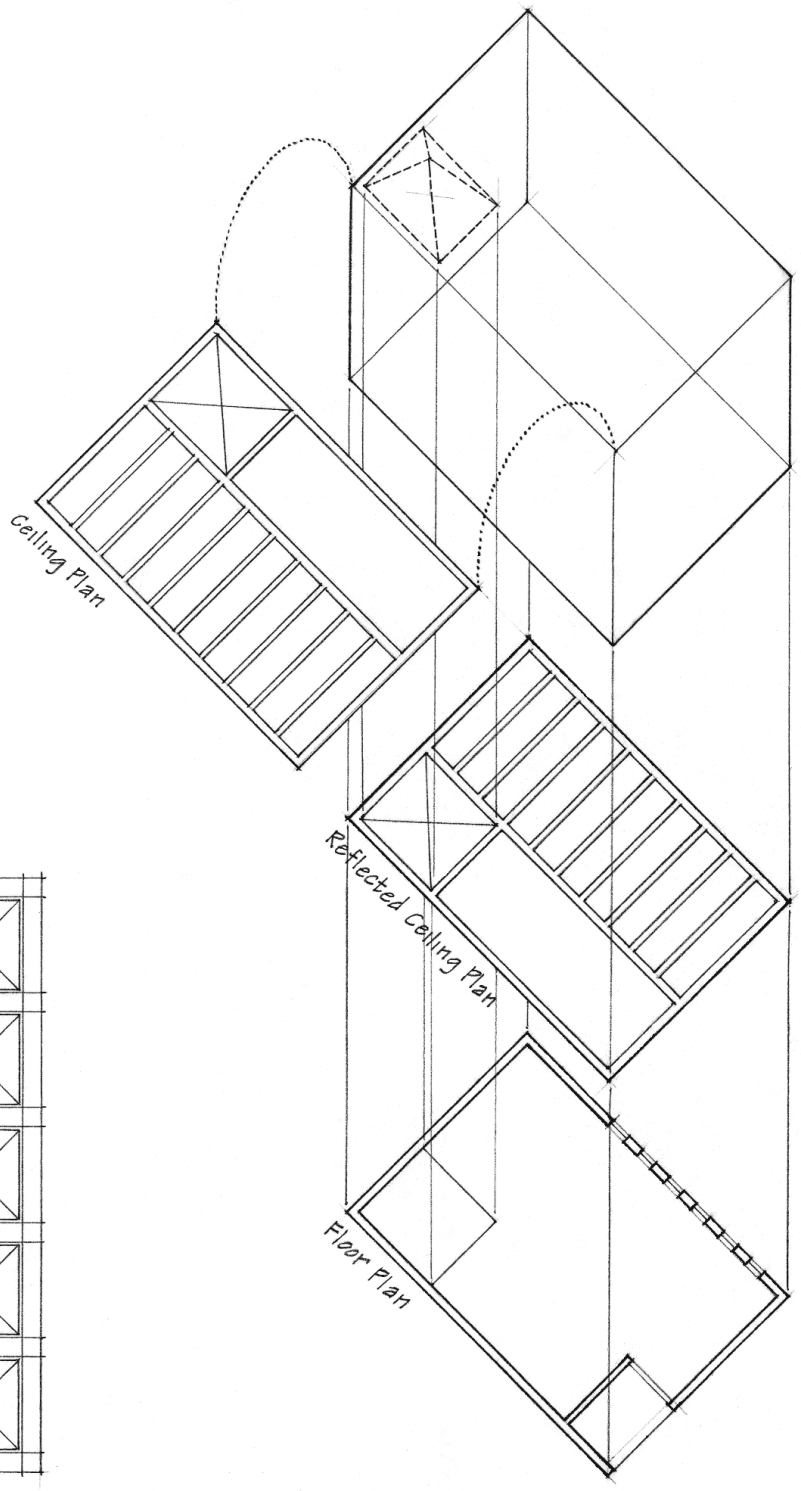
We typically draw ceiling plans at the same scale as the floor plan. As with floor plans, it is important to profile all vertical elements that rise to meet the ceiling.

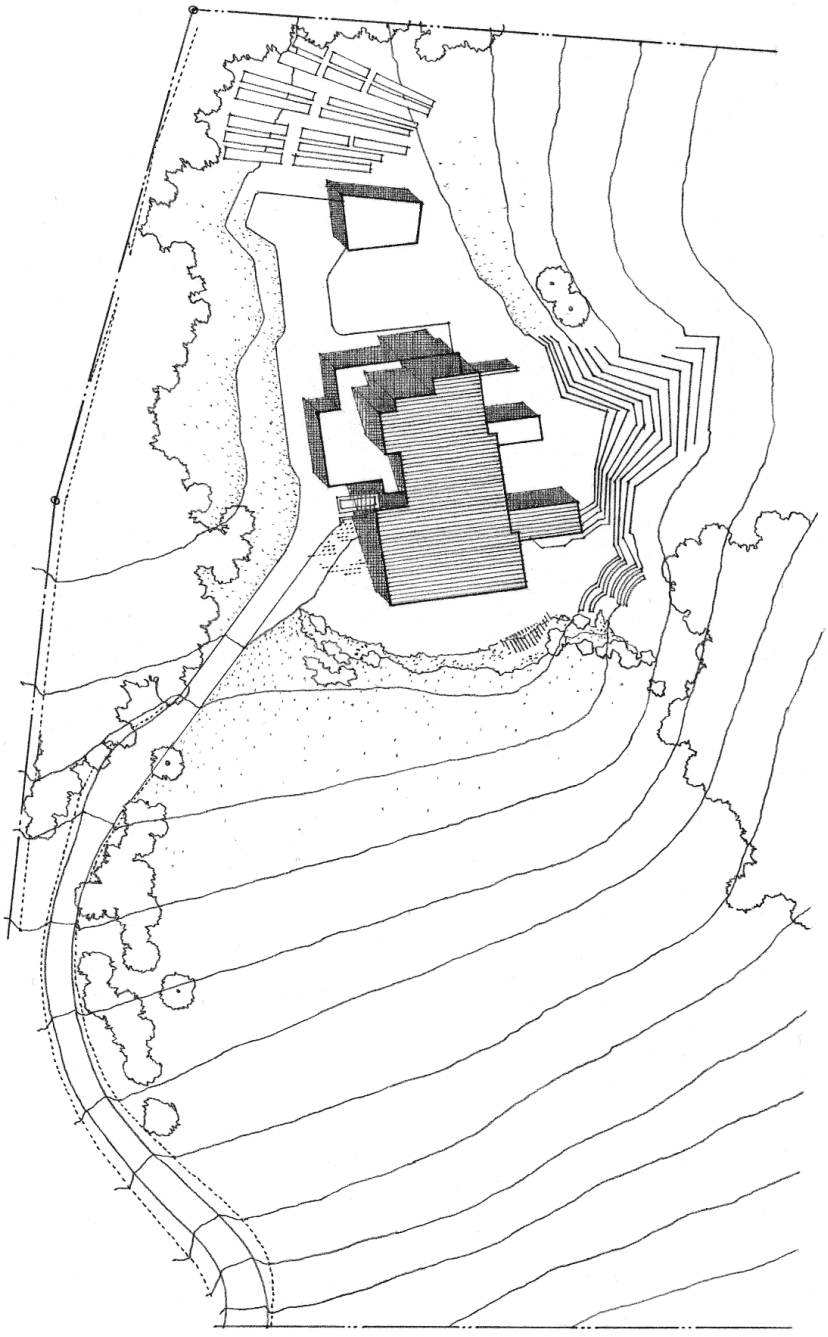
Reflected Ceiling Plans

For a ceiling plan to have the same orientation as the floor plan, we draw what is called a reflected ceiling plan. A reflected ceiling plan represents what we would see if we placed a large mirror on the floor and looked down at the reflection of the ceiling above.

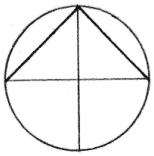
A ceiling plan is probably the least common type of plan view. It becomes necessary when we wish to show such information as the form and material of a ceiling, the location and type of lighting fixtures, exposed structural members or mechanical ductwork, or skylights or other openings in the ceiling.







Site Plan, Carré House, Bazoches-sur-Guyonne, France, 1952–56, Alvar Aalto



A site plan describes the location and orientation of a building or building complex on a plot of land and in relation to its context. Whether this environment is urban or rural, the site plan should describe the following:

- the legally recorded boundaries of the site, indicated by a broken line consisting of relatively long segments separated by two short dashes or dots;
- the physical topography of the terrain with contour lines;
- natural site features, such as trees, landscaping, and watercourses;
- existing or proposed site constructions, such as walks, courts, and roadways; and
- architectural structures in the immediate setting that impact the proposed building.

In addition, a site plan may include:

- legal constraints, such as zoning setbacks and right-of-ways;
- existing or proposed site utilities;
- pedestrian and vehicular entry points and paths; and
- significant environmental forces and features.

Scale

To reduce the physical size of a site plan and balance its impact in relation to the other drawings in a presentation, we usually draw site plans at a smaller scale than building plans, elevations, and sections. Depending on the size of the site and available drawing space, we can use an engineering scale of 1" = 20' or 40', or an architectural scale of $^1/_{16}$" = 1'0" or $^1/_{32}$" = 1'0". To illustrate more detail and if space permits, we may also use an architectural scale of $^1/_8$" = 1'0" or $^1/_4$" = 1'0". At larger scales, a site plan may include the first or ground floor plan of the building. This depiction is particularly appropriate for illustrating relationships between interior and outdoor spaces.

Orientation

To make the relationship between site plans and floor plans clear, they should have the same orientation throughout a presentation.

Roof Plans

Site plans typically include the roof plan or top view of the proposed building or building complex. A roof plan is most useful when it describes the form, massing, and material of a roof or the layout of rooftop features, such as skylights, decks, and mechanical housings.

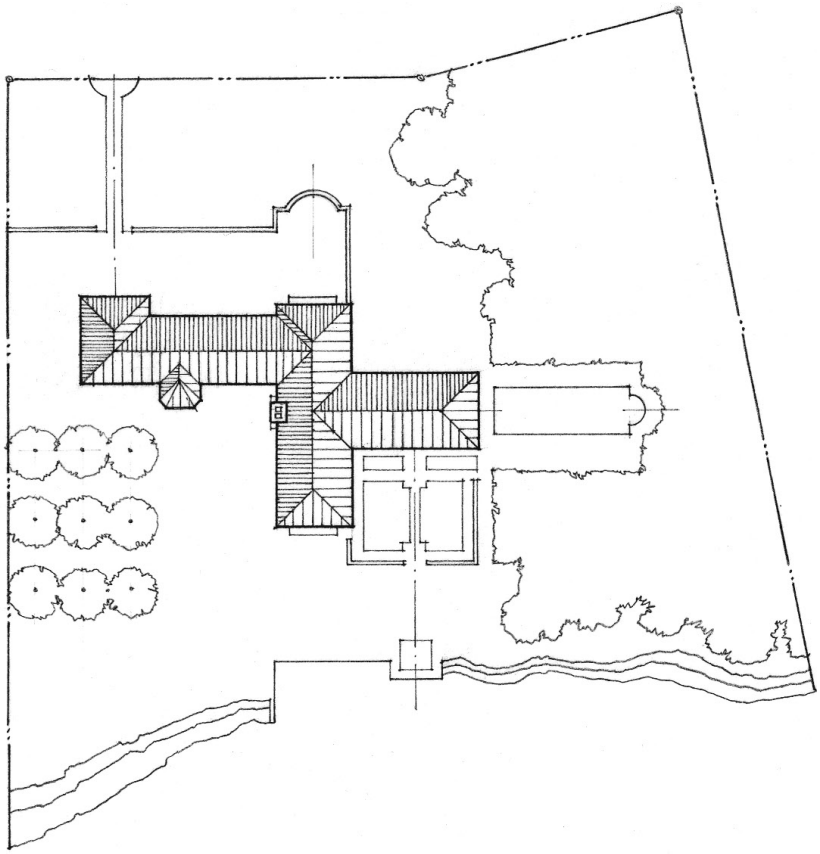
Depending on the scale of the drawing, the depiction of a roofing material can infuse a roof plan with both visual texture as well as a tonal value. We must consider these graphic attributes carefully in planning the range and pattern of tonal values in a site plan drawing. The depiction can focus attention on either the plan shape of the building or the features of the outdoor spaces surrounding the building.

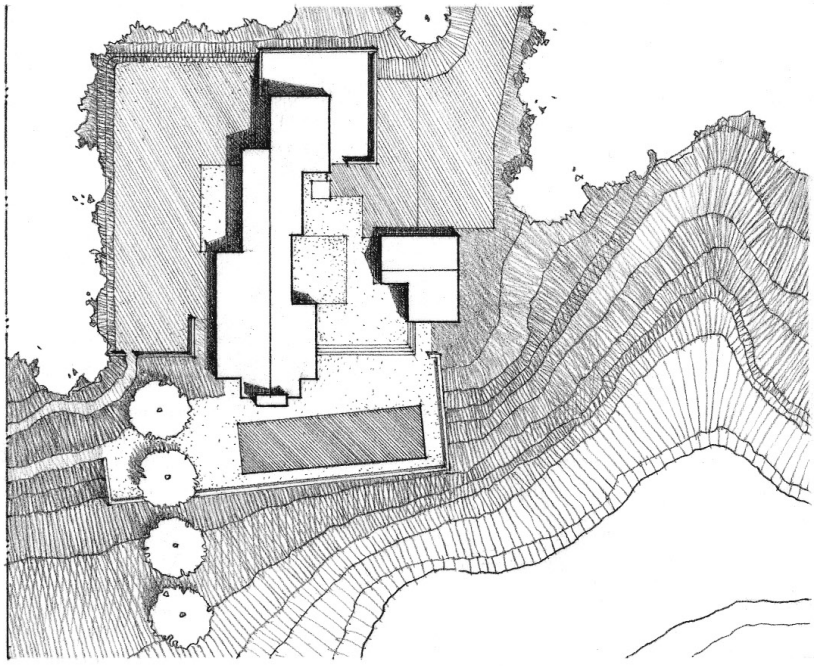
Conveying Depth

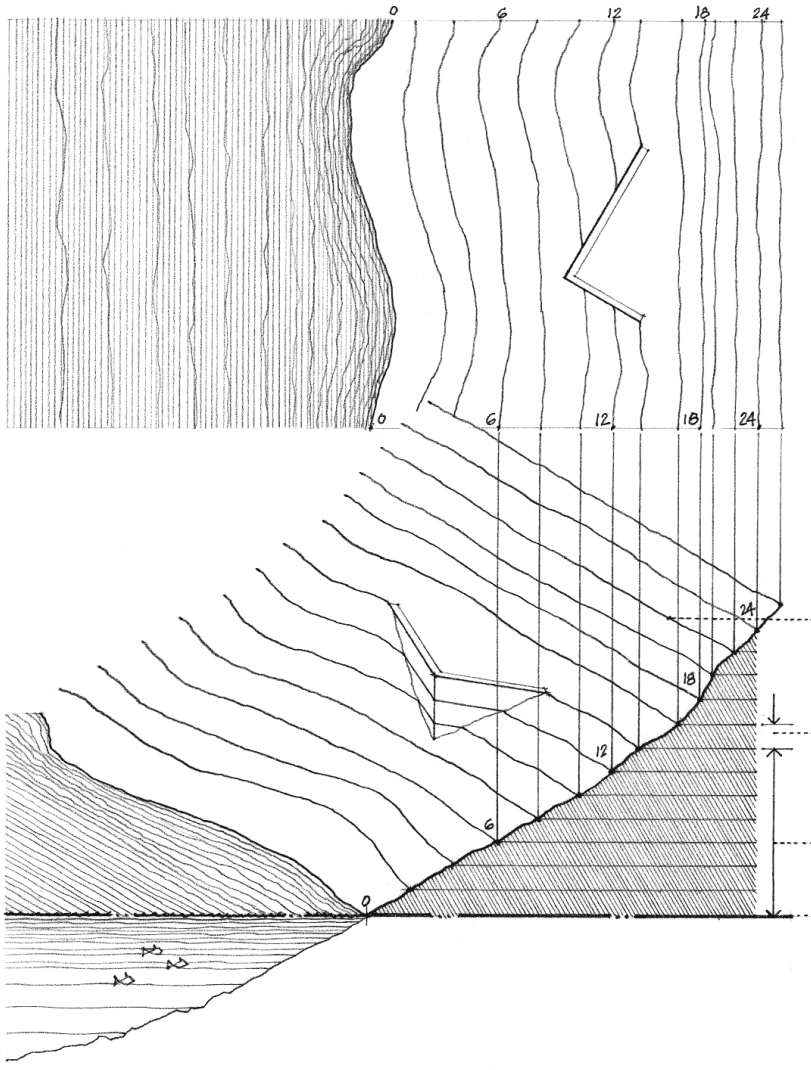
There are two principal ways to achieve the desired degree of tonal contrast between a building form and the surrounding space. The first is rendering the building as a darker figure against a lighter background. This approach is especially appropriate when depicting the roofing material of the building invariably establishes a tonal value and texture against which the surrounding context must contrast.

The second approach defines the building as a lighter shape against a darker background. This technique is necessary when rendering shadows cast by the form of the building, or when landscaping elements impart a tonal value to the surrounding context.

To enhance the illusion of a three-dimensional ground surface, we can use a stepped series of tonal values that appear to ascend or descend with the elevation of the contours. The easiest way to create the tonal values is to introduce hatching perpendicular to the contour lines.







Site Contours

The response of a building design to its context includes consideration of the physical characteristics of its site, especially the surface configuration of the terrain. A series of site sections can effectively represent this information. On a site plan, however, it is difficult to describe the vertical aspect of an undulating ground surface. Contour lines are the graphic convention we use to convey this information.

One way to visualize contour lines is to imagine that horizontal slices cut through the landform at regular intervals, the profile of each cut being represented by a contour line. The trajectory of each contour line indicates the shape of the land formation at that elevation. Contour lines are always continuous and never cross one another. They coincide in a plan view only when they cut across a vertical surface.

Contour Line
An imaginary line joining points of equal elevation on a ground surface.

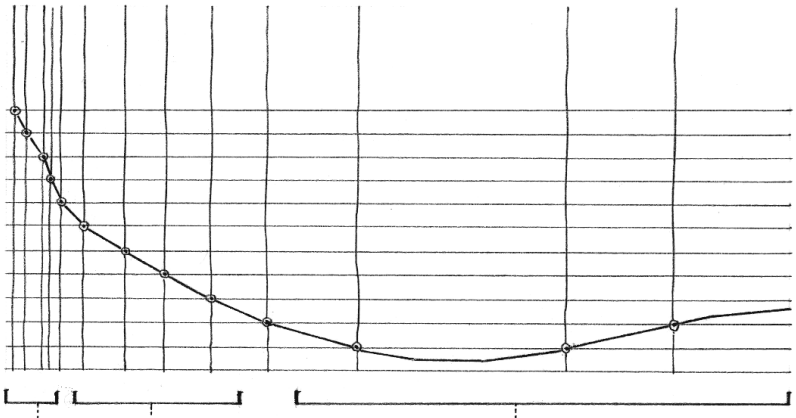
Contour Interval
The difference in elevation represented by any two adjacent contour lines on a topographic map or site plan.

Elevation
The vertical distance of a point above or below a datum.

Datum
Any level surface, line, or point used as a reference from which elevations are measured.

Contour interval is determined by the scale of a drawing, the size of the site, and the nature of the topography. The larger the area and the steeper the slopes, the greater the interval between contours. For large or steeply sloping sites, 10', 25' or 50' contour intervals may be used. For small sites having relatively gradual slopes, 5', 2', or 1' contour lines may be used.

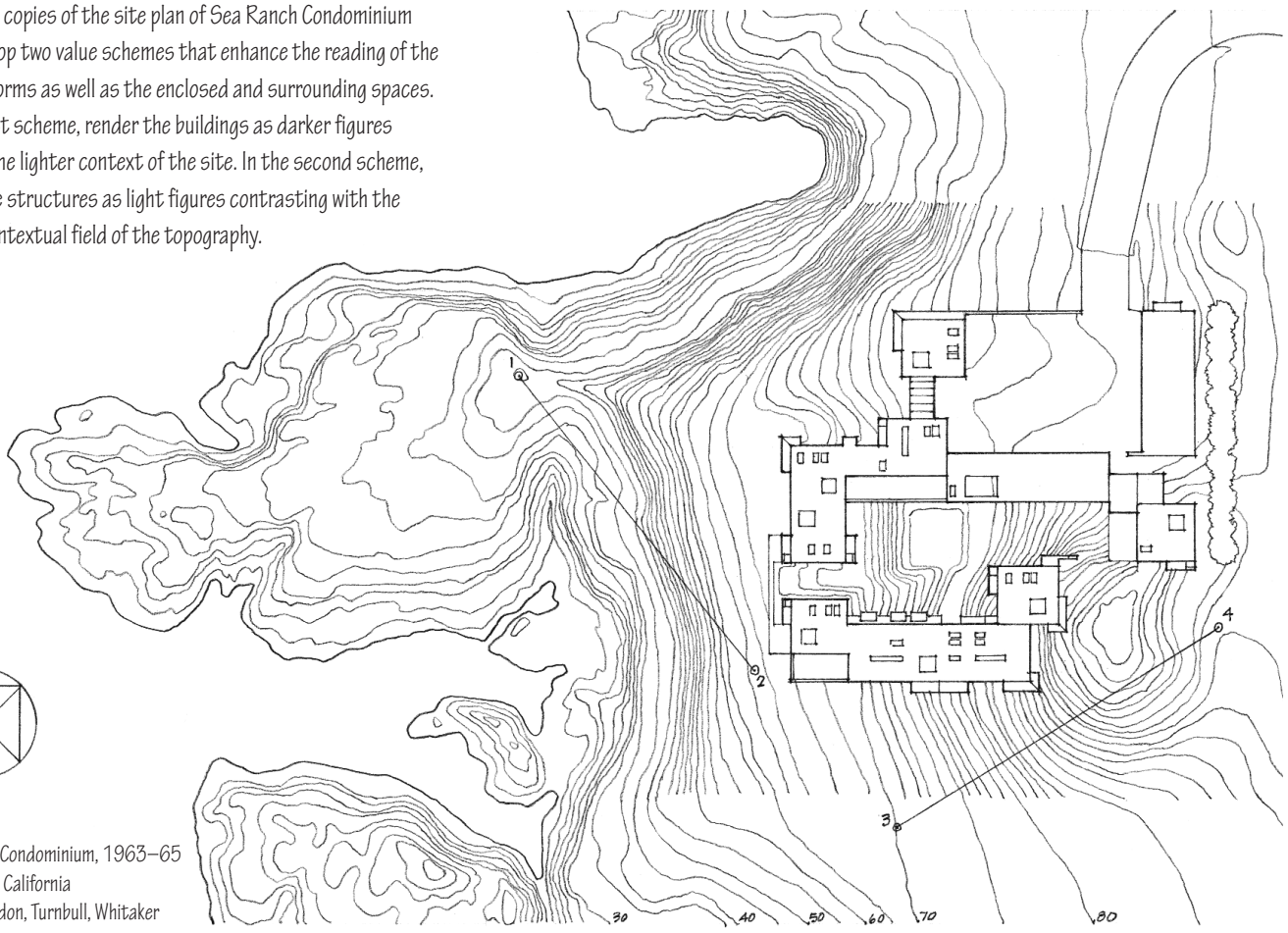
The horizontal distances between contour lines in a site plan are a function of the slope of the ground surface. We can discern the topographical nature of a site by reading this horizontal spacing.



- Contours spaced far apart indicate a relatively flat or gently sloping surface.
- Equally spaced contours indicate a constant slope.
- Closely spaced contours indicate a relatively steep rise in elevation.

Exercise 6.8

Make two copies of the site plan of Sea Ranch Condominium and develop two value schemes that enhance the reading of the building forms as well as the enclosed and surrounding spaces. In the first scheme, render the buildings as darker figures against the lighter context of the site. In the second scheme, define the structures as light figures contrasting with the darker contextual field of the topography.



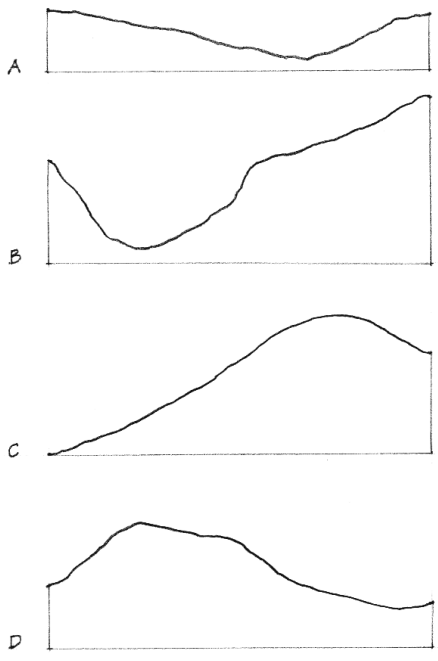
Sea Ranch Condominium, 1963–65
Sea Ranch, California
Moore, Lyndon, Turnbull, Whitaker

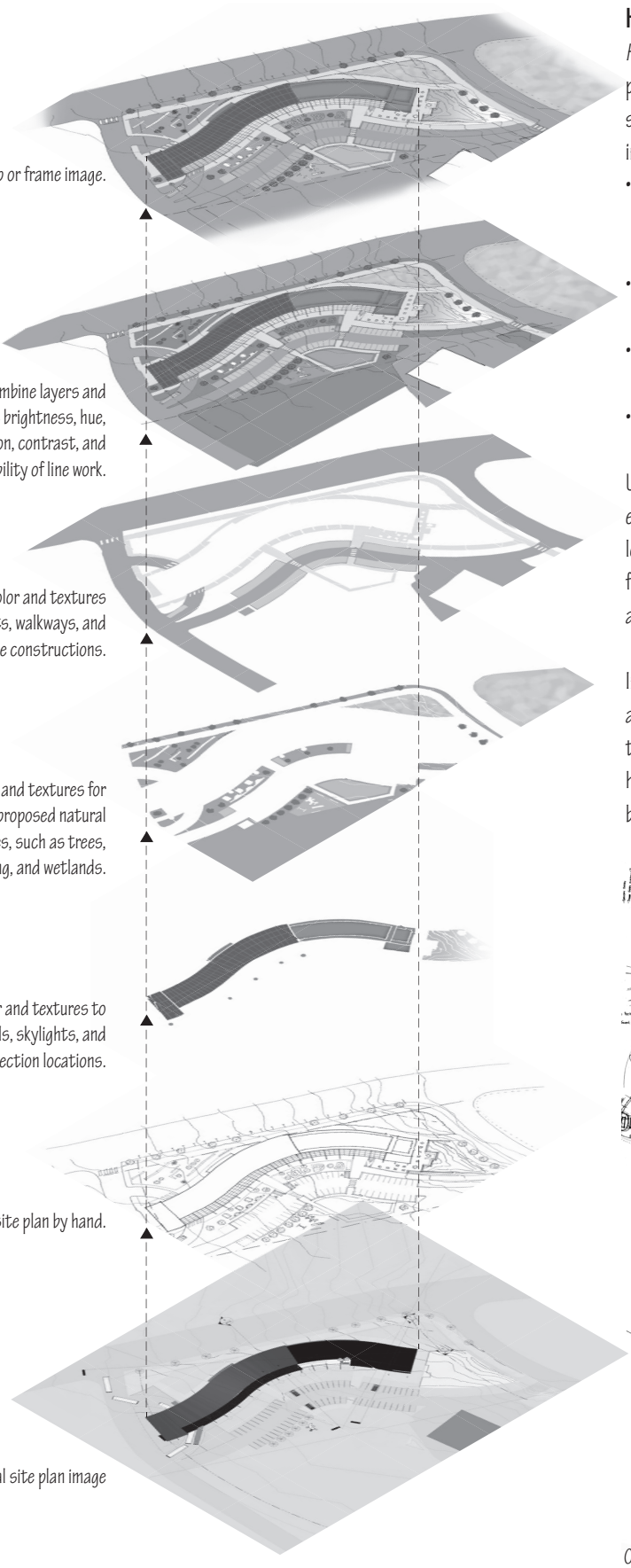
Exercise 6.9

Which profile matches the line drawn from point 1 to point 2 on the site plan of Sea Ranch Condominium? (A) (B) (C) (D)

Exercise 6.10

Which profile matches the line drawn from point 3 to point 4 on the site plan of Sea Ranch Condominium? (A) (B) (C) (D)





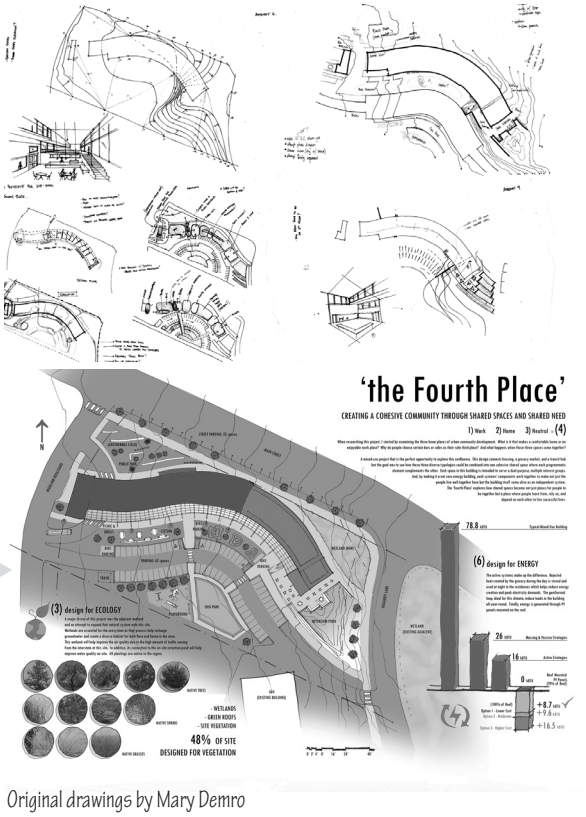
Hybrid Site Plans

Hybrid site plans combine digital models and topography with aerial photographs to create base maps for exploring design issues at the scale of a building site and its urban or rural context. Such issues include:

- existing topography, natural site features such as trees and watercourses, and site improvements such as walkways and pavements;
- significant environmental forces, such as view potential and solar and wind exposures;
- entry points and patterns of vehicular, bicycle, and pedestrian traffic; and
- historic, cultural, and contextual influences on a site.

Using tracing paper laid over a digital base map allows for quick, explorative drawings that document and study the relevant issues, leading to more refined design drawings with each iteration. Once a final site design is realized, the hand-drawn site plan can be scanned and the workflow moved back into the digital workspace.

In the digital workspace, fills, gradients, and line work can be added on separate layers to provide flexibility in manipulating the transparency, brightness, and contrast levels of each layer. The hybrid site plan can then be combined with annotations and diagrams before being printed and mounted on a presentation board.



Original drawings by Mary Demro

Digital Site Information

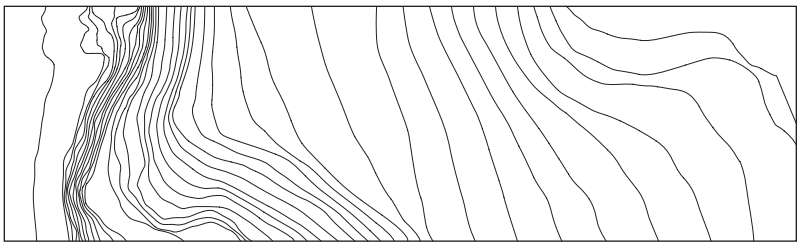
Once a digital solid or surface model of a site has been developed, we can make a series of horizontal cuts through the digital model at a predetermined vertical spacing to create a series of topographical contours. These contour lines can be manipulated and flattened to create a two-dimensional site contour drawing.

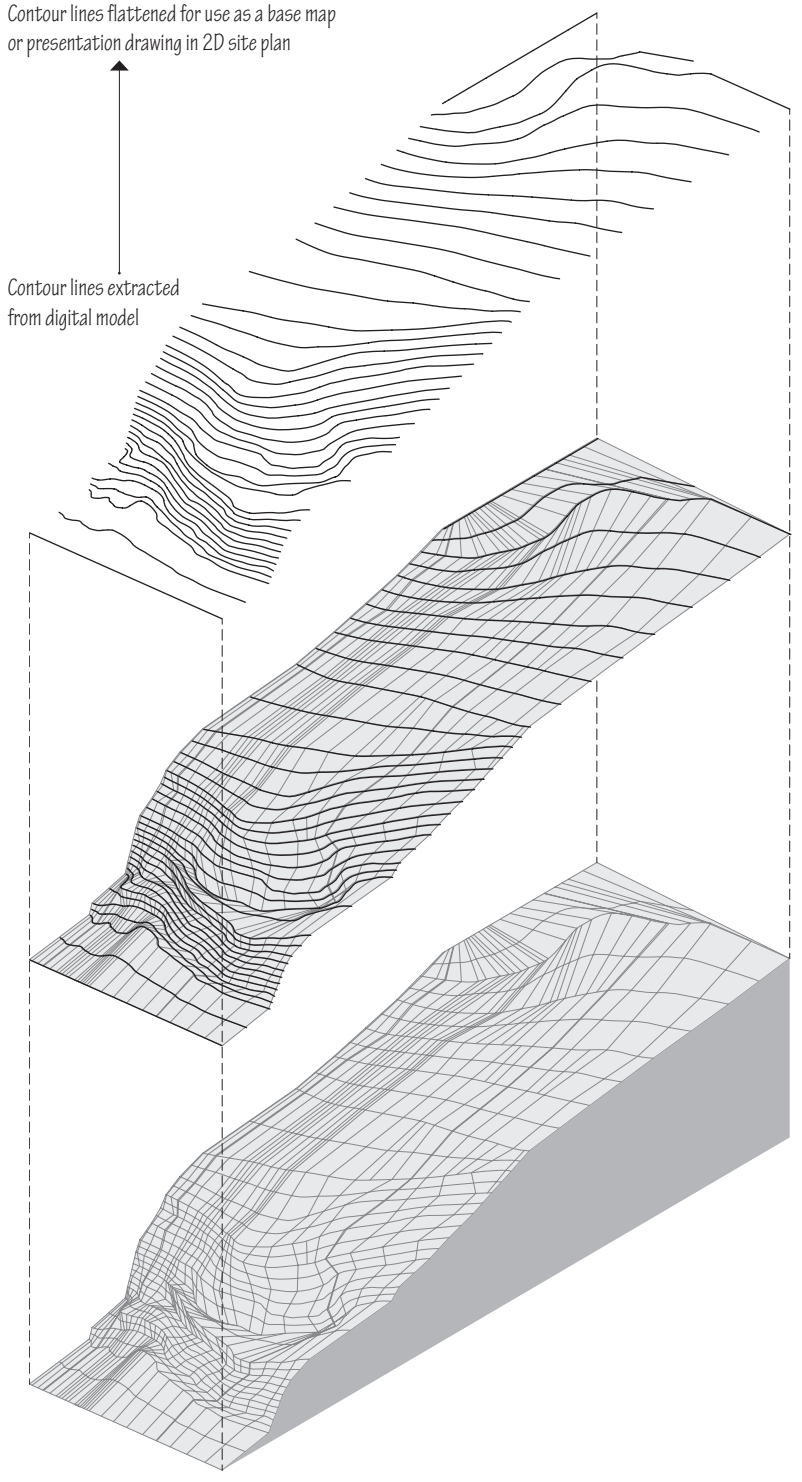
Related digital site information is available online from a variety of sources, including Geographic Information Systems (GIS) files from municipalities and open access maps, which can provide such information as aerial photographs; site contours; building footprints, heights, and uses; public utilities, transportation infrastructure; and parks and recreational areas. Additional data on city services, traffic flow, climate conditions, and population demographics can be accessed for many urban sites.

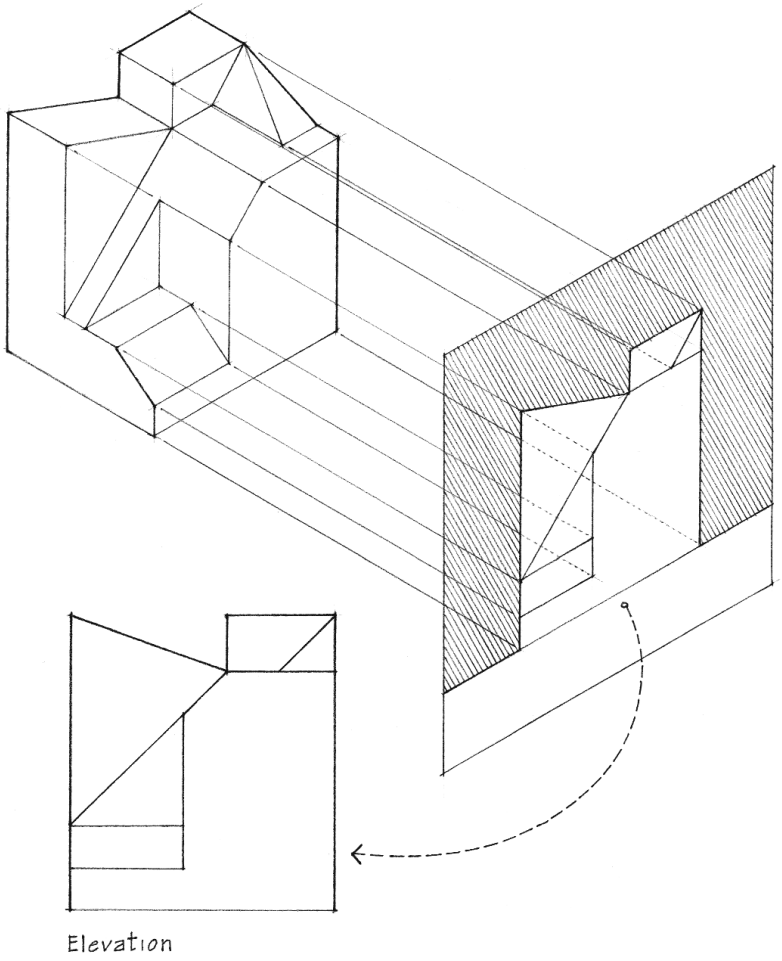
When using this imagery in site plan drawings, it is important to view the downloaded information as simply base images that may need to be modified and adjusted to complement the drawing language used throughout a presentation.

Original site plan image

Site plan image modified for consistency in presentation

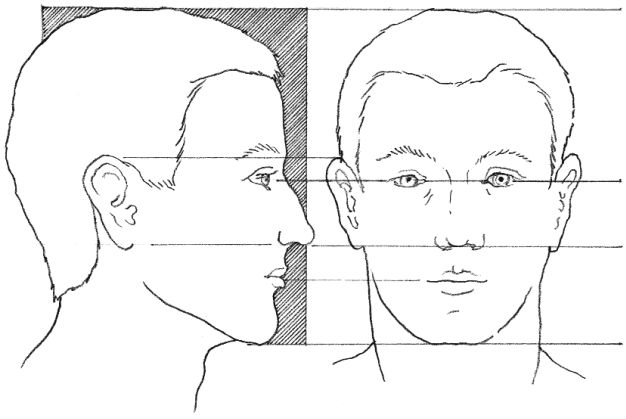


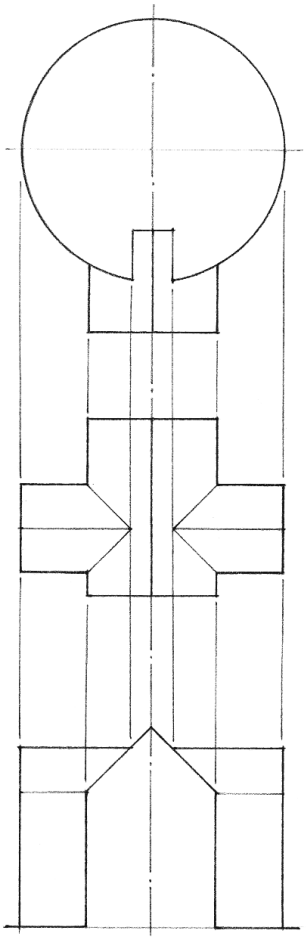




An elevation is an orthographic projection of an object or construction on a vertical picture plane parallel to one of its sides. As with other orthographic projections, all planes parallel to the picture plane maintain their true-scale size, shape, and proportions. Conversely, any plane that is curved or oblique to the picture plane will be foreshortened in the orthographic view.

Elevations reduce the three-dimensional complexity of an object to two dimensions—height and either width or length. Unlike a plan, an elevation mimics our upright stance and offers a horizontal viewpoint. Unlike a section, it does not involve a cut through the object being depicted. Instead, the elevation offers an exterior view that closely resembles the natural appearance of the object. Even though elevation views of vertical surfaces are closer to perceptual reality than either plans or section views, they cannot represent the diminishing size of planes as they recede from the spectator. When we draw objects and surfaces in elevation, we must rely on graphic cues to convey depth, curvature, or obliqueness.

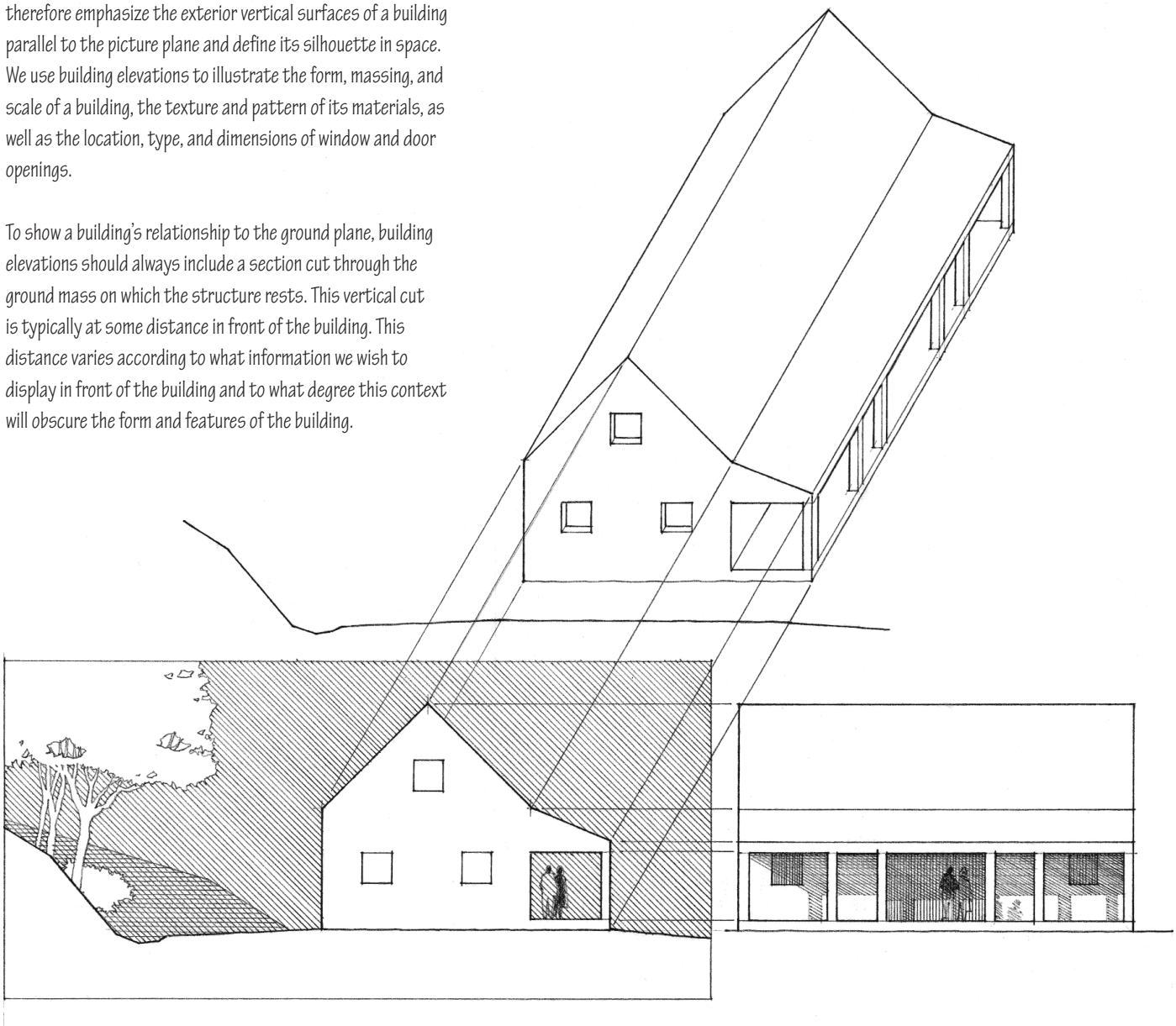


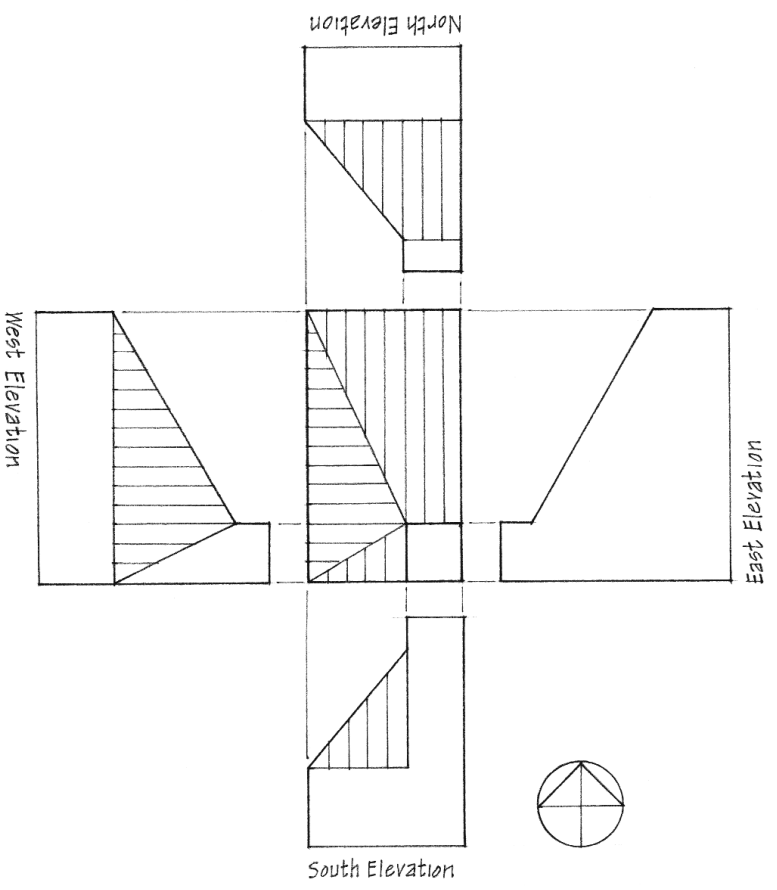


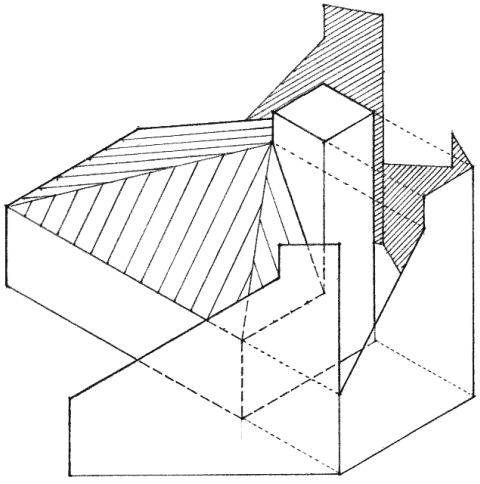
A building elevation is a horizontal view of the image of a building projected orthographically onto a vertical picture plane. We normally orient the picture plane to be parallel to one of the principal faces of the building.

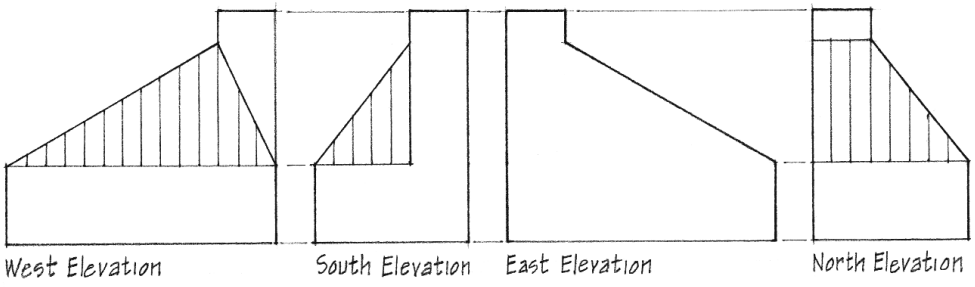
Building elevations convey the external appearance of a building, compressed onto a single plane of projection. They therefore emphasize the exterior vertical surfaces of a building parallel to the picture plane and define its silhouette in space. We use building elevations to illustrate the form, massing, and scale of a building, the texture and pattern of its materials, as well as the location, type, and dimensions of window and door openings.

To show a building's relationship to the ground plane, building elevations should always include a section cut through the ground mass on which the structure rests. This vertical cut is typically at some distance in front of the building. This distance varies according to what information we wish to display in front of the building and to what degree this context will obscure the form and features of the building.









Arrangement

As we move around a building, we see a series of related elevations that change as our position in space changes. We can logically relate these views to each other by unfolding the vertical picture planes on which they are projected. They can form a horizontal sequence of drawings, or be related in a single, composite drawing around a common plan view.

While an elevation drawing can show the context of objects and the relationships between a number of forms in space, they do not reveal any information about their interiors. We can combine elevations and sections, however, when drawing symmetrical forms and constructions.

Orientation

To orient the viewer, we label each elevation drawing according to its relationship to an assumed front face, the compass direction it faces, or the context from which the elevation is seen. An elevation view may be a front view if projected on a frontal plane of projection, and a side view if projected on the profile plane, depending on how we orient ourselves to the object or assess the relative significance of its faces.

In architectural graphics, however, the orientation of a building to the compass points is an important consideration when studying and communicating the effect of solar radiation and other climatic factors on the design. Therefore, we most often name a building elevation after the direction the elevation faces: e.g., a north elevation is the elevation of the facade that faces north. If the face is oriented less than 45°off the major compass points, an assumed north may be used to avoid wordy drawing titles.

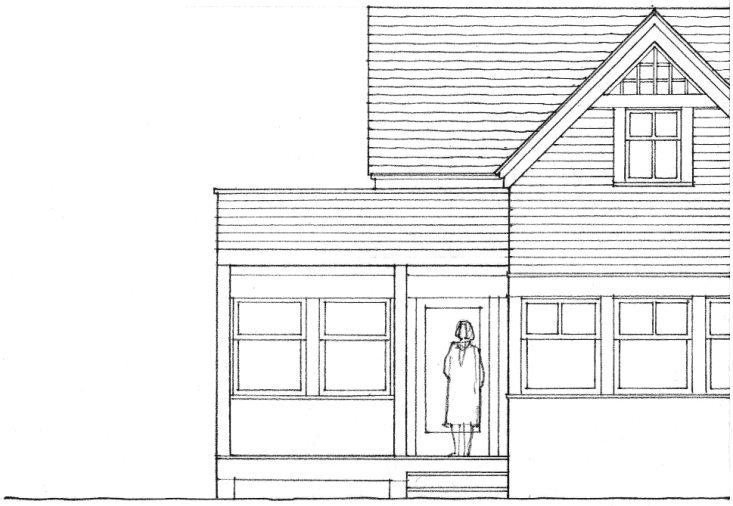
When a building addresses a specific or significant feature of a site, we can name a building elevation after that feature: e.g., a street elevation is the elevation of the facade that faces a street.

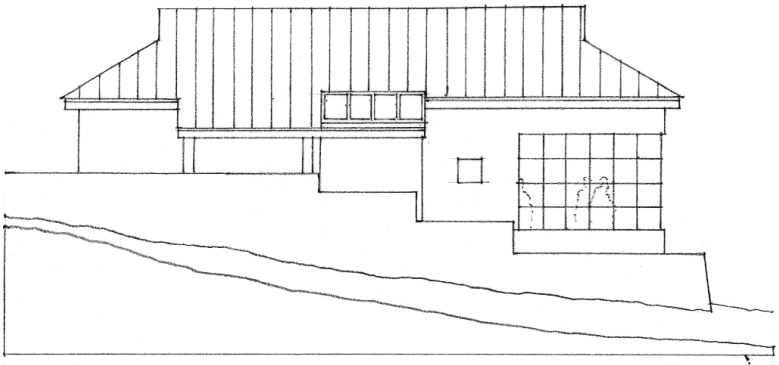
Drawing Scale

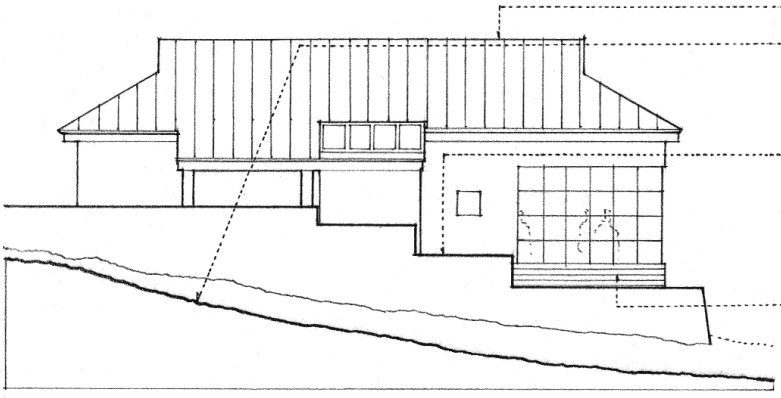
We usually draw building elevations at the same scale as the accompanying floor plans—1/8" = 1'0" or 1/4" = 1'0". We may use a smaller scale for large buildings and complexes, or a larger scale for the interior elevations of a single room. Interior elevations are especially useful for studying and presenting highly detailed spaces, such as kitchens, bathrooms, and stairways.

The larger the scale of an elevation, the more detail we must include. This attention to detail is most critical when drawing the appearance of wall surfaces, window and door units, and roof coverings. Pay careful attention to the texture and pattern of materials, the thicknesses of frames and joints, the exposed edges of planes, and how planar constructions turn corners. A general knowledge of how buildings are constructed is therefore extremely beneficial when executing large-scale building elevations.

As always, including human figures in elevation drawings helps establish a sense of scale and reminds us of the intended patterns of activity and use.







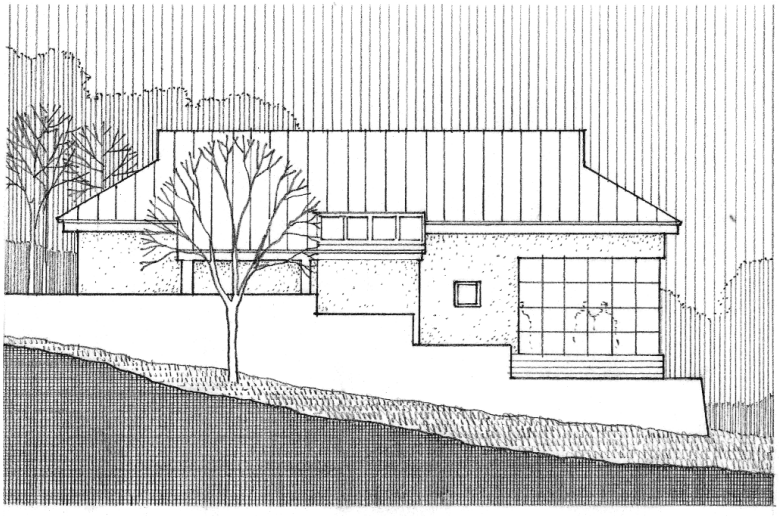
Conveying Depth

Since planes perpendicular to the picture plane appear as lines in orthographic projection, there are no inherent depth cues in a building elevation. Regardless of their distance in space, all lines and planes parallel to the picture plane retain their true-scale size. To convey a sense of depth, we must use a hierarchy of line weights or a range of tonal values. The technique we use depends on the scale of the building elevation, the drawing medium, and the technique for depicting the texture and pattern of materials.

This series of drawings illustrates ways to convey a sense of depth in a building elevation.

- This is a building elevation drawn with a single line weight.
- This drawing uses a hierarchy of line weights to convey depth.
- The heaviest line weight defines the groundline of the section cut in front of the building. Extend this groundline into the adjoining space to describe the topographical nature of the setting.
- The next heaviest line weight profiles the planes closest to the plane of projection; progressively thinner and lighter lines indicate increasing distance from the picture plane.
- The lightest line weights represent surface lines. These lines do not signify any change in form. They simply represent the visual pattern or texture of surfaces.

We use tonal values in an elevation drawing to render cast shadows as well as establish three pictorial zones: the foreground space between the section cut and the facade of the building, the middleground that the building itself occupies, and the background of sky, landscape, or structures beyond the building.

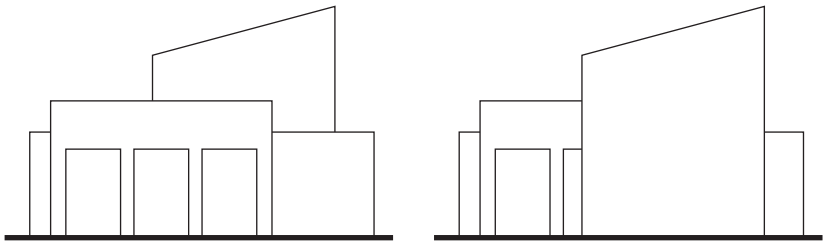


- First establish the tonal range of the building; then establish contrasting values for the foreground and background.
- Darker planes may front progressively lighter planes in the distance or vice versa.
- Using the depth cue of transition between light and shade, define sharper tonal contrasts to project elements forward, and diminish areas of contrast to push areas into the background.
- Using the depth cue of atmospheric perspective, delineate the material and texture of surfaces more distinctly in the foreground and diffuse the edges and contours of more distant surfaces in the background.
- Sharpness and clarity of detail focus attention on the parts of the building that are closest to the picture plane.

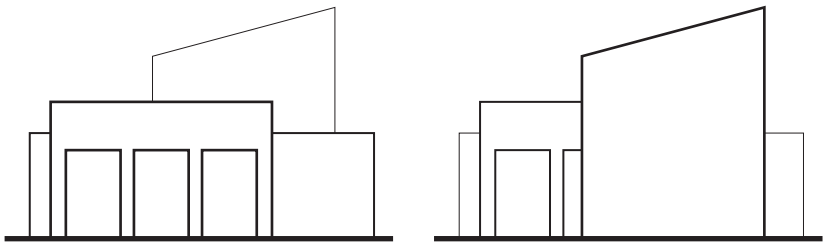
Spatial Depth Cues

The examples on the previous page illustrate the use of varying line weights and tonal values to convey a sense of spatial depth in the drawing of building elevations. This series of drawings illustrates in a more discrete and abstract way how visual cues can enhance the sense of depth in any orthographic projection.

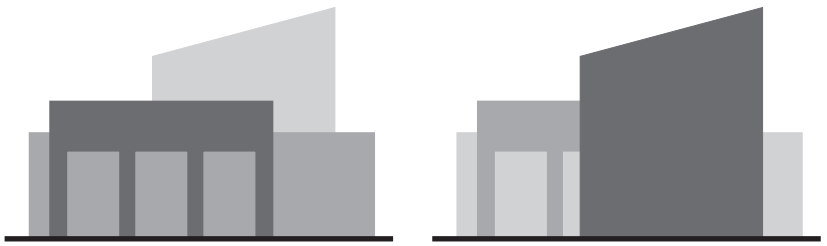
- Continuity of Outline: We tend to perceive a shape as being in front of another when it has continuity of outline and disrupts the profile of the other shape. Since this visual phenomenon relies on nearer objects overlaying or projecting in front of objects farther away, we often refer to this depth cue simply as overlaps.

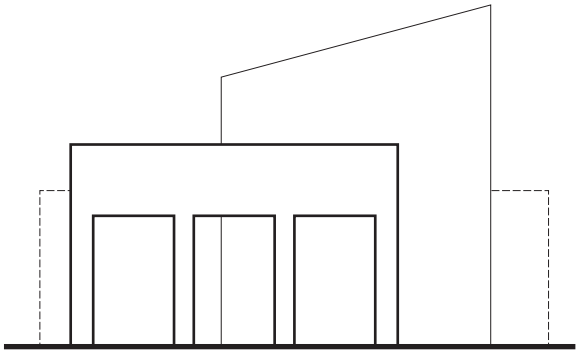


- By itself, overlap tends to create relatively shallow intervals of space. However, we can achieve a greater sense of intervening space and depth if we combine overlap with other depth cues, such as by varying the line weights of a pure-line drawing. Darker and thicker profile or contour lines tend to advance and appear to be in front of lighter and thinner outlines.

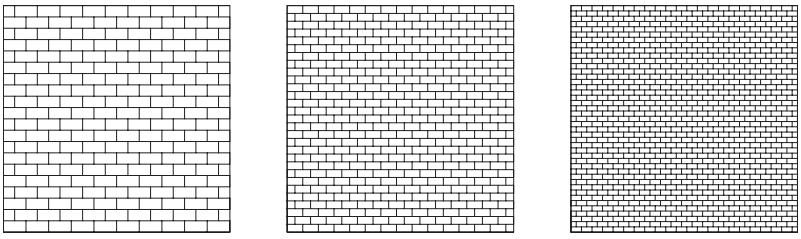


- Atmospheric Perspective: A progressive muting of hues, tonal values, and contrast occurs with increasing distance from the observer. Objects seen up close in the foreground of our visual field typically possess more saturated colors and sharply defined contrasts in value. As they move farther away, their colors become lighter in value and more subdued, and their tonal contrasts more diffuse. In the background, we see mainly shapes of grayed tones and muted hues.

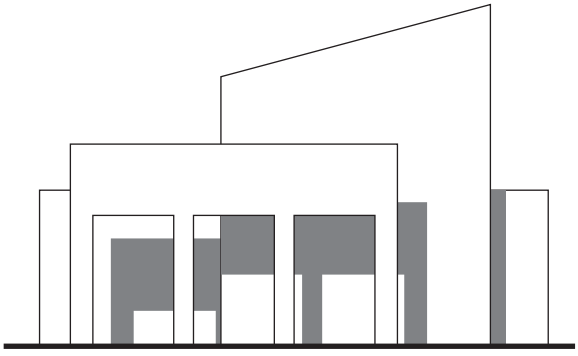




- Perspective of Blur: This depth cue reflects the fact that we normally associate clarity of vision with nearness and blurring of outlines with farness. The graphic equivalent of perspective blur is a diminishing or diffusion of the edges and contours of more distant objects. We can use either a lightly drawn line or a broken or dotted line to delineate these edges of shapes and contours of forms that exist beyond the focus of a drawing.



- Texture Perspective: The density of the texture of a surface gradually increases as it recedes into the distance. The graphic technique for depicting the visual phenomenon of texture perspective involves gradually diminishing the size and spacing of the graphic elements used to portray a surface texture or pattern, whether they be dots, lines, or tonal shapes. Proceed from identifying units in the foreground to delineating a textured pattern in the middleground and finally to rendering a tonal value in the background.



- Light and Shade: Any abrupt shift in brightness stimulates the perception of a spatial edge or profile separated from a background surface by some intervening space. This depth cue implies the existence of overlapping shapes and the use of contrasting tonal values in a drawing. For more on architectural shade and shadows, see pages 198–205.

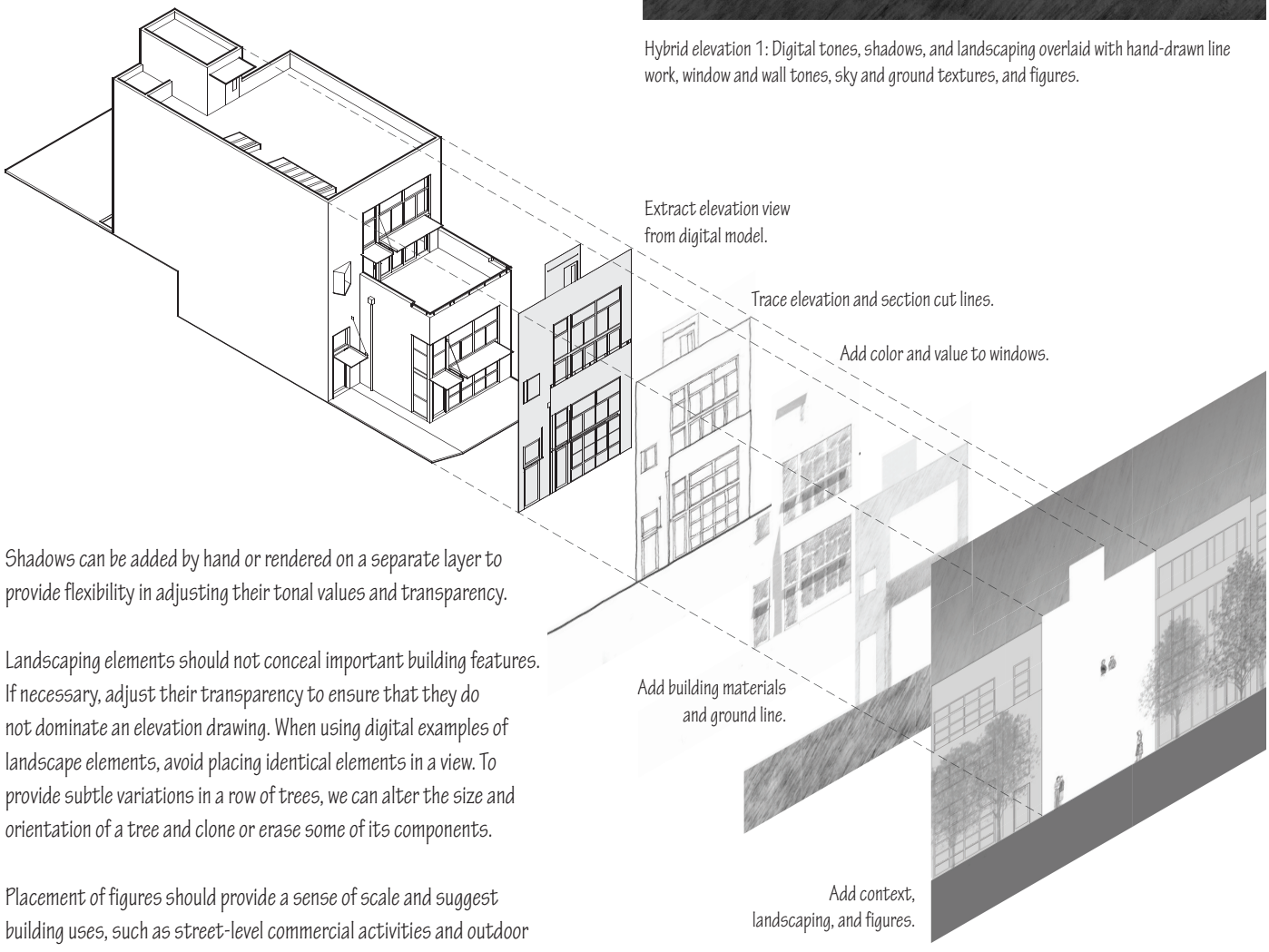
- For more information on depth cues, see pages 86–98.

Hybrid Building Elevations

Hybrid building elevations rely upon multiple layers of elements to convey the sense of depth that is key to the readability of these building views. If starting in the digital workspace, a printed elevation can be traced by hand to imbue the building image with a sketch-like quality. If starting with a hand-drawn elevation, it can be scanned to a 2D drawing program in which we use vector lines and anchor points to recreate the building elevation.

When adding tonal values and color to windows to establish the fenestration pattern, we can use transparent brush strokes or images of the sky or context to suggest the reflective quality of the glass. Additional depth can be conveyed by adding silhouettes of figures or other interior elements in the windows. As with reflections, these elements should be subtle so as not to distract from the main intent of clearly communicating the form, proportions, and materials of the building.

Hybrid elevation 1: Digital tones, shadows, and landscaping overlaid with hand-drawn line work, window and wall tones, sky and ground textures, and figures.



Shadows can be added by hand or rendered on a separate layer to provide flexibility in adjusting their tonal values and transparency.

Landscaping elements should not conceal important building features. If necessary, adjust their transparency to ensure that they do not dominate an elevation drawing. When using digital examples of landscape elements, avoid placing identical elements in a view. To provide subtle variations in a row of trees, we can alter the size and orientation of a tree and clone or erase some of its components.

Placement of figures should provide a sense of scale and suggest building uses, such as street-level commercial activities and outdoor decks at upper elevations.

Hybrid elevation 2: Digital tones, shadows, and landscaping overlaid with hand-drawn window and wall tones, sky and ground textures, and figures. No line work.

Existing context can often be drawn with fewer details to maintain the focus on the building design. Similarly, the sky, if rendered, should provide a contrasting backdrop for the building, rendered with a level of realism in the sky appropriate to the rest of the elevation drawing. A highly realistic sky image can overpower an elevation sketch.

Keep in mind that an elevation is still a section view, and as such, the ground cut should be clearly evident through either a thick ground cut line or ground póche that can be used to establish a strong base for the building and drawing.

Hybrid elevation 3: Digital line work, tones, shadows, and landscaping overlaid with hand-drawn window and wall tones, sky and ground texture, and figures.

Hybrid elevation 4: Digital tones, shadows, and landscaping overlaid with hand-drawn sky and ground textures and figures. No building line work.

Exercise 6.11

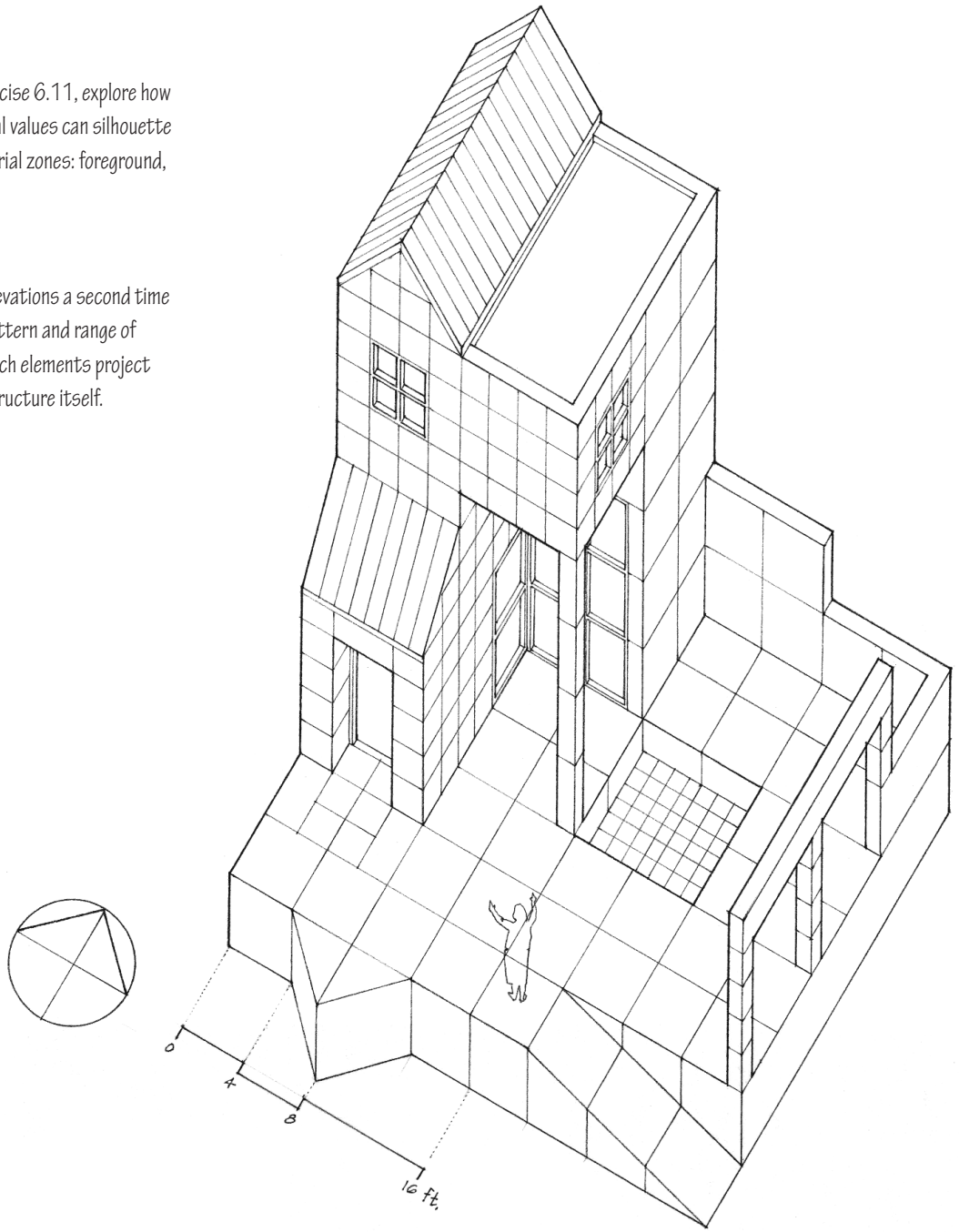
At a scale of 1/8" = 1'0", draw the south and east elevations of the structure illustrated in the pictorial view. Use a hierarchy of line weights to imbue a sense of depth and convey which elements project forward of other elements.

Exercise 6.12

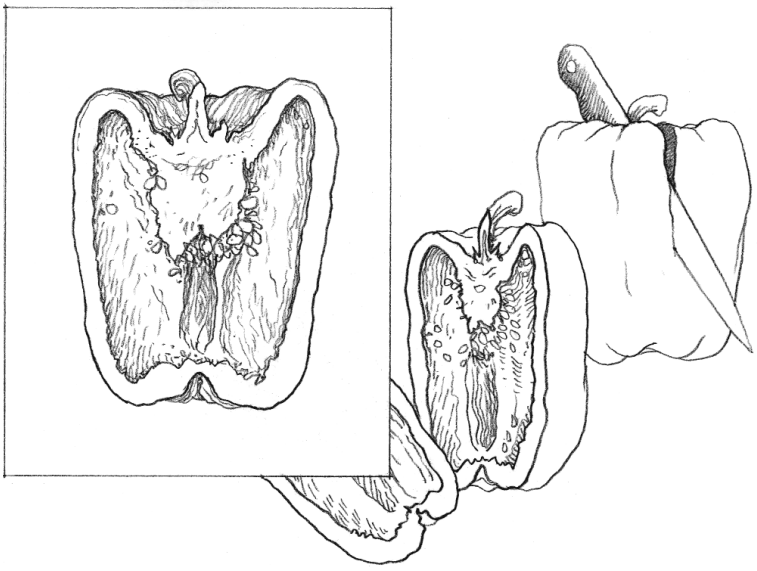
On the same drawings developed in Exercise 6.11, explore how a pattern and range of contrasting tonal values can silhouette the structure and establish three pictorial zones: foreground, middleground, and background.

Exercise 6.13

On a sheet of tracing paper, draw the elevations a second time at the same scale. Investigate how a pattern and range of contrasting tonal values can convey which elements project forward of other elements within the structure itself.

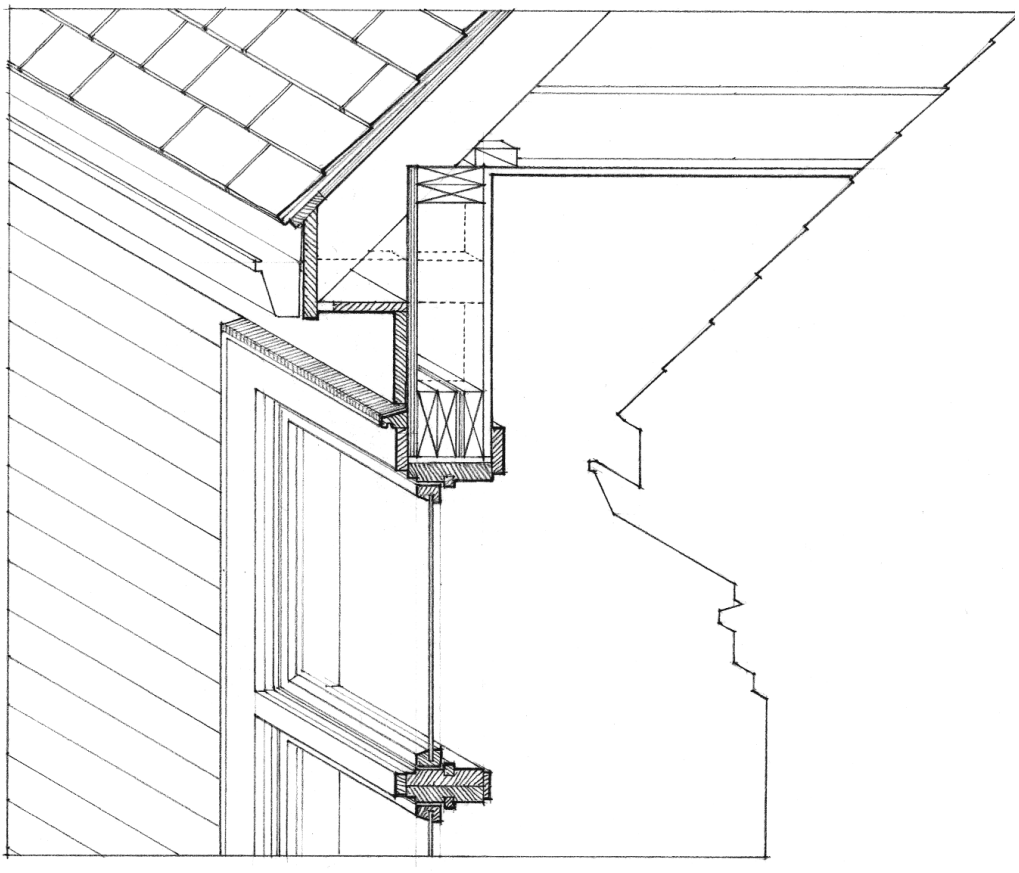


SECTION DRAWINGS



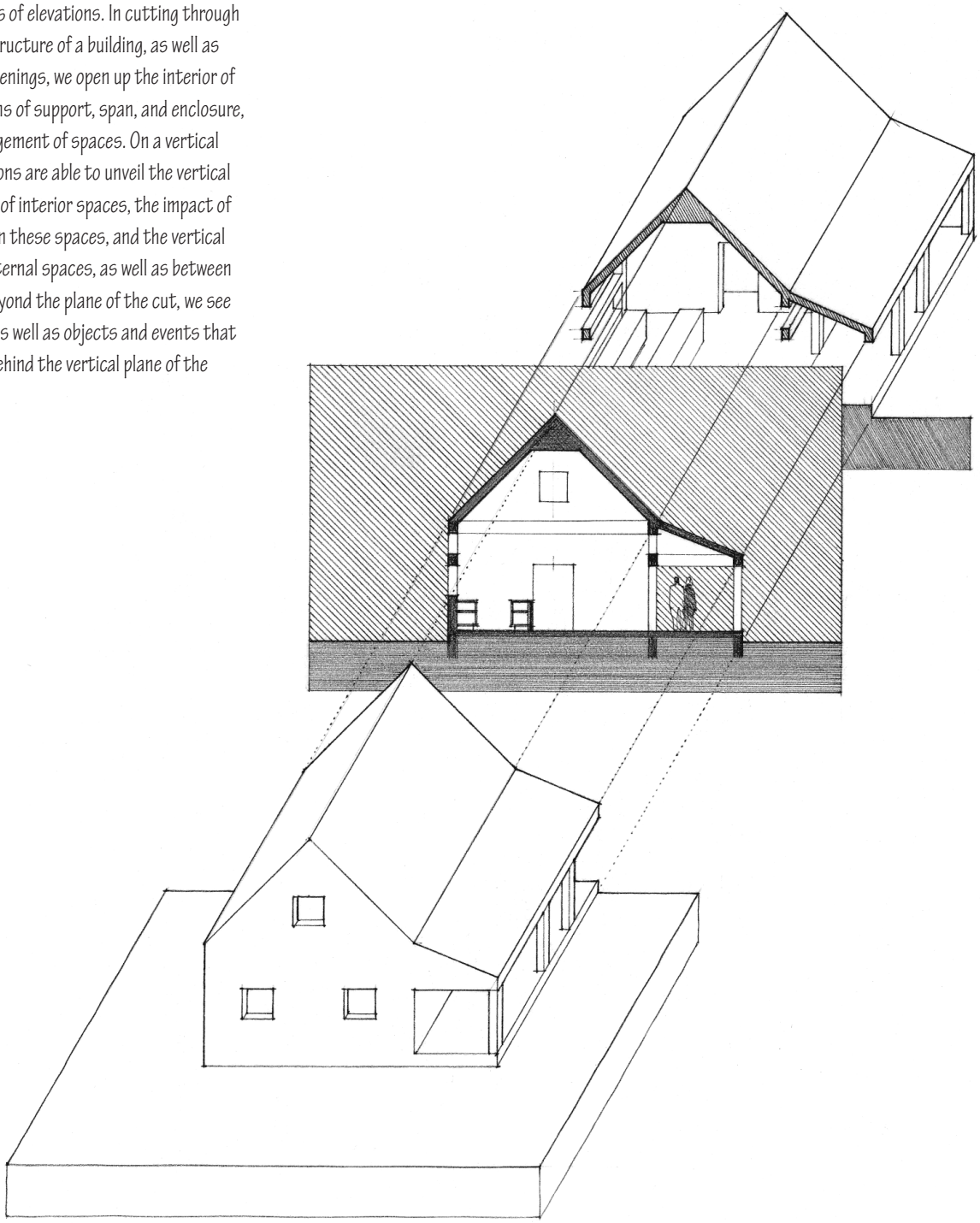
A section is an orthographic projection of an object as it would appear if cut through by an intersecting plane. It opens up the object to reveal its internal material, composition, or assembly. In theory, the plane of the section cut may have any orientation. But in order to distinguish a section drawing from a floor plan—the other type of drawing that involves a slice—we usually assume the plane of the cut for a section is vertical and the view is horizontal. As with other orthographic projections, all planes parallel to the picture plane maintain their true-scale size, shape, and proportions.

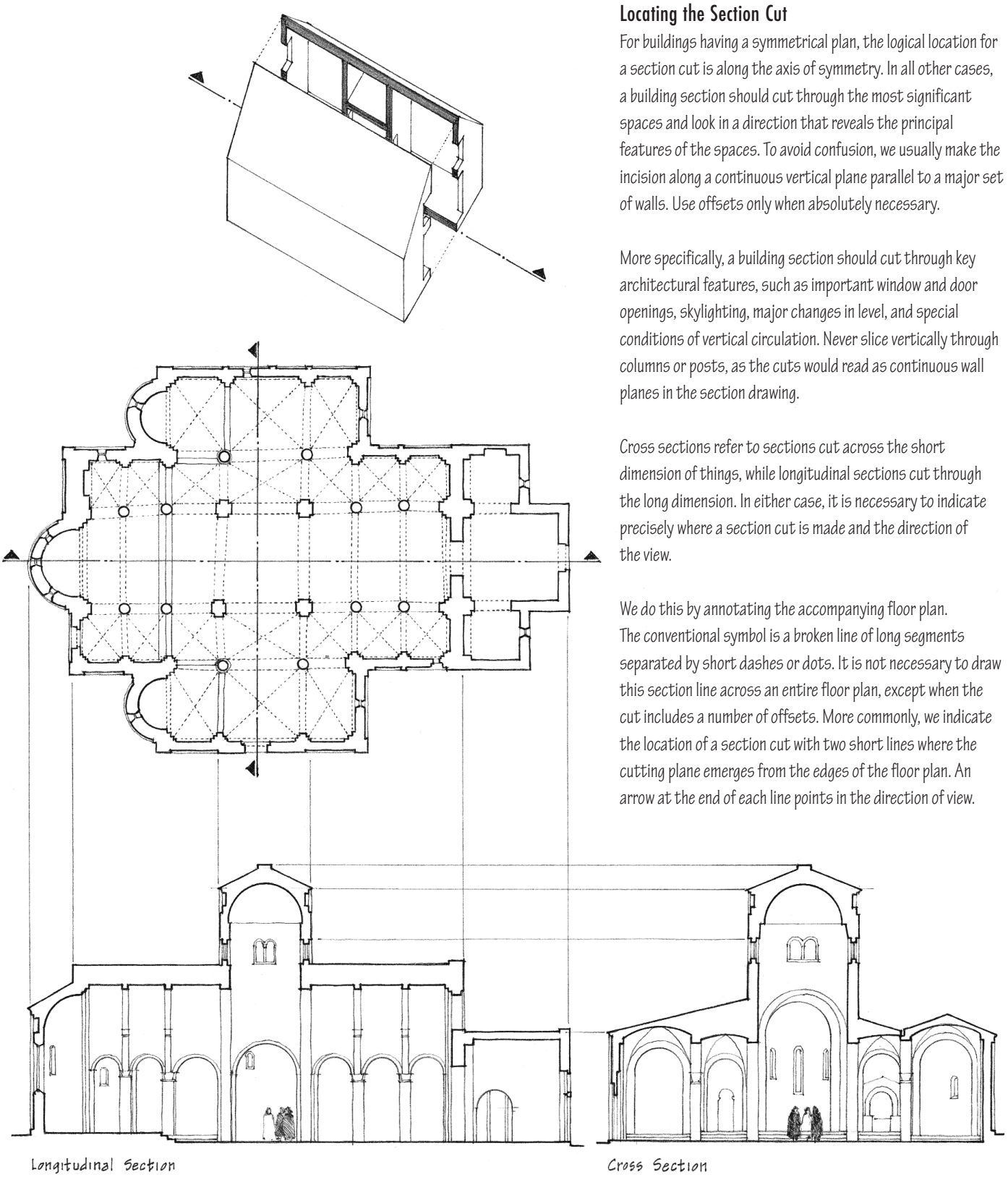
Sections reduce the three-dimensional complexity of an object to two dimensions—height and either width or length. We often use section drawings to design and communicate the details of a building's construction as well as the assembly of furniture and cabinetry. In architectural graphics, however, the building section is the premier drawing for studying and revealing the vital solid-void relationship between the floors, walls, and roof structure of a building, and the vertical dimensions and relationships of the contained spaces.



A building section represents a vertical section of a building. After a vertical plane slices through the construction, we remove one of the parts. The building section is an orthographic projection of the portion that remains, cast onto a vertical picture plane parallel to the plane of the incision.

Building sections combine the conceptual qualities of plans with the perceptual qualities of elevations. In cutting through walls, floors, and the roof structure of a building, as well as through window and door openings, we open up the interior of a building to reveal conditions of support, span, and enclosure, as well as the vertical arrangement of spaces. On a vertical picture plane, building sections are able to unveil the vertical dimension, shape, and scale of interior spaces, the impact of window and door openings on these spaces, and the vertical connections between the internal spaces, as well as between the interior and exterior. Beyond the plane of the cut, we see elevations of interior walls as well as objects and events that occur in front of them but behind the vertical plane of the section cut.





Abbey Church of S. Maria, Portonovo, Italy, 12th Century

Locating the Section Cut

For buildings having a symmetrical plan, the logical location for a section cut is along the axis of symmetry. In all other cases, a building section should cut through the most significant spaces and look in a direction that reveals the principal features of the spaces. To avoid confusion, we usually make the incision along a continuous vertical plane parallel to a major set of walls. Use offsets only when absolutely necessary.

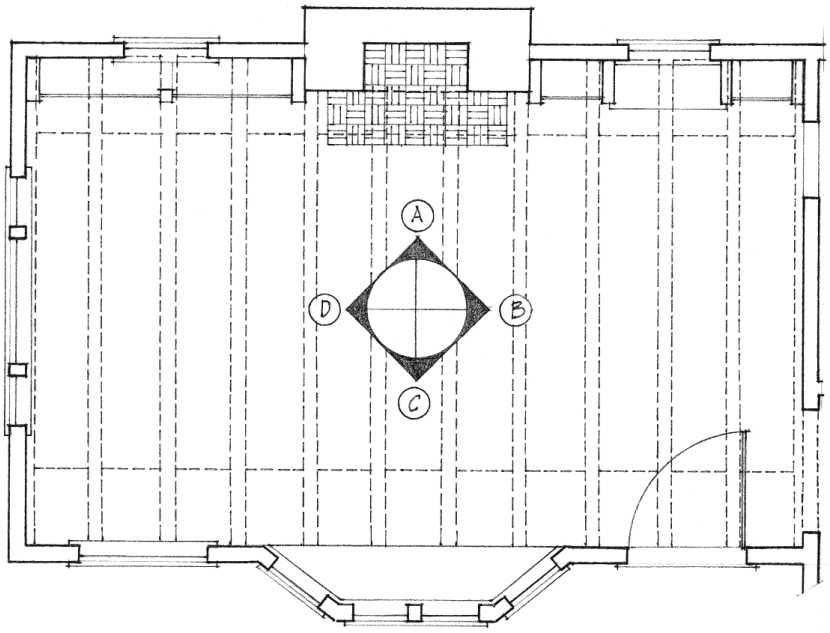
More specifically, a building section should cut through key architectural features, such as important window and door openings, skylighting, major changes in level, and special conditions of vertical circulation. Never slice vertically through columns or posts, as the cuts would read as continuous wall planes in the section drawing.

Cross sections refer to sections cut across the short dimension of things, while longitudinal sections cut through the long dimension. In either case, it is necessary to indicate precisely where a section cut is made and the direction of the view.

We do this by annotating the accompanying floor plan. The conventional symbol is a broken line of long segments separated by short dashes or dots. It is not necessary to draw this section line across an entire floor plan, except when the cut includes a number of offsets. More commonly, we indicate the location of a section cut with two short lines where the cutting plane emerges from the edges of the floor plan. An arrow at the end of each line points in the direction of view.

Interior Elevations

Interior elevations are orthographic projections of significant interior walls of a building. While normally included in the drawing of building sections, they may stand alone to illustrate the interior features of a room, such as doorways and built-in furnishings and fixtures. In this case, instead of profiling the section cut, we emphasize instead the boundary line of the interior wall surfaces.

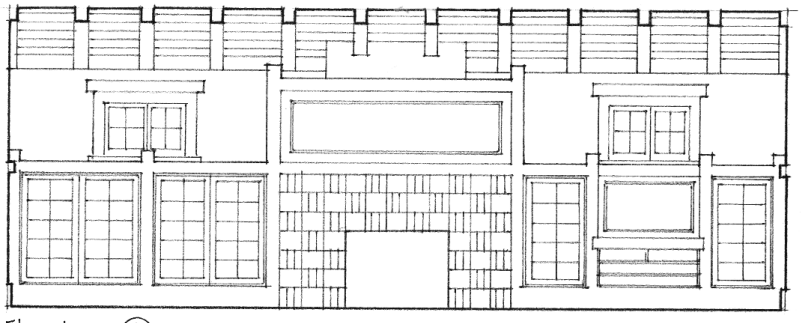


Scale

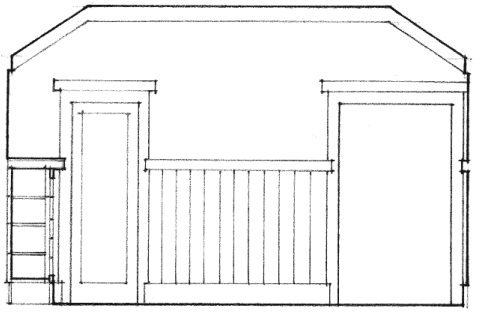
We normally draw interior elevations at the same scale as the accompanying floor plans—$\frac{1}{8}$" = 1'0" or $\frac{1}{4}$" = 1'0". To show a greater amount of detail, we may use a scale of $\frac{1}{2}$" = 1'0".

Orientation

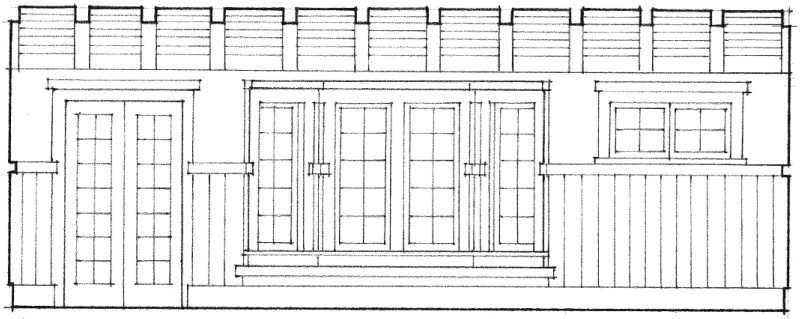
To orient the viewer, we label each interior elevation according to the compass direction toward which we look in viewing the wall. An alternative method is to key each interior elevation to a compass on the floor plan of the room.



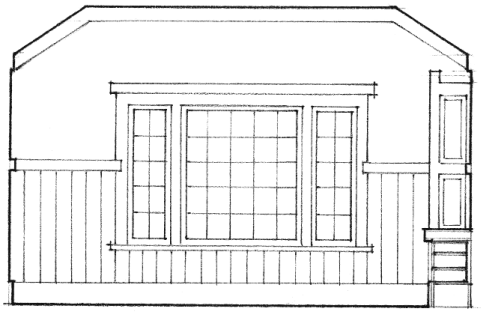
Elevation (A)



Elevation (B)



Elevation (C)

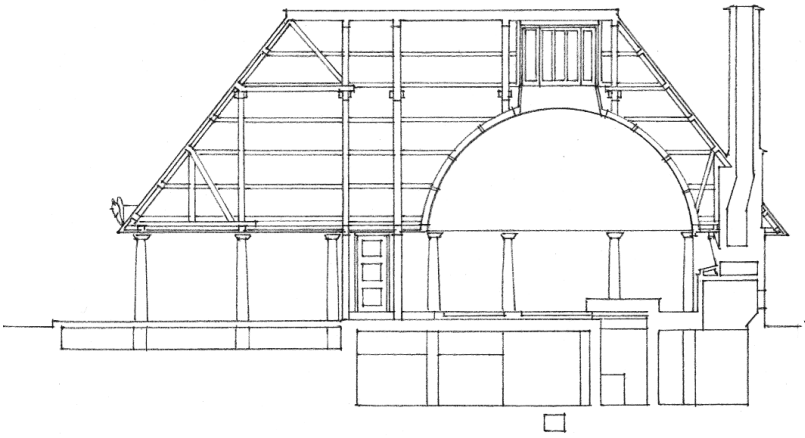


Elevation (D)

The Section Cut

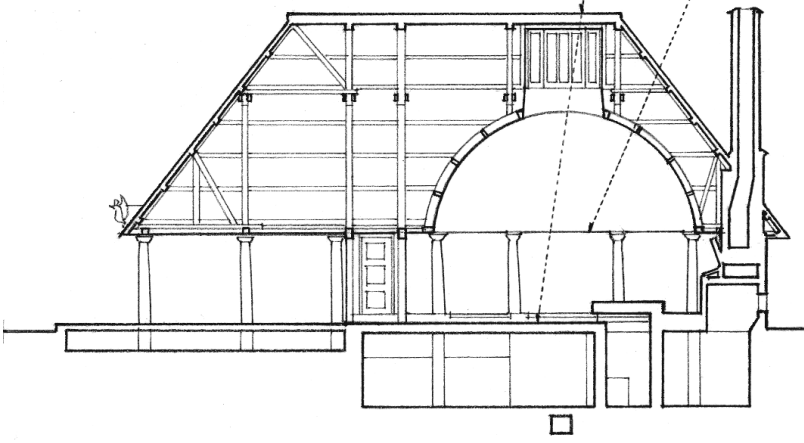
As with floor plans, it is critical to distinguish between solid matter and spatial void and to discern precisely where mass meets space in a building section. To convey a sense of depth and the existence of spatial volumes, we must use a hierarchy of line weights or a range of tonal values. The technique we use depends on the scale of the building section, the drawing medium, and the required degree of contrast between solid matter and spatial void.

This series of drawings illustrates ways to emphasize the solid material that is cut in a line drawing of a building section.



- This is a building section drawn with a single line weight.

- This drawing uses a hierarchy of line weights to convey depth.
- The heaviest line weight profiles the shape of cut materials that are closest to the viewer.
- Intermediate line weights delineate edges of vertical surfaces that lie beyond the plane of the section cut. A decreasing line weight delineates the edges of progressively more distant objects from the plane of the cut.



- The lightest line weights represent surface lines. These lines do not signify any change in form. They simply represent the visual pattern or texture of wall planes and other vertical surfaces parallel to the picture plane.

Woodland Chapel, Stockholm, Sweden, 1918–20, Erik Gunnar Asplund

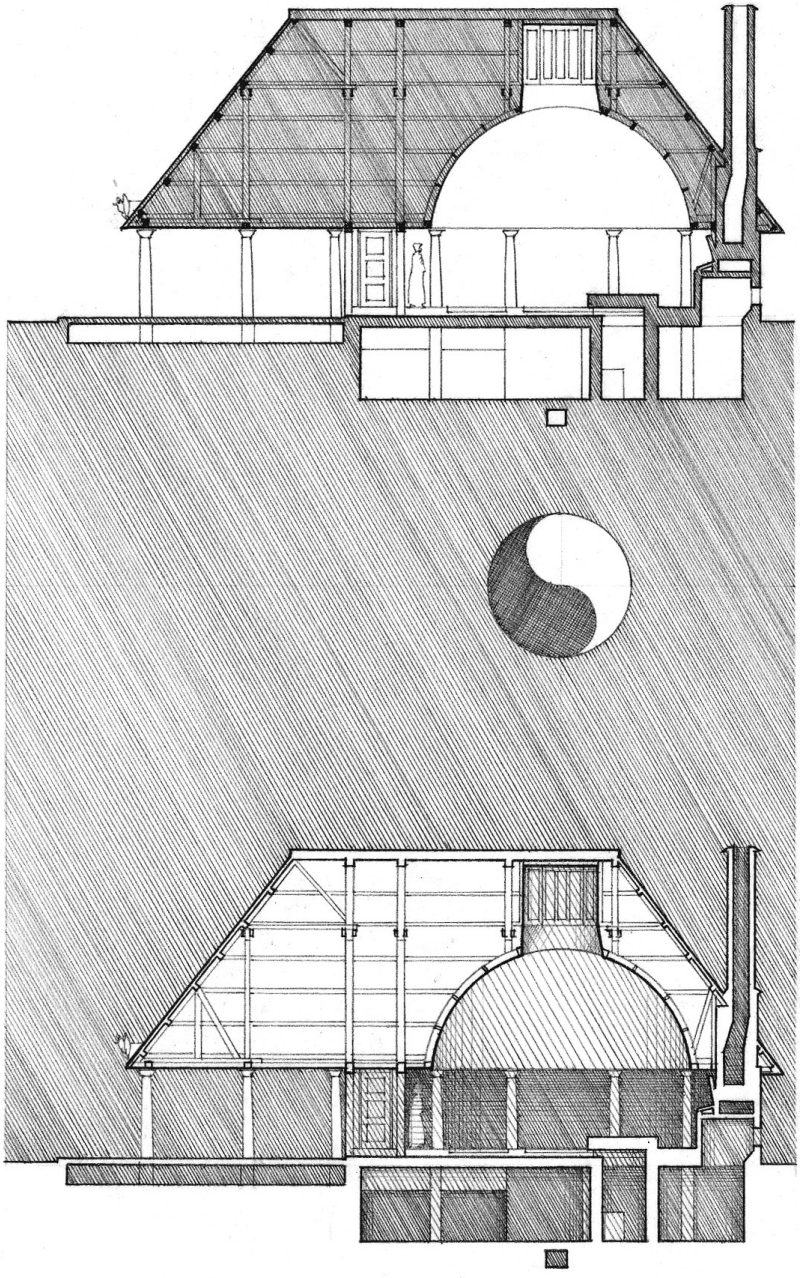
Poché

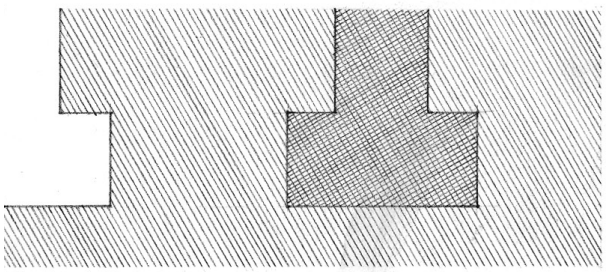
In a line-and-tone or pure tone drawing, we emphasize the shape of cut elements with a tonal value that contrasts with the spatial field of the building section. The purpose is to establish a clear figure-ground relationship between solid matter and spatial void—between container and contained.

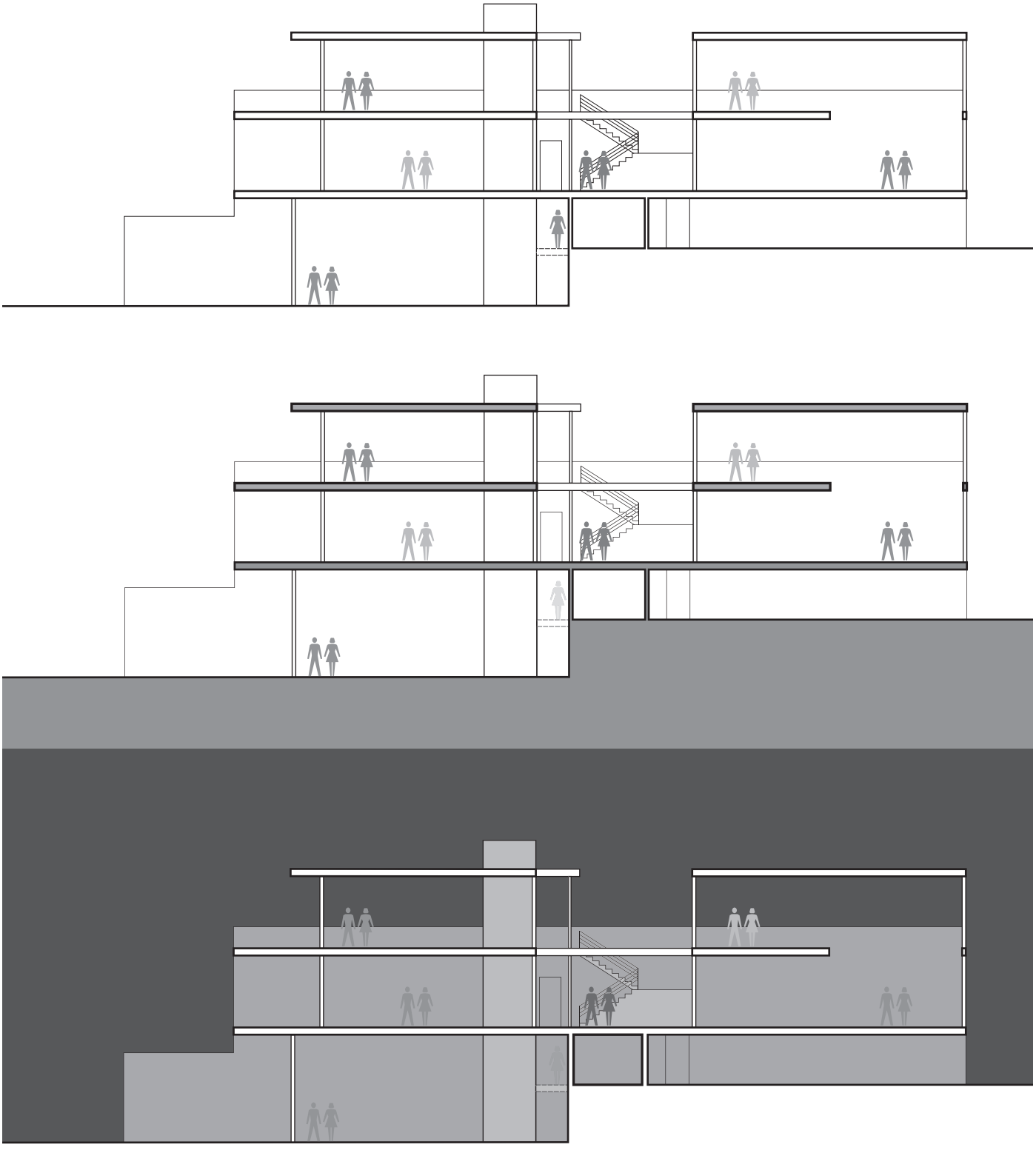
It is typical to blacken or poché the floor, wall, and roof elements that are cut in small-scale building sections. If only a moderate degree of contrast with the drawing field is desired, use a middle-gray value to illuminate the shape of the cut elements. This is especially important in large-scale sections when large areas of black can carry too much visual weight or create too stark a contrast. However, if vertical elements such as wall patterns and textures give the field of the drawing a tonal value, a dark gray or black tone may be necessary to produce the desired degree of contrast between solid matter and spatial void. In this value scheme, use progressively lighter values for elements as they recede into the third dimension.

A second approach is to reverse the value scheme and render the cut elements as a white figure against a spatial field of darker tonal values. Reversing the normal dark-light pattern in this way emphasizes the figure of the contained space. Be sure, however, that there is enough tonal contrast to distinguish the cut elements. If necessary, outline the profile of the cut elements with a heavy line weight and use progressively darker values for elements or planes as they recede into the third dimension.

Remember that the ground mass is also cut in building and site sections. The tonal value of the cut elements should therefore continue into the supporting ground mass. If we show a building's foundation in a section drawing, we should be careful to delineate its walls and footings below grade as integral parts of the surrounding ground mass. We must represent the substructure in such a way that we maintain the reading that the vertical plane of the section cuts through both the foundation and the surrounding mass of the earth.

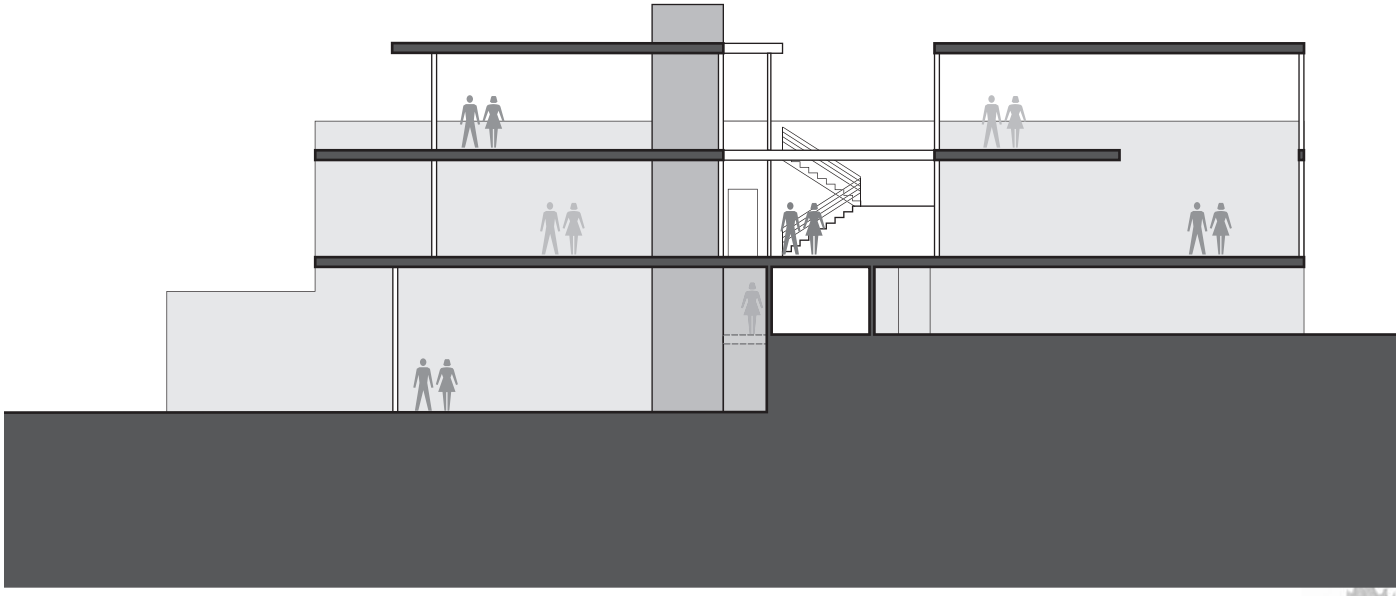


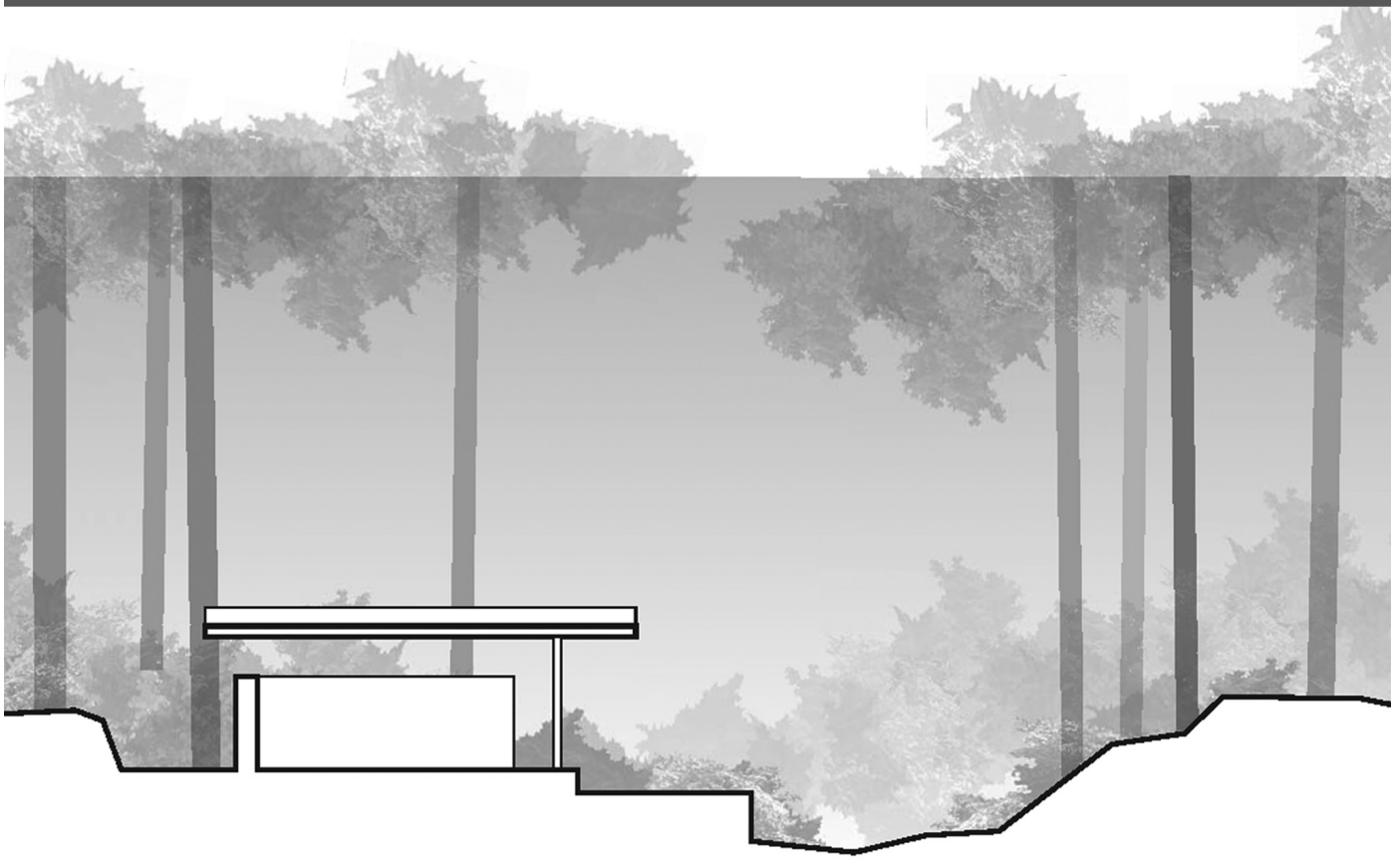


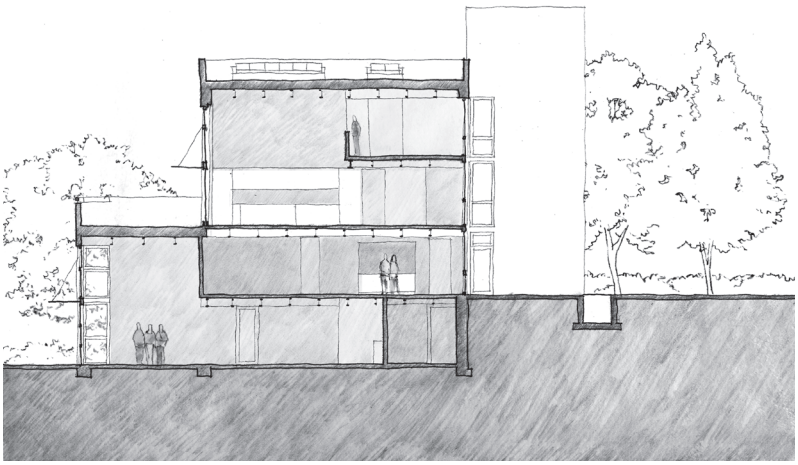


Digital Building Sections

These examples illustrate the use of graphics software to distinguish between solid matter and spatial void in section drawings. The three drawings on the previous page and the upper drawing on this page use a vector-based drawing program to create various value schemes, while the lower drawing on this page uses a raster image to convey the character of a site as well as to serve as a contrasting background for the white section cut.







Hybrid Building Sections

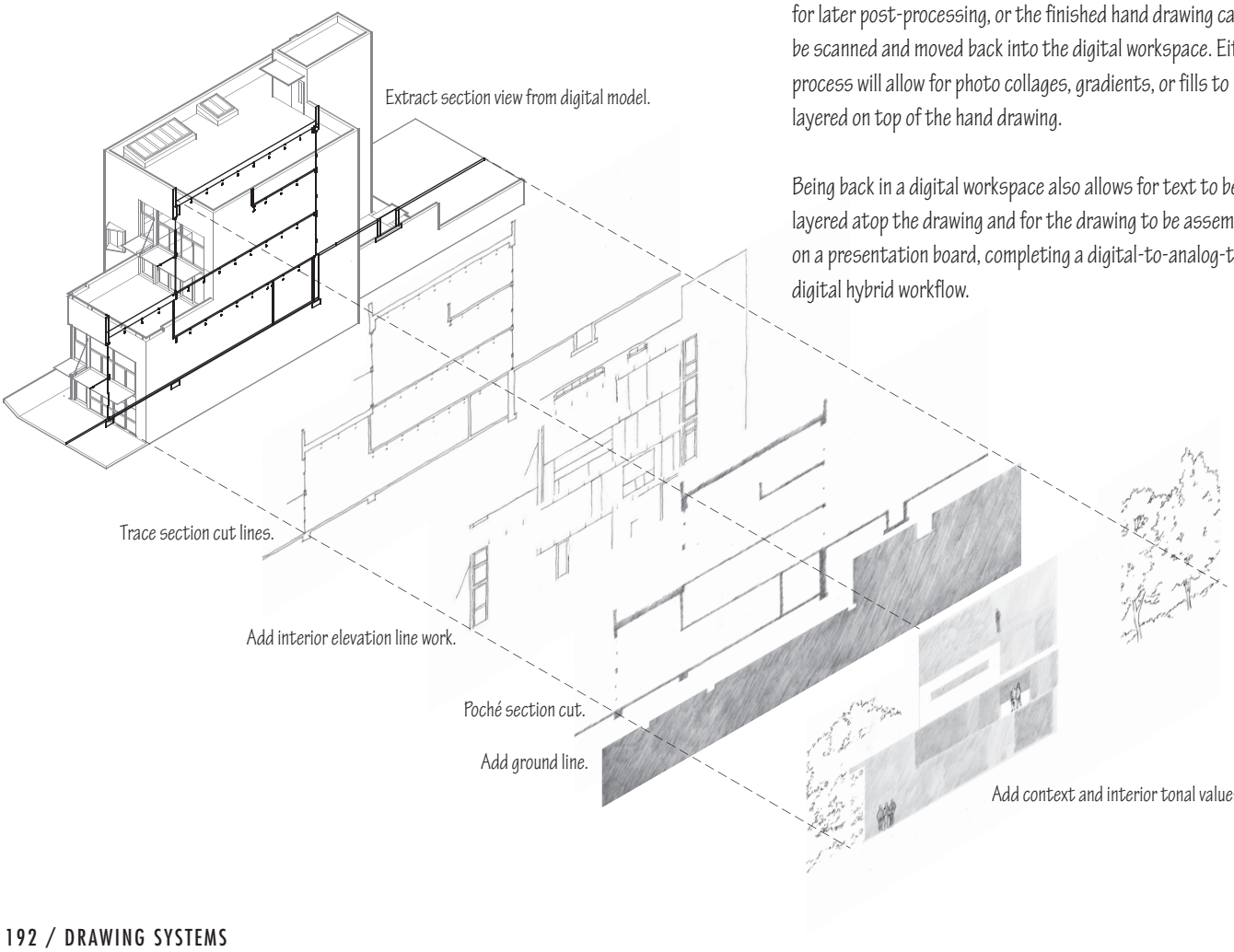
Hybrid section drawings result from a combination of analog and digital drawing techniques and processes that move back and forth between analog and digital workspaces.

The hybrid process can start with the extraction of a section view from a digital model. This two-dimensional drawing will include the section cut through the building volume, but will likely require that additional information be added, such as interior elevations beyond the plane of the section cut. Oftentimes, excess or duplicate lines may need to be eliminated from this two-dimensional view.

Printing out this digital section view to the appropriate scale will provide a base drawing for retracing by hand the line work of the section cut. This can be drawn or printed on watercolor or high-quality drawing paper to allow for the use of different media in the analog phase of the process.

We can use various analog methods for adding poché, tonal values, and context to this hand drawing. Hand-drawn elements can be done separately and scanned at each step for later post-processing, or the finished hand drawing can be scanned and moved back into the digital workspace. Either process will allow for photo collages, gradients, or fills to be layered on top of the hand drawing.

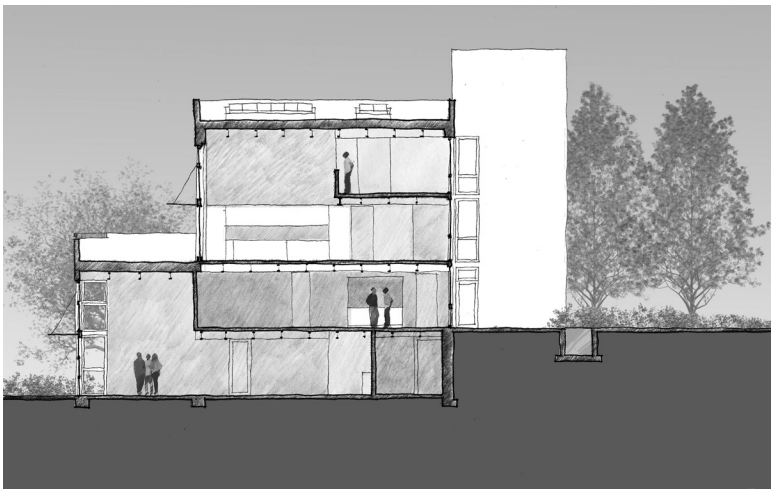
Being back in a digital workspace also allows for text to be layered atop the drawing and for the drawing to be assembled on a presentation board, completing a digital-to-analog-to-digital hybrid workflow.



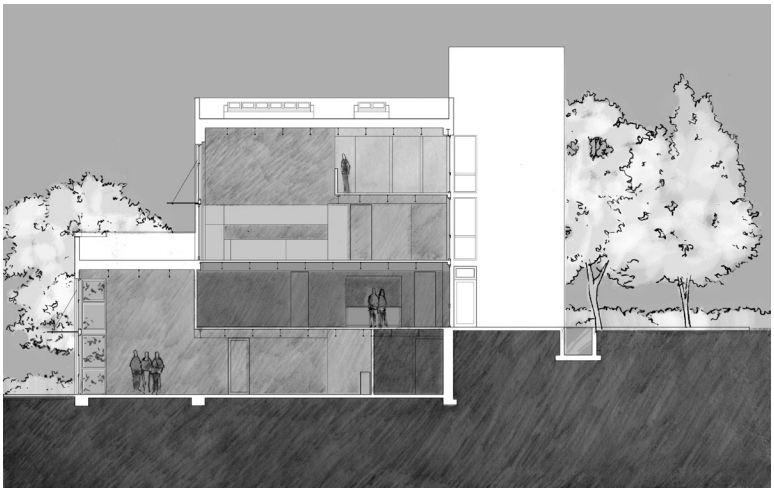
The process of developing a hybrid section can also begin with hand drawings that are scanned and moved into the digital workspace. We can then use digital fills and gradients to render poché and backgrounds, collage photos to add textures and context, and adjust line weights to emphasize the plane of the section cut.

Placing different elements on separate layers— line work, section cut lines, poché, interior elevations, trees, and figures—provide flexibility in developing the final drawing by adjusting the transparency, brightness, and contrast of each level.

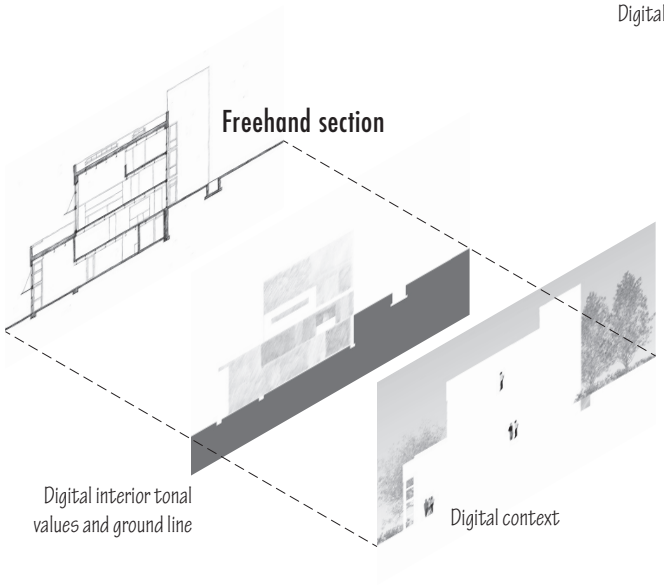
Scanning hand drawings and moving back into a digital workspace allows for a wide range of analog and digital combinations to occur within hybrid sections. Once printed, hand-drawn techniques can be used to add a final layer of textures or tonal values on top of the digital images. Regardless of the sequence of workspaces used to develop a hybrid drawing, the correct usage of line weights, values, appropriate context, and drawing accuracy remain critical—as with all architectural drawings—to the final quality of the drawing.

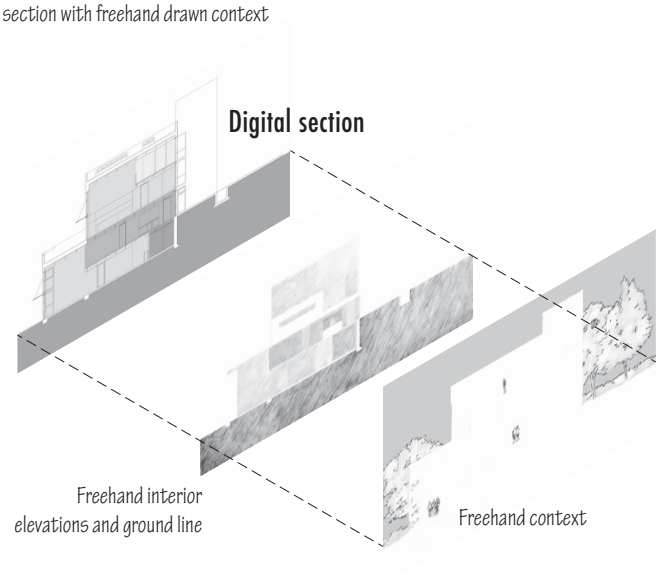


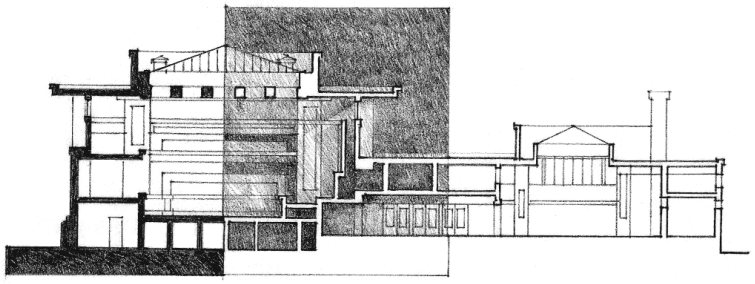
Freehand building section with digitally created context



Digital building section with freehand drawn context

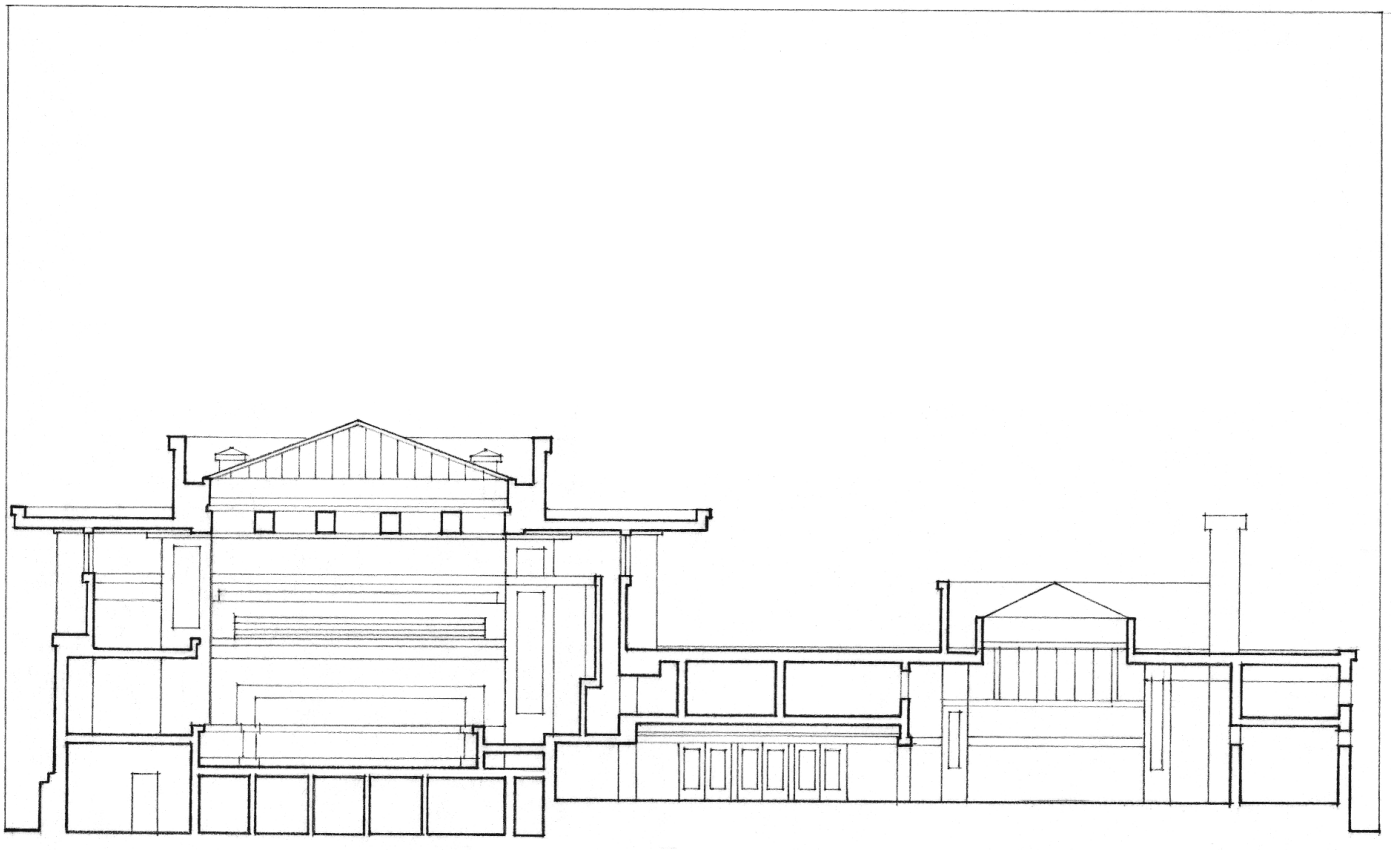






Exercise 6.14

Make two copies of the longitudinal section of Unity Temple illustrated below. On the first drawing, render the shapes of the cut elements with poché. On the second drawing, reverse the dark-light pattern and render the shapes of the spaces defined by the elements cut by the vertical plane of the section. Compare the two section drawings. In which section are the shapes of the enclosed spaces more dominant or easier to read?



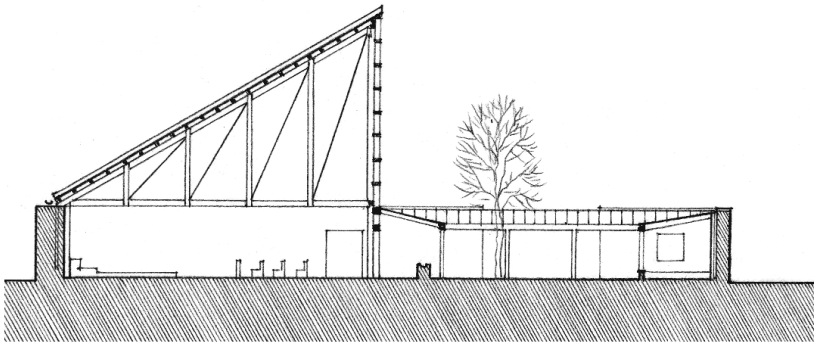
Unity Temple, Oak Park, Illinois, 1906, Frank Lloyd Wright

Drawing Scale

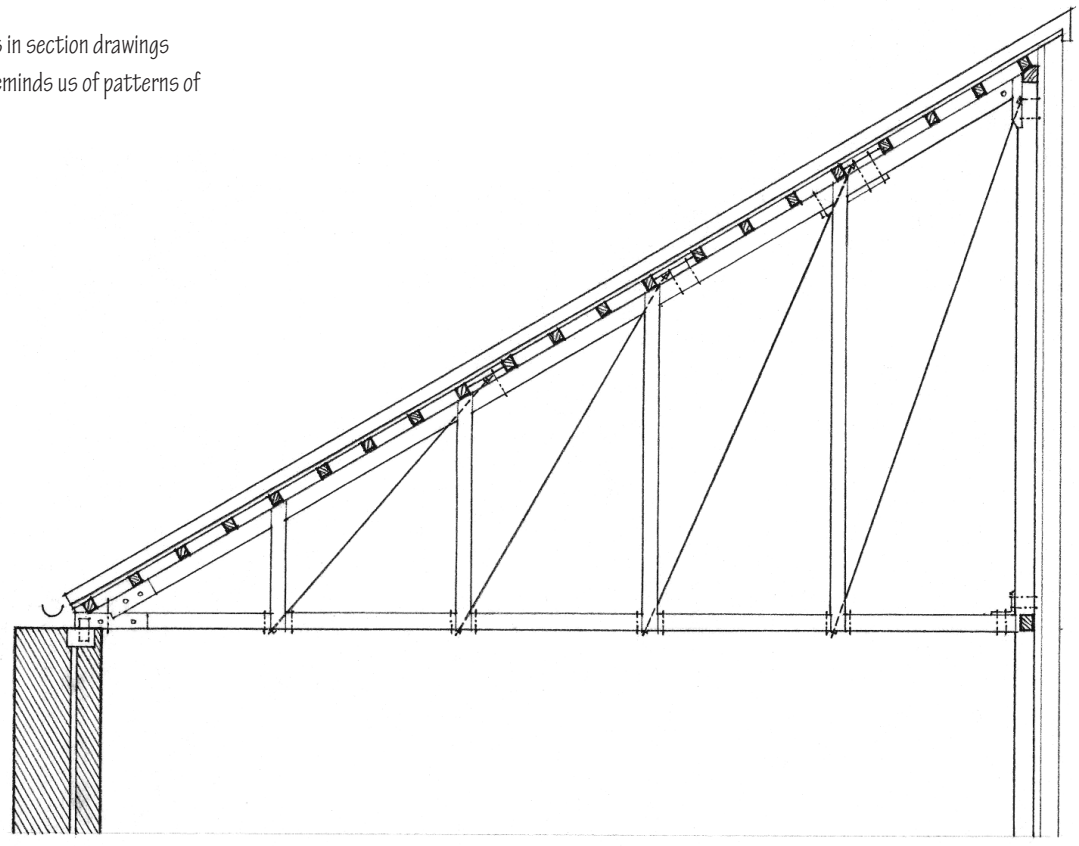
We usually draw building sections at the same scale as the accompanying floor plans—1/8" = 1' 0" or 1/4" = 1' 0". We may use a smaller scale for large buildings and complexes, or a larger scale for the section and interior elevations of a single room. Room sections are especially useful for studying and presenting highly detailed spaces, such as kitchens, bathrooms, and stairways.

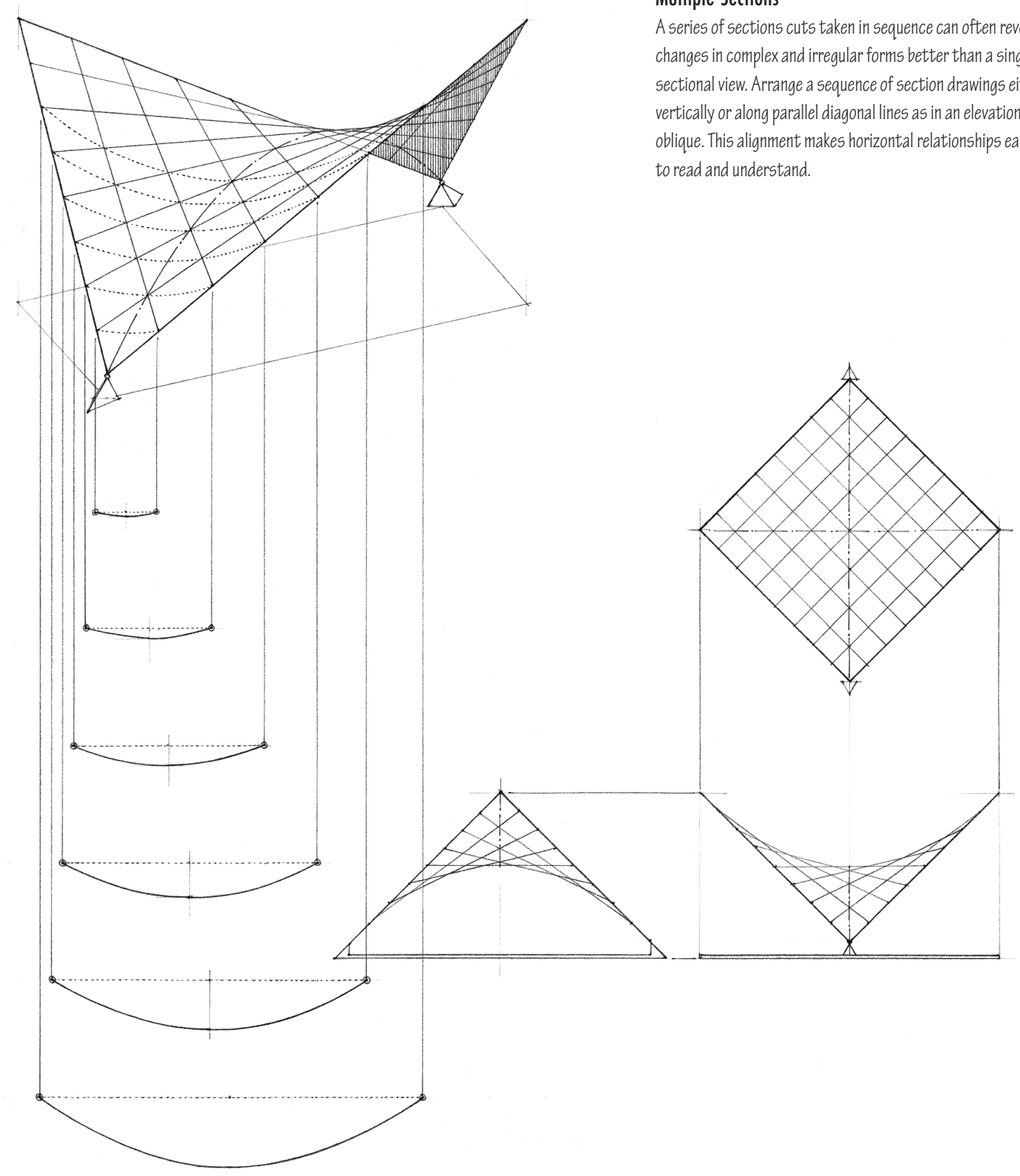
The larger the scale of a section, the more detail we must include. This attention to detail is most critical when drawing the thickness of construction materials and assemblies that are cut in the section view. Pay careful attention to wall thicknesses, corner conditions, and stair details. A general knowledge of how buildings are constructed is therefore extremely beneficial when executing large-scale sections.

As always, including human figures in section drawings establishes a sense of scale and reminds us of patterns of activity and use.



Mountain Church on Winkelmoosalm, Germany, 1975, J. Wiedemann



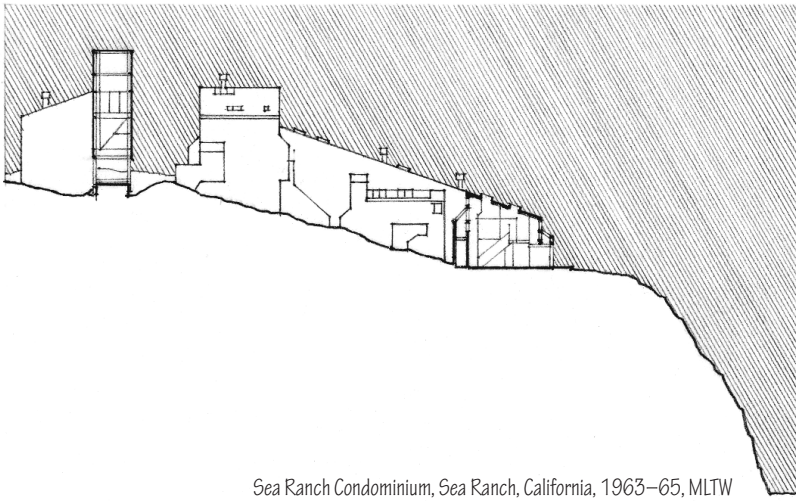


Multiple Sections

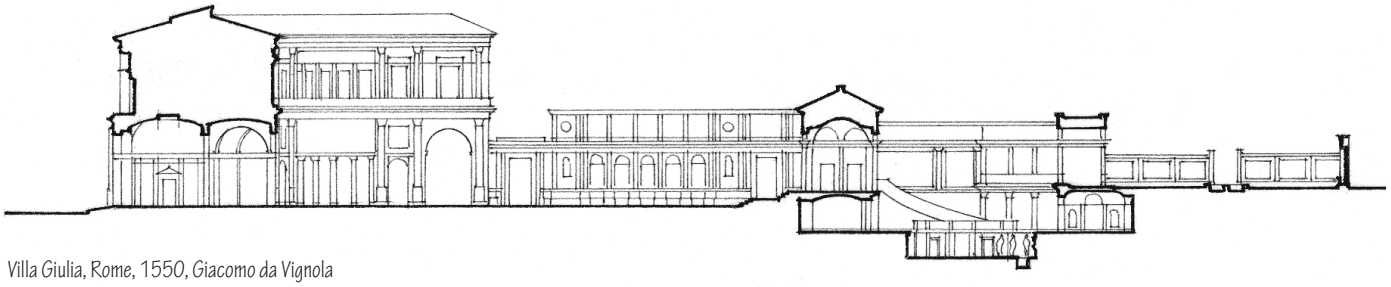
A series of sections cuts taken in sequence can often reveal changes in complex and irregular forms better than a single sectional view. Arrange a sequence of section drawings either vertically or along parallel diagonal lines as in an elevation oblique. This alignment makes horizontal relationships easier to read and understand.

Section drawings often extend outward to include the context of a building's site and environment. They are exceptionally capable of describing the relationship of a proposed structure to the surrounding ground plane and disclosing whether a proposed structure rises from, sits on, floats above, or becomes embedded within the earth of the site. In addition, section drawings can effectively illustrate the relationship between the interior spaces of a building and adjoining exterior spaces.

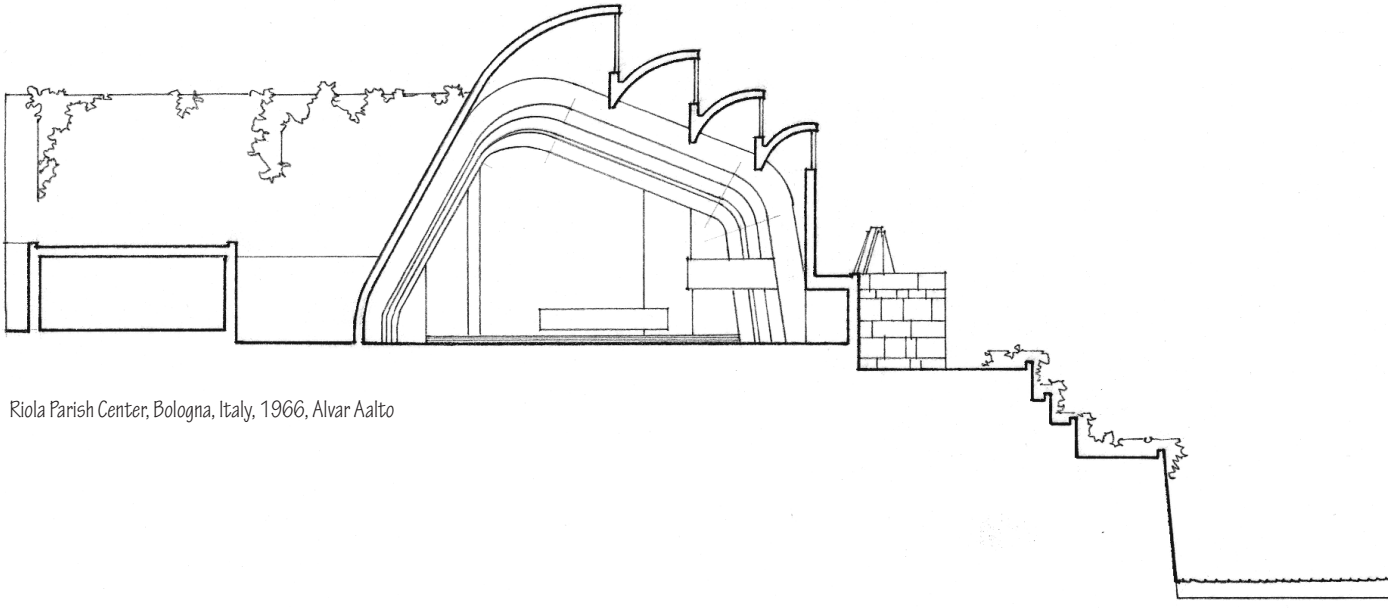
Whenever possible, but especially in urban settings, building sections should include adjacent structures, either cut through simultaneously in the section or seen in elevation beyond the plane of the cut.



Sea Ranch Condominium, Sea Ranch, California, 1963–65, MLTW

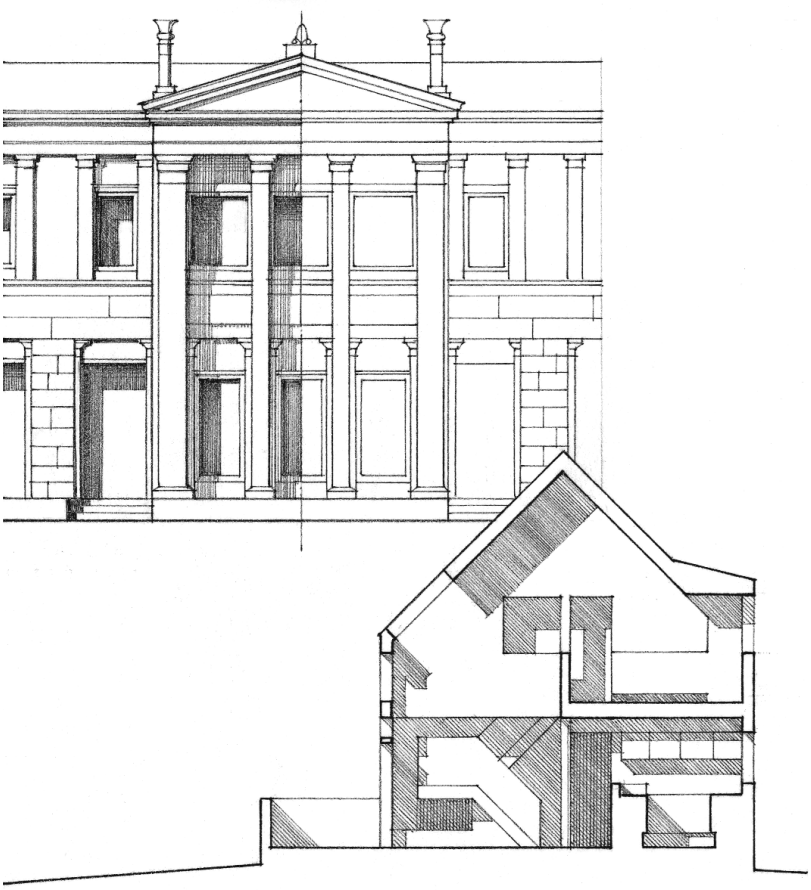


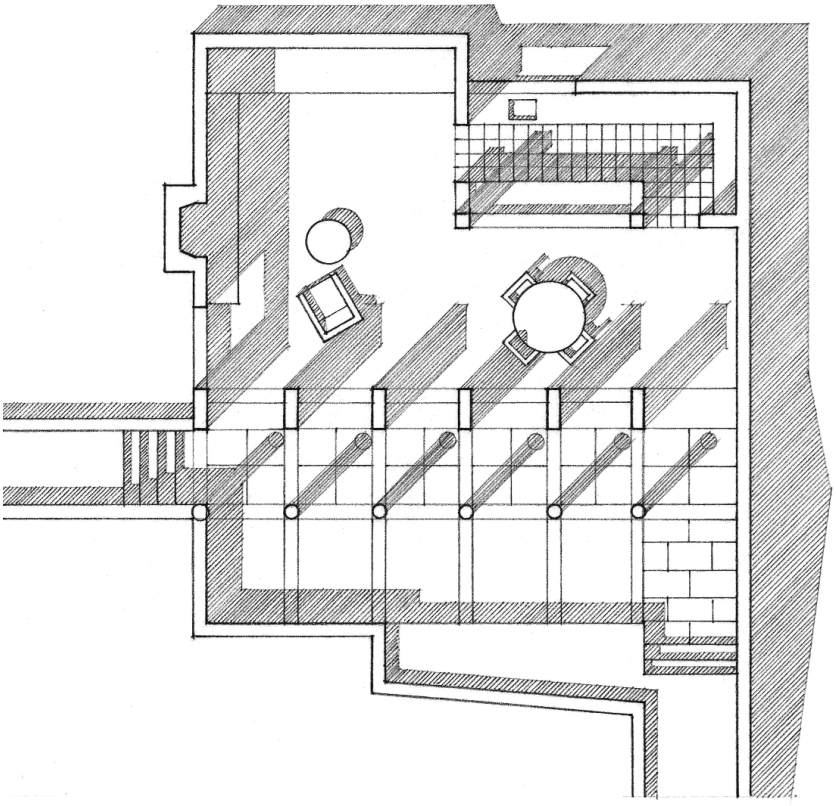
Villa Giulia, Rome, 1550, Giacomo da Vignola



Riola Parish Center, Bologna, Italy, 1966, Alvar Aalto

SHADE AND SHADOWS





Shade and shadows refers to the technique of determining areas in shade and casting shadows on surfaces by means of projection drawing. The casting of shade and shadows is especially useful to overcome the flatness of multiview drawings and enhance the illusion of depth.

In an elevation, shade and shadows clarify the relative depth of projections, overhangs, and recesses within the massing of a building, and model the relief and texture of surfaces receiving the shadows.

In a building section, the shadows cast by the cut elements provide a sense of how far they project in front of surfaces seen in elevation beyond the plane of the cut.

In a site plan, shade and shadows convey the relative heights of building masses and elements while revealing the topographical nature of the ground plane on which shadows are cast.

In a floor plan, the shadows cast by the cut vertical elements and objects within the space give us an indication of their relative heights above the floor or ground plane.

An understanding of shade and shadows is vital not only to the presentation of a design proposal but also to the study and evaluation of the design itself. The interplay of light, shade, and shadow models the surfaces of a design, describes the disposition of its masses, and articulates the depth and character of its details. Depending on the technique used in rendering tonal values, shade and shadows can also communicate the vivid quality of light that illuminates forms and animates a space.

Basic Elements

Light Source

An illuminating source, such as the sun or an electric lamp, that makes things visible. In architectural shade and shadows, we normally assume the sun to be the light source.

Light Ray

Any of the lines or narrow beams in which light appears to radiate from a luminous source. The light rays emanating from the sun travel a distance of 93 million miles (150 million km) to reach the earth's surface. The sun is so large and distant a source that its light rays are considered to be parallel. On the other hand, artificial light sources, being relatively small and much closer to what they illuminate, emit radial light rays.

Sun Angle

The direction of the sun's rays, measured in terms of bearing and altitude.

Bearing

A horizontal direction expressed in degrees east or west of a true or magnetic north or south direction.

Azimuth

The angle of horizontal deviation, measured clockwise, of a bearing from a standard north direction.

Altitude

The angular elevation of a celestial body above the horizon.

Shade

A relatively dark area on those parts of a solid that are tangent to or turned away from a theoretical light source.

Shadow

A relatively dark figure cast upon a surface by an opaque body or part of a body intercepting the rays from a theoretical light source.

Shade Line

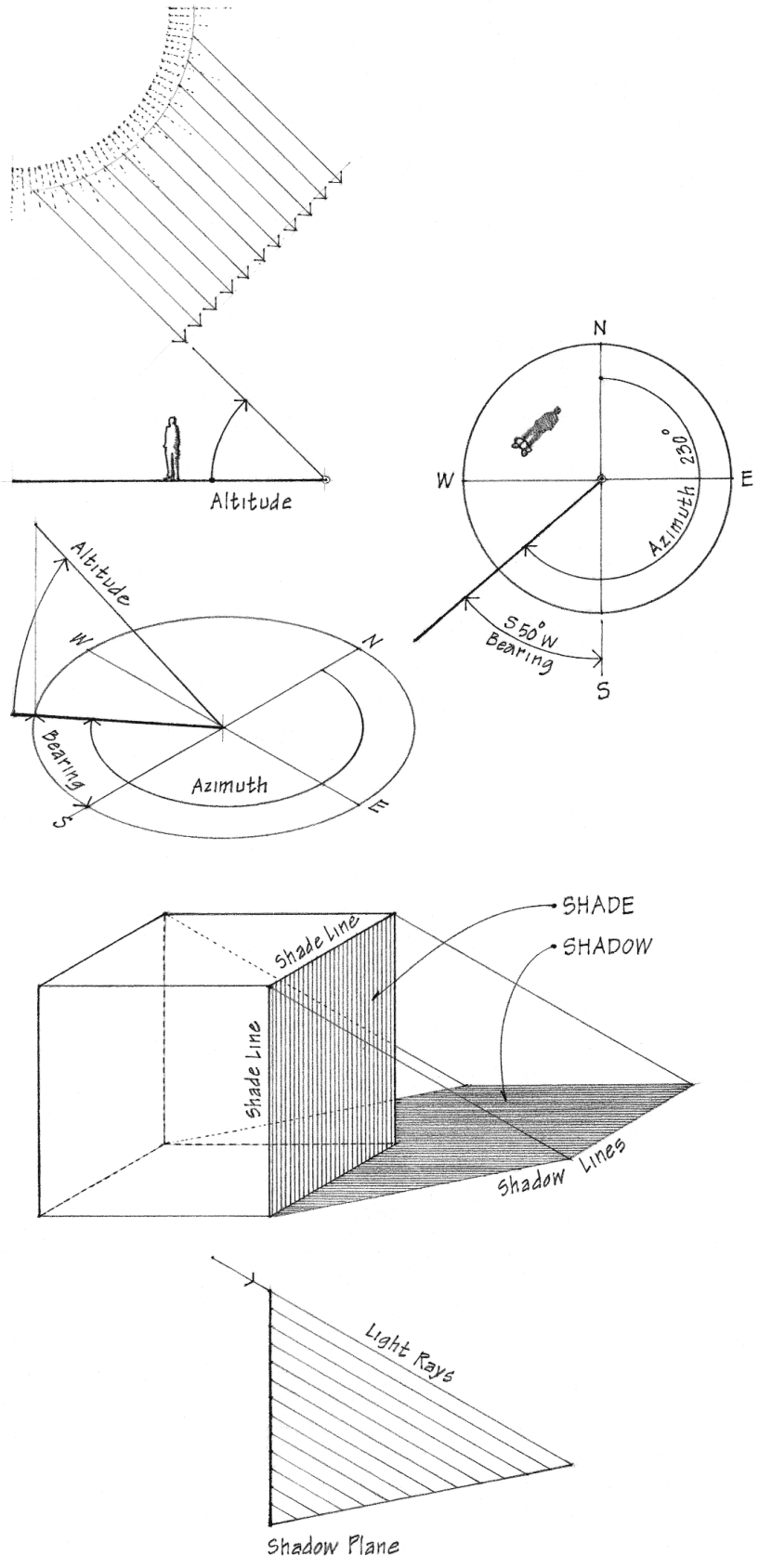
A line on an object that separates an illuminated surface from one in shade. A shade line is also called a casting edge.

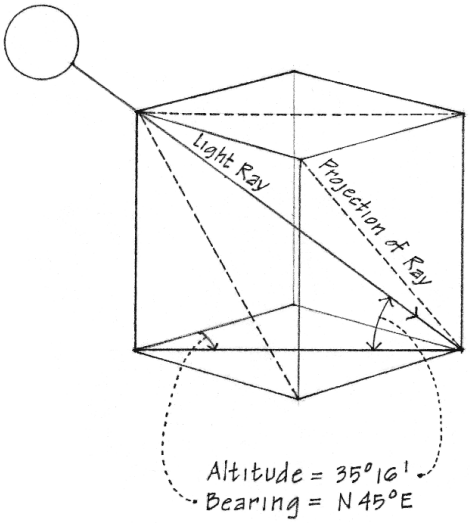
Shadow Plane

A plane of light rays that passes through adjacent points of a straight line.

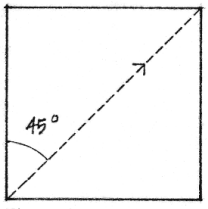
Shadow Line

The shadow that a shade line casts on a receiving surface.

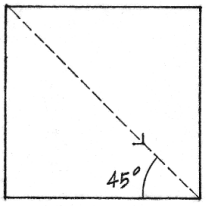




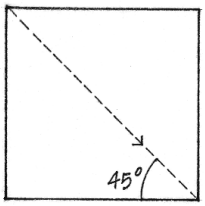
In multiview drawings, we assume the conventional direction of sunlight to be parallel to the diagonal of a cube from the upper left front corner to the lower right rear corner. While the true altitude of this diagonal is 35° 16', in plan and elevation views, this direction is seen as the 45° diagonal of a square. This convention produces shadows of width or depth equal to the width or depth of the projections that cast the shadows.



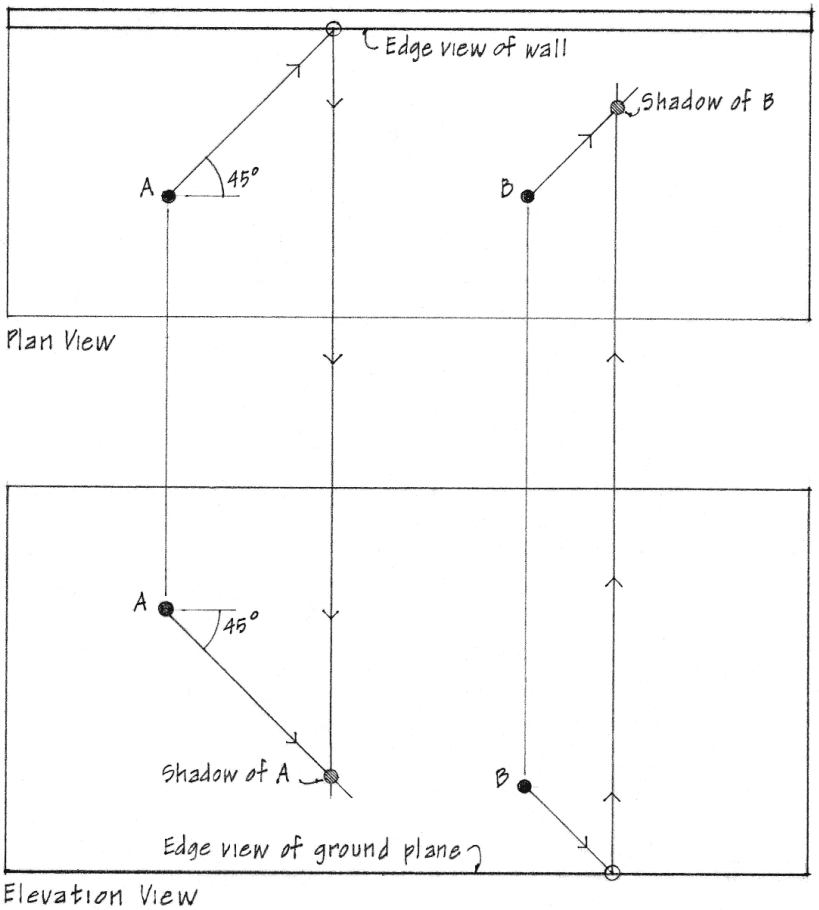
Plan View



Front View



Side View



Shadow of a Point

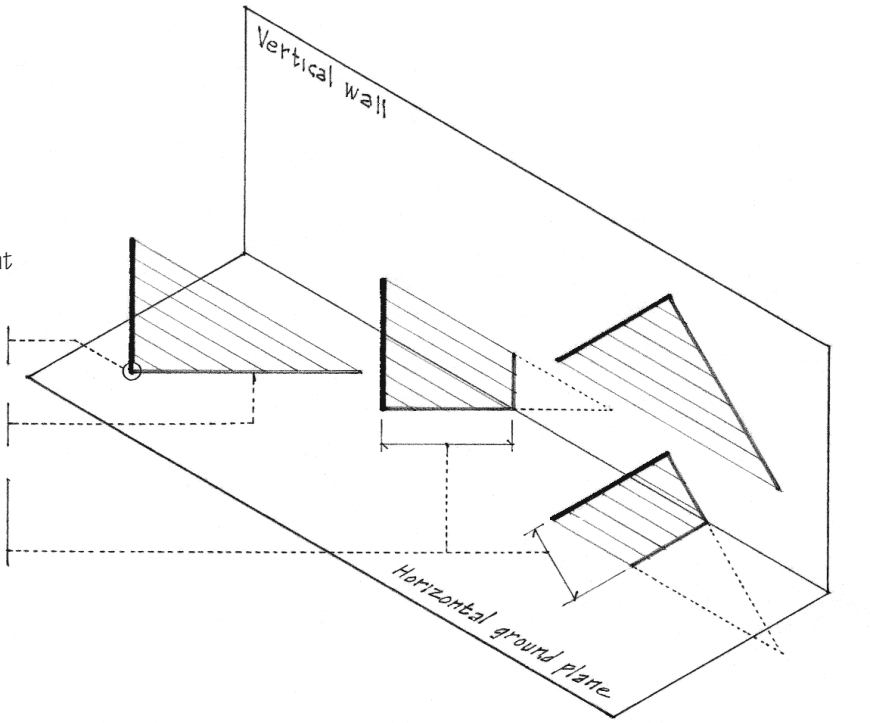
- The shadow of a point occurs where the light ray passing through the point meets an intercepting surface.

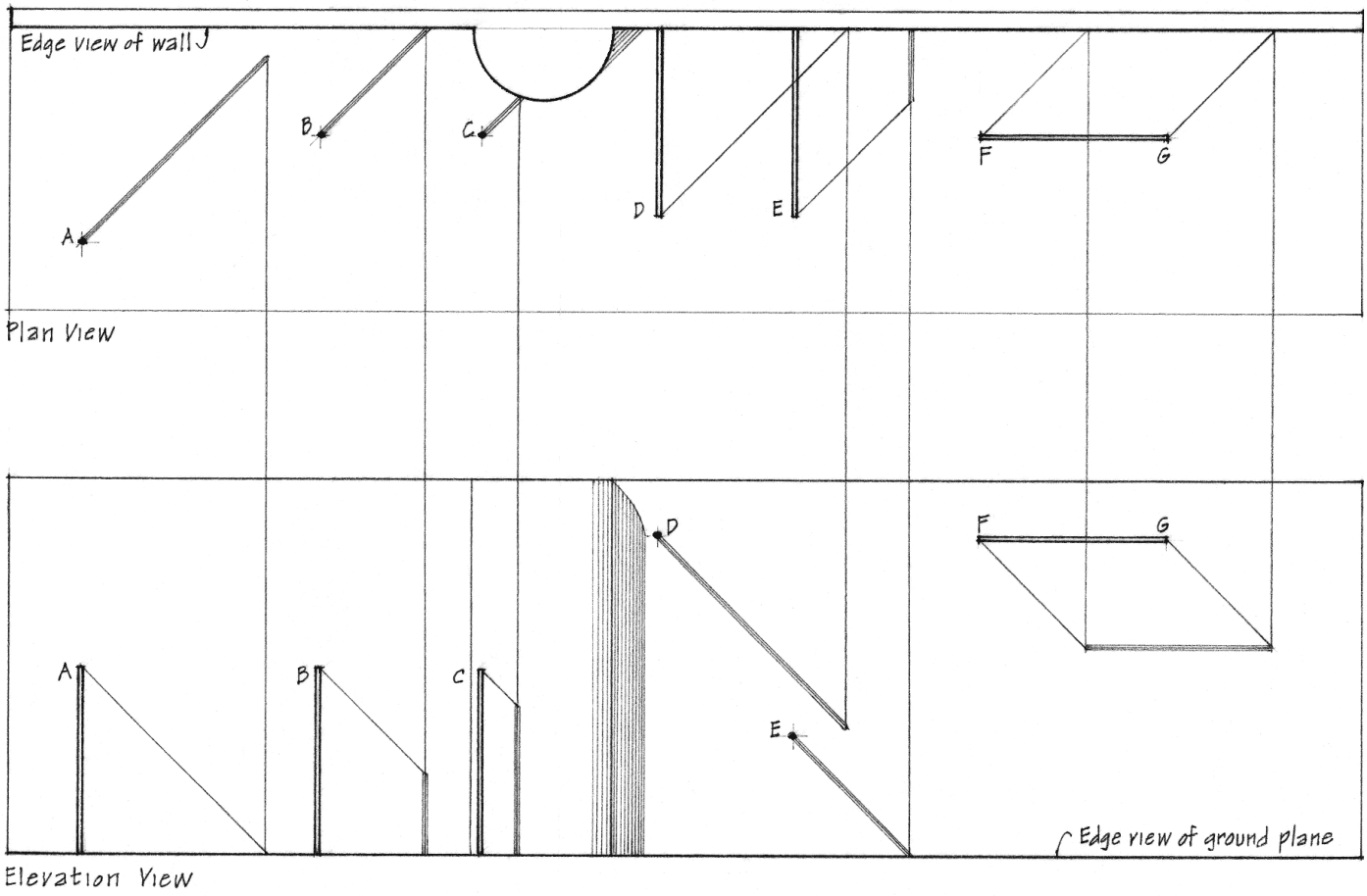
The casting of shade and shadows in multiview drawings generally requires two related views—either a plan and elevation or two related elevations—and the transferring of information back and forth from one view to the other.

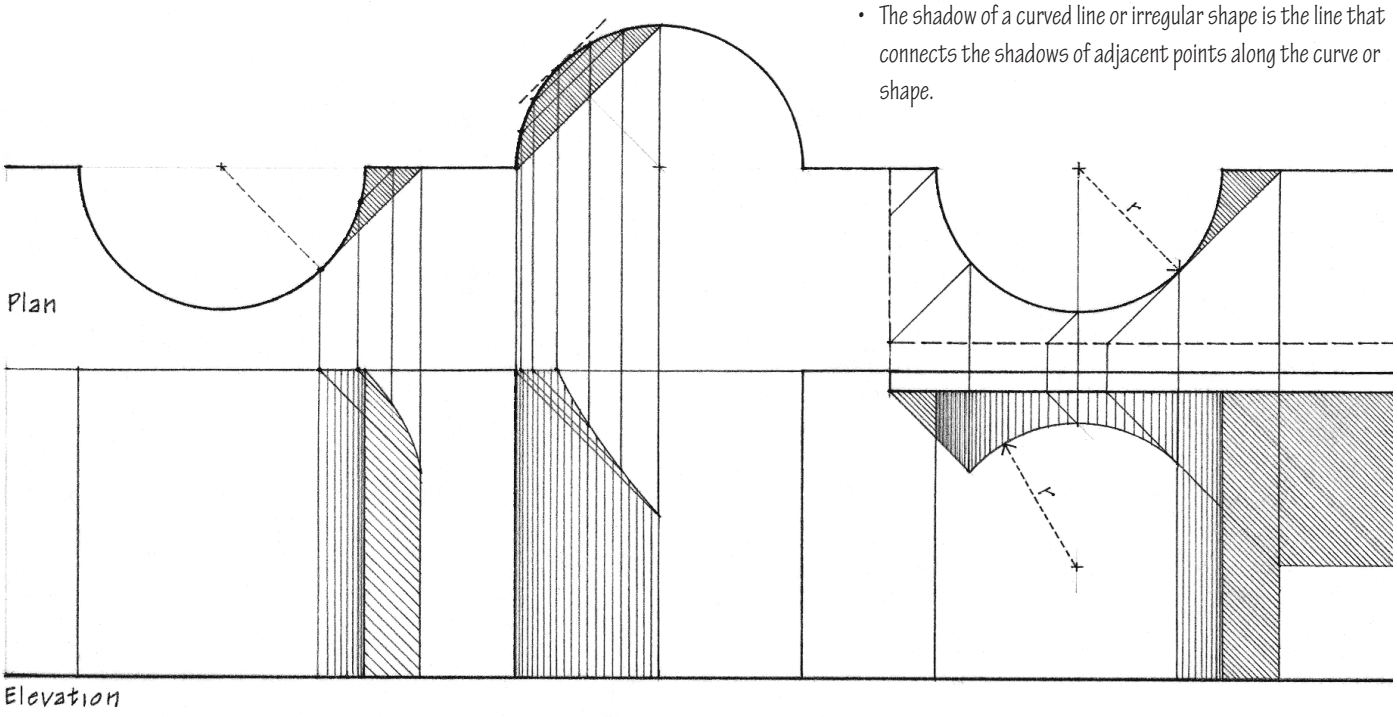
The process begins with drawing a 45° light ray through a point along a casting edge in both views. In the view showing the edge view of the receiving surface, extend the ray until it intersects the receiving surface. Project this intersection to the related view. The intersection of this transferred line with the ray in the adjacent view marks the shadow of the point.

Shadow of a Line

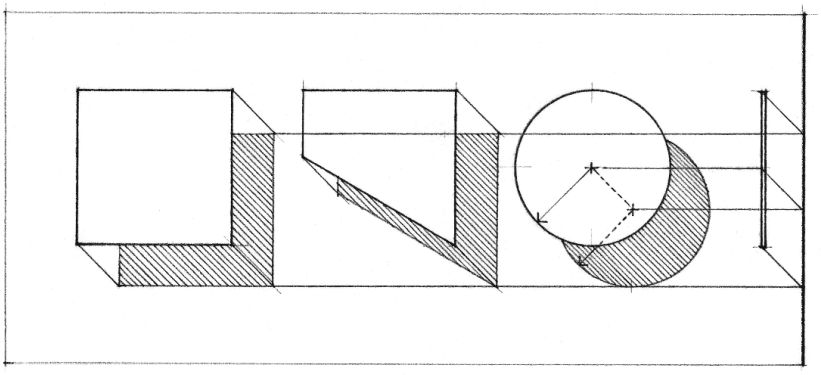
- The shadow of a straight line is the intersection of its shadow plane with the surface receiving the shadow. The hypotenuse of the triangular shadow plane establishes the direction of the light rays, and its base describes their bearing.
- The shadow of a straight line on a flat surface is the line that connects the shadows of its endpoints.
- The shadow of a line that intersects a surface begins where the line meets the surface.
- A vertical line casts its shadow onto a horizontal surface in the bearing direction of the light rays.
- A straight line casts onto a parallel plane a shadow that is parallel to itself. This is also true when the line is parallel to the straight lines in a curved surface receiving the shadow.

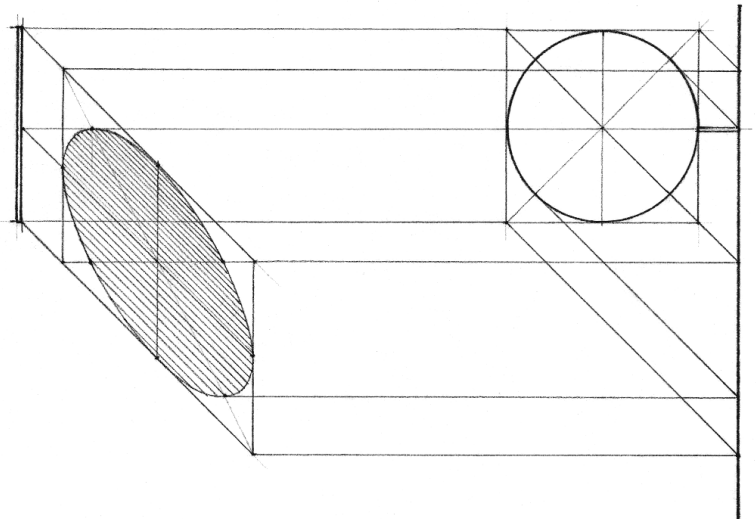






- The shadow of a curved line or irregular shape is the line that connects the shadows of adjacent points along the curve or shape.



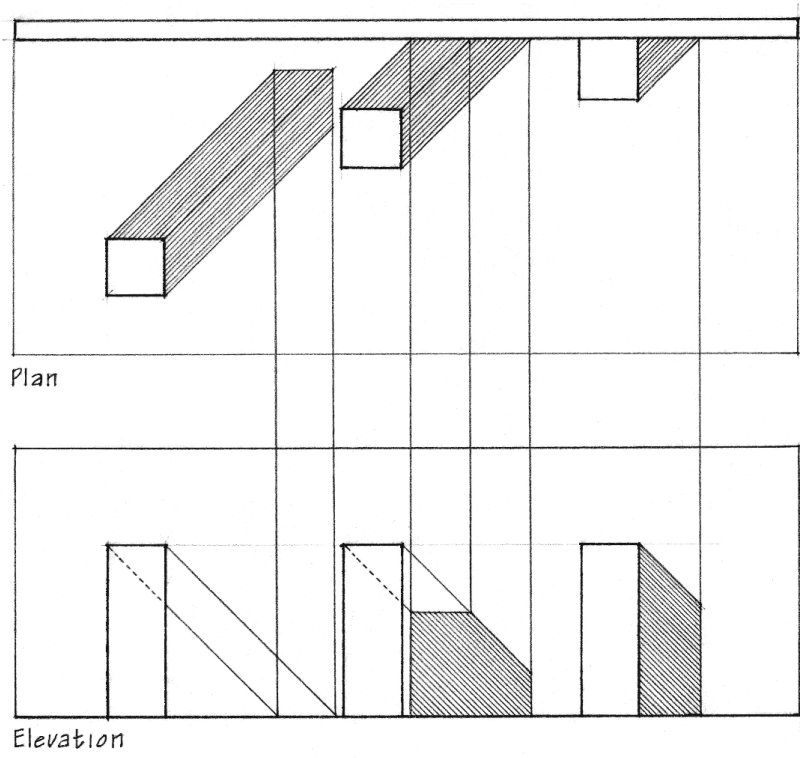


Shadow of a Plane

- The shadow of a plane figure on a parallel plane is identical in size and shape to the figure.
- The shadow of a polygonal figure on a plane is circumscribed by the shadows of its shade lines.
- The shadow of a circle is the intersection of the cylinder of light rays passing through adjacent points of the circle and the surface receiving the shadow. The shape of the shadow is elliptical since the section of a cylinder cut by any plane oblique to its axis is an ellipse. The most convenient method of determining the shadow of a circle is to determine the shadow of the square or octagon circumscribing the given circle and then to inscribe within it the elliptical shadow of the circle.

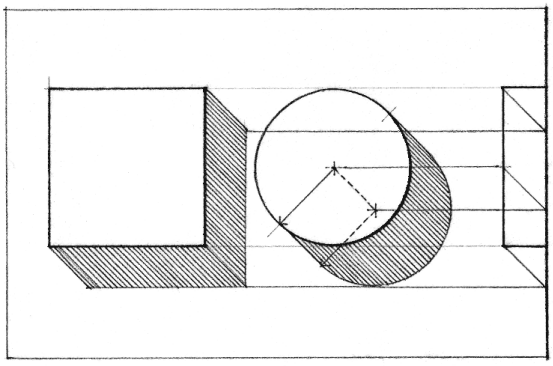
Shadow of a Solid

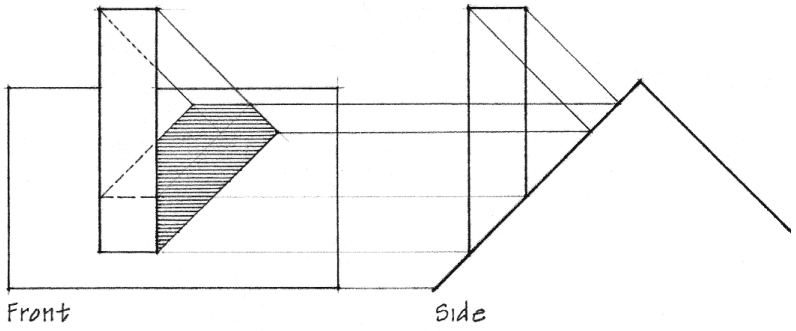
- The shadow of a solid is bound by the shadows of the shade lines of the object. It is usually best to begin by determining the shadows of significant points in the form, such as the endpoints of straight lines and the tangent points of curves.
- The shadow cast by a complex composition of masses is a composite of the shadows of its simplest geometric components.
- A shadow line changes direction where it crosses a corner, edge, or other break in the continuity of a surface.



- Shadows of parallel lines are parallel when they fall on the same plane or on parallel planes.

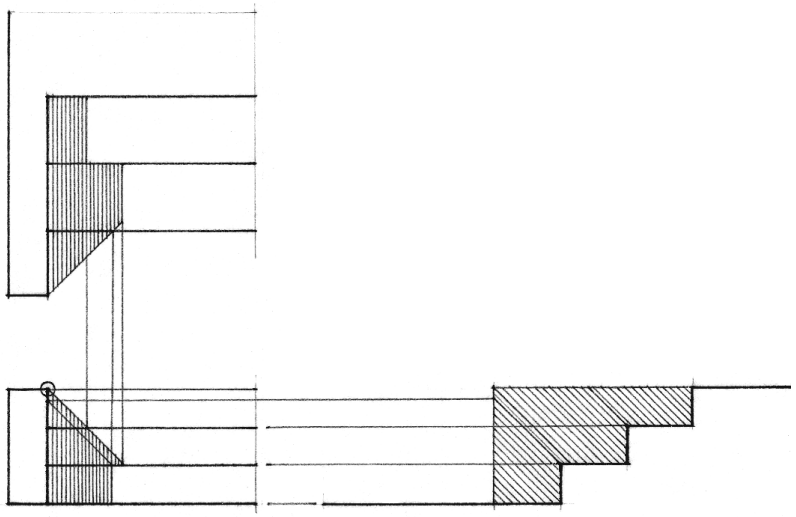
Sometimes it is necessary to construct an additional elevation to find where the light rays through the corner points of a solid intersect the surface receiving the shadow.

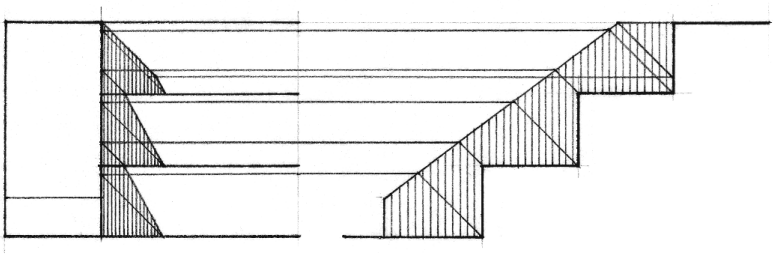




In addition to the general principles outlined previously, the following tenets apply specifically to casting shade and shadows in multiview drawings:

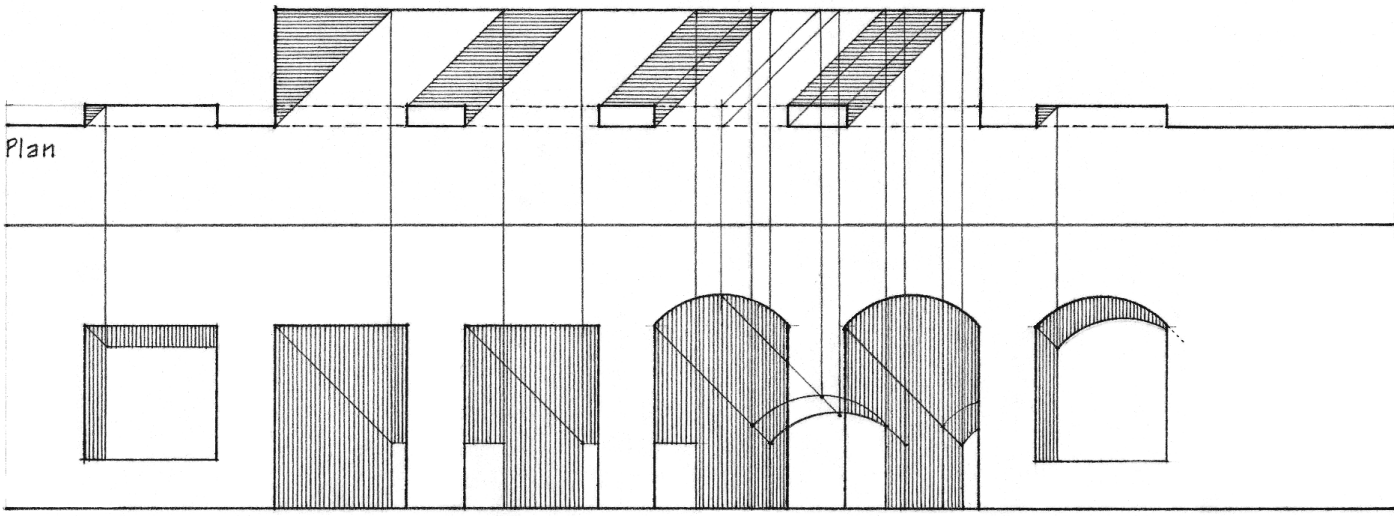
- A vertical shade line appears as a point in a plan view and its shadow falls along the bearing direction of the light rays through that point.
- When the observer looks at the end of a straight line, the line is seen as a point, and the shadow of the line will also appear to be straight regardless of the shape of the surface receiving the shadow.

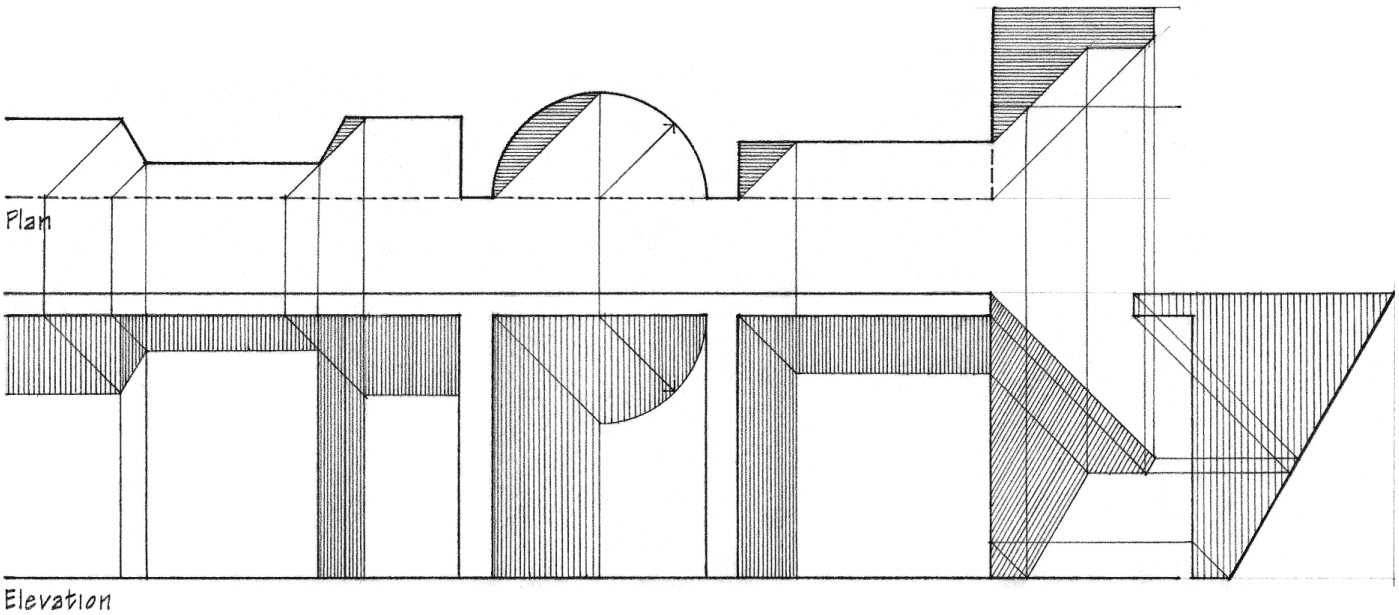




Illustrated on this page are examples of the shadows cast by typical architectural elements. Keep the following two fundamental principles in mind:

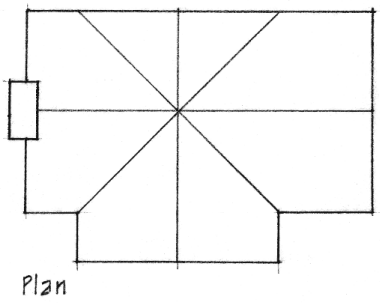
- Every part of an object in light must cast a shadow. The corollary to this is any point that is not in light cannot cast a shadow because light does not strike it.
- A shadow is visible only when there is an illuminated surface to receive the shadow. A shadow can never be cast on a surface in shade, nor can it exist within another shadow.



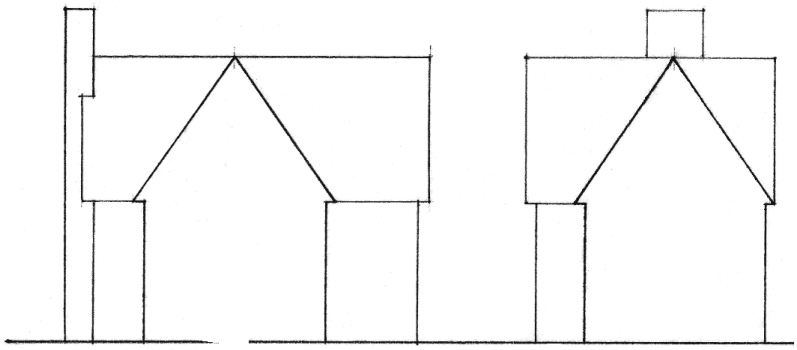


Exercise 6.15

Using the conventional direction of light rays for multiview drawings, determine the surfaces in shade and cast their shadows in the plans and elevations of the two building forms illustrated to the right and below.

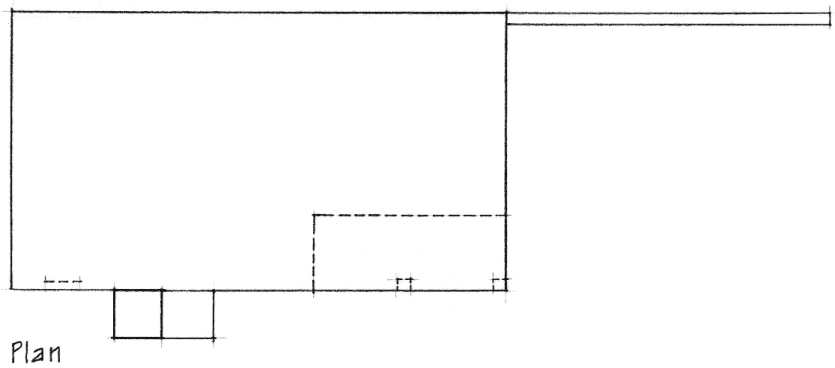


Plan

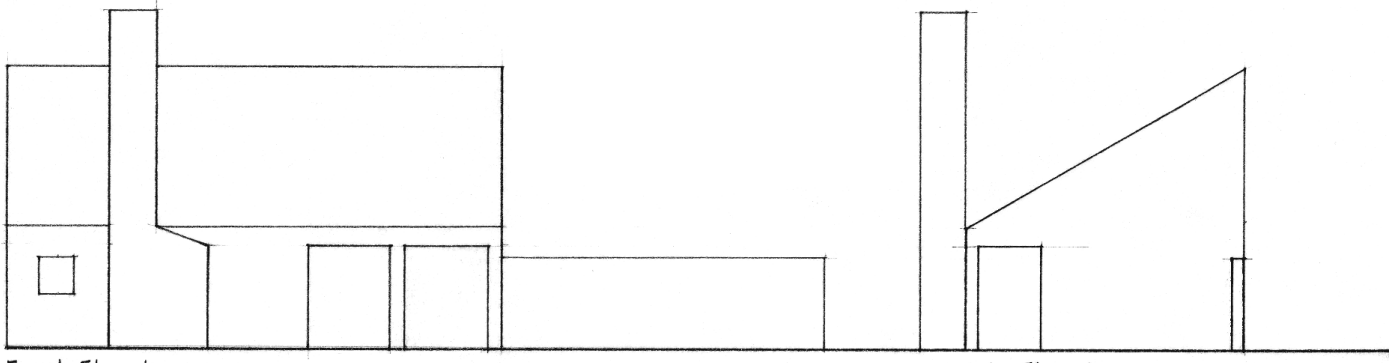


Front Elevation

Side Elevation

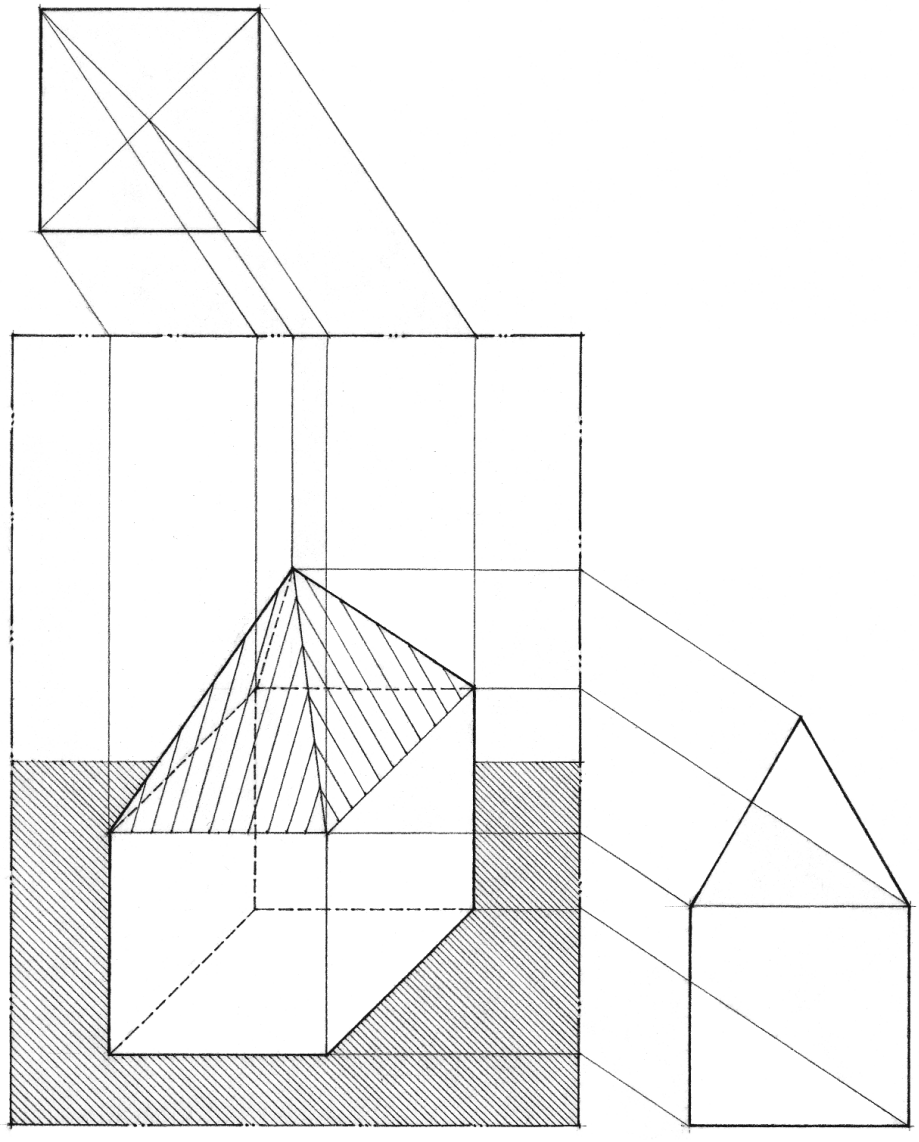


Plan



Front Elevation

Side Elevation



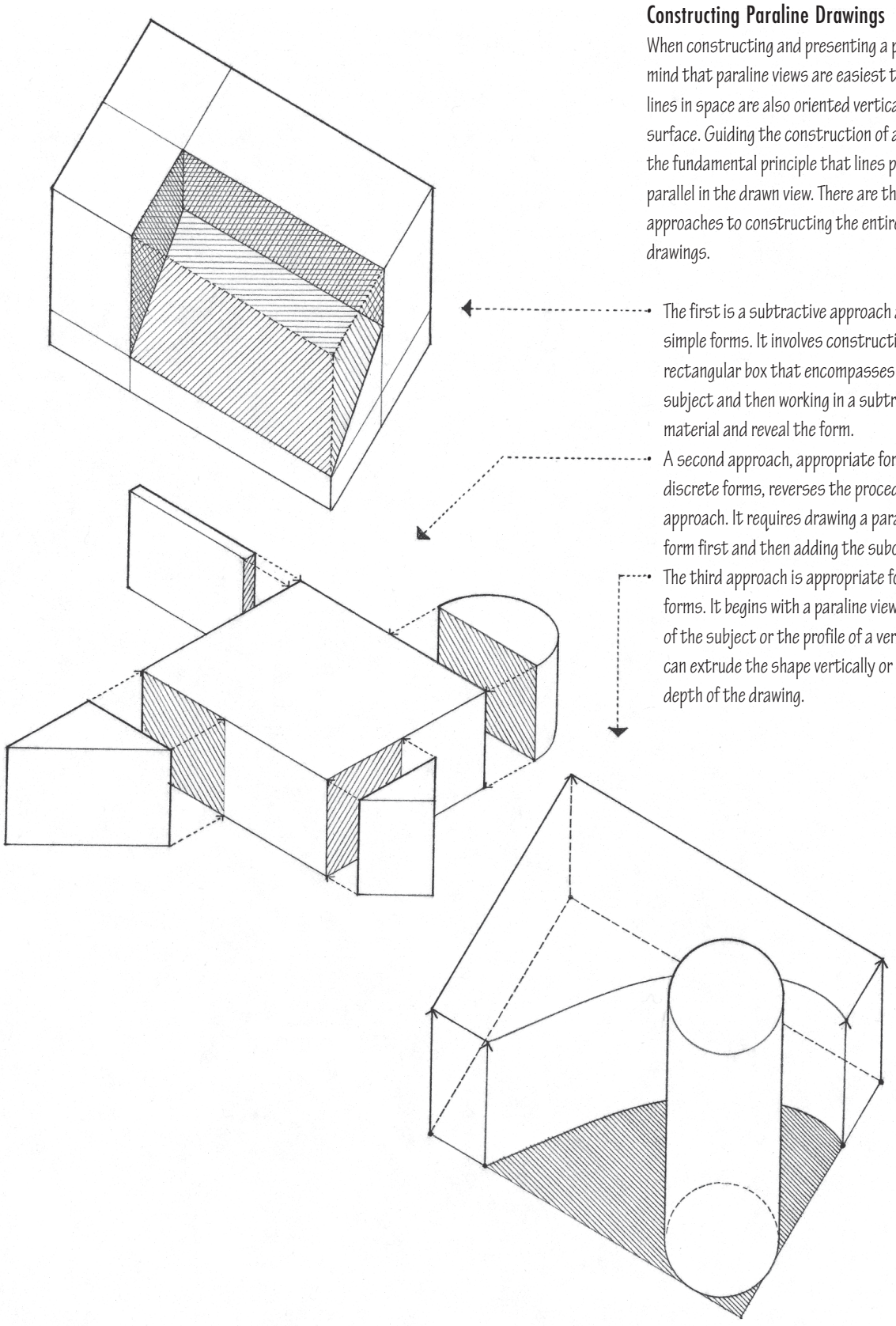
7
Paraline Drawings

Paraline drawings include a subset of orthographic projections known as axonometric projections—the isometric, dimetric, and trimetric—as well as the entire class of oblique projections. Each type offers a slightly different viewpoint and emphasizes different aspects of the subject. As a family, however, they combine the measured precision and scalability of orthographic multiview drawings with the pictorial nature of linear perspective.

Paraline drawings communicate the three-dimensional nature of an object or spatial relationship in a single image. Hence, they are also called single-view drawings to distinguish them from the multiple and related views of plans, sections, and elevations. They can be distinguished from the other type of single-view drawing, linear perspective, by the following pictorial effects. Parallel lines, regardless of their orientation in the subject, remain parallel in the drawn view. They do not converge to vanishing points as in linear perspective—hence the term *paraline*. In addition, any linear measurement parallel to the three major axes can be made and drawn to a consistent scale.

Because of their pictorial nature and ease of construction, paraline drawings are appropriate for visualizing an emerging idea in three dimensions early in the design process. They are capable of fusing plan, elevation, and section, and of illustrating three-dimensional patterns and compositions of space. They can be cut or made transparent to see inside and through things, or expanded to illustrate the spatial relationships between the parts of a whole. They can even serve as a reasonable substitute for a bird's-eye perspective.

Paraline views, however, lack the eye-level view and picturesque quality of linear perspectives. They present instead either an aerial view looking down on an object or scene, or a worm's-eye view looking upward. In either case, the drawing system can be extended to include a boundless and unlocalized field of vision, unlike perspective drawings, which are strictly limited in scope by the size of the visual angle. It reveals the view from an infinite set of positions rather than from a specific point in space. The viewer can move in on a portion of the drawing or move back to take in a broader vista.



Constructing Paraline Drawings

When constructing and presenting a paraline drawing, keep in mind that paraline views are easiest to understand if vertical lines in space are also oriented vertically on the drawing surface. Guiding the construction of all paraline drawings is the fundamental principle that lines parallel in space remain parallel in the drawn view. There are therefore three basic approaches to constructing the entire class of paraline drawings.

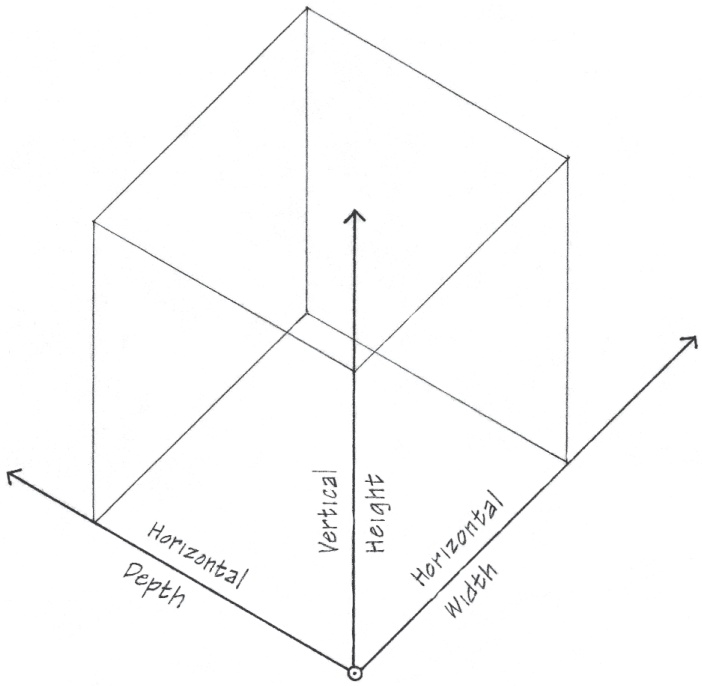
- The first is a subtractive approach appropriate for relatively simple forms. It involves constructing a paraline view of a rectangular box that encompasses the entire volume of the subject and then working in a subtractive manner to remove material and reveal the form.
- A second approach, appropriate for a composition of discrete forms, reverses the procedure of the subtractive approach. It requires drawing a paraline view of the parent form first and then adding the subordinate forms.
- The third approach is appropriate for irregularly shaped forms. It begins with a paraline view of a horizontal plane of the subject or the profile of a vertical section cut. We can extrude the shape vertically or extend it back into the depth of the drawing.

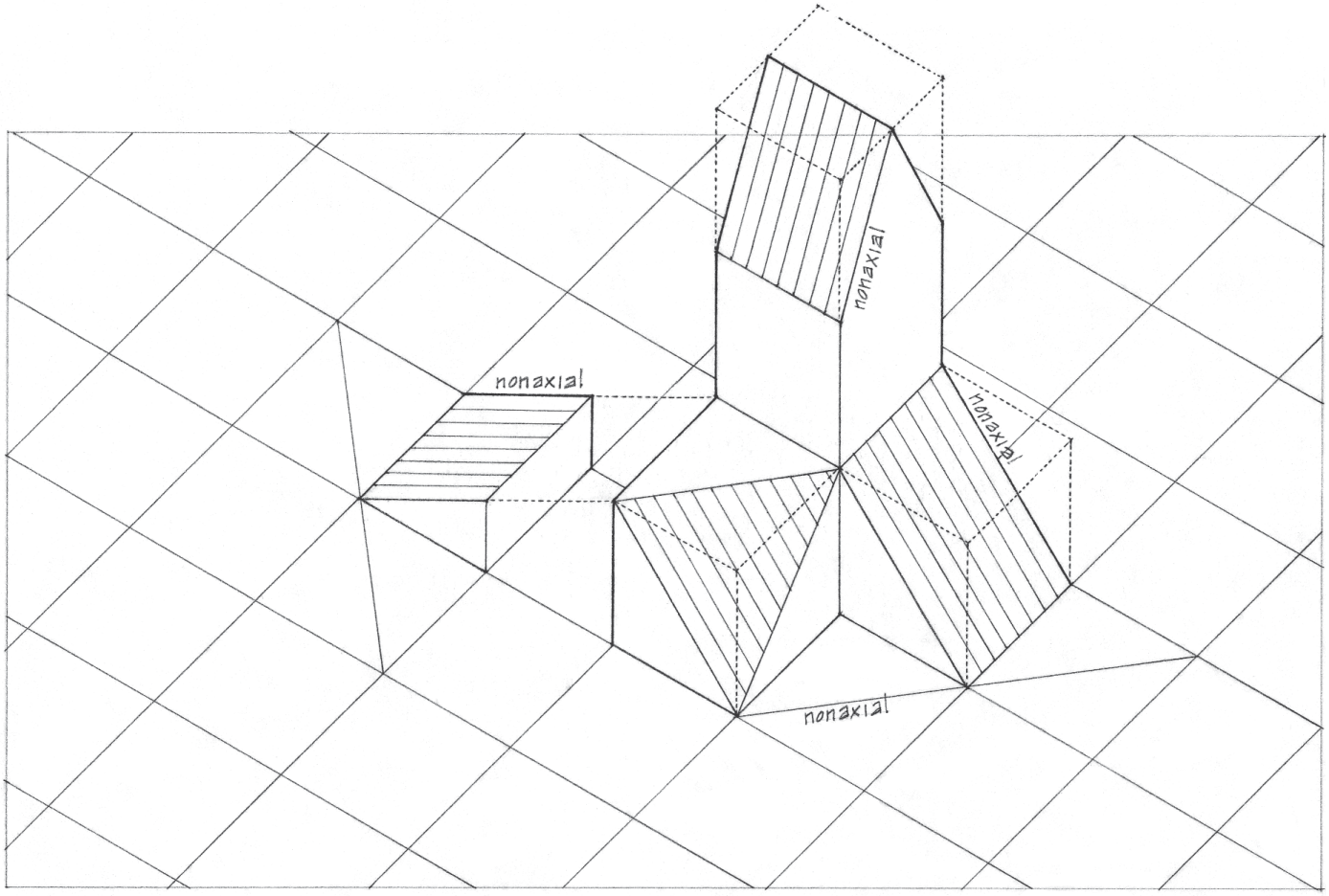
Axial Lines

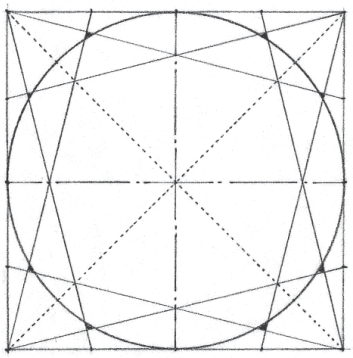
Axial lines refer to those lines that are parallel to any of the three principal axes. Regardless of the approach we take in constructing a paraline drawing, we can measure dimensions and draw to scale only along axial lines. Axial lines naturally form a rectangular grid of coordinates, which we can use to find any point in three-dimensional space.

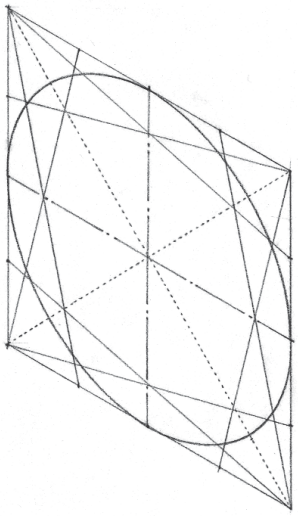
Nonaxial Lines

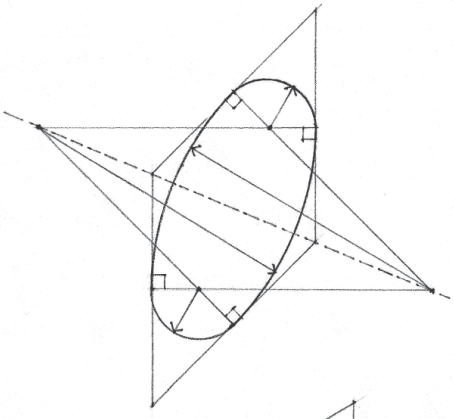
Nonaxial lines refer to those lines that are not parallel to any of the three principal axes. We cannot measure dimensions along these nonaxial lines, nor can we draw them to scale. To draw nonaxial lines, we must first locate their endpoints using axial measurements, and then connect these points. Once we establish one nonaxial line, however, we can draw any line parallel to that line, since parallel lines in the subject remain parallel in the drawing.

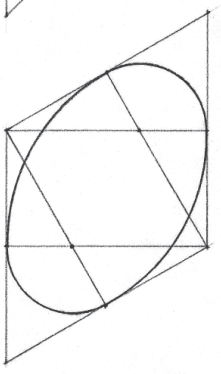


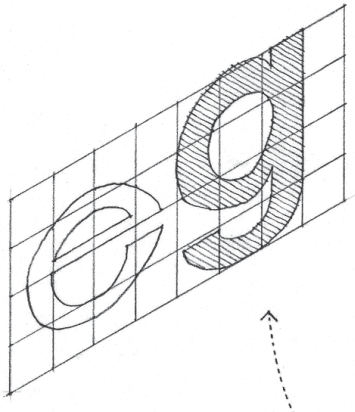


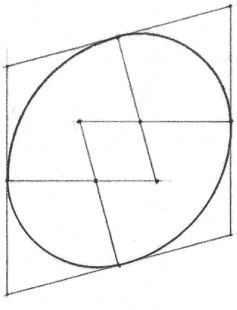


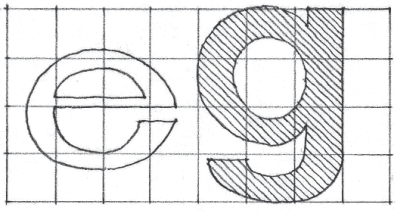












Circles

Any circle oblique to the picture plane appears as an ellipse. To draw such a circle in a paraline drawing, we must first draw a square that circumscribes the circle. Then we can use either of two approaches to drawing the circle within the square.

- If we can divide the square into quadrants and draw the diagonals, we can establish eight points along the circumference of the circle.
- The four-center method uses two sets of radii and a compass or circle template. First draw the paraline view of the square that circumscribes the circle. From the midpoints of the sides of the rhombus, extend perpendiculars until they intersect. With the four points of intersection as centers and with radii r^1 and r^2, describe two sets of arcs in equal pairs between the origin points of the perpendiculars.

Curves

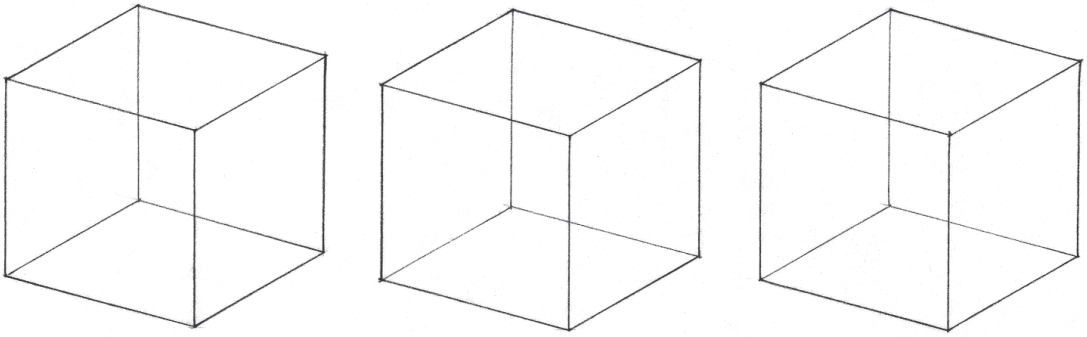
We can draw a paraline view of any curved line or surface by using offset measurements to locate the positions of significant points along the line or surface.

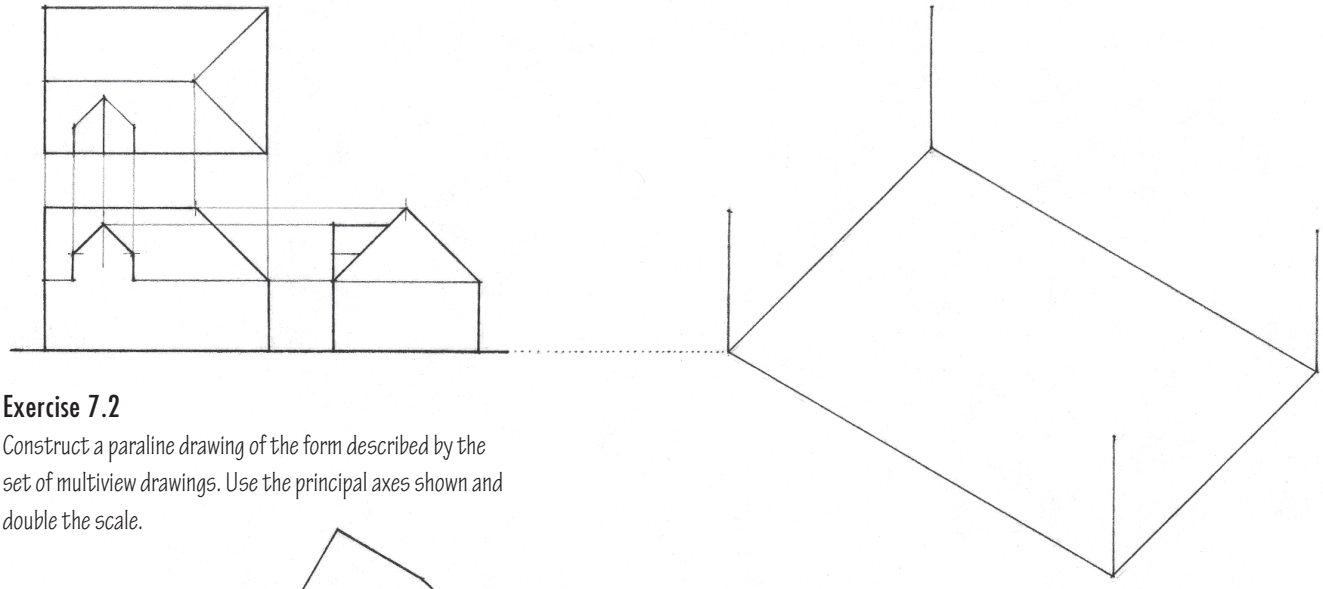
Freeform Shapes

To draw a freeform shape in a paraline drawing, first construct a grid over a plan or elevation view of the shape. This grid may either be uniform or correspond to critical points in the shape. The more complex the shape, the finer the grid divisions should be. Construct the same grid in the paraline view. Next, locate the points of intersection between the grid and the freeform shape and plot these coordinates in the paraline view. Finally, we connect the transferred points in the paraline view.

Exercise 7.1

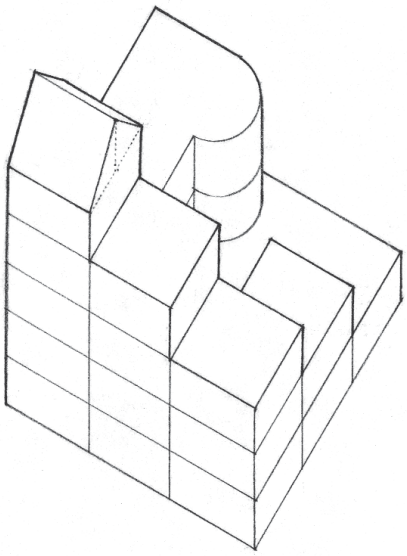
Use the three cubes as a guide to draw paraline views of a cylinder, a cone, and a pyramid.

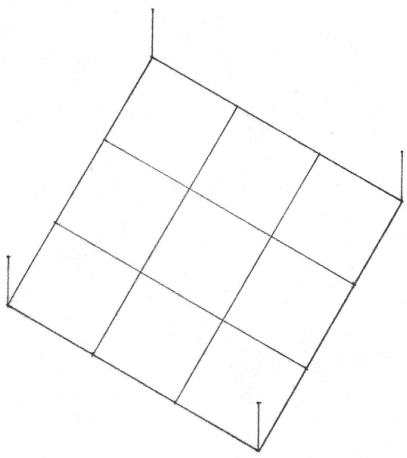




Exercise 7.2

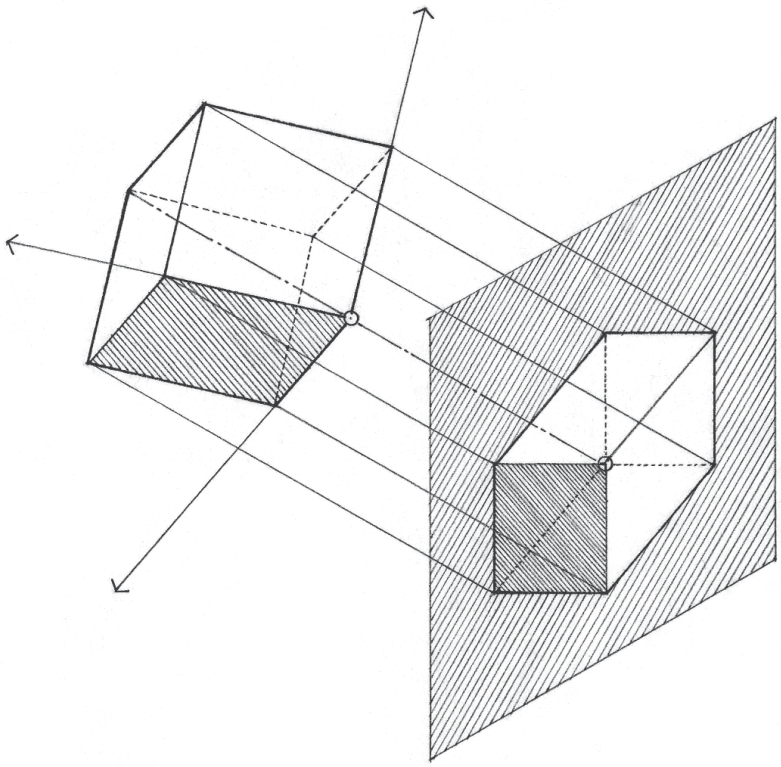
Construct a paraline drawing of the form described by the set of multiview drawings. Use the principal axes shown and double the scale.





Exercise 7.3

Using the same principal axes, construct a paraline drawing of the form as it would be seen from the opposite direction.

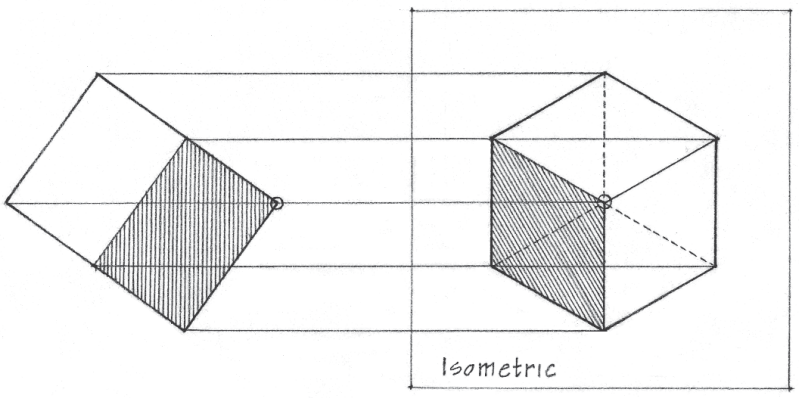


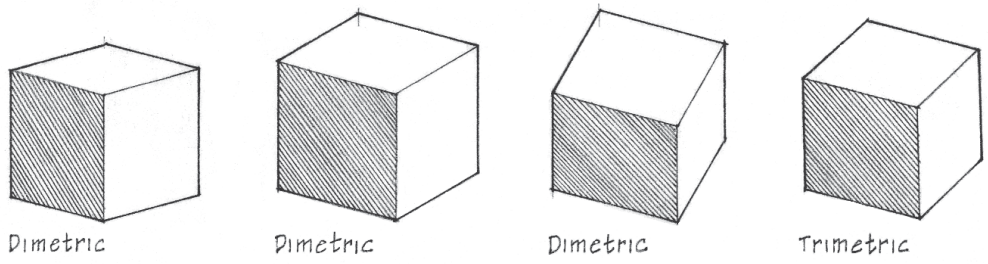
Axonometric = axono + metric or axis-measurement. The term *axonometric* is often used to describe paraline drawings of oblique projections or the entire class of paraline drawings. Strictly speaking, however, axonometric projection is a form of orthographic projection in which the projectors are parallel to each other and perpendicular to the picture plane. The difference between orthographic multiview drawings and an axonometric single-view drawing is simply the orientation of the object to the picture plane.

Axonometric Projection

Axonometric projection is an orthographic projection of a three-dimensional object inclined to the picture plane in such a way that its three principal axes are foreshortened. The family of axonometric projection includes isometric, dimetric, and trimetric projections. They differ according to the orientation of the three principal axes of a subject to the picture plane.

There is a significant difference between an axonometric projection and a drawing of that projection. In a true axonometric projection, the three principal axes are foreshortened to varying degrees, depending on their orientation to the picture plane. However, in an axonometric drawing, we draw the true length of one or more of these axes to exact scale. Axonometric drawings are therefore slightly larger than their corresponding axonometric projections.



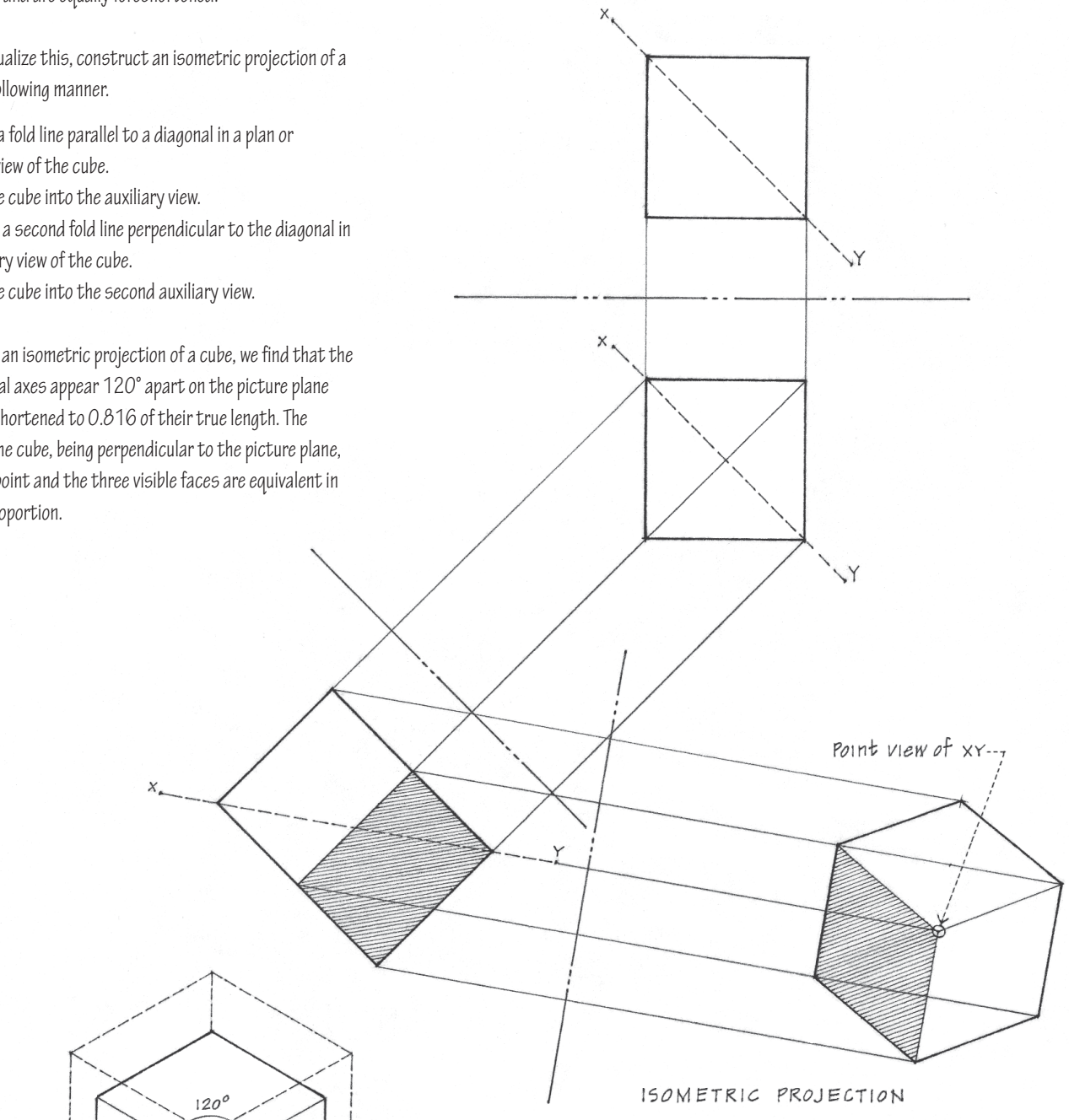


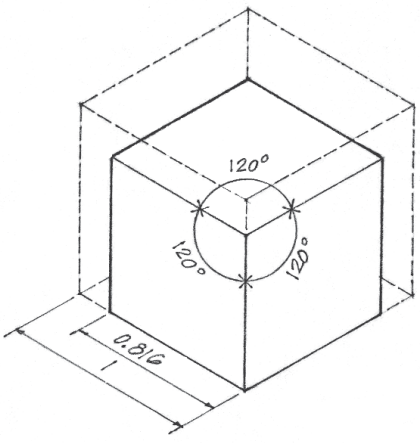
An isometric projection is an axonometric projection of a three-dimensional object inclined to the picture plane in such a way that the three principal axes make equal angles with the picture plane and are equally foreshortened.

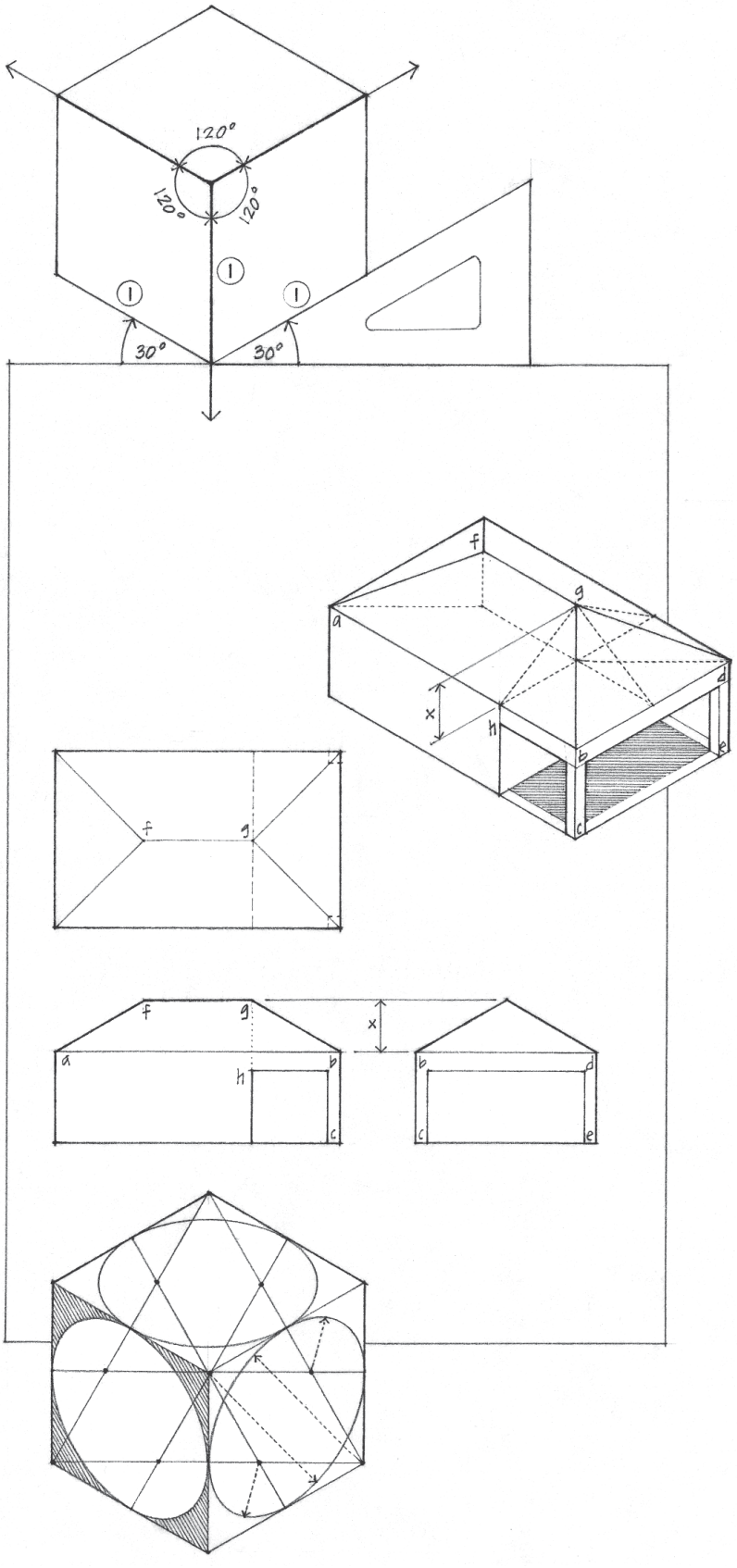
To better visualize this, construct an isometric projection of a cube in the following manner.

- Establish a fold line parallel to a diagonal in a plan or elevation view of the cube.
- Project the cube into the auxiliary view.
- Construct a second fold line perpendicular to the diagonal in the auxiliary view of the cube.
- Project the cube into the second auxiliary view.

In developing an isometric projection of a cube, we find that the three principal axes appear 120° apart on the picture plane and are foreshortened to 0.816 of their true length. The diagonal of the cube, being perpendicular to the picture plane, is seen as a point and the three visible faces are equivalent in shape and proportion.



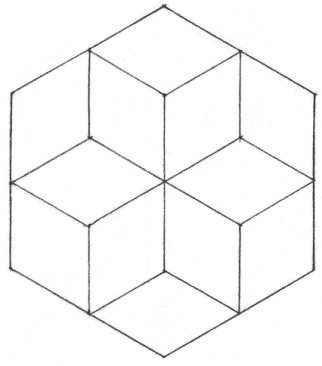


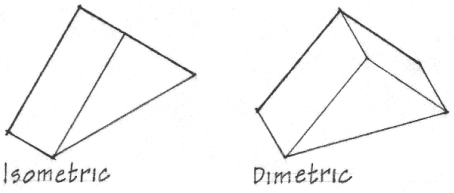


Instead of developing an isometric projection from a set of plan, elevation, and auxiliary views, it is common practice to construct an isometric drawing in a more direct manner. First, we establish the direction of the three principal axes. Since they are 120° apart on the picture plane, if we draw one axis vertically, the other two axes make a 30° angle with a horizontal on the drawing surface.

To save time, we disregard the normal foreshortening of the principal axes. Instead, we lay out the true lengths of all lines parallel to the three principal axes and draw them to the same scale. Thus, an isometric drawing is always slightly larger than an isometric projection of the same subject.

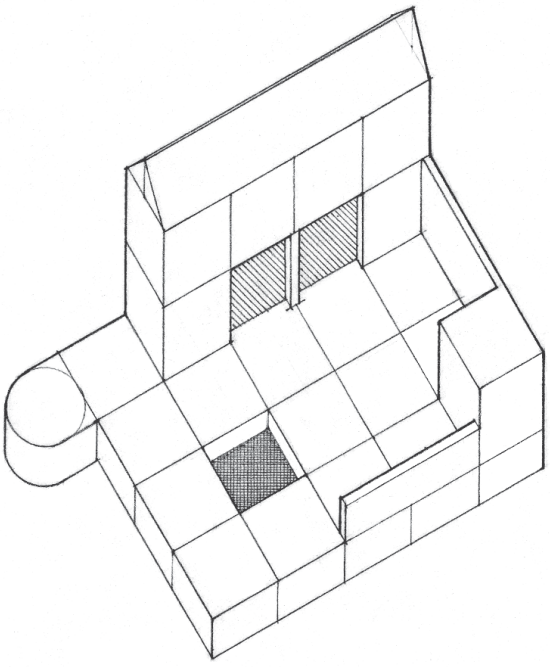
An isometric drawing establishes a lower angle of view than a plan oblique and gives equal emphasis to the three major sets of planes. It preserves the relative proportions of the subject and is not subject to the distortion inherent in oblique views. Isometric drawings of forms based on the square, however, can create an optical illusion and be subject to multiple interpretations. This ambiguity results from the alignment of lines in the foreground with those in the background. In such cases, a dimetric or oblique might be a better choice.

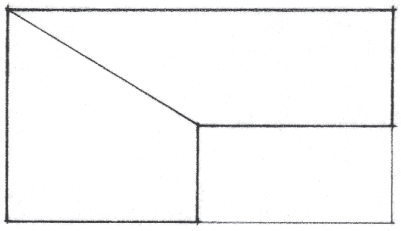


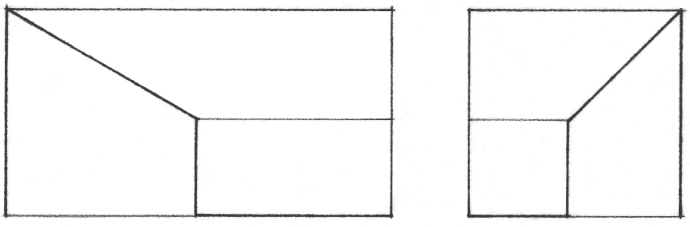


Exercise 7.4

Construct an isometric drawing of the construction described in the paraline view.





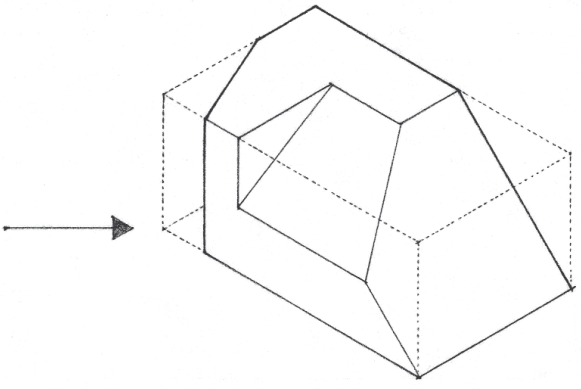


Exercise 7.5

Construct an isometric drawing of the structure described by the set of multiview drawings.

Exercise 7.6

Construct an isometric drawing of the object as it would be seen from the direction indicated.

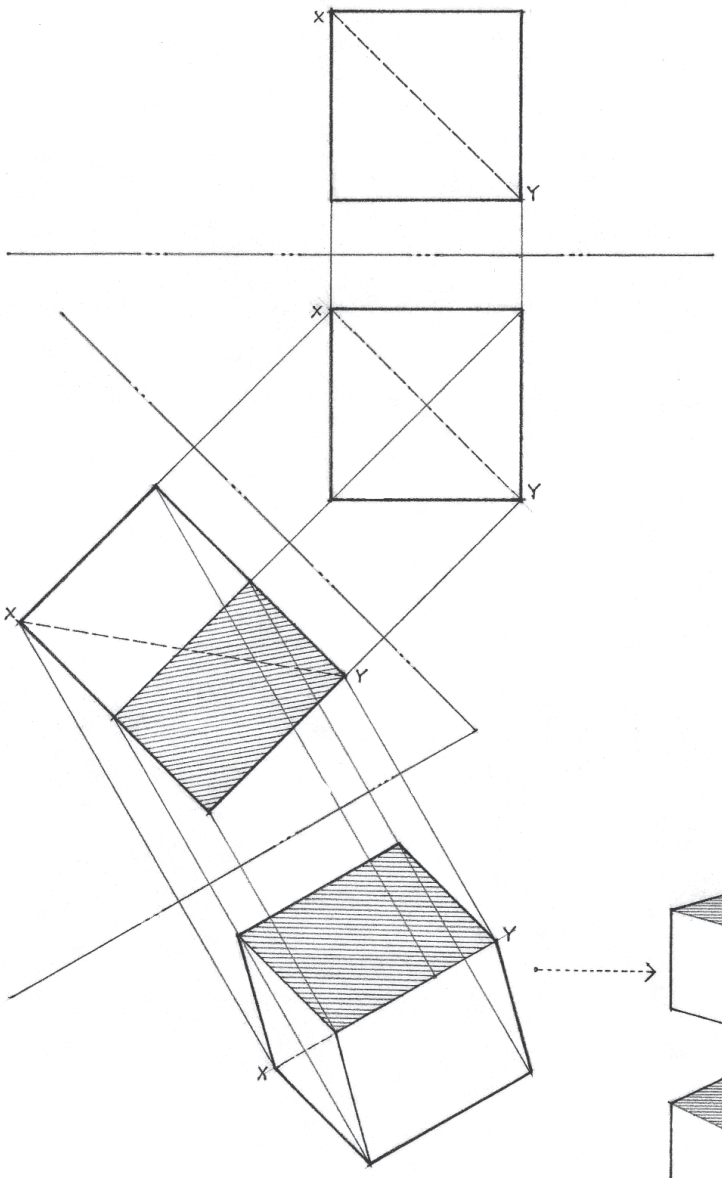


A dimetric projection is an axonometric projection of a three-dimensional object inclined to the picture plane in such a way that two of its principal axes are equally foreshortened and the third appears longer or shorter than the other two.

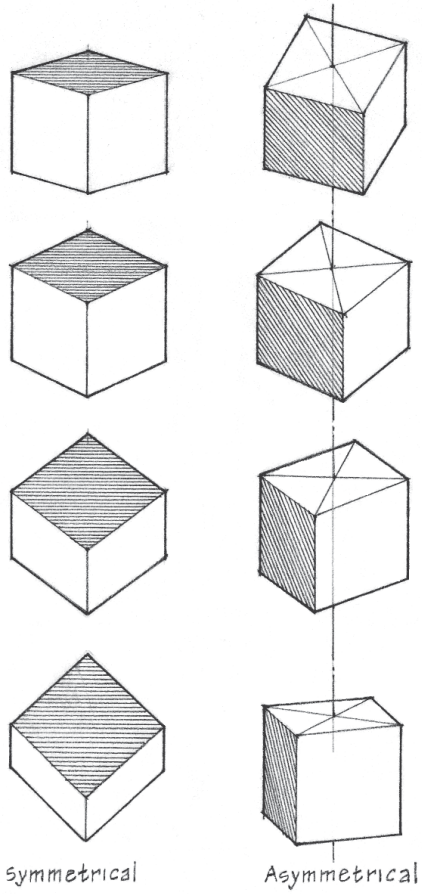
To better visualize this, construct a dimetric projection of a cube in the following manner.

- Establish a fold line parallel to a diagonal in a plan or elevation view of the cube.
- Project the cube into the auxiliary view.
- Construct a second fold line that is not perpendicular to a diagonal in the auxiliary view of the cube.
- Project the cube into the second auxiliary view.

In developing a dimetric projection of a cube, we find that an infinite number of views and pictorial effects are possible. A series of symmetrical views develops as the cube rotates about a horizontal axis. Another series of asymmetrical views emerges as the cube rotates about a vertical axis. Depending on the orientation of the cube to the picture plane, a dimetric view can either emphasize one major set of planes while subordinating the other two, or emphasize two major sets of planes equally while subordinating the third.



DIMETRIC PROJECTION

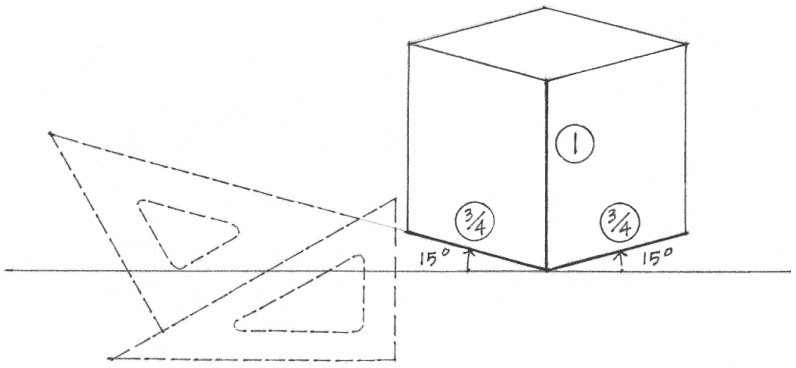


Symmetrical

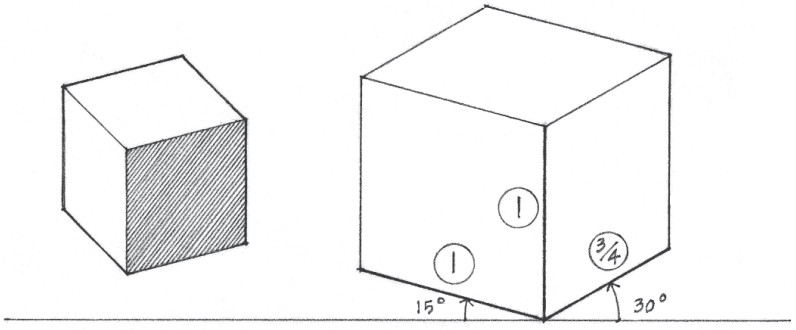
Asymmetrical

A dimetric drawing is a paraline drawing of a dimetric projection, having all lines parallel to two of the principal axes drawn to true length at the same scale, and lines parallel to the third either elongated or foreshortened.

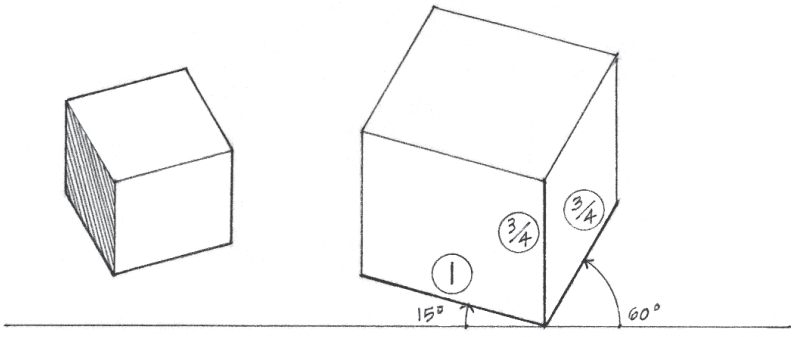
As with isometric drawings, we usually construct dimetric drawings in a direct manner. We first establish the direction of the three principal axes. Assuming one principal axis remains vertical, we can lay out the angles of the two horizontal axes in several ways. While these angles do not correspond exactly with the angles that result from dimetric projection, they are convenient to use when drafting with 30°/60° and 45°/45° triangles.

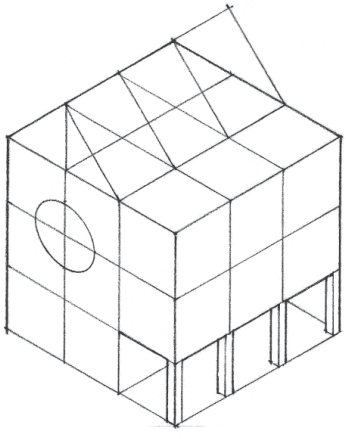


We can now lay out the lengths of all lines parallel to the three principal axes. Two of the three principal axes make the same angle with the picture plane. We draw lines parallel to these two axes at the same scale, and lines parallel to the third at a proportionately greater or smaller scale. The circled numbers indicate the whole and fractional scales at which we draw the three principal axes in each dimetric view.

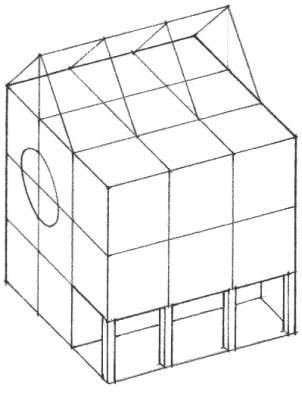


The use of two scales and odd angles make dimetric drawings slightly more difficult to construct than isometric drawings. On the other hand, they offer a flexibility of viewpoint that can overcome some of the pictorial defects of isometric drawings. A dimetric view can emphasize one or two of the major sets of planes as well as provide a clearer depiction of 45° lines and surfaces.

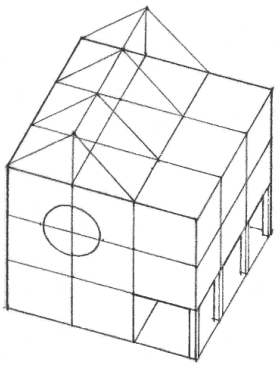




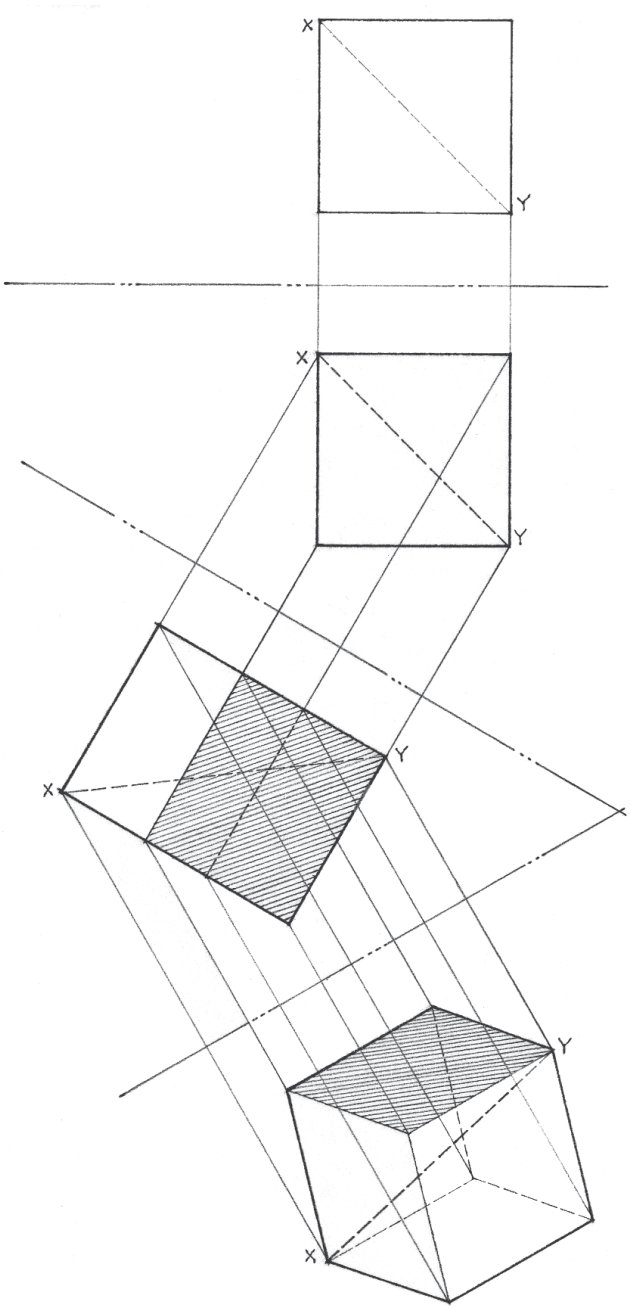
Isometric



Dimetric



Dimetric

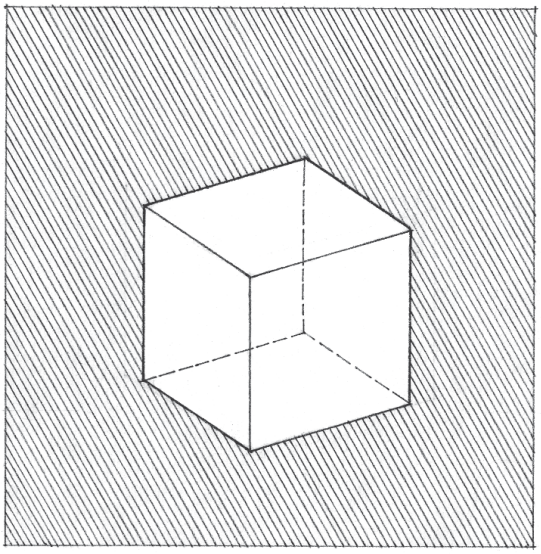


TRIMETRIC PROJECTION

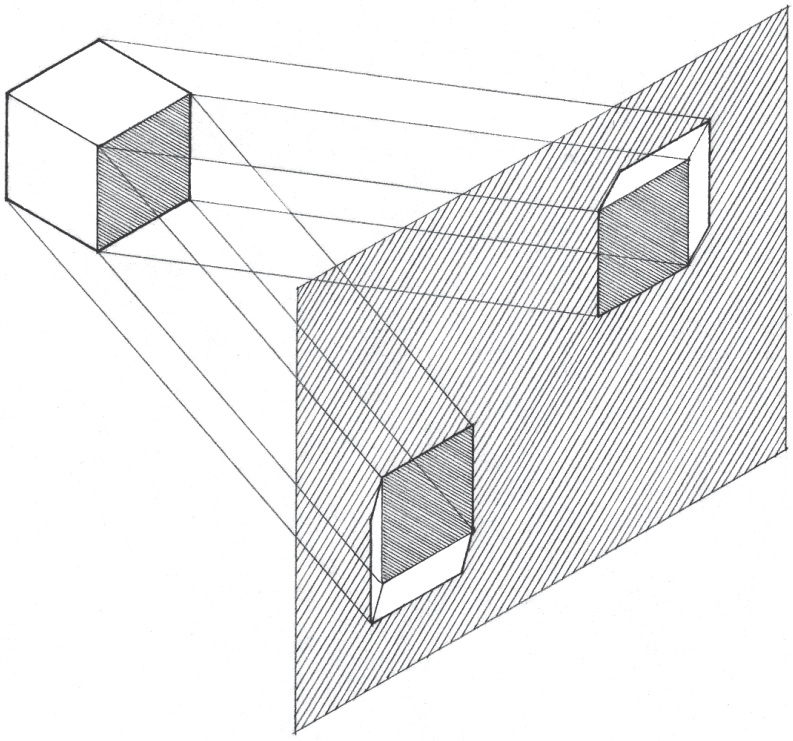
A trimetric projection is an axonometric projection of a three-dimensional object inclined to the picture plane in such a way that all three principal axes are foreshortened at a different rate.

Trimetric Drawings

A trimetric drawing is a paraline drawing of a trimetric projection, showing all three principal axes foreshortened at a different rate and therefore drawn at different scales. Trimetrics naturally emphasize one major set of planes over the other two. We rarely use trimetrics because what they reveal does not justify their complex construction. Isometric and dimetric views are simpler to construct and just as satisfactory for most purposes.



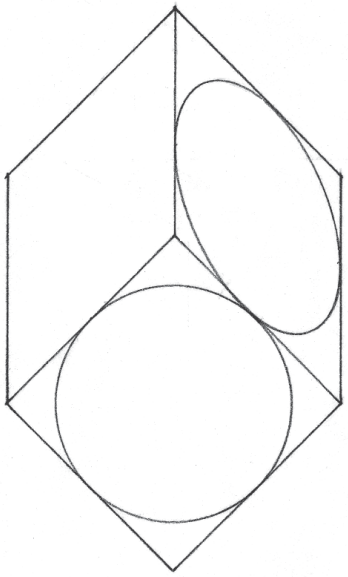
Oblique projection is one of three major types of projection drawing. The images that emerge from oblique projections belong to the pictorial family of paraline drawings but are distinct from the isometric and dimetric views that develop from orthographic projection. In oblique projection, a principal face or set of planes in the object is oriented parallel to the picture plane as in orthographic multiview drawing, but the image is transmitted by means of parallel projectors oriented at any angle other than 90° to the picture plane.

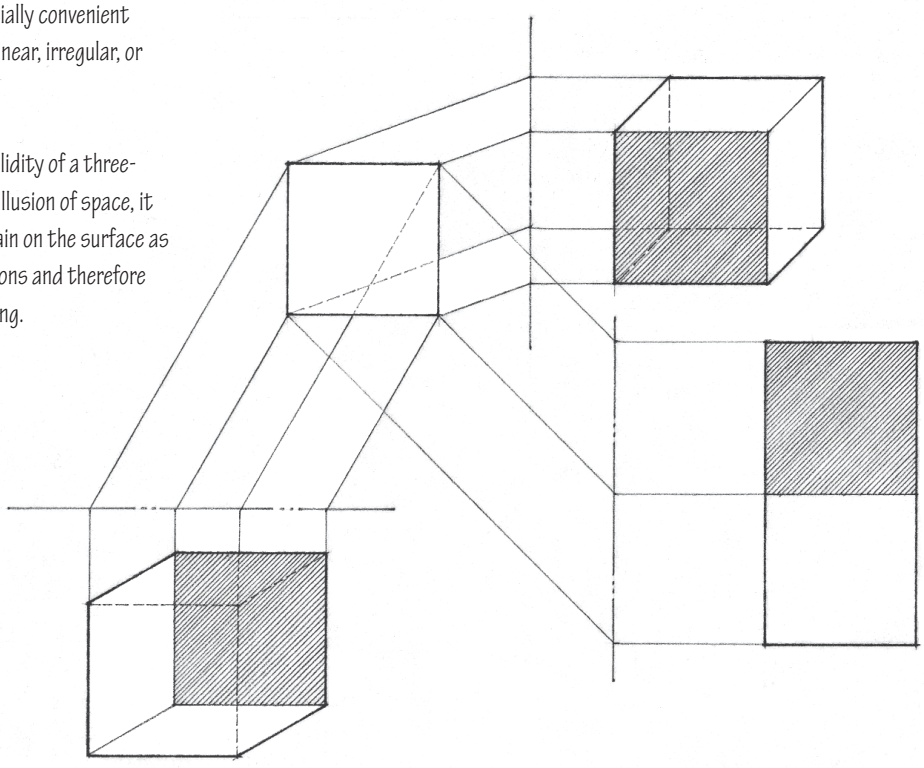


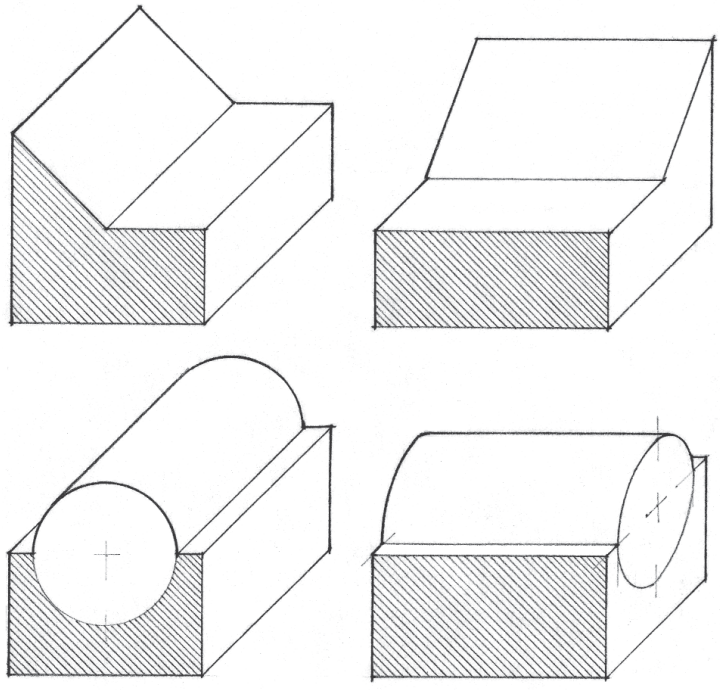
Oblique drawings show the true shape of planes parallel to the picture plane. Onto this frontal view, top and side views are attached and projected back into the depth of the drawing. This yields a three-dimensional image that represents what we know rather than how we see. It depicts an objective reality that corresponds more closely to the picture in the mind's eye than the retinal image of linear perspective. It represents a mental map of the world that combines plan and elevational views into a single expression.

The ease with which we can construct an oblique drawing has a powerful appeal. If we orient a principal face of an object parallel to the picture plane, its shape remains true and we can draw it more easily. Thus, oblique views are especially convenient for representing an object that has a curvilinear, irregular, or complicated face.

While oblique projection can suggest the solidity of a three-dimensional object and produce a powerful illusion of space, it also allows the composition of lines to remain on the surface as a flat pattern. This can lead to optical illusions and therefore ambiguity in the reading of an oblique drawing.







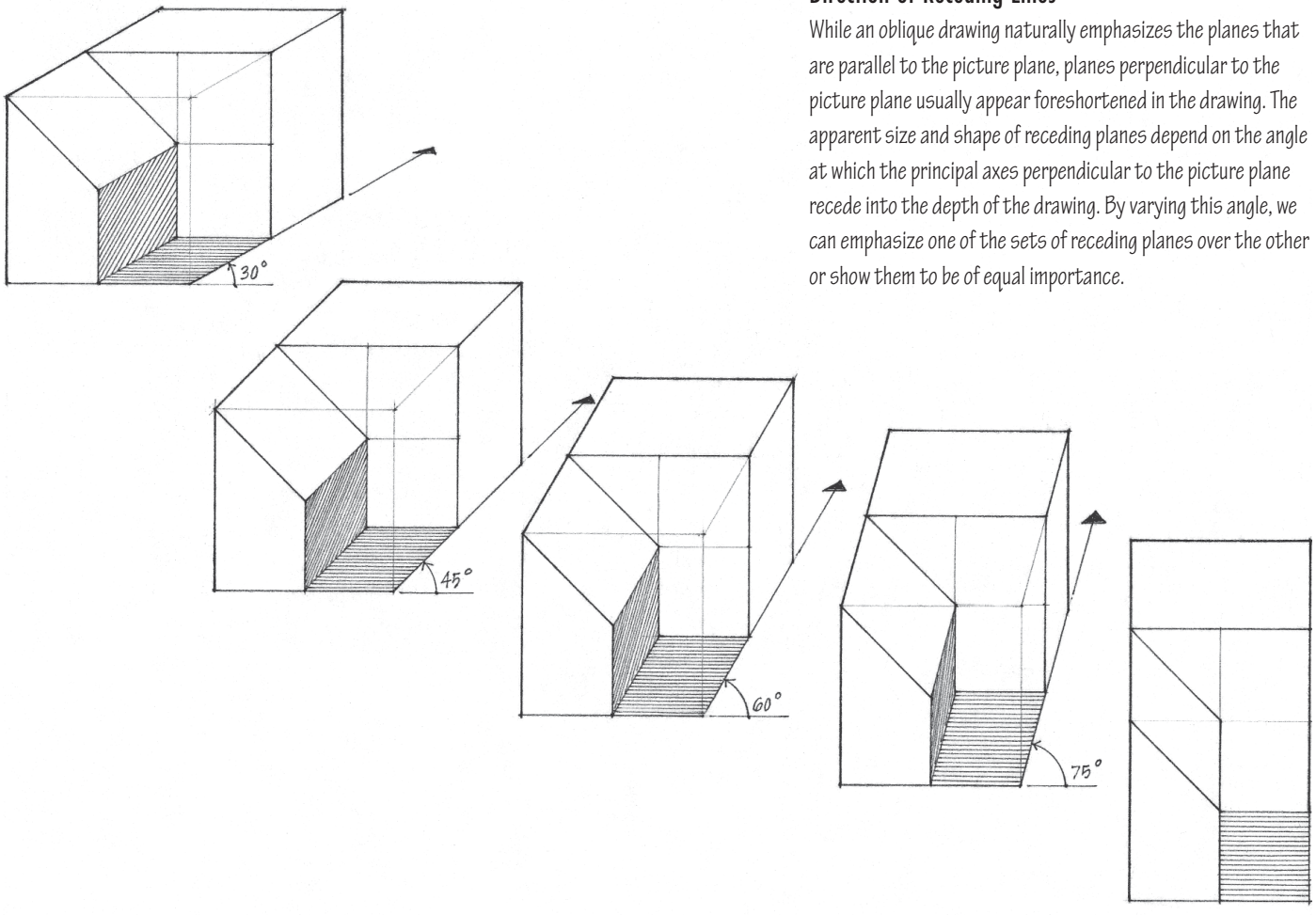
Oblique projection represents a three-dimensional object by extending parallel projectors at some angle other than 90° to the picture plane. We usually orient a principal face of the object parallel to the picture plane so that we can draw it to exact scale and represent its shape and proportion accurately. We can therefore construct an oblique drawing directly from an orthographic projection of that face.

There are two rules that minimize distortion and make an oblique drawing easier to construct.

- Orient the length of the object parallel to the picture plane in order to offset the appearance of distortion in the depth of the drawing.
- Orient the most complex or characteristic face of the object to the picture plane in order to show the true shape of the face and simplify construction. Once we draw the true shape of this face, we can extend or extrude it into the third dimension by simply drawing a series of lines parallel to the receding axis.

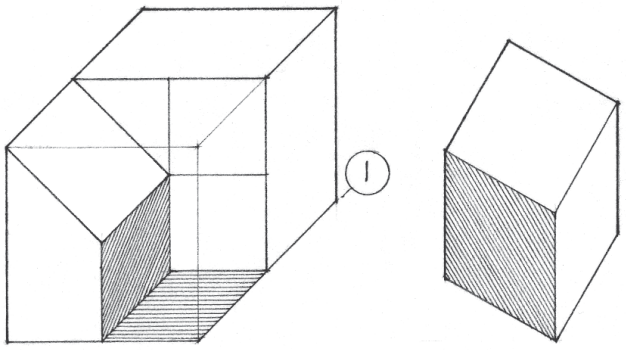
Direction of Receding Lines

While an oblique drawing naturally emphasizes the planes that are parallel to the picture plane, planes perpendicular to the picture plane usually appear foreshortened in the drawing. The apparent size and shape of receding planes depend on the angle at which the principal axes perpendicular to the picture plane recede into the depth of the drawing. By varying this angle, we can emphasize one of the sets of receding planes over the other or show them to be of equal importance.



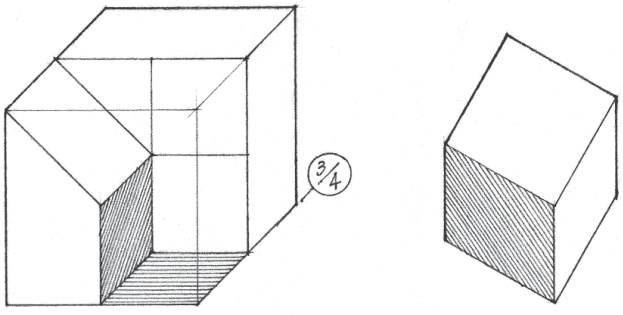
Length of Receding Lines

The angle that the oblique projectors form with the picture plane determines the lengths of the receding axial lines in an oblique drawing. If the projectors are at a 45° angle to the picture plane, the receding lines will be projected in their true length. At other angles, the projectors will cause the receding lines to appear either longer or shorter than their true length. In practice, we can lay out and draw the receding lines of an oblique drawing to their true lengths or at a reduced scale to offset the appearance of distortion.



Cavalier Projection

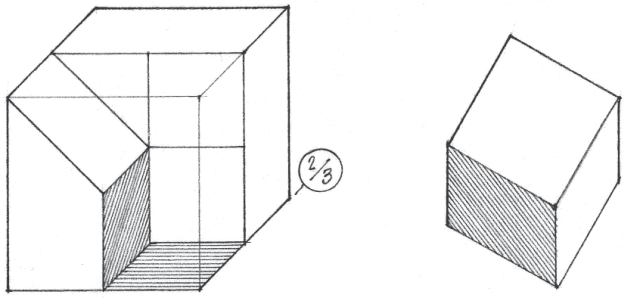
The term *cavalier* derives from the past use of this projection system in drawing fortifications. In cavalier projection, the projectors form a 45° angle with the picture plane. We can therefore draw the receding axial lines at the same scale as the lines parallel to the picture plane.

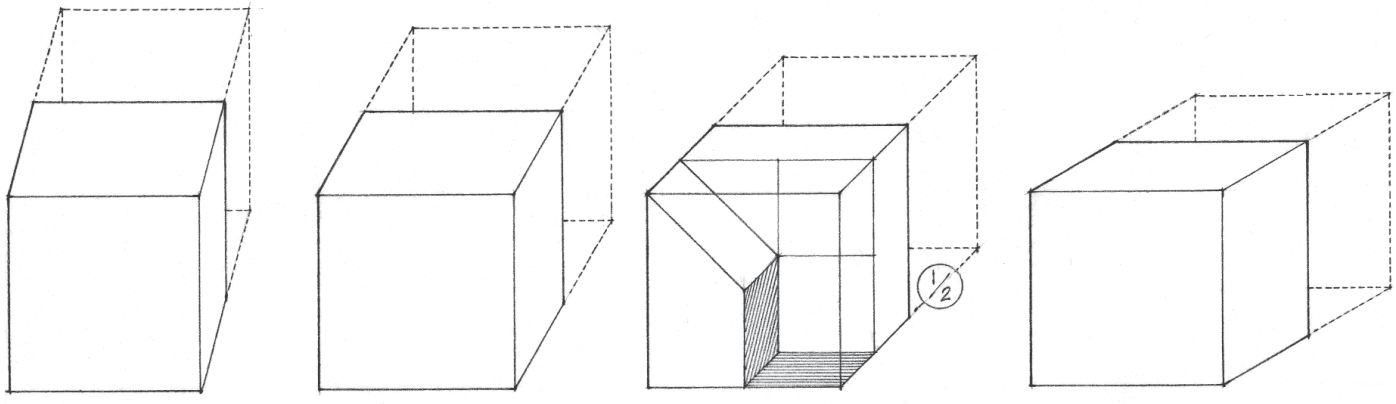


While the use of a single scale for all three principal axes greatly simplifies the construction of an oblique drawing, the lengths of receding lines can sometimes appear too long. To offset the appearance of distortion, we can foreshorten the receding lines by drawing their lengths at the same reduced scale, usually 2/3 to 3/4 of their true length.

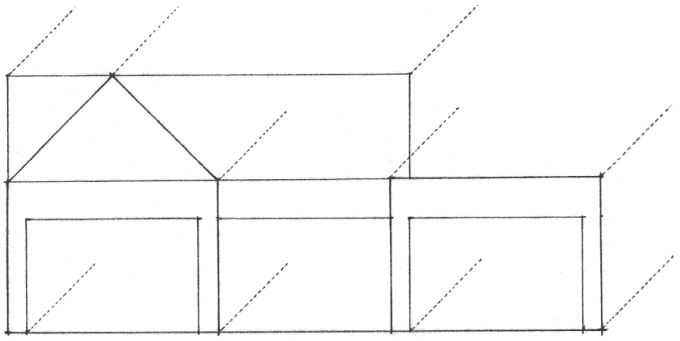
Cabinet Projection

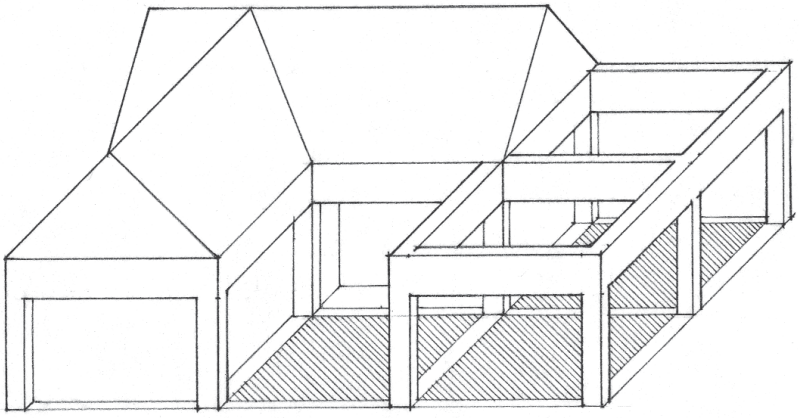
The term *cabinet* comes from its use in the furniture industry. In cabinet projection, a three-dimensional object is represented by an oblique drawing having all lines parallel to the picture plane drawn to exact scale and receding lines reduced to half-scale. Cabinet drawings suffer from a major pictorial defect—the length of receding lines can sometimes appear too short.





ELEVATION OBLIQUES



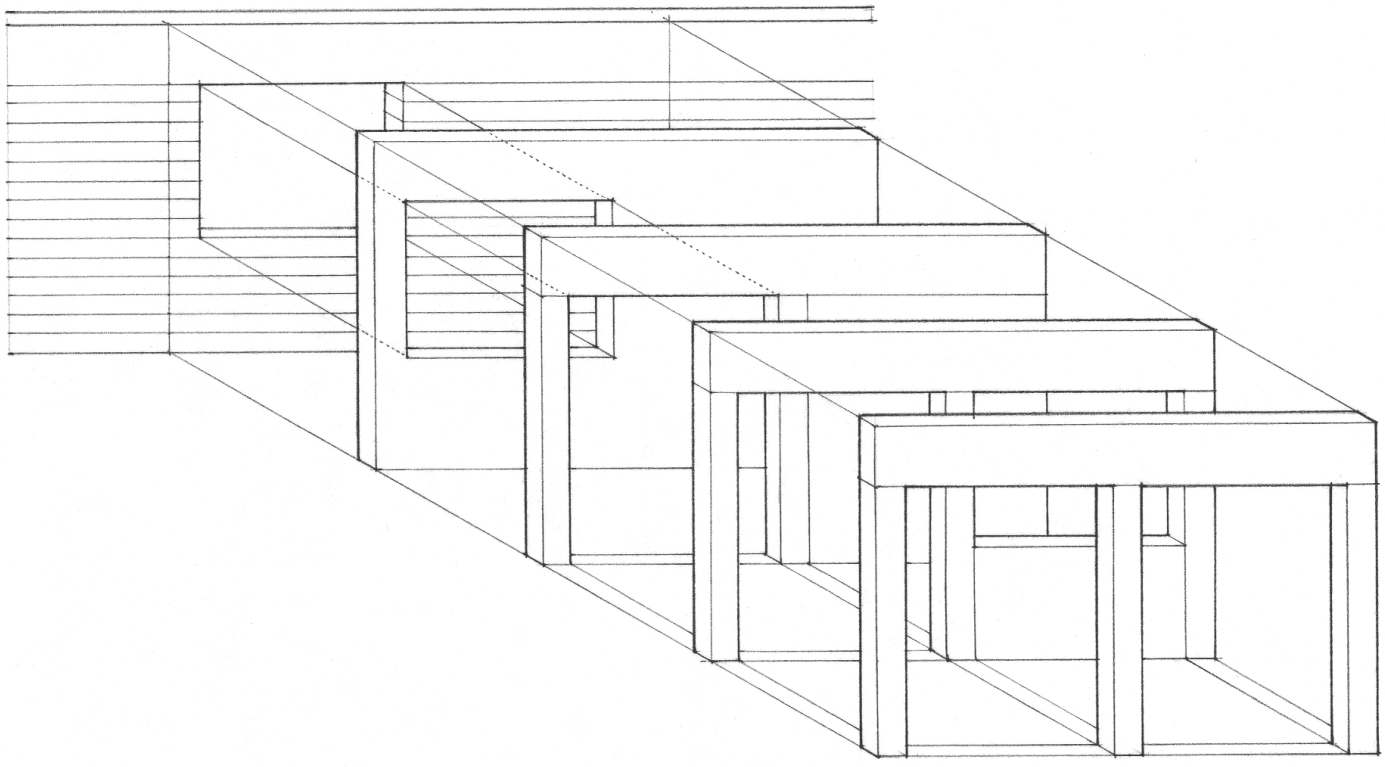


In architectural graphics, the two major types of oblique drawings are elevation obliques and plan obliques. Most of the examples on the previous two pages are elevation obliques.

An elevation oblique orients a principal vertical face parallel to the picture plane and therefore reveals its true shape and size. We can therefore construct an elevation oblique directly from an elevation view of the principal face. This face should be the longest, the most significant, or the most complex facade of the subject.

From significant points in the elevation view, we project the receding lines back at the desired angle into the depth of the drawing. In drafting with triangles, we typically use a 30°, 45°, or 60° angle for the receding lines. In freehand sketching, we need not be as precise, but once we establish an angle for the receding lines, we should apply it consistently.

Remember that the angle we use for the receding lines alters the apparent size and shape of the receding planes. By varying the angle, the horizontal and vertical sets of receding planes can receive different degrees of emphasis. In all cases, the primary emphasis remains on the vertical faces parallel to the picture plane.

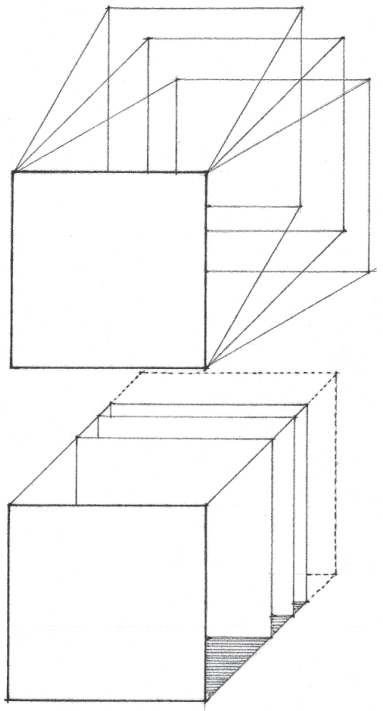


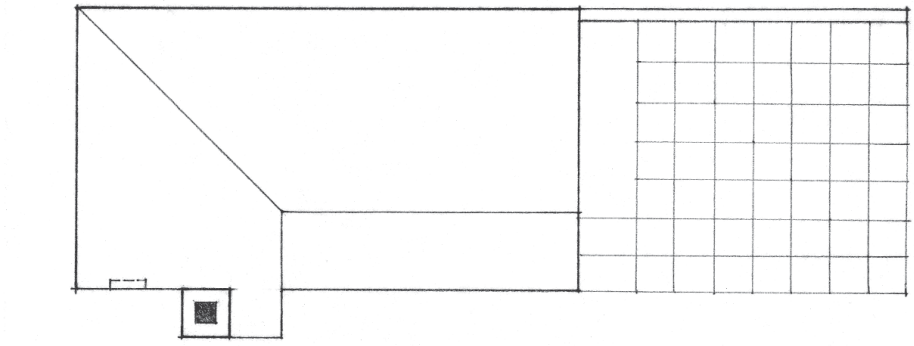
Exercise 7.7

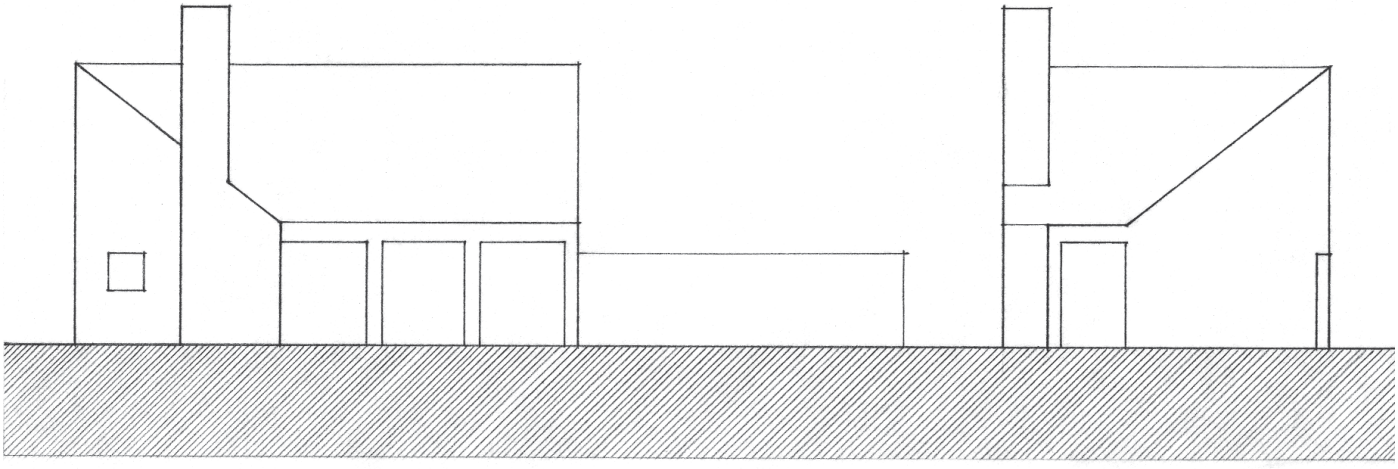
Construct two series of elevation obliques of the building form described in the set of multiview drawings. In the first series, draw the lines parallel to the receding axis at full scale but vary their direction—draw the receding lines first at 30° to the horizontal, then at 45° to the horizontal, and finally at 60° to the horizontal.

In the second series, draw the receding axis at 45° to the horizontal but vary its scale—draw the lines parallel to the receding axis first at three-quarter scale, then at two-third scale, and finally at one-half scale.

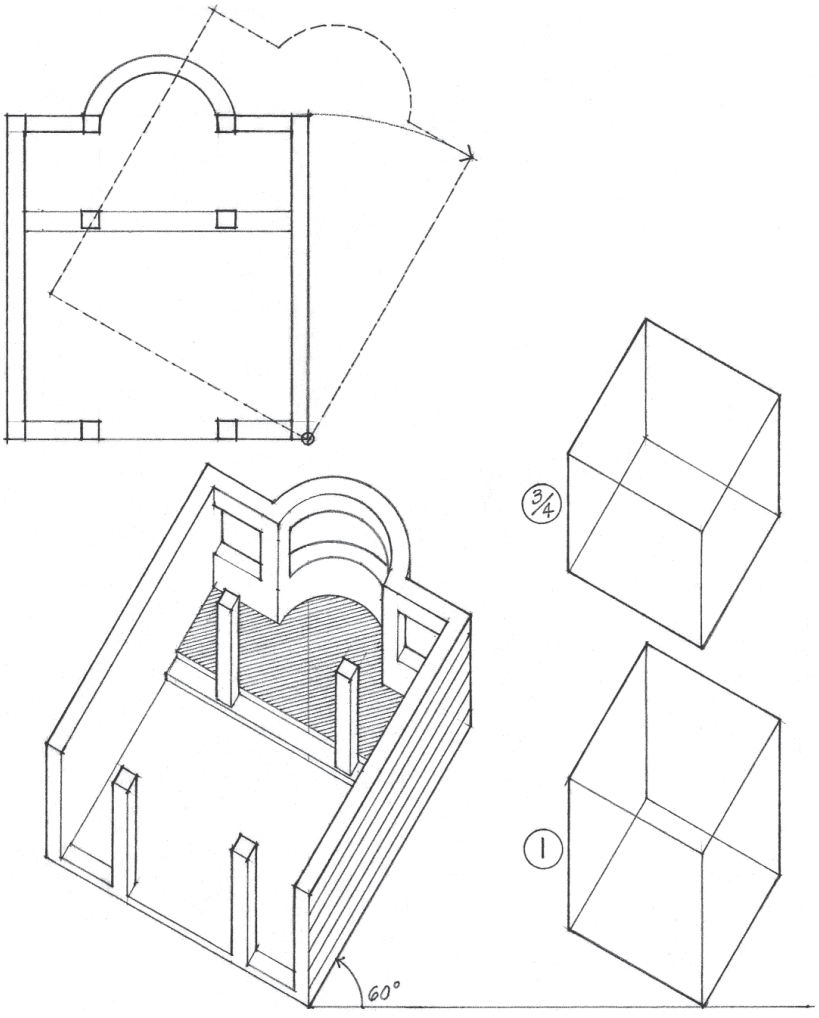
Compare the pictorial effects of the various elevation obliques. Do any of the elevation obliques appear to be too deep? Do any appear too shallow? Which sets of receding planes does each elevation oblique emphasize?







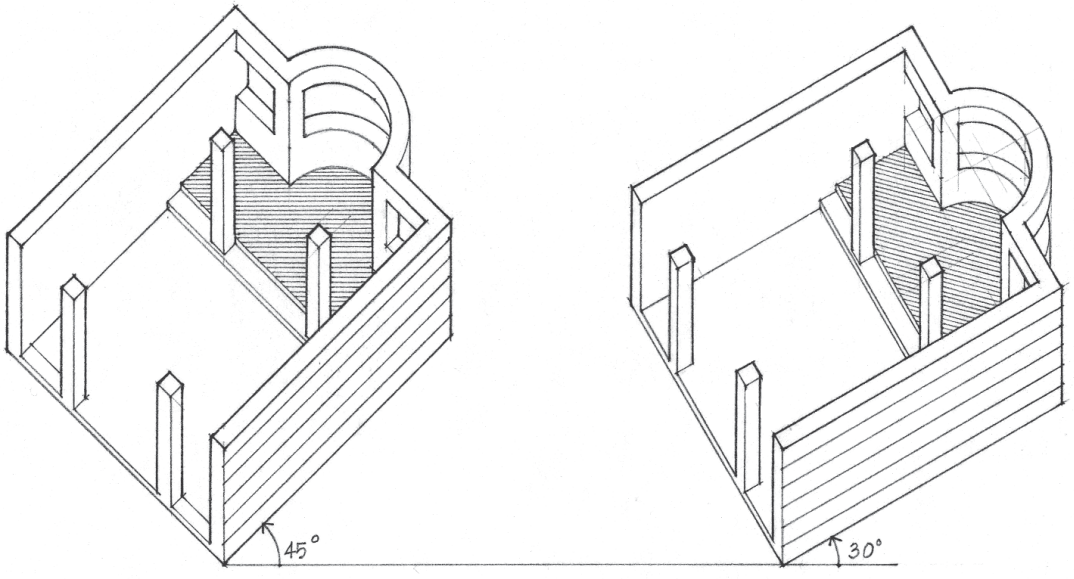
PLAN OBLIQUES



A plan oblique orients a horizontal plane or plan view parallel to the picture plane and therefore reveals its true shape and size. We usually rotate the plan view so that both sets of vertical planes appear in the oblique view. Rotating the plan offers a wide array of possible views in which the two sets of vertical planes can receive different degrees of emphasis. In all cases, however, plan obliques offer a higher point of view into an interior than isometric drawings and the primary emphasis remains on the horizontal set of planes.

In drafting with triangles, we rotate the plan 30°, 45°, or 60° from a horizontal on the drawing surface. In freehand sketching, we need not be as precise, but once we establish the angle of rotation, we should apply it consistently. We should remember that the angle we use determines the apparent size and shape of the vertical planes.

Once the plan is rotated to the desired angle, we draw the receding lines as verticals on the drawing surface. We can draw these verticals at the same scale as the plan view or foreshorten them if their lengths appear exaggerated.

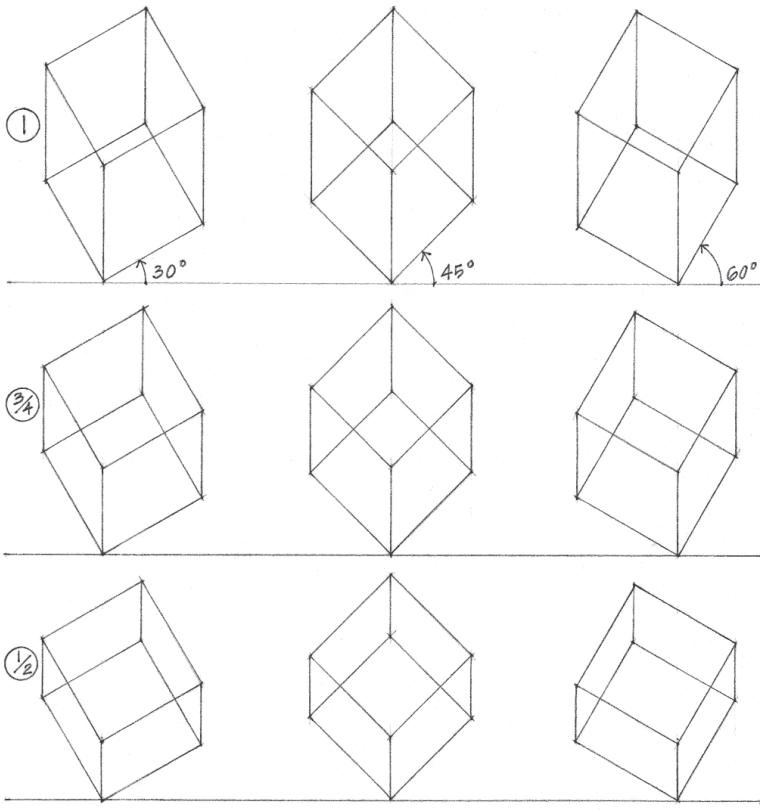


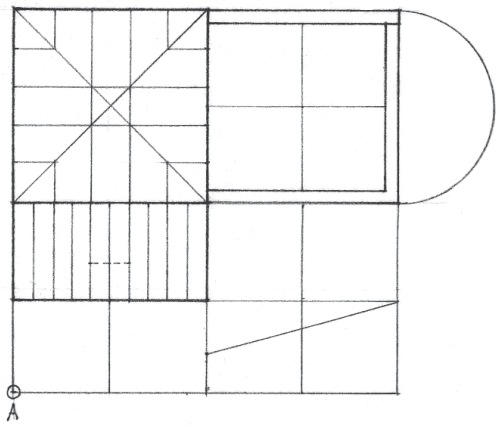
Exercise 7.8

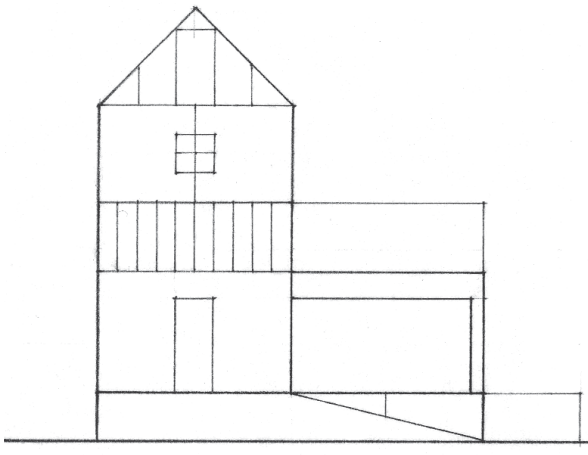
Construct three sets of plan obliques of the building form described in the set of multiview drawings. In the first series, draw the lines parallel to the vertical axis at full scale but rotate the plan view 30° clockwise about point A, then 45° clockwise about point A, and finally 60° clockwise about point A.

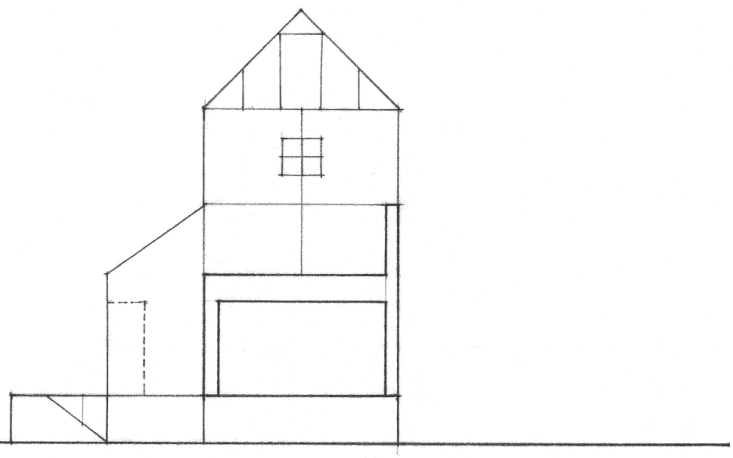
In the second and third series, rotate the plan view in the same way, but draw the lines parallel to the vertical axis at three-quarter scale and one-half scale, respectively.

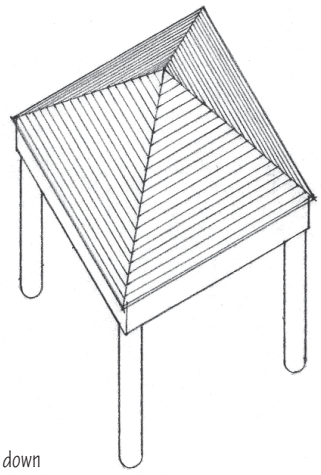
Compare the pictorial effects of the various plan obliques. Do any of the plan obliques appear to be too tall? Do any appear too short? Which sets of vertical planes does each plan oblique emphasize?



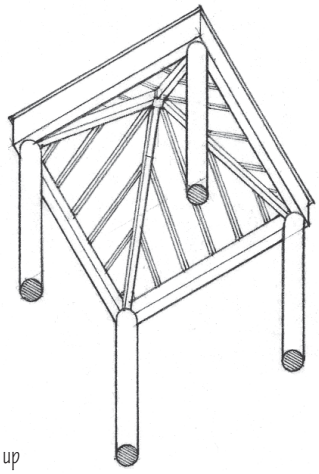








Looking down



Looking up

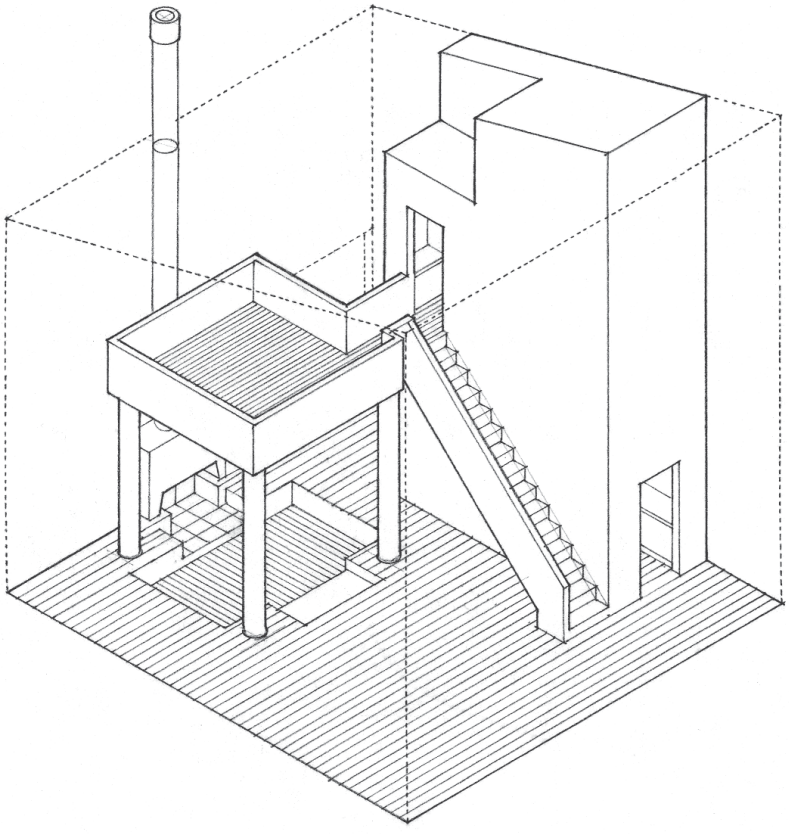
Paraline Views

Even though a paraline drawing always presents either an aerial view or a worm's-eye view of a subject, we can construct a paraline view in any of several ways to reveal more than the exterior form and configuration of a design. These techniques allow us to gain visual access to the interior of a spatial composition or the hidden portions of a complex construction. We categorize these techniques into phantom views, cutaway views, and expanded views.

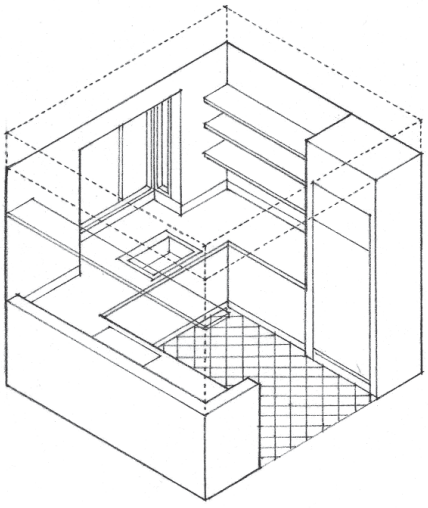
Phantom Views

A phantom view is a drawing having one or more parts made transparent to permit representation of internal information otherwise hidden from our view. This strategy effectively allows us to unveil an interior space or construction without removing any of its bounding planes or encompassing elements. Thus we are able to simultaneously see the whole composition as well as its internal structure and arrangement.

We use a phantom line to represent the transparency of a part, an alternative position of a moving part, the relative position of an absent part, or a repeated detail or feature. A phantom line is a broken line consisting of relatively long segments separated by two short dashes or dots. In practice, phantom lines may also consist of dashed, dotted, or even delicately drawn lines. The graphic description should include the thickness or volume of the transparent part as well as any details that may exist within its boundaries.



Condominium Unit No. 5, Sea Ranch, California, 1963–65, Moore, Lyndon, Turnbull, Whitaker



Cutaway Views

A cutaway view is a drawing having an outer section or layer removed to reveal an interior space or an internal construction. This strategy can also effectively manifest the relation of an interior to the exterior environment.

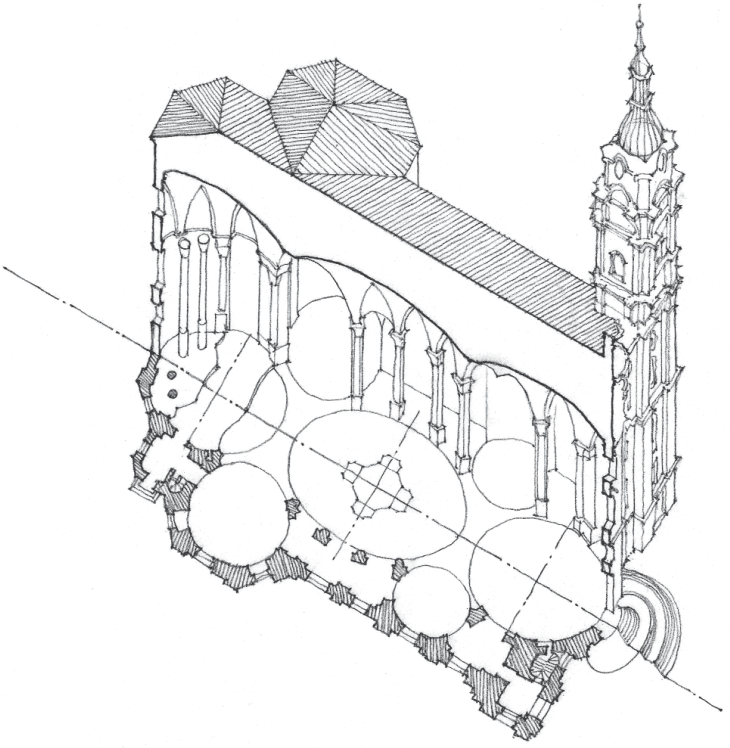
The simplest method for creating a cutaway view is to remove an outer or bounding layer of a composition or construction. For example, removing a roof, ceiling, or wall allows us to look down and see into an interior space. Removing a floor permits a view up into a space.

We can remove a larger section by slicing through the heart of a composition. When a composition exhibits bilateral symmetry, we can make this cut along the axis and indicate the footprint or plan view of the part removed. In a similar fashion, we can create a cutaway view of a radially symmetrical composition by slicing through the center and removing a quadrant or similar pie-shaped portion.

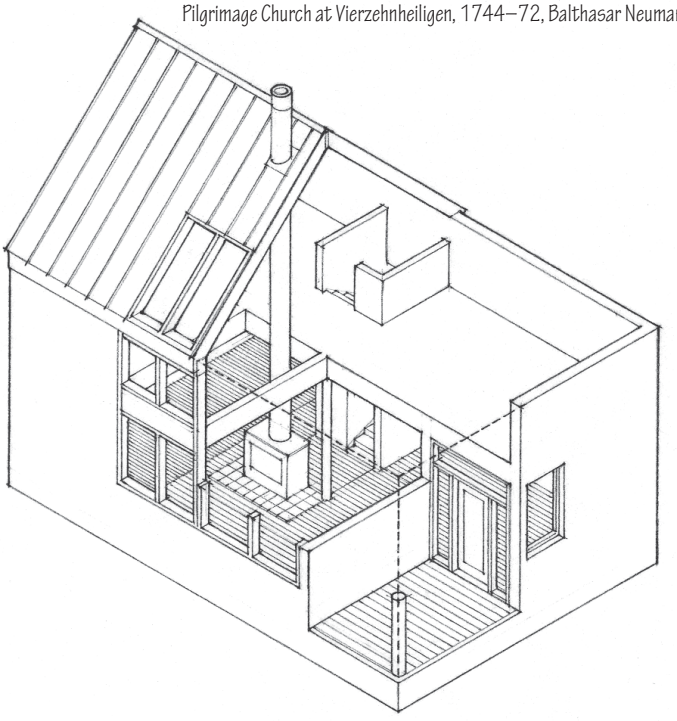
To reveal a more complex composition, the cut may follow a three-dimensional route. In this case, the trajectory of the cut should clarify the nature of the internal organization and arrangement and be clearly articulated by a contrast in line weights or tonal values.

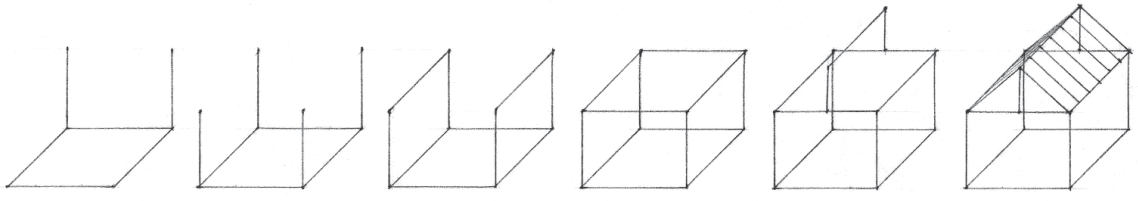
Even though a portion is removed in a cutaway view, its presence can remain in the drawing if we delineate its outer boundaries with a dotted, dashed, or delicate line. Indicating the external form of what is removed helps the viewer retain a sense of the whole.

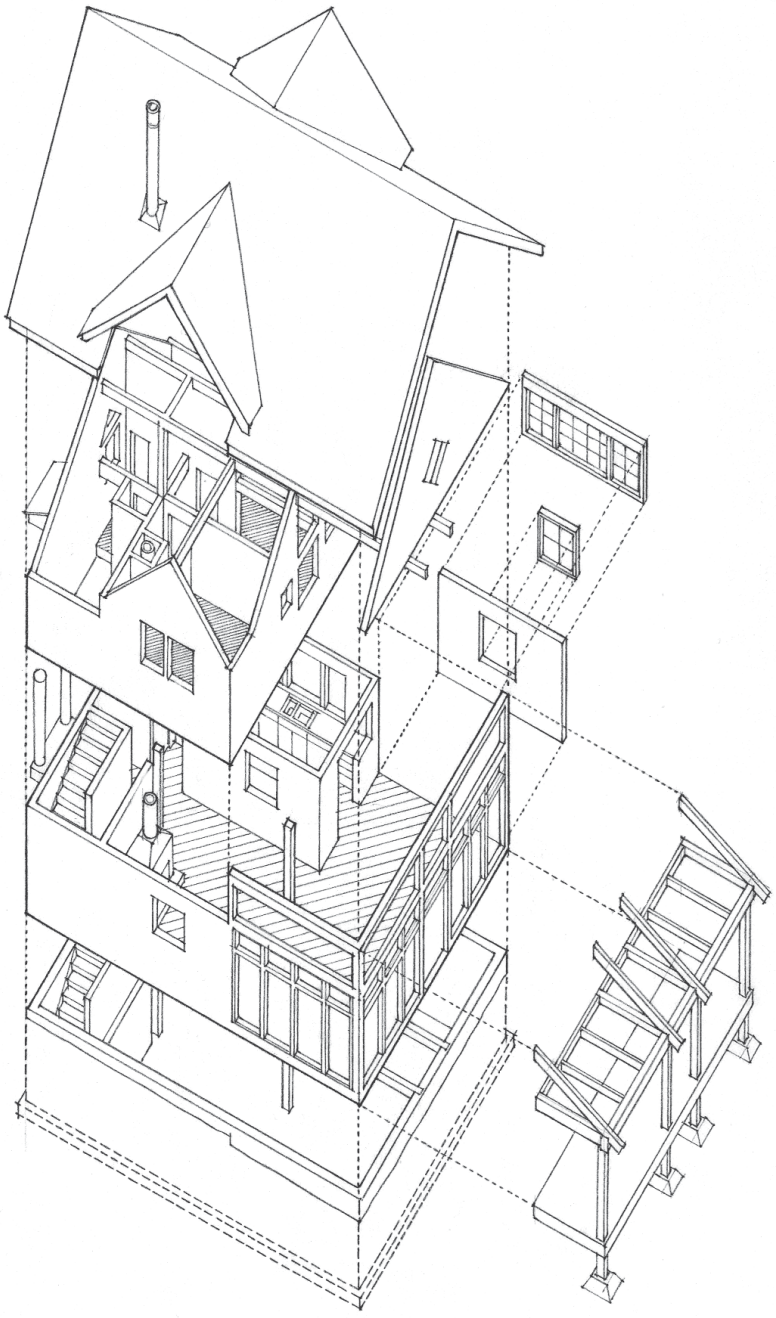
While a paraline is a single-view drawing useful in displaying three-dimensional relationships, a series of paraline views can effectively explain processes and phenomena that occur in time or across space. A progression of paraline drawings can explain a sequence of assembly or the stages of a construction, with each view successively building upon the preceding one.



Pilgrimage Church at Vierzehnheiligen, 1744–72, Balthasar Neumann





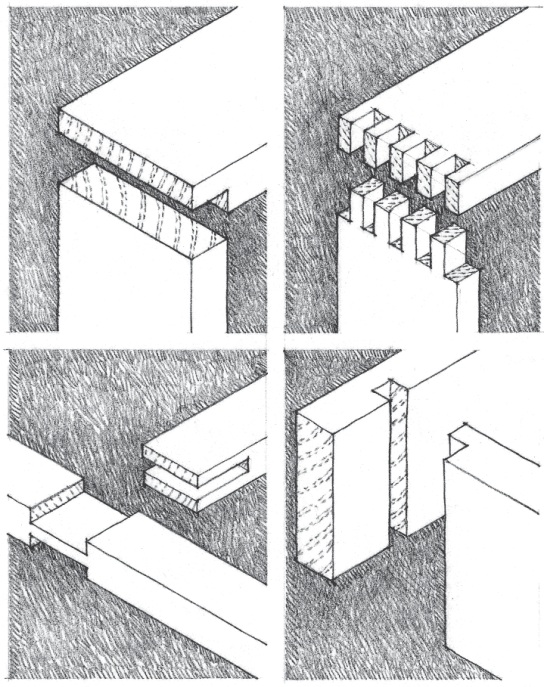


Expanded Views

The portions removed from a drawing may not disappear but merely shift to new positions in space, developing into what we call an expanded or exploded view. An expanded view shows the individual components of a construction or assembly separately but indicates their proper relation to one another and to the whole. The finished drawing appears to be an explosion frozen at a point in time when the relationships between the parts are most clear.

The displacement of the parts should be in the order and direction in which they fit together. For axial compositions, the expansion occurs either along the axis or perpendicular to it. For rectangular compositions, the parts relocate along or parallel to the principal axes. In all cases, we indicate the relationships among the parts to one another and to the whole with dotted, dashed, or delicately drawn lines.

Expanded views are extremely useful in describing the details, layering, or sequence of a construction assembly. At a larger scale, expanded views can effectively illustrate vertical relationships in buildings as well as horizontal connections across space. In clarifying spatial relationships and organizations through displacement, expanded views can simultaneously combine the revealing aspects of phantom and cutaway views.



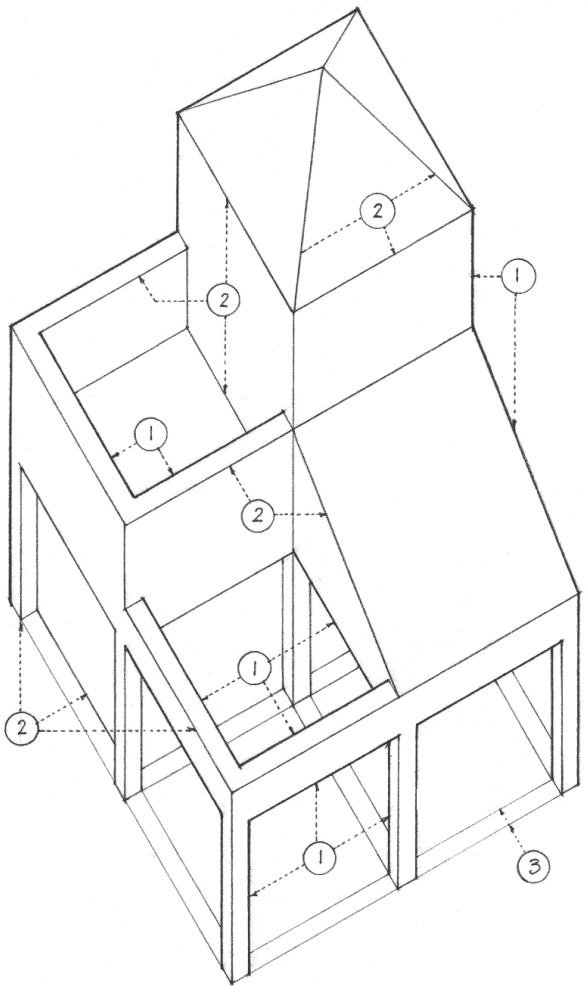
Conveying Depth

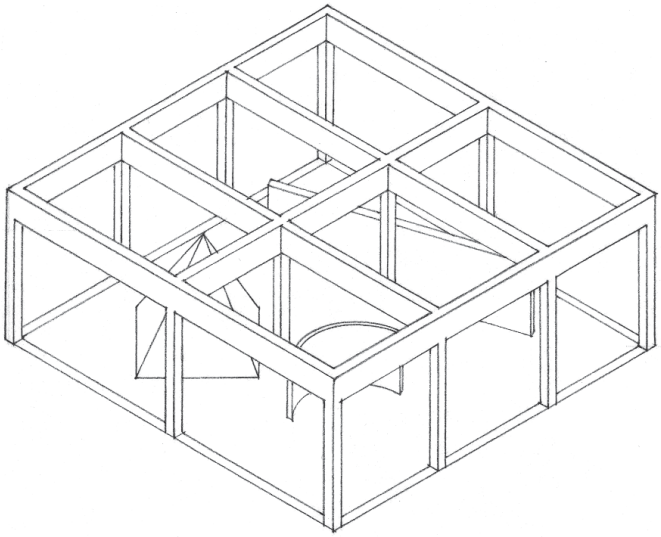
Even a simple line drawing of a paraline view induces a powerful sensation of space. This is due not only to the depth cue of overlap, but also our perception of parallelograms as rectangles occupying space. We can enhance the perceived depth of a paraline drawing by contrasting line weights or tonal values.

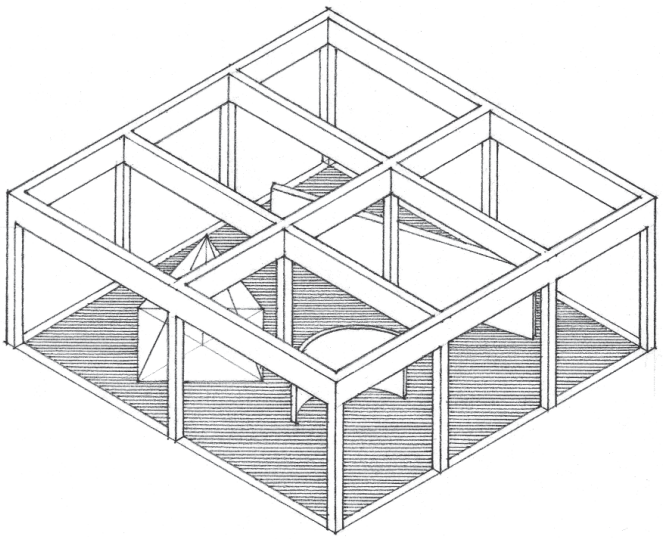
We use a hierarchy of line weights to distinguish among spatial edges, planar corners, and surface lines.

1. Spatial edges are the boundaries of a form separated from their background by some intervening space.
2. Planar corners are the intersections of two or more planes that are visible to the eye.
3. Surface lines are lines that represent an abrupt contrast in color, tonal value, or material; they do not represent a change in form.

To separate planes in space, clarify their different orientations, and especially to distinguish between the horizontal and the vertical, we can use contrasting tonal values, textures, or patterns. The most important distinction to establish is the orthogonal relationship between horizontal and vertical planes. Applying a tonal value to the horizontal planes in a paraline view not only establishes a visual base for the drawing but also aids in defining the shape and orientation of the vertical planes.

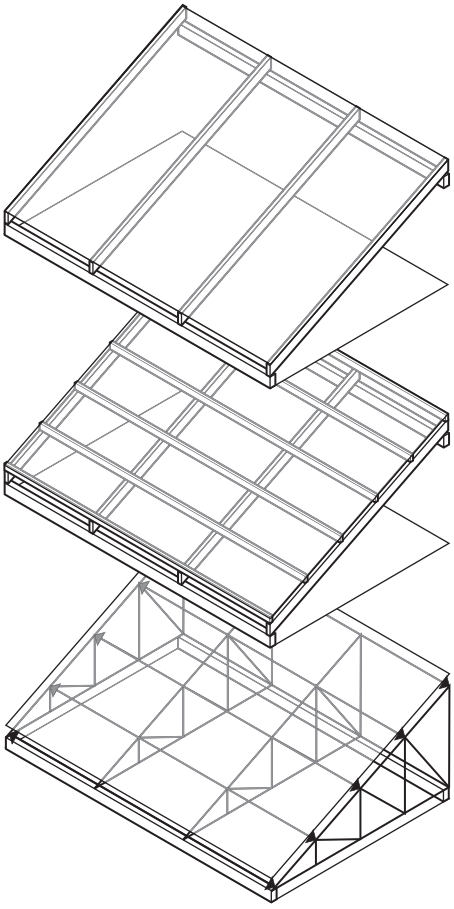


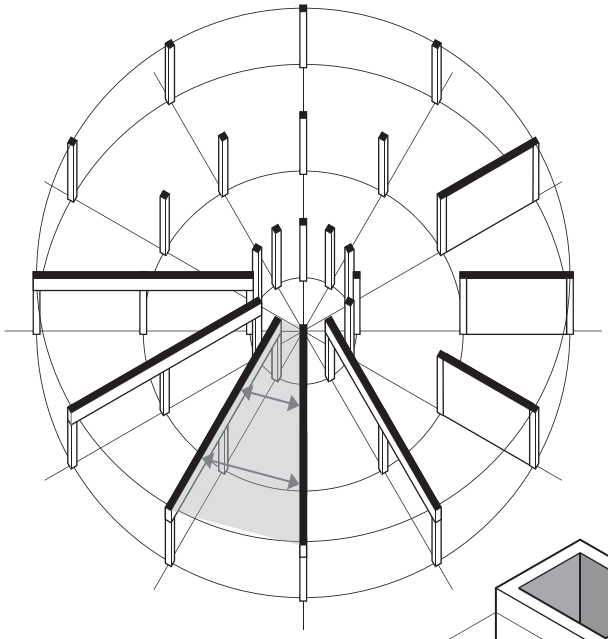


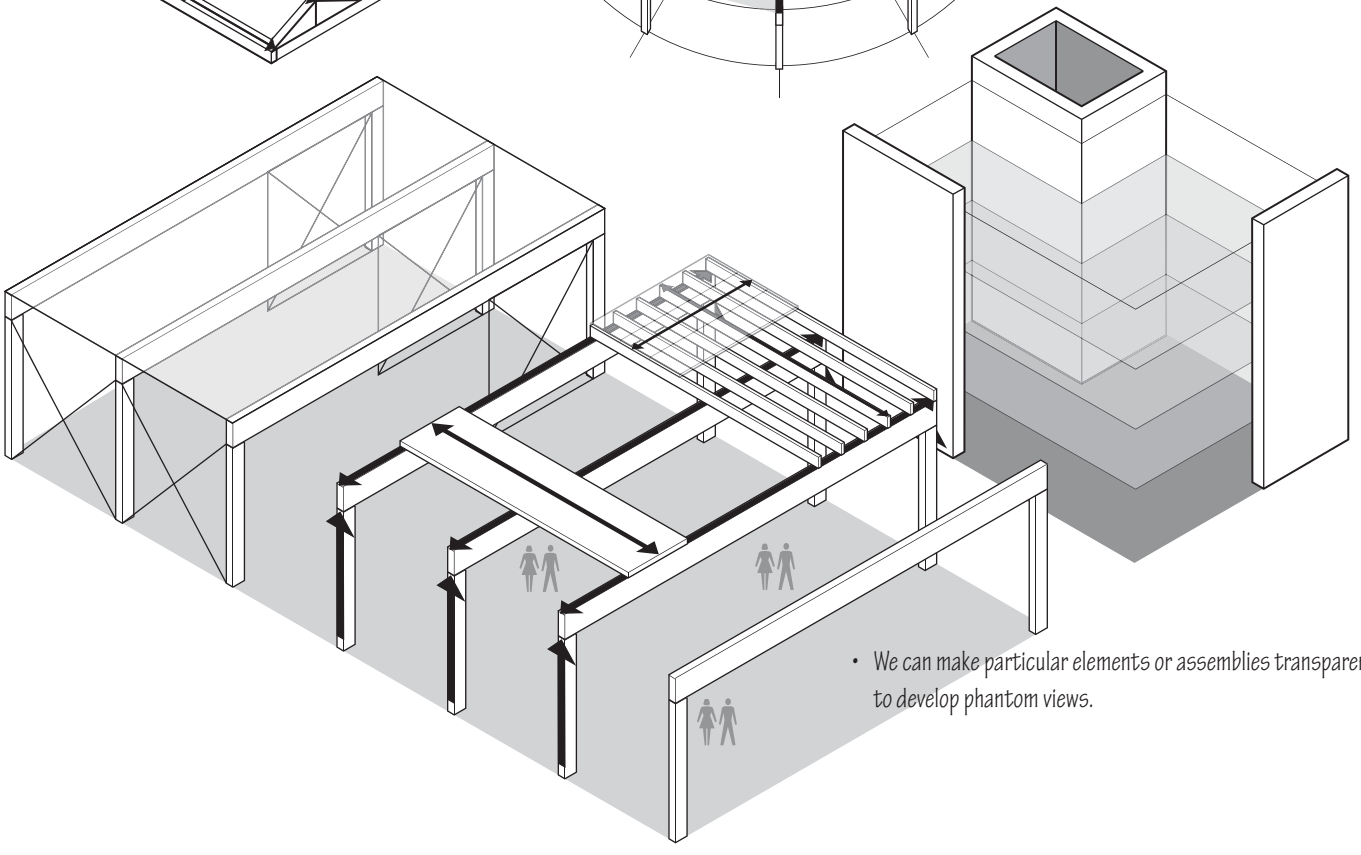


PARALINE VIEWS

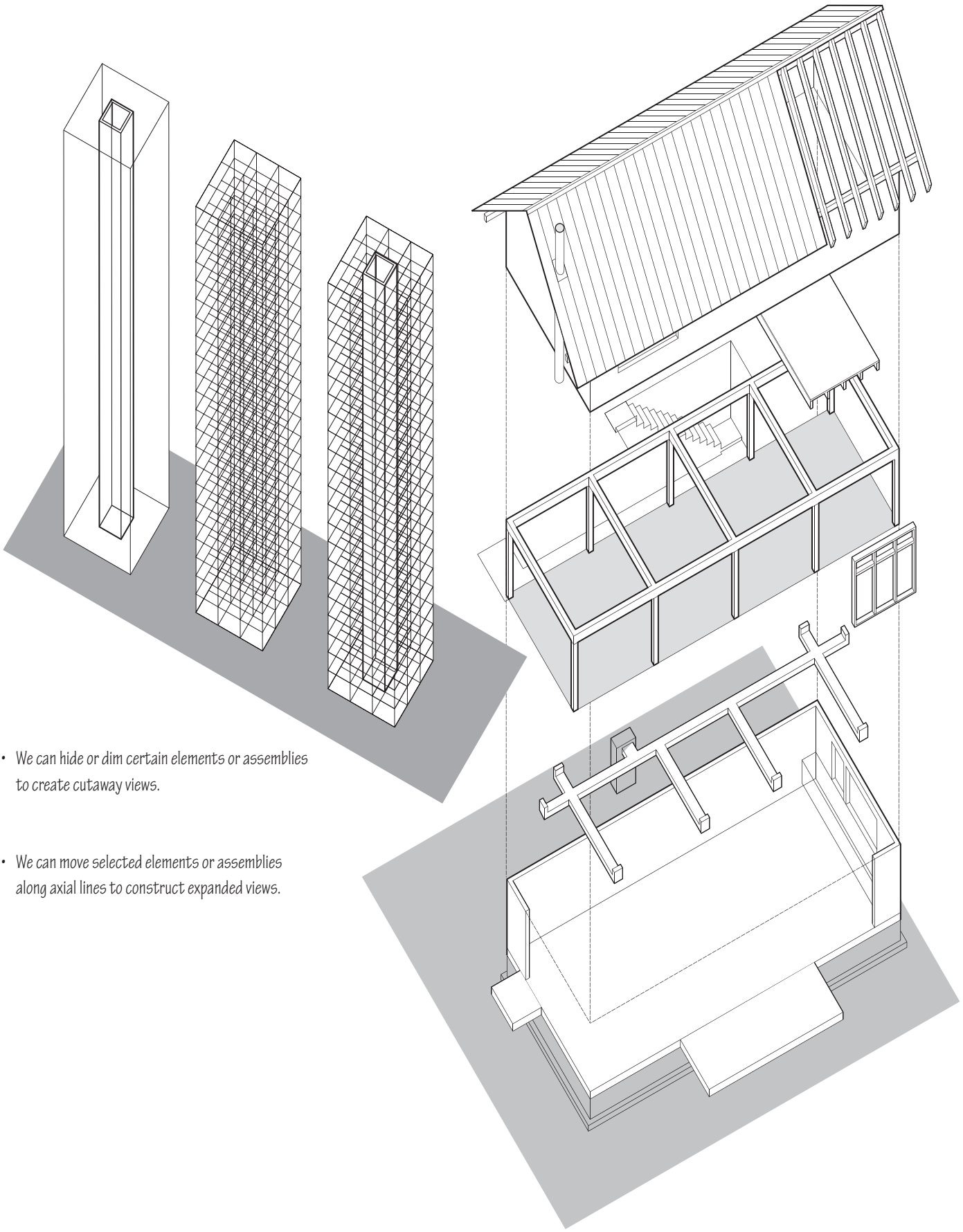
The grouping and layering functions of 2D drawing and 3D modeling and CAD programs give us the ability to more easily create the different types of paraline views. By organizing elements and assemblies of a three-dimensional construction into separate groups or layers, we can selectively control their location, visibility, and appearance, as illustrated on this and the facing page.





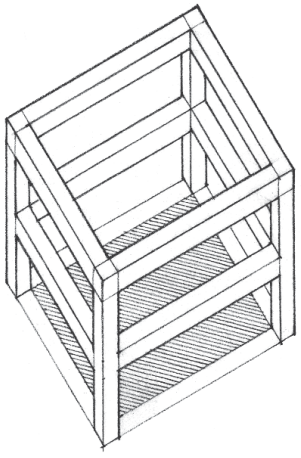


- We can make particular elements or assemblies transparent to develop phantom views.



- We can hide or dim certain elements or assemblies to create cutaway views.

- We can move selected elements or assemblies along axial lines to construct expanded views.



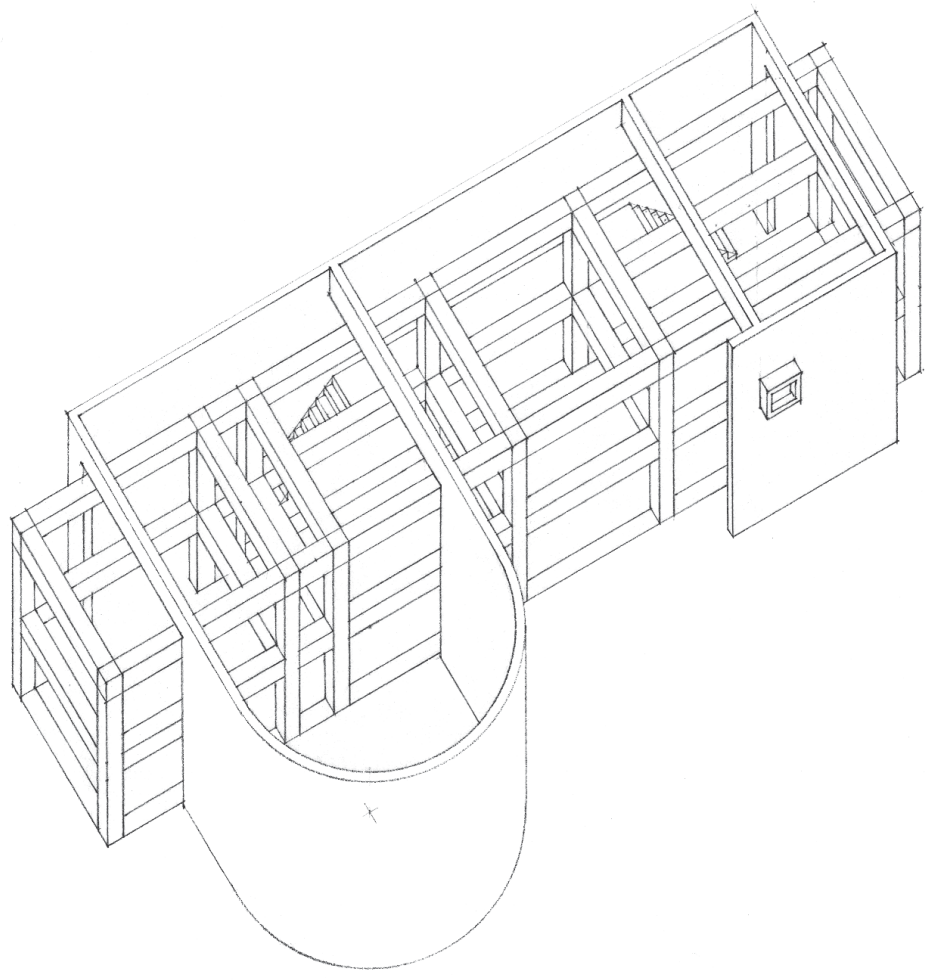
Exercise 7.9

Illustrated is a paraline view of the Hirabayashi Residence in Yamada, Japan, designed by Tadao Ando in 1975. First draw the paraline view with a single line weight. Then use a hierarchy of line weights to differentiate spatial edges, planar corners, and surface lines.

Remember that line weight is not simply a matter of density. Rather, we rely on contrasting line thicknesses to distinguish one line weight from another.

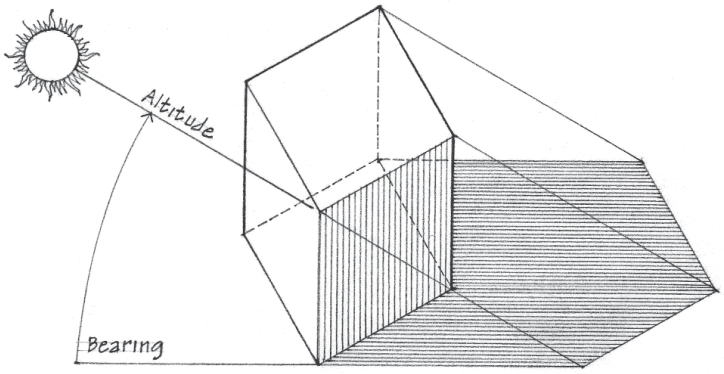
Exercise 7.10

For more practice in articulating spatial edges, planar corners, and surface lines, apply a hierarchy of line weights to any of the paraline views executed in Exercises 7.4 through 7.8.

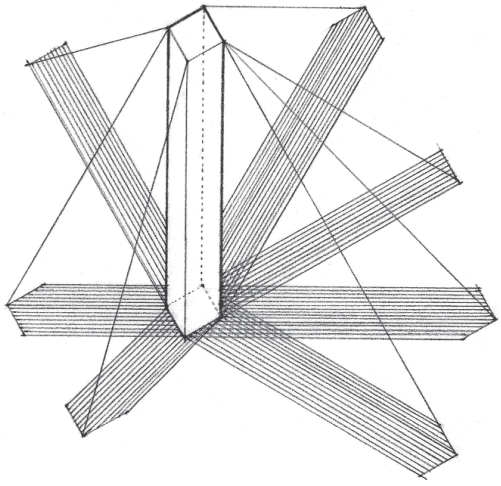


Shade and Shadows

The casting of shade and shadows in a paraline drawing enhances our perception of the three-dimensional nature of volumes and masses and articulates their spatial relationships. In addition, the tonal values used in rendering shades and shadows can help differentiate between vertical, horizontal, and sloping planes. For the basic concepts and terminology of shade and shadows, refer back to Chapter 6.

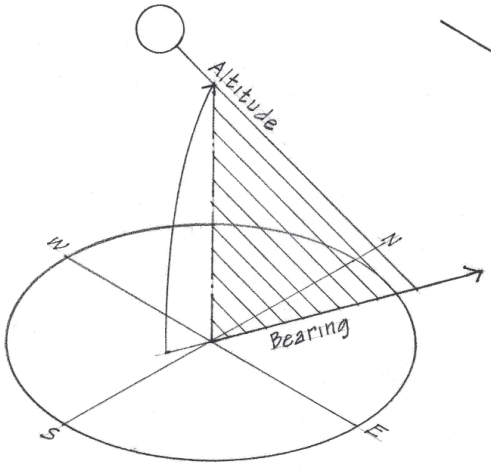


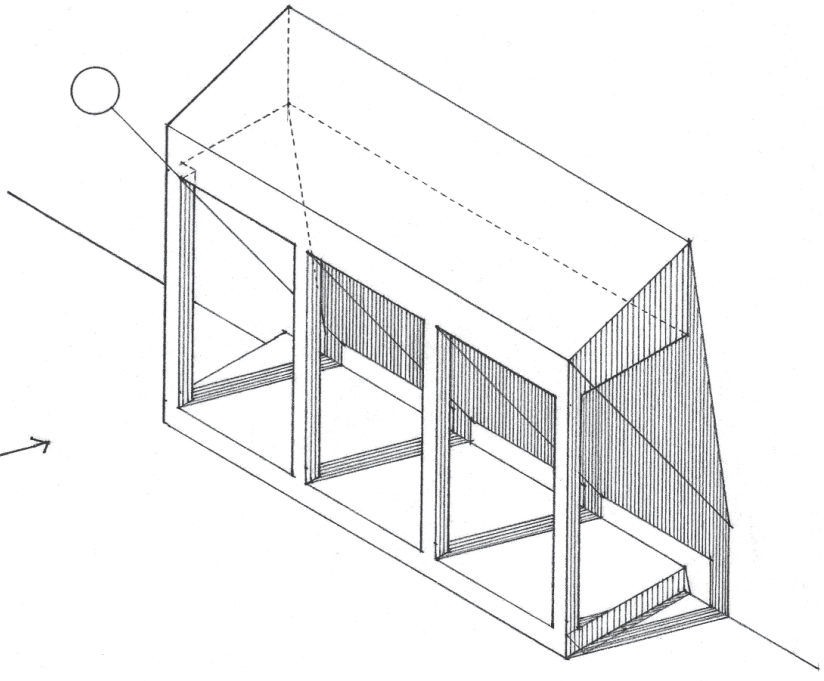
It is convenient to visualize the three-dimensional relationships among light rays, shade lines, and cast shadows in paraline views because they are pictorial in nature and display the three major spatial axes simultaneously. In addition, parallel light rays and their bearing directions remain parallel in a paraline drawing.

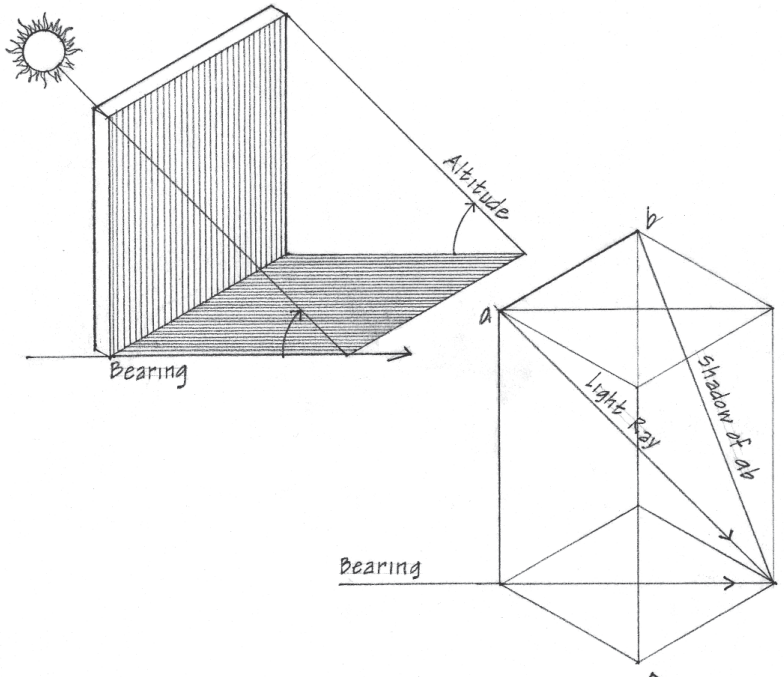


To construct shade and shadows, it is necessary to assume a source and direction of light. Deciding on a direction of light is a problem in composition as well as communication. Remember that cast shadows should clarify rather than confuse the nature of the forms and their spatial relationships. The lower the angle of light, the deeper the shadows; the steeper the angle, the shallower the shadows. In any case, the resulting shadow patterns should not conceal more than they reveal about the forms being depicted.

Occasionally it may be desirable to determine the actual conditions of light, shade, and shadow. For example, when studying the effects of solar radiation and shadow patterns on thermal comfort and energy conservation, it is necessary to construct shades and shadows using the actual sun angles for specific times and dates of the year.



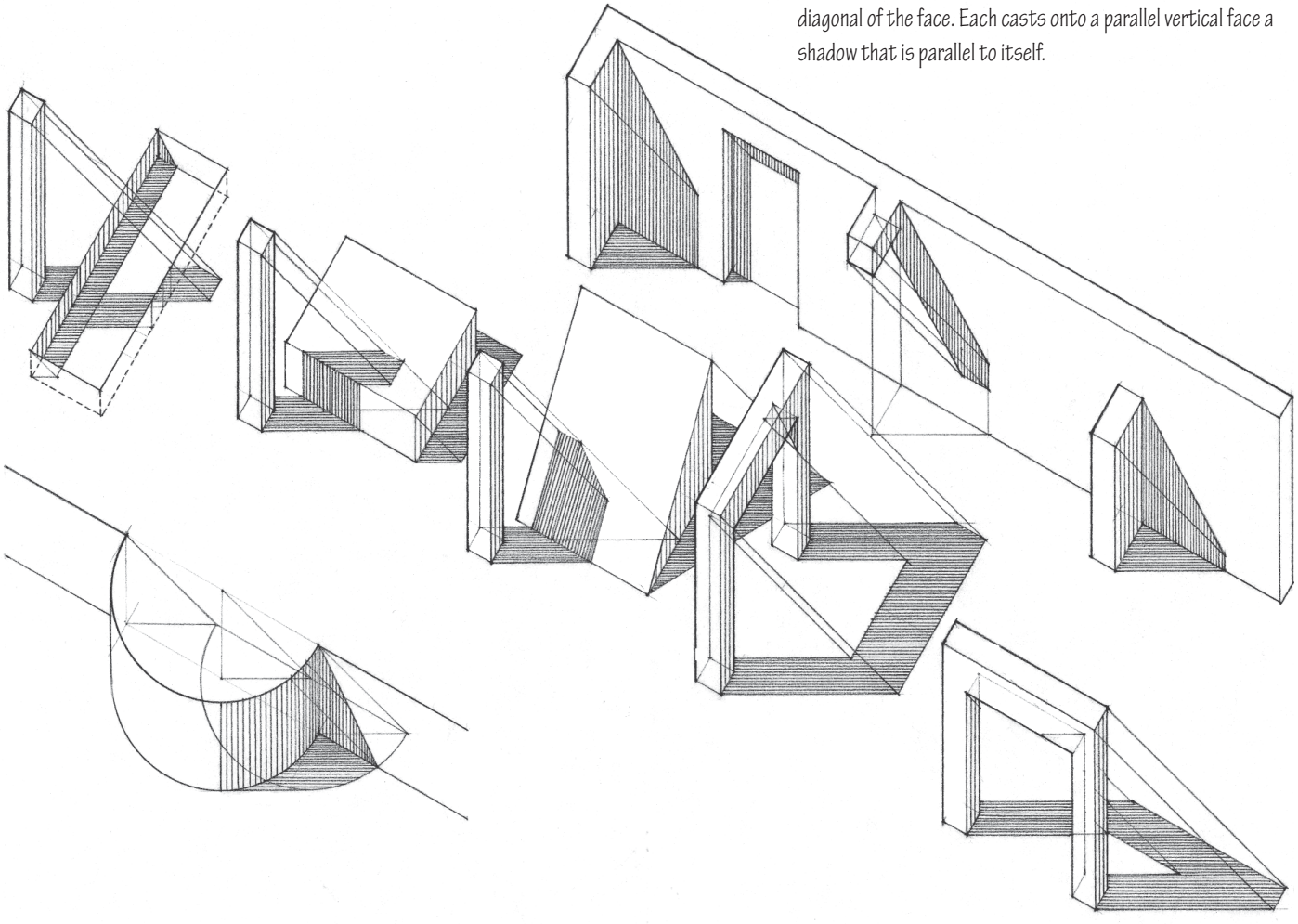




For ease of construction, the bearing direction of the light rays is often parallel with the picture plane and emanates from either the observer's left or right. Consequently, the altitude of the light rays appears true in the drawing and their bearing direction remains horizontal. While the desired depth of shadows should determine the altitude of the light rays, we often use 30°, 45°, or 60° angles because of their convenience when drafting with 45° and 30°/60° triangles.

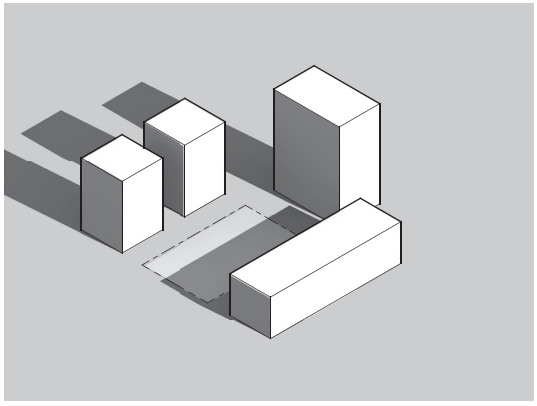
We can construct a rectangular prism to discern the direction of shadows cast by vertical and horizontal lines parallel to the major axes of a paraline drawing. From the apex of a vertical shade line, draw the direction of the light rays to meet the shadow cast by the line on a horizontal surface in the bearing direction of the light. This is the volumetric diagonal of the prism. Then construct the remaining edges of the prism parallel to the major axes of the paraline drawing.

Each of the upper horizontal edges casts onto a vertical face to which it is perpendicular a shadow in the direction of the diagonal of the face. Each casts onto a parallel vertical face a shadow that is parallel to itself.

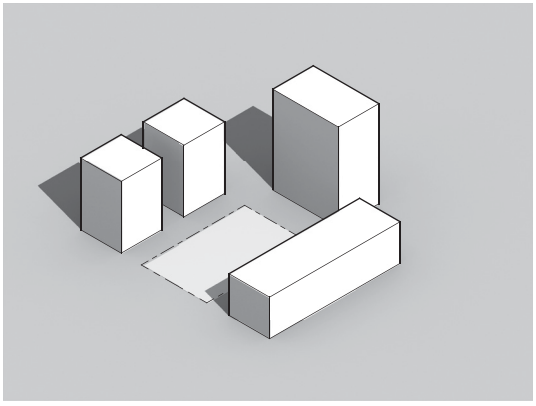


Digital Shade and Shadows

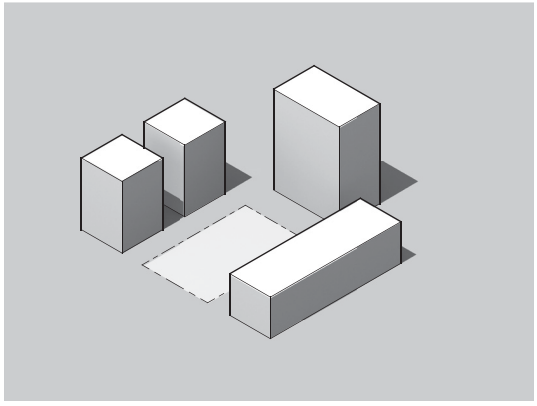
3D modeling software typically includes the ability to specify the direction of sunlight according to the hour of the day and the time of the year, and to cast shade and shadows automatically in both paraline and perspective views. This feature can be especially useful in the schematic design phase to study the form of a building or the massing of a building complex on a site and to evaluate the impact of the shadows they cast on adjacent buildings and outdoor areas.



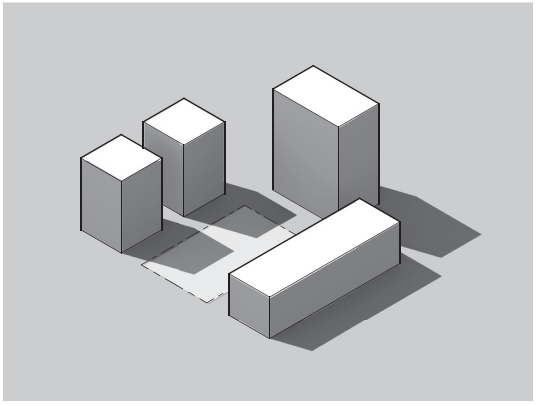
• Summer solstice, 7 am



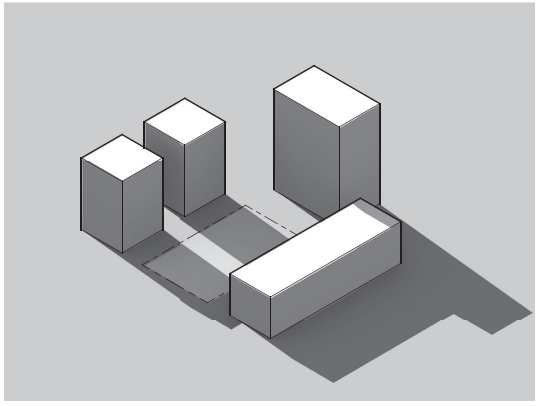
• Summer solstice, 9 am



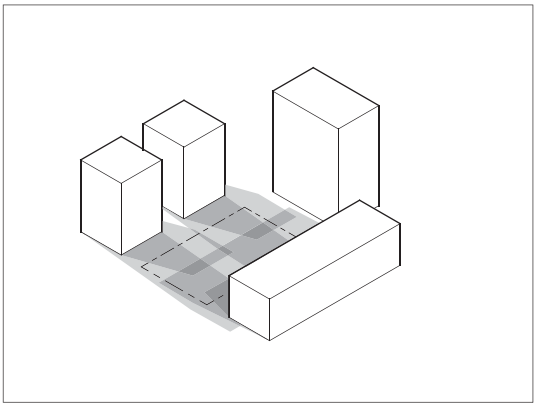
• Summer solstice, noon



• Summer solstice, 3 pm

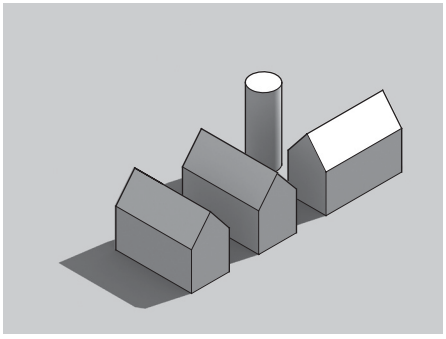


• Summer solstice, 5 pm

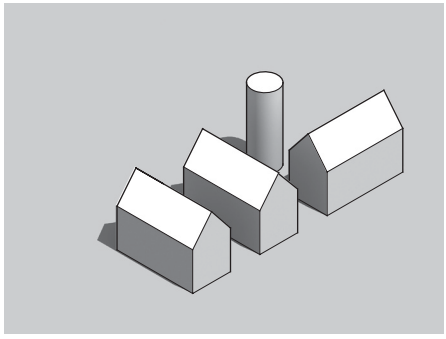


• Summer solstice, composite of shadows from 7 am to 5 pm

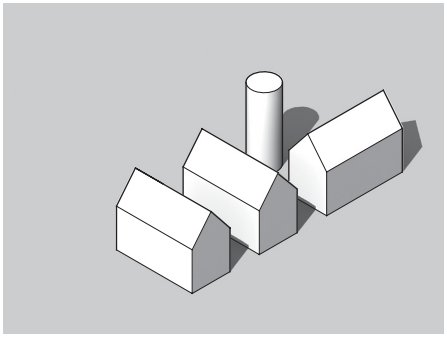
The digital technique for determining what surfaces are in shade and the shapes of the shadows cast in a three-dimensional image or scene is referred to as ray casting. While efficient and useful for preliminary design studies, ray casting does not take into account the way the light rays from an illuminating source are absorbed, reflected, or refracted by the surfaces of forms and spaces. For a visual comparison of digital lighting methods, see pages 386–387.



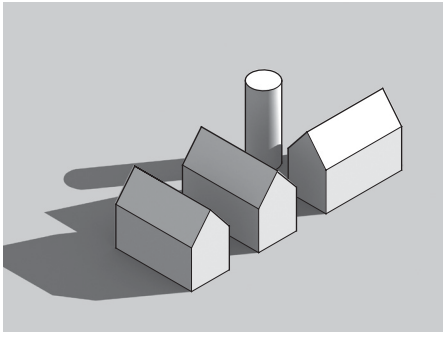
• Summer solstice, 9 am



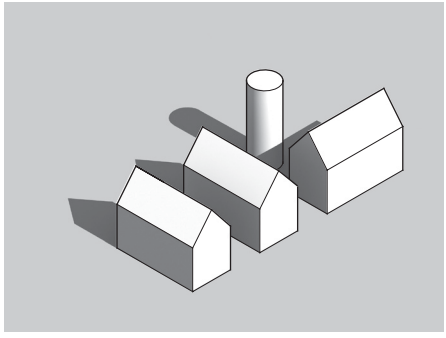
• Summer solstice, noon



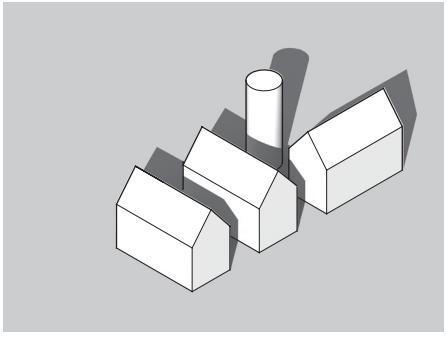
• Summer solstice, 3 pm



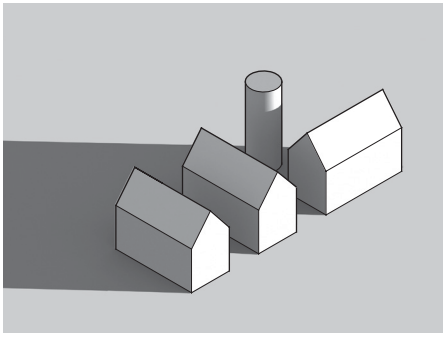
• Spring and fall equinox, 9 am



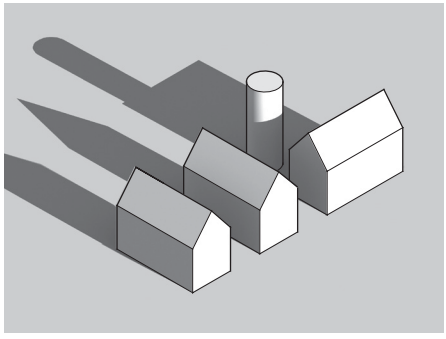
• Spring and fall equinox, noon



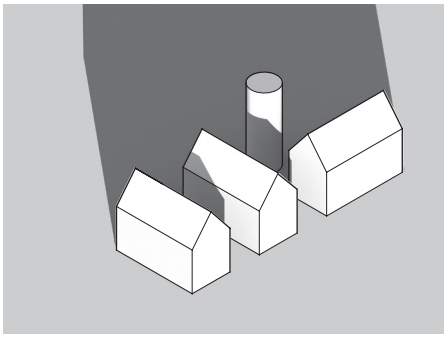
• Spring and fall equinox, 3 pm



• Winter solstice, 9 am



• Winter solstice, noon



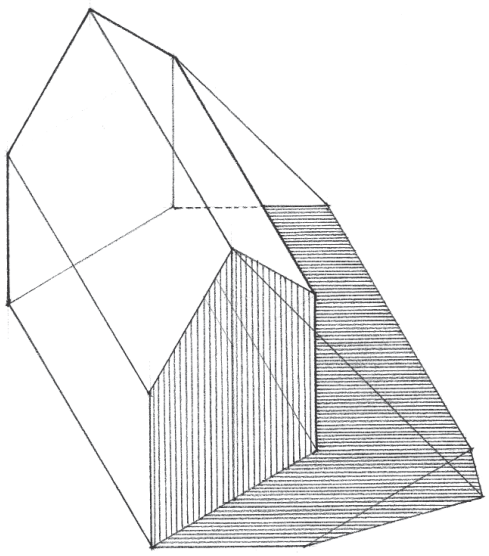
• Winter solstice, 3 pm

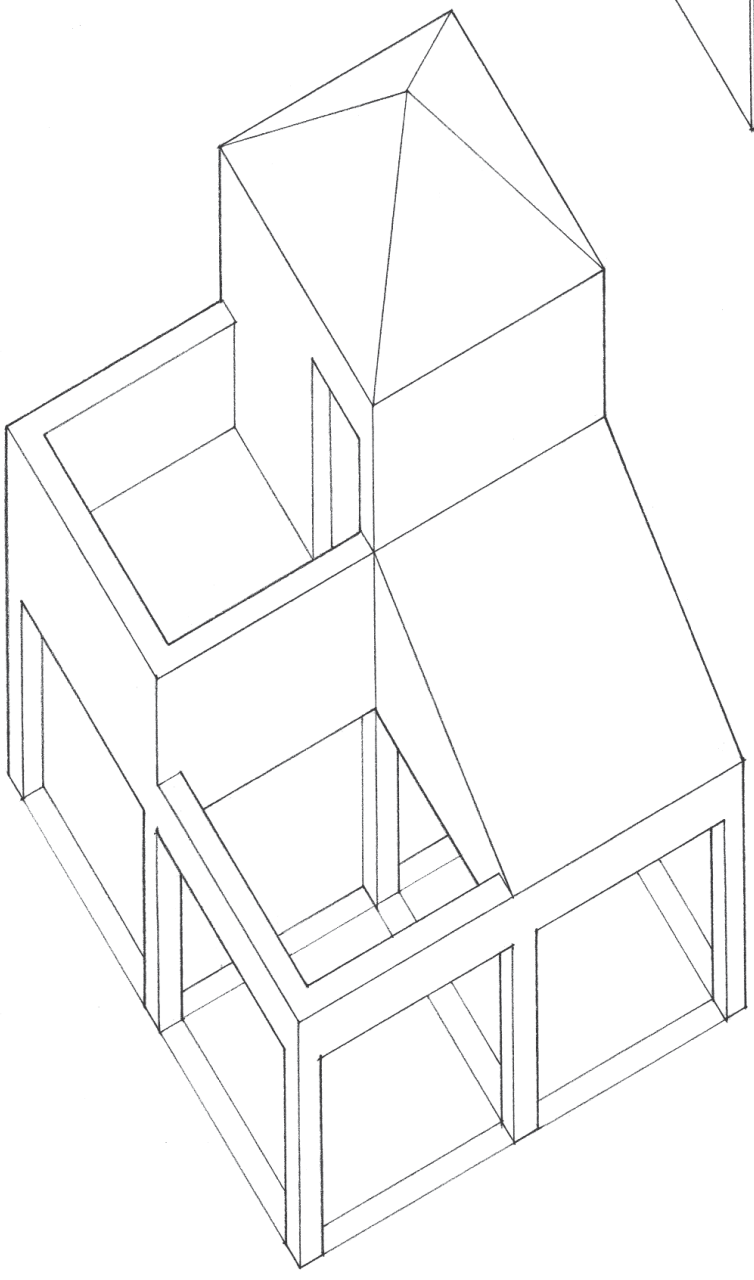
Exercise 7.11

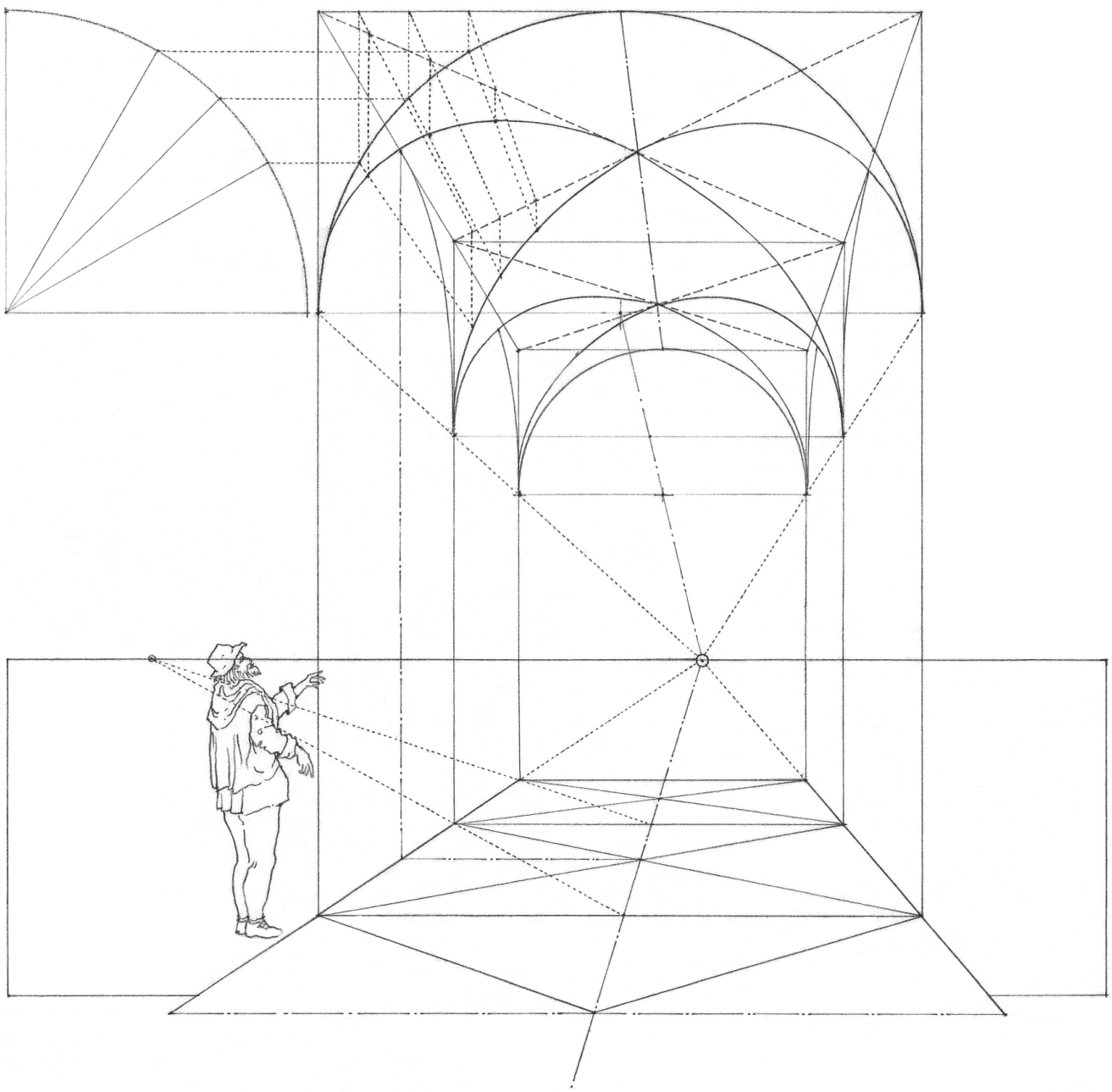
Construct the shade and shadows for the structure described in the paraline view below. Assume the parallel light rays of the sun have an altitude of 45° and a bearing direction to the right and parallel to the picture plane.

Exercise 7.12

For more practice, assume the same direction of light rays and construct shade and shadows for the structure described in Exercise 7.4.







8

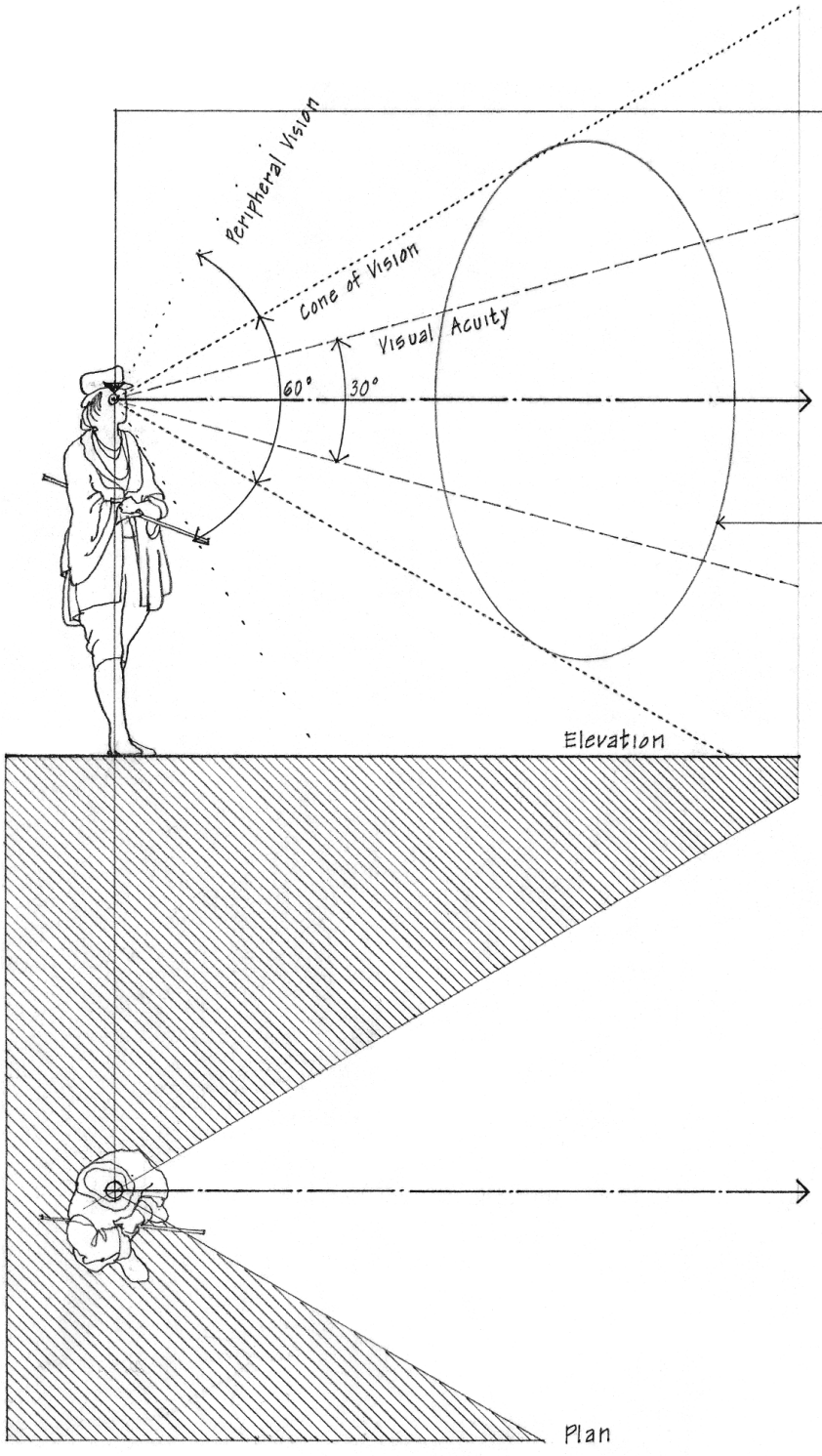
Perspective Drawings

Perspective properly refers to any of various graphic techniques for depicting volumes and spatial relationships on a flat surface, such as size and atmospheric perspective. The term *perspective*, however, most often brings to mind the drawing system of linear or artificial perspective.

Linear perspective is the art and science of describing three-dimensional volumes and spatial relationships on a two-dimensional surface by means of lines that converge as they recede into the depth of a drawing. While multiview and paraline drawings present mechanical views of an objective reality, linear perspective offers sensory views to the mind's eye of an optical reality. It depicts how objects and space might appear to the eye of a spectator looking in a specific direction from a particular vantage point in space. While our eyes can rove about the surface of a plan or isometric guided by whim or reason, we are invited to read a linear perspective from a fixed position in space.

Linear perspective is valid only for monocular vision. A perspective drawing assumes the spectator sees through a single eye. We almost never view anything in this way. Even with the head in a fixed position, we see through both eyes, which are constantly in motion, roving over and around objects and through ever-changing environments. Through this constant scanning, we build up experiential data that the mind manipulates and processes to form our perception and understanding of the visual world. Thus, linear perspective can only approximate the complex way the eyes actually function.

Still, linear perspective provides us with a method for correctly placing three-dimensional objects in pictorial space and illustrating the degree to which their forms appear to diminish in size as they recede into the depth of a drawing. The uniqueness of a linear perspective lies in its ability to provide us with an experiential view of space. This distinct advantage, however, also gives rise to the difficulty often connected with perspective drawing. The challenge in mastering linear perspective is resolving the conflict between our knowledge of the thing itself—how we conceive its objective reality—and the appearance of something—how we perceive its optical reality—as seen through a single eye of the spectator.



Perspective projection represents a three-dimensional object by projecting all its points to a picture plane by straight lines converging at a fixed point in space representing a single eye of the spectator. This convergence of sightlines differentiates perspective projection from the other two major projection systems, orthographic projection and oblique projection, in which the projectors remain parallel to each other.

Perspective Elements

station point (SP)

A fixed point in space representing a single eye of the spectator.

sightline

Any of the projectors extending from the station point to various points on an object viewed. The perspective projection of any point on an object is where the sightline to that point intersects the picture plane.

central axis of vision (CAV)

The sightline determining the direction in which the spectator is assumed to be looking.

cone of vision

A cone described by sightlines radiating outward from the station point and forming a 30° angle with the central axis of vision in linear perspective. The cone of vision serves as a guide in determining what is to be included within the boundaries of a perspective drawing. A 60° cone of vision is assumed to be the normal field of vision within which the principal aspects of the subject should be placed. To minimize distortion of circles and circular shapes, they should fall within a 30° cone of vision. A 90° cone of vision is acceptable for peripheral elements.

We should remember that the cone of vision is three-dimensional, even though it is seen as a triangular shape in orthographic plans and elevations. Only a small portion of the immediate foreground falls within the cone of vision. As the cone of vision reaches out to gather in what the spectator sees, it widens its field and the middleground and background become more expansive.

In reality, our field of vision is more like a pyramid than a cone. Most people have a field of view that extends 180° horizontally but only 140° vertically because some of the visual field is blocked by the eyebrows, nose, and cheeks.

picture plane (PP)
An imaginary transparent plane, coextensive with the drawing surface, on which the image of a three-dimensional object is projected; also known as the plane of projection. The picture plane slices through the cone of vision and is always perpendicular to the central axis of vision. As long as the central axis of vision is horizontal, the picture plane is vertical. When we shift our line of sight to the left or right, the picture plane moves with it. If we shift our line of sight upward or downward, then the picture plane will be tilted as well.

As we look out through a window, we can draw on the glass surface what we see through it. The glass pane is the physical equivalent of the picture plane. When we draw a perspective, we transfer onto the drawing surface what we see through an imaginary picture plane. The drawing surface becomes the virtual equivalent of the picture plane.

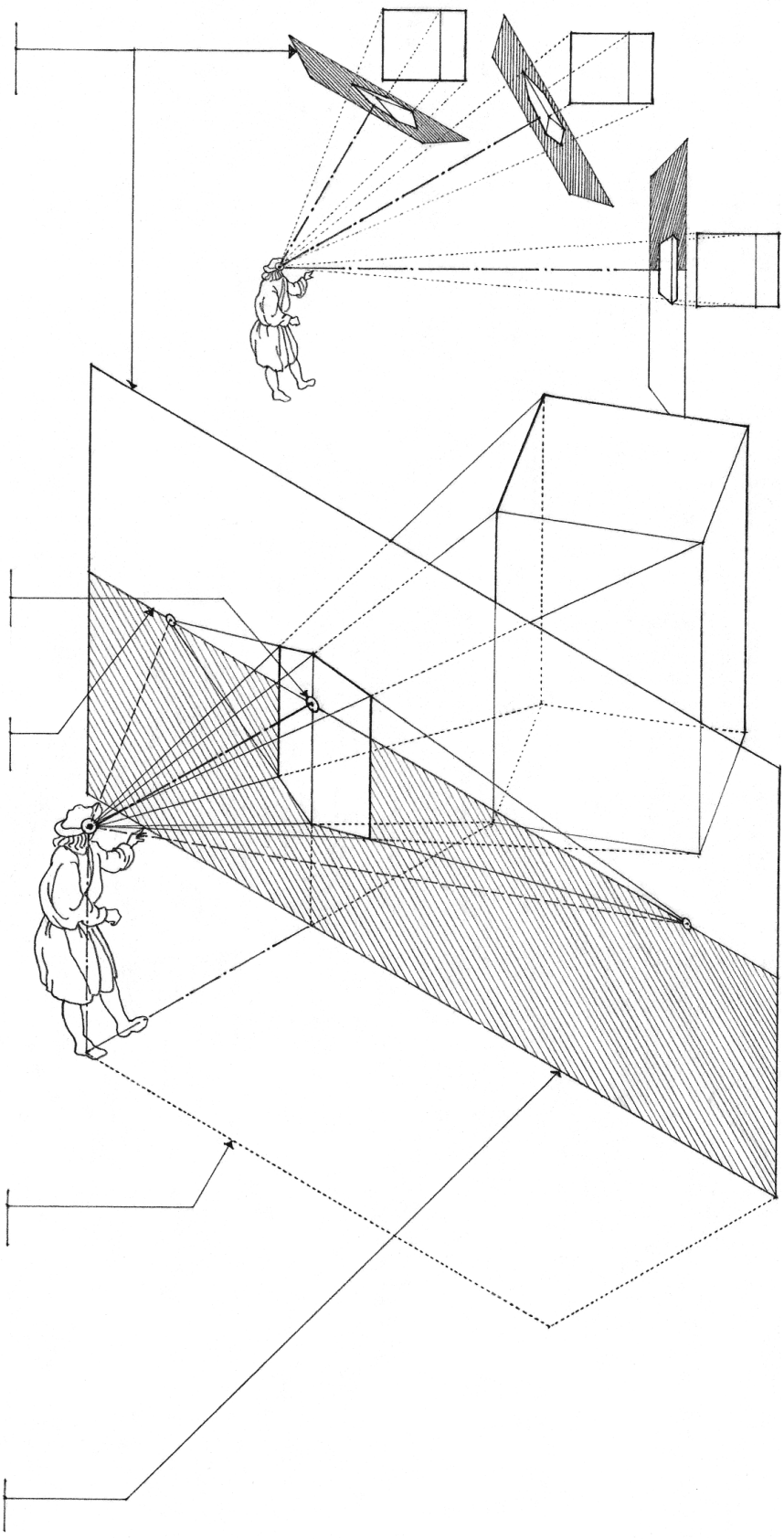
center of vision (CV)
The point on the horizon line at which the central axis of vision intersects the picture plane.

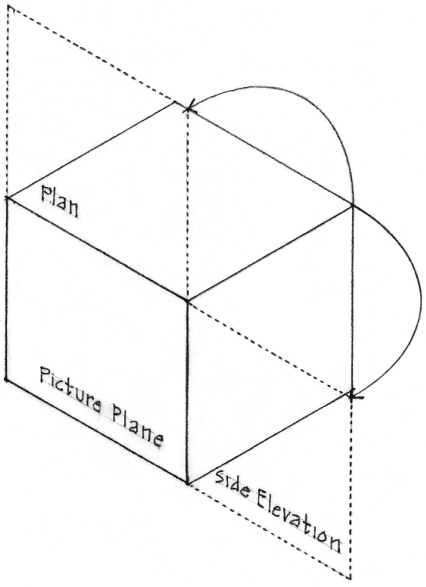
horizon line (HL)
A horizontal line representing the intersection of the picture plane and a horizontal plane passing the station point. The distance from the ground line to the horizon line is equal to the height of the spectator's eye level or station point above the ground plane. For a normal eye-level perspective, the horizon line is at the standing height of the spectator's eye. The horizon line moves down if the spectator sits down in a chair. It moves up if the spectator looks out from a stair landing or a second-story window. It rises still farther if the view is from a mountaintop.

Even if not actually seen in a perspective view, the horizon line should always be drawn lightly across the drawing surface to serve as a level line of reference for the entire composition.

ground plane (GP)
A horizontal plane of reference from which heights can be measured in linear perspective. The ground plane is usually, but not always, the surface upon which the spectator stands. It can also be the lake surface on which a boat is sailing, or the ground on which a building rests. It can be the floor plane when drawing a perspective of an interior space, or even the top of a table when sketching a still life.

ground line (GL)
A horizontal line representing the intersection of the ground plane and the picture plane.



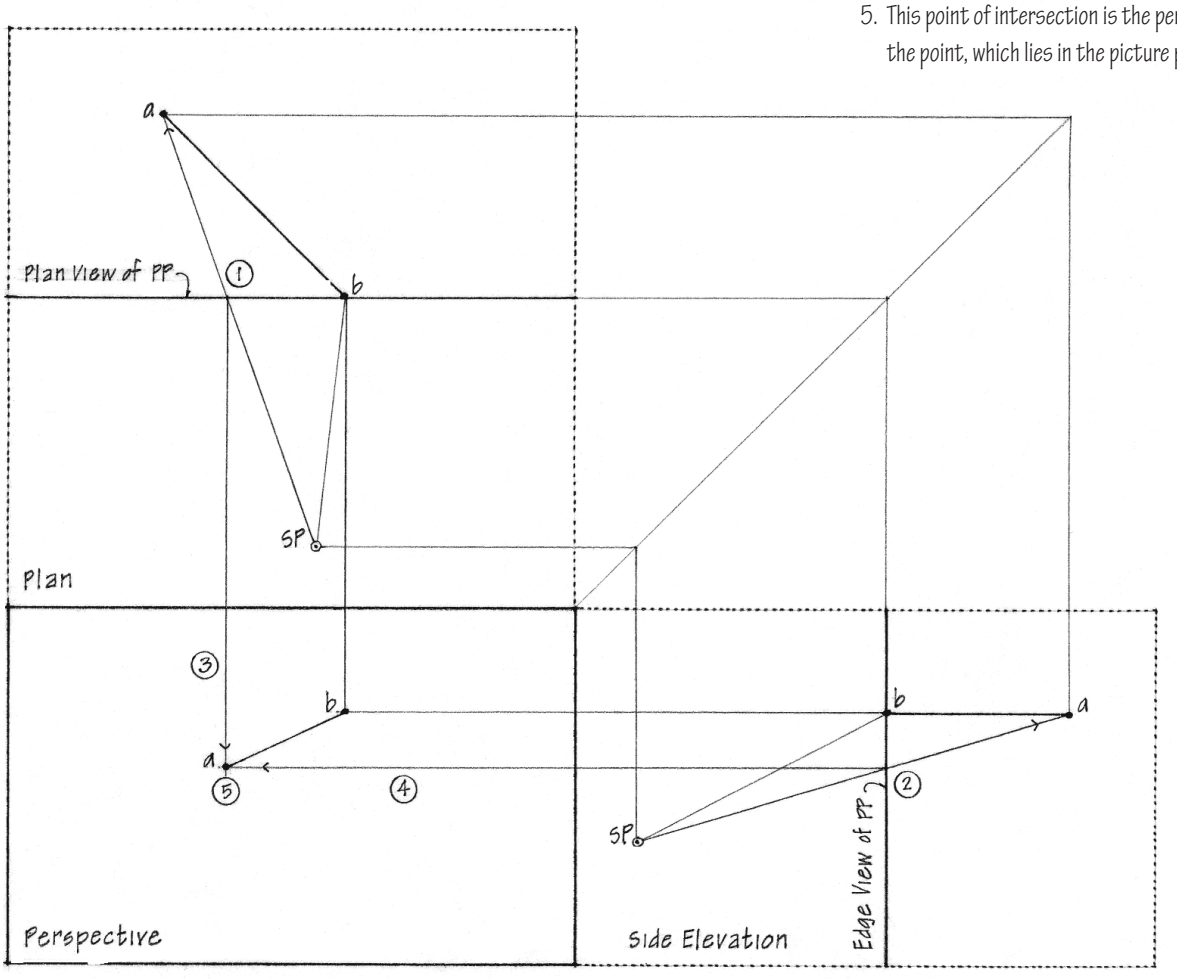


Direct Projection Method

The direct projection method of perspective construction requires the use of at least two orthographic views: a plan view and a side elevation view. The side elevation is an orthographic projection that is perpendicular to the picture plane, but rotated 90° to be coplanar with the picture plane. The object, picture plane, and station point are shown in both views.

The perspective of any point is where a sightline from the station point to the point in question intersects the picture plane. To find the perspective projection of a point:

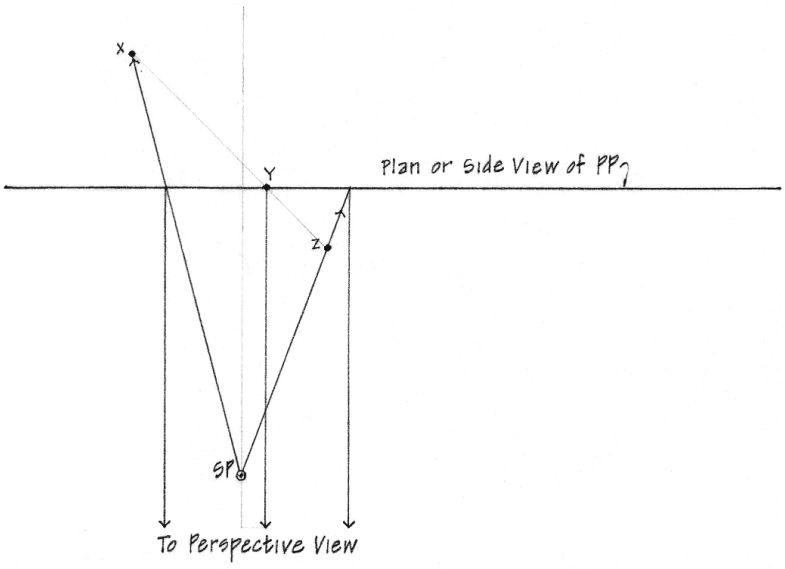
1. In the plan view, draw a sightline from the station point to the point in question until it intersects the picture plane.
2. Do the same in the elevation view.
3. Where the sightline in the plan view meets the picture plane, drop a vertical construction line.
4. Where the sightline in the elevation view meets the picture plane, extend a horizontal construction line until it intersects the vertical construction line.
5. This point of intersection is the perspective projection of the point, which lies in the picture plane.

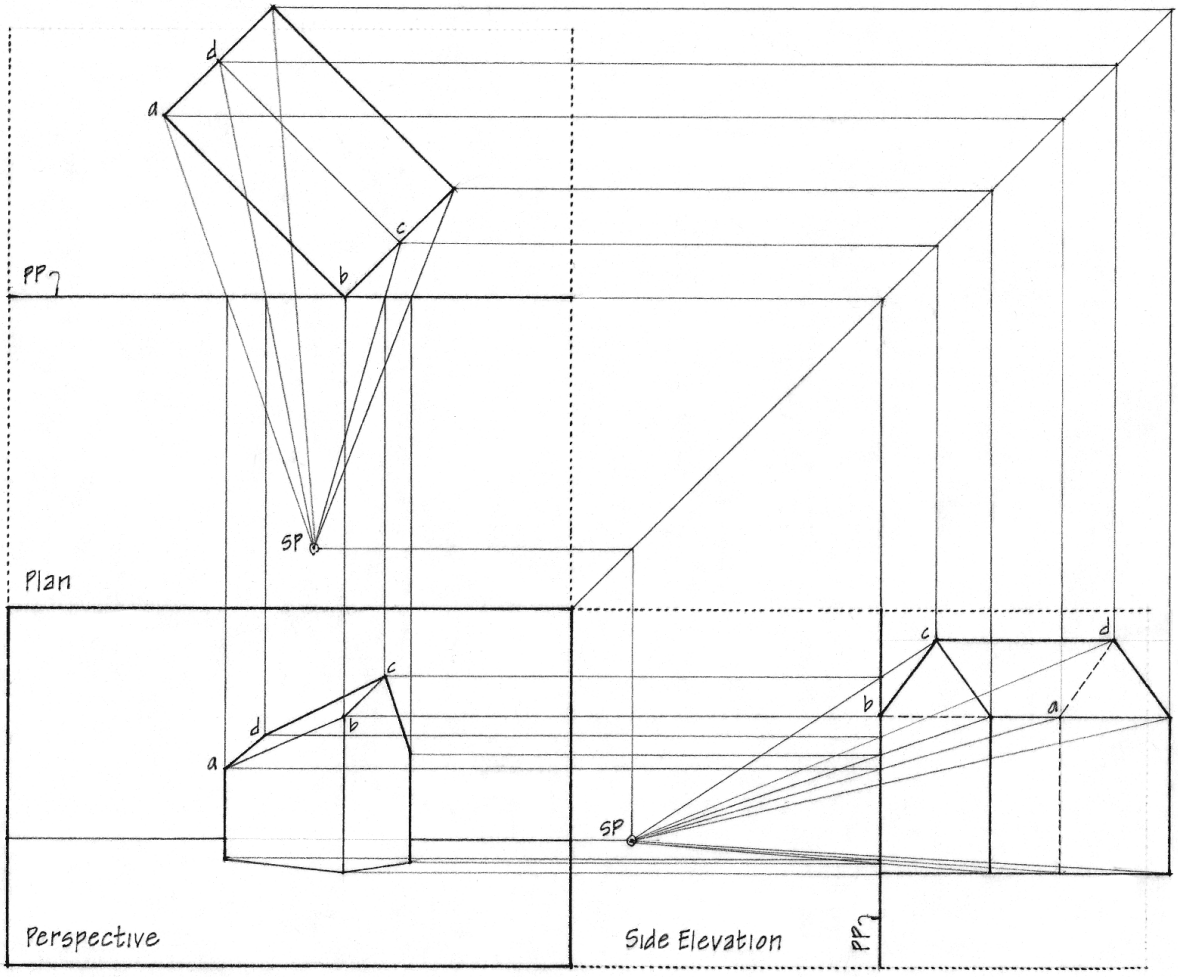


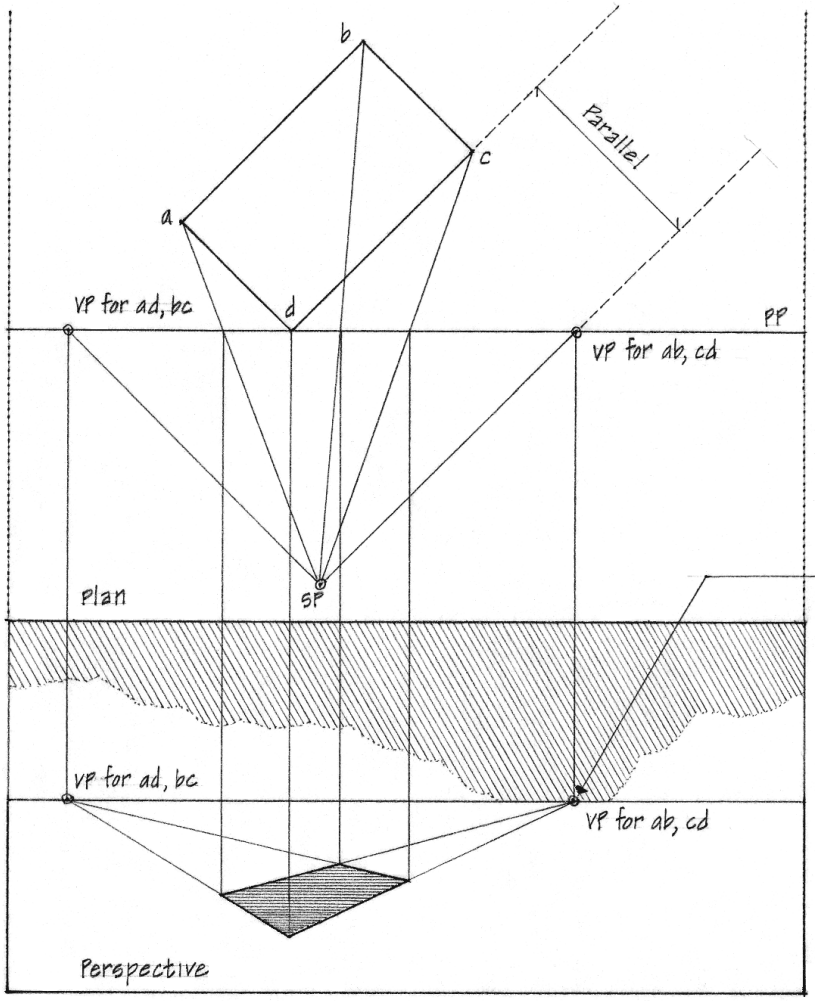
For a point (X) behind the picture plane, draw a sightline from the point in question toward the station point (SP)until it meets the picture plane (PP). If the point (Y) lies in the picture plane, simply drop the plan position vertically until it meets a horizontal line from the point in the elevation view. If the point (Z) is in front of the picture plane, draw a sightline from the station point, through the point, and extend it until it meets the picture plane.

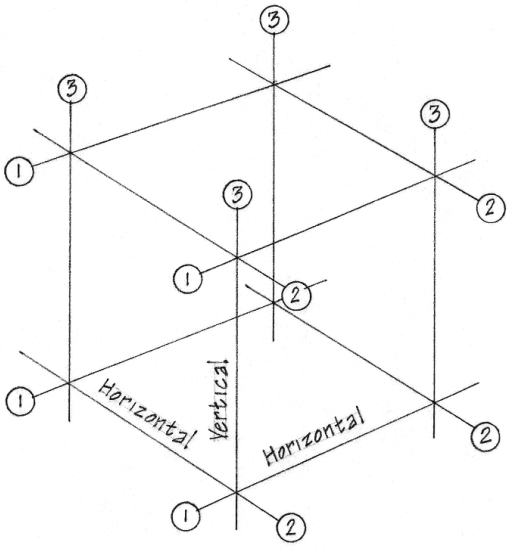
To find the perspective projection of a line, establish the perspective projections of its endpoints and connect the points. If we can establish the perspective projections of points and lines in this way, we can also find the perspective projections of planes and volumes.

In theory, it is not necessary to use vanishing points in the direct projection method. However, the establishment and use of vanishing points greatly simplifies the drawing of a linear perspective and ensures greater accuracy in determining the direction of receding lines.









The converging nature of sightlines in linear perspective produces certain pictorial effects. Being familiar with these pictorial effects will help us understand how lines, planes, and volumes should appear in linear perspective and how to correctly place objects in the space of a perspective drawing.

Convergence

Convergence in linear perspective refers to the apparent movement of parallel lines toward a common vanishing point as they recede. As two parallel lines recede into the distance, the space between them will appear to diminish. If the lines are extended to infinity, they will appear to meet at a point. This point is the vanishing point for that particular pair of lines and all other lines parallel to them.

vanishing point (VP)
A point on the picture plane at which a set of receding parallel lines appears to converge in linear perspective. The vanishing point for any set of parallel lines is the point where a line drawn parallel to the set intersects the picture plane.

The first rule of convergence is that each set of parallel lines has its own vanishing point. A set of parallel lines consists only of those lines that are parallel to one another. If we look at a cube, for example, we can see that its edges comprise three principal sets of parallel lines, one set of vertical lines parallel to the x-axis, and two sets of horizontal lines, perpendicular to each other and parallel to the y- and z-axes.

To draw a perspective, we must know how many sets of parallel lines exist in what we see or envision and where each set will appear to converge. The following guidelines for the convergence of parallel lines is based solely on the relationship between the spectator's central axis of vision and the subject.

Convergence Principles

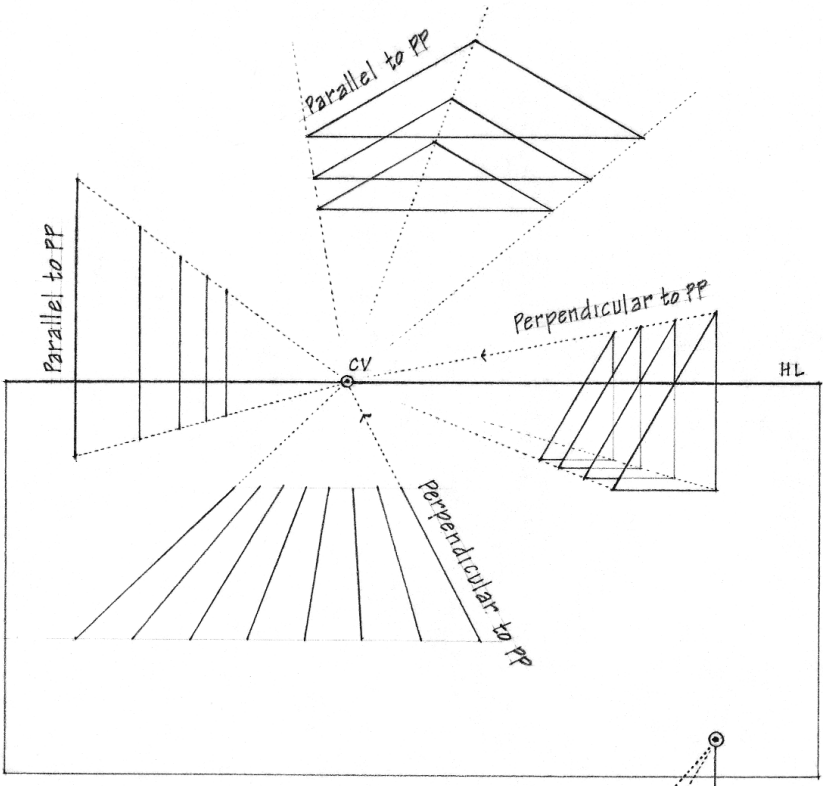
We can categorize any line in linear perspective according to its relationship to the picture plane.

Lines parallel to the picture plane

- If parallel with the picture plane, a set of parallel lines will retain its orientation and not converge to a vanishing point. Each line in the set, however, will diminish in size according to its distance from the spectator. In a similar manner, shapes parallel with the picture plane will retain their shapes but diminish in size according to its distance from the spectator.

Lines perpendicular to the picture plane

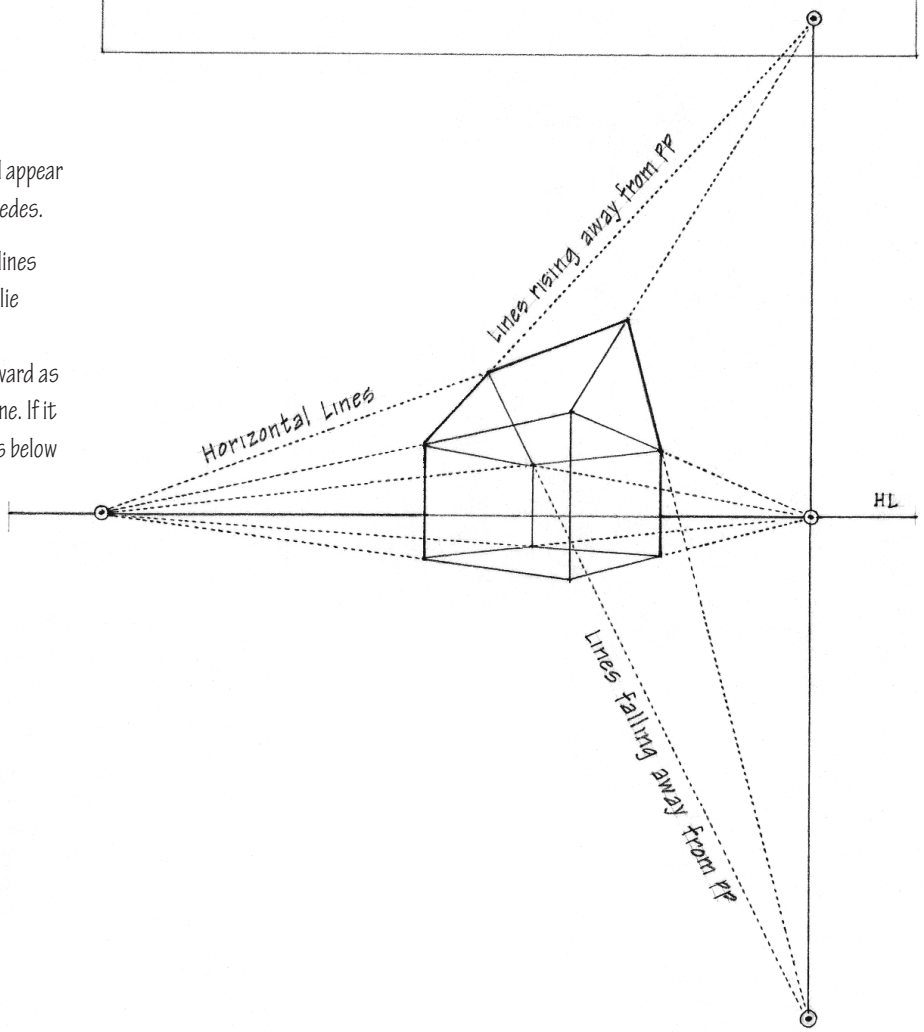
- If perpendicular to the picture plane, a set of parallel lines will appear to converge on the horizon line at the center of vision.

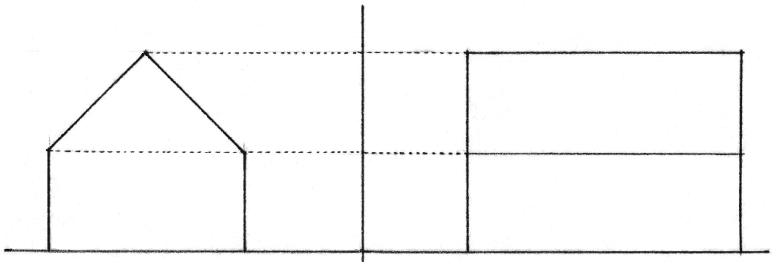


Lines oblique to picture plane

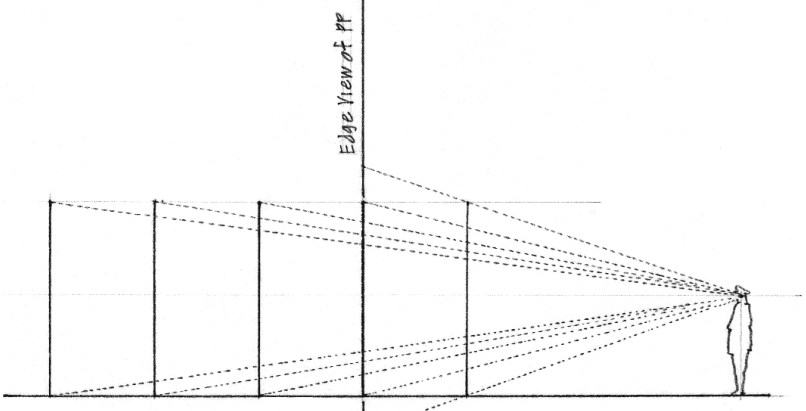
If oblique to the picture plane, a set of parallel lines will appear to converge toward a common vanishing point as it recedes.

- Horizontal oblique lines: If a horizontal set of parallel lines is oblique to the picture plane, its vanishing point will lie somewhere on the horizon line.
- Inclined oblique lines: If a set of parallel lines rises upward as it recedes, its vanishing point lies above the horizon line. If it slopes downward as it recedes, its vanishing point lies below the horizon line.





Orthographic Projection



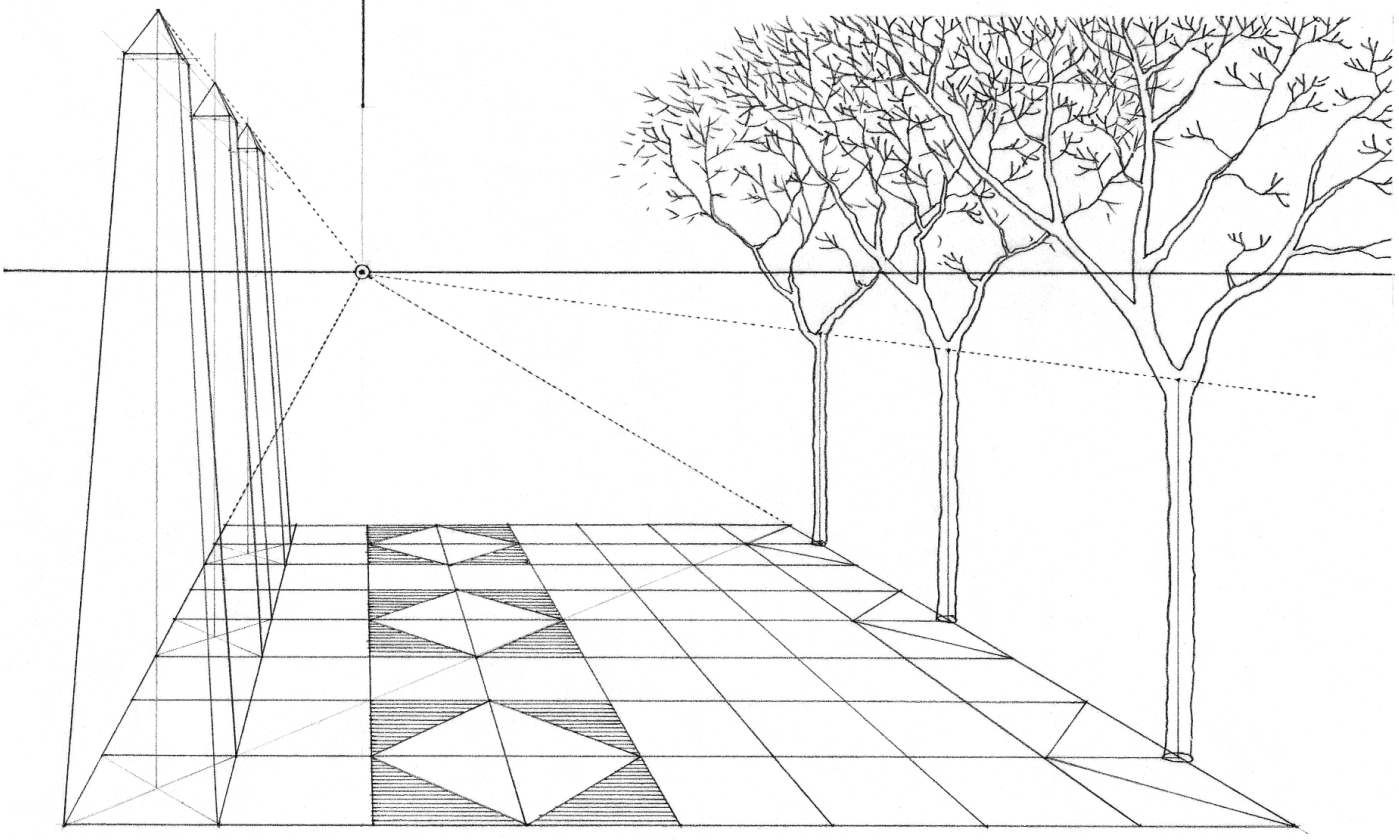
Perspective Projection

Diminution of Size

In orthographic and oblique projection, the projectors remain parallel to each other. Therefore, the projected size of an element remains the same regardless of its distance from the picture plane. In linear perspective, however, the converging projectors or sightlines alter the apparent size of a line or plane according to its distance from the picture plane.

The farther away an object is from the picture plane, the narrower the angle between the sightlines to the object, and the closer together the intersections of the sightlines with the picture plane. The converging sightlines therefore reduce the size of distant objects, making them appear smaller than identical objects closer to the picture plane.

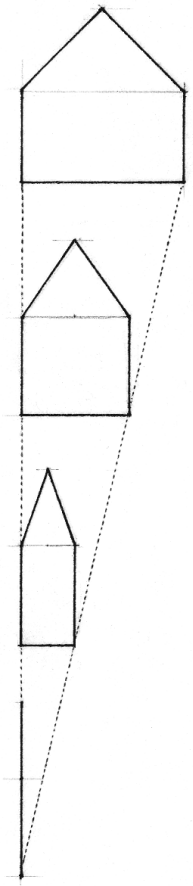
Note also that, as the object continues to recede, the more the sightlines to the object will approach the horizon line. For example, looking down on a tiled floor pattern, we can see more of the tiles' surfaces in the foreground. As the same-sized tiles recede, they appear smaller and flatter as they rise and approach the horizon.

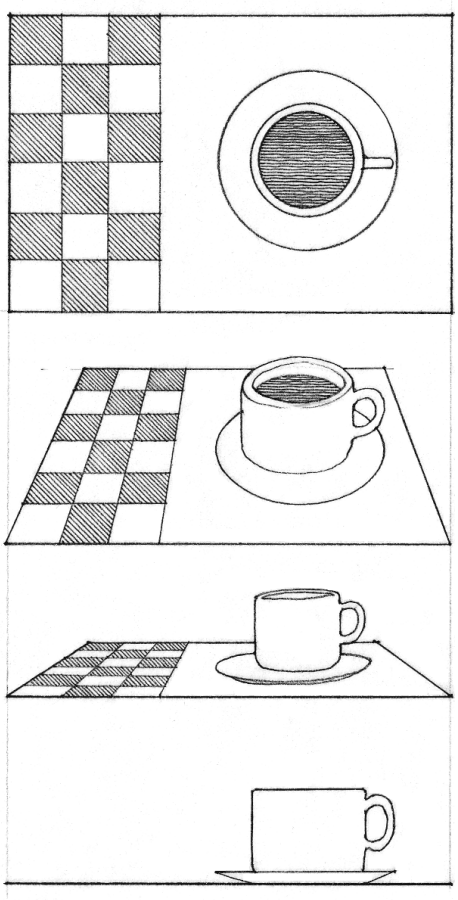


Foreshortening

Foreshortening refers to the apparent change in form an object undergoes as it rotates away from the picture plane. It is usually seen as a contraction in size or length in the direction of depth so as to create an illusion of distance or extension in space.

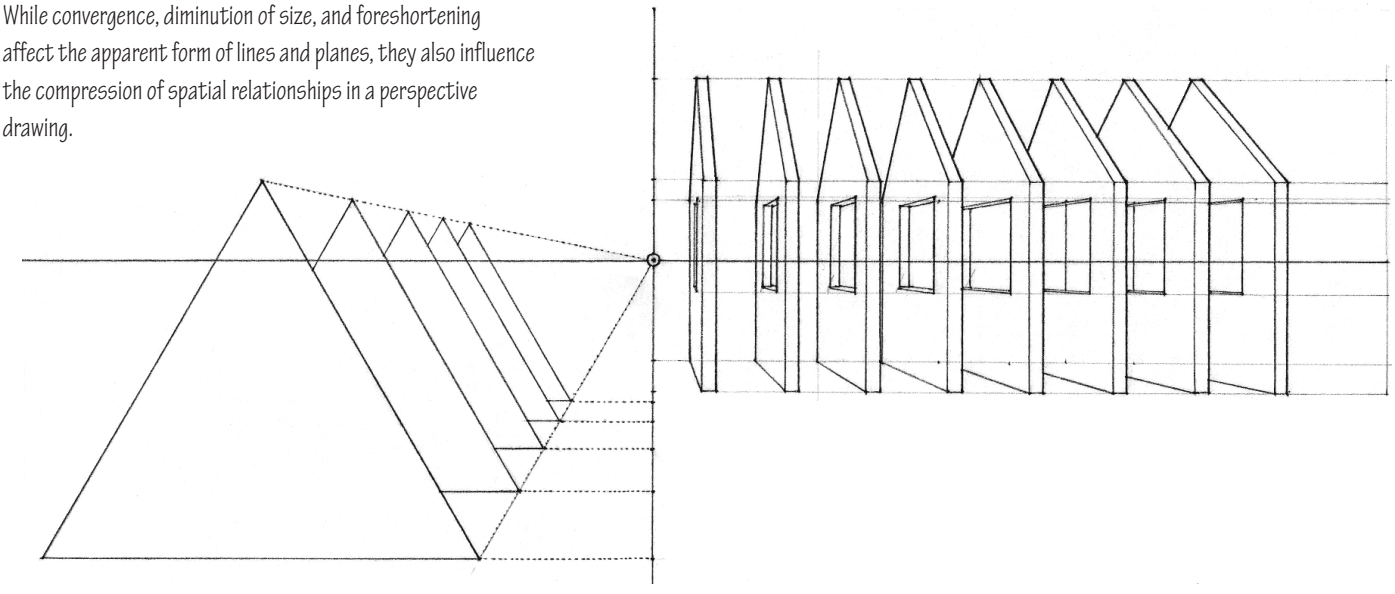
Any facet of an object that is not parallel to the picture plane will appear compressed in size or length when projected. In perspective projection, as well as in orthographic and oblique projection, the amount of contraction depends on the angle between the facet of the object and the picture plane. The more a line or plane is rotated away from the picture plane, the less we will see of its length or depth.

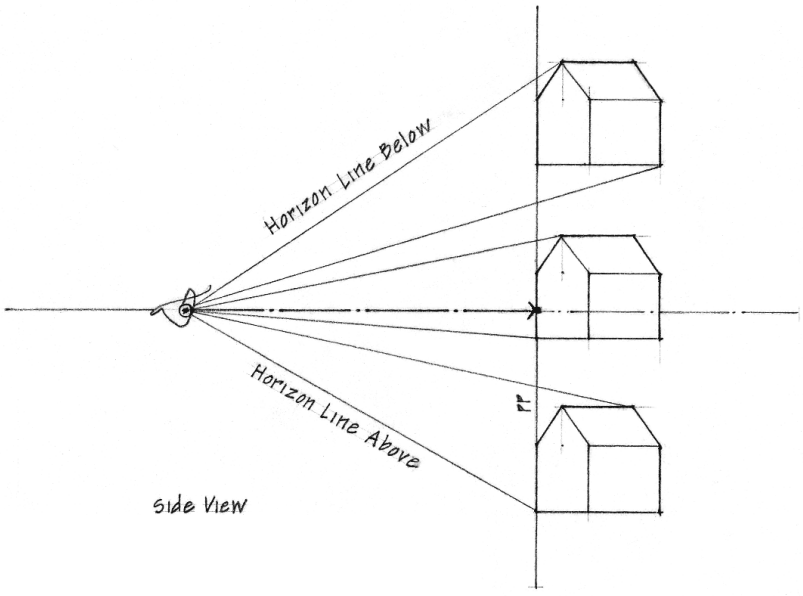




In linear perspective, the apparent contraction in depth also depends on the angle between the sightlines to the object and the picture plane. The farther away an object is from the center of vision, the greater the angle between the sightlines to the object and the farther apart are the intersections of the sightlines with the picture plane. In other words, as the object moves laterally, parallel to the picture plane, its apparent size will increase. Note that this is the opposite of what occurs as the object recedes away from the spectator. At some point, the size of the object will be exaggerated and its form distorted. We use the cone of vision to limit our view in linear perspective and control this distortion.

While convergence, diminution of size, and foreshortening affect the apparent form of lines and planes, they also influence the compression of spatial relationships in a perspective drawing.

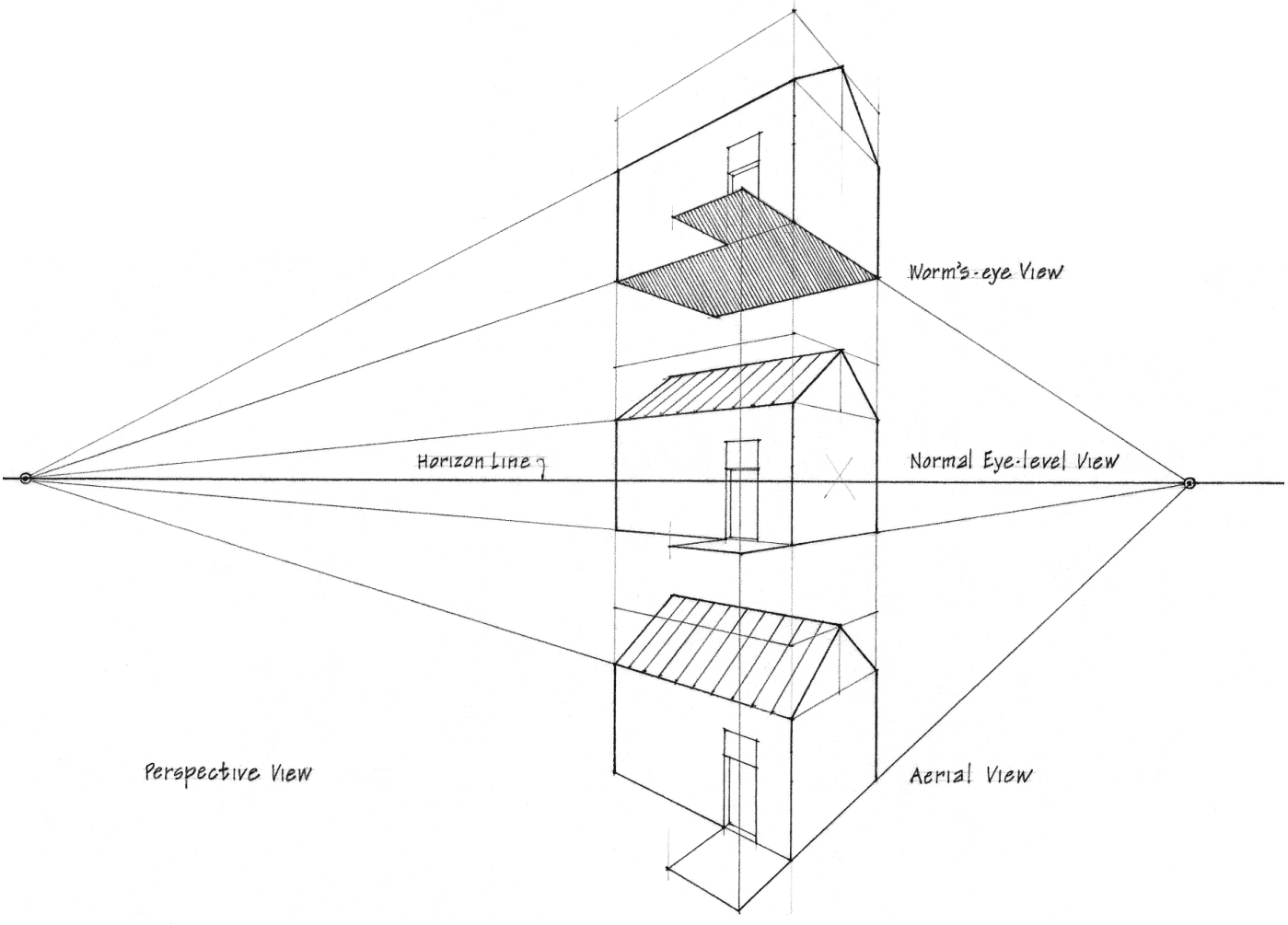




The spectator's point of view determines the pictorial effect of a perspective drawing. As this viewpoint changes—as the spectator moves up or down, to the left or right, forward or back—the extent and emphasis of what the spectator sees also change. To achieve the desired view in perspective, we should understand how to adjust the following variables.

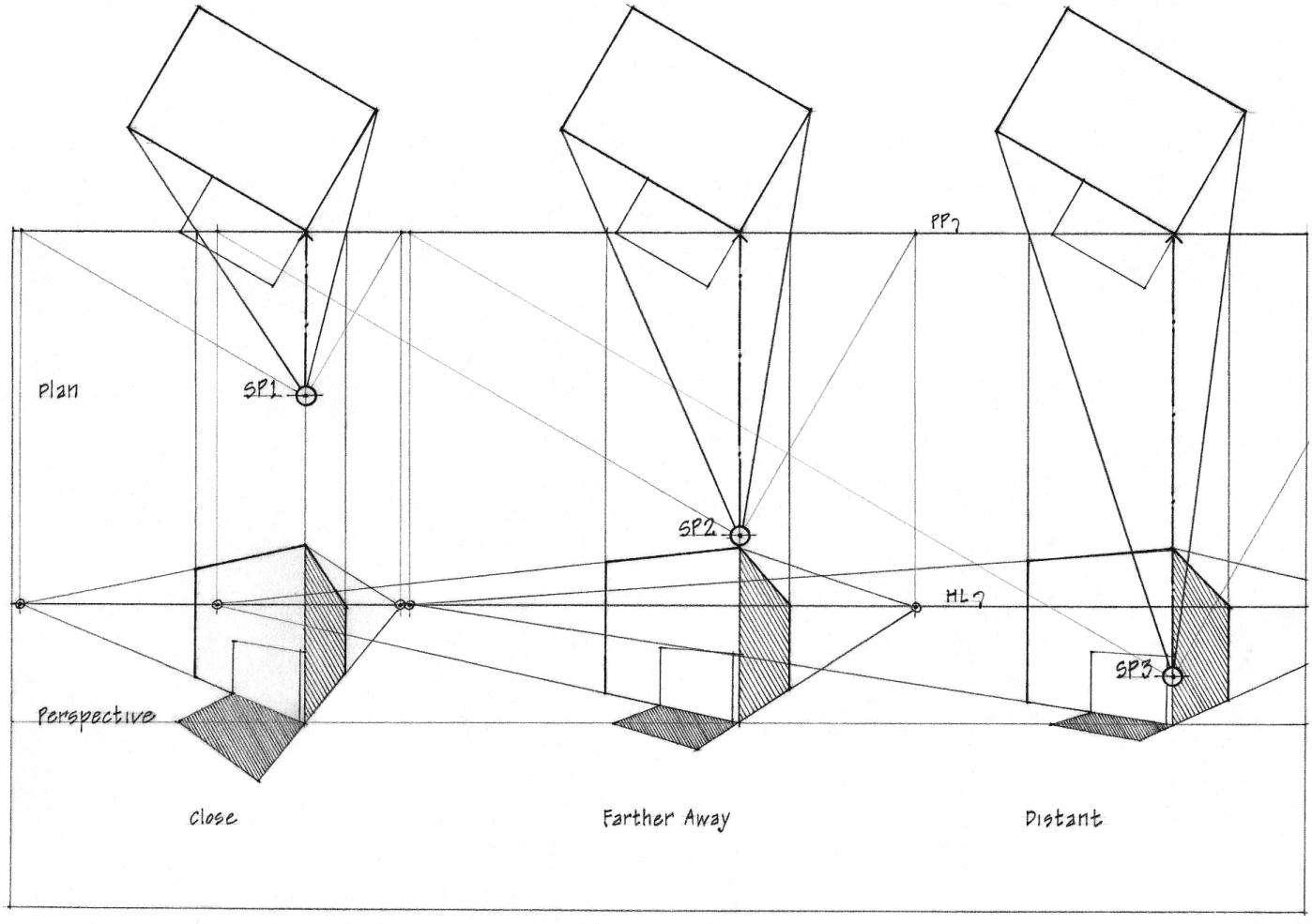
Height of Station Point

The height of the station point determines whether an object is seen from above, below, or within its own height. Assuming a level central axis of vision, as the station point—the eye of the spectator—moves up or down, the horizon line moves up or down with it. Any horizontal plane at the level of the spectator's eye appears as a line. We see the tops of horizontal surfaces that lie below the spectator's eye level and the undersides of horizontal planes that are above.



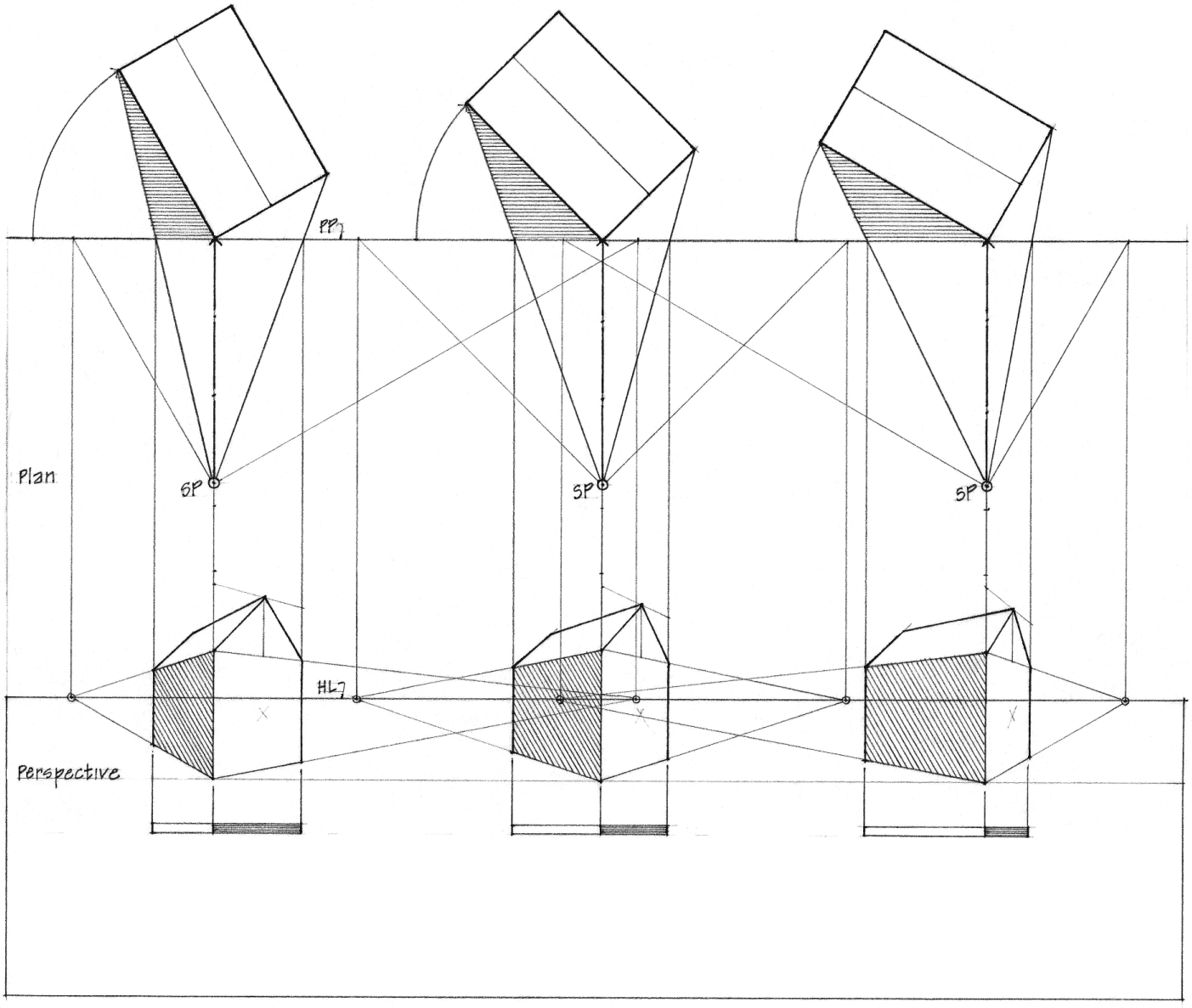
Distance of Station Point to Object

The distance of the station point to the object influences the rate of foreshortening that occurs in the perspective drawing. As the spectator moves farther away from the object, the vanishing points move farther apart, horizontal lines flatten out, and perspective depth is compressed. As the spectator moves forward, the vanishing points move closer together, horizontal angles become more acute, and perspective depth is exaggerated. In theory, a perspective drawing presents a true picture of an object only when the eye of the viewer is located at the assumed station point of the perspective.



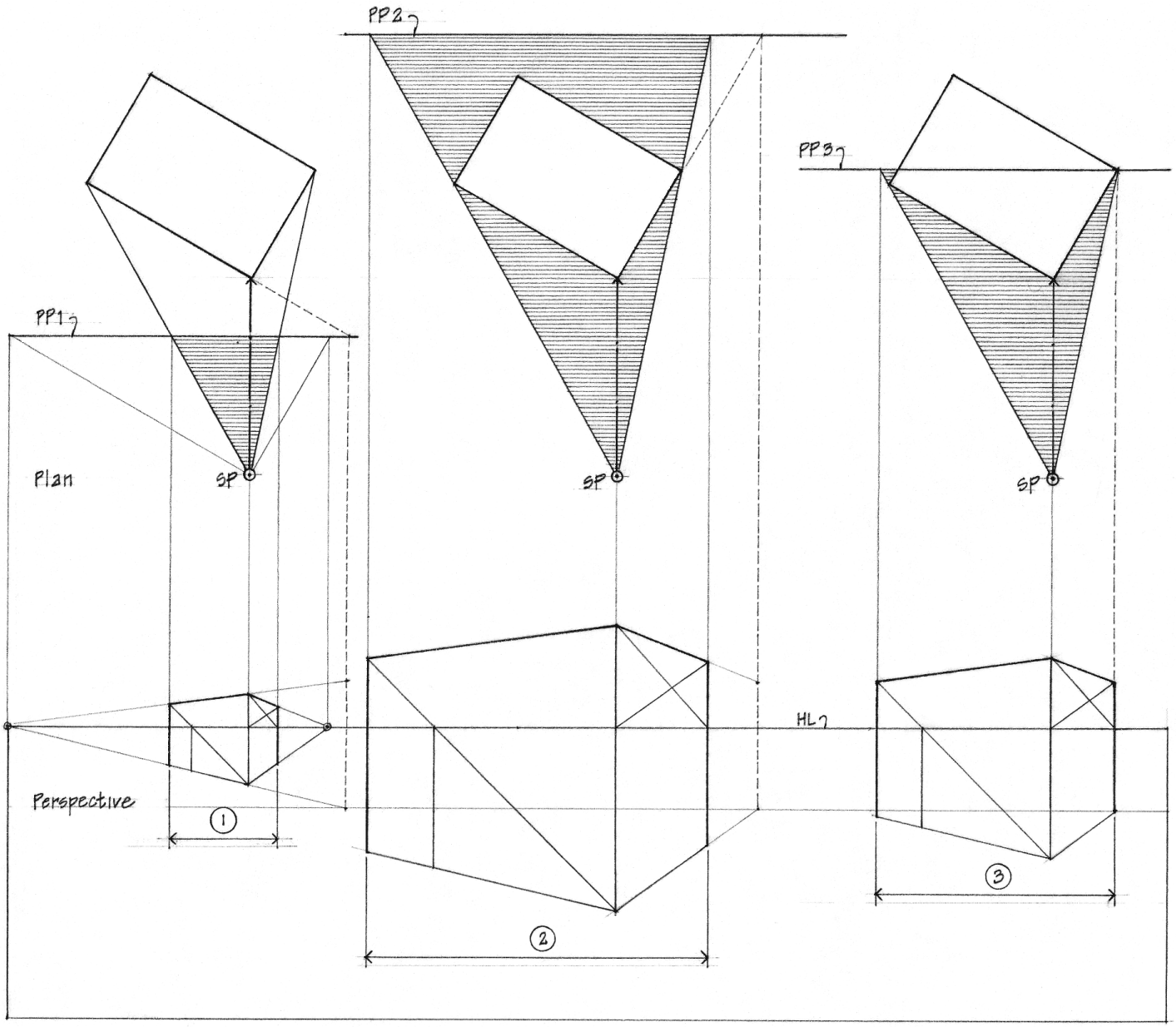
Angle of View

The orientation of the central axis of vision relative to the object determines which faces of the object are visible and the degree to which they are foreshortened in perspective. The more oblique a plane is to the picture plane, the more it is foreshortened in perspective; the more frontal the plane is, the less it is foreshortened. When a plane becomes parallel to the picture plane, its true shape is revealed.



Location of Picture Plane

The location of the picture plane only affects the size of the perspective image. The closer the picture plane is to the station point, the smaller the perspective image; the farther away the picture plane is, the larger the image. Assuming all other variables remain constant, the perspective images are identical in all respects except size.



Looking slightly upward

Level line of sight

Looking slightly downward

Digital Viewpoints

In constructing a perspective by hand, we must have experience in setting up the station point and the angle of view to predict and achieve a reasonable outcome. A distinct advantage in using 3D CAD and modeling programs is that once the necessary data is entered for a three-dimensional construction, the software allows us to manipulate the perspective variables and fairly quickly produce a number of perspective views for evaluation. 3D CAD and modeling programs, while following the mathematical principles of perspective, can easily create distorted perspective views. Judgment of what a perspective image conveys, whether produced by hand or with the aid of the computer, remains the responsibility of its author.

Illustrated on this and the facing page are examples of computer-generated perspectives, showing how the various perspective variables affect the resulting images. The differences in the perspective views may be subtle, but they do affect our perception of the scale of the spaces and our judgment of the spatial relationships the images convey.

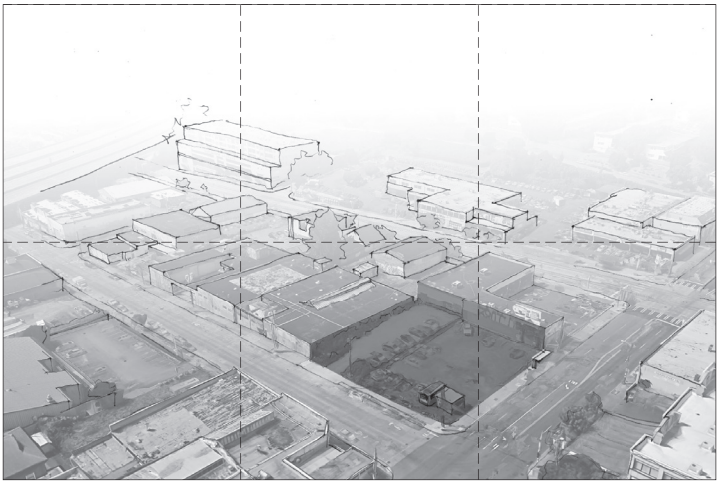
Both one- and two-point perspective assume a level line of sight, which results in vertical lines remaining vertical. As soon as the observer's line of sight tilts up or down, even a few degrees, the result is technically a three-point perspective.

Establishing the station point (camera location) and fixing the direction of view (specifying a target and locating the horizon line) are two of the more critical variables that determine the quality of the perspective image. It is therefore good practice to explore what camera locations and viewpoints might best capture the experiential quality of the spaces being designed.

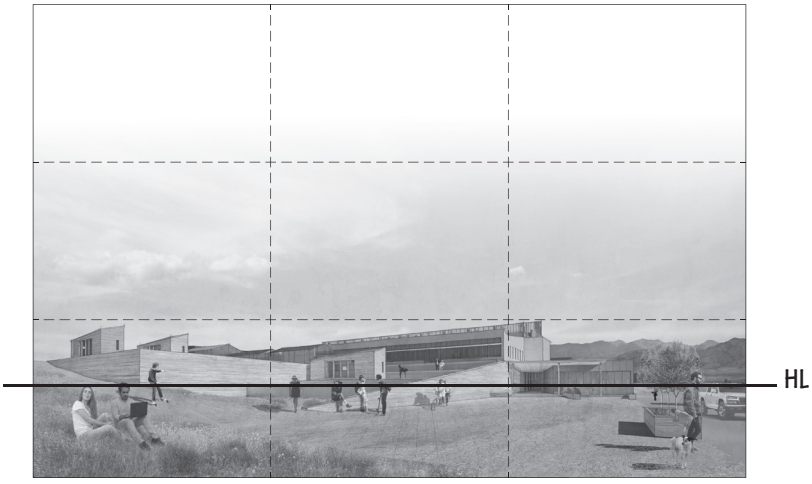
Keeping the central portion of a subject or scene within a reasonable cone of vision is critical to avoiding distortion in a perspective view. Widening the angle of view to include more of a space within a perspective can easily lead to distortion of forms and exaggeration of the depth of a space.

The desire to see more of a space in a single perspective view often leads to moving the station point (camera location) of the observer as far back as possible. However, one should always attempt to maintain a reasonable position for the observer within the space being represented.

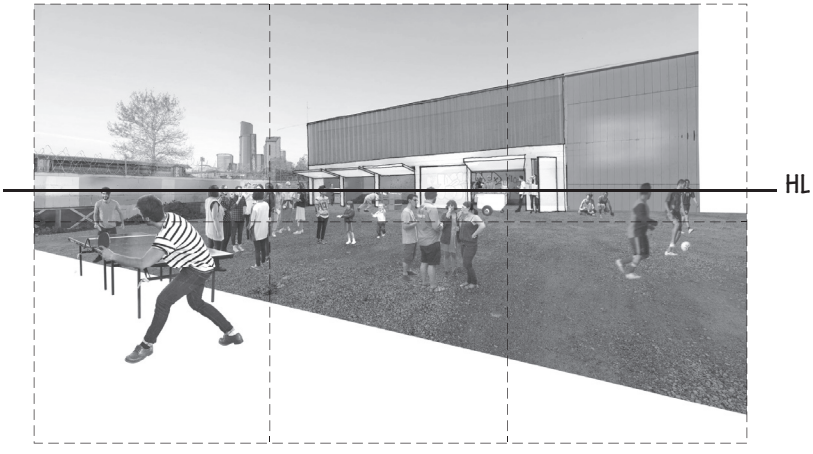
HL



Horizon line located beyond upper boundary of drawing aperture



Horizon line located slightly lower than standing eye level height.
Aperture extended upward to accentuate background sky for building.



Figures and furniture placed in foreground of image

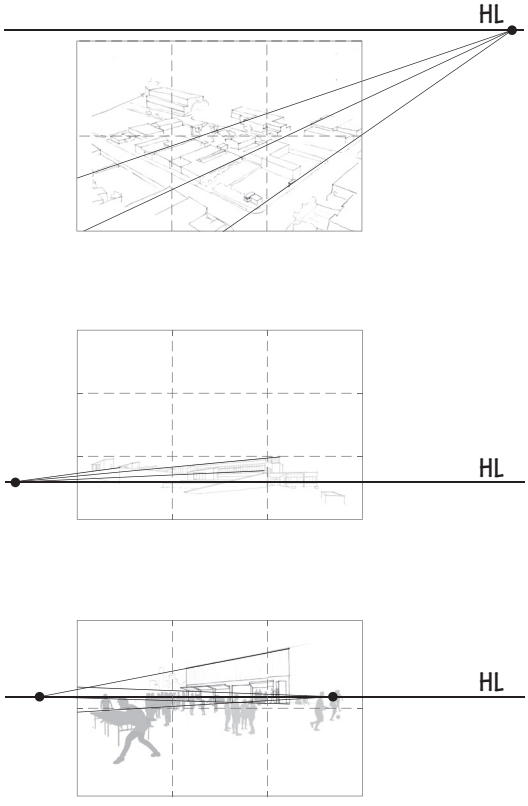
Original drawings by Robin Wilder

- By default, the horizon line is often centered vertically within the drawing aperture.
- Similarly, the primary vanishing point is often located by default in the center of the view.

- Locating the camera more to one side of the space than the other can often create a more dynamic view.
- Lowering the horizon line can describe the view when seated, just as raising it can convey the view from a podium or mezzanine.

- We can avoid centering the horizon line vertically by either cropping or expanding the aperture.

- Similarly, selecting camera locations that include one or more strong foreground elements can help place the viewer within the space and provide a stronger sense of engagement and interest within the view.



Exercise 8.1

Create a digital model similar to the example on the right. There should be an upper or mezzanine level within the double-height space. Generate digital perspective views from locations A, B, and C.

Experiment with different viewpoints and apertures at each location. (Examples are shown in gray for location C.) Which views best describe the space and provide the strongest level of engagement and interest in the drawing?

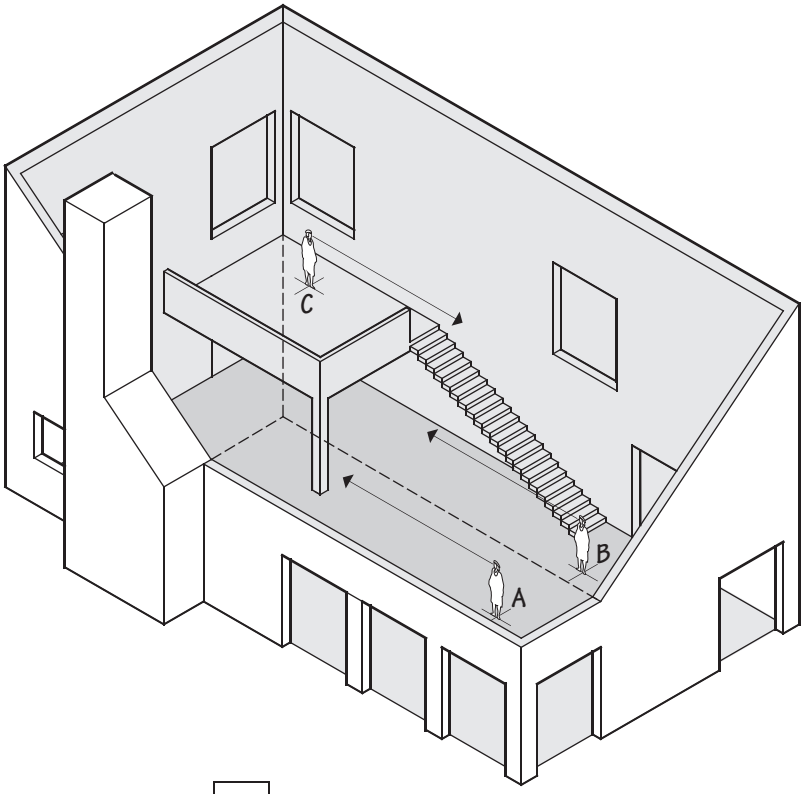
How could the drawing aperture be adjusted to give the space a horizontal focus? How could a vertical focus be developed in each view?

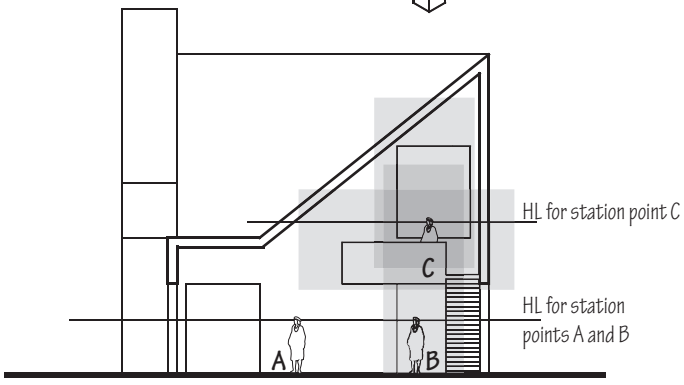
Exercise 8.2

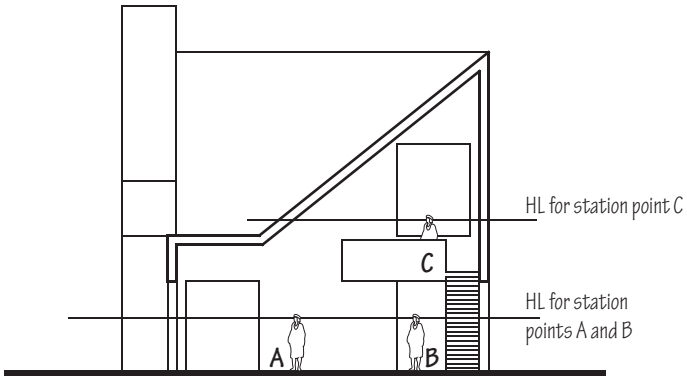
Create a section perspective view using the same digital model created in Exercise 8.1.

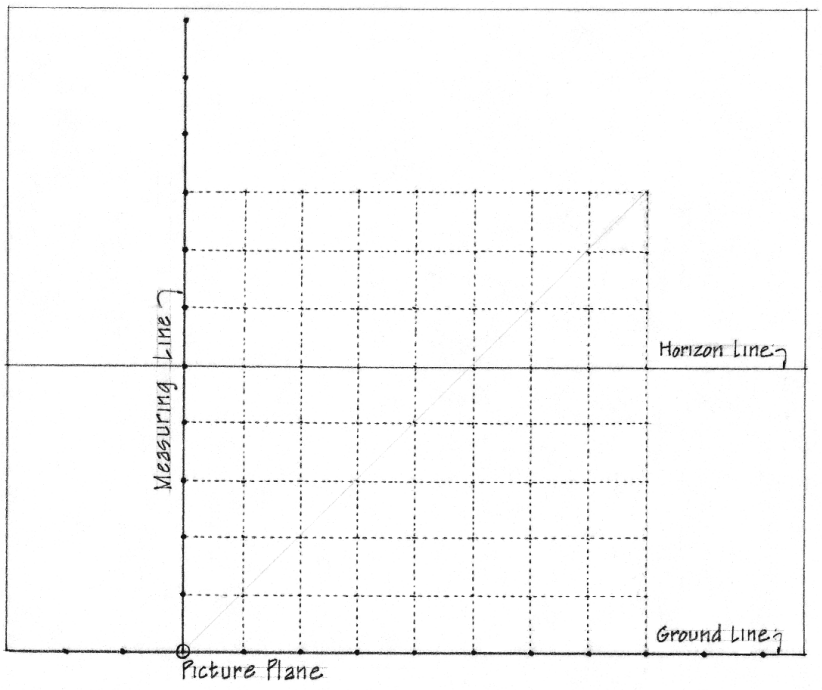
Pan horizontally and vertically within this section perspective. What are the strengths and weaknesses of station points A, B, and C in a section perspective view where the section cut prevents many foreground elements from being visible?

What happens when the primary vanishing point is outside of the interior space in the section? What advantages and disadvantages would rotating the model to create a two-point section perspective provide?









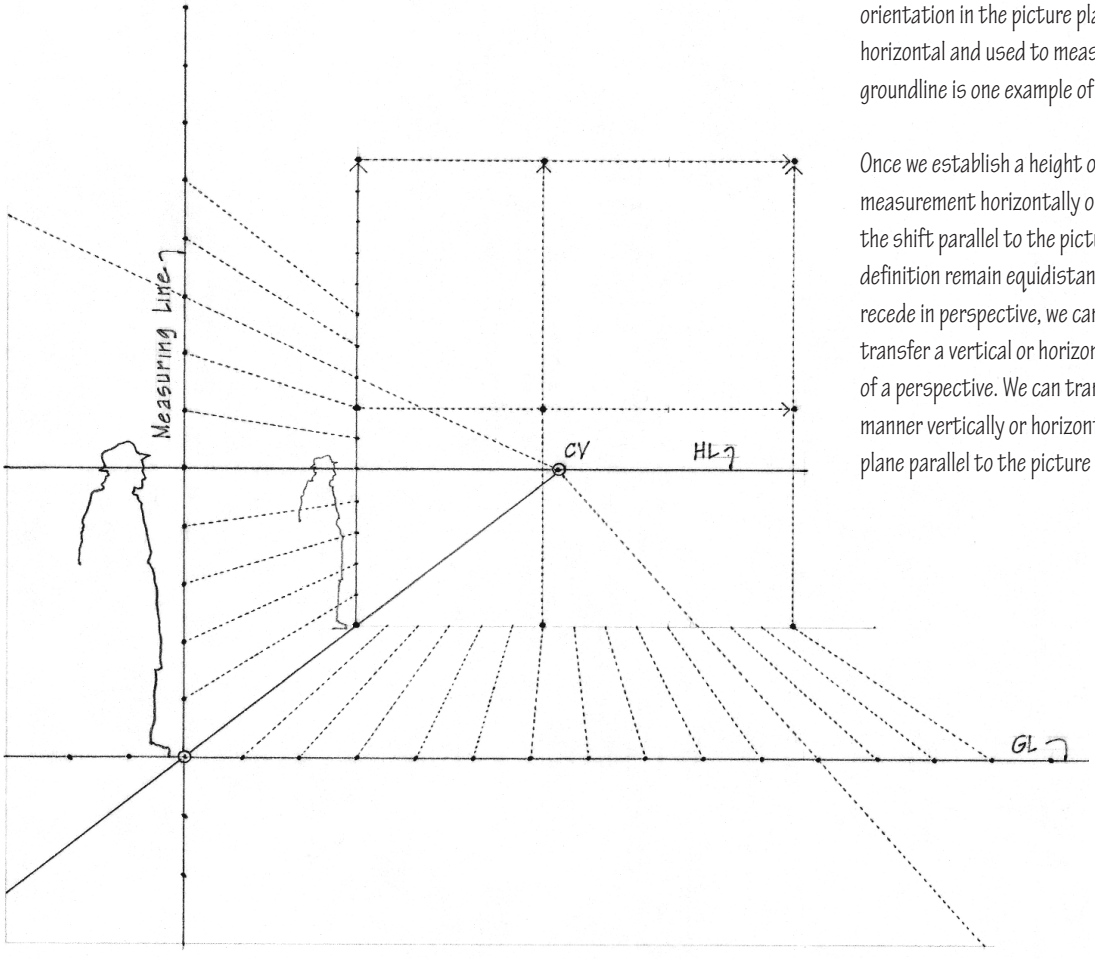
Only lines and planes coincident with the picture plane can be drawn to the same scale. The converging sightlines in linear perspective reduce the size of distant objects, making them appear smaller than identical objects closer to the picture plane. The converging sightlines also increase the apparent size of objects in front of the picture plane. Because of the combined effect of convergence and diminishing size, it is more difficult to make and draw measurements in linear perspective than in other drawing systems. But there are techniques we can use to determine the relative heights, widths, and depth of objects in the pictorial space of a perspective drawing.

Measuring Height and Width

In linear perspective, any line in the picture plane displays its true direction and true length at the scale of the picture plane. We can therefore use any such line as a measuring line.

measuring line (ML)

Any line that can be used to measure true lengths in a projection drawing. While a measuring line may have any orientation in the picture plane, it typically is vertical or horizontal and used to measure true heights or widths. The groundline is one example of a horizontal measuring line.

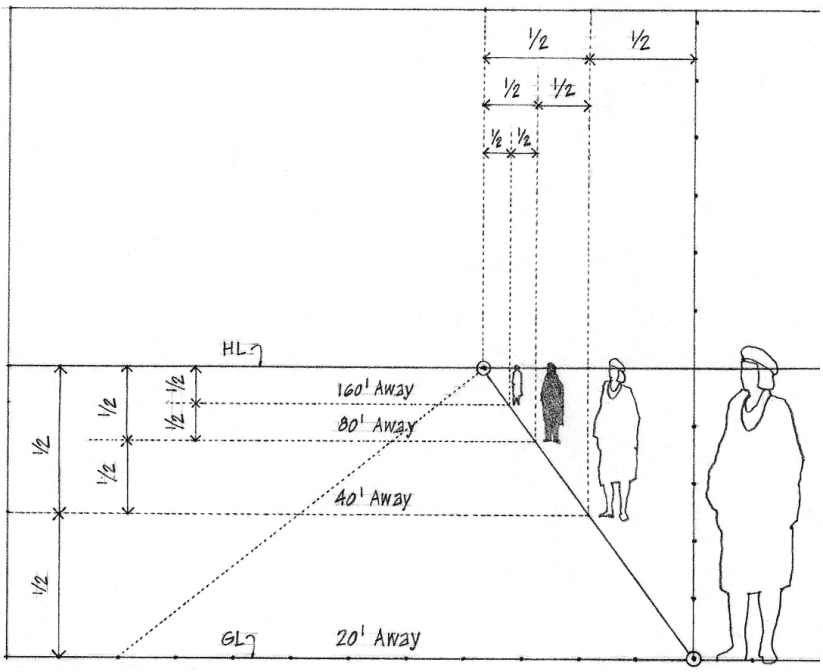


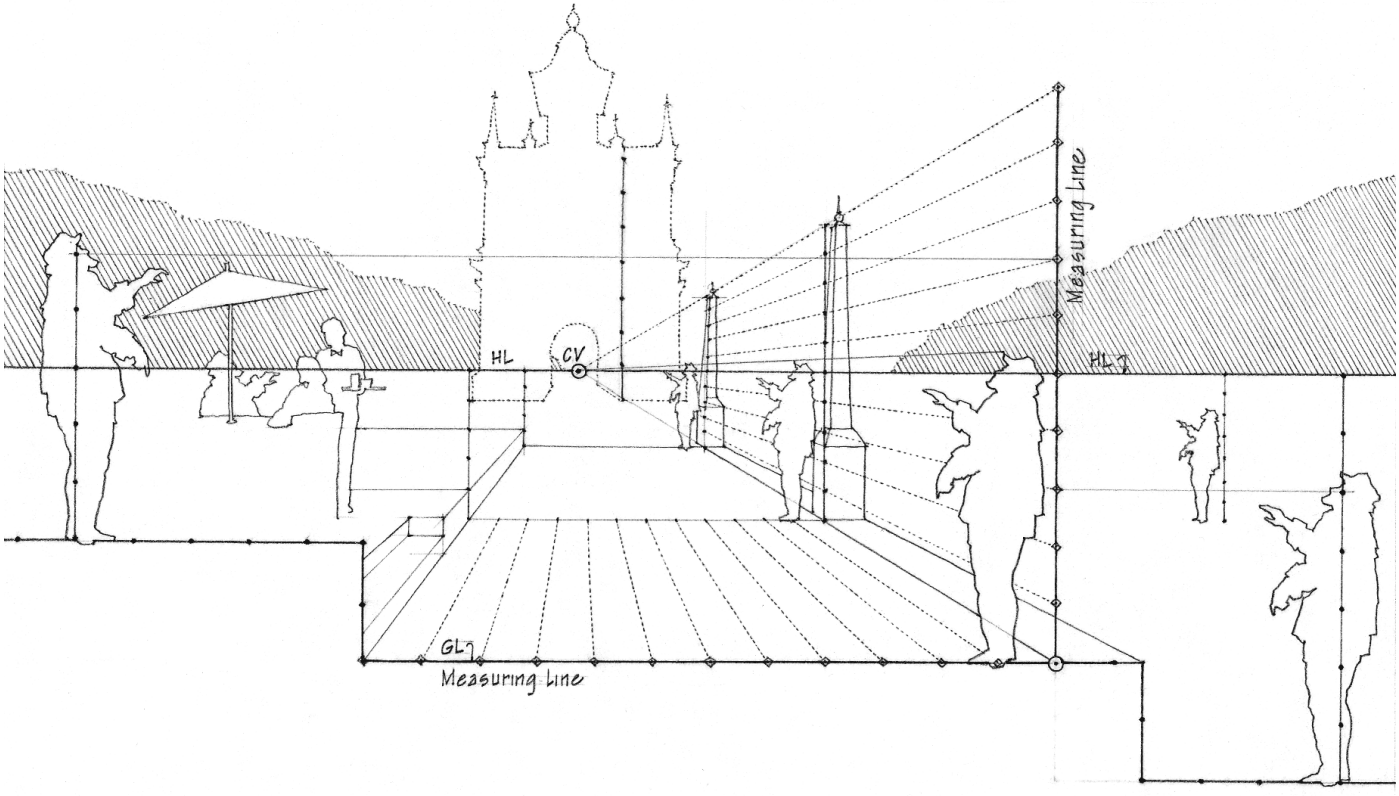
Once we establish a height or width, we can transfer the measurement horizontally or vertically, as long as we make the shift parallel to the picture plane. Since parallel lines by definition remain equidistant but appear to converge as they recede in perspective, we can also use a pair of parallel lines to transfer a vertical or horizontal measurement into the depth of a perspective. We can transfer measurements made in this manner vertically or horizontally as long as the shift occurs in a plane parallel to the picture plane.

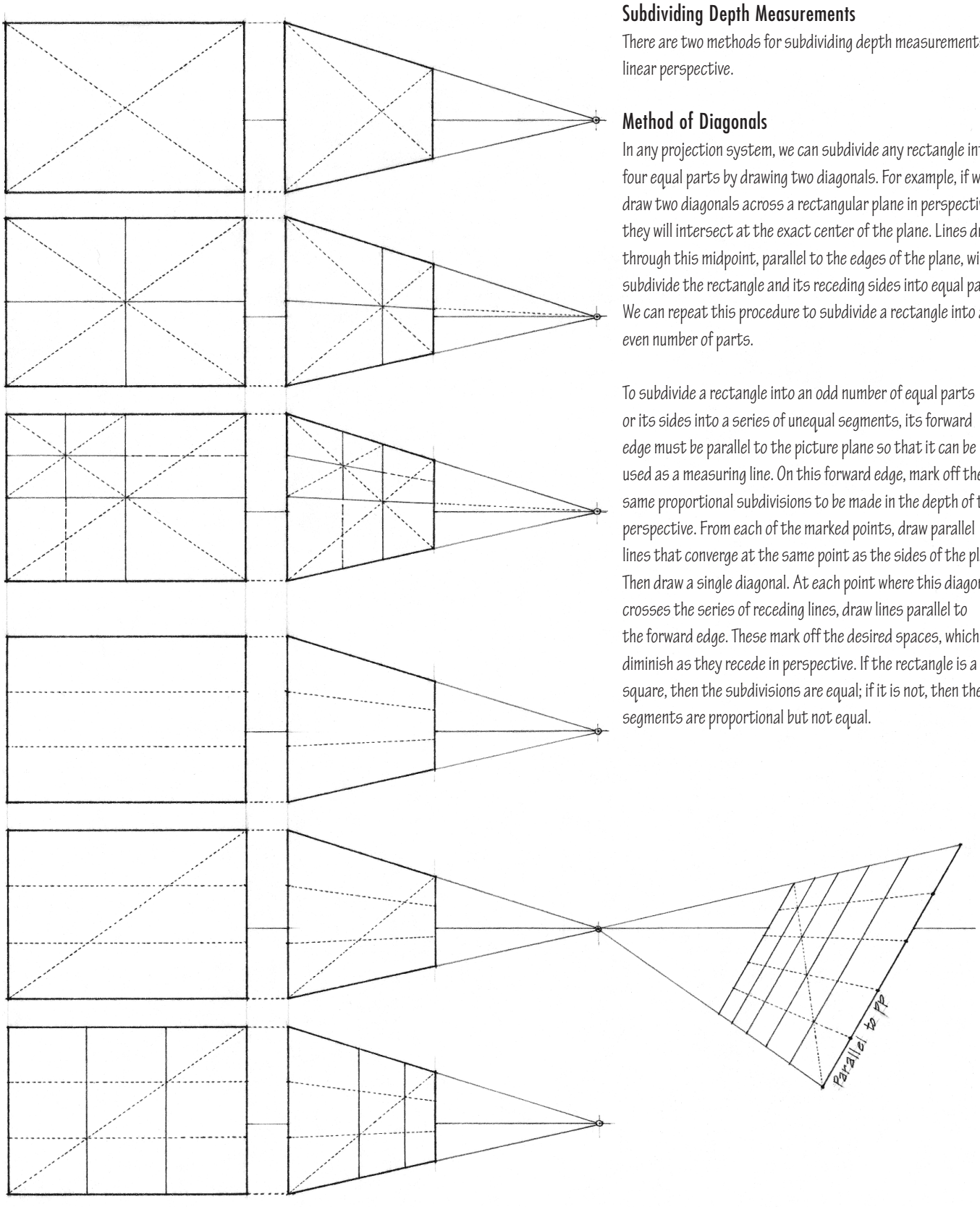
Measuring Depth

The measurement of perspective depth is more difficult and requires a certain degree of judgment based on direct observation and experience. The various methods of perspective construction establish depth in different ways. Once we establish an initial depth judgment, however, we can make succeeding depth judgments in proportion to the first.

For example, each time we halve the distance from the ground plane to the horizon line, we double the perspective depth. If we know how far away a point on the ground plane is from the spectator, we can subdivide on a proportional basis the height of the horizon line above the ground plane and establish the position of points farther back in the depth of a perspective drawing.







Subdividing Depth Measurements

There are two methods for subdividing depth measurements in linear perspective.

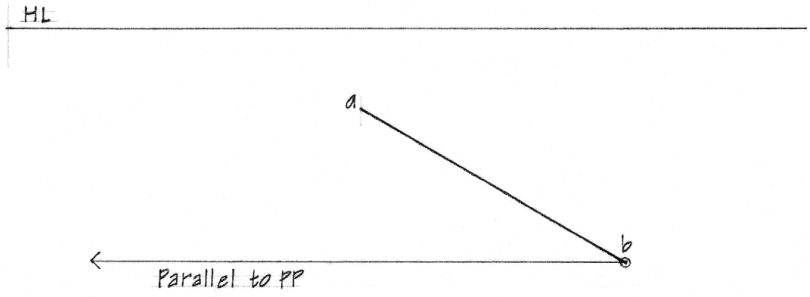
Method of Diagonals

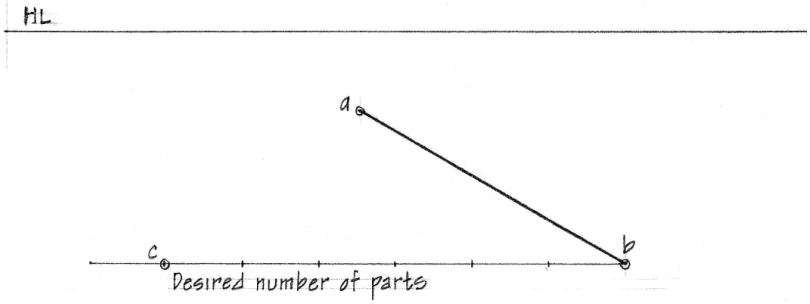
In any projection system, we can subdivide any rectangle into four equal parts by drawing two diagonals. For example, if we draw two diagonals across a rectangular plane in perspective, they will intersect at the exact center of the plane. Lines drawn through this midpoint, parallel to the edges of the plane, will subdivide the rectangle and its receding sides into equal parts. We can repeat this procedure to subdivide a rectangle into any even number of parts.

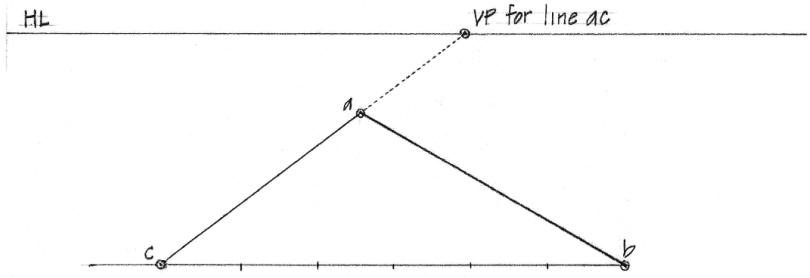
To subdivide a rectangle into an odd number of equal parts or its sides into a series of unequal segments, its forward edge must be parallel to the picture plane so that it can be used as a measuring line. On this forward edge, mark off the same proportional subdivisions to be made in the depth of the perspective. From each of the marked points, draw parallel lines that converge at the same point as the sides of the plane. Then draw a single diagonal. At each point where this diagonal crosses the series of receding lines, draw lines parallel to the forward edge. These mark off the desired spaces, which diminish as they recede in perspective. If the rectangle is a square, then the subdivisions are equal; if it is not, then the segments are proportional but not equal.

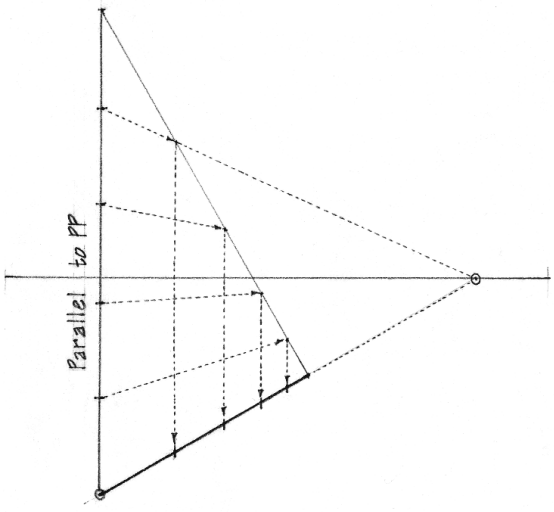
Method of Triangles

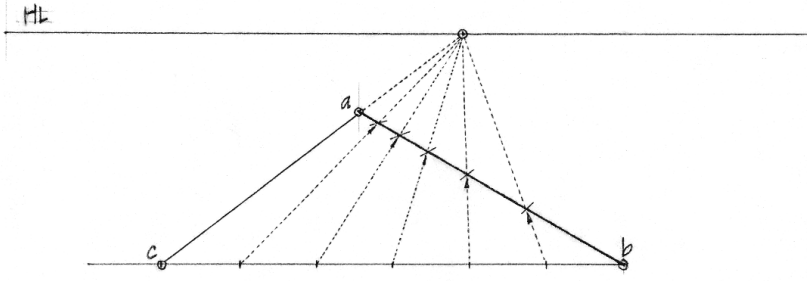
Since any line parallel to the picture plane can be subdivided proportionately to scale, we can use the line as a measuring line to subdivide any intersecting line into equal or unequal parts. First, define a triangle by connecting the ends of the measuring line and the adjacent line. Then, mark off the desired subdivisions on the measuring line to scale. From each of these points, draw lines parallel to the closing line of the triangle, which converge at the same vanishing point. These lines subdivide the adjacent line into the same proportional segments.

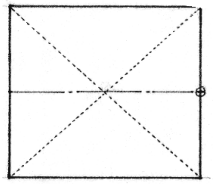


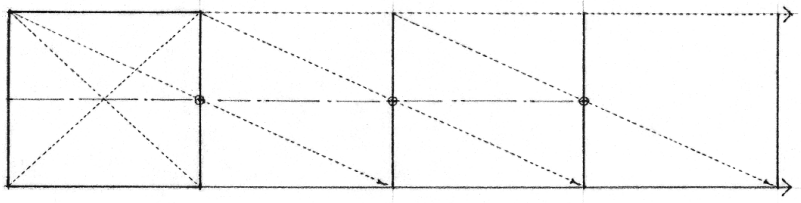






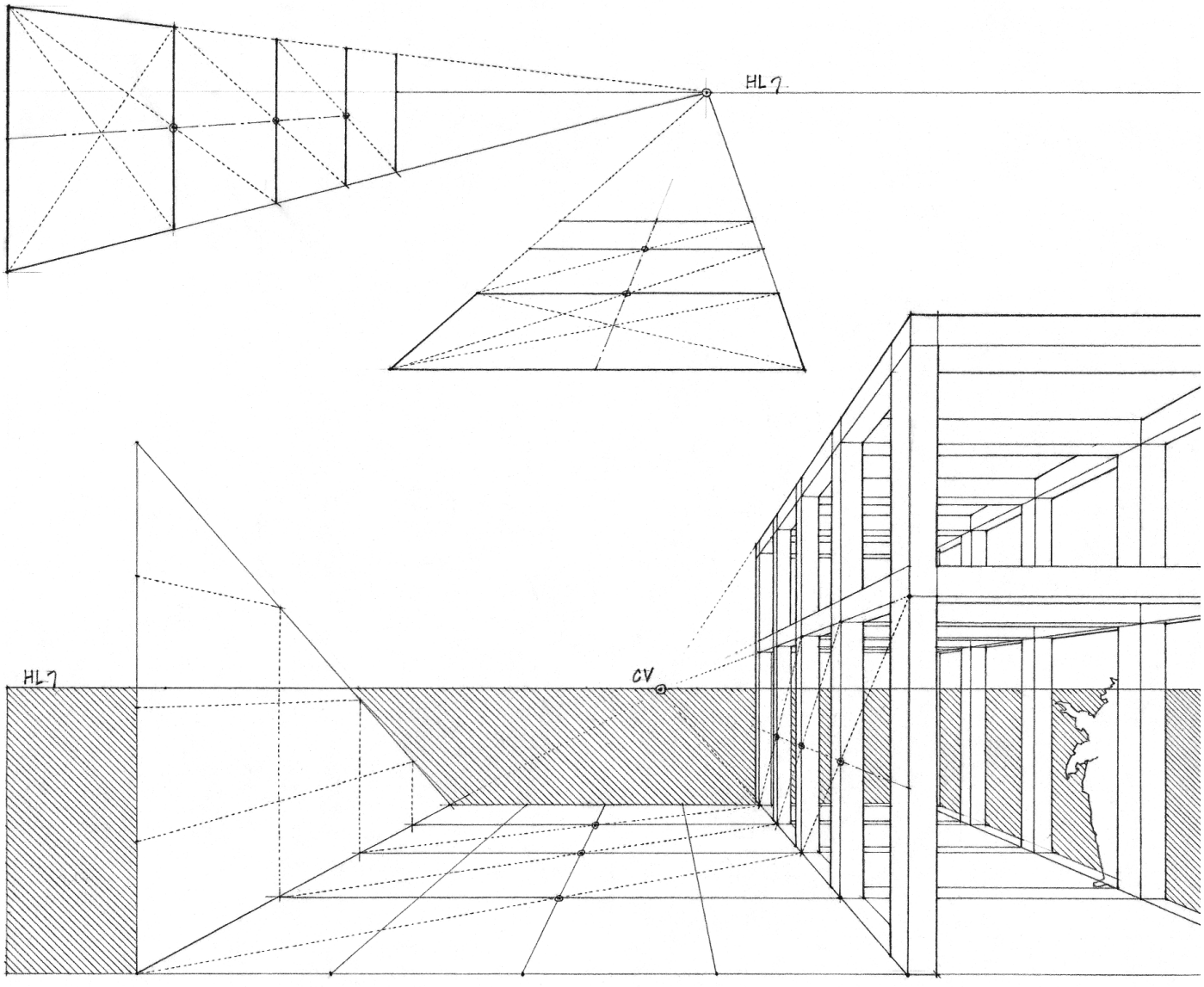






Extending a Depth Measurement

If the forward edge of a rectangular plane is parallel to the picture plane, we can extend and duplicate its depth in perspective. First establish the midpoint of the rear edge opposite the forward edge of the rectangle. Then extend a diagonal from a forward corner through this midpoint to meet an extended side of the rectangle. From this point draw a line parallel to the forward edge. The distance from the first to the second edge is identical to the distance from the second to the third edge, but the equal spaces are diminished in perspective. This procedure can be repeated as often as necessary to produce the desired number of equal spaces in the depth of a perspective drawing.

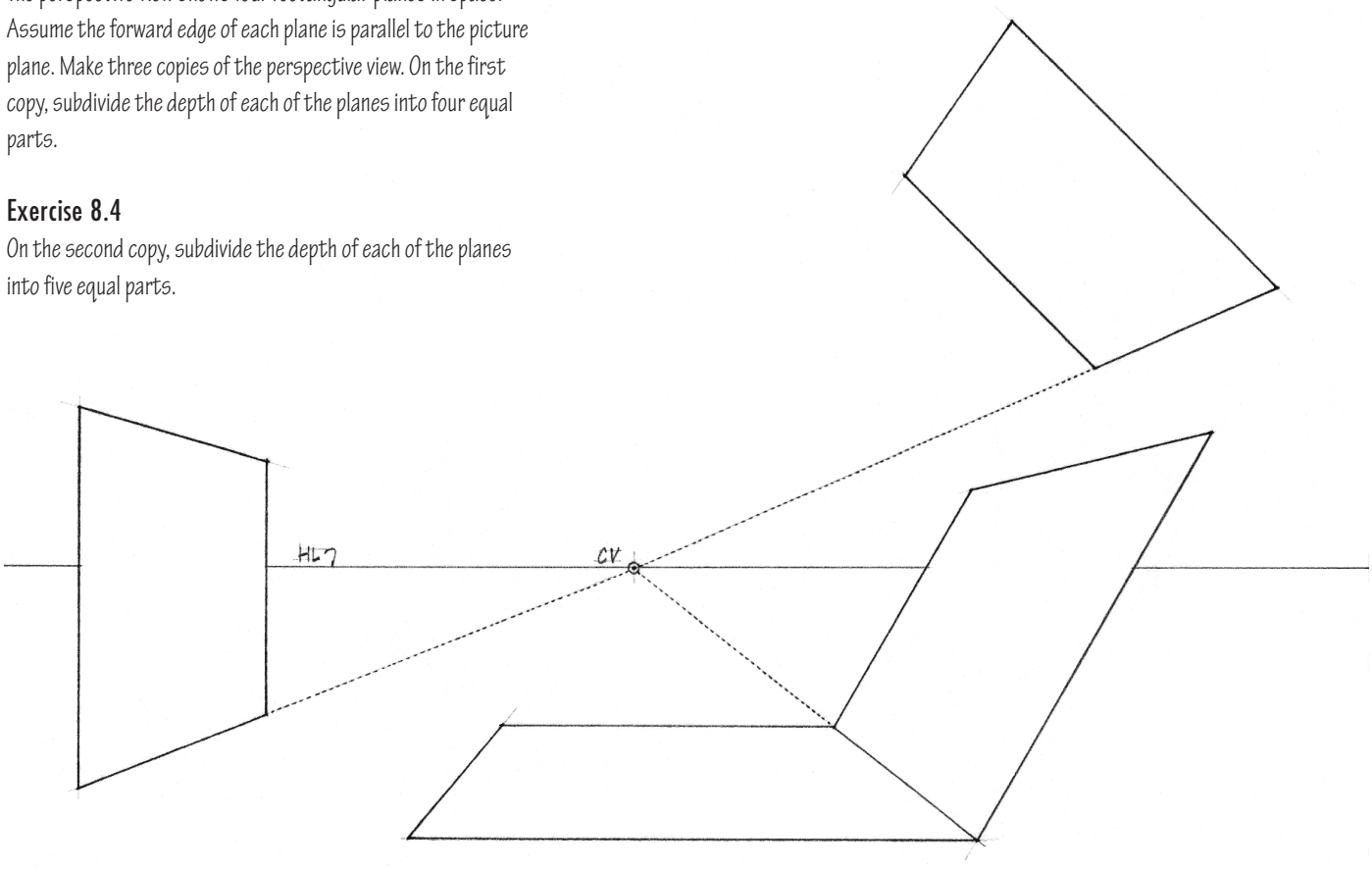


Exercise 8.3

The perspective view shows four rectangular planes in space. Assume the forward edge of each plane is parallel to the picture plane. Make three copies of the perspective view. On the first copy, subdivide the depth of each of the planes into four equal parts.

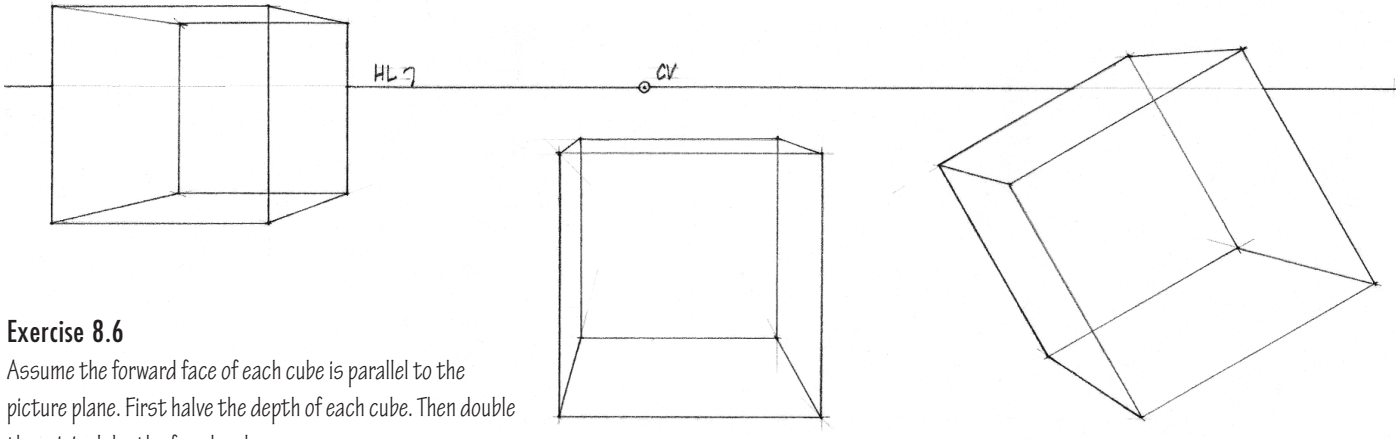
Exercise 8.4

On the second copy, subdivide the depth of each of the planes into five equal parts.



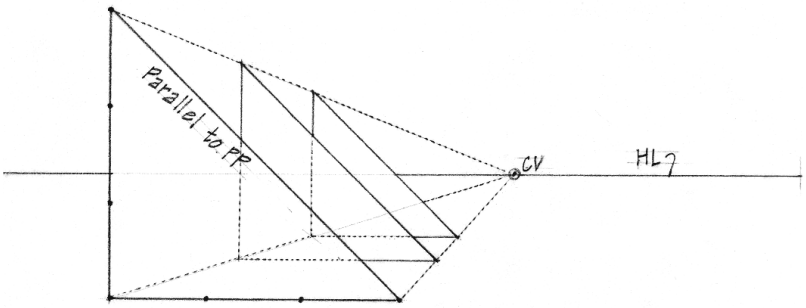
Exercise 8.5

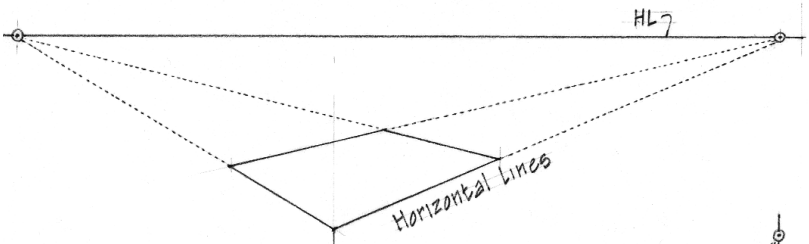
On the third copy, double the depth of each of the planes.

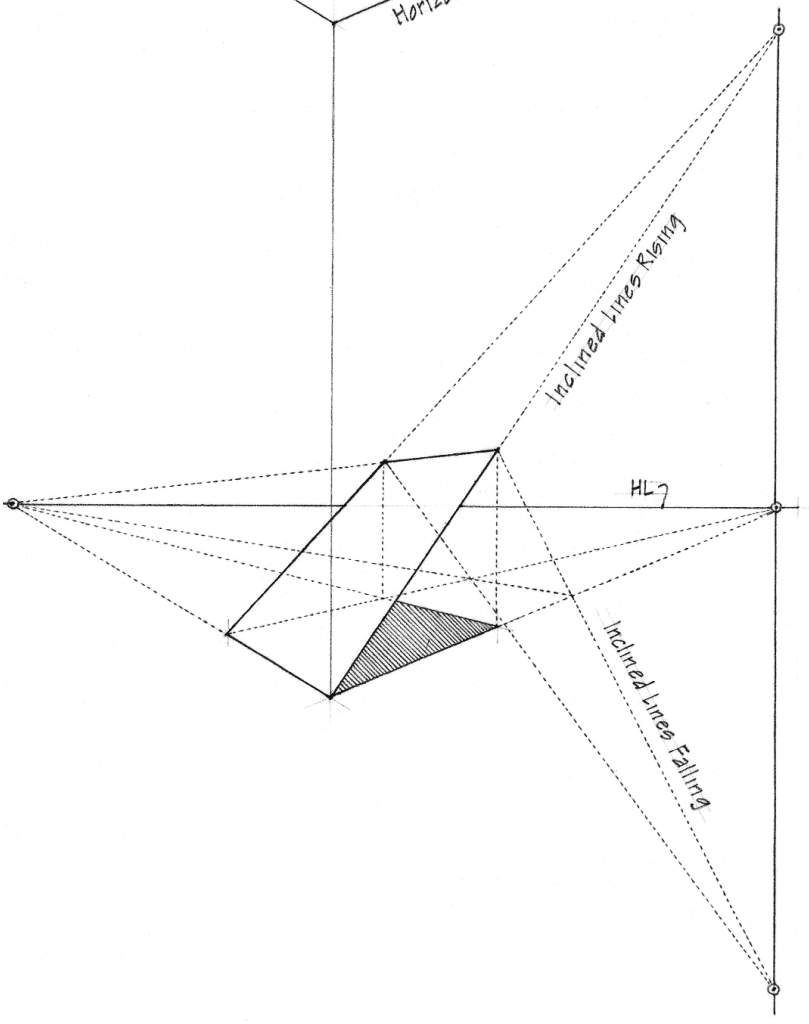


Exercise 8.6

Assume the forward face of each cube is parallel to the picture plane. First halve the depth of each cube. Then double the original depth of each cube.







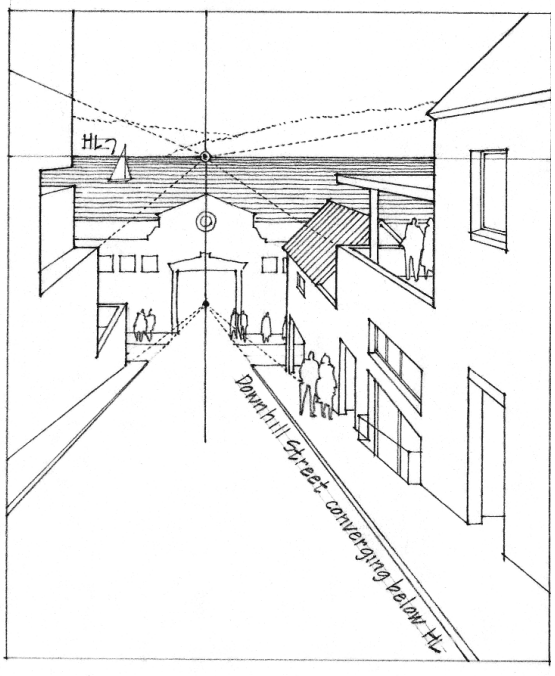
Once we are familiar with how lines parallel to the three principal axes of an object converge in linear perspective, we can use this rectilinear geometry as the basis for drawing perspective views of inclined lines and circles.

Inclined Lines

Inclined lines parallel to the picture plane retain their orientation but diminish in size according to their distance from the spectator. If perpendicular or oblique to the picture plane, however, an inclined set of parallel lines will appear to converge at a vanishing point above or below the horizon line.

We can draw any inclined line in perspective by first finding the perspective projections of its endpoints and then connecting them. The easiest way to do this is to visualize the inclined line as being the hypotenuse of a right triangle. If we can draw the sides of the triangle in proper perspective, we can connect the endpoints to establish the inclined line.

If we must draw a number of inclined parallel lines, as in the case of a sloping roof, a ramp, or a stairway, it is useful to know where the inclined set appears to converge in perspective. An inclined set of parallel lines is not horizontal and therefore will not converge on the horizon line. If the set rises upward as it recedes, its vanishing point will be above the horizon line; if it falls as it recedes, it will appear to converge below the horizon line.



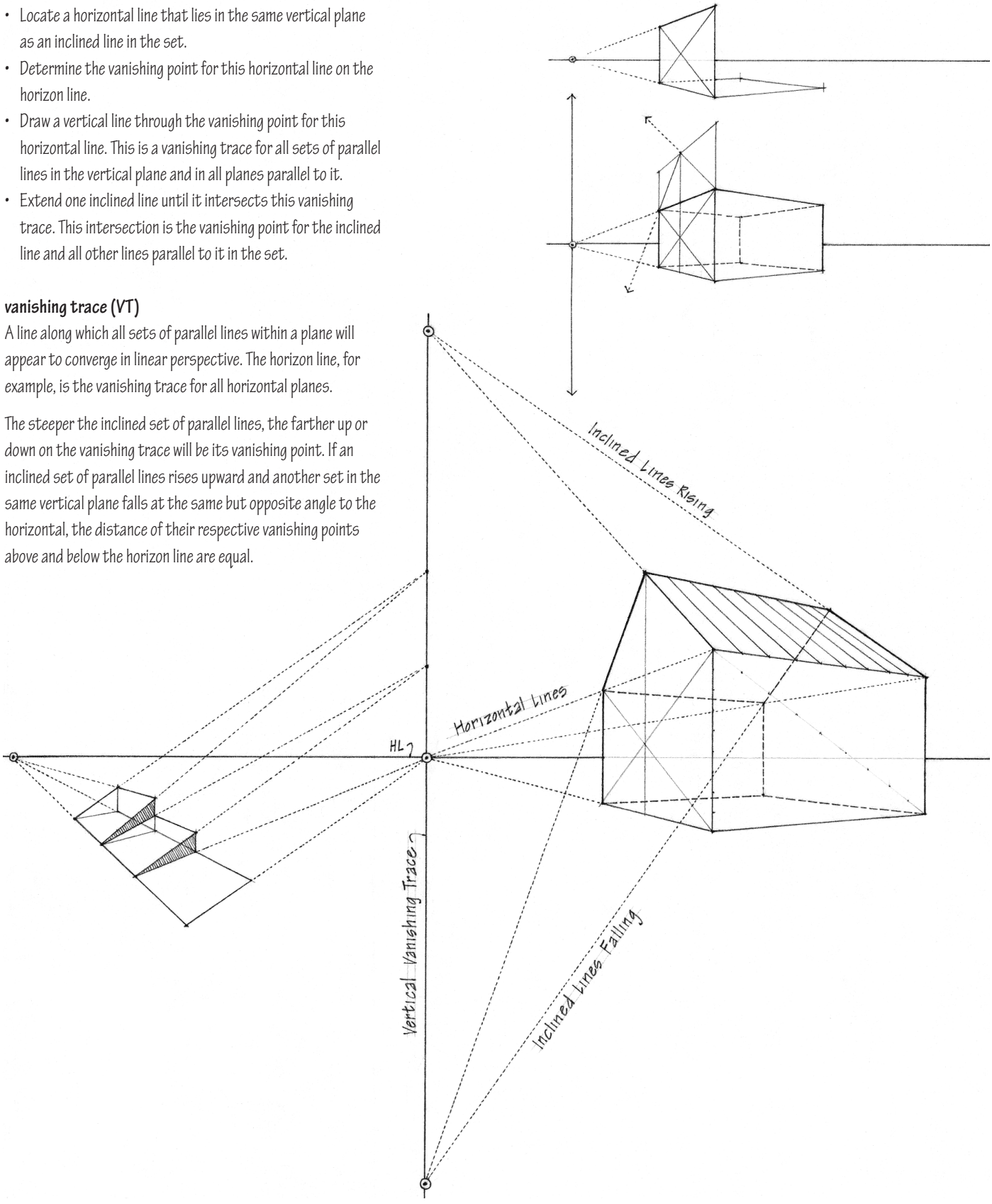
To determine the vanishing point for any inclined set of parallel lines:

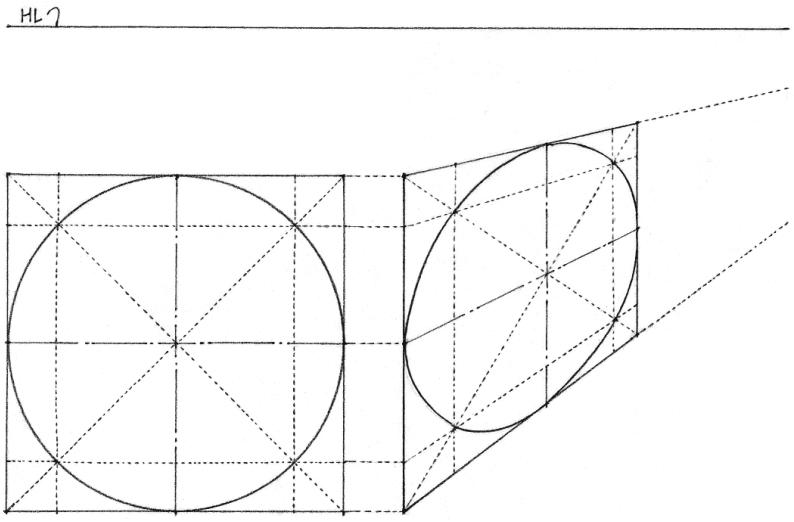
- Locate a horizontal line that lies in the same vertical plane as an inclined line in the set.
- Determine the vanishing point for this horizontal line on the horizon line.
- Draw a vertical line through the vanishing point for this horizontal line. This is a vanishing trace for all sets of parallel lines in the vertical plane and in all planes parallel to it.
- Extend one inclined line until it intersects this vanishing trace. This intersection is the vanishing point for the inclined line and all other lines parallel to it in the set.

vanishing trace (VT)

A line along which all sets of parallel lines within a plane will appear to converge in linear perspective. The horizon line, for example, is the vanishing trace for all horizontal planes.

The steeper the inclined set of parallel lines, the farther up or down on the vanishing trace will be its vanishing point. If an inclined set of parallel lines rises upward and another set in the same vertical plane falls at the same but opposite angle to the horizontal, the distance of their respective vanishing points above and below the horizon line are equal.

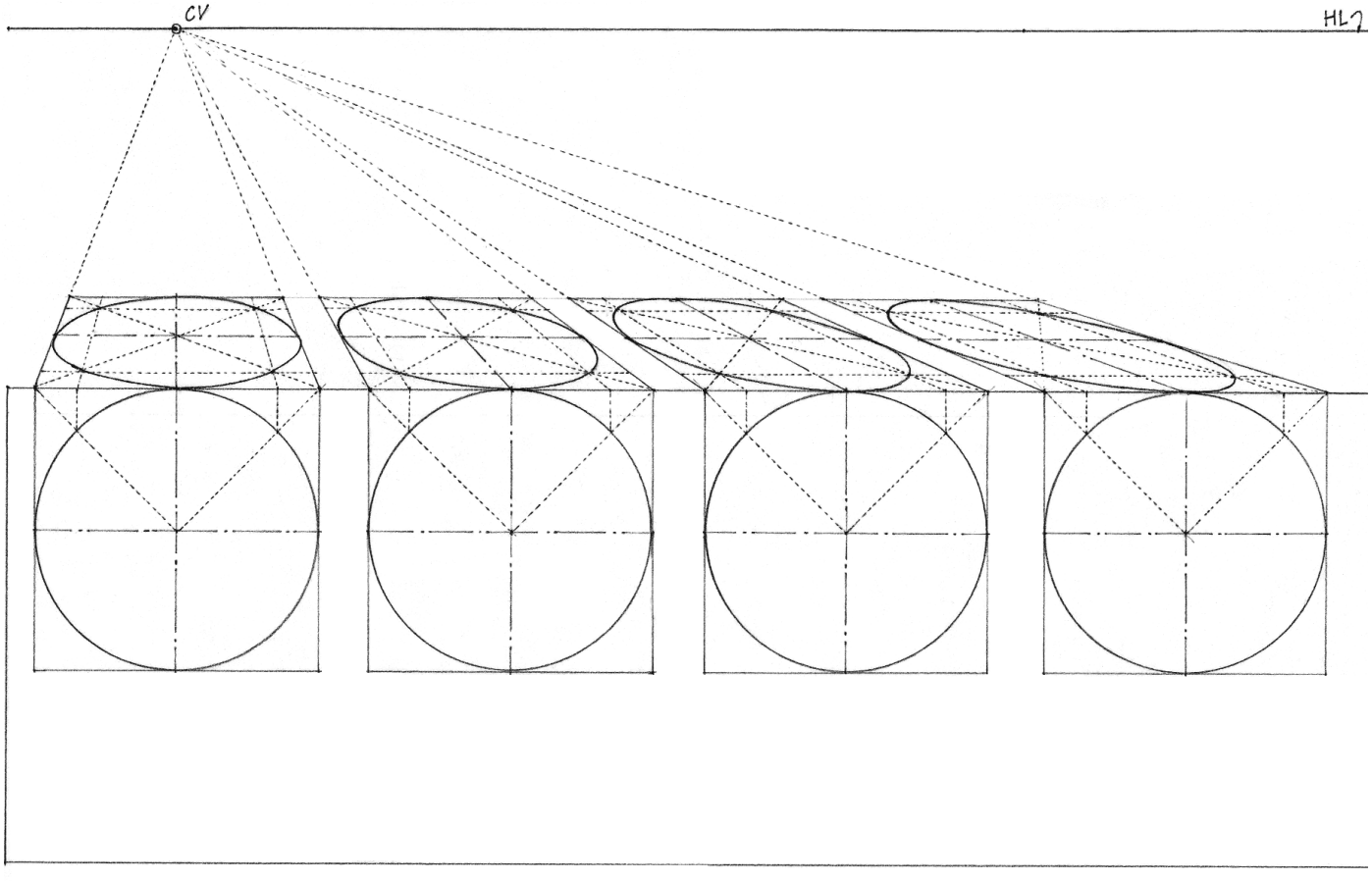




Circles

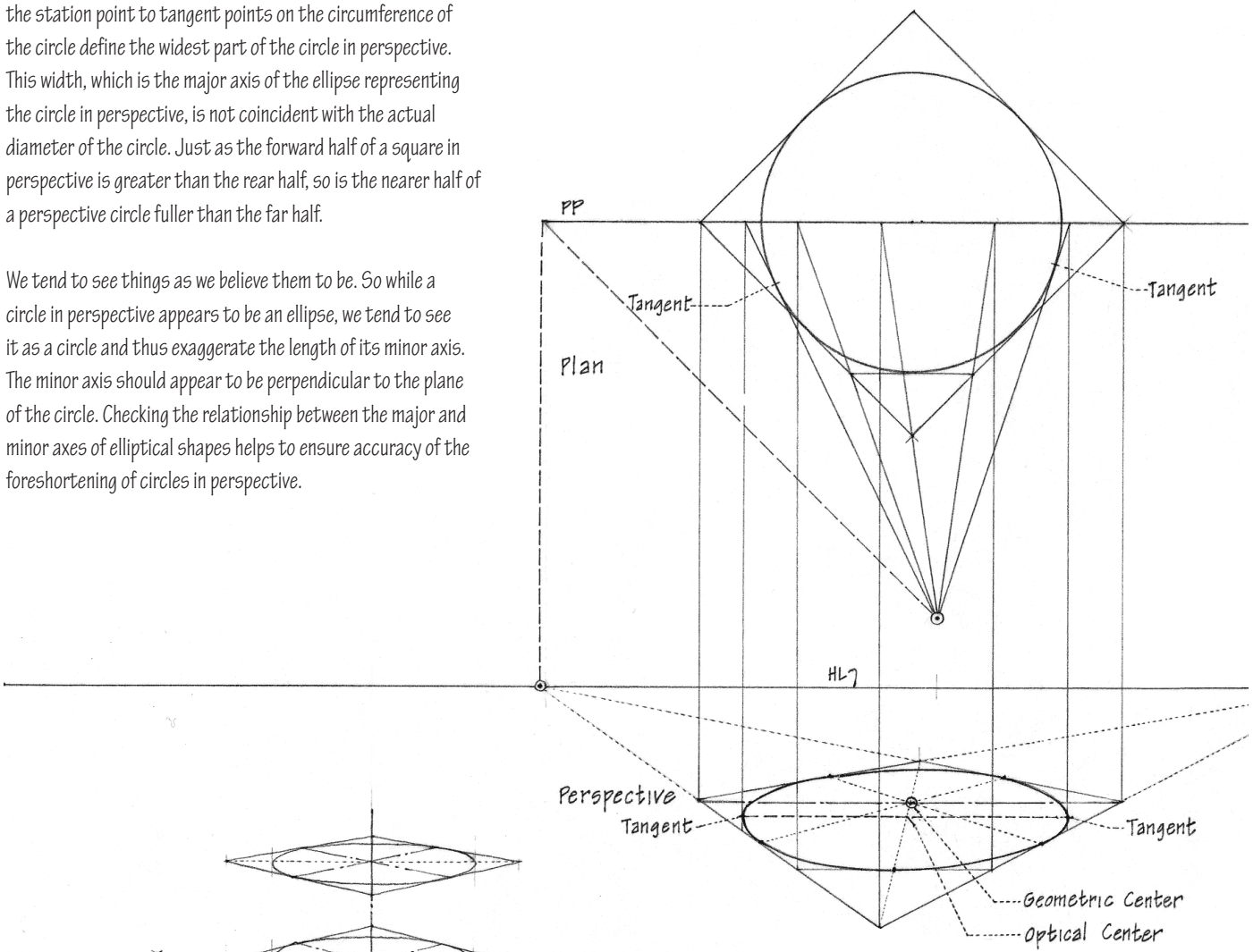
The circle is the essential basis for drawing cylindrical objects, arches, and other circular forms. The perspective view of a circle remains a circle when it is parallel to the picture plane. The perspective view of a circle is a straight line when the projectors radiating from the station point are parallel to the plane of the circle. This occurs most frequently when the plane of the circle is horizontal and at the height of the station point, or when the plane of the circle is vertical and aligned with the central axis of vision.

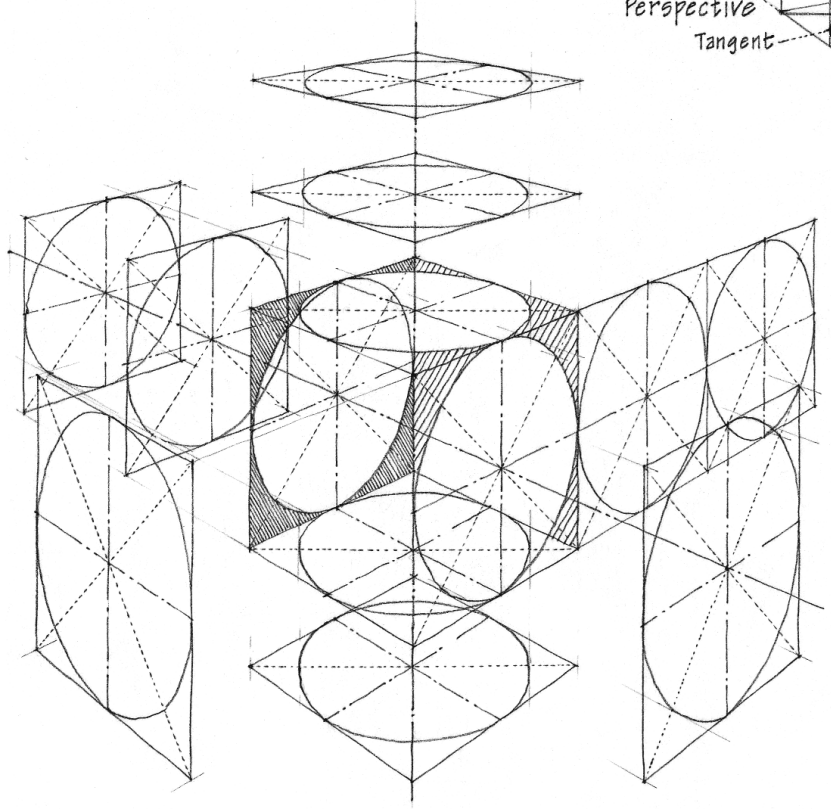
In all other cases, circles appear as elliptical shapes in perspective. To draw a circle in perspective, first draw a perspective view of a square that circumscribes the circle. Construct the diagonals of the square and indicate where the circle crosses the diagonals with additional lines parallel to the sides of the square or tangent to the circumference of the circle. The larger the circle, the more subdivisions are necessary to ensure smoothness of the elliptical shape.



In a plan view of the perspective setup, the sightlines from the station point to tangent points on the circumference of the circle define the widest part of the circle in perspective. This width, which is the major axis of the ellipse representing the circle in perspective, is not coincident with the actual diameter of the circle. Just as the forward half of a square in perspective is greater than the rear half, so is the nearer half of a perspective circle fuller than the far half.

We tend to see things as we believe them to be. So while a circle in perspective appears to be an ellipse, we tend to see it as a circle and thus exaggerate the length of its minor axis. The minor axis should appear to be perpendicular to the plane of the circle. Checking the relationship between the major and minor axes of elliptical shapes helps to ensure accuracy of the foreshortening of circles in perspective.

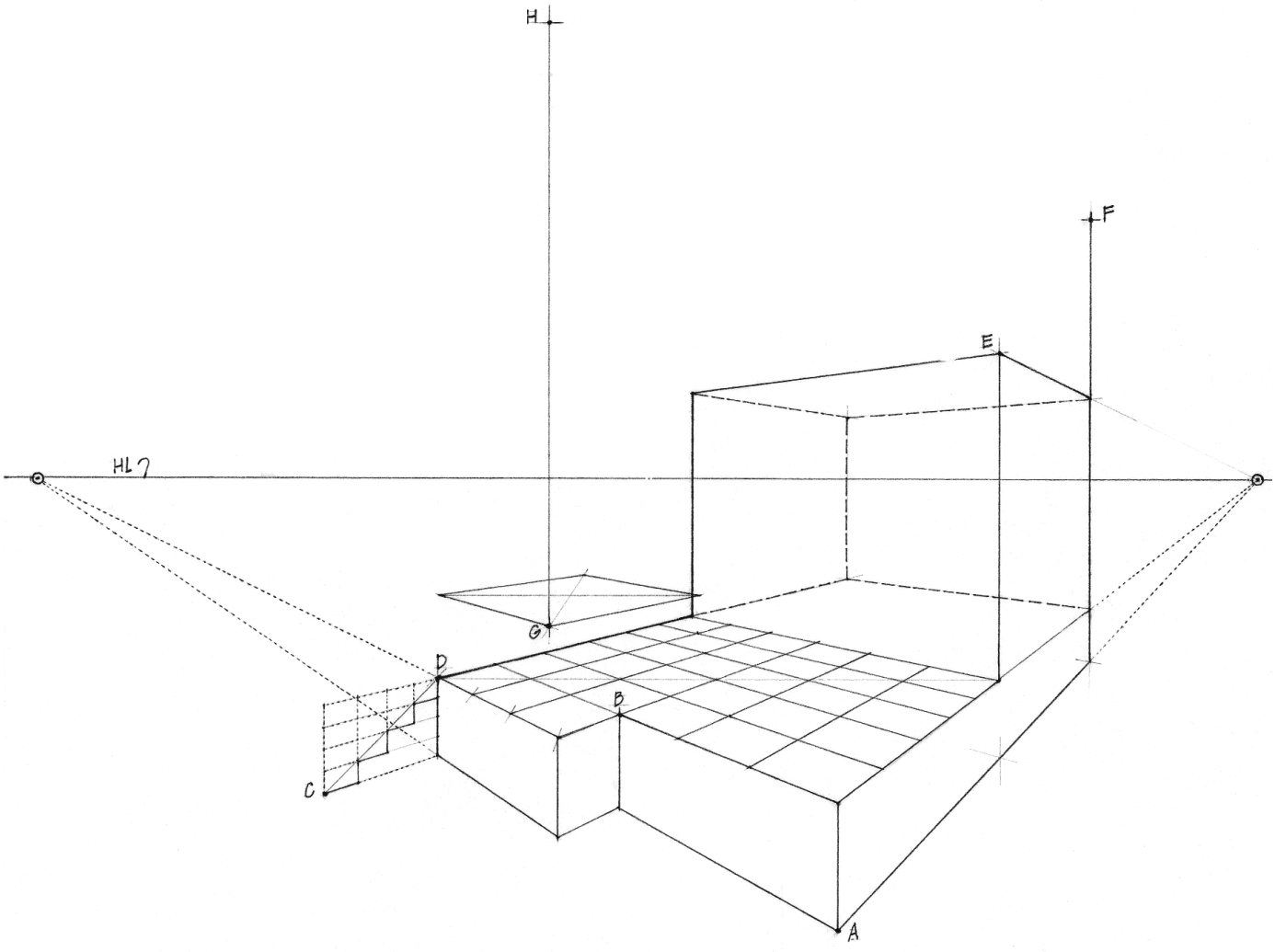




Exercise 8.7

In the perspective view below, use the principles of perspective geometry to construct the following:

- a ramp rising from point A to point B
- a stairway climbing from point C to point D
- a shed roof ascending from point E to point F
- a cylindrical tower rising from point G to point H.



In any rectilinear object, such as a cube, each of the three principal sets of parallel lines has its own vanishing point. Based on these three major sets of lines, there are three types of linear perspective: 1-, 2-, and 3-point perspectives. What distinguishes each type is simply the spectator's angle of view relative to the subject. The subject does not change, just our view of it and how the sets of parallel lines will appear to converge in linear perspective.

One-point Perspective

If we view a cube with our central axis of vision perpendicular to one of its faces, its vertical lines are parallel with the picture plane and remain vertical. The horizontal lines parallel with the picture plane and perpendicular to the central axis of vision also remain horizontal. The lines parallel with the central axis of vision, however, will appear to converge at the center of vision. This is the one point referred to in one-point perspective.

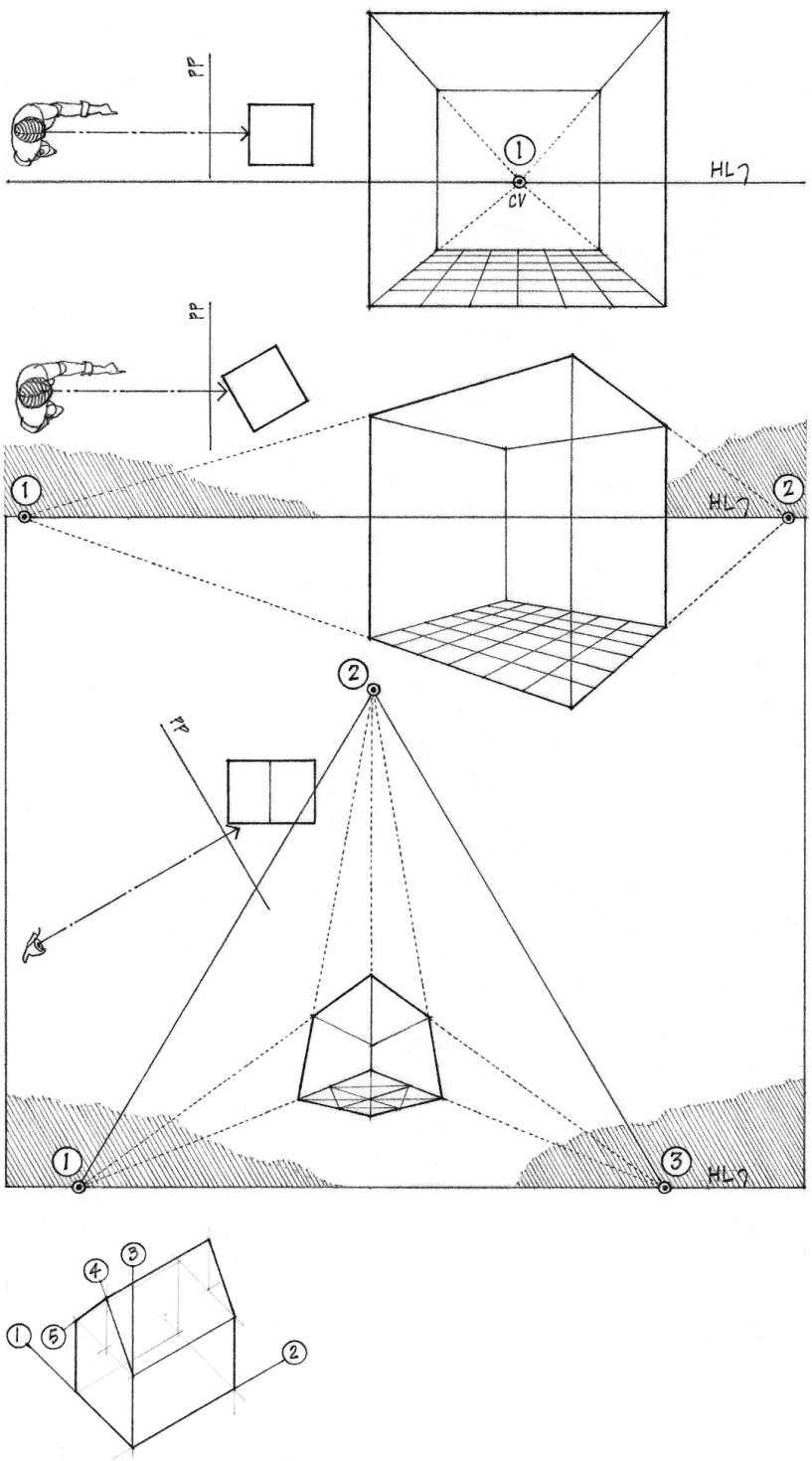
Two-point Perspective

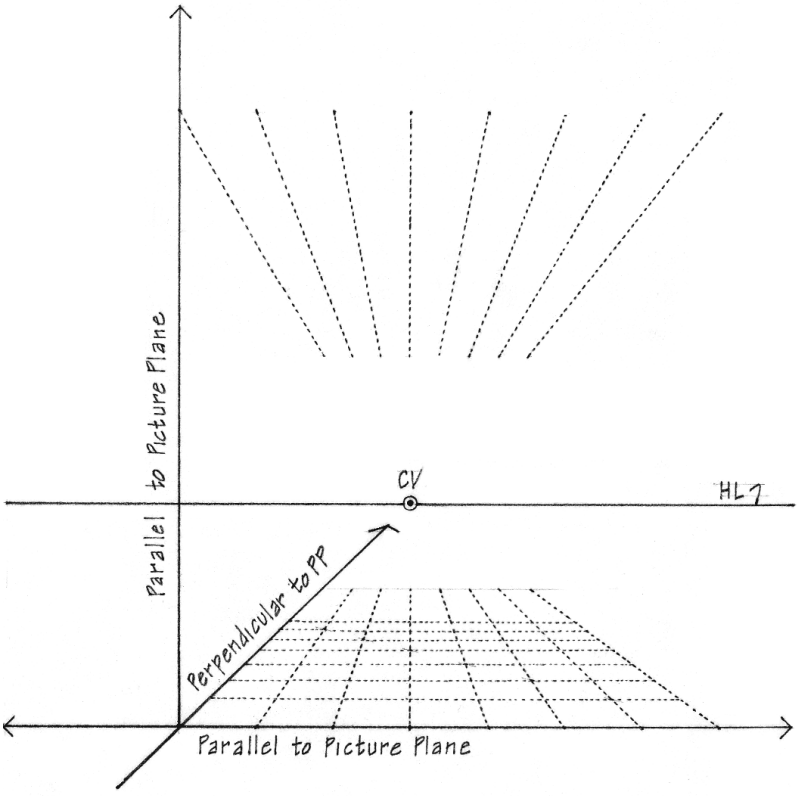
If we shift our view so that the same cube is viewed obliquely but keep our central axis of vision horizontal, then the vertical lines will remain vertical. The two sets of horizontal lines, however, are now oblique to the picture plane and will appear to converge, one set to the left and the other to the right. These are the two points referred to in two-point perspective.

Three-point Perspective

If we lift one end of the cube off the ground plane, or if we tilt our central axis of vision to look down or up at the cube, then all three sets of parallel lines will be oblique to the picture plane and appear to converge at three different vanishing points. These are the three points referred to in three-point perspective.

Note that each type of perspective does not imply that there are only one, two, or three vanishing points in a perspective. The actual number of vanishing points will depend on our point of view and how many sets of parallel lines there are in the subject being viewed. For example, if we look at a simple gable-roofed form, we can see that there are potentially five vanishing points since we have one set of vertical lines, two sets of horizontal lines, and two sets of inclined lines.

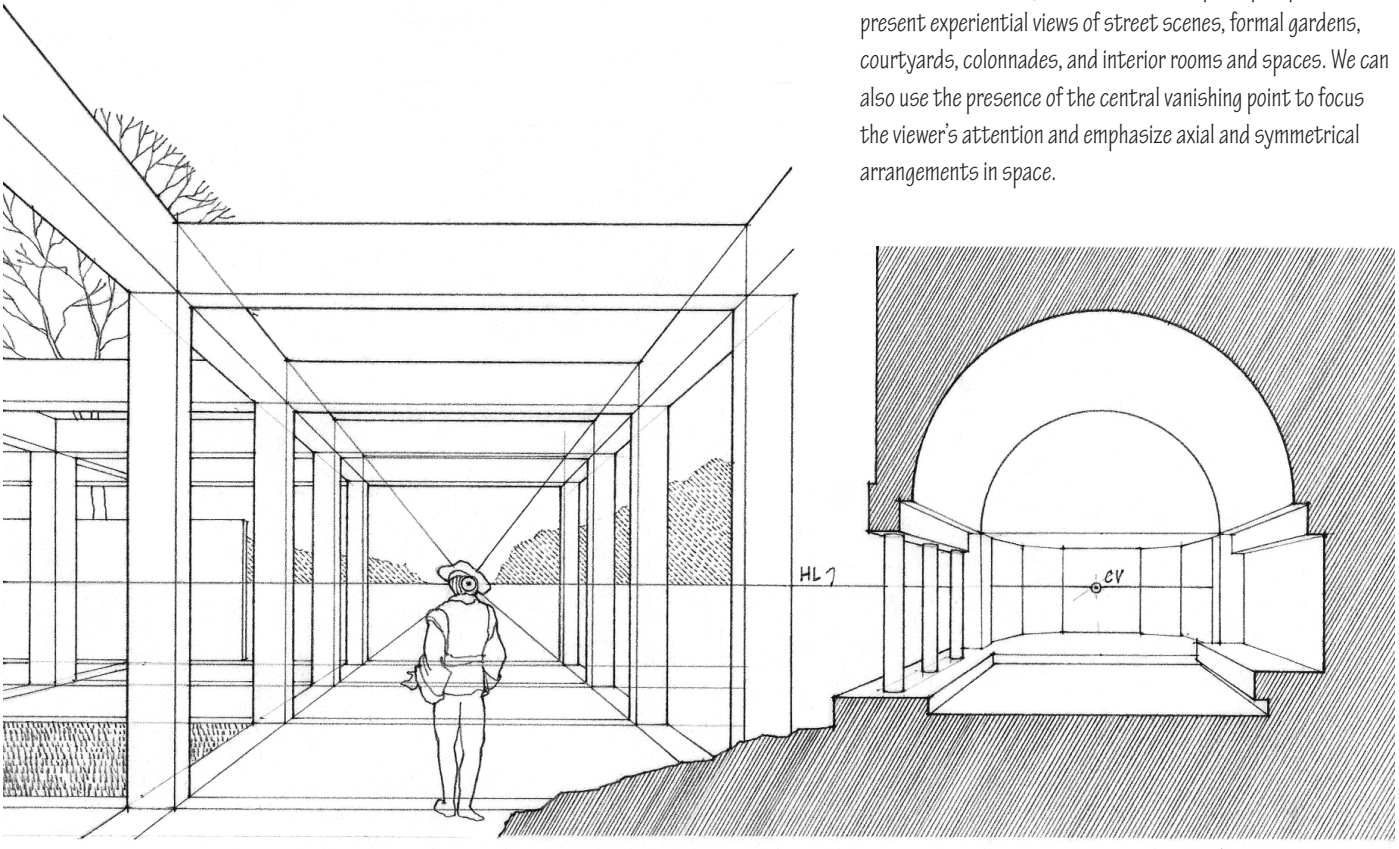




The one-point perspective system assumes that two of the three principal axes—one vertical and the other horizontal—are parallel to the picture plane. All lines parallel to these axes are also parallel to the picture plane and therefore retain their true orientation and do not appear to converge. For this reason, one-point perspective is also known as parallel perspective.

The third principal axis is horizontal, perpendicular to the picture plane, and parallel with the central axis of vision. All lines parallel to this axis converge on the horizon line at the center of vision. This is the particular vanishing point referred to in one-point perspective. The convergence of a major set of parallel lines at this central vanishing point is the dominant visual characteristic of one-point perspective.

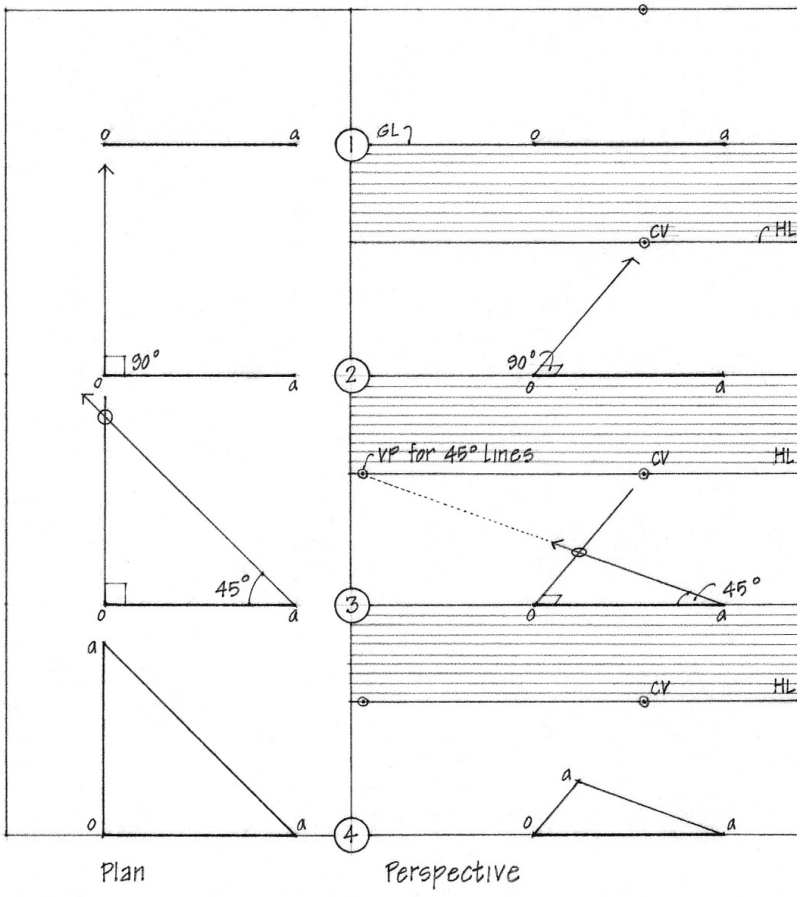
A one-point perspective may not effectively explain the three-dimensional form of a rectilinear object if the receding lines and planes that impart depth are not visible in the perspective view. In depicting spatial volumes, however, the one-point perspective system is particularly effective since the display of three bounding faces provides a clear sense of enclosure. For this reason, designers often use one-point perspectives to present experiential views of street scenes, formal gardens, courtyards, colonnades, and interior rooms and spaces. We can also use the presence of the central vanishing point to focus the viewer's attention and emphasize axial and symmetrical arrangements in space.



The diagonal point method for constructing a one-point perspective enables us to obtain accurate depth measurements directly within the perspective view without making projections from a plan view. It requires only an elevation or section view and is therefore especially useful in constructing section perspectives.

The method uses the geometry of a 45° right triangle and the principles of convergence to make depth measurements in perspective. We know that the perpendicular sides of a 45° right triangle are equal in length. Therefore, if we can draw one side of a 45° right triangle to scale, the hypotenuse will mark off an equal length on the perpendicular side.

The technique involves establishing one side of the 45° right triangle in or parallel to the picture plane so that we can use it as a measuring line. Along this side, we measure a length equal to the desired perspective depth. From one endpoint of this length, we draw the perpendicular side that converges at the center of vision. From the other endpoint, we draw the hypotenuse that converges at the vanishing point for lines making a 45° angle with the picture plane. This diagonal marks off a perspective depth along the perpendicular side equal to the scaled length of the parallel side.

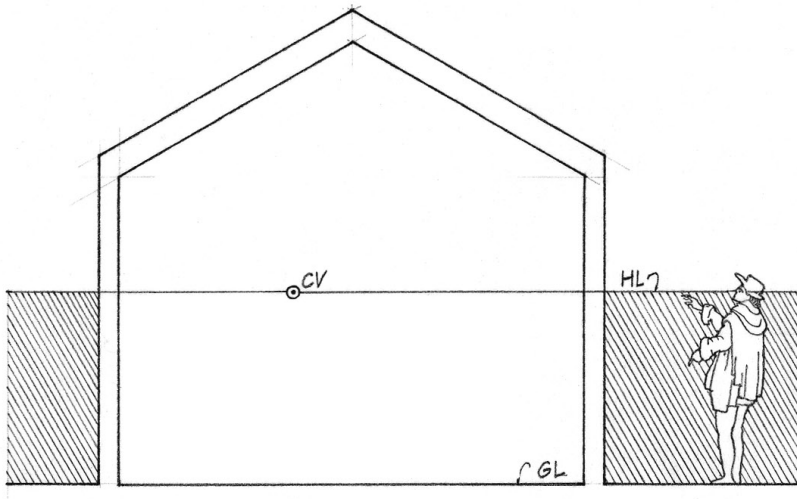


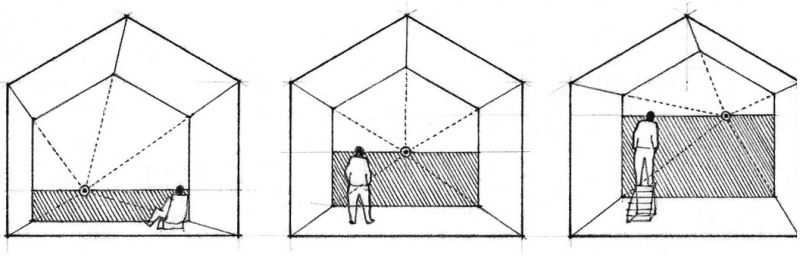
Perspective Setup

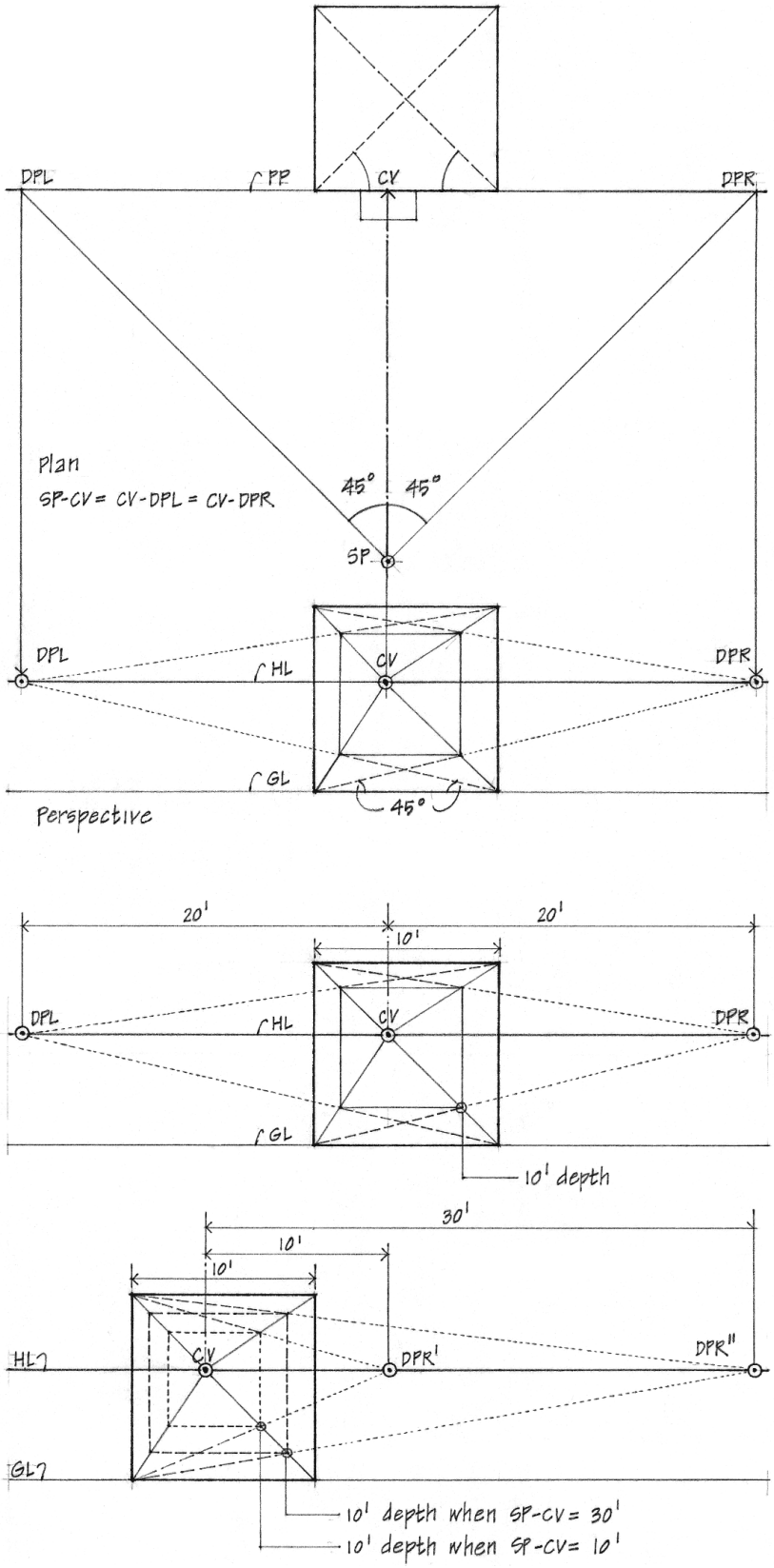
We begin with an elevation or section view perpendicular to the spectator's central axis of vision and coincident with the picture plane. The scale of the elevation or section view establishes the size of the perspective drawing.

- Establish the ground line and the horizon line. The ground line is typically the ground line of the elevation or section. The height of the horizon line above the ground line is equal to the height of the eye level of the spectator above the ground plane.
- Establish the spectator's center of vision on the horizon line.

Refer to the discussion of perspective variables to review how varying the distance from the station point to the subject, raising or lowering the horizon line, and locating the picture plane all affect the pictorial nature of a perspective view.







Establishing Diagonal Points

To use the diagonal point method, we must locate the vanishing point for a set of parallel lines that make a 45° angle with the picture plane. The vanishing point for any set of parallel lines is that point where a sightline from the station point, drawn parallel to the set, intersects the picture plane. Therefore, if we draw a 45° line from the station point in a plan view of the perspective setup, it will intersect the picture plane at the vanishing point for all 45° diagonals. We call this vanishing point a diagonal point or distance point.

There is one diagonal point for horizontal lines receding to the left at a 45° angle to the picture plane, and another for horizontal lines receding to the right at a 45° angle to the picture plane. Both diagonal points lie on the horizon line, equidistant from the center of vision. From the geometry of the 45° right triangle, we also know that the distance from each diagonal point to the center of vision is equal to the distance from the spectator's station point to the picture plane.

If we understand this geometric relationship, we need not set up a plan view of the perspective setup directly above the perspective view. We can simply locate either or both diagonal points directly in the perspective view, on the horizon line, at a distance from the center of vision equal to the distance of the spectator from the picture plane. For a 60° cone of vision, the distance from the center of vision to either diagonal point should be equal to or greater than the width of the elevation or section view.

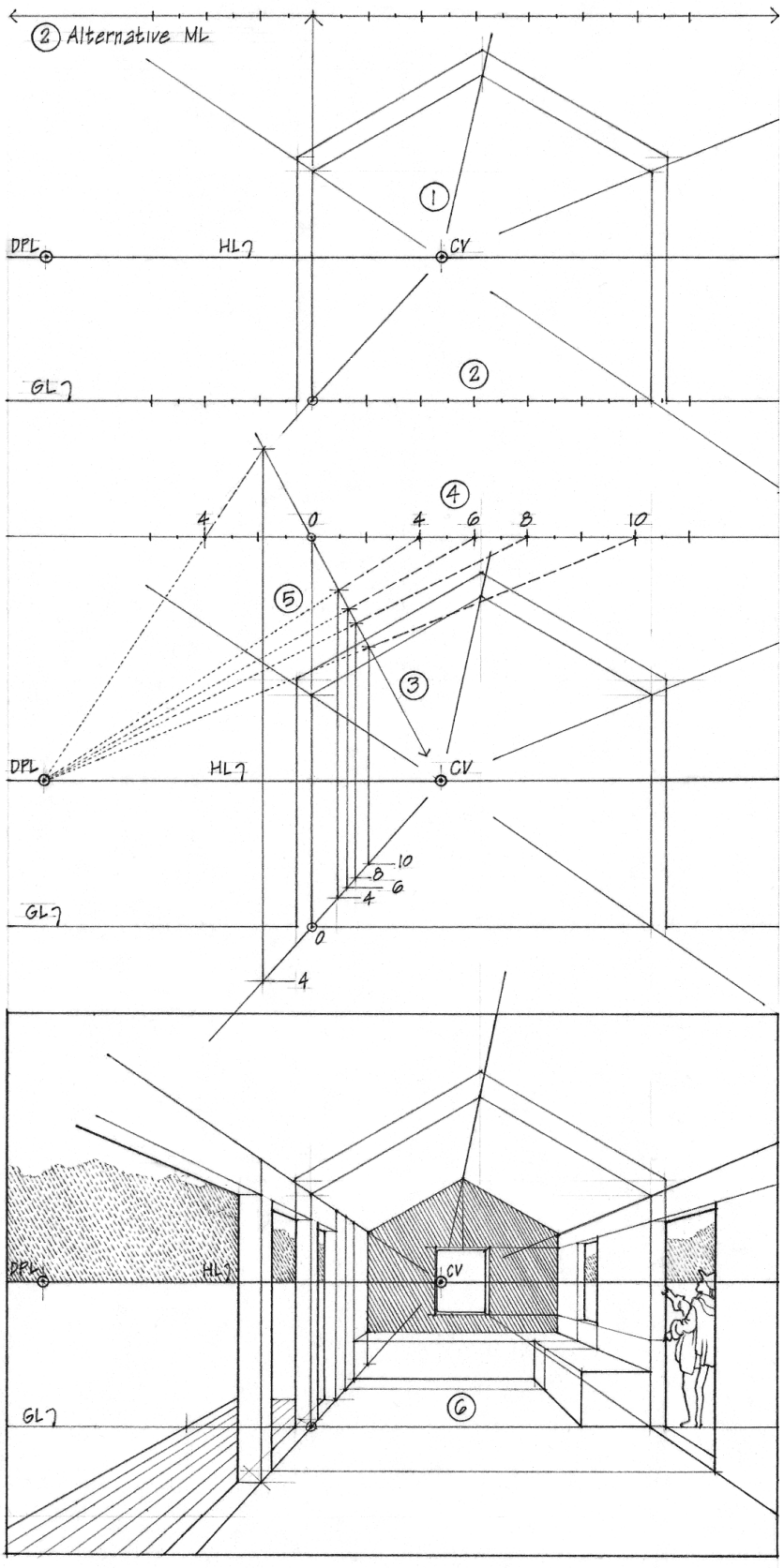
For example, if the spectator is standing 20 feet away from the picture plane, the diagonal point on the horizon line will be 20 feet away to the left or right of the center of vision. This distance, measured at the same scale as the picture plane, establishes the vanishing point for all 45° lines receding to the left or right.

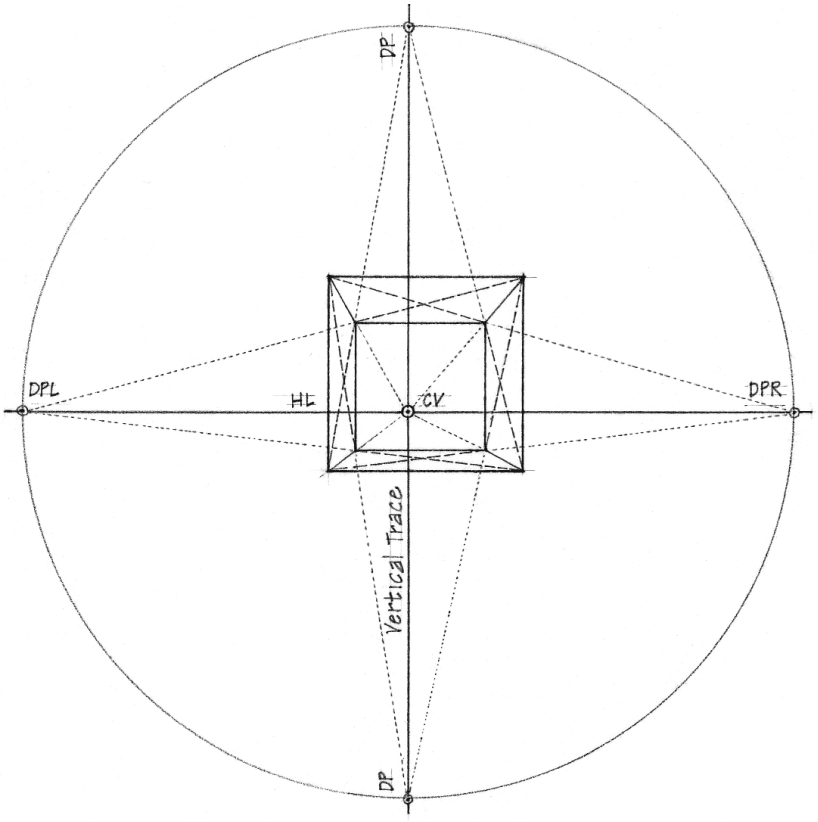
If we move the diagonal points toward the center of vision, this is equivalent to the spectator moving closer to the picture plane and seeing more of the receding faces of the space. If we shift the diagonal points farther away from the center of vision, the spectator also moves farther away from the picture plane and the receding faces of the space become more foreshortened.

Measuring Depth

The basic steps in using a diagonal point to make depth measurements are:

1. Draw lines from the center of vision through each corner of the elevation or section view. These represent the receding horizontal edges of the subject, which are parallel to the central axis of vision and which converge at the center of vision.
2. Establish a horizontal measuring line in the picture plane. This measuring line is usually the ground line, but if the ground line is very close to the horizon line, locate the measuring line below the ground line or well above the horizon line. Doing this results in wider angles of intersection and ensures greater accuracy in triangulating depth measurements.
3. Establish a baseline perpendicular to the picture plane and converging at the center of vision. This baseline, along which we measure perspective depths, is usually the base or top of a major side wall, but it can be any line perpendicular to the picture plane and converging at the center of vision.
4. Along the horizontal measuring line, measure distances at the scale of the picture plane equal to the required perspective depths. Using a left diagonal point, measure to the right of the zero point for depths behind the picture plane, and measure to the left of the zero point for points in front of the picture plane.
5. Transfer each of the measurements to the perpendicular baseline with lines that converge at the diagonal point. These diagonals intersect the perpendicular baseline at perspective depths equal to the scaled depths along the measuring line.
6. Once the major perspective depths are determined in the perspective view, we can transfer them horizontally and vertically until they intersect lines and planes receding toward the center of vision.





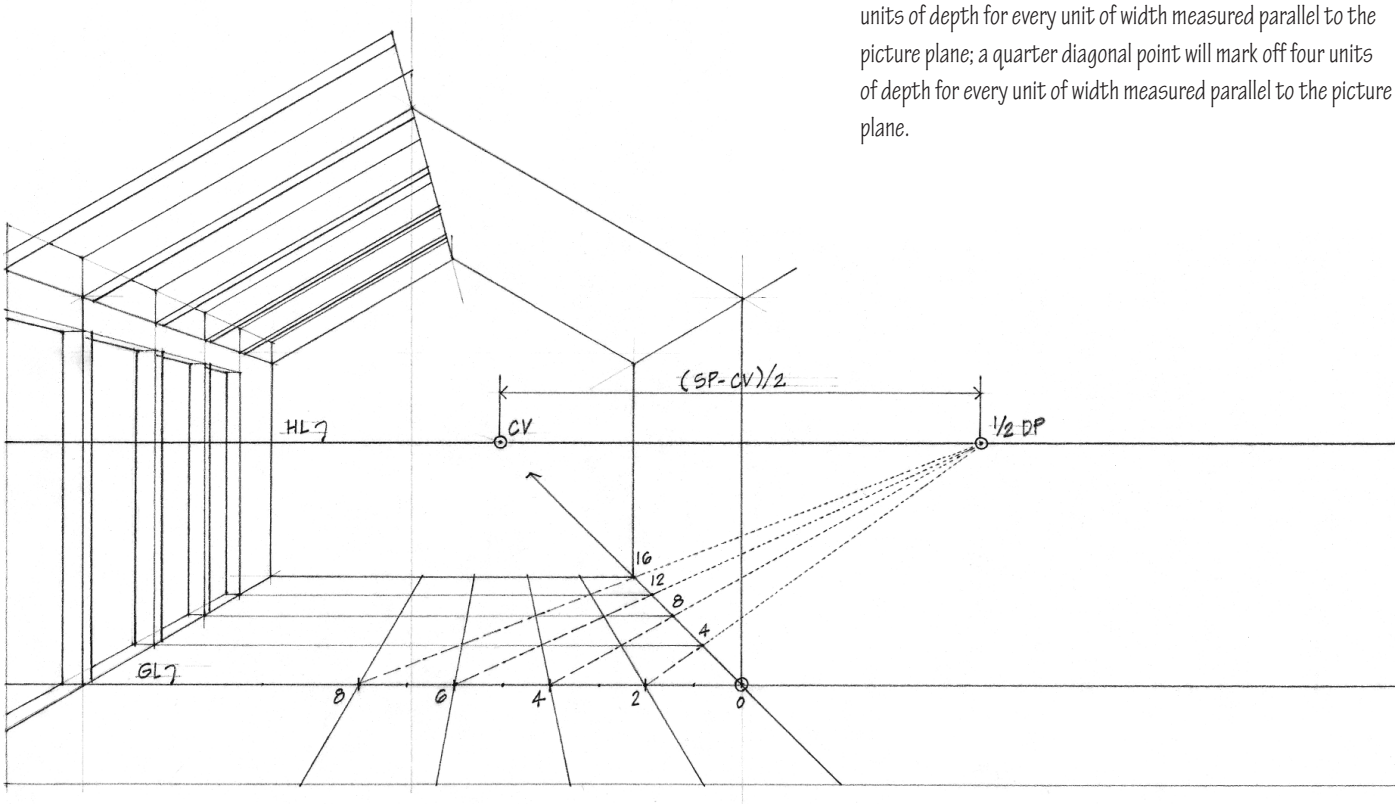
Multiple Diagonal Points

The diagonal points for both sets of 45° lines in the ground, floor, ceiling, and any other horizontal plane are located on the horizon line. The diagonal points for both sets of 45° lines in a sidewall or any other vertical plane perpendicular to the picture plane are located on a vertical vanishing trace drawn through the center of vision. All four diagonal points are equidistant from the center of vision and lie on the circumference of a circle whose center is the center of vision. While only one diagonal point is required to measure perspective depths, knowing there are three others gives us flexibility in the actual construction of the perspective view.

Fractional Diagonal Points

If a diagonal point is too far removed from the center of vision to be accessible, we can use a fractional diagonal point to establish depth measurements. This technique is based on the geometric principle that corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional.

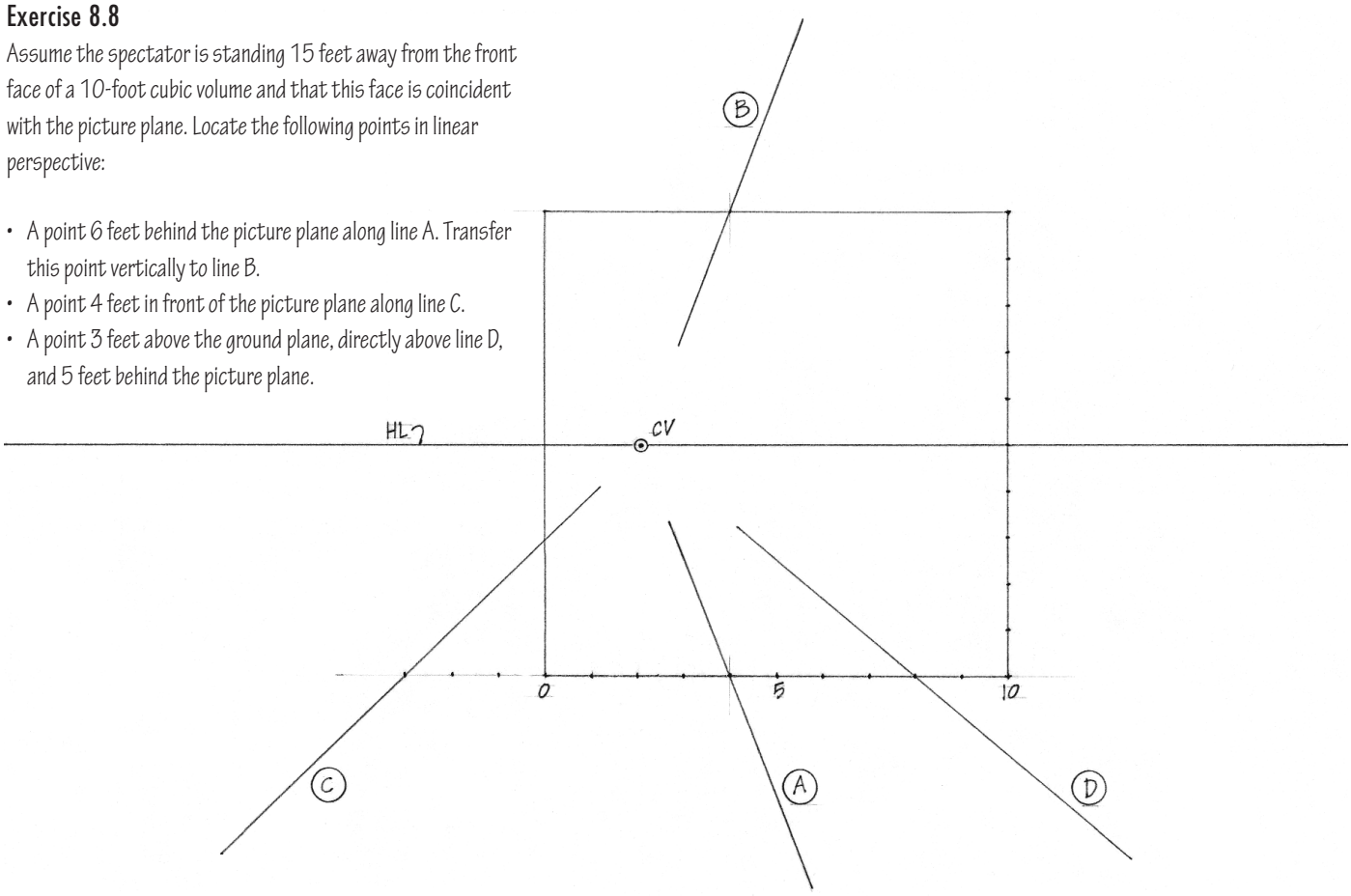
To establish a fractional diagonal point, we divide the true distance from the center of vision to either diagonal point by a factor of two or four. A half diagonal point will mark off two units of depth for every unit of width measured parallel to the picture plane; a quarter diagonal point will mark off four units of depth for every unit of width measured parallel to the picture plane.



Exercise 8.8

Assume the spectator is standing 15 feet away from the front face of a 10-foot cubic volume and that this face is coincident with the picture plane. Locate the following points in linear perspective:

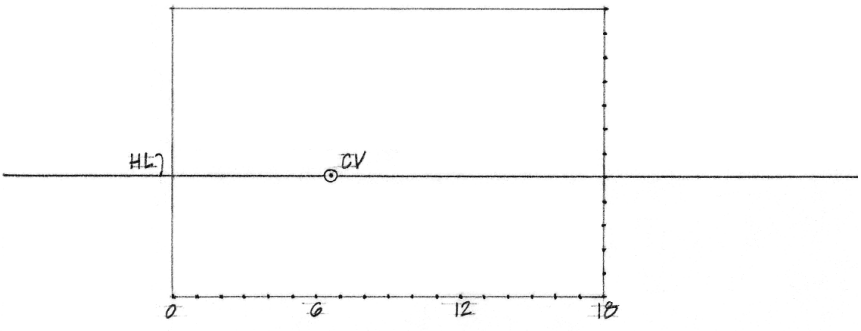
- A point 6 feet behind the picture plane along line A. Transfer this point vertically to line B.
- A point 4 feet in front of the picture plane along line C.
- A point 3 feet above the ground plane, directly above line D, and 5 feet behind the picture plane.



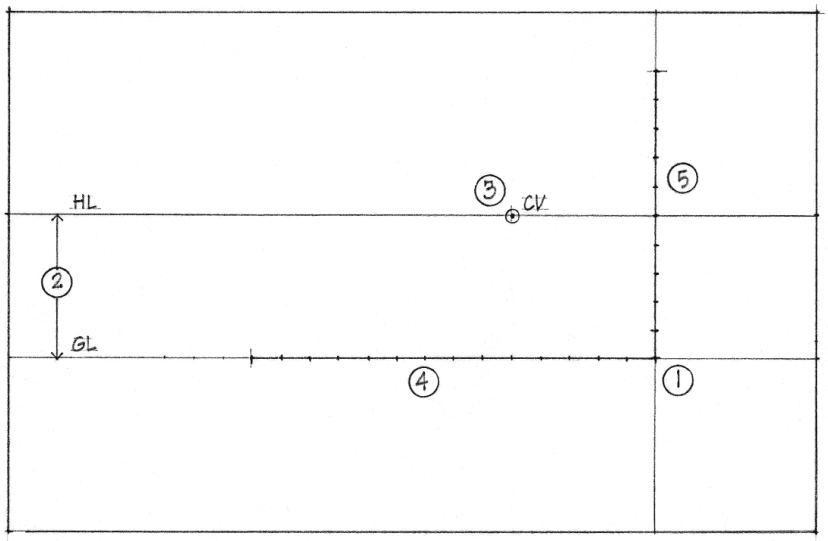
Exercise 8.9

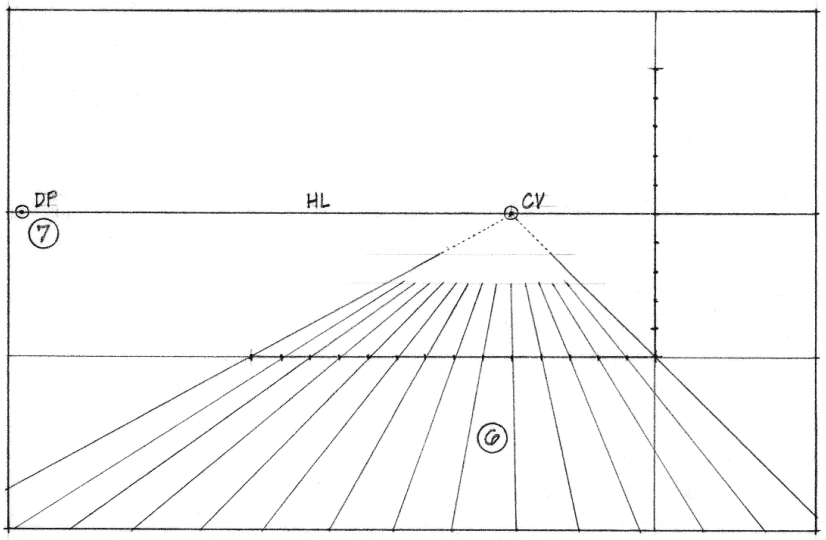
Assume the spectator is standing 15 feet away from the picture plane and looking toward a wall that is 16 feet wide, 12 feet high, and 30 feet away. Construct a one-point perspective of the space. Within this perspective view, construct:

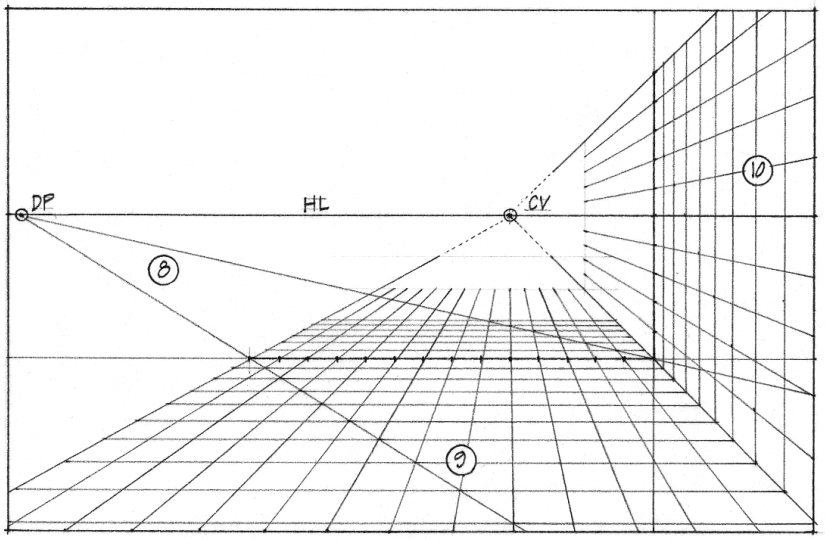
- A 3' × 7' doorway on the rear wall and one of the side walls, both of which are 8 inches thick.
- A 4' × 4' window with a 3' sill height on the other side wall, 6 feet behind the picture plane. On the same wall, construct an identical window 2 feet in front of the picture plane.
- A 6' × 6' × 1' platform somewhere on the floor.
- A 6' × 6' skylight cut through the 1-foot-thick roof structure, directly above the platform.



ONE-POINT PERSPECTIVE GRID





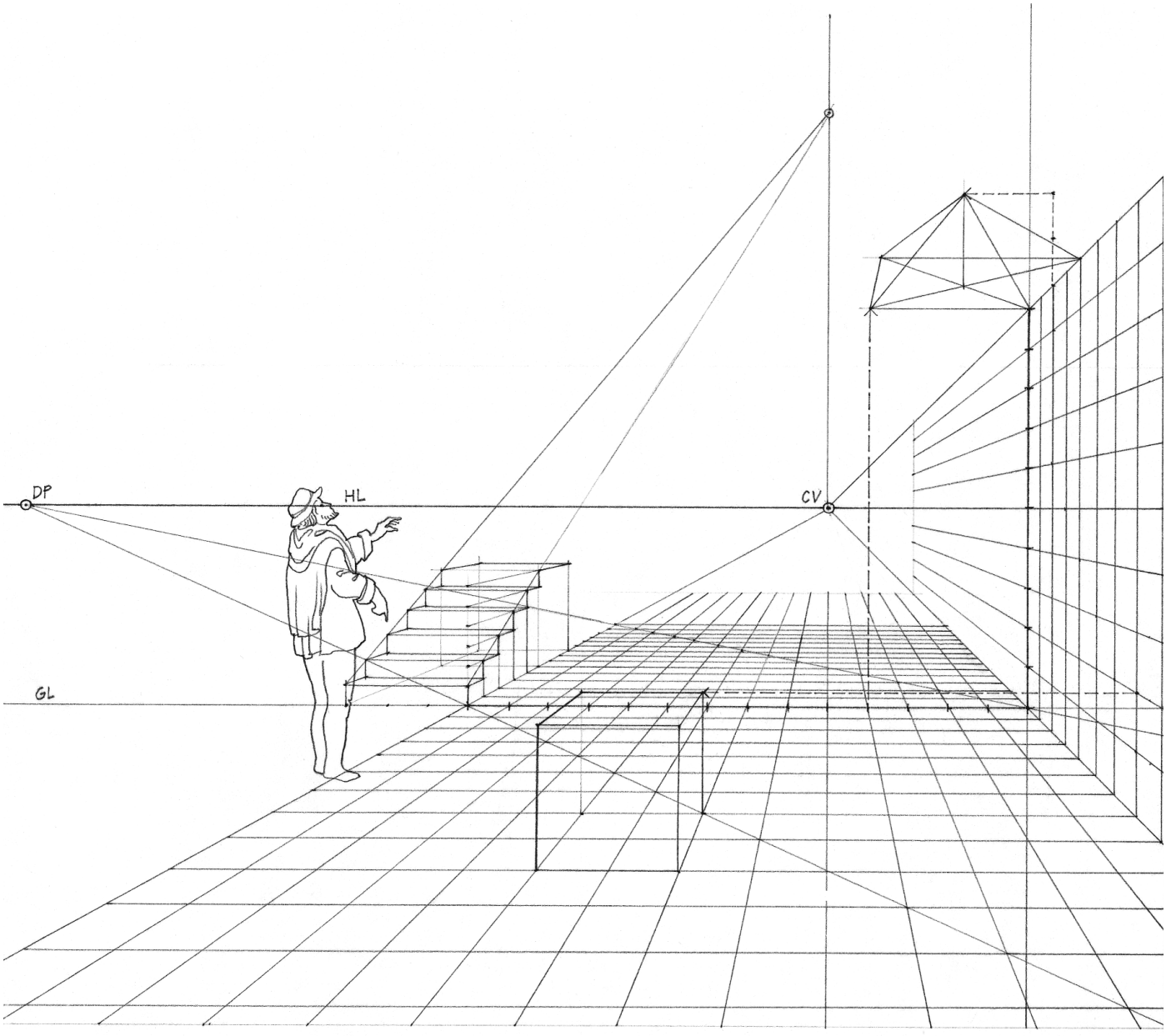


A perspective grid is a perspective view of a three-dimensional coordinate system. The three-dimensional network of uniformly spaced points and lines enables us to correctly establish the form and dimensions of an interior or exterior space as well as to regulate the position and size of objects within the space. Several types, varying in scale and point of view, are commercially available. We can also use the following procedure to construct a one-point perspective grid:

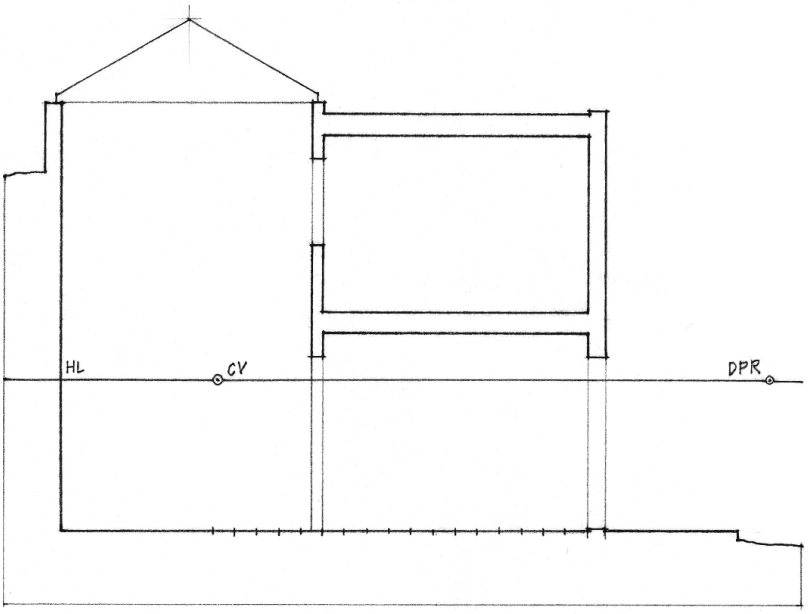
1. Decide on a scale for the picture plane, taking into consideration both the dimensions of the space and the desired size of the perspective drawing.
2. At the scale of the picture plane, establish the ground line and the horizon line at the eye level of the spectator.
3. Establish the center of vision close to the middle of the horizon line.
4. Along the ground line, lay out to scale equal increments of measurement. The unit of measurement is typically one foot; we can use smaller or larger increments depending on the scale of the drawing and the amount of detail desired in the perspective view.
5. Do the same along a vertical measuring line drawn through the left or right endpoint of the ground line.
6. Through each of the measured points on the ground line, draw lines on the ground plane from the center of vision forward into the perspective.
7. Establish the diagonal point to the left or right of the center of vision at a distance equal to the distance of the station point to the picture plane. If this is unknown, the distance from the center of vision to the diagonal point should be equal to or greater than the width of the space.
8. From the diagonal point, draw diagonals through both endpoints of the measured ground line.
9. Where these diagonals cross each of the lines converging at the center of vision, draw a horizontal line. The result is a perspective grid of squares on the ground or floor plane.
10. If desired, we can transfer these depth measurements and establish a similar grid along one or both receding sidewalls, as well as on a ceiling or overhead plane.

Exercise 8.10

Construct a one-point perspective grid on an 8 1/2" × 11" sheet of quality tracing paper or vellum. Assume a scale of 1/2" = 1'0" for the picture plane and a horizon line 5 or 6 feet above the ground line. When completed, the perspective grid may be photocopied and enlarged or reduced to any desired scale. By laying tracing paper over the grid, we can use the perspective structure to more easily sketch freehand perspective views of both exterior and interior spaces.

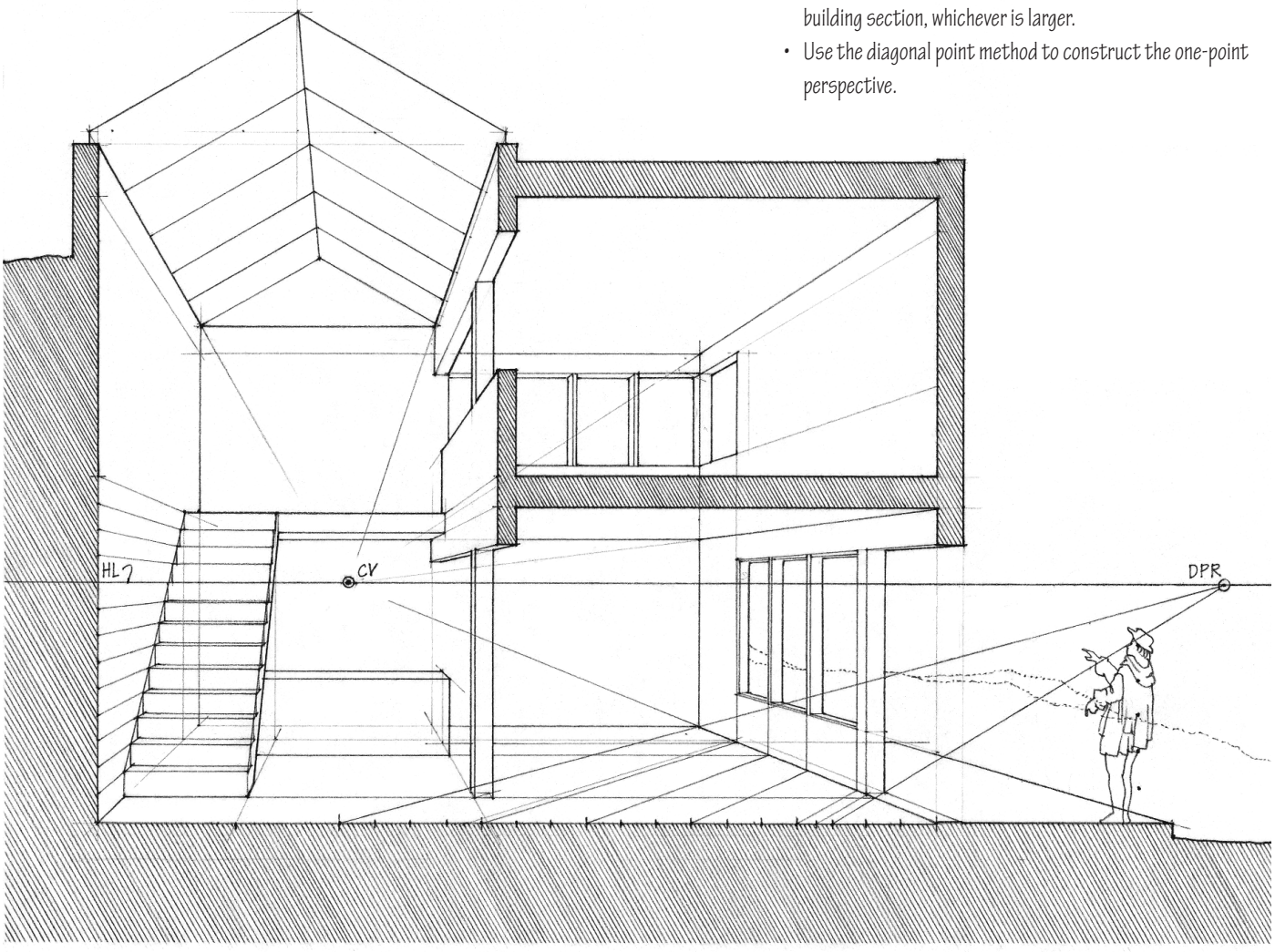


SECTION PERSPECTIVES



The section perspective combines the scaled attributes of a section drawing and the pictorial depth of a perspective drawing. Therefore, it is able to illustrate both the constructional aspects of a design as well as the quality of the spaces formed by the structure. We begin a section perspective with a building section drawn at a convenient scale. Since the section cut is assumed to be coincident with the picture plane of the perspective, it serves as a ready reference for making vertical and horizontal measurements for the perspective drawing.

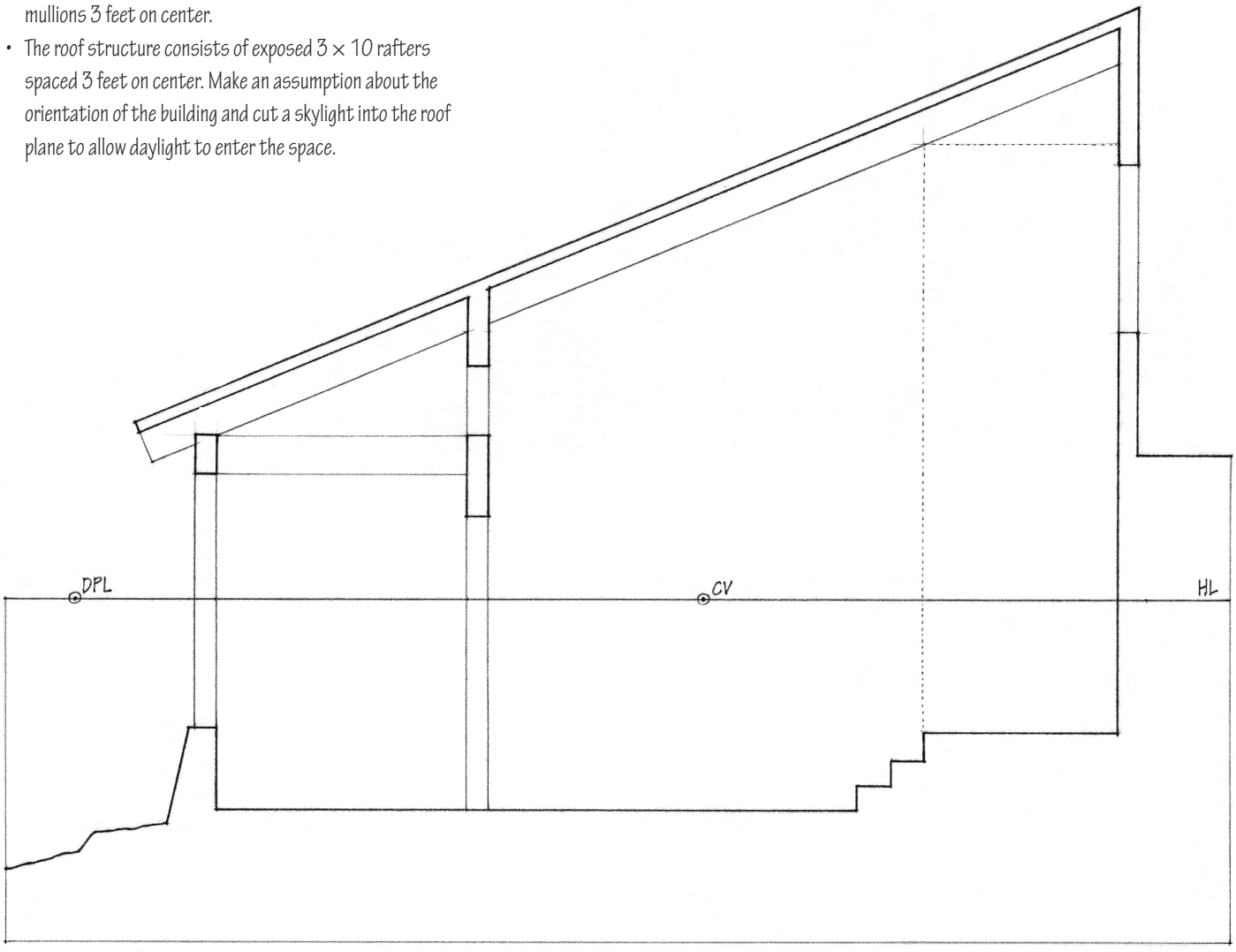
- Establish the horizon line and select a center of vision. The height of the horizon line and position of the center of vision affect the emphasis of the resulting view and what we see up, down, and to the left and right.
- On the horizon line, establish the left and right vanishing points for diagonal or 45° lines. As a rule of thumb, the distance from the center of vision to the diagonal points should be at least as great as the width or height of the building section, whichever is larger.
- Use the diagonal point method to construct the one-point perspective.



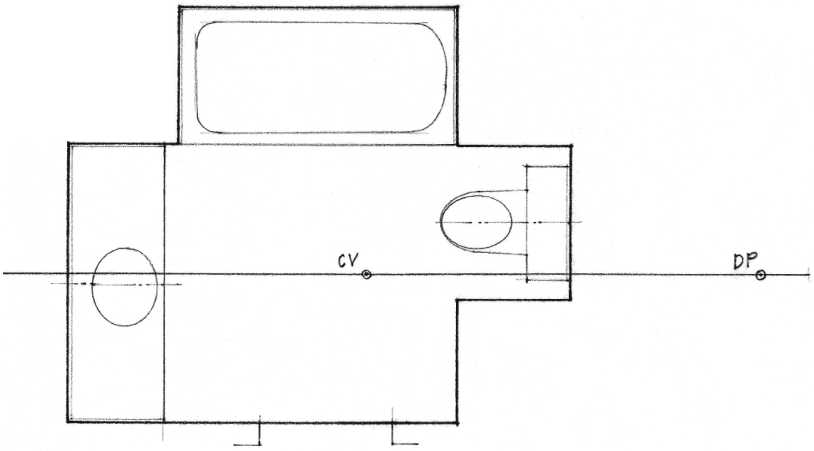
Exercise 8.11

The schematic building section below is drawn at a scale of 1/4" = 1'0". Given the horizon line, center of vision, and left diagonal point indicated, convert the section into a section perspective.

- Assume the rear wall of the space is 24 feet behind the picture plane, which is coincident with the vertical plane of the section cut. Within this space, develop a grid of 3-foot squares on the floor plane.
- Draw three human figures at different depths within the space.
- Shown are three steps rising to a platform. Using these steps as a pattern, develop a stairway along the right-hand wall from the platform to a mezzanine that opens out onto the upper level of the site.
- On the left-hand wall, develop a window wall with French doors that open out onto the covered porch. Space the mullions 3 feet on center.
- The roof structure consists of exposed 3 × 10 rafters spaced 3 feet on center. Make an assumption about the orientation of the building and cut a skylight into the roof plane to allow daylight to enter the space.



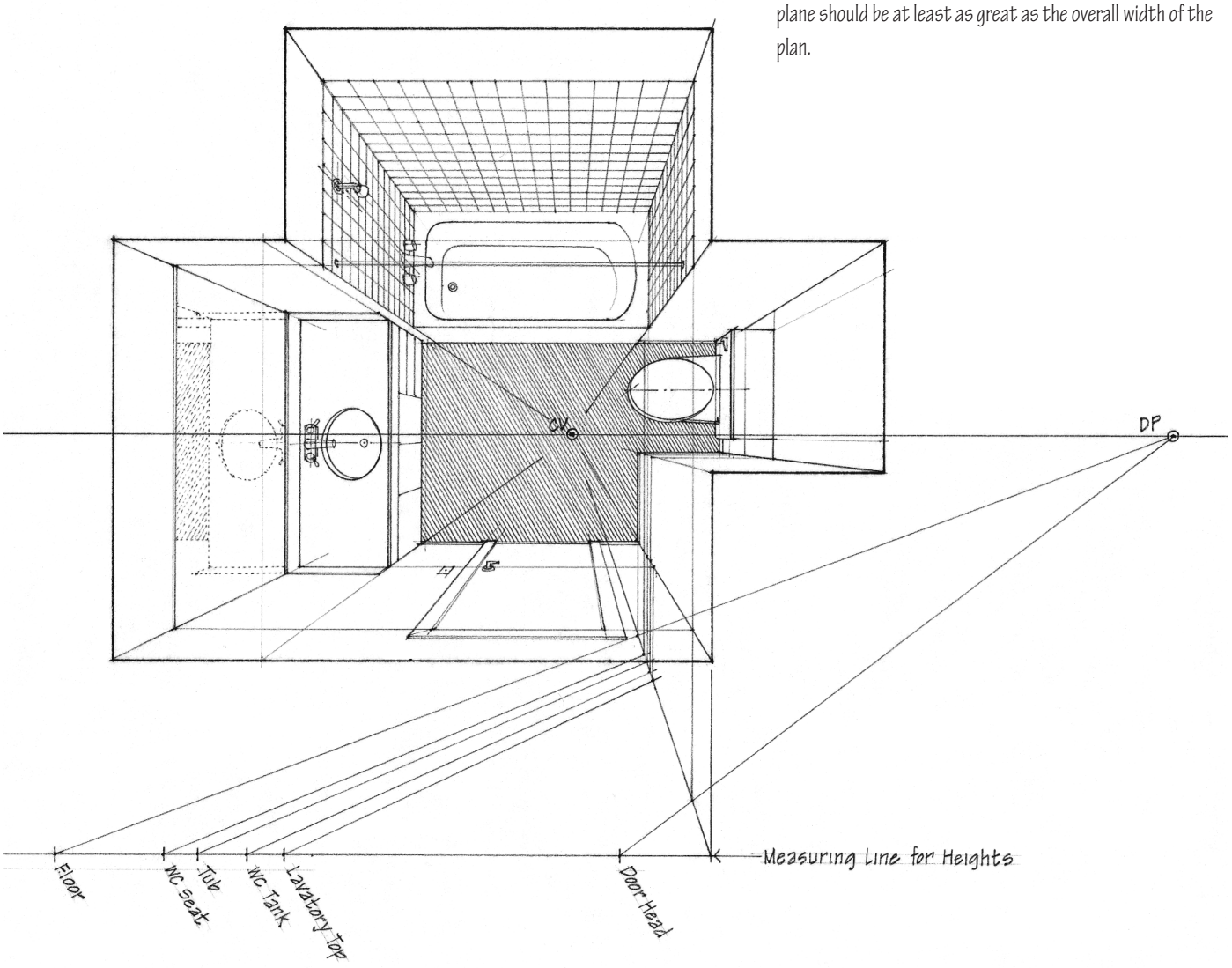
PLAN PERSPECTIVES



To transform a two-dimensional floor plan into a three-dimensional view, we can draw a plan perspective—a one-point perspective view of an interior room or exterior space as seen from above.

We assume the spectator's central axis of vision is vertical and the picture plane is coincident with a horizontal plane passing through the tops of the walls of the space.

- Set the center of vision somewhere in the middle of the floor plan.
- Establish the horizon line through the center of vision and parallel with one of the walls.
- Use the diagonal point method to construct the one-point perspective. The distance from the spectator to the picture plane should be at least as great as the overall width of the plan.

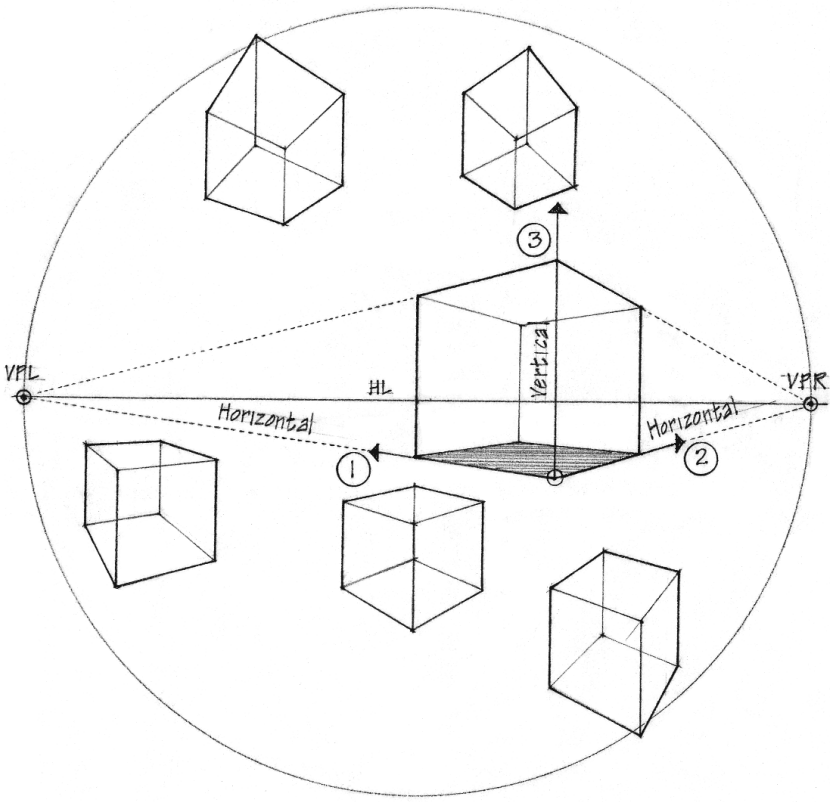


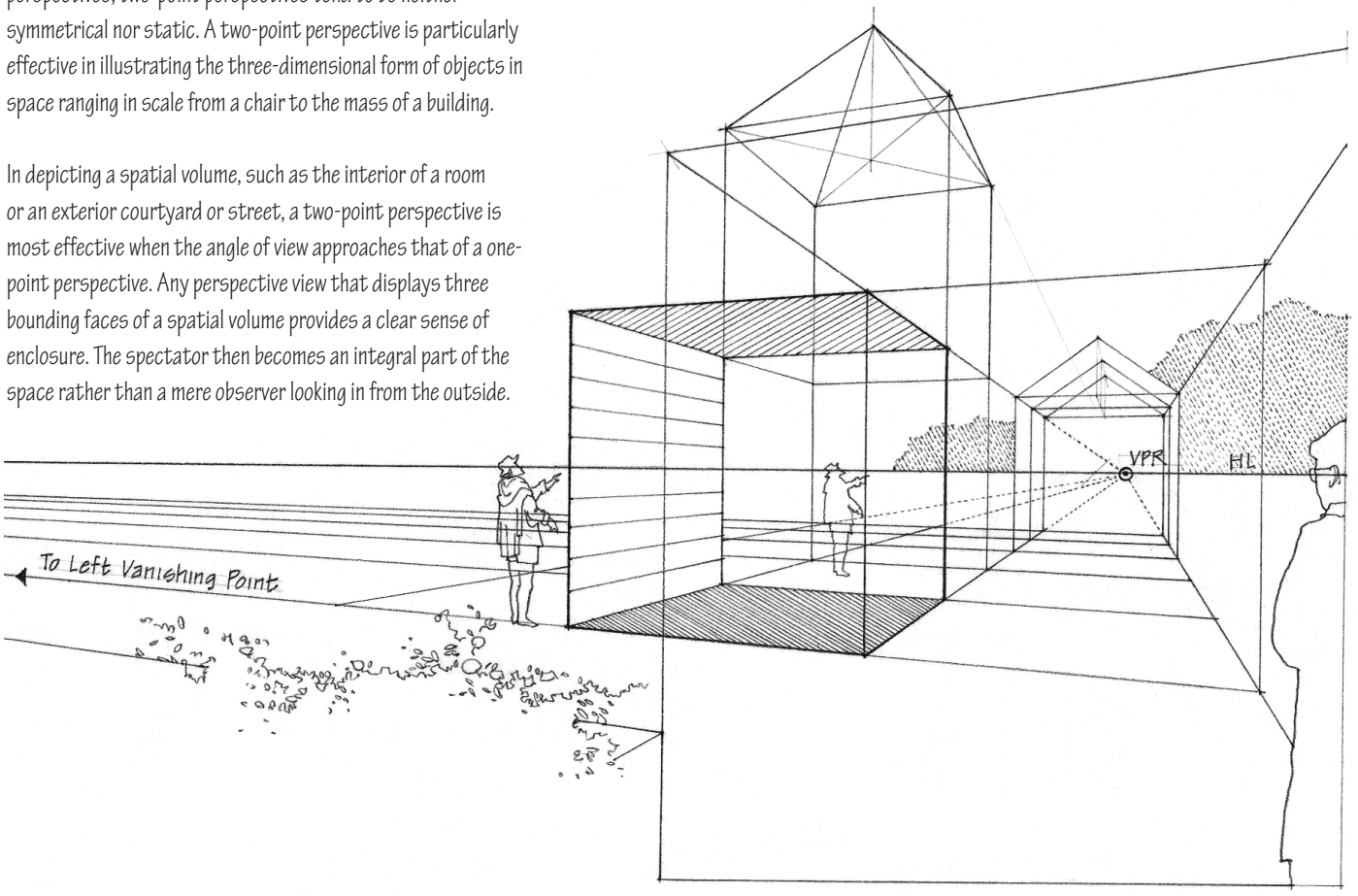
The two-point perspective system assumes that the spectator's central axis of vision is horizontal and the picture plane is vertical. The principal vertical axis is parallel to the picture plane and all lines parallel to it remain vertical and parallel in the perspective drawing. The two principal horizontal axes, however, are oblique to the picture plane. All lines parallel to these axes therefore appear to converge to two vanishing points on the horizon line, one set to the left and the other to the right. These are the two points referred to in two-point perspective.

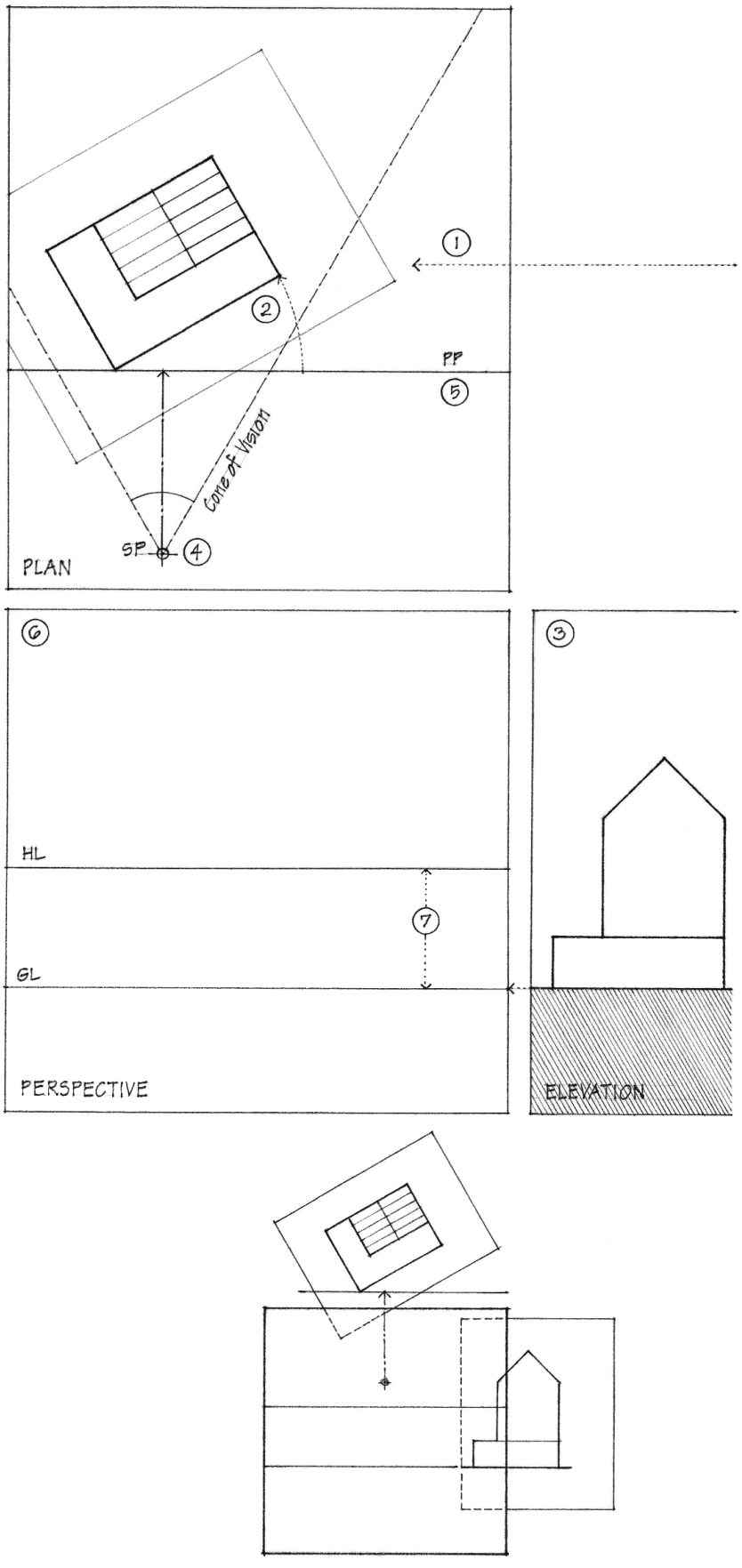
The pictorial effect of a two-point perspective varies with the spectator's angle of view. The orientation of the two horizontal axes to the picture plane determines how much we will see of the two major sets of vertical planes and the degree to which they are foreshortened in perspective. The more oblique a plane is to the picture plane, the more it is foreshortened in perspective; the more frontal the plane is, the less it is foreshortened.

Two-point perspective is probably the most widely used of the three types of linear perspective. Unlike one-point perspectives, two-point perspectives tend to be neither symmetrical nor static. A two-point perspective is particularly effective in illustrating the three-dimensional form of objects in space ranging in scale from a chair to the mass of a building.

In depicting a spatial volume, such as the interior of a room or an exterior courtyard or street, a two-point perspective is most effective when the angle of view approaches that of a one-point perspective. Any perspective view that displays three bounding faces of a spatial volume provides a clear sense of enclosure. The spectator then becomes an integral part of the space rather than a mere observer looking in from the outside.







The common method of constructing a two-point perspective is also known as the office method. It requires the use of two orthographic projections: a plan view and an elevation view. The scale of the plan and elevation views establishes the scale of the picture plane in the perspective view.

Perspective Setup

1. Place the plan view directly above the space where the perspective view is to be constructed.
2. Orient the plan to the desired angle with the picture plane. This angle is typically 30°, 45°, or 60° because of the triangles used in drafting. In theory, however, the exact angle can vary according to how much emphasis we wish to place on each of the major sets of vertical planes.
3. Locate the elevation view off to the side of the area where the perspective view is to be constructed.
4. Establish the station point in the plan view. Check to ensure the major part of the subject falls within a 60° cone of vision and that the central axis of vision focuses on the center of interest. Avoid aligning major vertical planes in the subject with any of the sightlines radiating from the station point.
5. Establish the picture plane in the plan view, perpendicular to the central axis of vision. The picture plane is typically located to pass through a significant vertical edge of the subject so that the edge can be used as a measuring line in the perspective view. Remember that the position of the picture plane affects the size of the perspective image.
6. Tape the sheet of tracing paper on which you will construct the perspective drawing.
7. In the perspective view, establish the ground line and the horizon line. The ground line is typically the ground line of the elevation or section. The height of the horizon line above the ground line is equal to the height of the spectator's eye level above the ground plane.

While the plan, elevation, and perspective views are shown some distance apart for clarity, they can be arranged in a more compact manner to fit a smaller workspace. To do this, move the plan and elevation closer to or under the sheet used for the perspective view, being careful to maintain the proper horizontal and vertical relationships between the three views.

Refer to the discussion of perspective variables to review how varying the distance from the station point to the subject, raising or lowering the horizon line, and locating the picture plane all affect the pictorial nature of a perspective view.

Vanishing Points

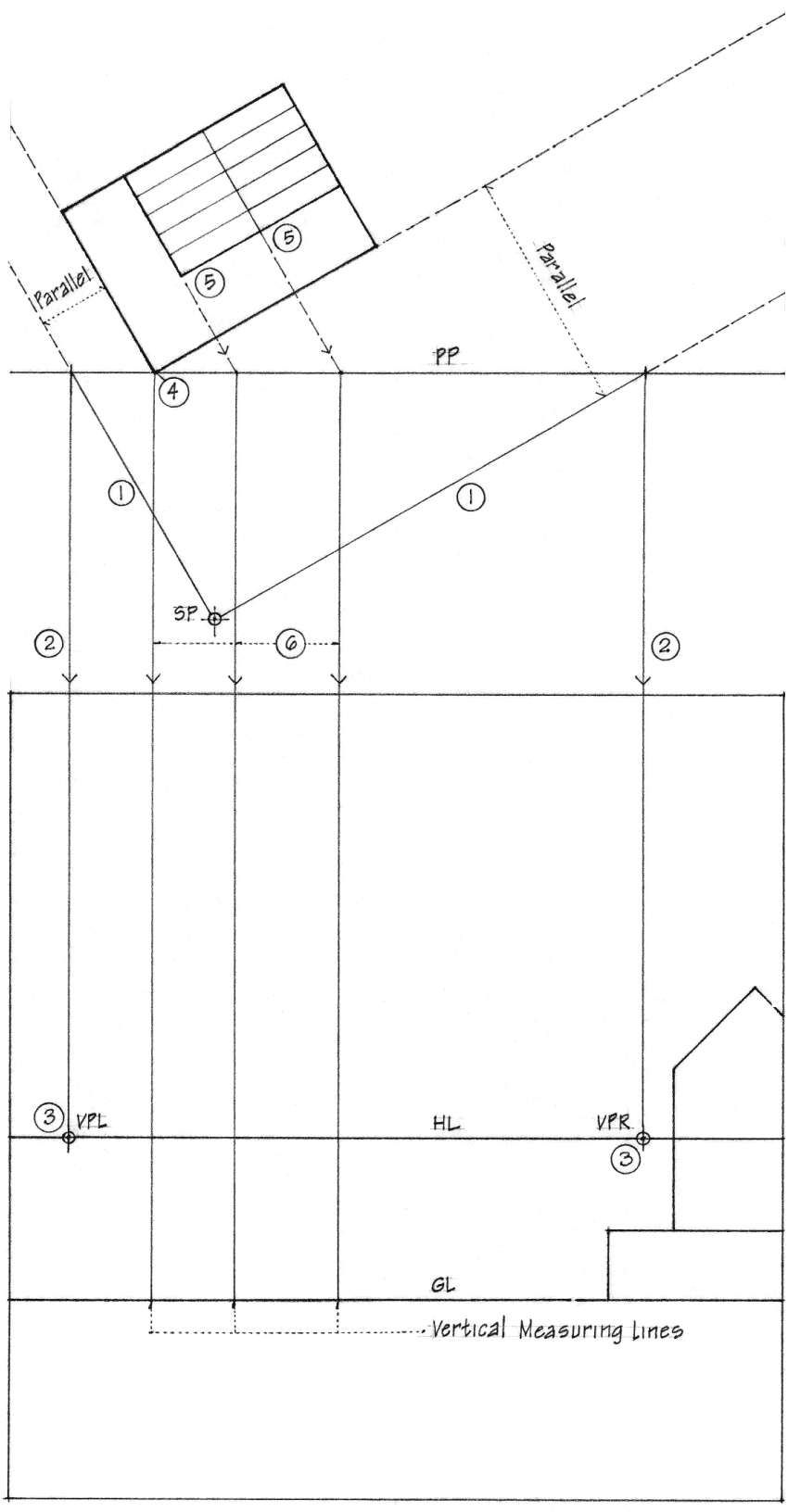
The vanishing point for any set of parallel lines is the point where a sightline from the station point, drawn parallel to the set, intersects the picture plane.

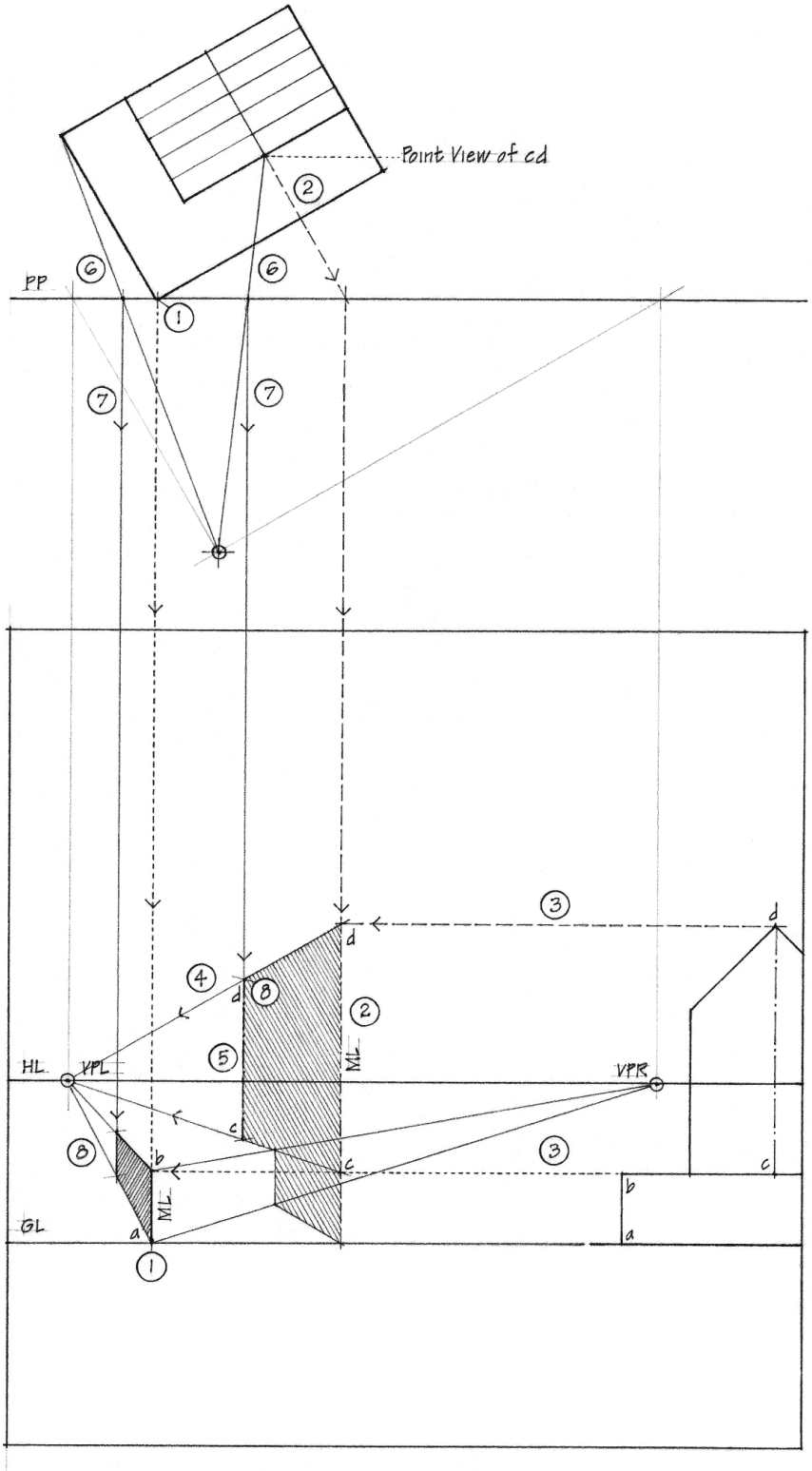
1. Therefore, in the plan view of the perspective setup, draw sightlines from the station point parallel to the plan direction of each major set of vertical planes until they intersect the picture plane. Note that we see vertical planes as lines in the plan view.
2. From these intersections, project vertical construction lines down to meet the horizon line in the perspective view. These points are the vanishing points for horizontal lines in each major set of vertical planes.
3. For rectilinear objects, there are two major sets of vertical planes and therefore two vanishing points on the horizon line for the horizontal lines in these planes. These are the two major vanishing points in two-point perspective.

Measuring Lines

Any line in the picture plane displays its true length at the scale of the picture plane. Therefore, we can use any such line as a measuring line. While a measuring line may have any orientation in the picture plane, it is usually vertical or horizontal and used to measure true heights and widths.

4. A vertical measuring line occurs wherever a major vertical plane meets or intersects the picture plane.
5. If a major vertical plane lies entirely behind the picture plane, extend it forward to meet the picture plane.
6. Project the position of vertical measuring lines from the plan view down to the perspective view.





Measuring Heights

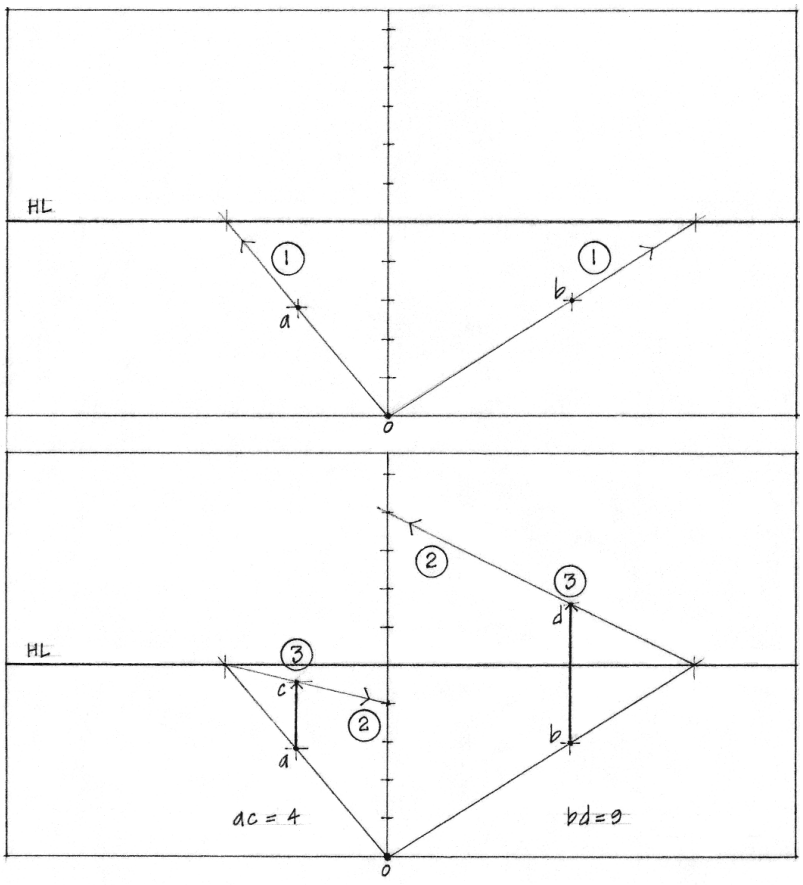
1. The heights of vertical lines or edges in the picture plane remain true to scale. These lines therefore serve as measuring lines.
2. To determine the perspective height of a vertical line or edge located in front of or behind the picture plane, first establish the measuring line for the vertical plane in which the line occurs.
3. Transfer the true height from the elevation view horizontally to the vertical measuring line in the perspective view.
4. Project the true height forward or back into the perspective along the vertical plane, using a line that converges at the vanishing point for horizontal lines in that plane. As a general rule, transfer the true height on a measuring line into a perspective by following horizontal paths toward either of the two major vanishing points on the horizon line.
5. Since this line and the base of the vertical plane are both horizontal and parallel, the vertical distance between them remains constant as they recede in perspective.

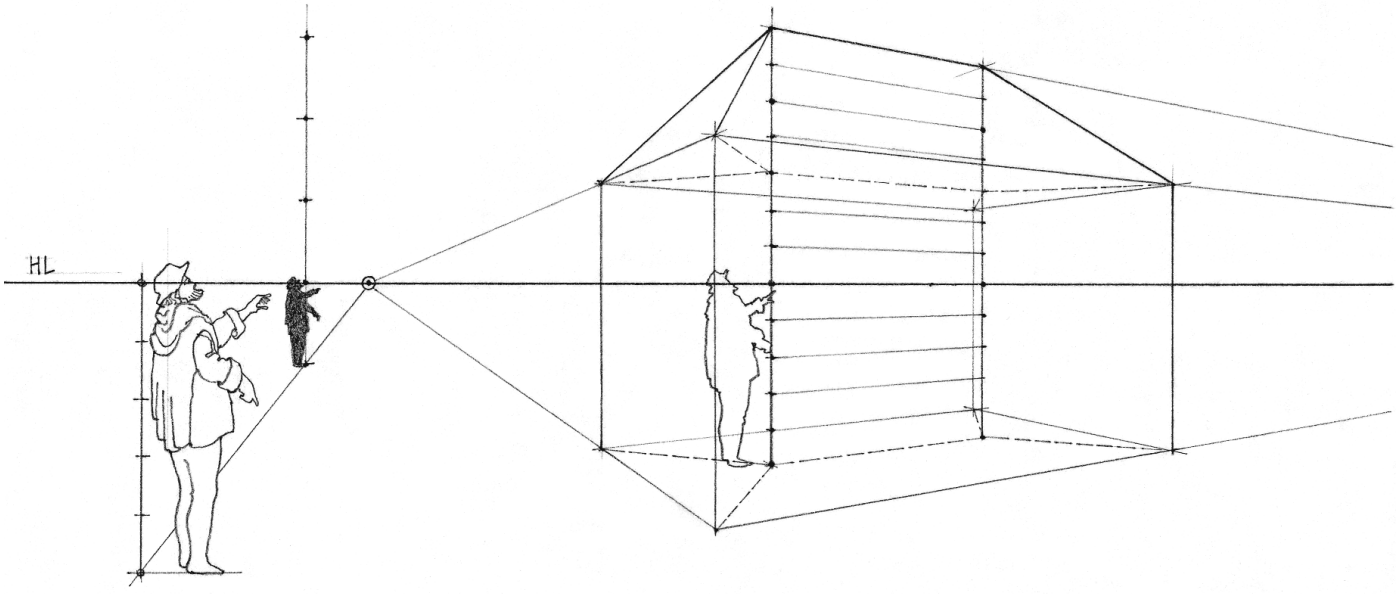
6. To determine the perspective location of the vertical line or edge, draw a sightline from the station point to the point view of the line in plan until it intersects the picture plane. For a vertical line located in front of the picture plane, extend the sightline until it meets the picture plane.
7. From where the sightline intersects the picture plane in plan, drop a vertical construction line to intersect the vertical plane in perspective.
8. The line of intersection represents the perspective height and location of the vertical line or edge.

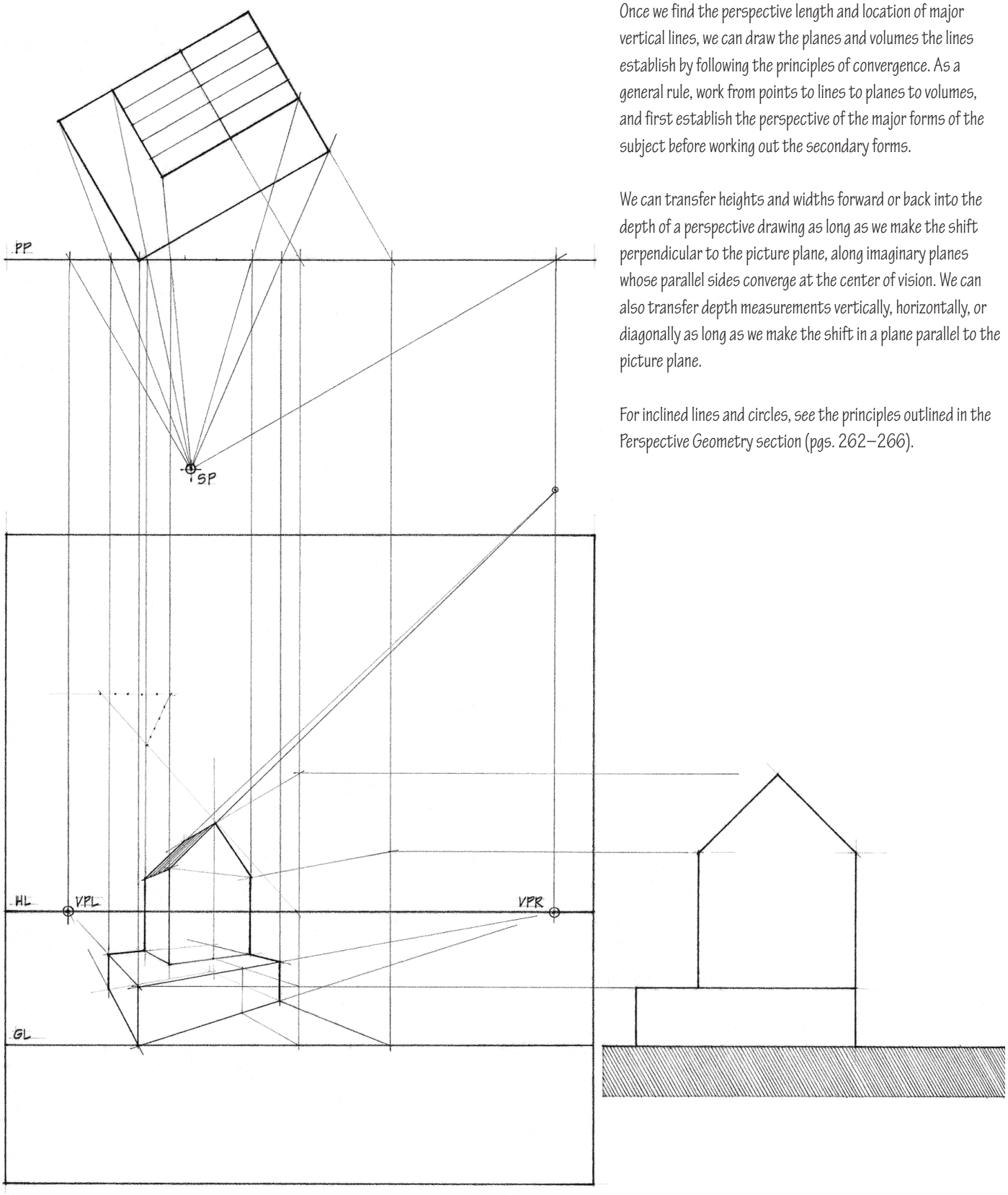
If we know where the base of a vertical line meets the ground plane in perspective, we can determine its perspective height in two additional ways:

1. From the base of a vertical measuring line, draw a line through the perspective location of the line whose height we wish to determine, and extend it until it meets the horizon line.
2. From this point on the horizon line, draw another line back to the desired height on the vertical measuring line.
3. Since both construction lines converge on the horizon line, they are horizontal and parallel and mark off equal lengths on both the vertical measuring line and the vertical line in the depth of the perspective.

A second method for determining the perspective height of a vertical line involves the height of the horizon line above the ground plane. If this height is known, we can use it as a vertical scale to measure vertical lines anywhere in the depth of a perspective.







Completing the Perspective

Once we find the perspective length and location of major vertical lines, we can draw the planes and volumes the lines establish by following the principles of convergence. As a general rule, work from points to lines to planes to volumes, and first establish the perspective of the major forms of the subject before working out the secondary forms.

We can transfer heights and widths forward or back into the depth of a perspective drawing as long as we make the shift perpendicular to the picture plane, along imaginary planes whose parallel sides converge at the center of vision. We can also transfer depth measurements vertically, horizontally, or diagonally as long as we make the shift in a plane parallel to the picture plane.

For inclined lines and circles, see the principles outlined in the Perspective Geometry section (pgs. 262–266).

Exercise 8.12

Construct a two-point perspective of the structure shown in the perspective setup.

Exercise 8.13

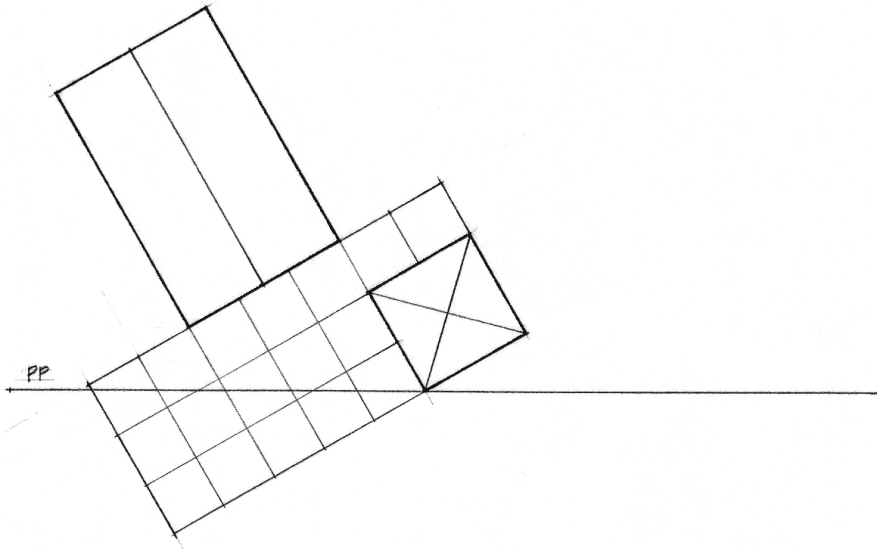
How far back would you have to shift the picture plane in the plan view to double the perspective image?

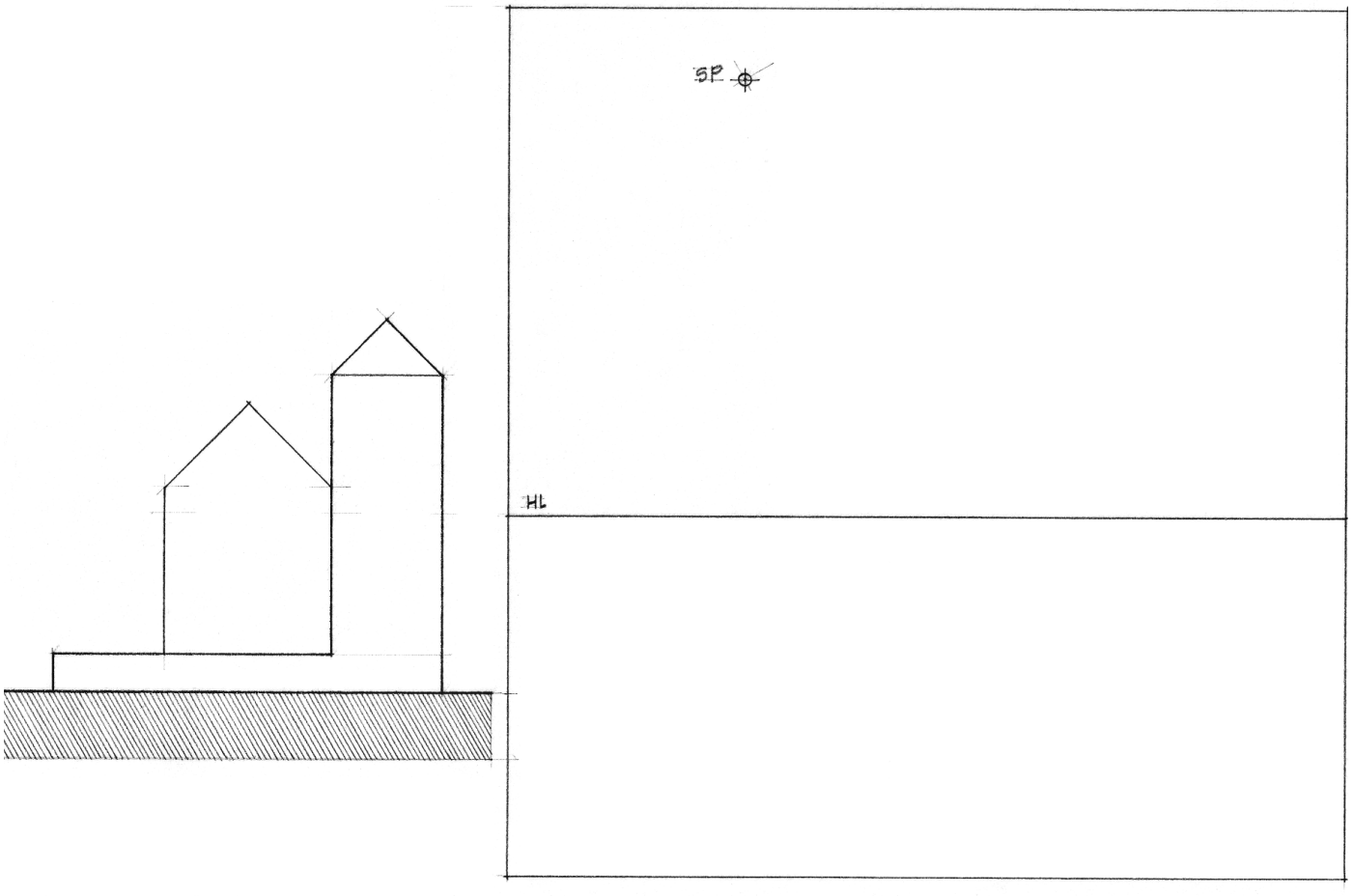
Exercise 8.14

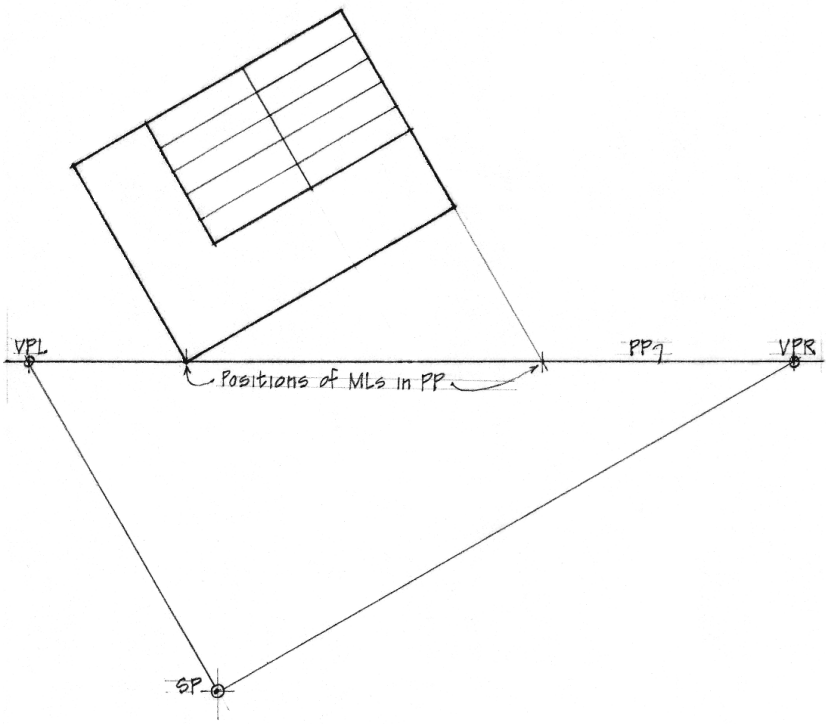
Double the height of the horizon line and construct another two-point perspective of the structure.

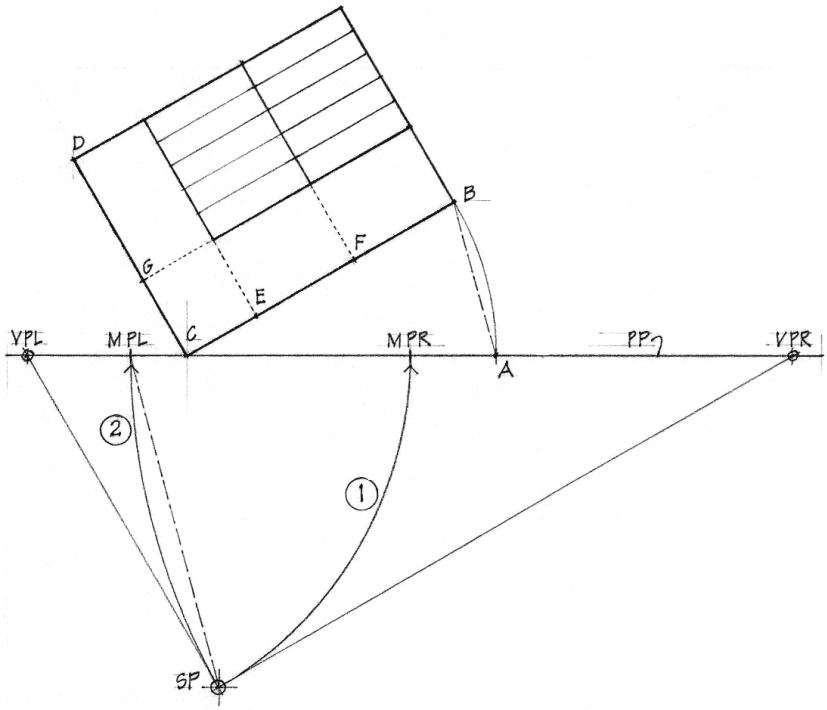
Exercise 8.15

Double the distance of the station point from the structure and construct another two-point perspective of the structure.









The perspective plan method allows an entire perspective drawing to be laid out from measurements made entirely in the picture plane of the perspective view. It does not require the direct use of an orthographic plan or elevation.

Plan Diagram

Follow the same procedure as outlined in the common method to construct a plan diagram of the perspective setup. We use this plan diagram to establish the position of the picture plane, station point, vanishing points for major sets of horizontal lines, and locations of vertical measuring lines.

Measuring Points

We also use the plan diagram to locate measuring points. A measuring point is a vanishing point for a set of parallel lines used to transfer true dimensions along a measuring line in the picture plane to a line in perspective. The diagonal point in one-point perspective is one example of such a measuring point.

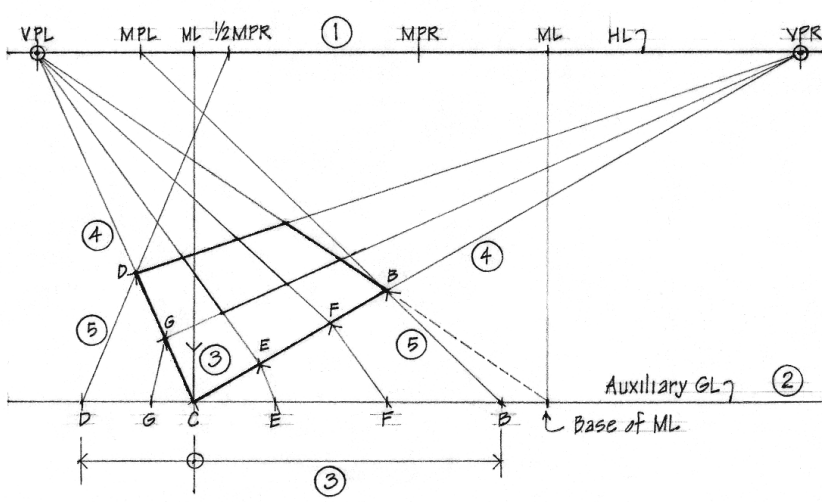
In two-point perspective, there are two measuring points for transferring dimensions along a horizontal measuring line in the picture plane to the perspective of a horizontal line in the subject. To determine the location of these measuring points in the plan diagram:

1. With the left vanishing point as the center, swing an arc from the station point to the line of the picture plane. This is the right measuring point.
2. With the right vanishing point as the center, swing an arc from the station point to the line of the picture plane to locate the left measuring point.

Note that chord SP-MPL is parallel to chord AB. MPL is therefore the vanishing point for AB and all other lines parallel to it. We use this set of parallel lines to transfer scale dimensions along the ground line in the picture plane to the perspective of baseline BC in the subject.

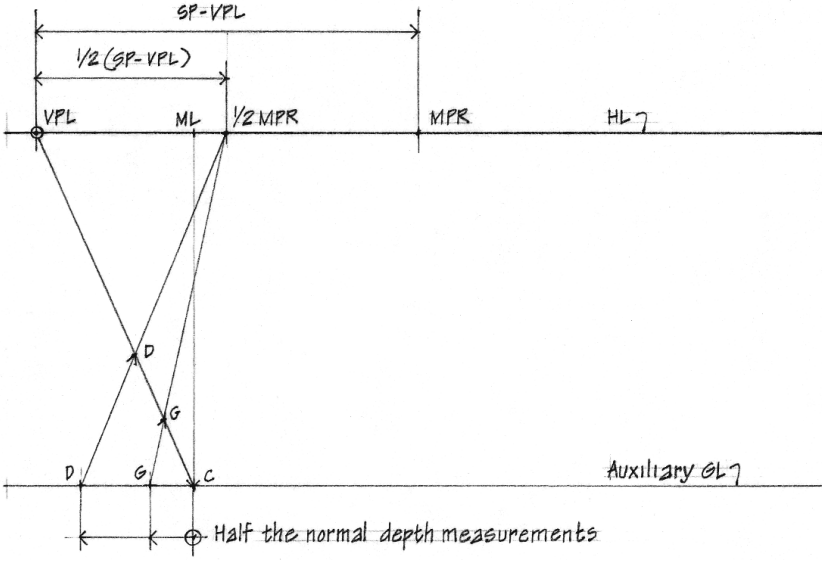
Perspective Plan

We may construct the perspective plan on the floor or some other horizontal plane of the subject. If this plane is too close to the horizon, however, the perspective plan can become too foreshortened to precisely determine where lines intersect. Being able to discern these intersections is necessary when transferring scaled dimensions along a measuring line in the picture plane to a line in perspective. Because of this, we usually construct the perspective plan at some distance above or below the horizon line in the perspective drawing.



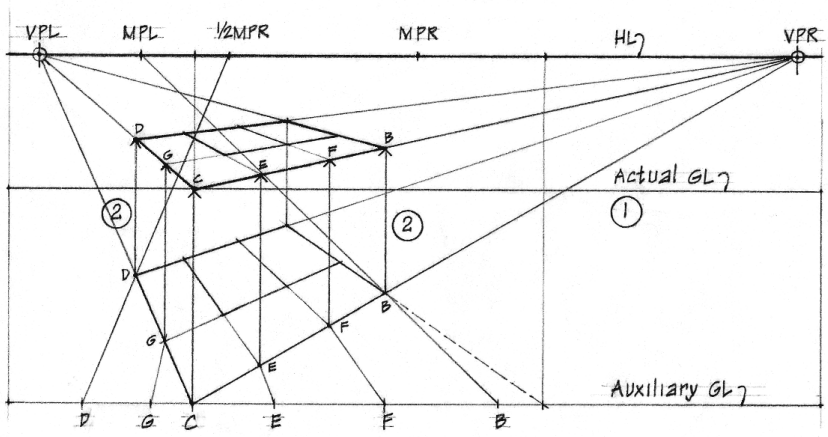
Construct the perspective plan according to the following procedure:

1. Draw the horizon line in the perspective view and lay out the vanishing points, measuring points, and position of measuring lines previously located in the plan diagram. We can establish these points at any scale desired for the size of the perspective drawing; it need not be at the same as the scale of the plan diagram.
2. Establish an auxiliary ground line at any desired distance below or above the horizon line in the perspective drawing.
3. Project the location of a major measuring line down to this ground line. This point serves as a zero point from which we scale plan measurements on the ground line. We lay out the left side measurements of the plan to the left of the zero point. We lay out the right side measurements of the plan to the right of the zero point.
4. From the zero point, draw baselines in perspective that converge to the left and right major vanishing points.
5. Transfer the scale measurements on the ground line to the left baseline in perspective by drawing lines to the right measuring point. Use the left measuring point to transfer measurements to the right baseline. Once we transfer the plan measurements to the left and right baselines, we can complete the perspective plan by following the principles of convergence.



Fractional Measuring Points

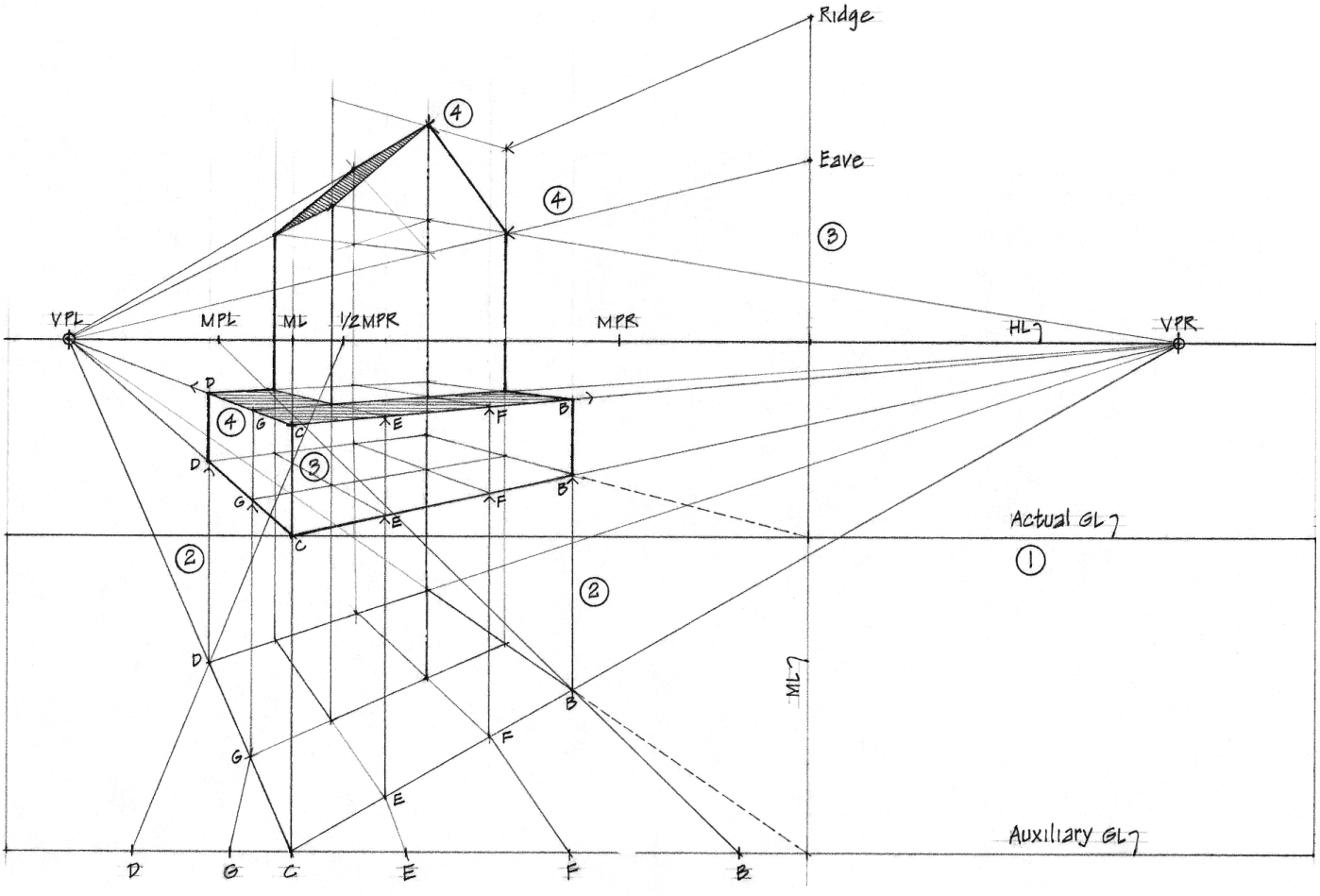
If the scale measurements along the ground line extend beyond the limits of the perspective drawing, we can use a fractional measuring point. To establish a fractional measuring point, we divide the normal distance from the vanishing to the measuring point by a factor of two or four. A half measuring point requires halving the normal units of measurement along the ground line; a quarter measuring point requires using a quarter scale along the ground line.



Perspective View

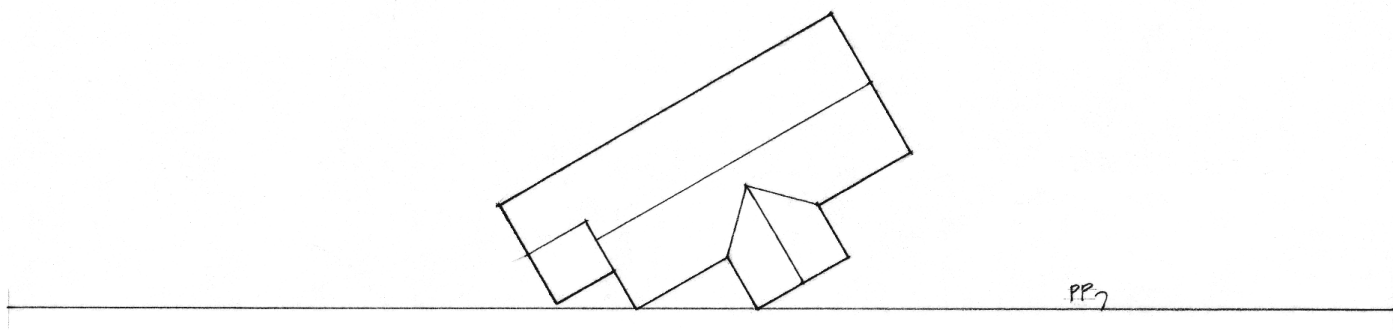
Once we complete the perspective plan, we begin to construct the perspective view.

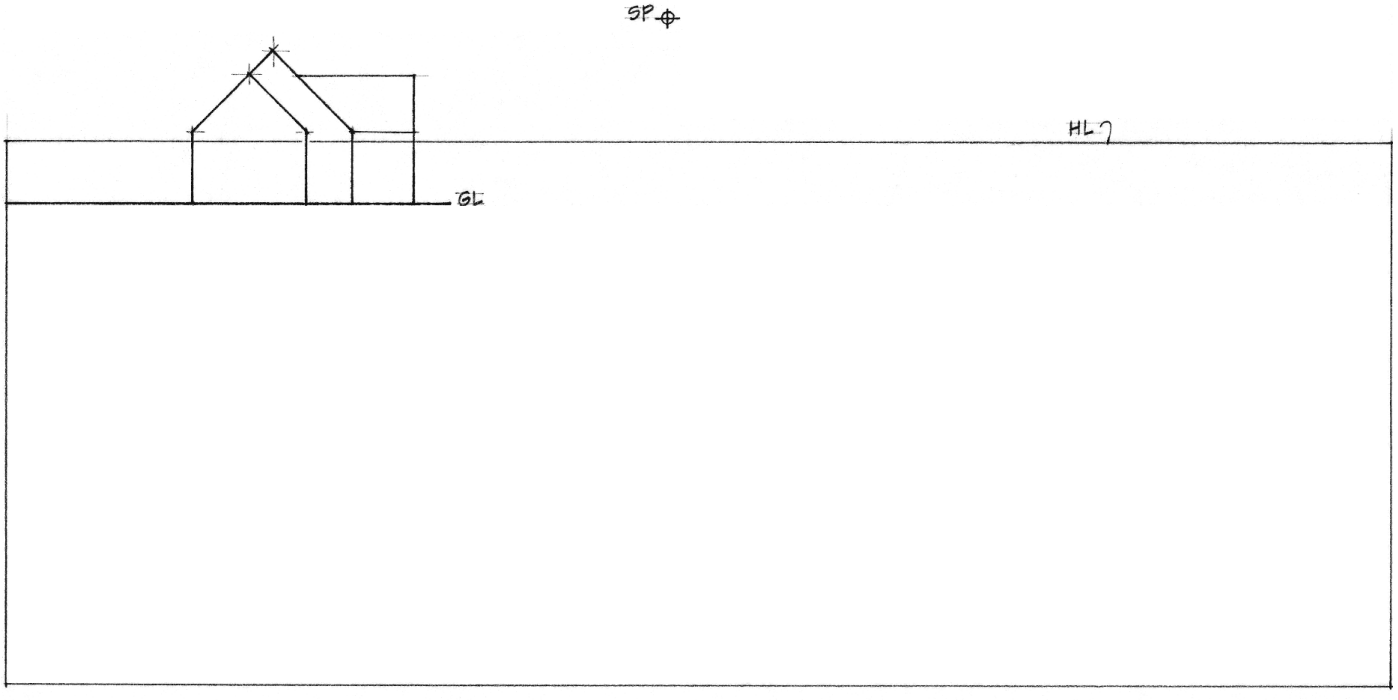
1. Establish the actual ground line for the perspective drawing. The distance from the ground line to the horizon line should be equal to the height of the spectator's eye level above the ground plane.
2. Obtain the horizontal spacings of points and vertical lines in the perspective drawing by projecting vertical lines from the perspective plan.
3. Lay out the true heights of elements on vertical measuring lines in the perspective drawing.
4. Transfer these true heights to their correct perspective locations according to the procedure described in the common method of perspective construction. While an elevation view is not required, it can make the construction easier.



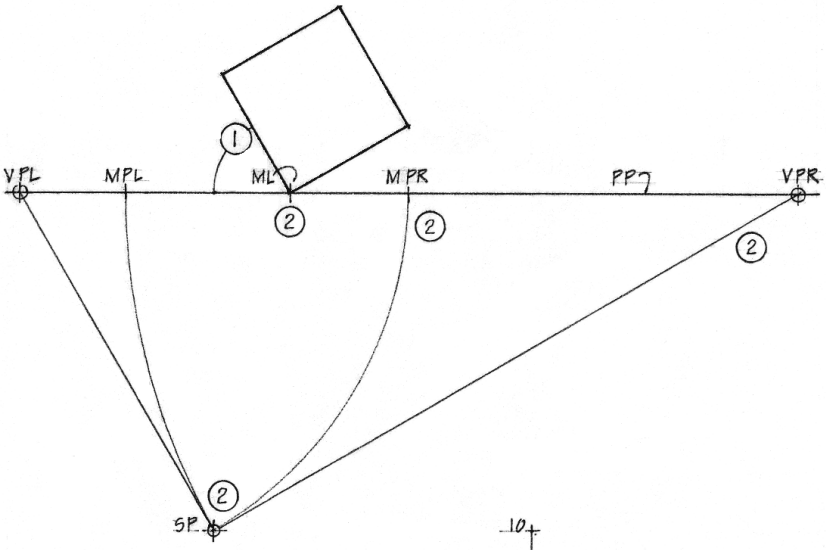
Exercise 8.16

Use the perspective plan method to construct a two-point perspective of the structure at twice the scale shown in the perspective setup.





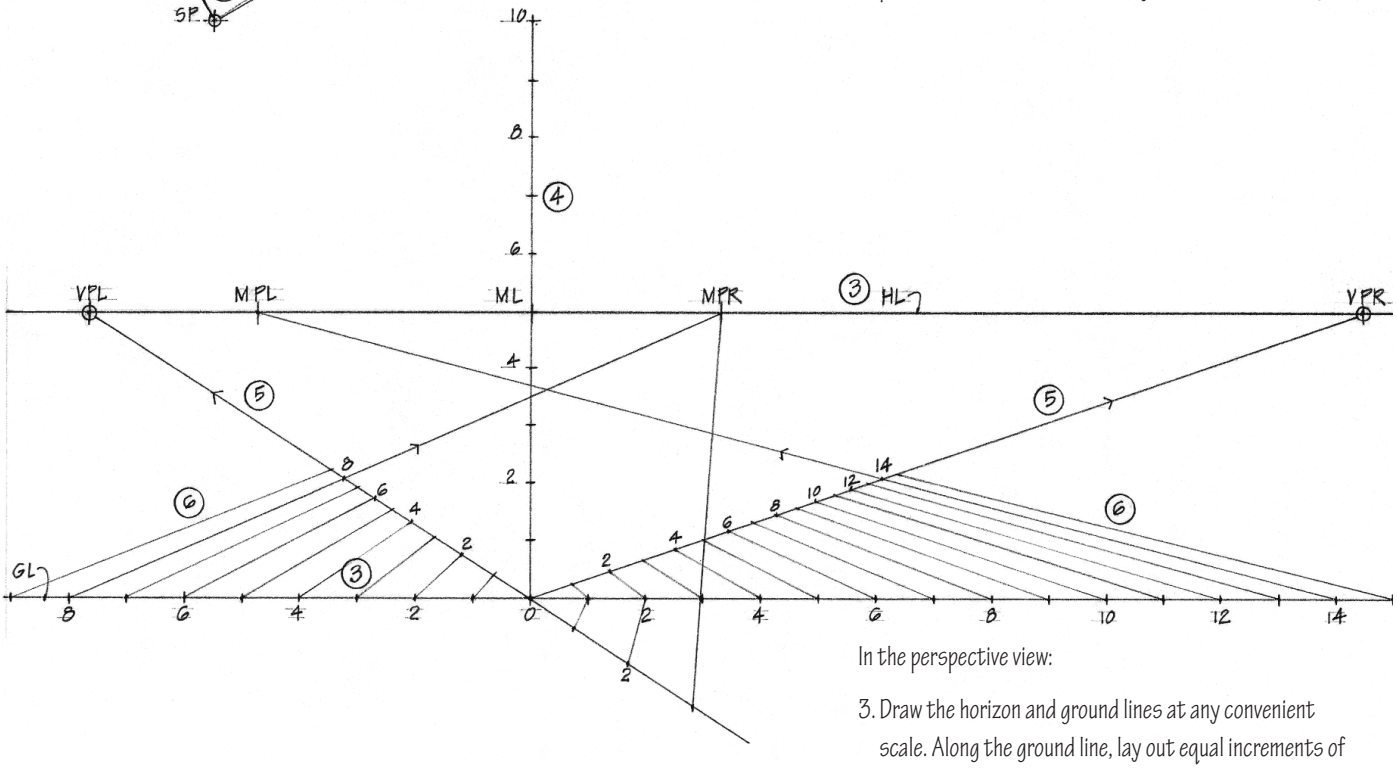
TWO-POINT PERSPECTIVE GRID



A perspective grid is a perspective view of a three-dimensional coordinate system. The three-dimensional network of uniformly spaced points and lines enables us to correctly establish the form and dimensions of an interior or exterior space as well as regulate the position and size of objects within the space.

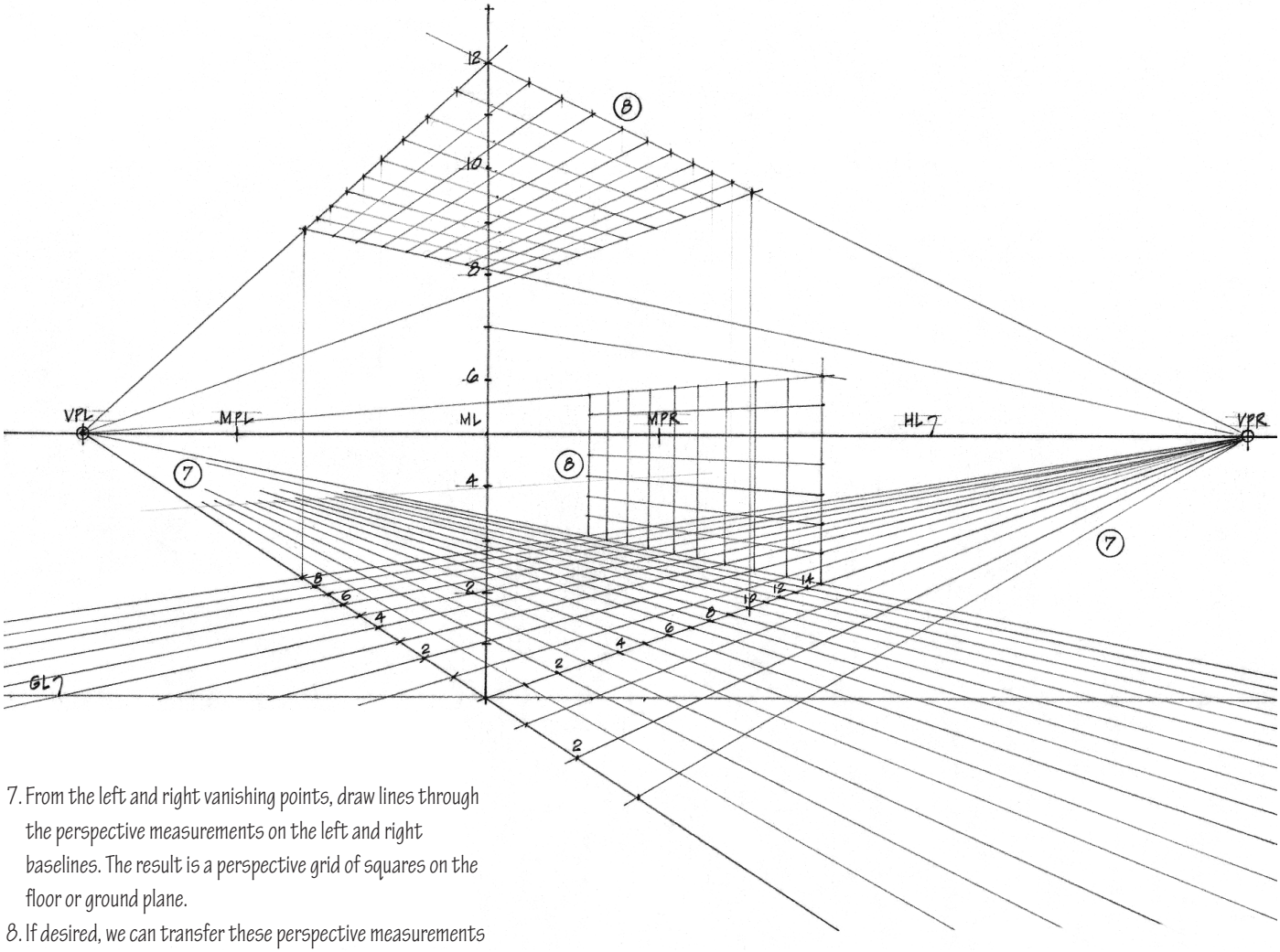
Several types, varying in scale and point of view, are commercially available. We can also use the perspective plan method to construct a two-point perspective grid.

1. Use a plan diagram as described in the perspective plan method to decide on the angle of view.
2. Establish the position of the picture plane, station point, left and right vanishing points, left and right measuring points, and the location of a major vertical measuring line.



In the perspective view:

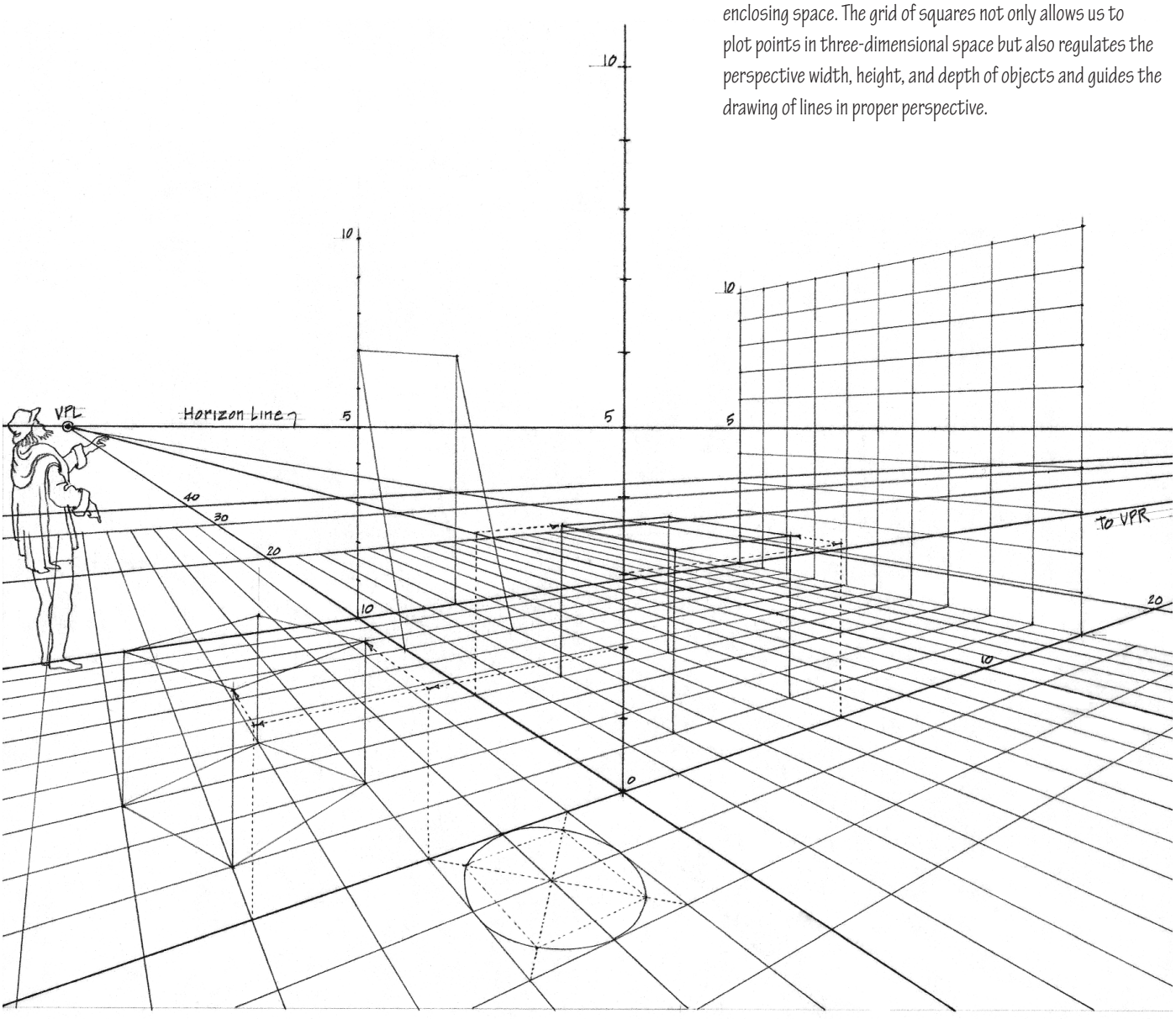
3. Draw the horizon and ground lines at any convenient scale. Along the ground line, lay out equal increments of measurement to scale. The unit of measurement is typically one foot; we can use smaller or larger increments depending on the scale of the drawing and the amount of detail desired in the perspective view.
4. Do the same along a major vertical measuring line.
5. From the left and right vanishing points, draw baselines to where the vertical measuring line meets the ground line.
6. Transfer the units of measurements on the ground line to the left baseline in perspective by drawing lines to the right measuring point. Transfer scale measurements on the ground line to the right baseline by drawing lines to the left measuring point.



7. From the left and right vanishing points, draw lines through the perspective measurements on the left and right baselines. The result is a perspective grid of squares on the floor or ground plane.
8. If desired, we can transfer these perspective measurements and establish a similar grid along receding sidewalls, as well as on a ceiling or overhead plane.

TWO-POINT PERSPECTIVE GRID

Over this perspective grid, we can lay tracing paper and freehand or draft a perspective view. It is important to see the perspective grid as a network of points and lines defining transparent planes in space rather than solid, opaque walls enclosing space. The grid of squares not only allows us to plot points in three-dimensional space but also regulates the perspective width, height, and depth of objects and guides the drawing of lines in proper perspective.



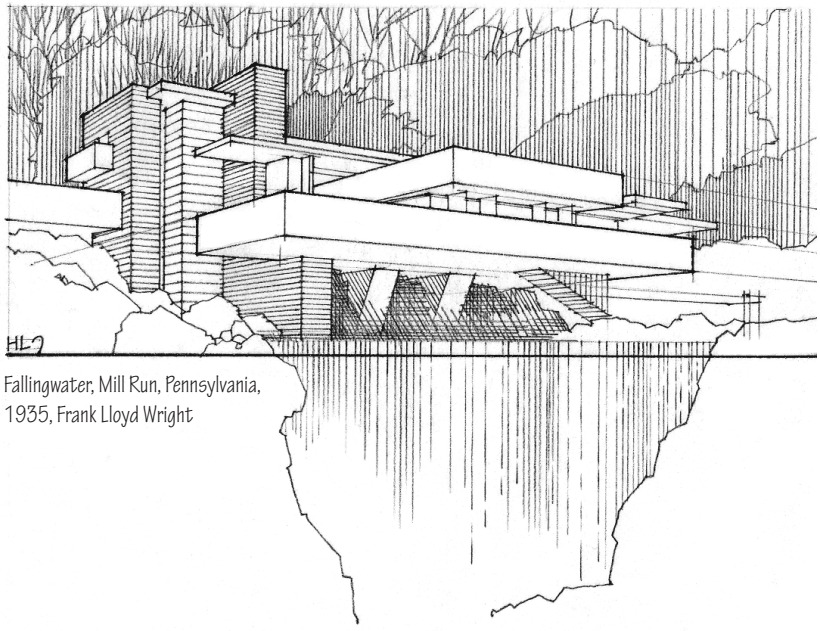
To draw an object within a space, begin by laying out its plan or footprint on the grid of the ground or floor plane. Then elevate each of the corners to their perspective heights using either a vertical grid or the known height of the horizon line above the ground plane. Complete the object by drawing its upper edges, using the principles of convergence and the grid lines to guide their direction. We can use the grid to plot inclined and curved lines as well.

Exercise 8.17

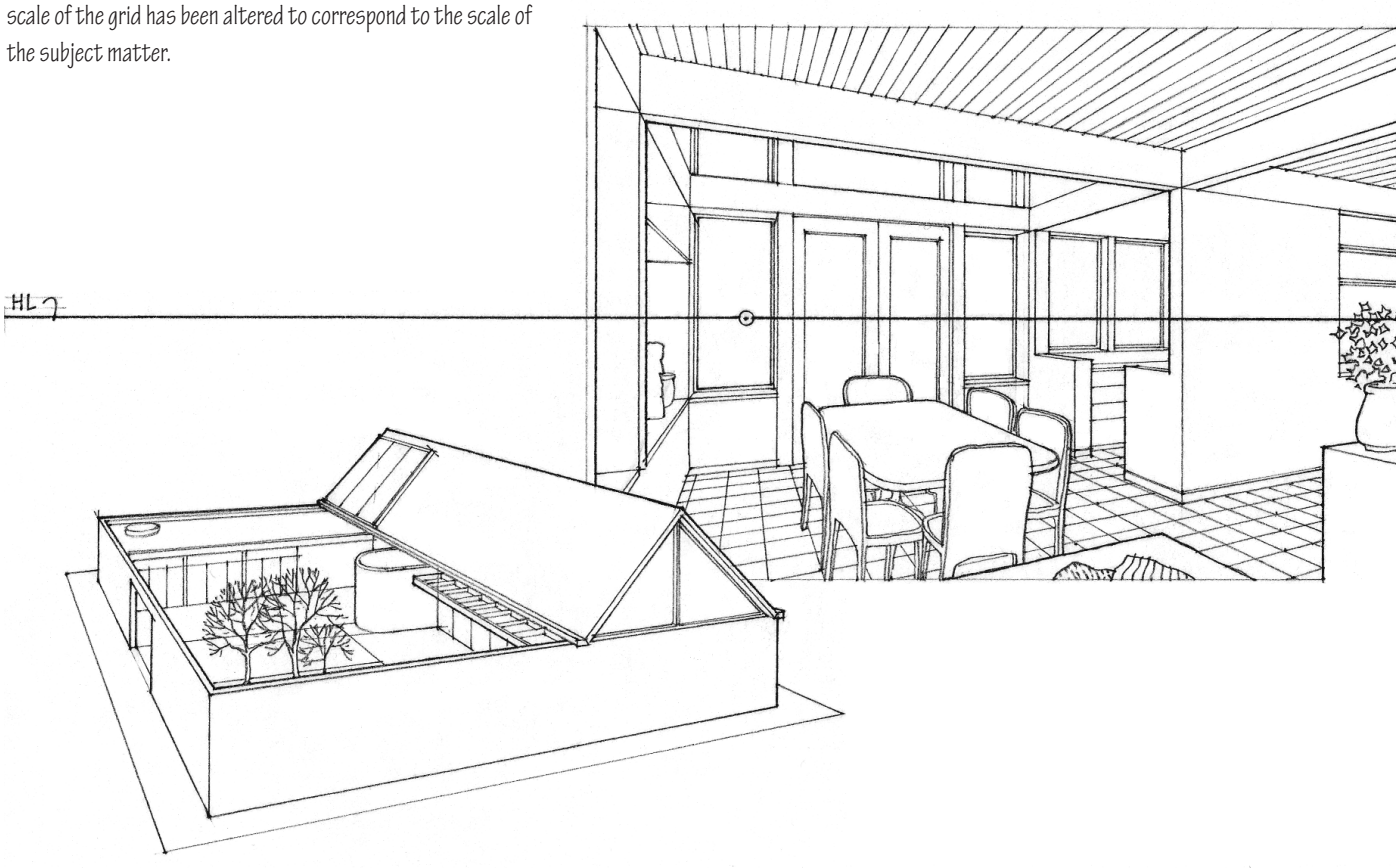
Construct a two-point perspective grid on a sheet of quality tracing paper or vellum. Assume a scale of 3/8" = 1'-0" for the picture plane and a horizon line 5 or 6 feet above the ground line. When completed, the perspective grid may be photocopied and enlarged or reduced to any desired scale.

Once constructed, a perspective grid should be saved and reused to draw perspective views of interior and exterior spaces of similar size and scale. Each unit of measurement can represent a foot, four feet, a hundred yards, or even a mile. Rotating and reversing the grid can also vary the point of view. We can therefore use the same grid to draw an interior perspective of a room, an exterior perspective of a courtyard, or an aerial view of a city block or neighborhood.

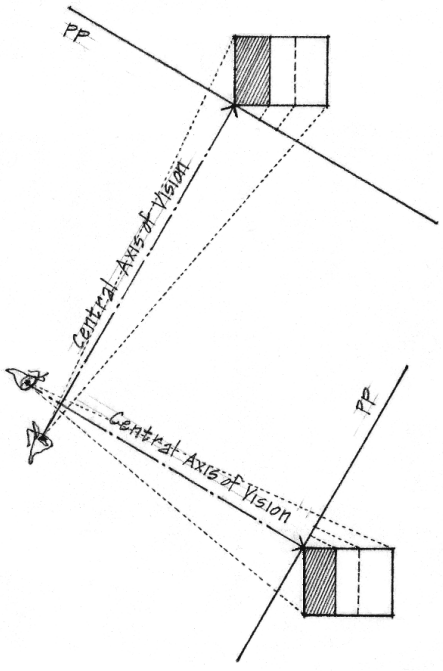
These perspective drawings use the perspective grid developed over the last three pages. In each case, the spectator's height has been selected to portray a specific point of view and the scale of the grid has been altered to correspond to the scale of the subject matter.

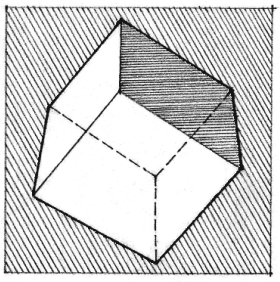


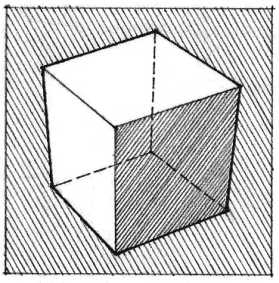
Fallingwater, Mill Run, Pennsylvania, 1935, Frank Lloyd Wright



THREE-POINT PERSPECTIVE

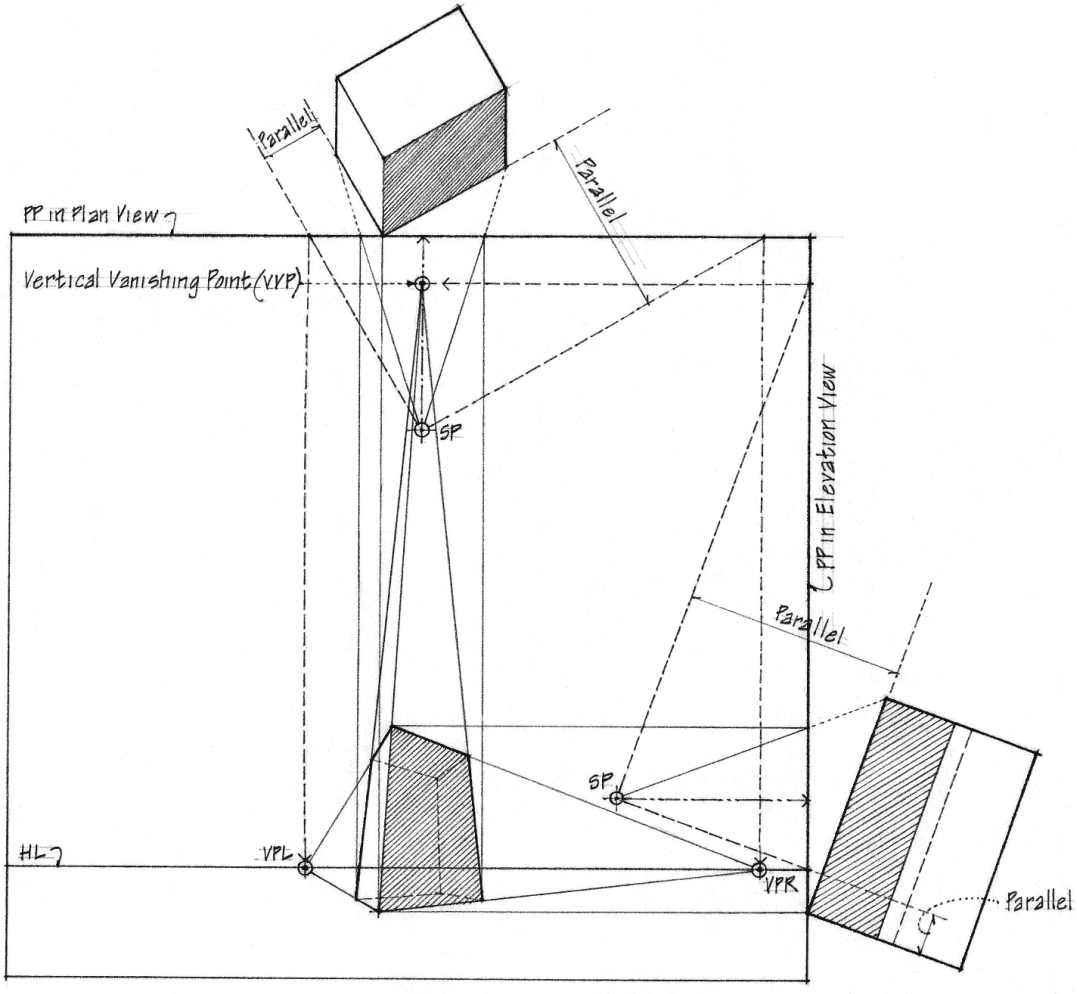






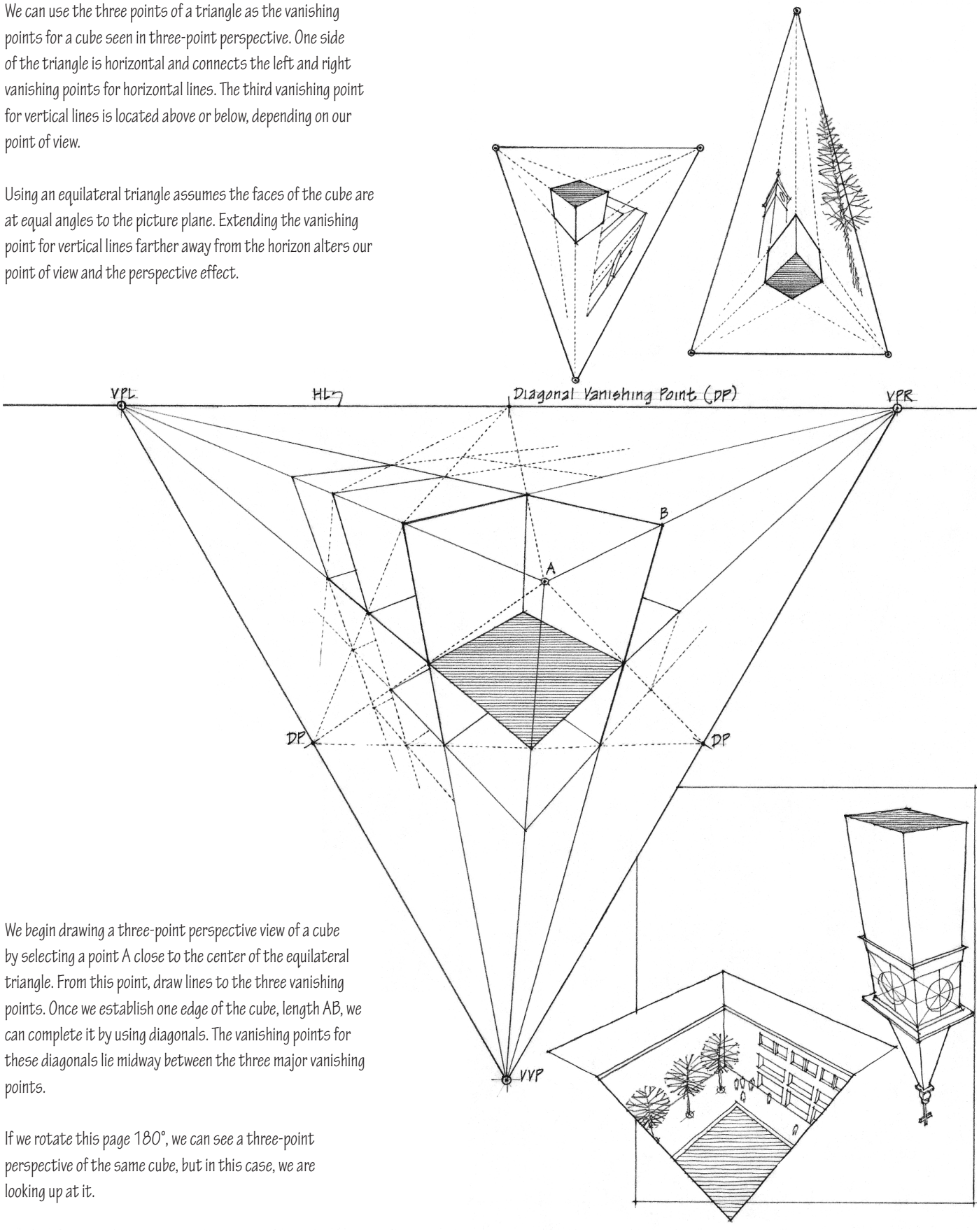
In both one-point and two-point perspectives, the spectator's central axis of vision is horizontal and the picture plane vertical. The three-point perspective system assumes that either the object is tilted to the picture plane or the spectator's central axis of vision is inclined upward or downward. In the latter case, because the picture plane is always perpendicular to the central axis of vision, the picture plane is also tilted. Since all three of the principal axes are oblique to the picture plane, all lines parallel to these three axes will appear to converge at three different vanishing points. These are the three points referred to in three-point perspective.

The convergence of parallel vertical lines is the most striking visual characteristic of three-point perspectives. While not widely used, the three-point perspective system can effectively depict what we see when we look up at a tall building or down into a courtyard from a second-story balcony.



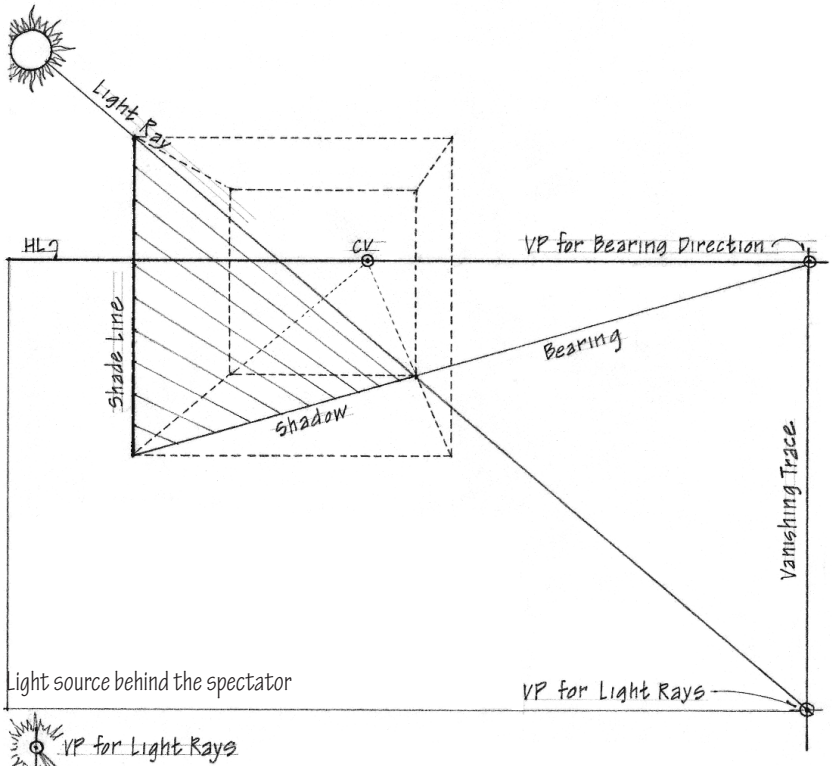
We can use the three points of a triangle as the vanishing points for a cube seen in three-point perspective. One side of the triangle is horizontal and connects the left and right vanishing points for horizontal lines. The third vanishing point for vertical lines is located above or below, depending on our point of view.

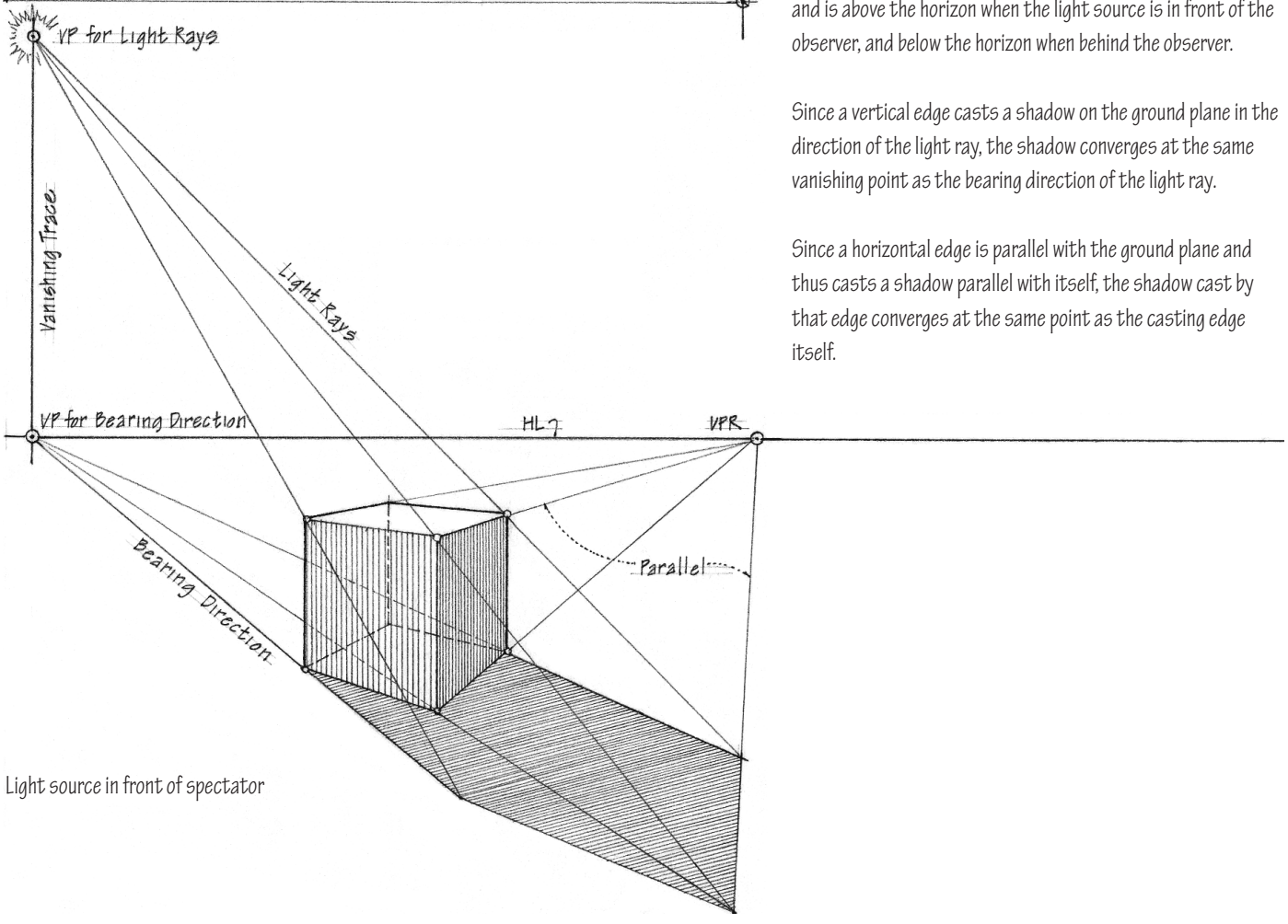
Using an equilateral triangle assumes the faces of the cube are at equal angles to the picture plane. Extending the vanishing point for vertical lines farther away from the horizon alters our point of view and the perspective effect.



We begin drawing a three-point perspective view of a cube by selecting a point A close to the center of the equilateral triangle. From this point, draw lines to the three vanishing points. Once we establish one edge of the cube, length AB, we can complete it by using diagonals. The vanishing points for these diagonals lie midway between the three major vanishing points.

If we rotate this page 180°, we can see a three-point perspective of the same cube, but in this case, we are looking up at it.





The casting of shades and shadows in linear perspective is similar to their construction in paraline drawings, except that the sloping lines representing the conventional or actual light rays appear to converge when oblique to the picture plane. Light sources behind us illuminate the surfaces we see and cast shadows away from us, while sources in front of us cast shadows toward us and emphasize surfaces that are backlit and in shade. Low light angles lengthen shadows, while high light sources shorten them.

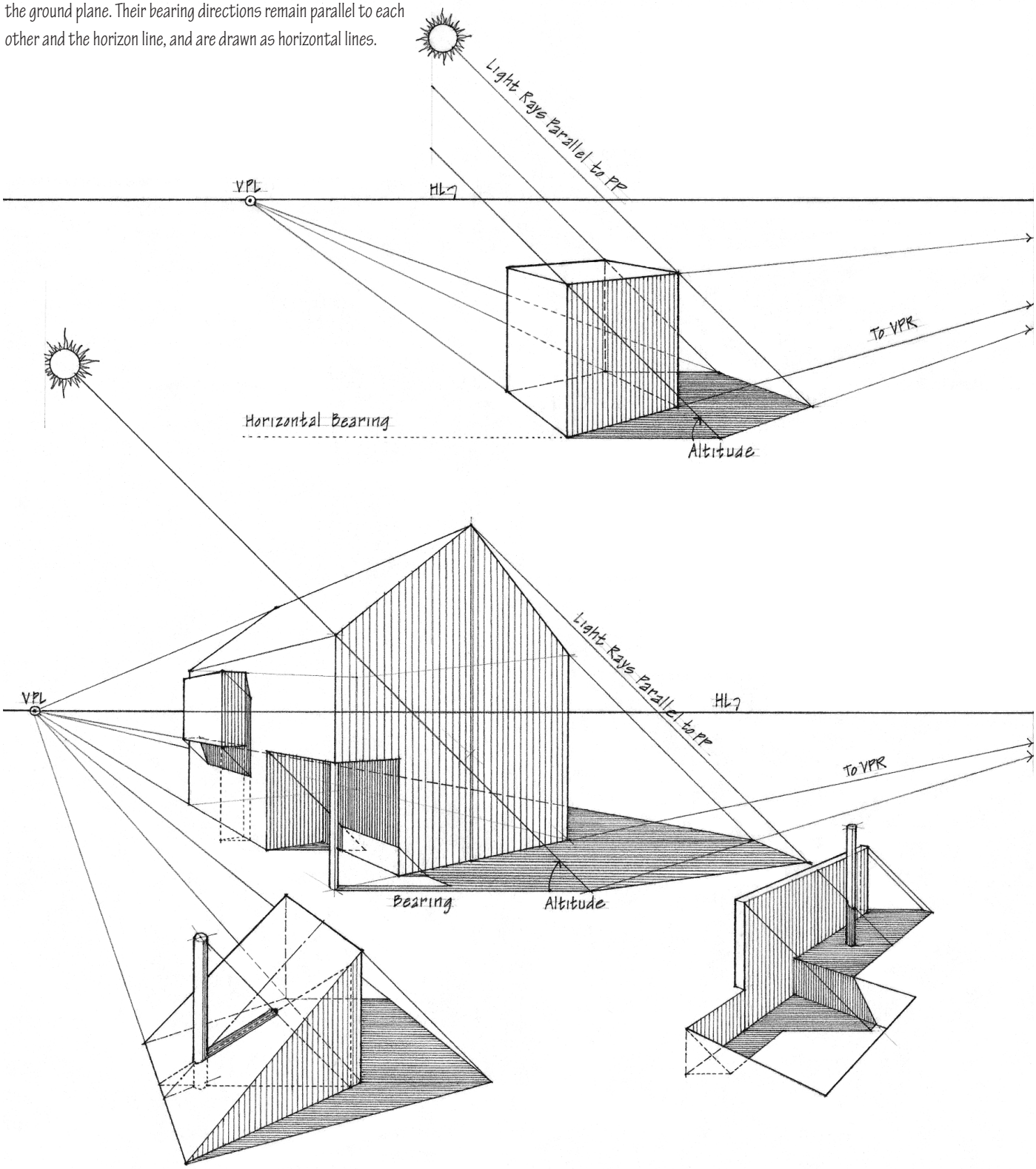
To determine the vanishing point for the light rays, construct a triangular shadow plane for a vertical shade line in perspective, having a hypotenuse establishing the direction of the light rays and a base describing their bearing direction. Because the bearing directions of light rays are described by horizontal lines, their vanishing point must occur somewhere along the horizon line.

Extend the hypotenuse until it intersects a vertical trace through the vanishing point of the bearing direction of the light rays. All other parallel light rays converge at this point. This vanishing point represents the source of the light rays, and is above the horizon when the light source is in front of the observer, and below the horizon when behind the observer.

Since a vertical edge casts a shadow on the ground plane in the direction of the light ray, the shadow converges at the same vanishing point as the bearing direction of the light ray.

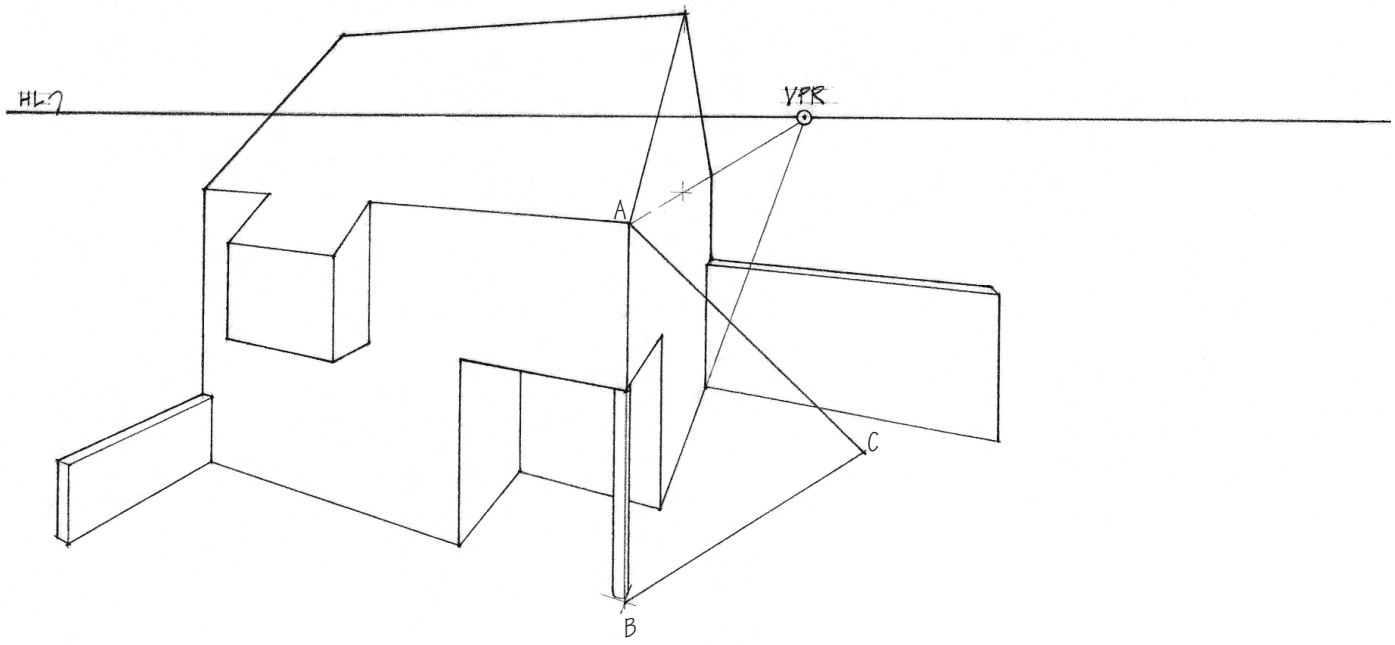
Since a horizontal edge is parallel with the ground plane and thus casts a shadow parallel with itself, the shadow cast by that edge converges at the same point as the casting edge itself.

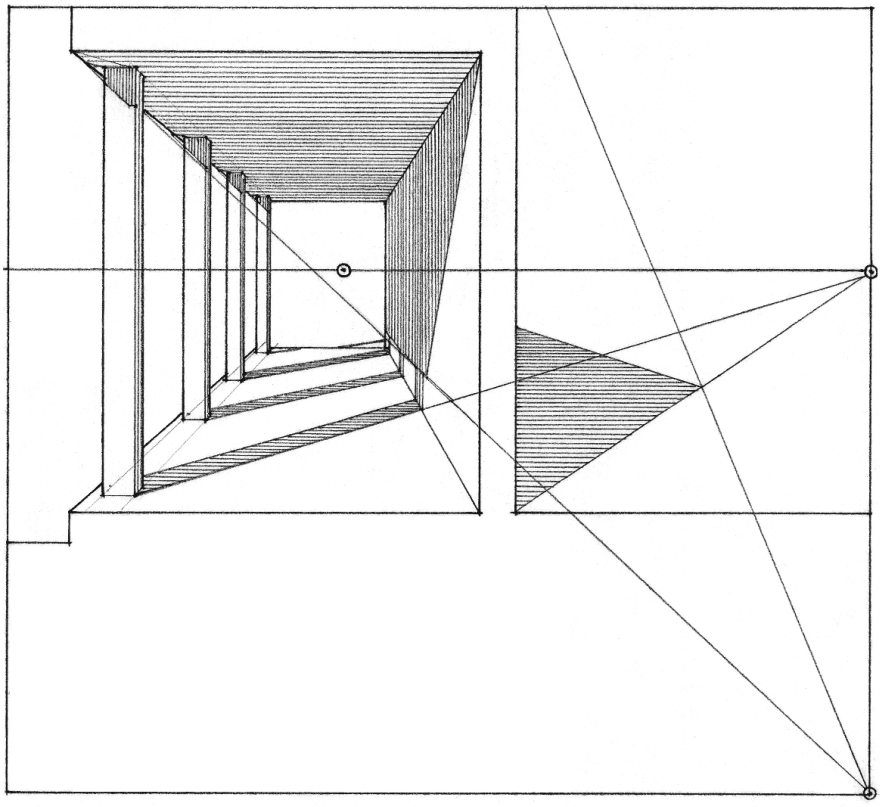
When the light rays originate from either the observer's right or left and are parallel to the picture plane, they remain parallel in perspective and are drawn at their true angular elevation above the ground plane. Their bearing directions remain parallel to each other and the horizon line, and are drawn as horizontal lines.



Exercise 8.18

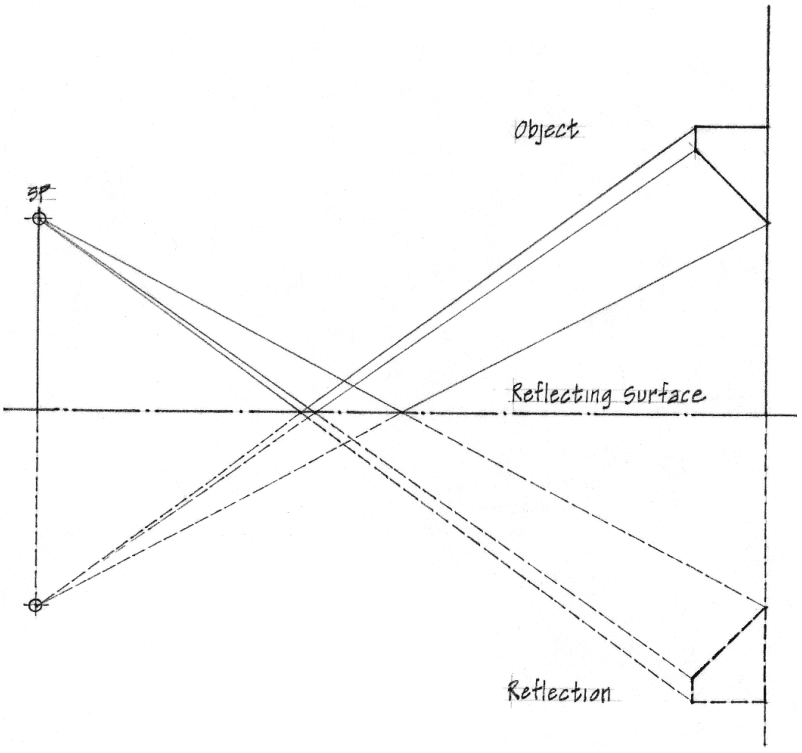
Given the shadow plane ABC, construct the shade and shadows for the structure in two-point perspective.

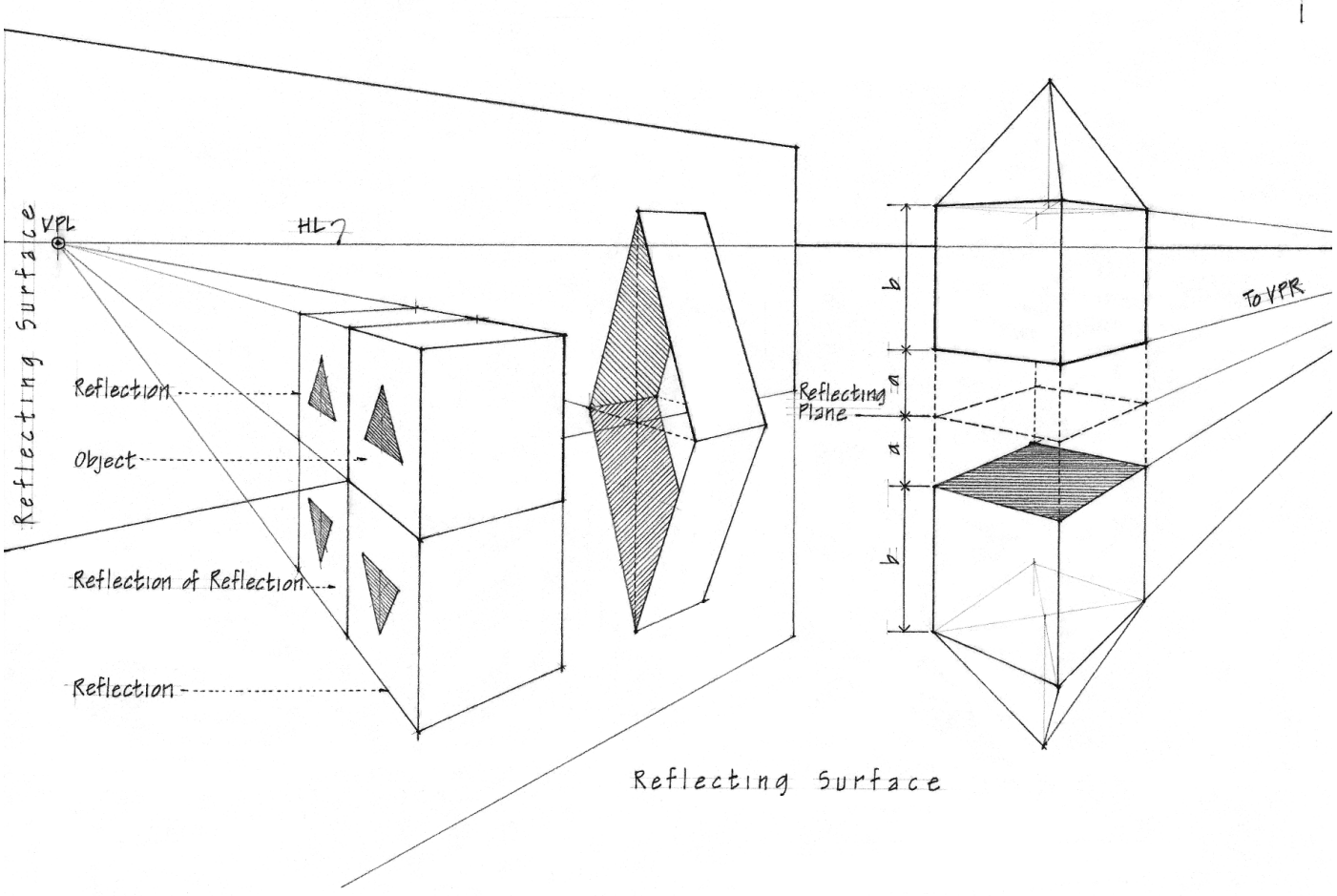




Reflections occur on the horizontal surfaces of bodies of water, the mirrored surfaces of glass, and the polished surfaces of floors. A reflecting surface presents an inverted or mirror copy of the object being reflected. Anything in front of or above a reflecting surface also appears in back of or below the reflecting surface in a direction perpendicular to the surface. Objects appear at the same distance in back of or below the reflecting surface as they are in front of or above the surface.

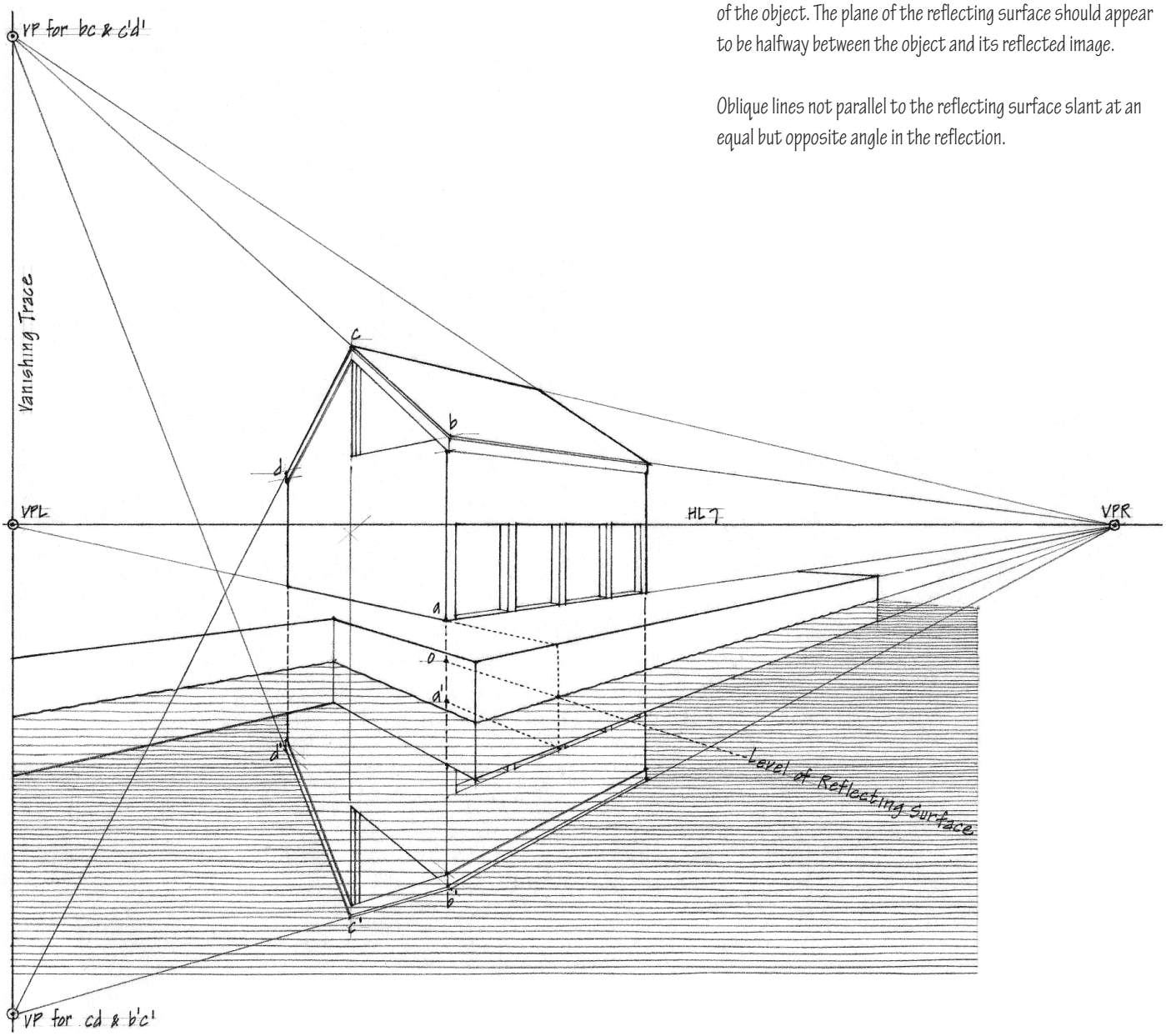
Any reflecting plane surface parallel to one of the three major sets of parallel lines continues the perspective system of the subject. Therefore, the three major sets of lines in the reflection appear in the same perspective as the lines in the subject, remaining parallel and converging to corresponding vanishing points.



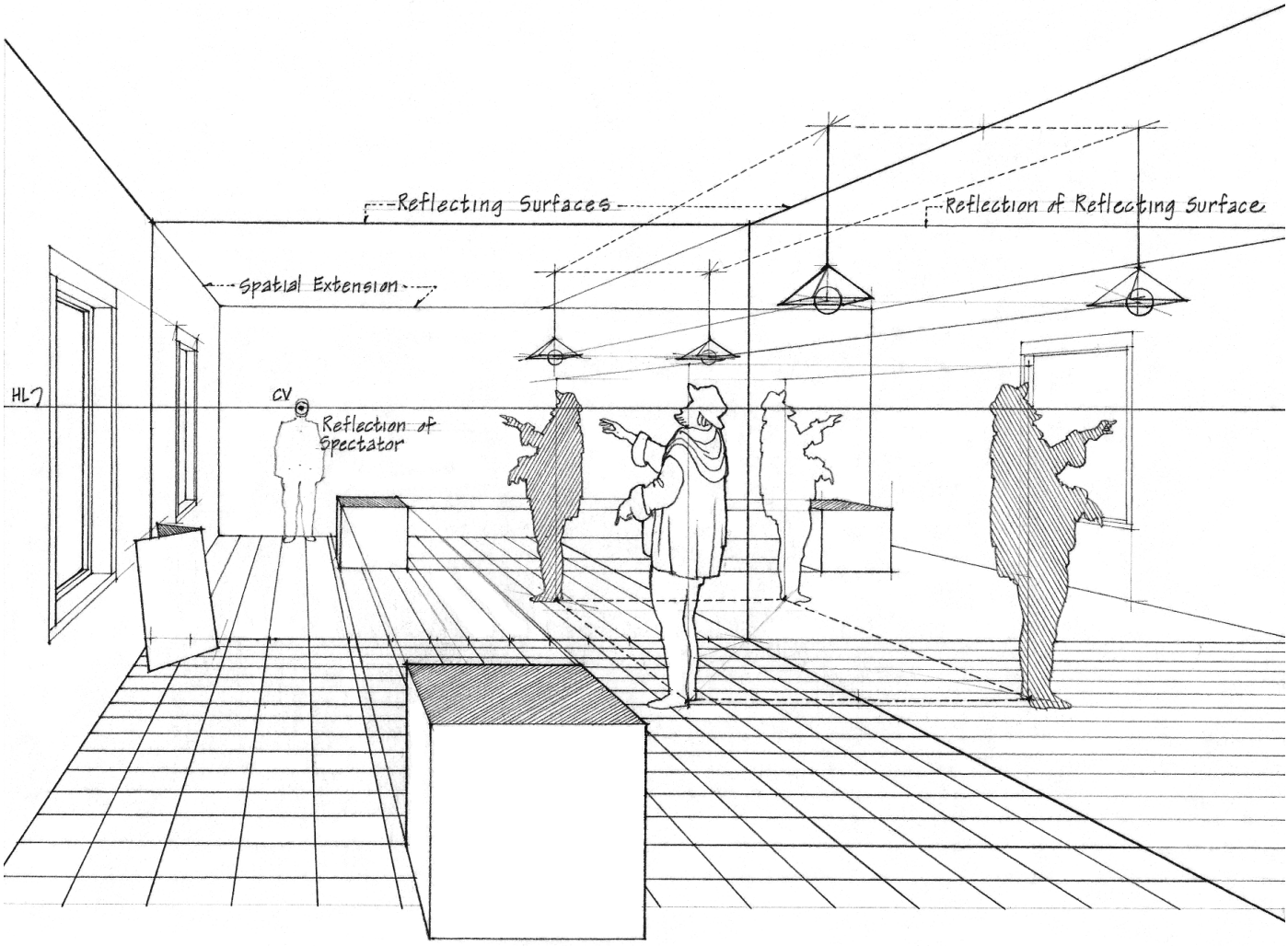


If sitting directly on the reflecting surface, the reflected image is a direct, inverted copy of the original. Thus, in a perspective view of the reflection, the reflected image follows the same perspective system of lines already established for the original image. If the object being reflected is at some distance from the reflecting surface, then the reflection can reveal normally hidden aspects of the object. First reflect the distance from the object to the reflecting surface, then draw the mirror image of the object. The plane of the reflecting surface should appear to be halfway between the object and its reflected image.

Oblique lines not parallel to the reflecting surface slant at an equal but opposite angle in the reflection.

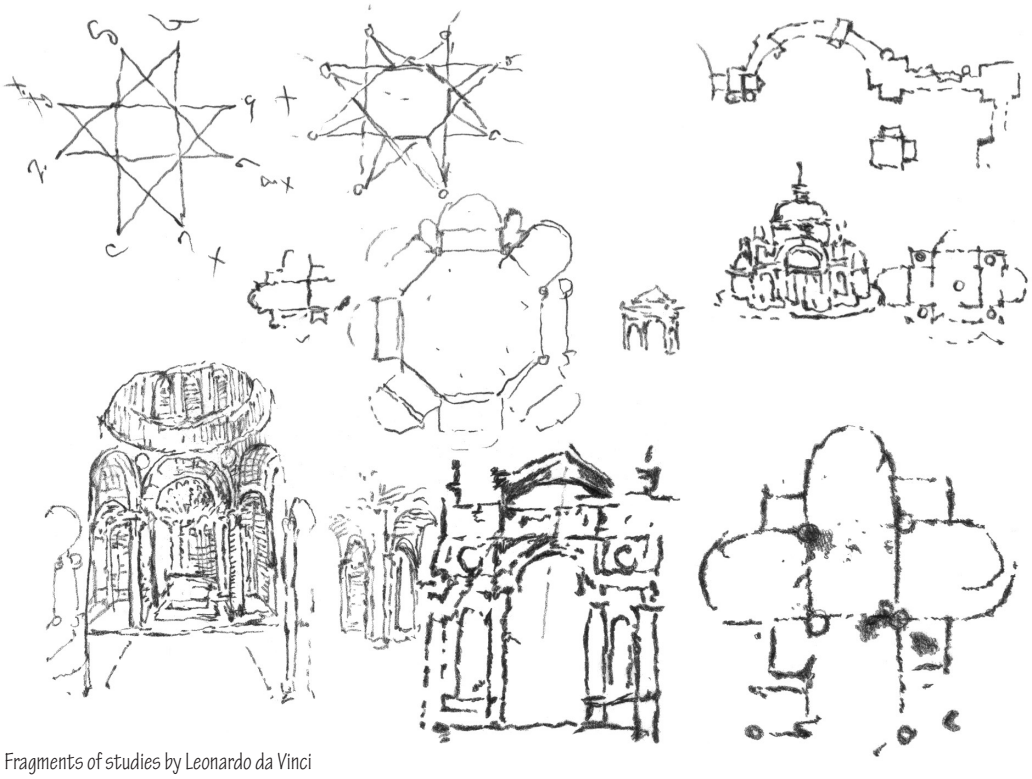


When drawing a perspective of an interior space having a mirrored surface on one or more of its major planes, we extend the perspective system in the manner described above. Sightlines reflect off a mirrored surface at an angle equal to the angle of incidence. Each reflection therefore doubles the apparent dimension of the space in a direction perpendicular to the mirrored surface. A reflection of a reflection will quadruple the apparent size of the space.



Drawing from the Imagination

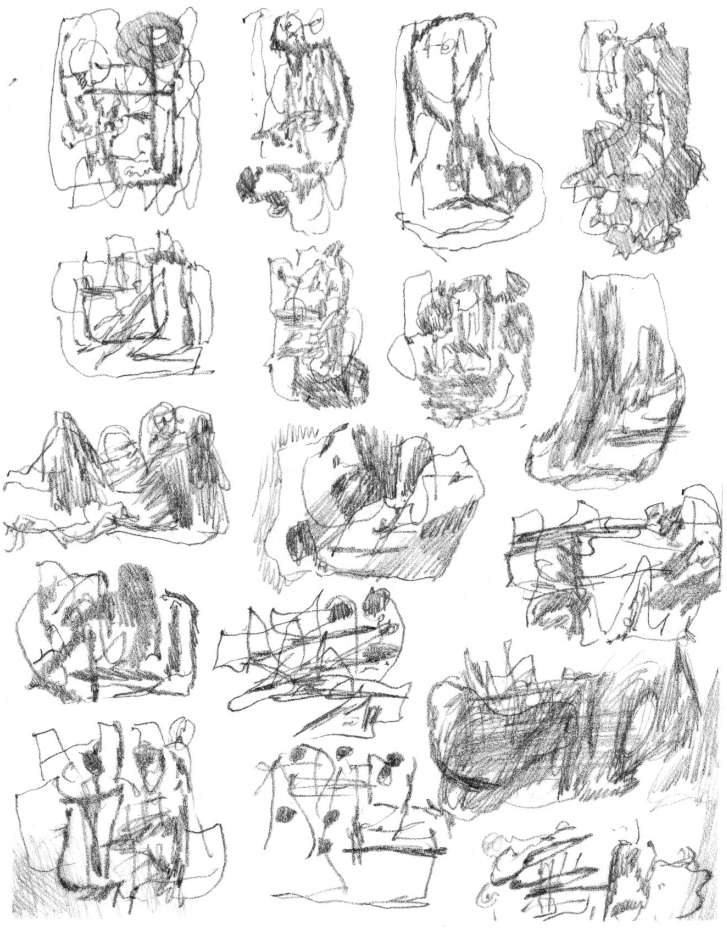
To imagine is to form a mental image of something not present to the senses. Imagination therefore refers to the power of reproducing images stored in memory under the suggestion of associated images—reproductive imagination—or of recombining former experiences in the creation of new images directed at a specific goal or aiding in the solution of problems—creative imagination. We use our creative imagination in design to visualize possibilities, make plans for the future, and speculate on the consequences of our actions. We draw in order to capture and make visible these conceptions that do not yet exist except in the mind's eye.



Fragments of studies by Leonardo da Vinci

"Drawing is a means of finding your way about things, and a way of experiencing, more quickly than sculpture allows, certain tryouts and attempts."

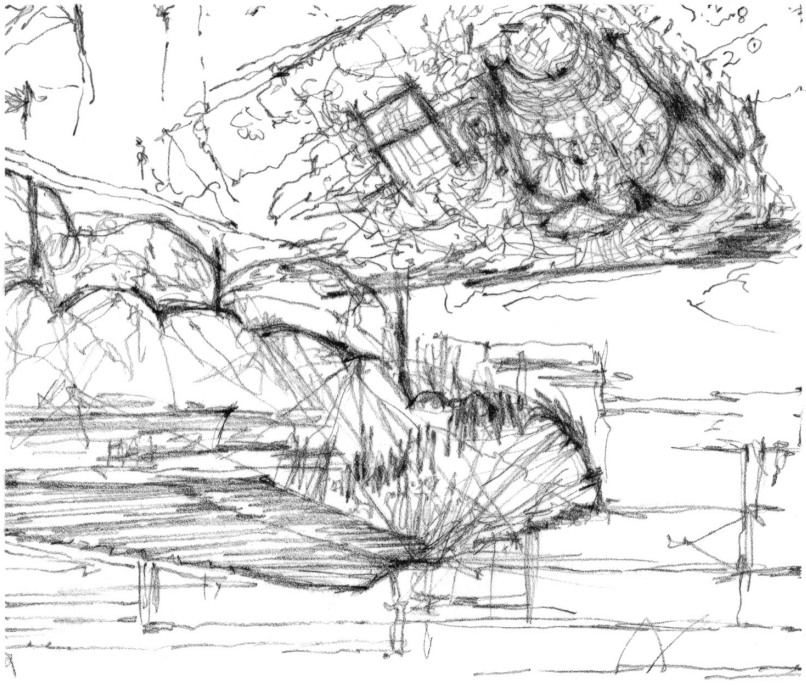
—Henry Moore



9
Speculative Drawing

To speculate is to engage in thought or reflection. In design, we speculate about the future. As we think about what might be possible in the future, drawing gives material existence to our conceptions so that they can be seen, assessed, and acted upon. The drawing out of these ideas, whether executed quickly or slowly, roughly or carefully, is necessarily speculative in nature. We can never determine beforehand precisely what the final outcome will be. The developing image on paper gradually takes on a life of its own and guides the exploration of a concept as it circulates between mind and paper.

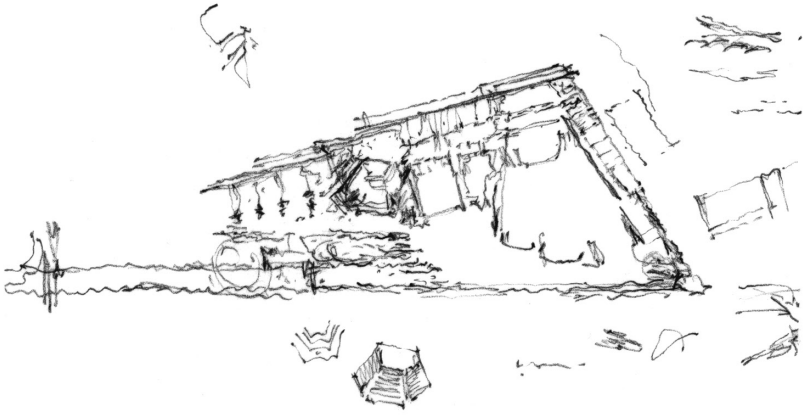
SPECULATIVE DRAWING

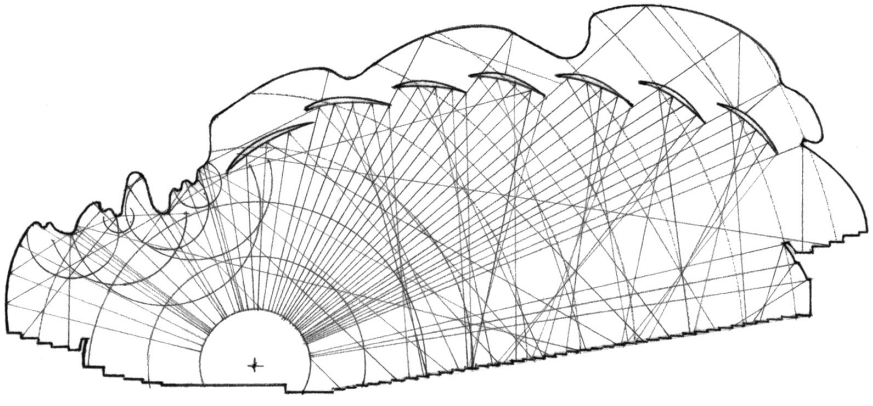


Facsimile of design studies for the Concert and Convention Hall, Helsinki, 1967–71, Alvar Aalto.

In the generative and developmental stages of the design process, drawing is distinctly speculative in nature. Thoughts come to mind as we view a drawing in progress, which can alter our perceptions and suggest possibilities not yet conceived. The emerging image on paper allows us to explore avenues that could not be foreseen before the drawing was started, but that generate ideas along the way. Once executed, each drawing depicts a separate reality that can be seen, evaluated, and refined or transformed. Even if eventually discarded, each drawing will have stimulated the mind's eye and set in motion the formation of further conceptions.

Therefore, speculative drawing is different in spirit and purpose from the definitive presentation drawings we use to accurately represent and communicate a fully formed design to others. While the technique and degree of finish of exploratory drawings may vary with the nature of the problem and one's individual way of working, the mode of drawing is always open-ended, informal, and personal. While not intended for public display, these drawings can provide valuable insights into an individual's creative process.



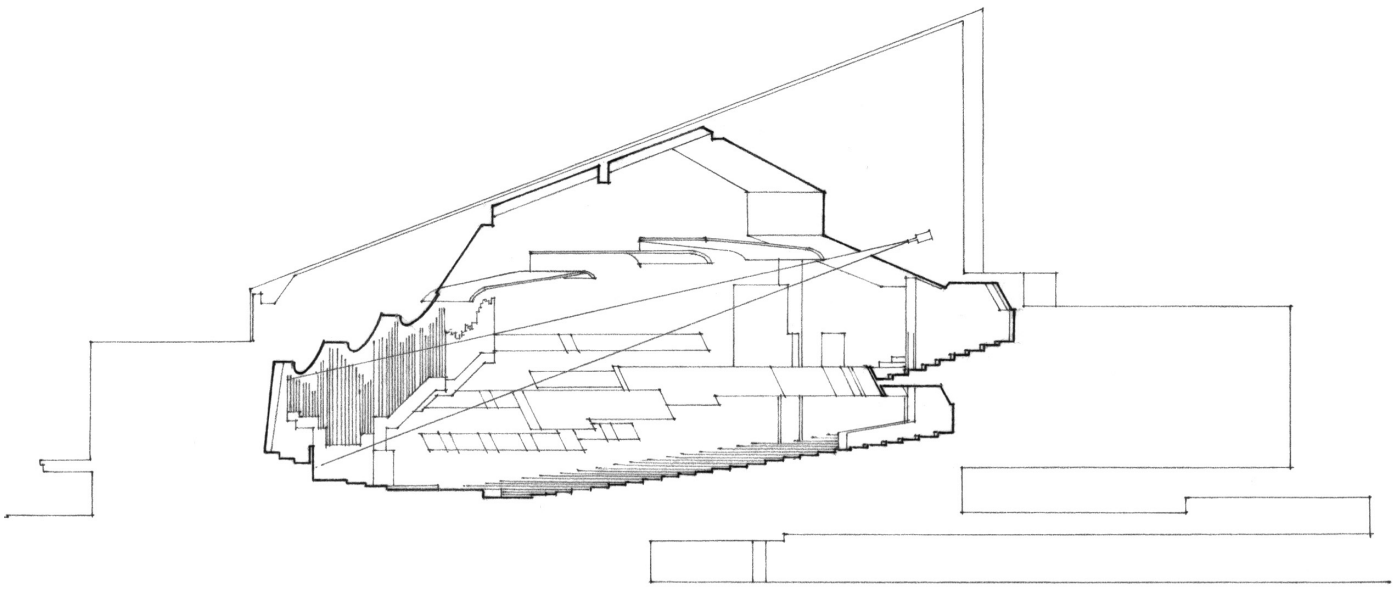


Concert and Convention Hall, Helsinki, 1967–71, Alvar Aalto. Acoustic study of the concert hall.

Speculative drawing is a creative process. The imagination triggers a concept that is seen as a flashing and dimensionless image in the mind's eye. The drawing of that idea, however, does not arrive full-blown and complete. An image rarely exists in the mind fully formed down to the last detail, waiting only to be transferred to a sheet of paper. It develops over time and undergoes a number of transformations as we probe the idea it represents and search for congruence between the image in the mind's eye and the one we are drawing.

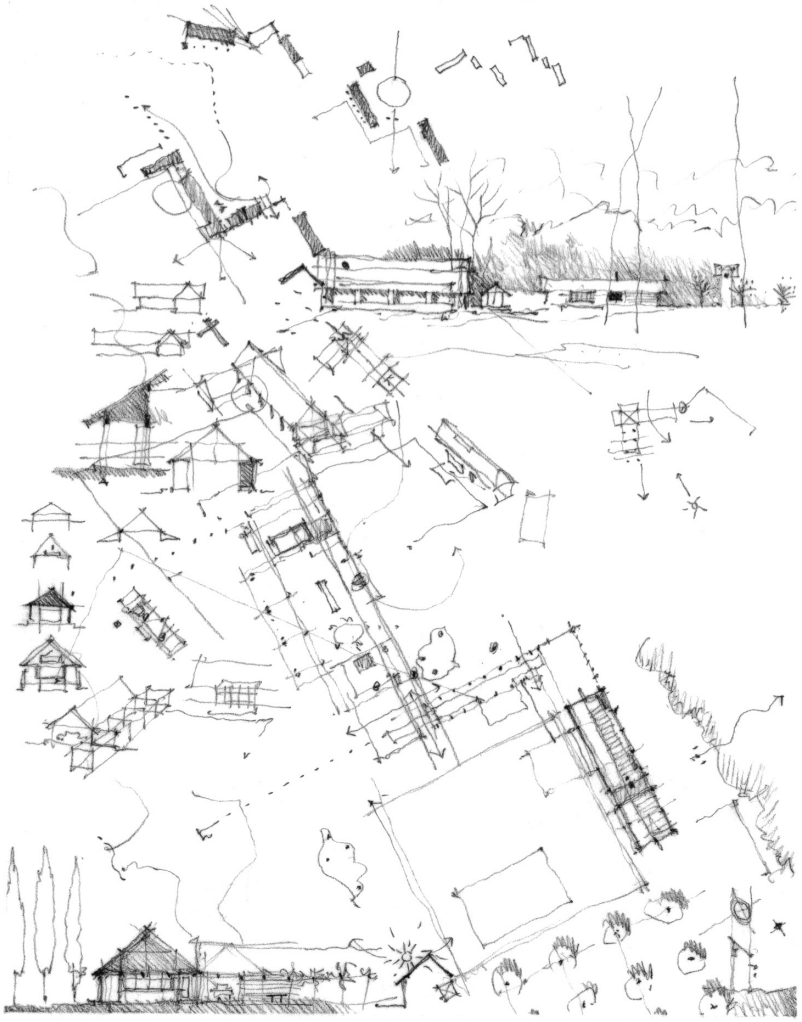
If we draw blindly, as if following a recipe, we limit ourselves only to preconceived images and miss opportunities for discovery along the way. While a prior image is necessary to initiate a drawing, it can be a hindrance if we do not see that the evolving image is something we can interact with and modify as we draw. If we can accept this exploratory nature of drawing, we open up the design process to opportunity, inspiration, and invention.

Facsimile of a sketch of the unrealized baldachin for the Cathedral of Mallorca, Antonio Gaudi.



Concert and Convention Hall, Helsinki, 1967–71, Alvar Aalto. Section showing the interior of the concert hall.

THINKING ON PAPER

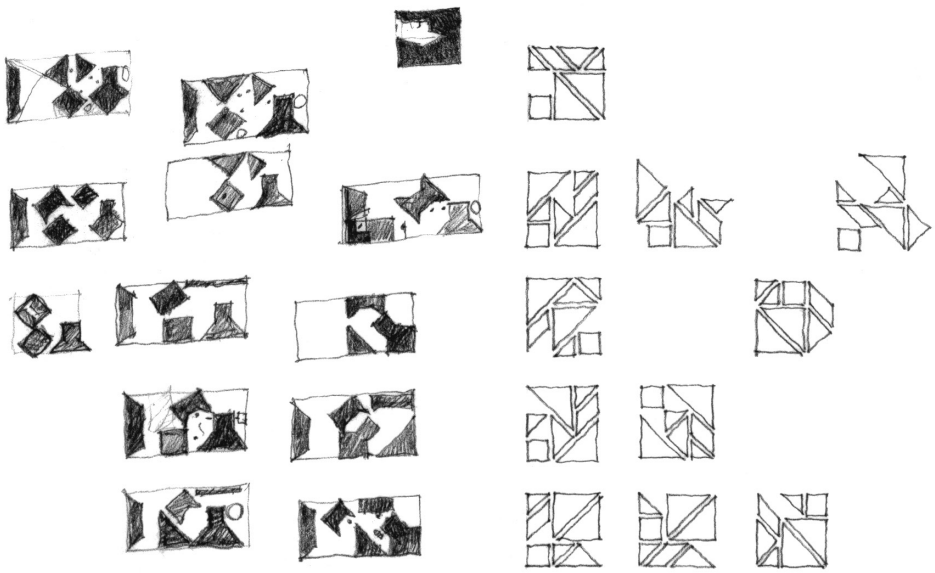


Facsimile of plan compositions for the Fort Wayne Fine Arts Center, Fort Wayne, Indiana, 1961–64, Louis Kahn

Visual thought is the essential complement to verbal thought in cultivating insights, seeing possibilities, and making discoveries. We also think in visual terms when we draw. Drawing enables the mind to work in graphic form without consciously intending to produce a work of art. Just as thought can be put into words, ideas can take on a visual form to be studied, analyzed, and refined.

In thinking about a design problem, ideas naturally come to mind. Such ideas are often not verbal. The creative process inevitably involves visualizing a potential outcome in the form of images that are not clearly or completely crystallized. It is difficult to hold such ideas in memory long enough to clarify, assess, and develop them. To commit an idea to paper quickly enough to keep up with our thoughts, we rely on diagrams and thumbnail sketches. These generative drawings lead the way in formulating possibilities.

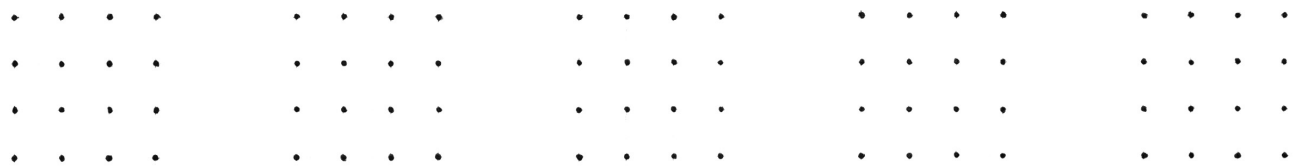
The smaller a drawing, the broader the concept it forms. We begin with small sketches, since they allow a range of possibilities to be explored. Sometimes a solution will emerge quickly. More often, however, many drawings are required to reveal the best choice or direction to pursue. They encourage us to look at alternative strategies in a fluent and flexible manner and not close on a solution too fast. Being speculative in nature and thus subject to interpretation, they help us avoid the inhibiting nature of a more careful drawing, which often leads to premature closure of the design process.



Tangram compositions

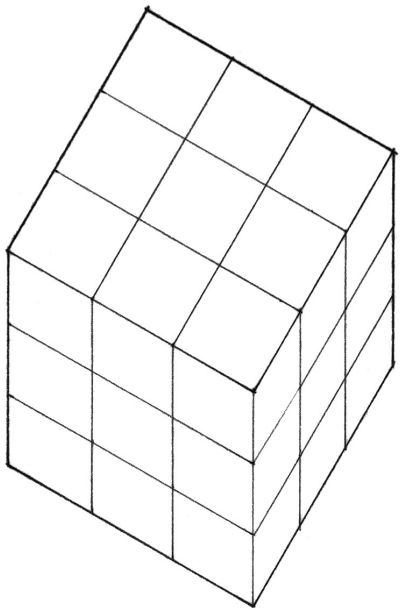
Exercise 9.1

Without lifting your pencil from the paper, draw six straight lines that connect all 16 dots. This simple puzzle illustrates both the iterative, trial-and-error nature of problem solving and the need to commit pencil to paper in working through the problem-solving process.



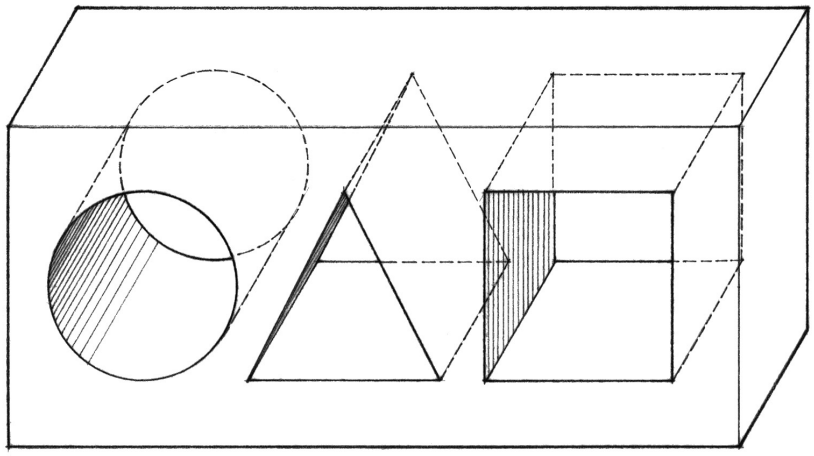
Exercise 9.2

This cube consists of a $3 \times 3 \times 3$ array of smaller cubes. How many ways can you find to divide the cube into three different shapes, each having an equal volume containing nine of the smaller cubes?

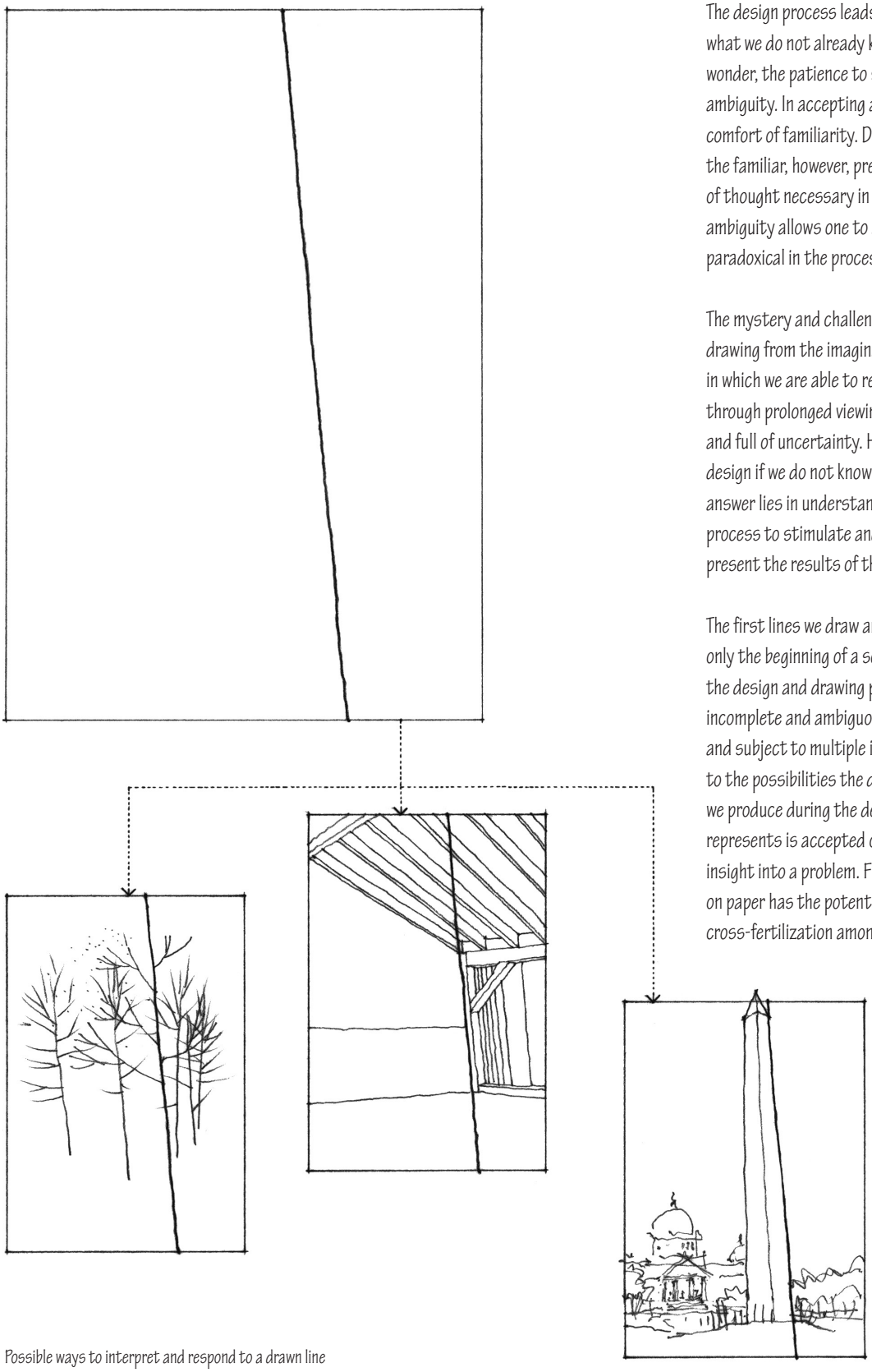


Exercise 9.3

Circular-, triangular-, and square-shaped holes pierce the solid block. The diameter of the circle, the altitude and base of the triangle, and the sides of the square are equal in dimension. Visualize a single three-dimensional object that will fit exactly and pass completely through each of the apertures. Can you imagine a solution without drawing out the possibilities?



TOLERATING AMBIGUITY



Possible ways to interpret and respond to a drawn line

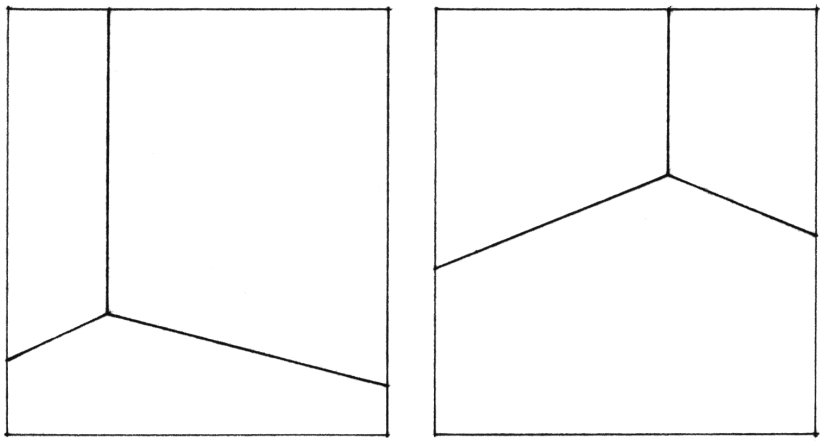
The design process leads into uncharted territory. To pursue what we do not already know, it is necessary to have a sense of wonder, the patience to suspend judgment, and a tolerance for ambiguity. In accepting ambiguity, unfortunately, we lose the comfort of familiarity. Dealing only with the clearly defined and the familiar, however, precludes the plasticity and adaptability of thought necessary in any creative endeavor. Tolerating ambiguity allows one to accept uncertainty, disorder, and the paradoxical in the process of ordering one's thoughts.

The mystery and challenge of ambiguity applies as well to drawing from the imagination. Unlike drawing from observation, in which we are able to represent a subject that is visible through prolonged viewing, speculative drawing is open-ended and full of uncertainty. How can we draw out an idea for a design if we do not know where the process will lead? The answer lies in understanding that we use drawing in the design process to stimulate and extend one's thinking, not merely to present the results of the process.

The first lines we draw are necessarily tentative, representing only the beginning of a search for ideas or concepts. As the design and drawing processes proceed in tandem, the incomplete and ambiguous state of the drawings is suggestive and subject to multiple interpretations. We must be open to the possibilities the drawings present. Every drawing we produce during the design process, whether the idea it represents is accepted or rejected, helps us gain additional insight into a problem. Further, the act of drawing an idea out on paper has the potential to trigger new ideas and enhance cross-fertilization among any number of previous ideas.

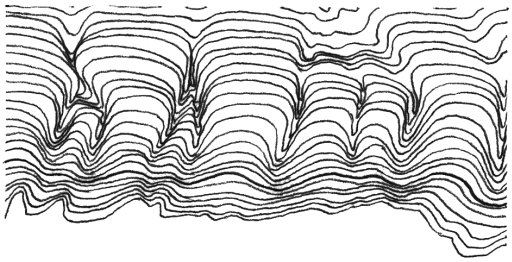
Exercise 9.4

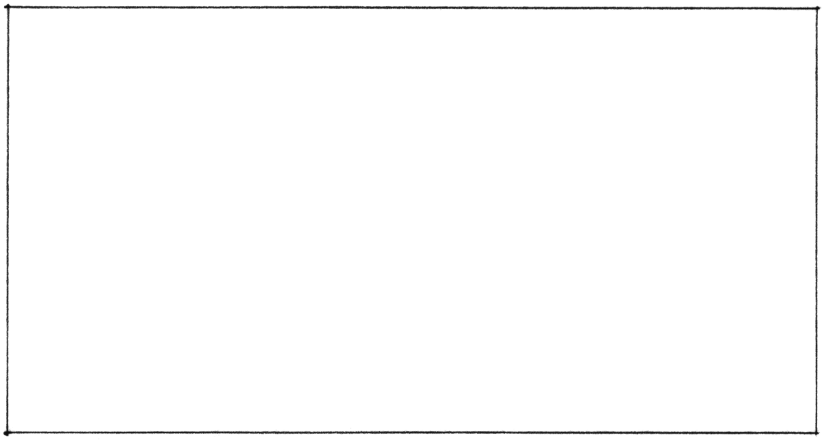
The two patterns of lines can serve as the basis for further development of a three-dimensional image. For example, they could suggest how two walls meet a floor. What other ways can you interpret and develop the patterns?



Exercise 9.5

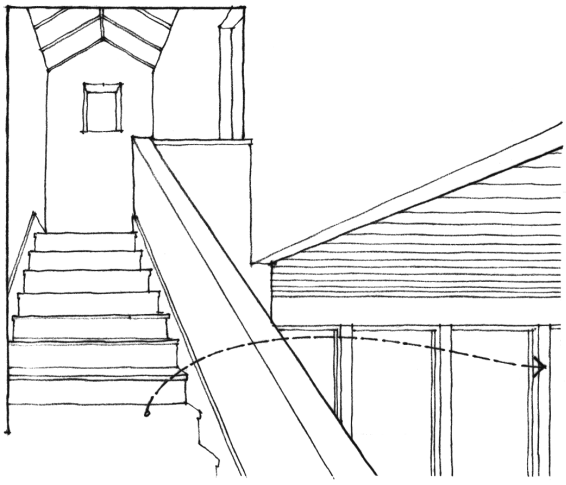
Draw a wavy line across the middle of a rectangular plane. Then draw parallel lines above and below the wavy line, making them closer to each other at certain points so as to create areas of concentration. As the drawing develops, what does the emerging image suggest or recall to your mind's eye?

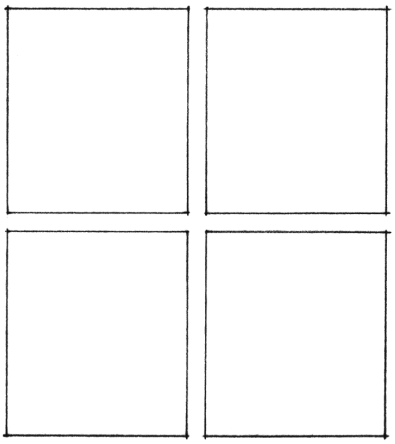


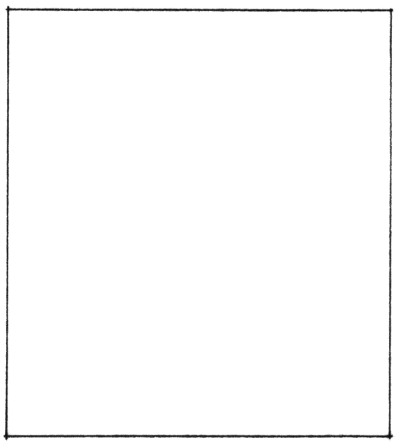


Exercise 9.6

Imagine what one might see upon looking to the right in the perspective below. First explore a variety of scenarios in the smaller frames and then develop one of them into a perspective view in the larger frame.







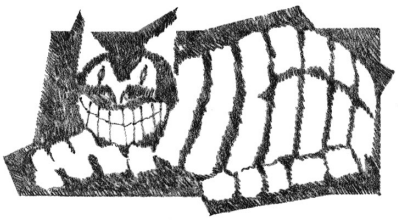
"...'How can I design if I do not know what the end result will be like?' is a frequent complaint. 'Why would you need to design if you already knew?' is my response. The need for a prior image is most keenly felt when we do not trust the form as something to work with. There is nothing wrong with having such an image, but it is not a prerequisite and may be a hindrance. When we speak with other people, we need not know what the result of the conversation will be either. We may come out of the conversation with a better sense of the issue; in fact, we may have changed our mind. When we are concerned about 'doing our own thing' and feel we must be on top of the form all the time, we cannot relax and trust the process. Once students find out how one's dialogue with the form will always bear the imprint of one's personality—whether one likes it or not—the complaint is no longer heard."

—John Habraken
"The Control of Complexity," Places/Vol. 4, No. 2

In the search for possibilities and to outline choices, we rely on intuition as a guide. Intuition, however, is based on informed experience. We cannot draw out what is not already within each one of us. Drawing requires understanding of what it is we are drawing. For example, it is difficult to convincingly draw a form whose structure we do not understand. Yet the act of trying to draw it out can lead the way to understanding and guide the intuitive search for ideas.

The first lines we draw are the most difficult. We often fear even beginning until an idea is fully formed in our head. Faced with a blank sheet of paper, what does one draw first? We may start with specific aspects of a particular form or setting, or begin with a more generalized image of a concept or construct. In either case, where we start is not as important as where we end up.

Drawing too carefully in the early stages of the design process can lead to hesitation and disrupt our thinking about the problem. The time and energy spent on the creation of a drawing can inhibit the willingness to explore other possibilities. We should understand that speculative drawing is a trial-and-error process in which the most important step is to set down the first few lines on paper, no matter how tentative they might be. We must trust our intuition if we are to move forward in the drawing process.



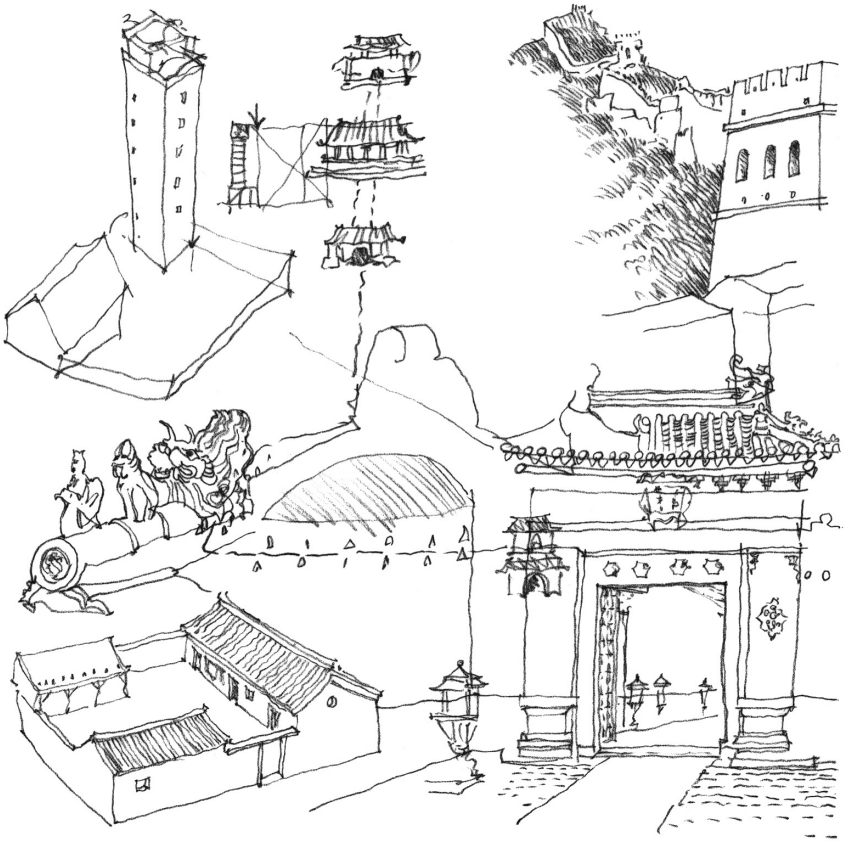
"One day Alice came to a fork in the road and saw a Cheshire cat in a tree.
'Which road do I take?' she asked.
His response was a question: 'Where do you want to go?'
'I don't know,' Alice answered.
'Then,' said the cat, 'it doesn't matter.' "

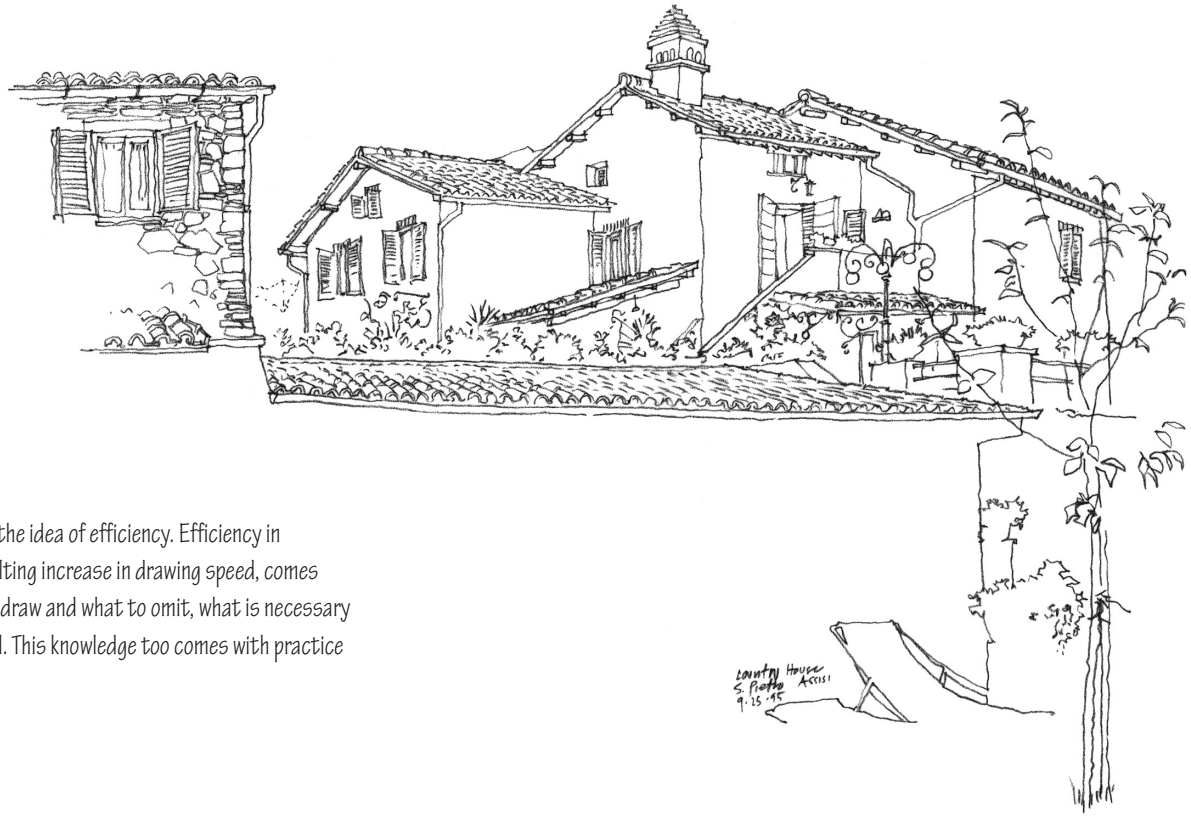
—Lewis Carroll
Alice in Wonderland

To be fluent in the creative process is to be able to generate a wide range of possibilities and ideas. To be fluent in the drawing process is to be intuitive when placing pen or pencil to paper, responding with ease and grace to our conceptions. We must be able keep up with our thoughts, which can be fleeting.

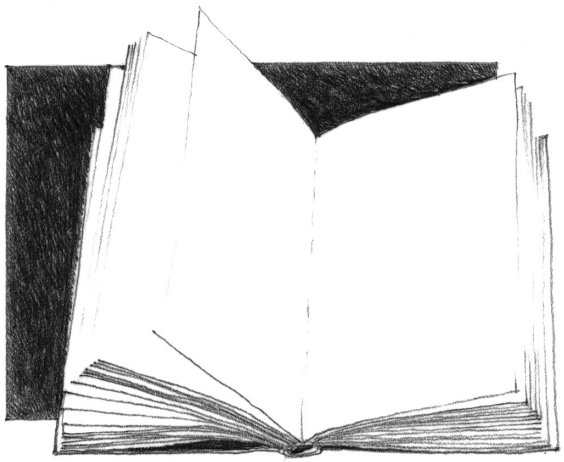
Writing our thoughts out is an easy, almost effortless task. To develop this same fluency in drawing, we must practice on a regular basis until putting lines down on paper is an automatic reflex, a natural response to what we are seeing or imagining. While speed may come with pushing ourselves to draw faster, speed without discipline is counterproductive. Before drawing can become an intuitive component of our visual thinking, we must first be able to draw slowly, deliberately, and accurately.

A quick mode of drawing is necessary to capture a brief moment in the flow of ideas, which cannot always be directed or controlled. Fluency in drawing therefore requires a freehand technique, with a minimum of tools. Attention paid to the mechanics of drawing with drafting equipment or to the menu and palette structure of digital software can divert time and energy from the visual thinking process. We should therefore draw freehand whenever fluency and flexibility are more important in the design process than precision and accuracy.





Related to fluency is the idea of efficiency. Efficiency in drawing, and the resulting increase in drawing speed, comes with knowing what to draw and what to omit, what is necessary and what is incidental. This knowledge too comes with practice and experience.

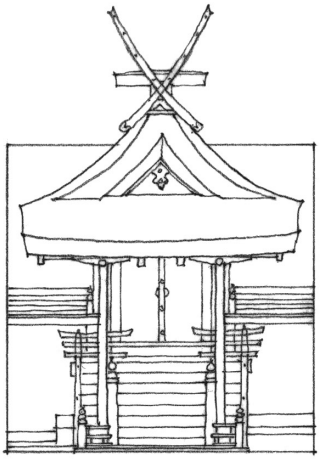


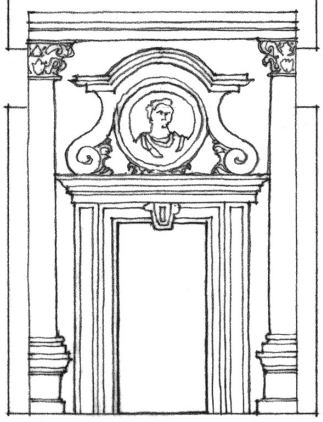
Exercise 9.7

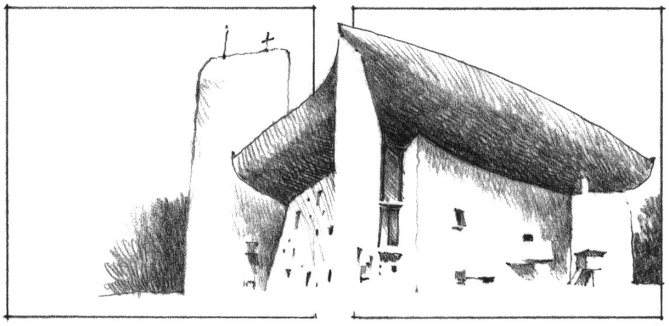
An effective way to develop fluency and promote drawing on a regular basis is to maintain a sketchbook and to draw in it a half-hour to an hour each day. One possibility is to focus each week on a different architectural element, such as windows, doorways, walls, and rooflines. Another is to focus on specific qualities, such as material textures, shadow patterns, or the ways different materials join or meet each other. The most important thing is to draw subject matter that interests you.

Exercise 9.8

With just a few quick pencil strokes, try to capture the essence of these images in the adjacent frames.

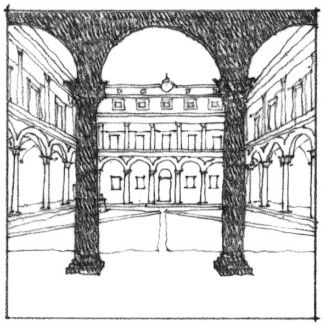


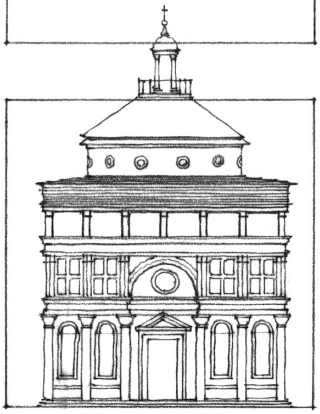


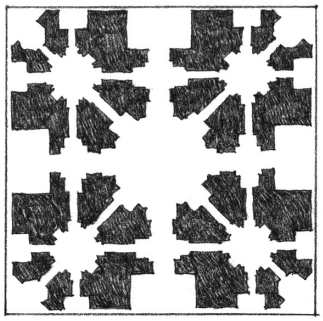


Exercise 9.9

What simple geometric shapes can you find within these images? Use a pen or pencil to outline these basic structures.

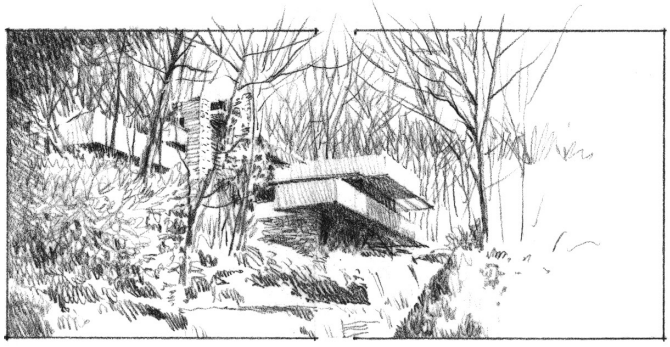


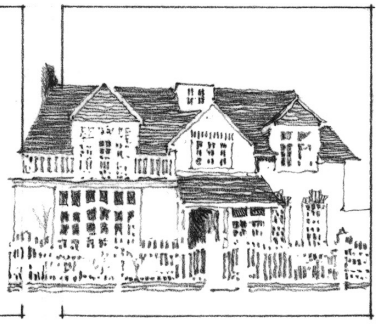




Exercise 9.10

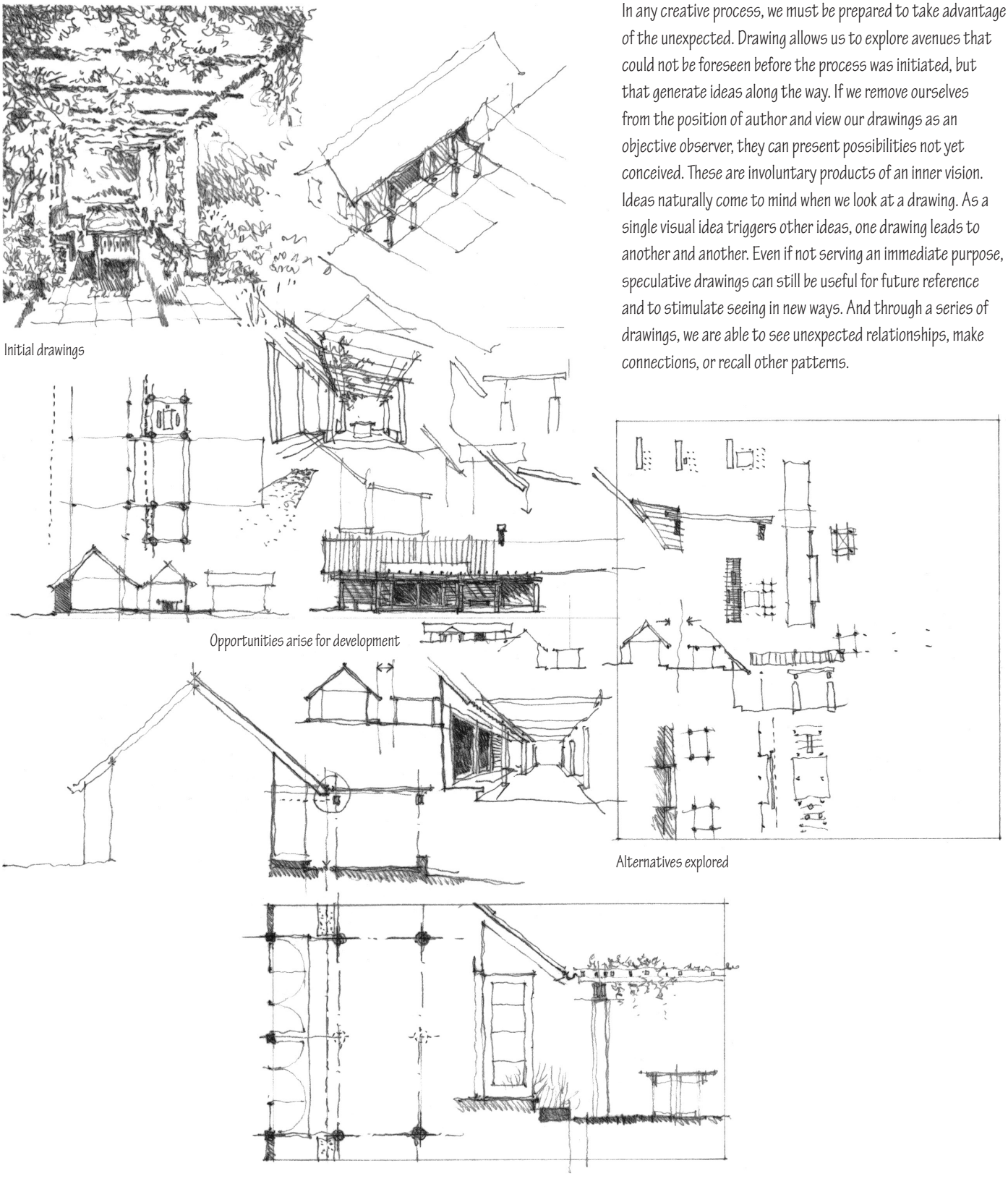
Explore how far you can simplify these images and still have them remain recognizable.





TAKING ADVANTAGE OF CHANCE

In any creative process, we must be prepared to take advantage of the unexpected. Drawing allows us to explore avenues that could not be foreseen before the process was initiated, but that generate ideas along the way. If we remove ourselves from the position of author and view our drawings as an objective observer, they can present possibilities not yet conceived. These are involuntary products of an inner vision. Ideas naturally come to mind when we look at a drawing. As a single visual idea triggers other ideas, one drawing leads to another and another. Even if not serving an immediate purpose, speculative drawings can still be useful for future reference and to stimulate seeing in new ways. And through a series of drawings, we are able to see unexpected relationships, make connections, or recall other patterns.



Initial drawings

Opportunities arise for development

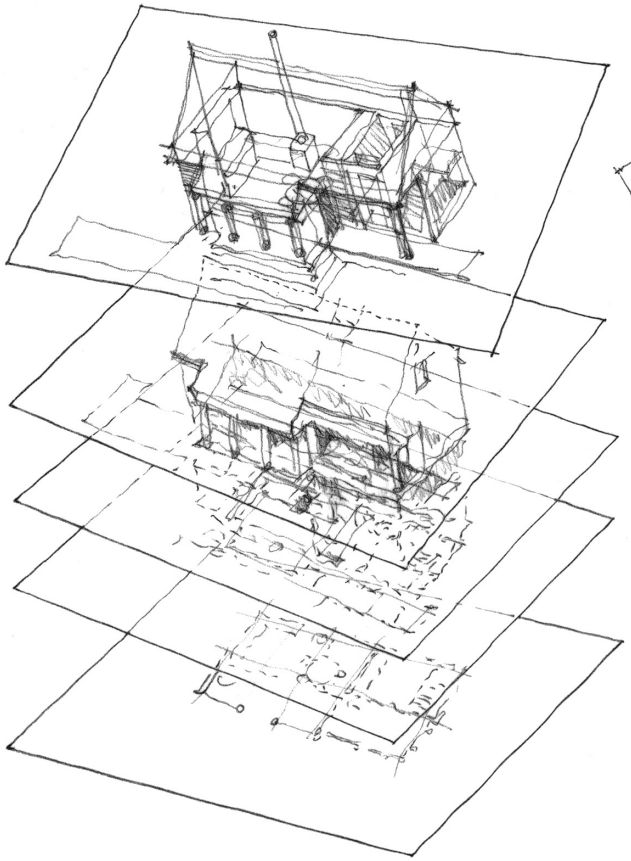
Alternatives explored

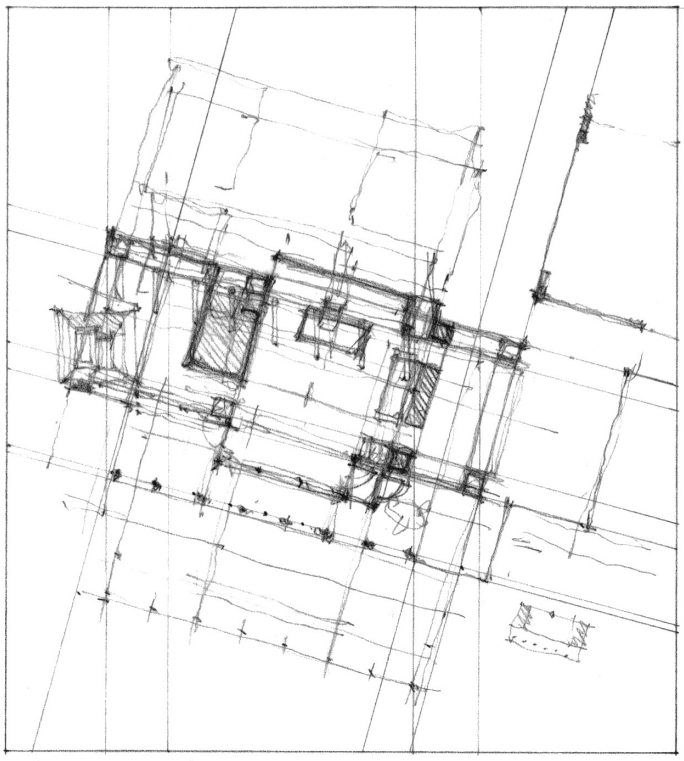
serendipity n. The aptitude for making desirable and unexpected discoveries by accident.

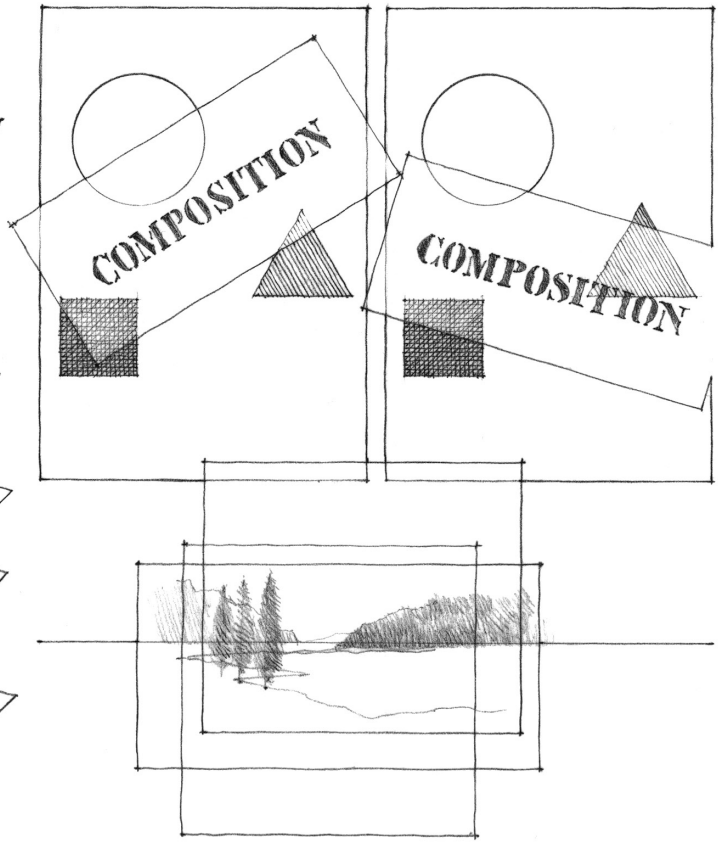
Layering

Layering is a graphic mode for both analysis and synthesis. It allow us to quickly and flexibly see patterns and study relationships. Just as we refine our written thoughts by editing and rewriting drafts, we can build up a drawing in layers on a single sheet of paper. We first draw the foundation or structural lines of the image lightly in an exploratory manner. Then, as we make visual judgments on shape, proportion, and composition, we draw over the emerging image in a number of discrete steps. The process may include both sketchy and detailed work as the mind focuses in on some areas for closer inspection while keeping an eye on the whole.

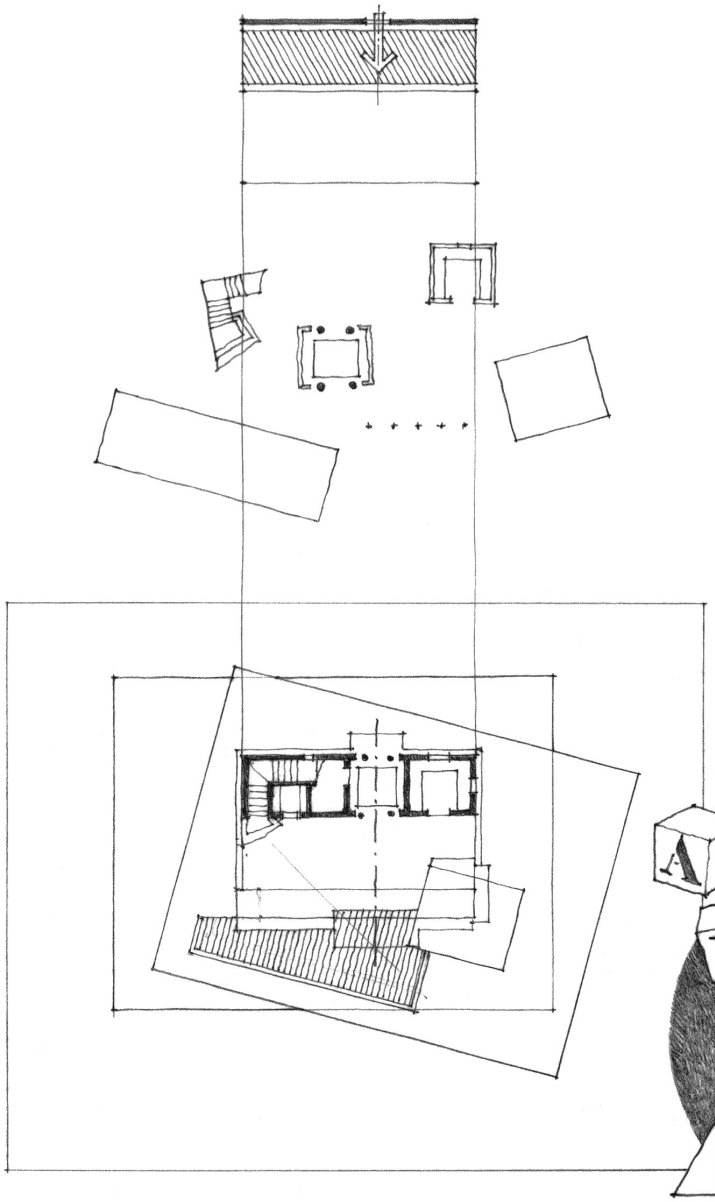
The revision of a drawing can also occur through the physical layering of transparent sheets. Tracing paper allows us to draw over another drawing, retaining certain elements, and refining others. On separate transparent overlays, we can draw patterns of elements, associated forms and groupings, and relevant relationships. Different layers may consist of separate but related processes. We can study certain areas in greater detail and give greater emphasis to certain aspects or features. We can explore alternatives over common ground.







Use tracing paper overlays to try out different formats and compositions.

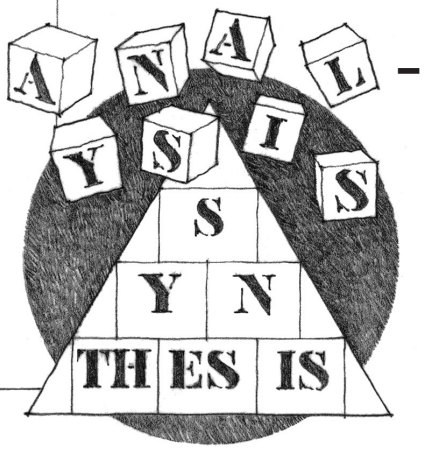


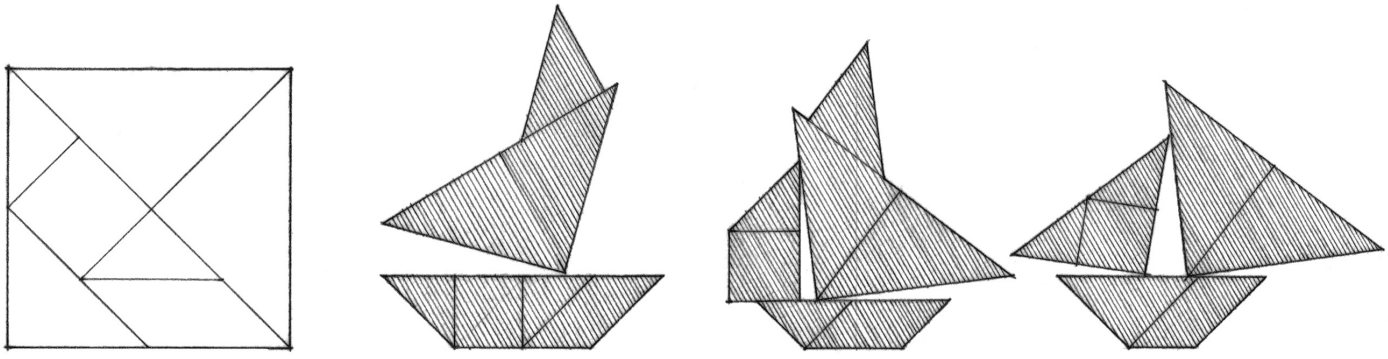
Recombining

Drawing provides the means by which one can see things that are not possible in reality. As we draw, we can vary the arrangement of information. We can free the information from its normal context so that it can come together in a new way. We can fragment, sort, and group according to similarities and differences. We can alter existing relationships and study the effects of new groupings.

When exploring a series of design possibilities, it can be advantageous to remove, relocate, or recombine the elements of a form, space, or composition. This process can be as simple as carving away a part and reattaching it in a different location. It can involve extending one element or form to intersect with another, or superimposing completely different elements or ordering systems over each other.

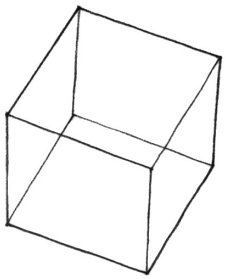
Once recorded on paper, we can spread these alternatives out for comparison, rearrange them, and manipulate them as in a collage. We can evaluate the ideas and develop them further. Or we can discard them, bring others back for reconsideration, or incorporate new ideas into the next stages of progress.





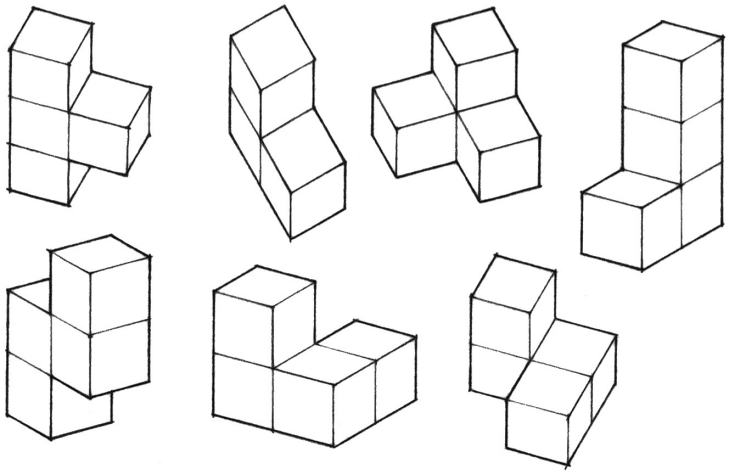
Exercise 9.11

Use a series of drawings to illustrate the following operations. First, slice off or carve out a part of the cube. Then remove the piece from the cube. Finally, reattach the piece to the cube in three different ways: touching at a point, adjoining along an edge, and abutting face to face.



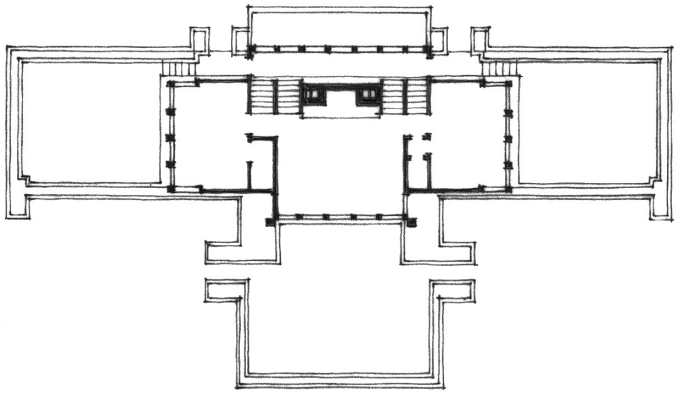
Exercise 9.12

The seven shapes that comprise the Soma cube represent all the ways in which three or four cubes can be arranged other than in straight lines. Use a series of drawings to explore the different ways one could combine these shapes. What is the most compact grouping you can develop? The tallest stable configuration? The interlocking arrangement that encloses the largest volume of space?

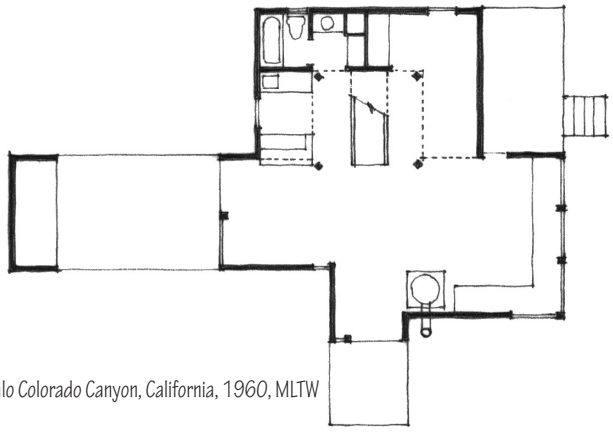


Exercise 9.13

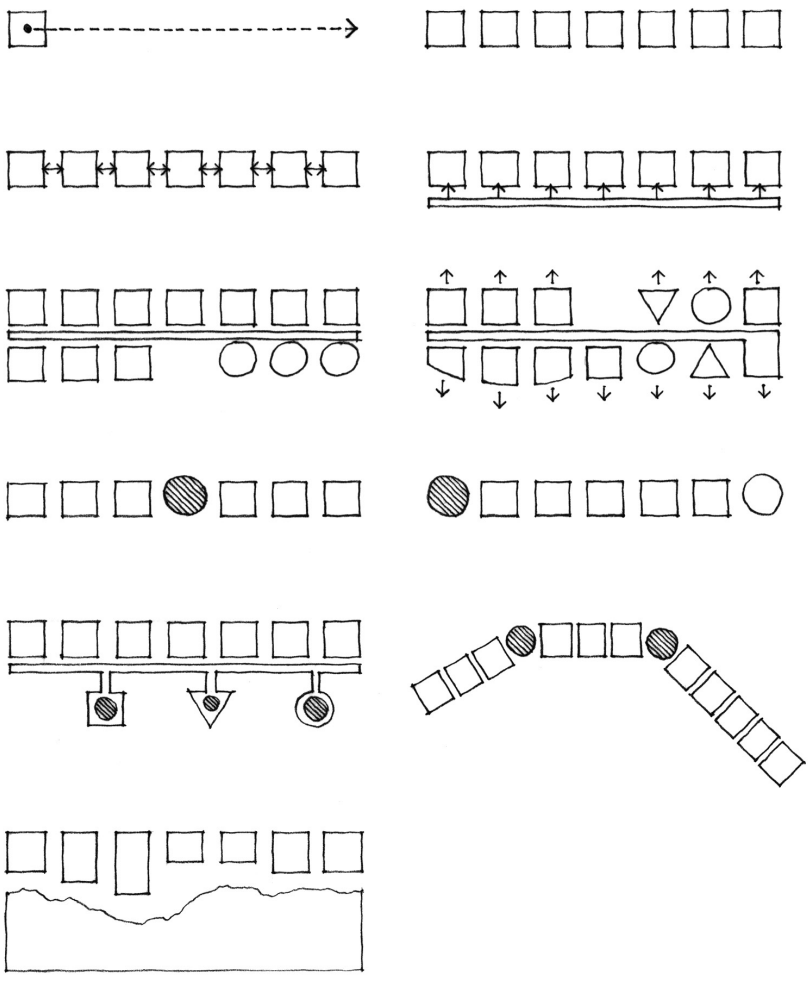
Transfer the plans of the Hardy House and the Jobson House onto separate sheets of tracing paper. Overlay the plans and study the different ways one could reconfigure the plan elements and their relationships. On a third overlay of tracing paper, use drawings to explore how one plan may dominate the composition but incorporate parts of the other, or how an entirely new composition may incorporate parts of both of the original plans. You may repeat this exercise with any other combinations of plans that either contrast sharply or share certain characteristics.



Hardy House, Racine, Wisconsin, 1905, Frank Lloyd Wright



Jobson House, Palo Colorado Canyon, California, 1960, MLTW

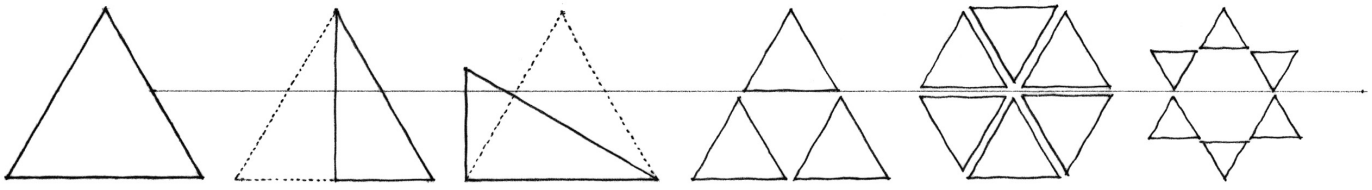


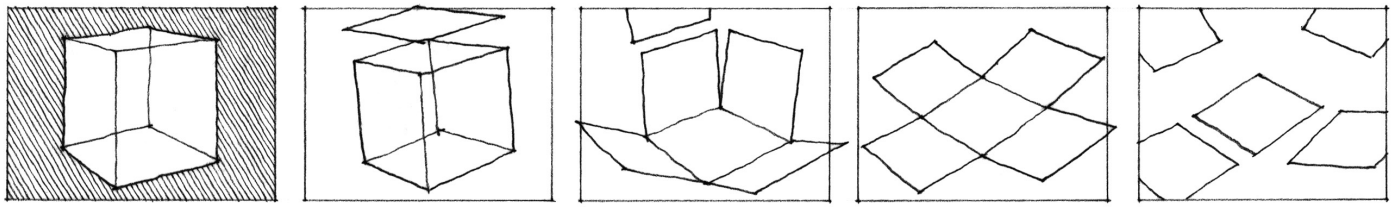
Transforming

Drawing is only a translation of what we are envisioning. As we commit an image to paper, the mind's eye filters out what is interesting or important. The more important points will tend to rise to the surface, while lesser ones will be discarded in the process. As drawings record our thoughts, they then become independent objects for study, elaboration, and the stimulation of new ideas.

Drawing represents ideas in a tangible form so that they can be clarified, assessed, and acted upon. Every drawing undergoes a number of transformations and evolves as we respond to the emerging image. Once drawn, the graphic images have a physical presence that stands apart from the process of their creation. They serve as catalysts that play back into the mind and provoke further study and development of the ideas in our head.

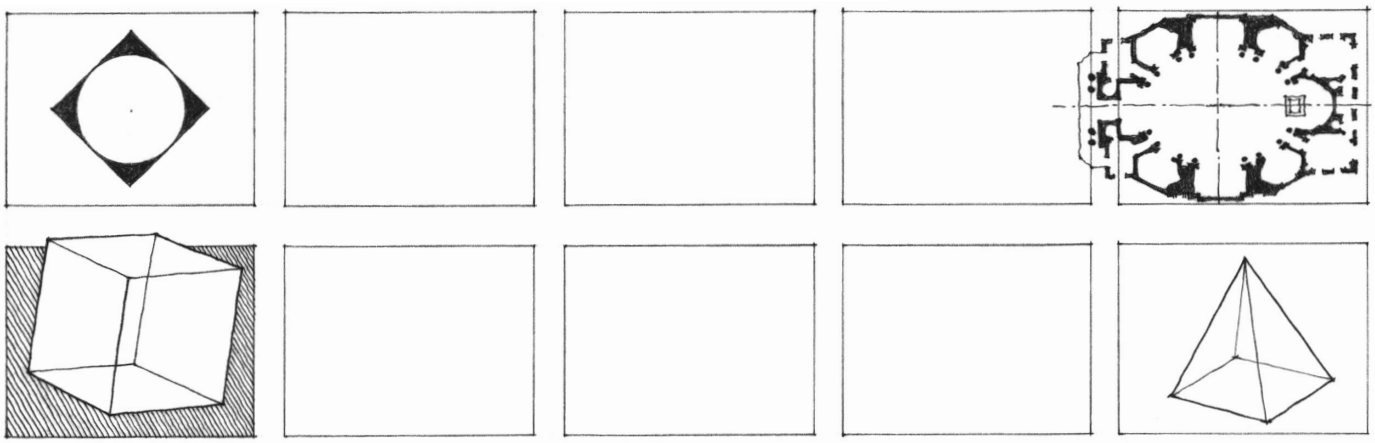
In the process of exploring an idea and pursuing possibilities as they arise, we develop a series of drawings, which we can arrange side by side as alternatives to compare and evaluate. We can combine them in new ways; we can transform them into new ideas. The principle of transformation allows a concept to undergo a series of discrete manipulations and permutations in response to certain directives. To force a shift in our thinking, we can transform the familiar to the strange and the strange to the familiar.





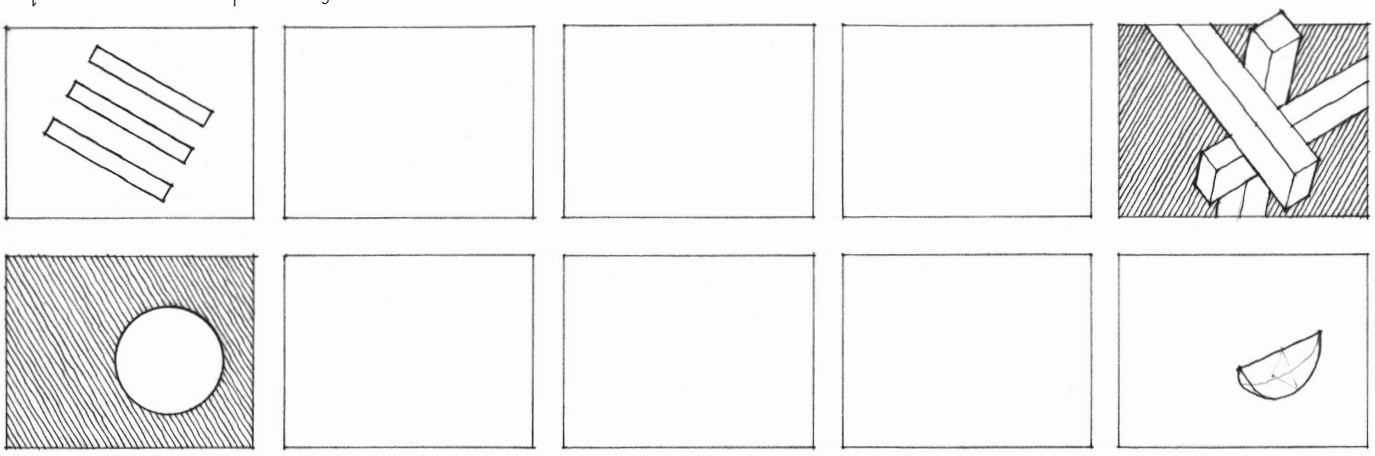
Exercise 9.14

Through a series of drawings, gradually transform the images on the left to the ones on the right.



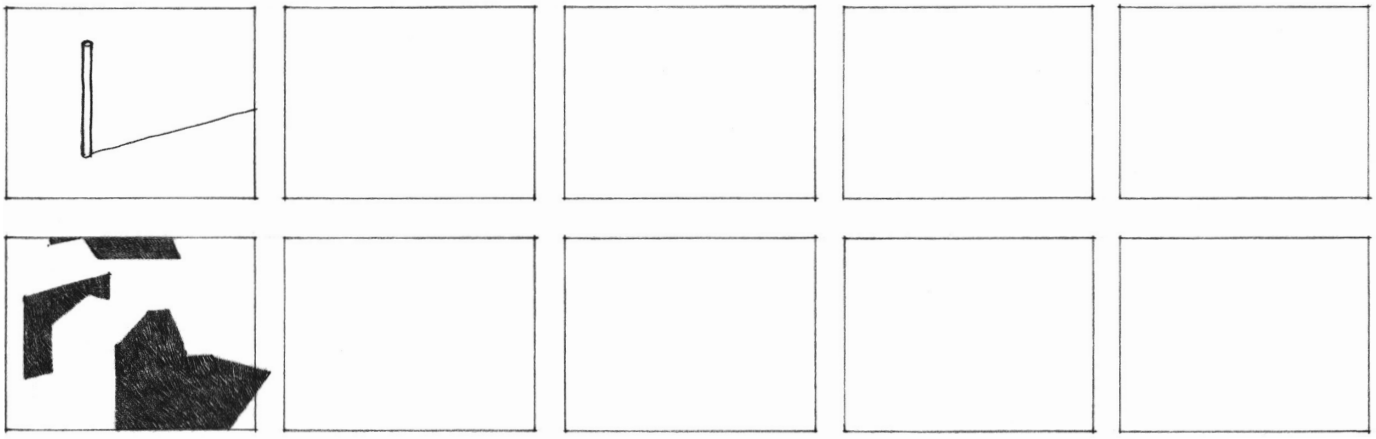
Exercise 9.15

Create the illusion of depth and movement in a drawing sequence that unites each pair of images.

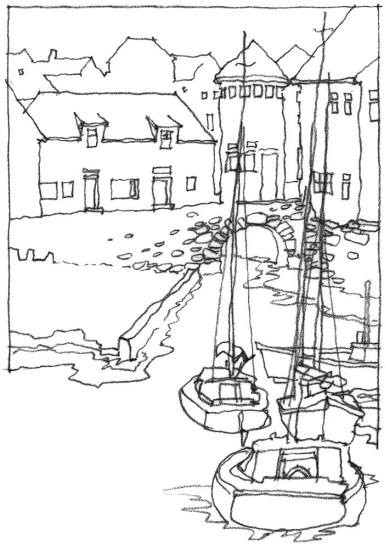


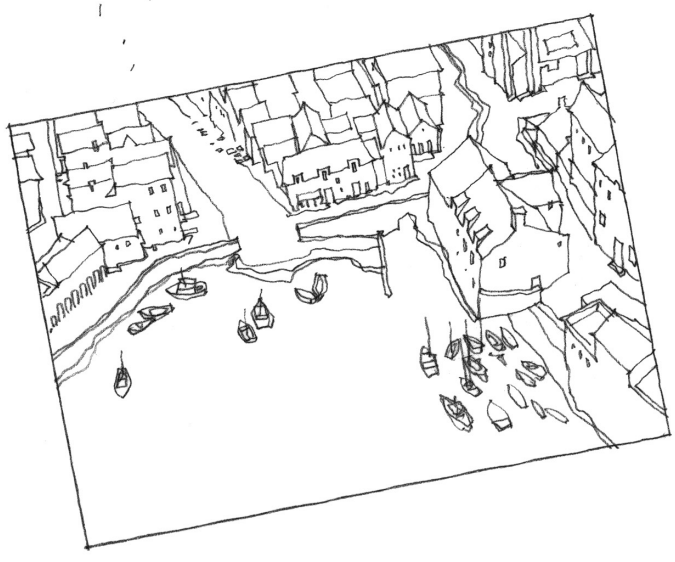
Exercise 9.16

Improvise a sequence of drawings based on the images in the first frame.



BEING FLEXIBLE





To be flexible is to be able to explore a variety of approaches as new possibilities arise. Flexibility is important because how we draw affects the unconscious direction of our thinking and how our visual thoughts are formed and articulated. If we feel comfortable knowing how to draw only one way, we unnecessarily limit our thinking. To be able to look at a problem in different ways requires being able to draw these various views. We must become familiar and fluent with various drawing media, techniques, and conventions, and view them simply as tools to be selected according to their appropriateness to the task at hand.

A flexible approach to drawing is the beginning of a search that often involves trial and error. The willingness to ask "what if . . .?" can lead to alternatives worthy of development. A flexible attitude thus allows us to take advantage of opportunities as they arise in the drawing process. While fluency and flexibility are important in the beginning of any creative endeavor, they must be coupled with reasoned judgment and selectivity. We must be able to generate choices without losing sight of our goal.

Exercise 9.17

First complete the drawing using a pen and the technique shown. Then redraw the scene using a different medium and technique of your choice. How does changing media affect the resulting image?

After Vincent van Gogh's *Café in Arles*

Exercise 9.18

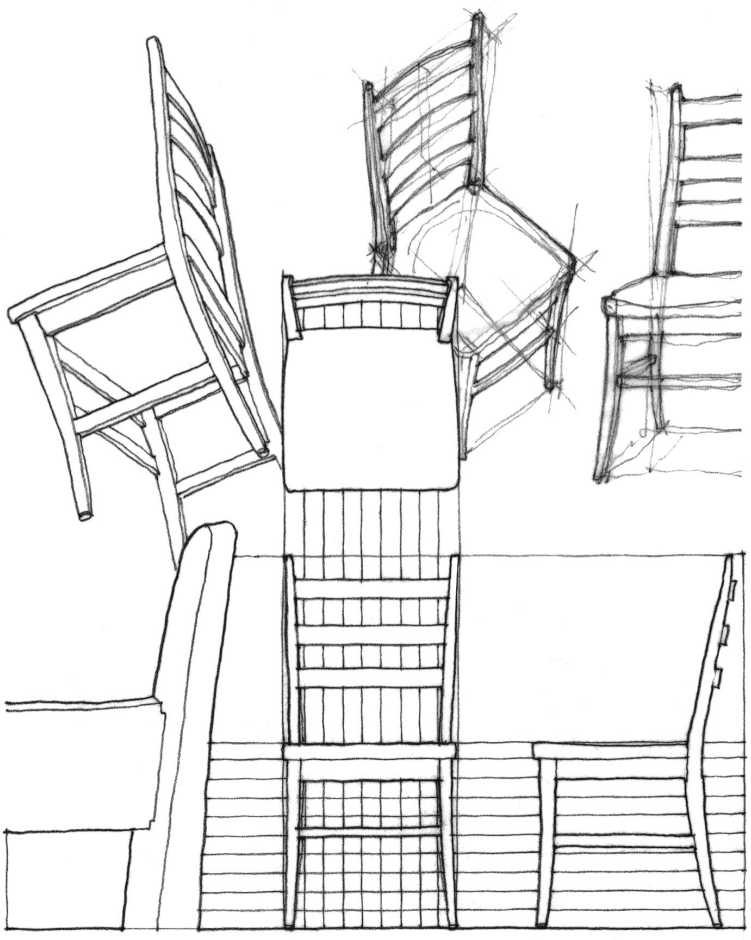
On separate sheets of paper, draw the scene described in the following passage from Fyodor Dostoyevsky's *Crime and Punishment* from two different points of view. Use a soft pencil for the first drawing and a pen for the second.

"The old woman paused, as though hesitating; then stepped on one side, and pointing to the door of the room, she said, letting her visitor pass in front of her:

'Step in, my good sir.'

The little room into which the young man walked, with yellow paper on the walls, geraniums and muslin curtains in the windows, was brightly lighted up at that moment by the setting sun.

'So the sun will shine like this then too!' flashed as it were by chance through Raskolnikov's mind, and with a rapid glance he scanned everything in the room, trying as far as possible to notice and remember its arrangement. But there was nothing special in the room. The furniture, all very old and of yellow wood, consisted of a sofa with a huge bent wooden back, an oval table in front of the sofa, a dressing-table with a looking-glass fixed on it between the windows, chairs along the walls and two or three half-penny prints in yellow frames, representing German damsels with birds in their hands—that was all. In the corner a light was burning before a small ikon. Everything was very clean; the floor and the furniture were brightly polished; everything shone."

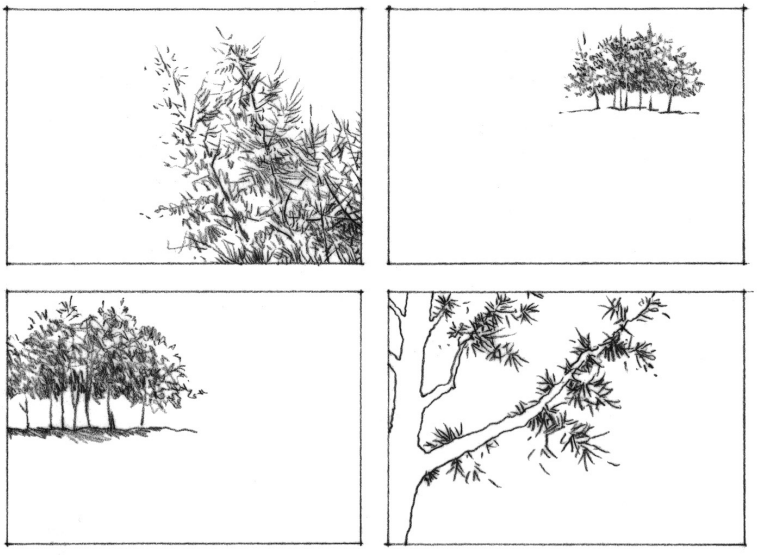


Shifting Viewpoints

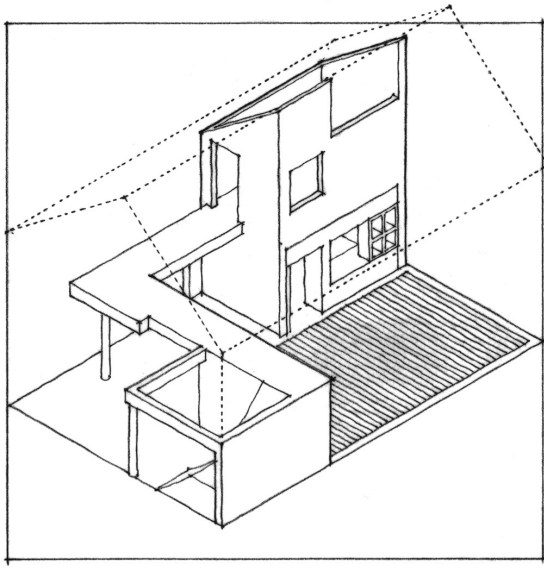
A creative imagination regards old questions from a new angle. Relying on habit and convention can impede the flow of ideas during the design process. If we can see in different ways, we are better able to see hidden opportunities in the unusual, the exceptional, and the paradoxical. To see in new ways requires a keen power of visualization and an understanding of the flexibility drawing offers in presenting new possibilities.

To see with a fresh eye, we can look at a mirror image of what we are drawing. We can turn the drawing upside down or stand back from it to study the visual essence of the image—its basic elements, pattern, and relationships. We can even see it through someone else's eyes. To encourage a shift in view, it is sometimes useful to employ a different medium, paper, technique, or drawing system.

Drawing can stimulate our thinking by offering different points of view. Multiview, paraline, and perspective drawing systems comprise a visual language of design communication. We must be able not only to write in this language but also to read it. This understanding should be thorough enough that we are able to work comfortably back and forth from one drawing system to another. We should be able to transform the flatness of a multiview drawing into a three-dimensional paraline view. Viewing a set of multiview drawings, we should be able to imagine and draw what we would see if we were to stand in a particular position in the plan view.



Vary the point of view.



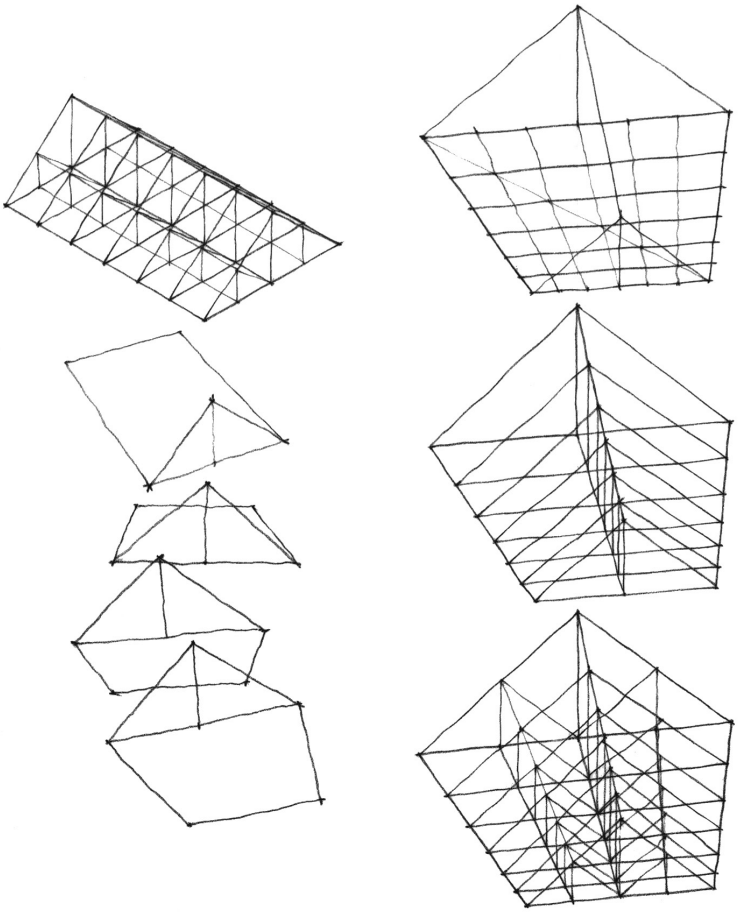
See inside things.

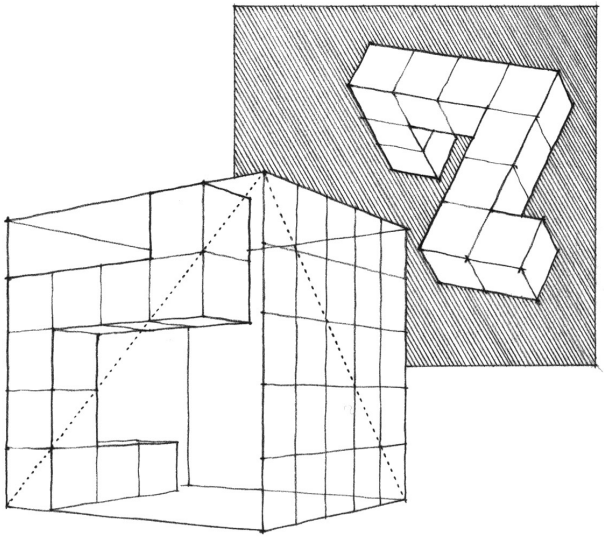
Rotating

Turning an idea over in our mind enables us to see and study it from different points of view. In a similar fashion, if we can imagine how an object rotates in space, or how it might appear as we move around it, we can explore its many facets from all sides. And if we are able to manipulate a design idea on paper as we turn it over in our mind, we can more fully explore the multiple dimensions of a design idea.

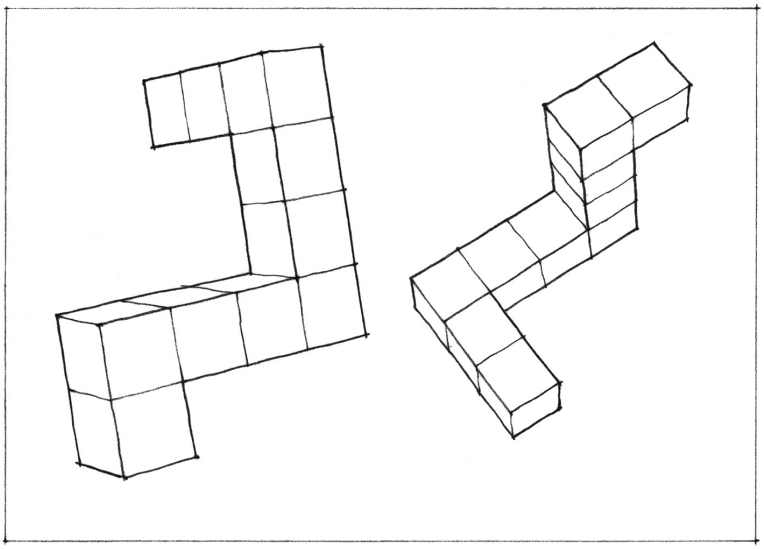
When drawing how something rotates in space, it is much easier to imagine the revolution of a simple geometric element rather than an entire composition of parts. Therefore, we begin by establishing the ordering device that binds the form or composition together—whether it be an axis, a polygonal shape, or a geometric volume—and analyzing the principles that regulate how the parts are related to the whole.

Then we imagine and draw how the ordering device might appear as it rotates and moves to a new position in space. Once we arrive at this new position, we reestablish the parts in proper relation and orientation to the whole. In building up the image, we use regulating lines to form the structure of the object or composition. After checking for accuracy of proportions and relationships, we add thickness, depth, and details to the framework to complete the drawing.

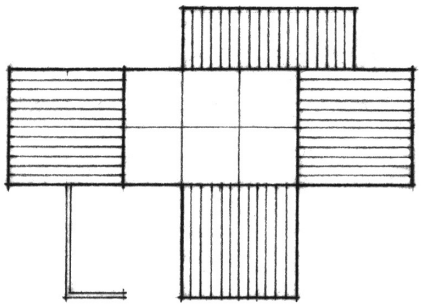


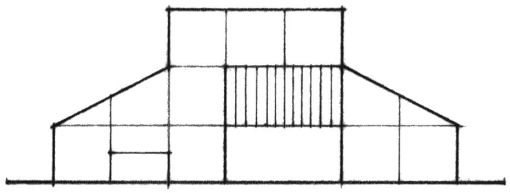


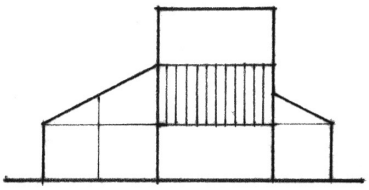
See the whole in the part. . . and the part in the whole.

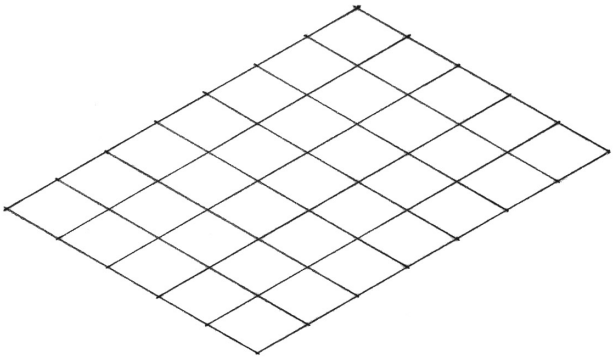


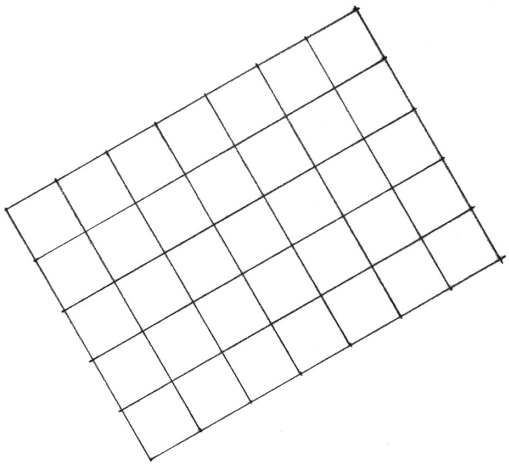
Turn an idea over in the mind.

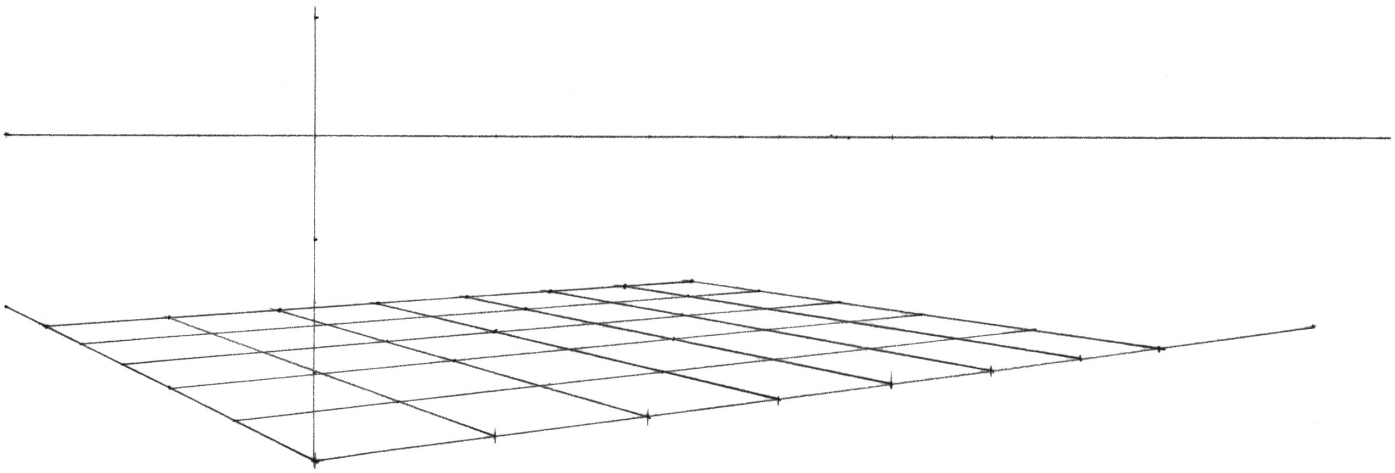










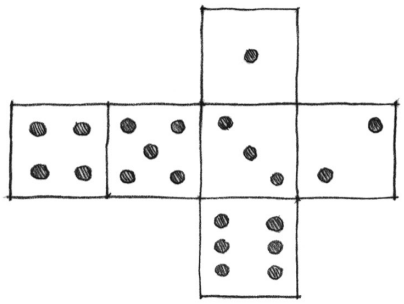


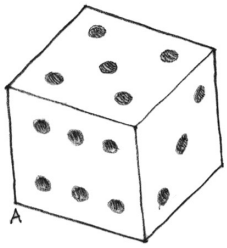
Exercise 9.19

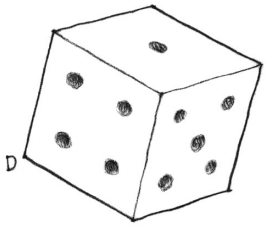
Draw both an isometric and a plan oblique view of the structure described in the multiview drawings. Then draw perspective views of the same structure from opposite vantage points. Compare what each drawing type reveals and conceals about the composition.

Exercise 9.20

Imagine the die is moving freely through space. Draw the die at two intermediate positions B and C as it rotates from A to D.

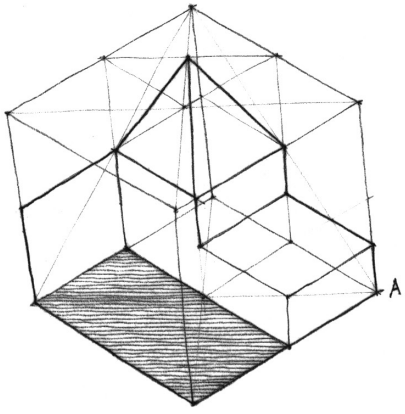


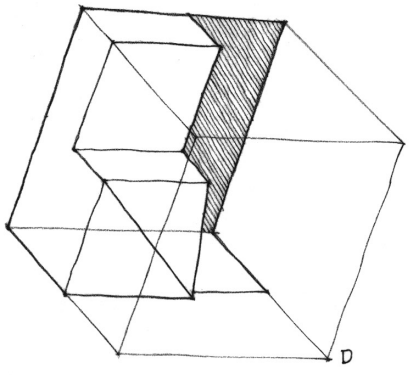


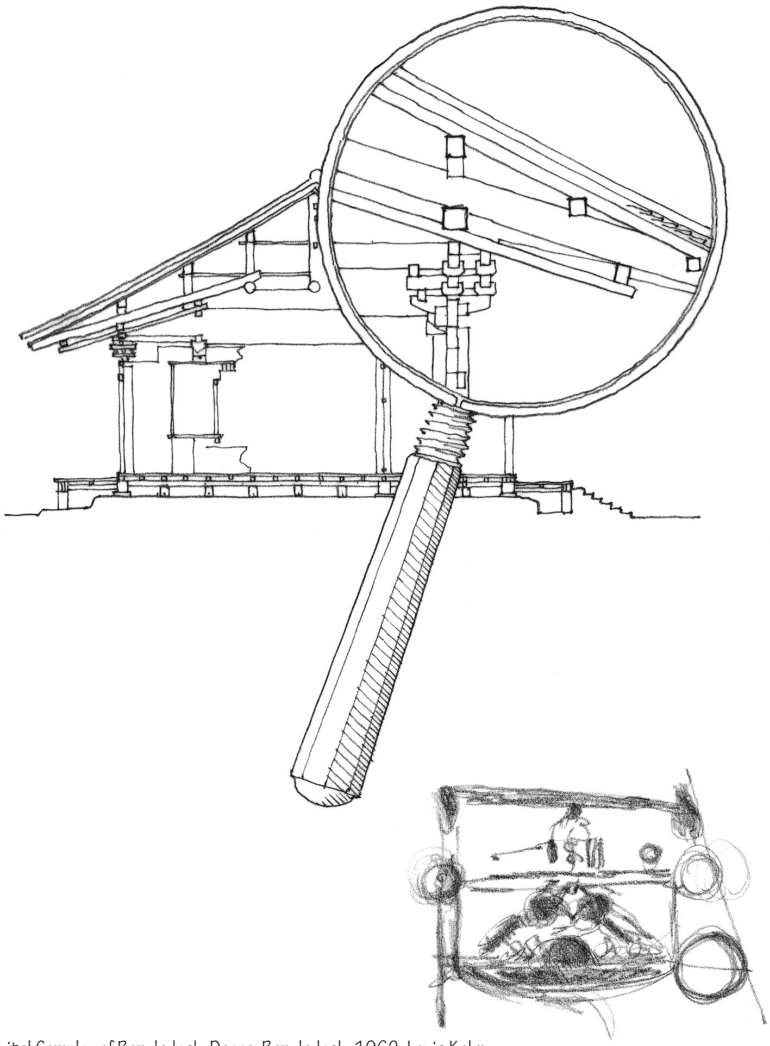


Exercise 9.21

Imagine the composition is moving freely through space. Draw the composition at two intermediate positions B and C as it rotates from A to D.







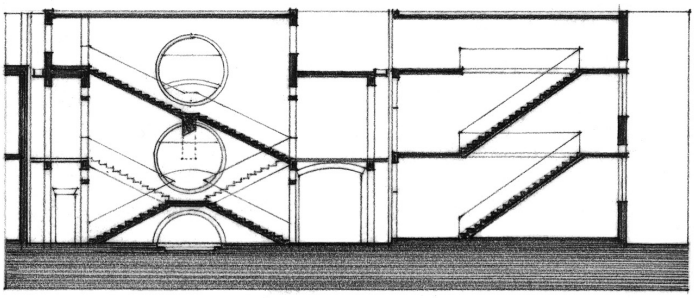
Capital Complex of Bangladesh, Dacca, Bangladesh, 1962, Louis Kahn.
An early plan sketch, section through the stair gallery, and a detail of the composite wall construction.

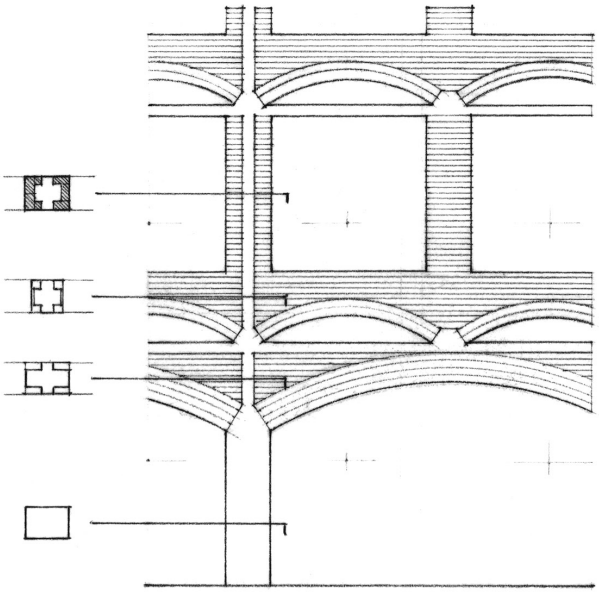
Changing Scale

In working from the general to the particular, from the broad, overriding issues to the detailed resolution of a problem, we parallel the gradual formulation, refinement, and crystallization of a design. The graphic technique progresses in a corresponding manner from diagrammatic sketches executed in broad strokes to more definitive drawings of concrete ideas and solutions executed with more precise instruments.

We stimulate our design thinking by working at various scales and levels of abstraction. The scale of a drawing establishes which aspects or features we can attend to and likewise those we must ignore. For example, the question of material goes unanswered at a small scale partly because we cannot represent material at that scale. At a larger scale, however, this question would arise. Unless the material question is resolved, such a drawing would seem too large for its content. Changing the scale of the drawings we use during the design process allows us to distill an idea down to essentials while expanding the idea to incorporate issues of material and detail.

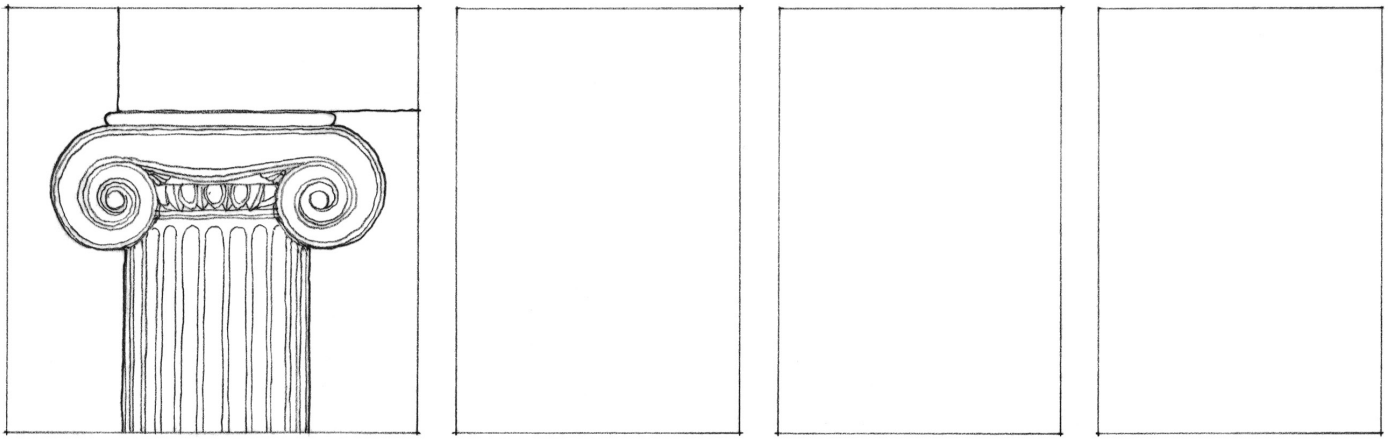
The interdependence of design issues and scale is a question not only of perception but also of craft. Our choice of a drawing medium depends on the scale of a drawing and determines the degree of representation or abstraction we are able to illustrate. For example, drawing with a fine-tipped pen would encourage us to draw small and enable us to attend to detail. Drawing with a broad-tipped marker, on the other hand, would allow us to cover more ground while studying the broader issues of pattern and organization.





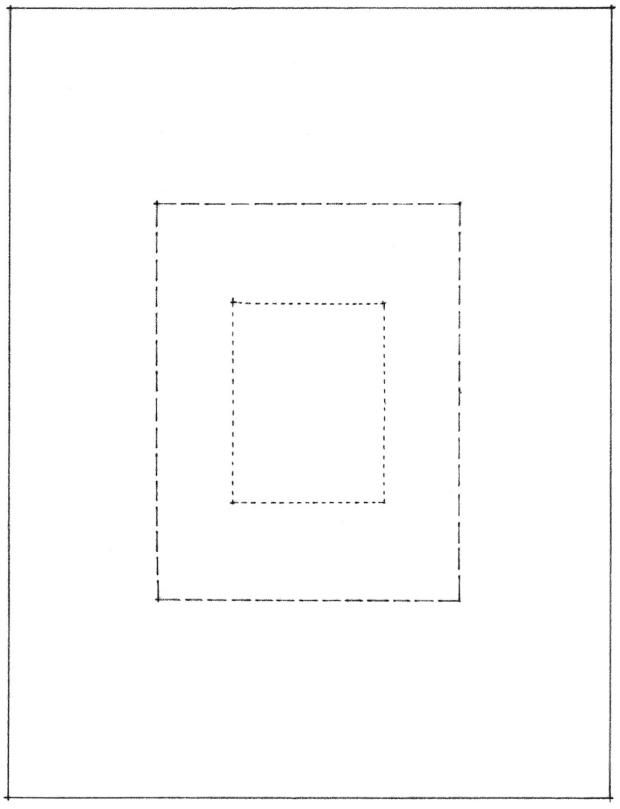
Exercise 9.22

Reduce the scale of the column capital in each succeeding frame by a half. How much detail can you eliminate in each drawing without sacrificing the identity of the capital?



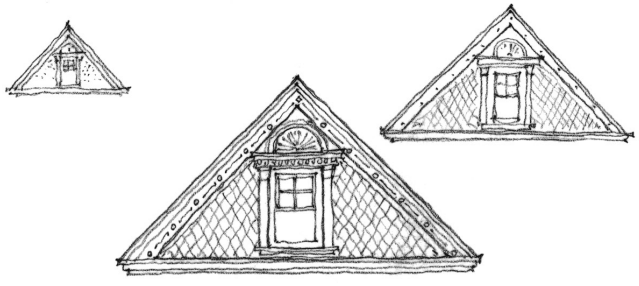
Exercise 9.23

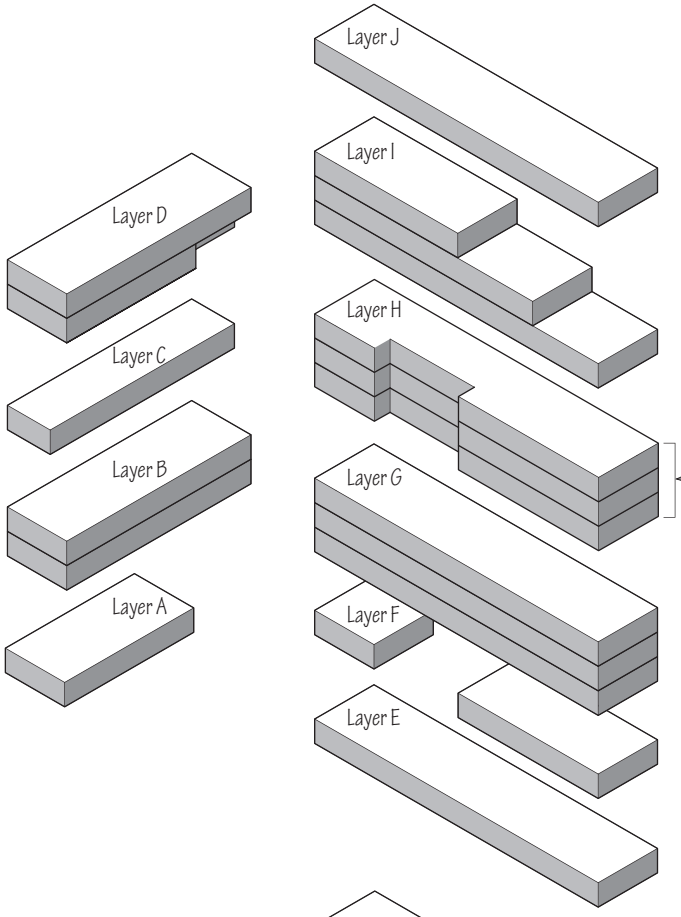
Find and select a building element, such as a window, doorway, or ornamental frieze. Draw the element from a distance of 30 feet, then 15 feet, and finally 5 feet. In each successive view, increase both the scale and the amount of detail.

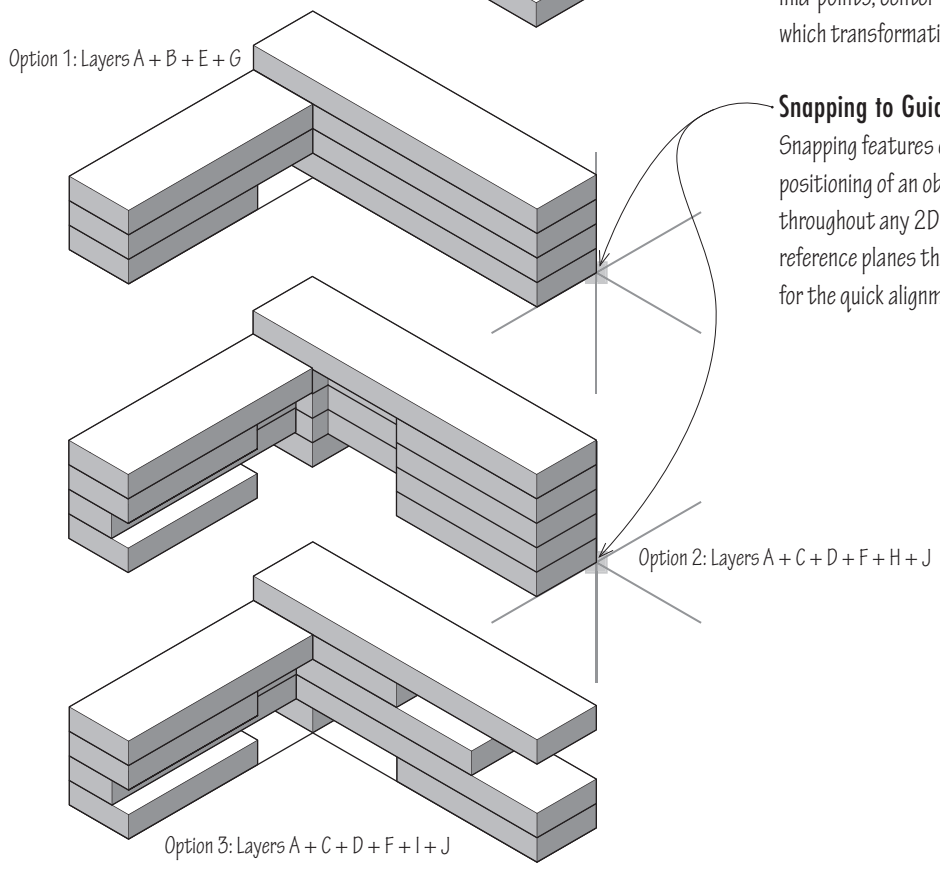


Exercise 9.24

Repeat the above exercise with another building element. This time, reverse the procedure by first drawing the element from 5 feet away, then 15 feet, and finally 30 feet. In each successive view, decrease both the scale and the amount of detail.







Thinking digitally requires the same reliance on intuition and flexibility that characterizes the process of exploring design ideas with hand drawings. Complementary to trusting in intuition and flexibility, one has to develop a level of fluency in the digital workspace that is gained through the practiced use of layers, selection methods, guidelines, and view generation.

Layering

Organizing digital elements in different layers by type, color, or phase enables each layer and all of the elements in it to be quickly hidden or made visible. Similarly, all of the elements in a layer can be selected more easily for global changes in position, scale, color, transparency, fill, and stroke. In addition, multiple schemes can be developed within the same drawing by placing each option in a separate layer, stacking them on top of each other, and strategically controlling the visibility of each layer.

Grouping

Grouping objects allows all elements in the group to be selected simply by clicking on any single element within the group. This provides a quick way to select an entire group at a time for moving, copying, or transformations. Similarly, each object within a group contains multiple points—endpoints, mid-points, center points—that can be selected and around which transformations can occur.

Snapping to Guides

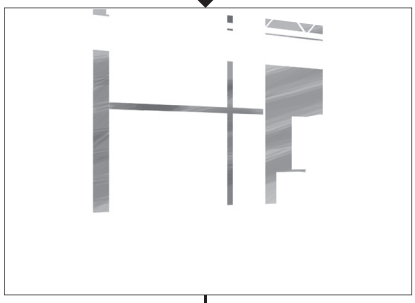
Snapping features can further aid in the precise selection and positioning of an object or group. Guidelines can be created throughout any 2D or 3D digital workspace to provide common reference planes that support the snapping feature and allow for the quick alignment of objects.

Using Multiple Views

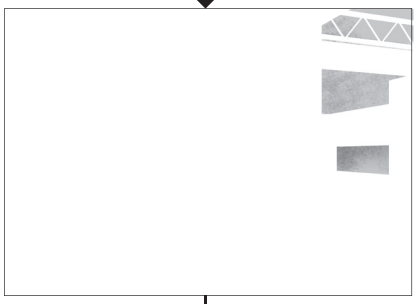
From a single digital model, we can generate multiple section or perspective views, which can be analyzed and refined as part of the design process without having to be used in any final presentation. The value of these views lies in their ability to provoke and answer design questions, thereby promoting a better understanding of a design idea or scheme while also suggesting new directions or avenues for refinement.

We can assign a unique color to each object or element in a digital perspective view, which enables us to more easily select every object with that color. We can then quickly add color, textures, or tonal values to each selected set and then combine the various selections into a composite drawing.

Different colors assigned to objects.

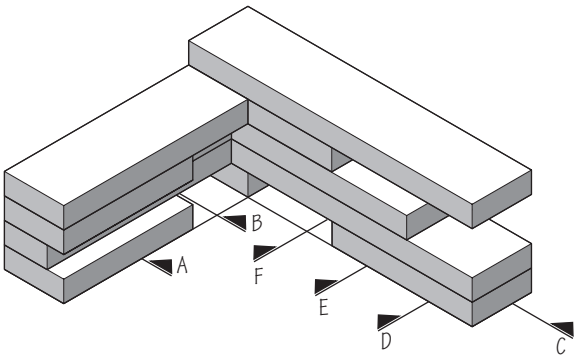


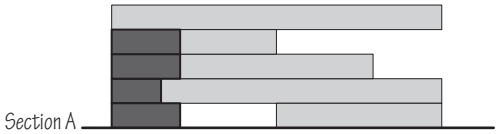
Textures added to back wall selection.

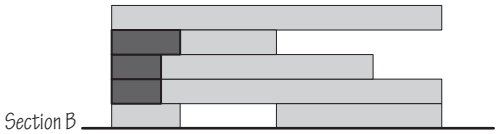


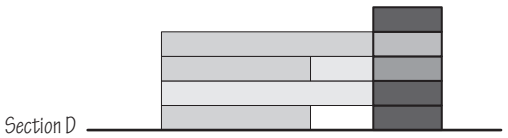
Textures added to side wall selection.

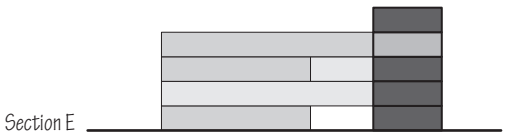
Composite of textures

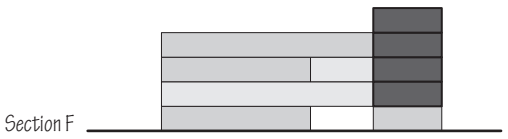


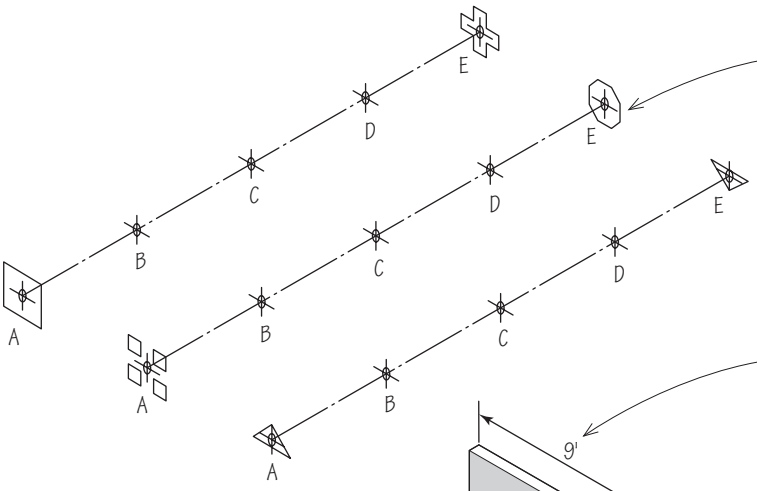












Exercise 9.25

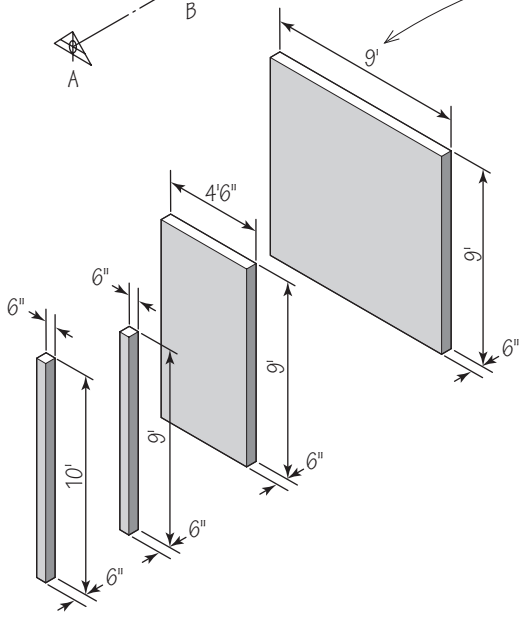
In a 3D modeling program, create a series of digital profiles at points B, C, and D to generate a three-dimensional form that transforms from the profile at point A to the profile at point E. Test these profile strategies by blending or lofting surfaces between them.

Exercise 9.26

Use the kit of parts on the left and develop a tectonic system of linear and planar elements that create a three-dimensional spatial composition. Copy, mirror, array, rotate, and move the linear and planar elements. Consider how the pieces join together, and use your connecting strategy to inform the overall design.

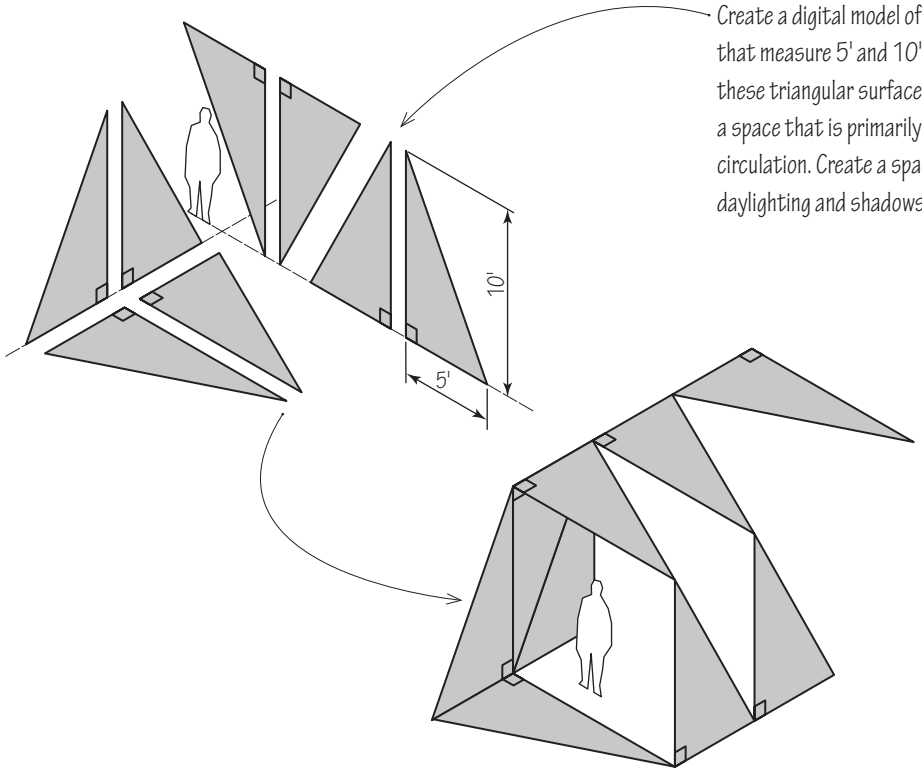
Limit the overall dimensions of your spatial composition to 30' × 30' × 60'. Use digital viewing methods to rotate and move through this composition during the design process. Use different layers to facilitate changes to your design.

Cut multiple sections through your spatial composition and póche the section cuts to understand the spatial qualities created. (Project developed by Máire O'Neill Conrad)



Exercise 9.27

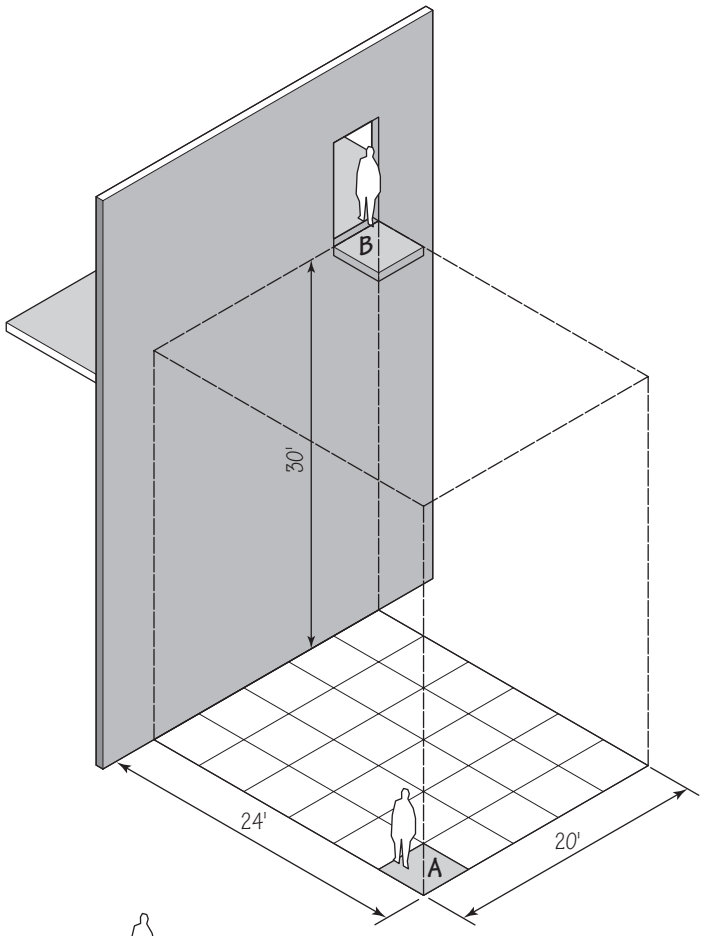
Create a digital model of a 30°-60°-90° triangle with sides that measure 5' and 10'. Copy, mirror, array, rotate, and move these triangular surfaces to create volumes of space. Create a space that is primarily horizontal and might be used for circulation. Create a space that is primarily vertical. How would daylighting and shadows be manipulated in each scenario?



Exercise 9.28

Design a stair that extends from point A to point B using an additive modeling process. Model the stairs with 12" treads, 6" risers, and a minimum width of 4'. Provide landings at changes in directions that become places of rest and outlook. All stair elements should be placed within a 20' × 24' base.

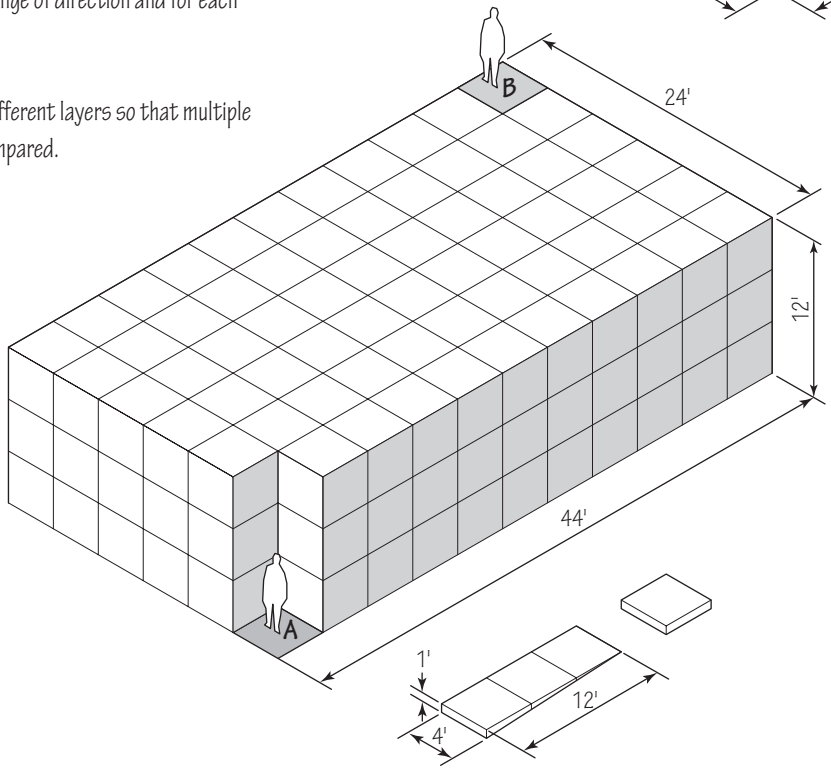
Use digital viewing methods to rotate and move through this series of stairs during the design process. Use different layers to facilitate changes to your design. Cut multiple sections through your spatial composition and poché the section cuts to understand the spatial qualities created. Place a scale figure in these drawings to verify necessary height clearances.

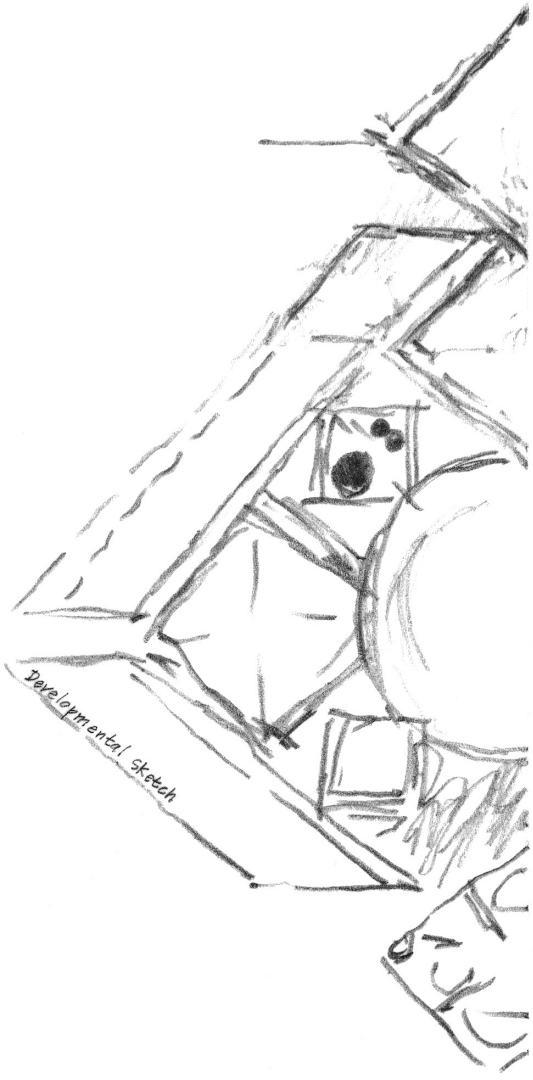


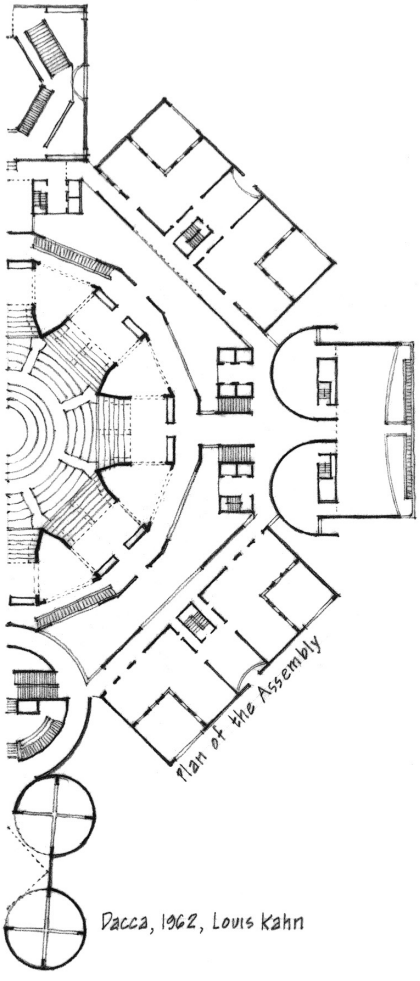
Exercise 9.29

Design a series of ramps that extend from point A to point B using a subtractive modeling process. Using Boolean difference and trim features, carve away from the existing solid with 4' wide ramp components that descend or rise 1' for every 12' of run. Provide landings at each change of direction and for each 30" change in elevation.

Copy the original solid form to different layers so that multiple schemes can be explored and compared.







Capital Complex of Bangladesh Dacca, 1962, Louis Kahn

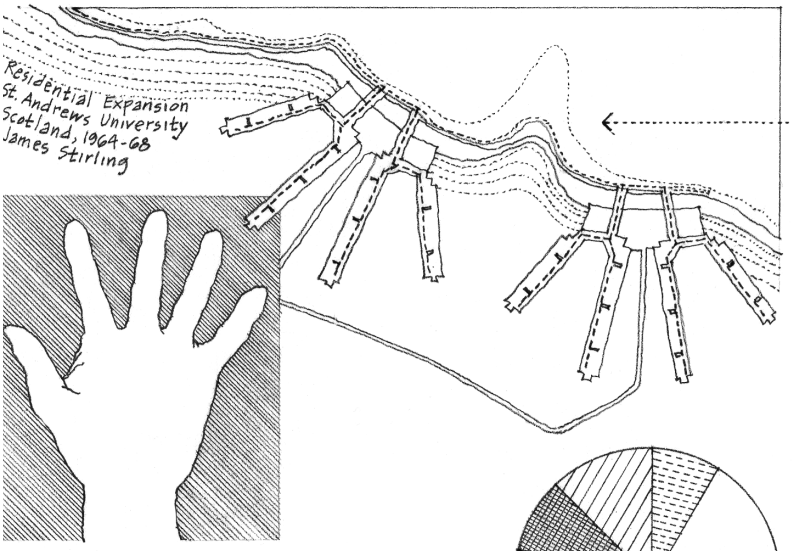
10
Diagramming

No drawing is ever the thing it endeavors to represent. All drawings are to some degree abstractions of a perceived reality or an imaginary conception. In design drawing, we operate at varying levels of abstraction. At one end of the spectrum lies the presentation drawing, which attempts to simulate as closely as possible the future reality of a design proposal. At the other end is the diagram, which has the ability to describe something without representing it in a pictorial way.

A diagram is any drawing that explains or clarifies the parts, arrangement, or operation of something. The hallmark of a diagram is its ability to simplify a complex notion into essential elements and relationships by a process of elimination and reduction. Professionals in many different fields use diagrams to expedite their thinking. Mathematicians, physicists, and even musicians and dancers use their own abstract languages of symbols and notations to deal with the complexities of their endeavors. Designers, too, use diagrams to stimulate and clarify their visual thinking.

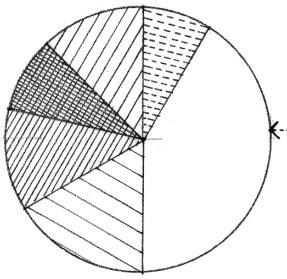
While every design process must eventually converge on a solution to a problem, the beginning phases should be characterized by divergent thinking about possibilities. Design involves making choices; without alternatives, there is no choice to be made. By focusing on the general rather than the particular, diagrams discourage closing on a solution too quickly and encourage the exploration of possible alternatives. The activity of diagramming, therefore, provides a convenient way to think about how to proceed in generating a series of viable alternatives to a given design problem. Their abstract nature enables us to analyze and understand the essential nature of program elements, to consider their possible relationships, and to seek ways in which these parts can be organized to make a unified whole.

TYPES OF DIAGRAMS

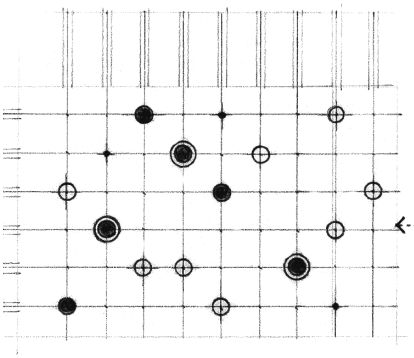


Designers use a number of diagram types throughout the design process to initiate, clarify, and assess an idea.

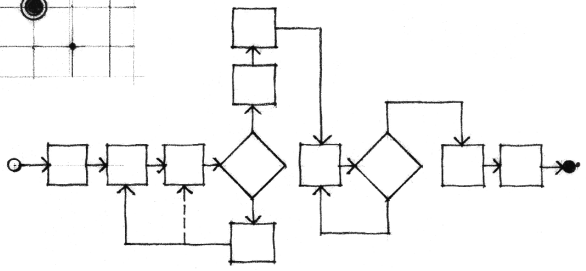
Graphic metaphors depict visual analogies in the idea-generating phase of the design process, suggesting solutions without preconceiving a final form.



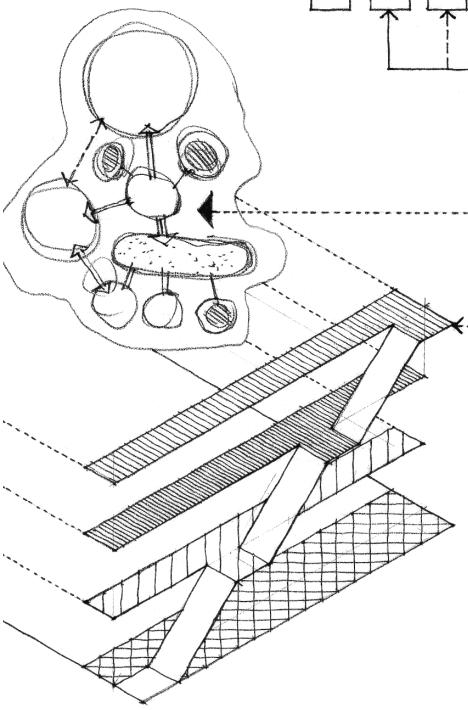
Area diagrams communicate information about the size, degree, or magnitude of elements. Common types of area diagrams include bar graphs, pie charts, and intensity maps.



Matrix diagrams use a coordinate system to quantify and correlate adjacencies and degrees of importance between elements, especially in the program-analysis phase of design.



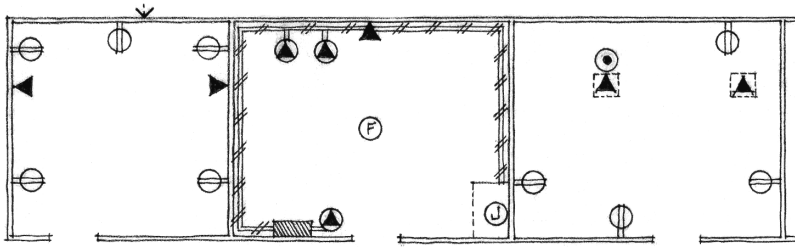
Network diagrams describe the successive steps in a process, procedure, or operating system. Specific types of network diagrams often associated with the critical path method are flow charts and tree diagrams in which the selection of each branch requires that a logical decision be made.



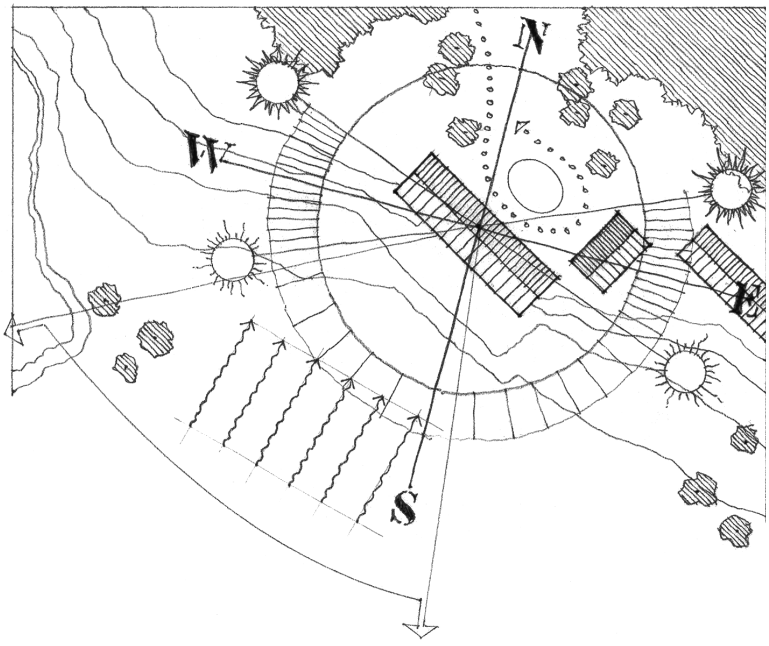
Bubble diagrams illustrate the relative sizes and desirable proximities of functional zones and activities, which can point to possible geometric patterns of a design solution.

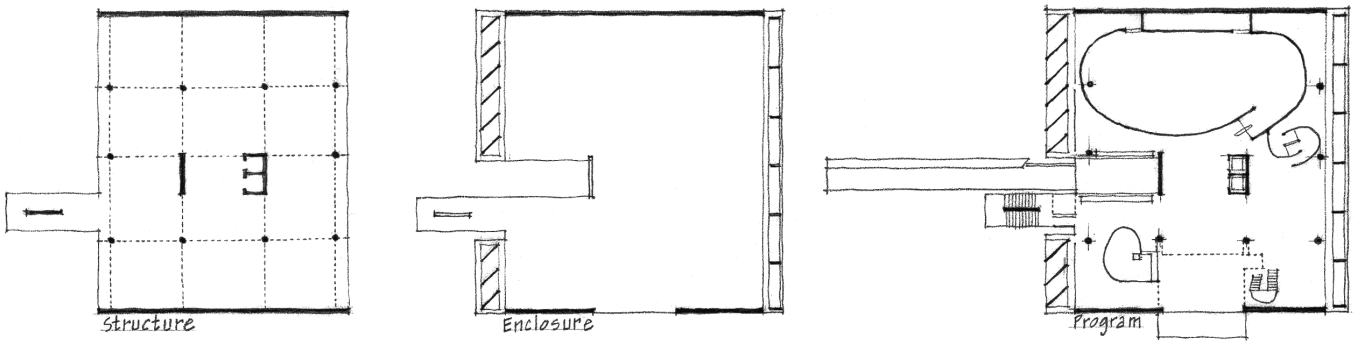
Circulation diagrams are flow diagrams that describe the nodes and patterns of movement of people, vehicles, and services.

Schematics are diagrams that illustrate the layout and coordination of electrical and mechanical components and systems.



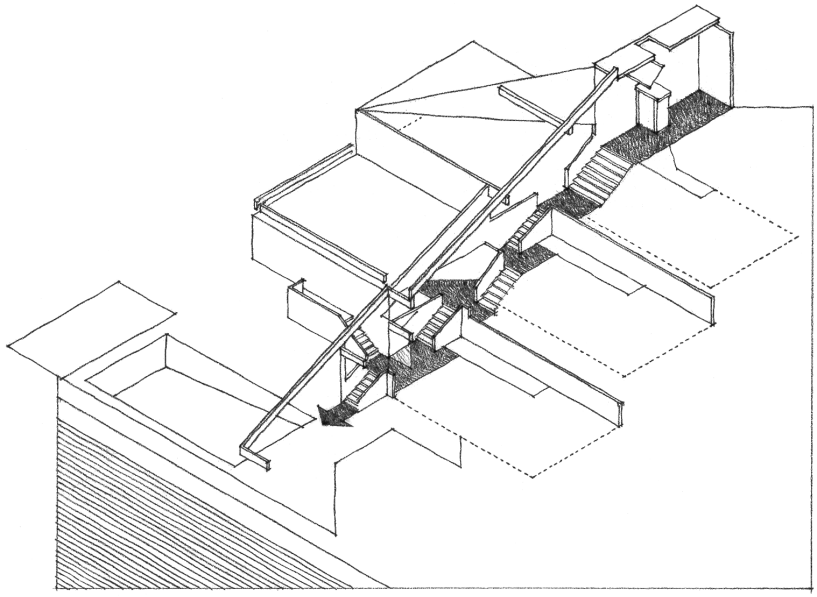
Analytical diagrams examine and explain the arrangement and relations of the parts of a whole. We use a variety of analytical diagrams in design. Site analyses explore how the siting and orientation of a design respond to environmental and contextual forces. Program analyses investigate how a design organization addresses programmatic requirements. Formal analyses examine the correspondence between structural pattern, spatial volumes, and elements of enclosure.



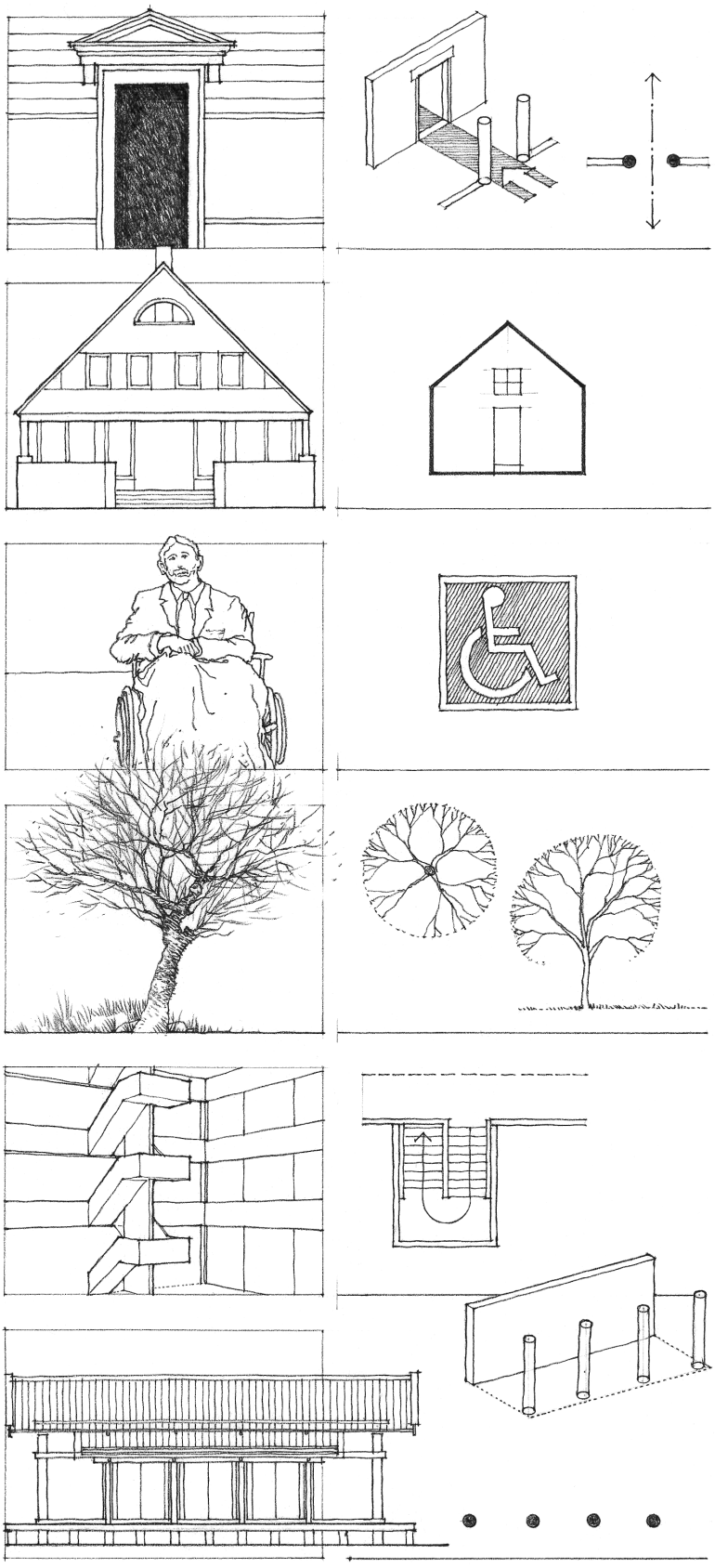


Millowners' Association, Ahmedabad, India, 1954, Le Corbusier

We can use any of the drawing systems to define the viewpoint of a diagram. When a diagram isolates a single issue or set of relationships for study, a two-dimensional format is usually sufficient. However, when we begin to explore the complex spatial and relational attributes of a design, a three-dimensional drawing system becomes necessary. Particularly effective vehicles for studying the volumetric massing and spatial dimensions of a design are cutaway, expanded, and phantom views.



Bookstaver House, Westminster, Vermont, 1972, Peter L. Gluck



Specific instances

Representational symbols

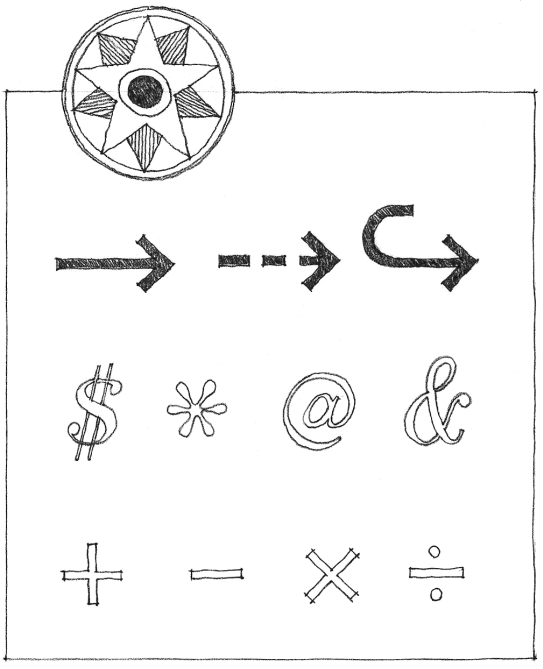
The efficiency of using diagrams to study, analyze, and make design decisions results from their use of signs and symbols. These abstract figures represent more complex entities, actions, or ideas in a form more suitable for editing, manipulation, and transformation than representational images. Their use allows us to respond to the swift and speculative nature of thought during the design process.

Symbol

A symbol is a graphic figure that stands for something else by association, resemblance, or convention, deriving its meaning chiefly from the structure in which it occurs. Representational symbols are simplified pictures of what they represent. To be useful and meaningful to a broad audience, they must be generalized and embody the structural features of what they refer to. Highly abstract shapes, on the other hand, can be very broad in application but usually need a context or caption to explain their meaning. When symbols become more abstract and lose any visual connection to what they refer, they become signs.

Sign

A sign is a graphic symbol, figure, or mark having a conventional meaning and used as an abbreviation for the word, phrase, or operation it represents. Signs do not reflect any of the visual characteristics of its referent. They can be understood only by convention or common agreement.

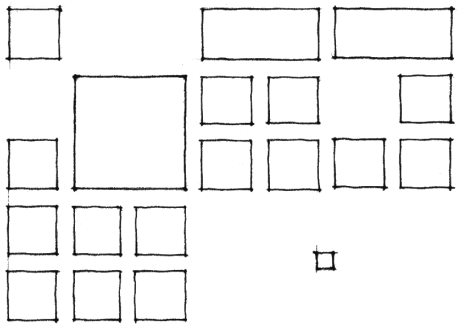


Examples of signs

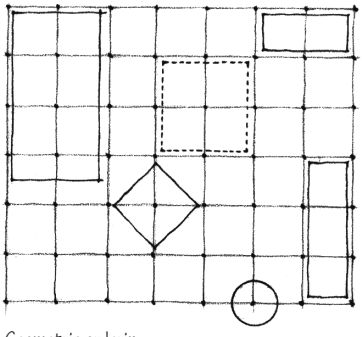
Symbols and signs are not as suitable as words in expressing subtle degrees of difference or slight nuances of meaning, but nevertheless they efficiently communicate the identity of elements and the nature of actions or processes. Such visual abstractions can often communicate more swiftly than what is possible through words alone. Even so, we often use explanatory text to clarify the symbols of a diagram, even if only in the abbreviated form of a key or legend.

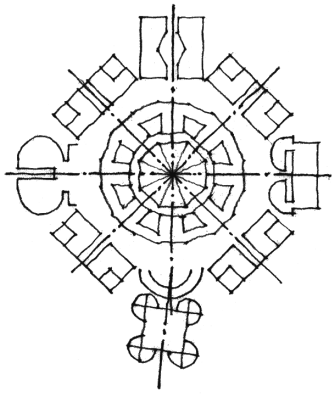
We can modify the graphic display and meaning of symbols and signs by altering the following characteristics:

- The relative size of each symbol or sign can describe quantifiable aspects of each element as well as establish a hierarchical ranking among the elements.
- A grid or other geometric ordering device can regulate the positioning and layout of entities or subjects within the field of the diagram.
- Relative proximities indicate the intensity of relationship among entities. Elements in close proximity to each other convey a stronger relationship than more distant ones.
- Similarities and contrasts of shape, size, or tonal value establish categories among selected objects or ideas. Reducing the number of elements and variables helps maintain an appropriate and manageable level of abstraction.

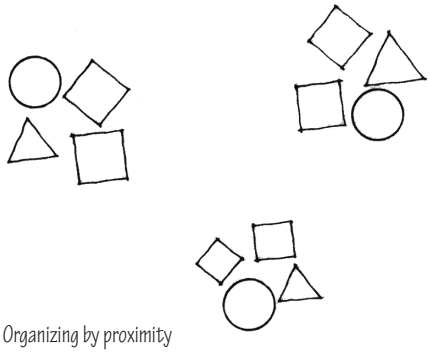


Hierarchy by size

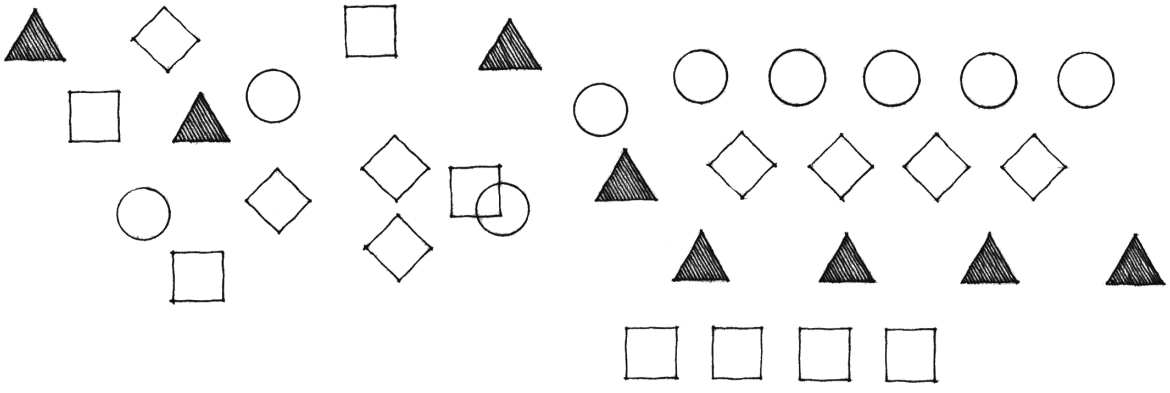




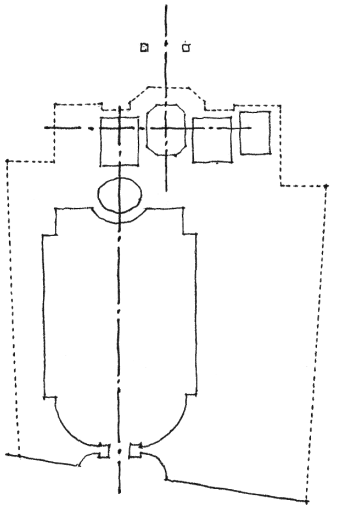
Geometric ordering



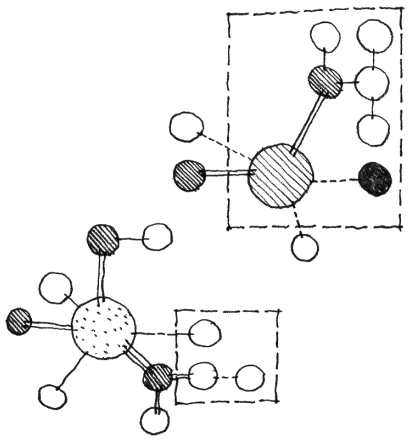
Organizing by proximity



Categorizing by similarity and contrast



• Axial lines of symmetry



• Lines defining boundaries of fields • Relational lines

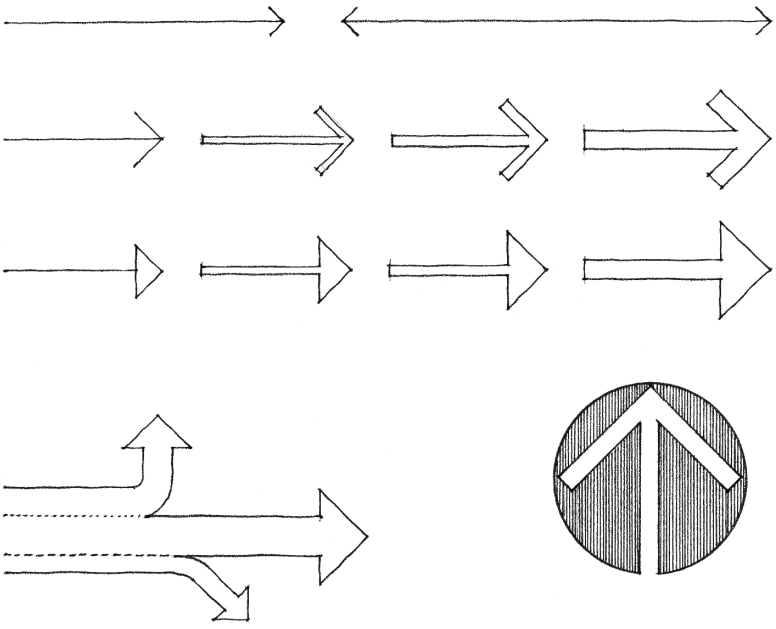
To make the relationships among the elements of a diagram more visible, we use the grouping principles of proximity, continuity, and similarity. To further clarify and emphasize specific types of linkages or the nature of interactions among the entities, we can employ a variety of lines and arrows. And by varying the width, length, continuity, and tonal value of these linking elements, we can also describe varying degrees, levels, and intensities of connection.

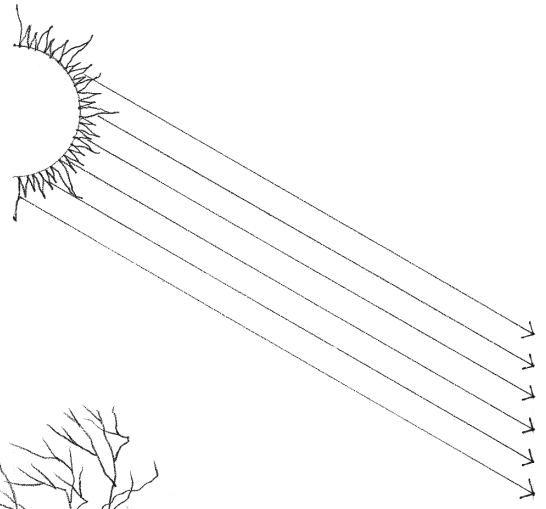
Lines

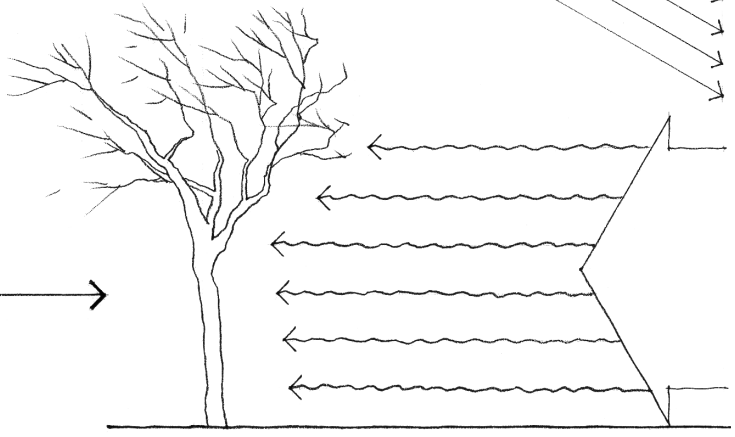
We use the organizing power of lines in diagramming to define the boundaries of fields, denote the interdependencies of elements, and structure formal and spatial relationships. In clarifying the organizational and relational aspects of a diagram, lines make both abstract and pictorial concepts visible and understandable.

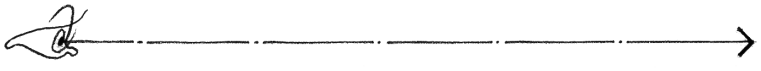
Arrows

Arrows are a special type of connecting line. The wedge-shaped ends can signify one- or two-way movement from one element to another, indicate the direction of a force or action, or denote the phase of a process. For clarity, we use different types of arrows to distinguish between the types of relationships as well as varying degrees of intensity or importance.



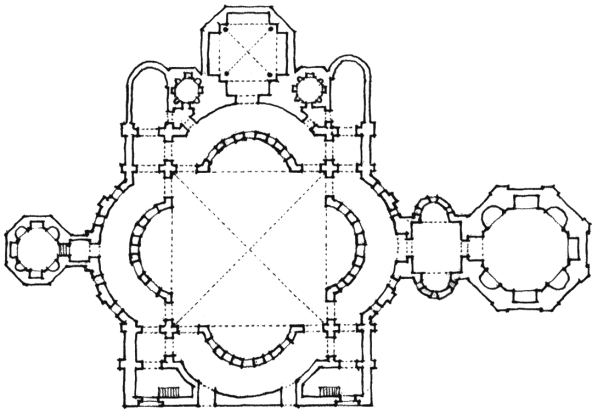




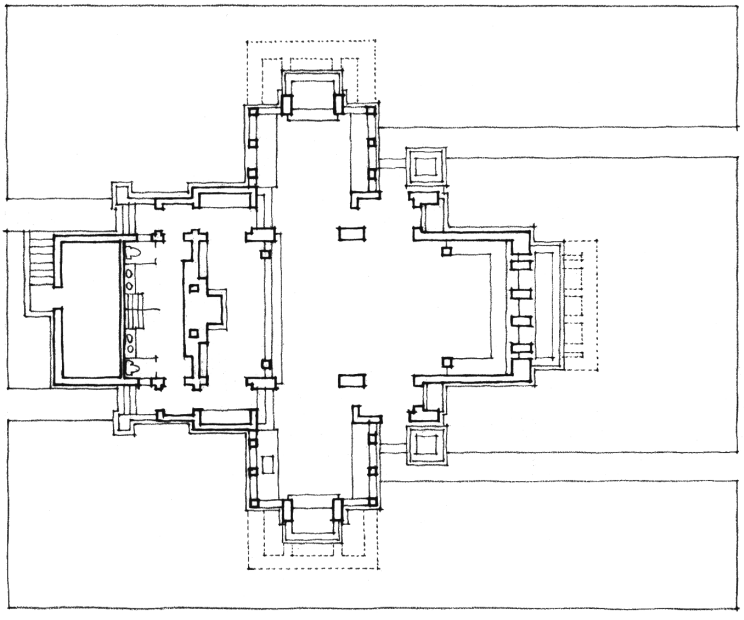


Exercise 10.1

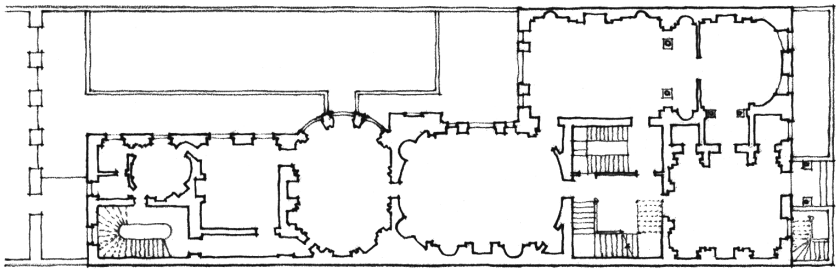
Diagram the spatial composition of the building designs below.



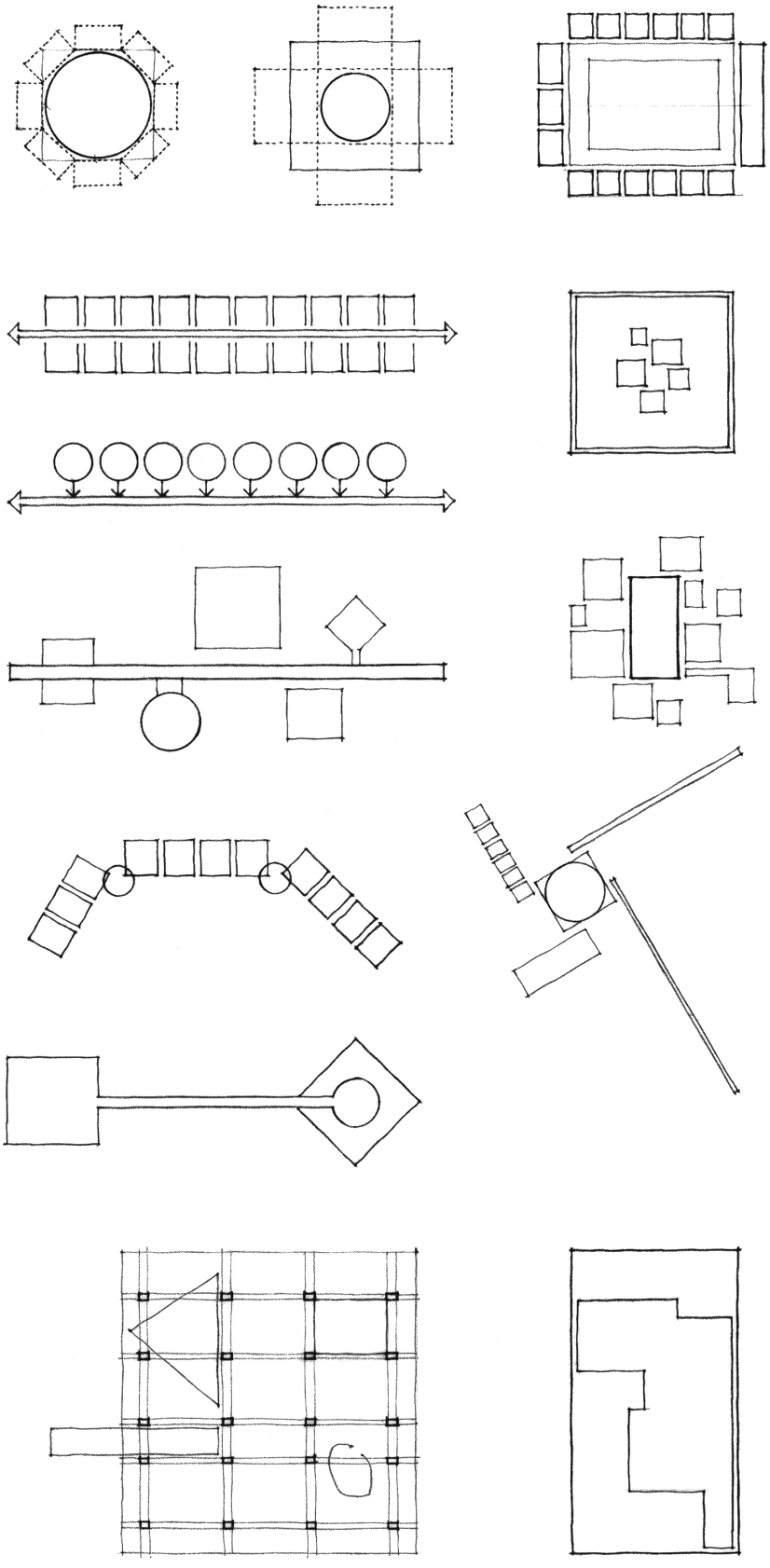
San Lorenzo Maggiore, Milan, Italy, c. A.D. 480



Coonley Playhouse, Riverside, Illinois, 1912, Frank Lloyd Wright



Lord Derby's House, London, 1777, Robert Adam



We use diagrams in the initial stages of the design process to study existing conditions and to generate, explore, and clarify concepts. We also use diagrams in the presentation phase of the design process to explain the conceptual basis for a design proposal.

Parti

A concept is a mental idea or image capable of generating and guiding the development of a design. We use the term *parti* when referring to the concept or primary organizing idea for an architectural design. Drawing out a concept or parti in diagrammatic form enables a designer to quickly and efficiently investigate the overall nature and organization of a scheme. Instead of concentrating on how a design might appear, the concept diagram focuses on the key structural and relational features of an idea.

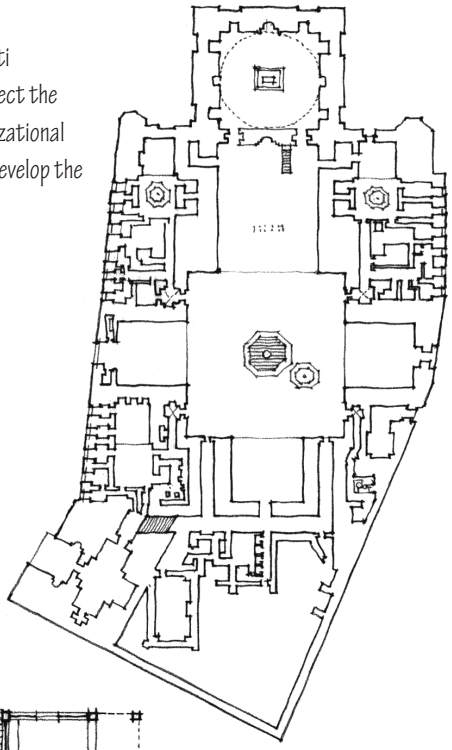
A suitable concept should of course be appropriate and relevant to the nature of the design problem. In addition, both a design concept and its graphic portrayal in a diagram should have the following characteristics.

A concept diagram should be:

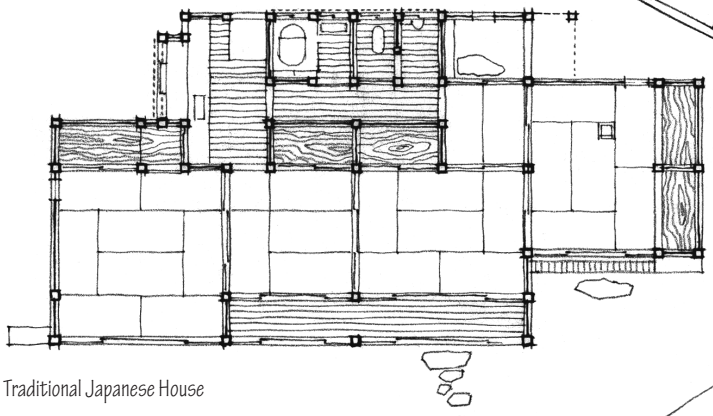
- inclusive: capable of addressing the multiple issues of a design problem;
- visually descriptive: powerful enough to guide the development of a design;
- adaptable: flexible enough to accept change; and
- sustainable: able to endure manipulations and transformations during the design process without a loss of identity.

Exercise 10.2

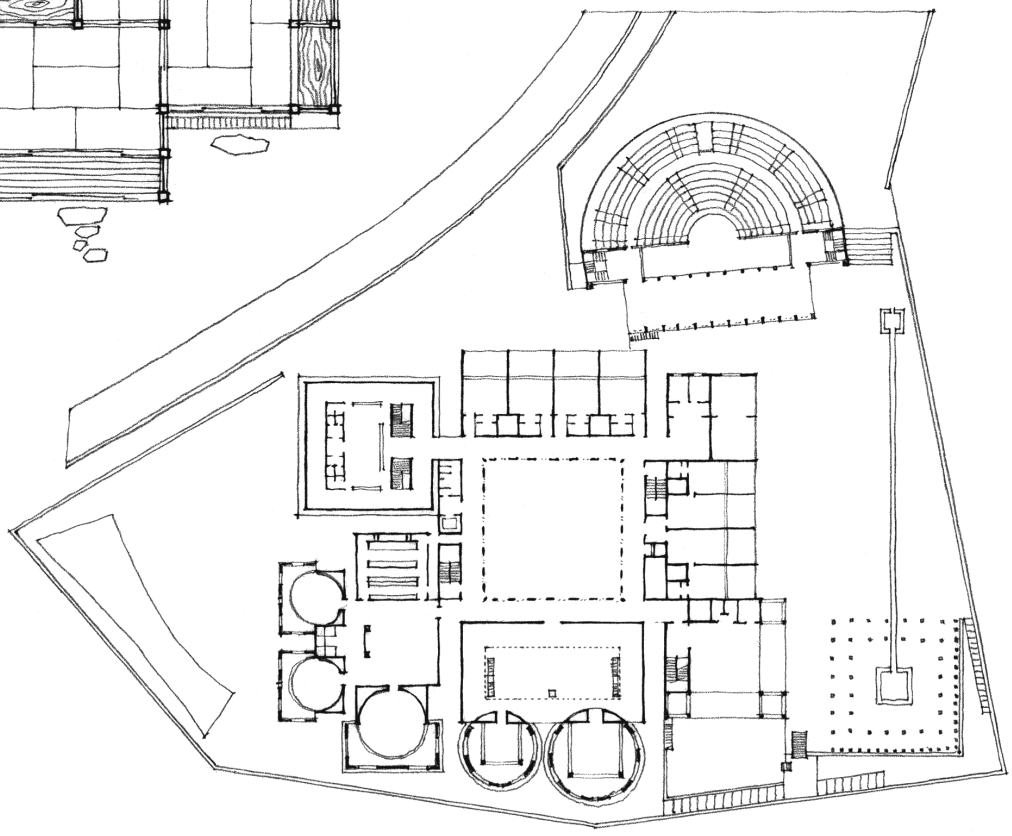
On the previous page are a number of examples of parti diagrams. For each building plan illustrated below, select the diagram that most closely corresponds to the organizational idea of the scheme. Modify the selected diagram to develop the parti for each of the plans.



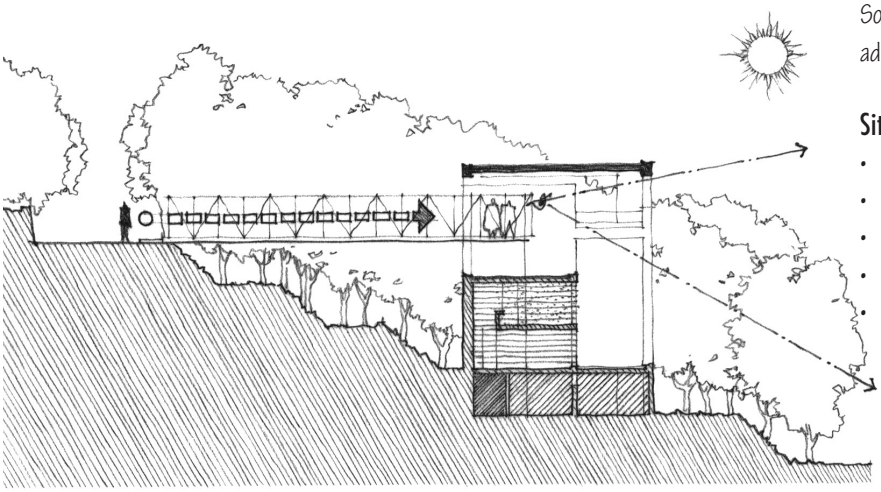
Mosque of Sultan Hasan, Cairo, Egypt, 1356–63



A Traditional Japanese House



Meeting House, Salk Institute of Biological Studies, La Jolla, California, 1959–65, Louis Kahn

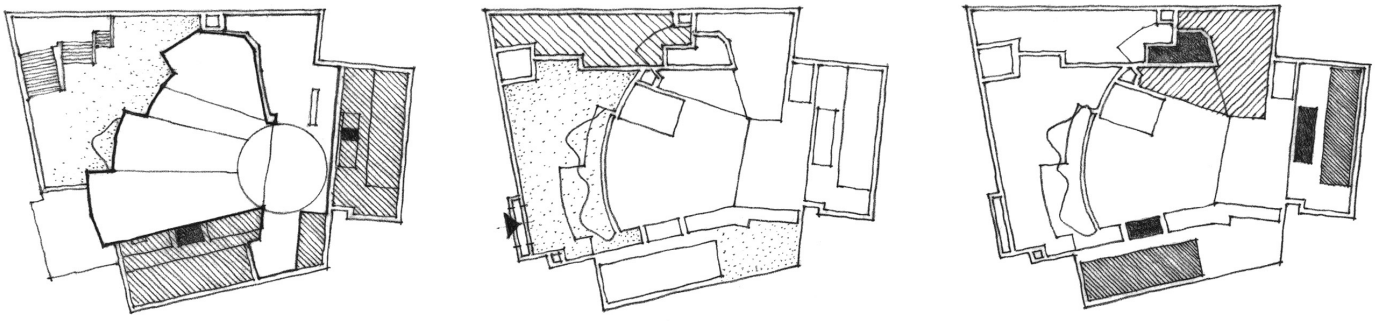


Residence at Riva San Vitale, on the shore of Lugano Lake, Switzerland, 1971–73, Mario Botta

Some of the issues that concept diagrams can effectively address include:

Site

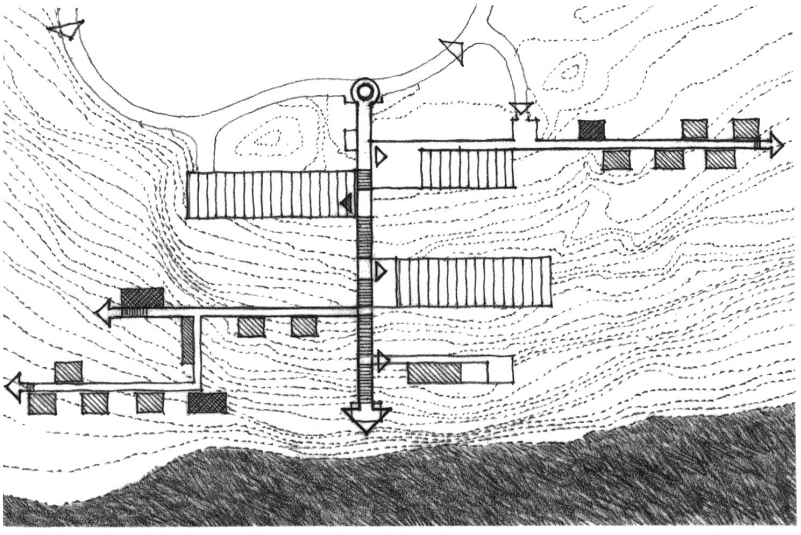
- Contextual constraints and opportunities
- Historical and cultural influences
- Environmental forces of sun, wind, and precipitation
- Topography, landscape, and water features
- Approach, access, and paths through a site



Theater in Seinäjoki, Finland, 1968–69, Alvar Aalto

Program

- Spatial dimensions required for activities
- Functional proximities and adjacencies
- Relationship between served and service spaces
- Zoning of public and private functions



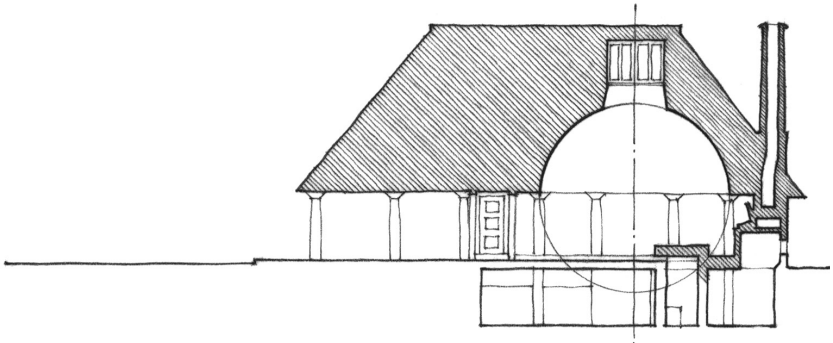
Haystack Mountain School of Arts and Crafts, Deer Isle, Maine, 1960, Edward Larabee Barnes

Circulation

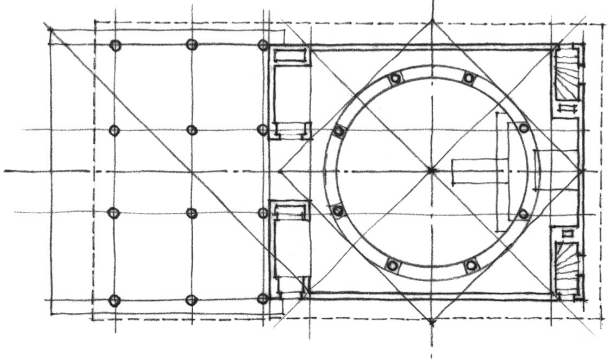
- Pedestrian, vehicular, and service paths
- Approach, entry, nodes, and paths of movement
- Horizontal and vertical modes of travel

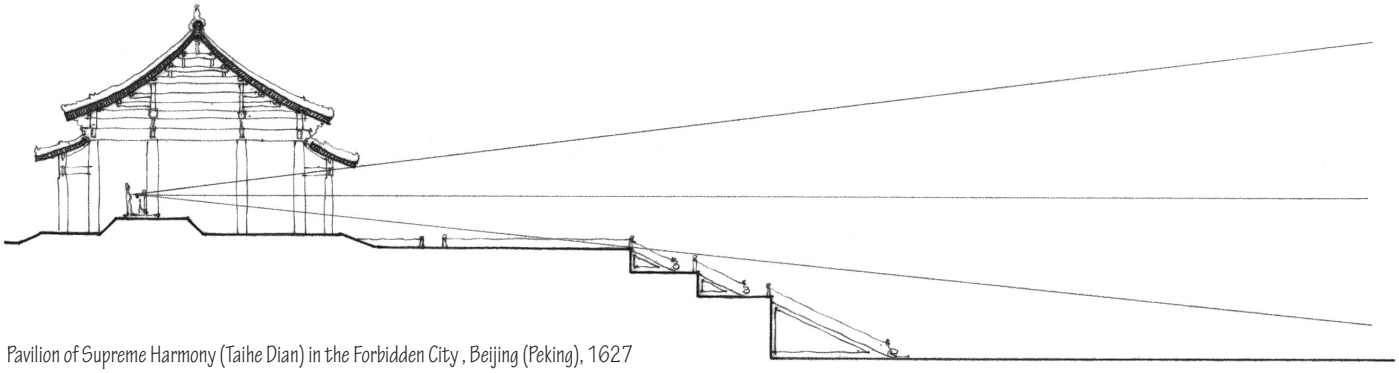
Formal issues

- Figure-ground and solid-void relationships
- Ordering principles, such as symmetry and rhythm
- Structural elements and pattern
- Elements and configuration of enclosure
- Spatial qualities, such as shelter and outlook
- Hierarchical organization of spaces
- Formal massing and geometry
- Proportion and scale



Woodland Chapel, Stockholm, Sweden, 1918–20, Erik Gunnar Asplund

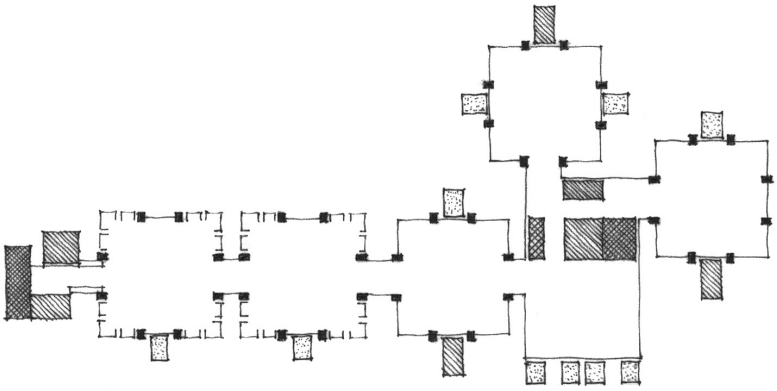




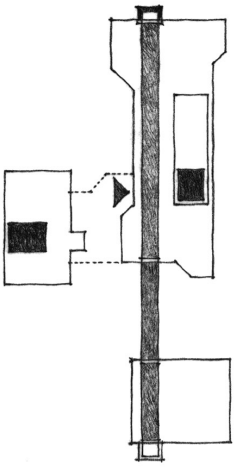
Pavilion of Supreme Harmony (Taihe Dian) in the Forbidden City , Beijing (Peking), 1627

Systems

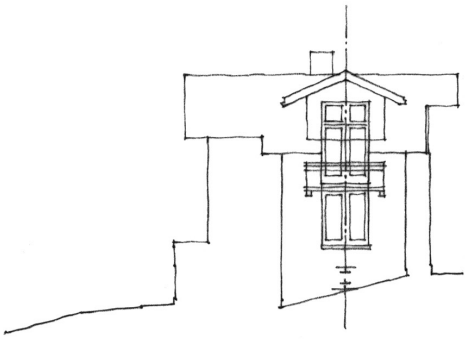
- Layout and integration of structural, lighting, and environmental control systems



Richards Medical Research Laboratory, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, 1957–61, Louis Kahn



Hines House, Sea Ranch, California, 1966, MLTW

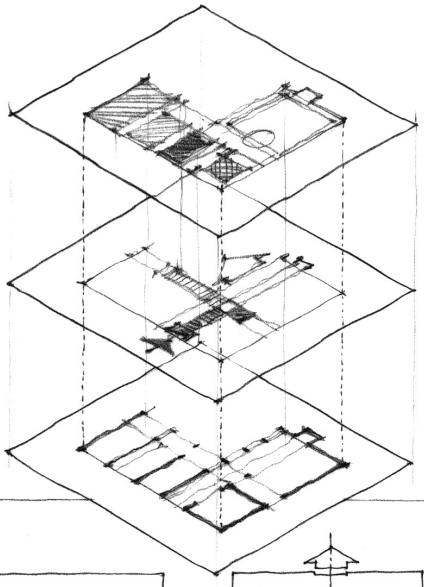


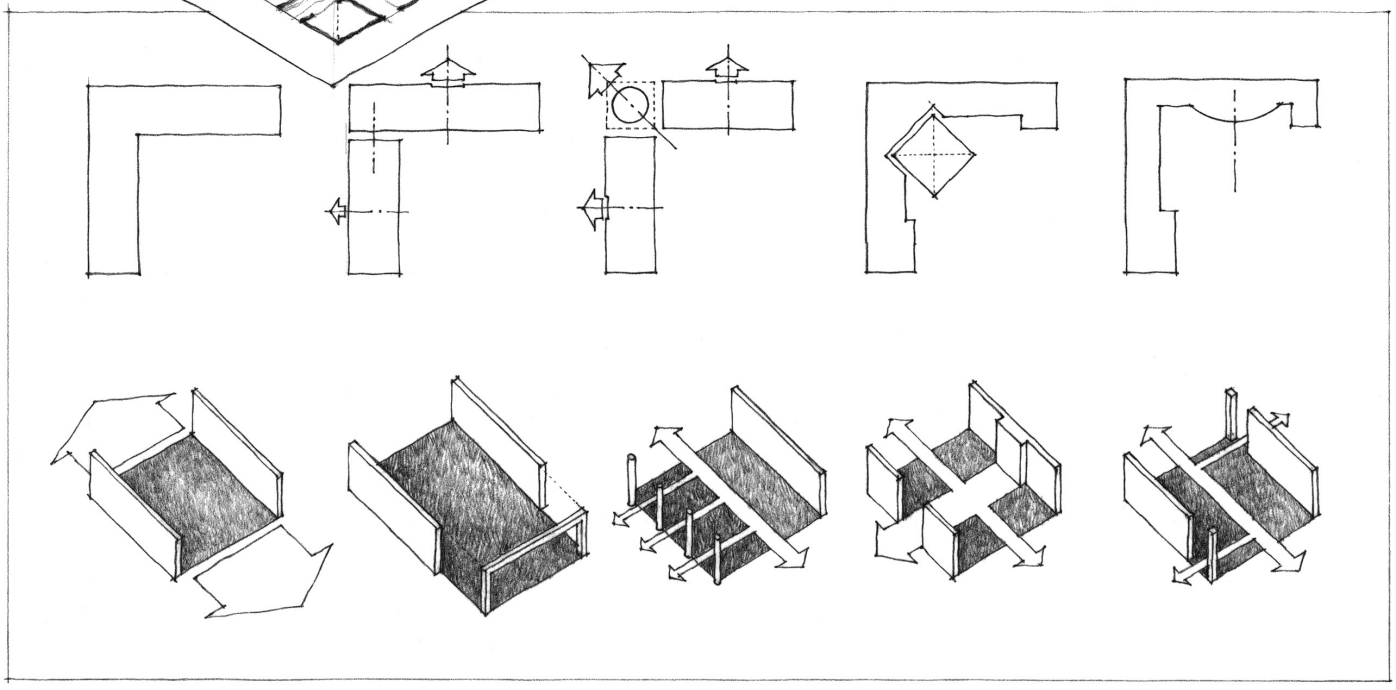
Flagg House, Berkeley, California, 1912, Bernard Maybeck

In generating, developing, and using concept diagrams, certain principles can help stimulate our thinking.

- Keep concept diagrams concise. Drawing small condenses the information to a manageable level.
- Delete extraneous information as needed to focus on a particular issue and enhance the overall clarity of the diagram.
- Overlay or juxtapose a series of diagrams to see how certain variables affect the nature of a design, or how the various parts and systems of a design fit together to form a whole.
- Reverse, rotate, overlap, or distort an element or linkage to provide new ways of viewing the diagram and to discover new relationships.
- Use the modifying factors of size, proximity, and similarity to reorganize and prioritize the elements as you search for order.
- Add relevant information when necessary to take advantage of newly discovered relationships.

In all cases, the visual clarity and organization of the diagram should please the eye as well as impart information to the viewer.

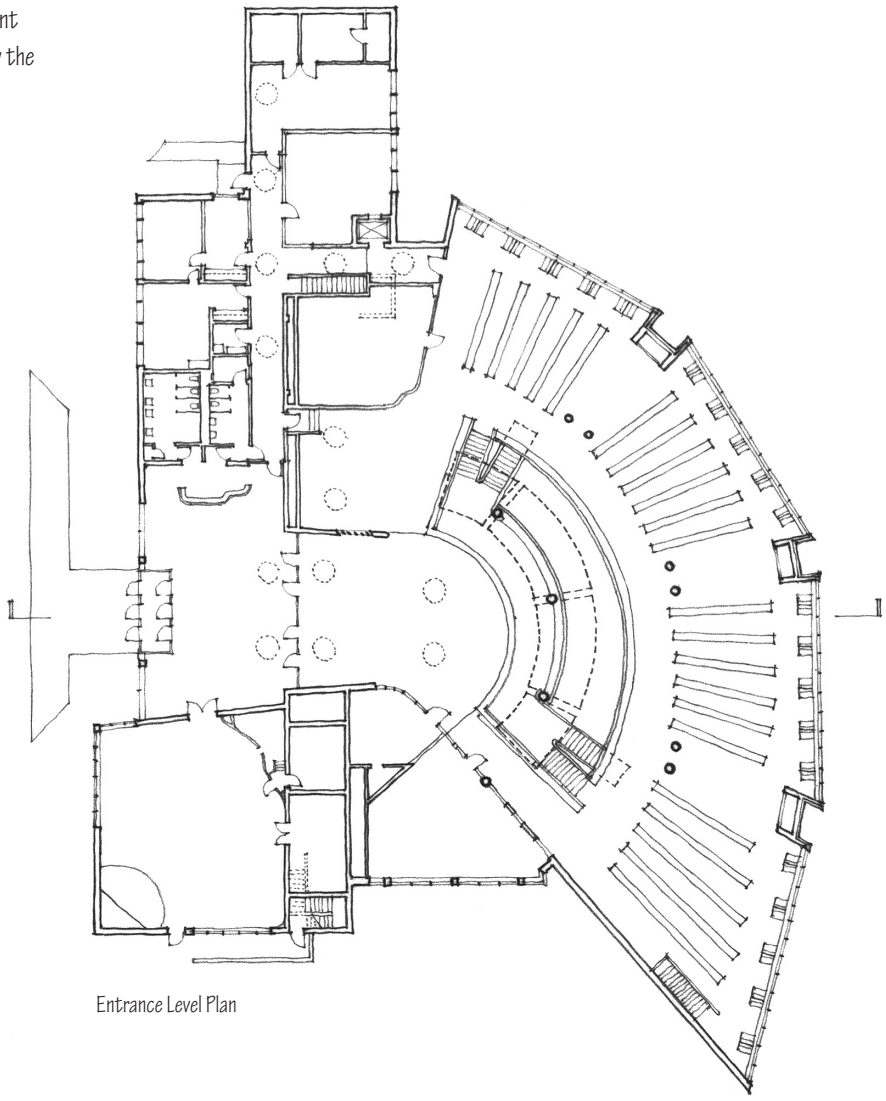




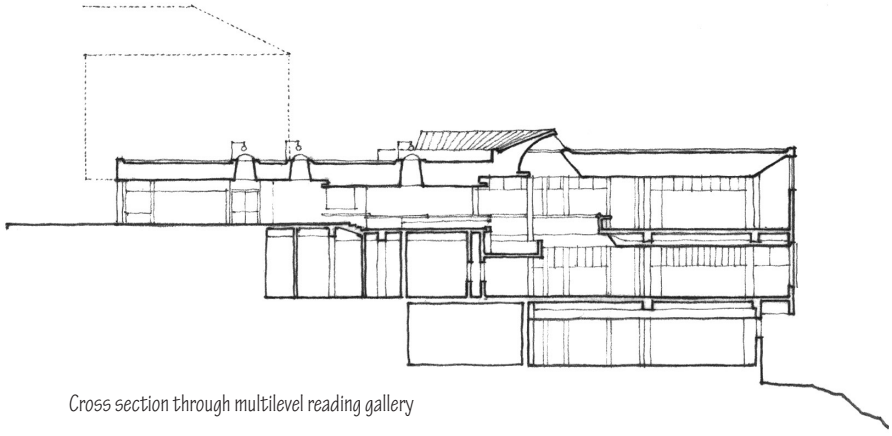
Exercise 10.3

Analyze the plan and cross section of the Library of Mount Angel Benedictine College. Develop diagrams that convey the following information:

- Structural pattern
- System of enclosure
- Spatial organization
- Functional zoning
- Pattern of circulation

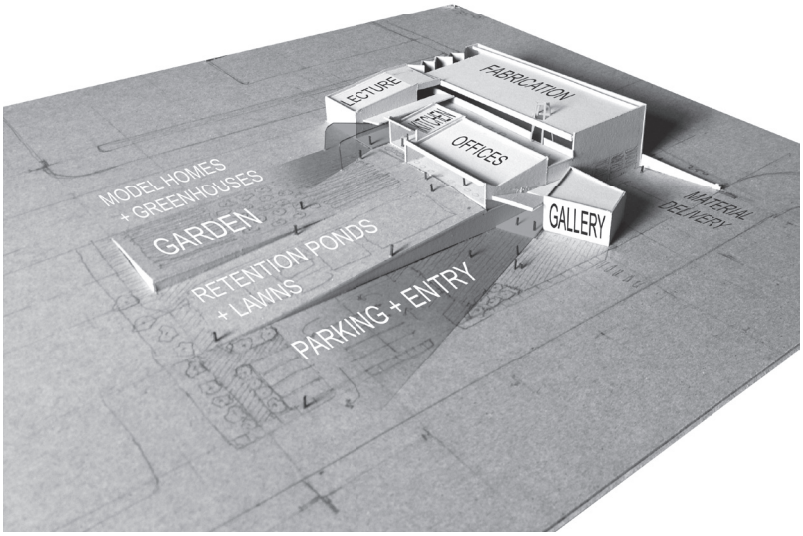


Entrance Level Plan



Cross section through multilevel reading gallery

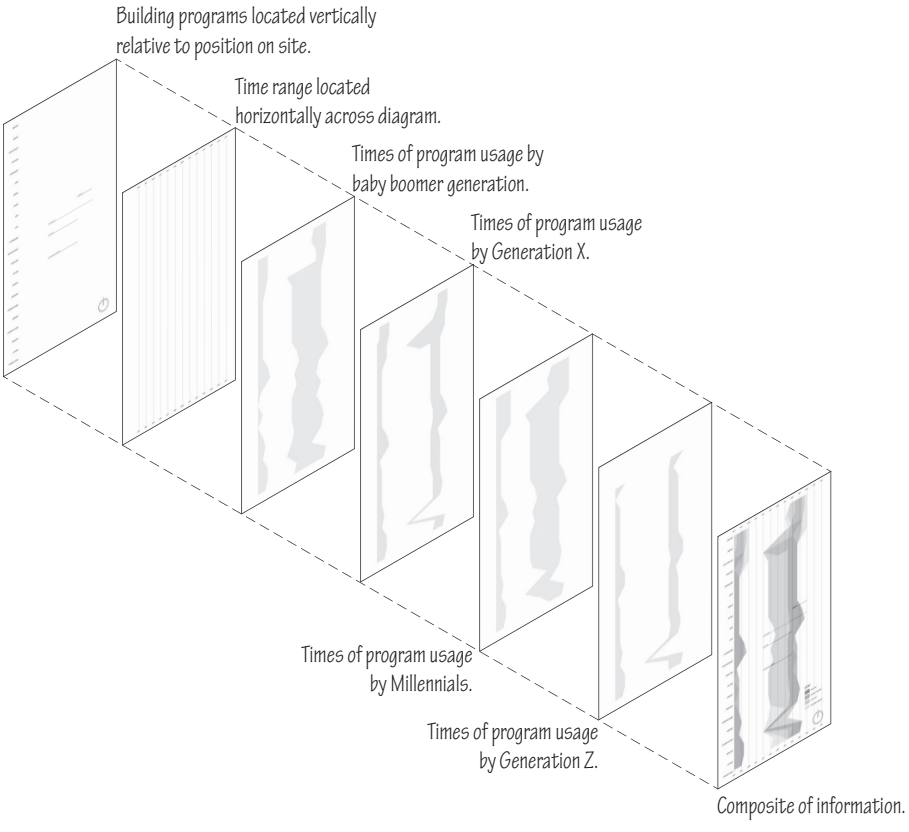
Library of Mount Angel Benedictine College, Mount Angel, Oregon, 1965–70, Alvar Aalto

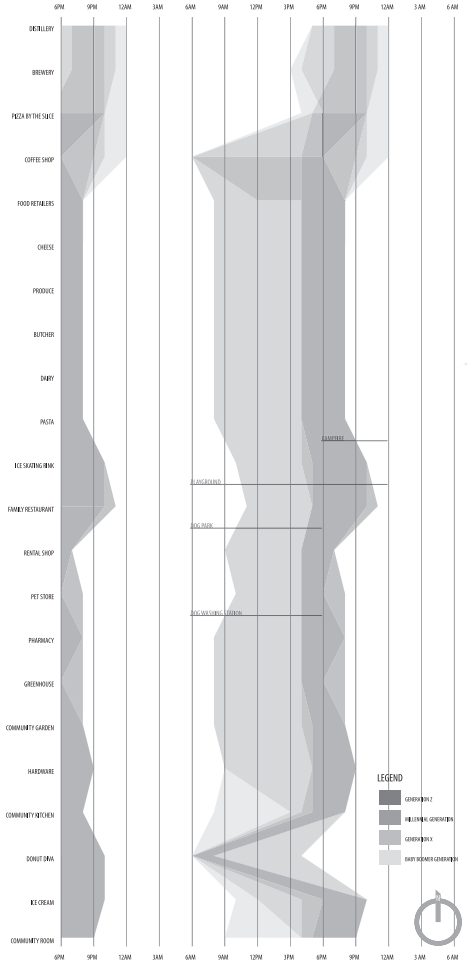


Hybrid diagram of building mass, program adjacencies, and site design layered atop physical study model by Robin Wilder.

Digital drawing and modeling programs provide us with tools to gather and display quantitative and experiential information, which can be diagrammed and used to develop and refine a design idea. Because large amounts of sometimes complex data can be included in these diagrams, it is important to:

- Distill the information for clarity and substance;
- Rearrange or manipulate the data to see the information in new ways; and
- Use multiple variables within a single diagram, which can lead to discovery of relationships and insights not readily apparent.

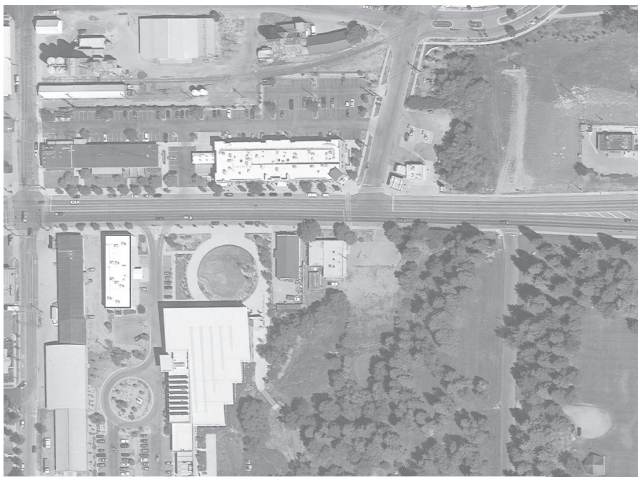




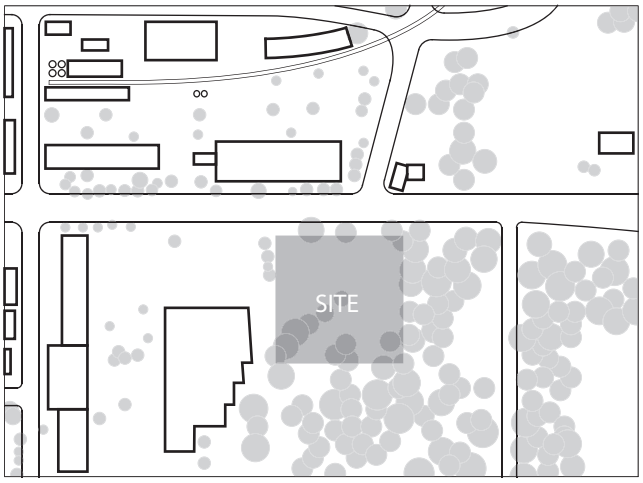
Multivariate diagram of mixed-use program functions, their location on the site, and the time of use for each function by different generations leading to schematic design strategies for program spillover spaces. Original diagram by Nicole Stine.

Exercise 10.4

Use an aerial photograph of a design project site as an underlayment in your digital workspace. In a 2D drawing application, trace the critical elements of the site and its context, such as building outlines, streets and pathways, trees and other elements of the natural landscape, site contours, and water features. The intent of this digital drawing is to extract the most critical information from the photograph and create a diagram that allows you to study the large-scale issues of the site.



Add diagramming elements on different layers to your digital site plan to study the issues of circulation on and around your site—vehicular traffic, public transit routes, pedestrian and bicycle paths. Add additional layers of information to describe environmental influences on the site and building program uses within the vicinity of your site. What other types of information could be best analyzed in this 2D format?



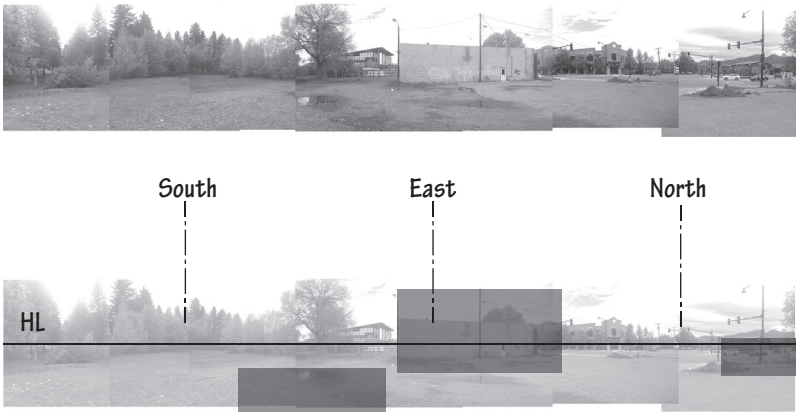
Add additional layers to your diagram to explore and create parti diagrams of how your design idea can respond to the various site forces and influences.

Exercise 10.5

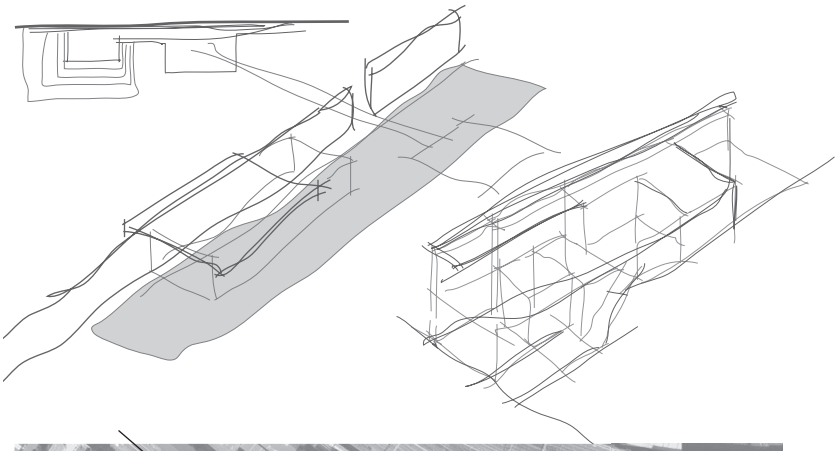
Take your 2D digital site plan diagram and, within a 3D modeling program, develop the heights of any existing buildings and the ground topography for your site. Similar to your 2D drawing, the 3D model can remain simple in detail so that it continues to function as a diagram. Use this 3D model as a base to create a 3D site analysis diagram of your site. In addition to daylighting, shadows, and views, what elements could be best explored in the 3D diagram versus the 2D diagram?

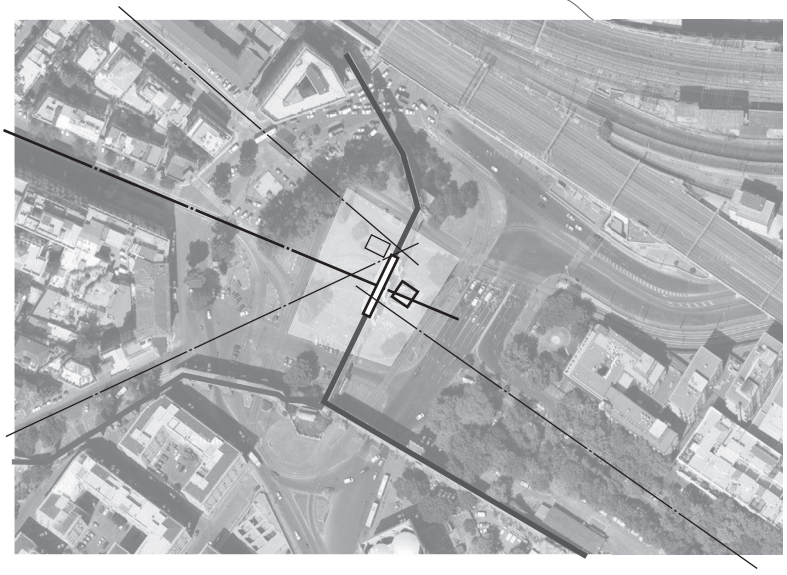
Exercise 10.6

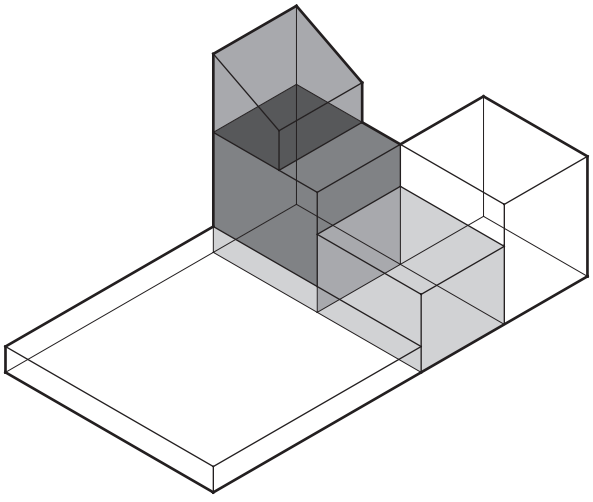
Through a combination of multiple photographs or a single panorama image, undertake an experiential analysis of your site. Establish the horizon line of your view. Mark where the primary cardinal points exist relative to this site. Trace the path of the sun at the summer and winter solstice and the spring and fall equinox. Identify the point on the horizon where the sun will rise and set on each of these days. Identify desirable views; block out undesirable views.



What other site information can be diagrammed on this experiential stage that could inform your design strategies?







While diagramming ideas with a free hand and a pen or pencil on paper remains the most direct, intuitive, and flexible means of initiating design thoughts, there are digital tools available to make visible the connection between our understanding of a design problem and possible approaches to addressing, resolving, or even reformulating the problem. As we explore the use of digital tools in initiating design ideas, however, we should remember that the issues and principles outlined in the previous pages of this chapter still apply.

- 2D raster-graphic software along with a digital stylus and tablet, a touch screen, or simply a mouse enable us to sketch out the essence of an idea.

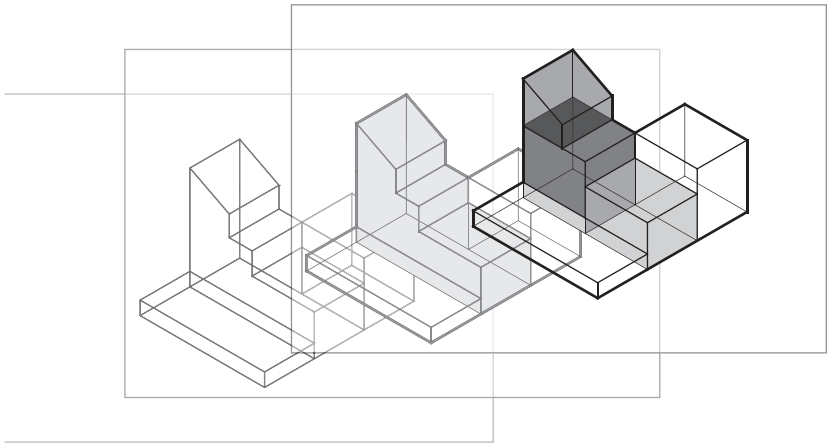
- Digital photographs and drawings can be useful in initiating analytical diagrams. We can use aerial photographs as an underlay for site analysis diagrams, and photographs of existing structures or scenes to analyze context from an experiential point of view.

- Vector-based drawing programs allow us to create objects that represent basic diagrammatic elements and to use default lines and arrows to convey desired relationships.

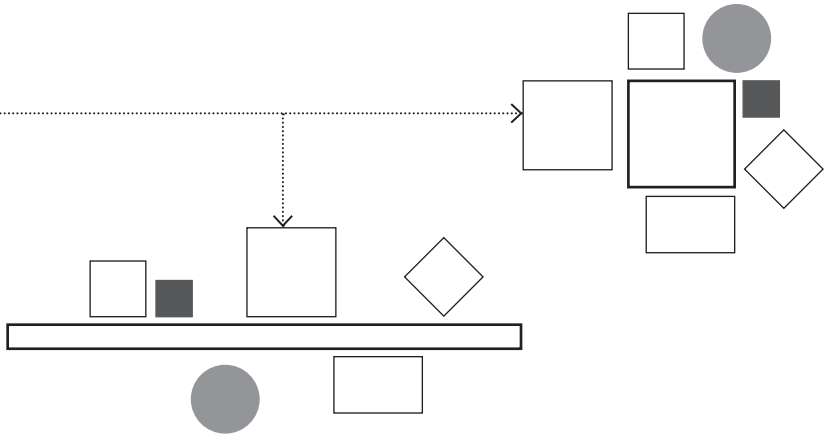
- 3D modeling programs imbue diagrammatic elements and relationships with a spatial dimension. When using a modeling program, it is important to maintain the diagram's conceptual nature and to read modeled elements as abstractions rather than as representations of real, physical building elements. One way to do this is to use wireframe views with color and value indicating relative uses and degrees of importance. Shape, scale, and proportions can be manipulated fairly easily and should be considered carefully to convey the desired characteristics of the diagrammatic elements.

Digital tools offer several advantages over hand drawing.

- The layering capabilities built into drawing and imaging software allow certain elements to be de-emphasized or turned off while calling others to the forefront for emphasis.



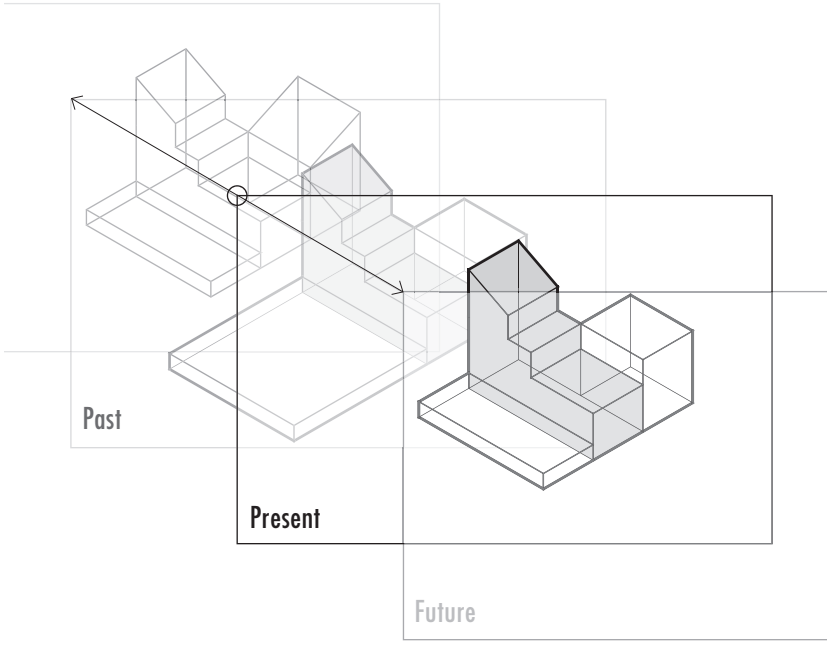
- Elements can be grouped into similar categories, moved in digital space relative to each other as with a physical collage, and rearranged at will to explore possible relationships.



- Perhaps the most potent feature of graphic software programs is the ability to undo moves in a trial-and-error process and to save archival copies, which gives us the freedom to explore alternatives without fear of losing prior work.

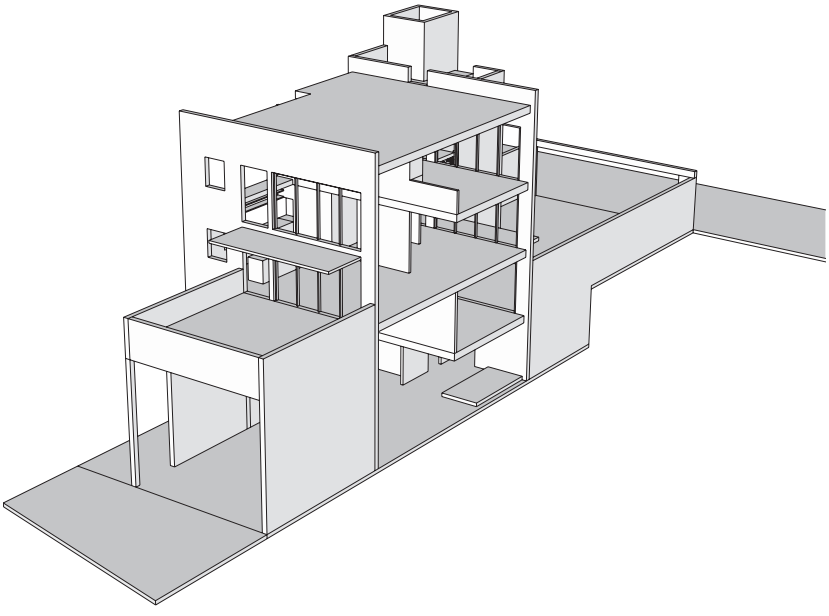
A particular drawback to the use of digital tools is the layer of abstraction presented by the particular combination of hardware and software between what we are envisioning and its representation on the monitor or screen. The key to using digital media to diagram design concepts effectively, therefore, is gaining sufficient fluency with the software so that we can see, think, and draw intuitively without having to worry about which keyboard, menu, or palette commands to invoke, which would break the flow of our thoughts.

Another disadvantage, particularly of modeling software, is the apparent insistence on precision despite the open-endedness that is desirable in the beginning stages of the design process. Even though we are free to interpret the way digital data is presented, the default representation is that of a finished model. Nevertheless, if we are aware of these tendencies, we can use digital tools effectively in diagramming our design ideas.



Physical Models

Physical study models, like process drawings, are important for quickly visualizing a design idea. Working with our hands in cutting and assembling real materials provides a tactile sensibility that augments the purely visual and gives it a spatial dimension. While they can often be used as a presentation device, physical study models should be seen primarily as a means of exploration. Once constructed, physical models can be turned in our hands and our head, torn apart, and remodeled. They can be photographed from different points of view and the photographic images scanned for digital explorations or printed out and drawn over.



Digital Models

3D modeling programs enable us to build virtual models of our design ideas and study them from various points of view. This makes them viable for developing concepts as long as one sees the modeled images as works in progress rather than as finished products.

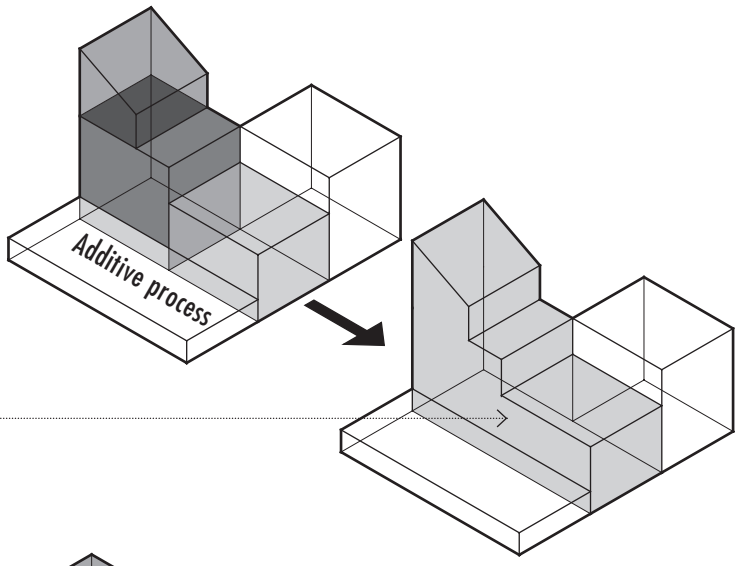
Working with digital models requires control over the exactness of data that 3D modeling programs expect in the creation of digital models. At the same time, we should keep in mind that digital models are tools for thought and subject to change and revision. We should, therefore, not allow the degree of specificity in both input and output to constrict the open-endedness of the design process.

Because digital modeling relies heavily upon the use of axes, tangent points, and aligned faces and edges as construction aids to develop a three-dimensional form, thinking in these terms—as we would when building a physical model—generally results in a more efficient modeling process.

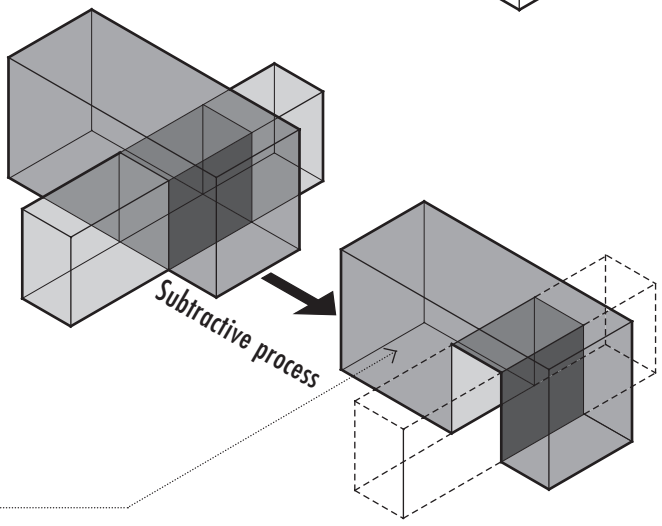
Perhaps the most striking difference between a physical and a digital model lies in how we perceive the materiality, spatial characteristics, and immediacy of a physical model versus how a digital model must, at least with the technology available to us today, be viewed on a monitor or screen—essentially a 2D image of a 3D data set, which requires the same interpretive skills as when reading a hand drawing.

Boolean Operations

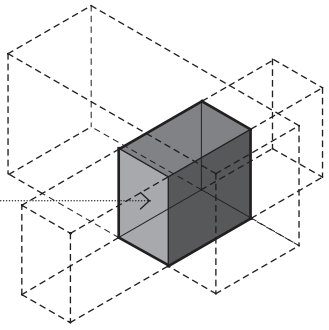
Boolean operations in 3D modeling programs enable a more complex model to be built from a set of primitives—simple geometric solids, such as the cube, cylinder, sphere, pyramid, or cone. All the following operations are destructive in the sense that each eliminates the original solids after completion of the process.



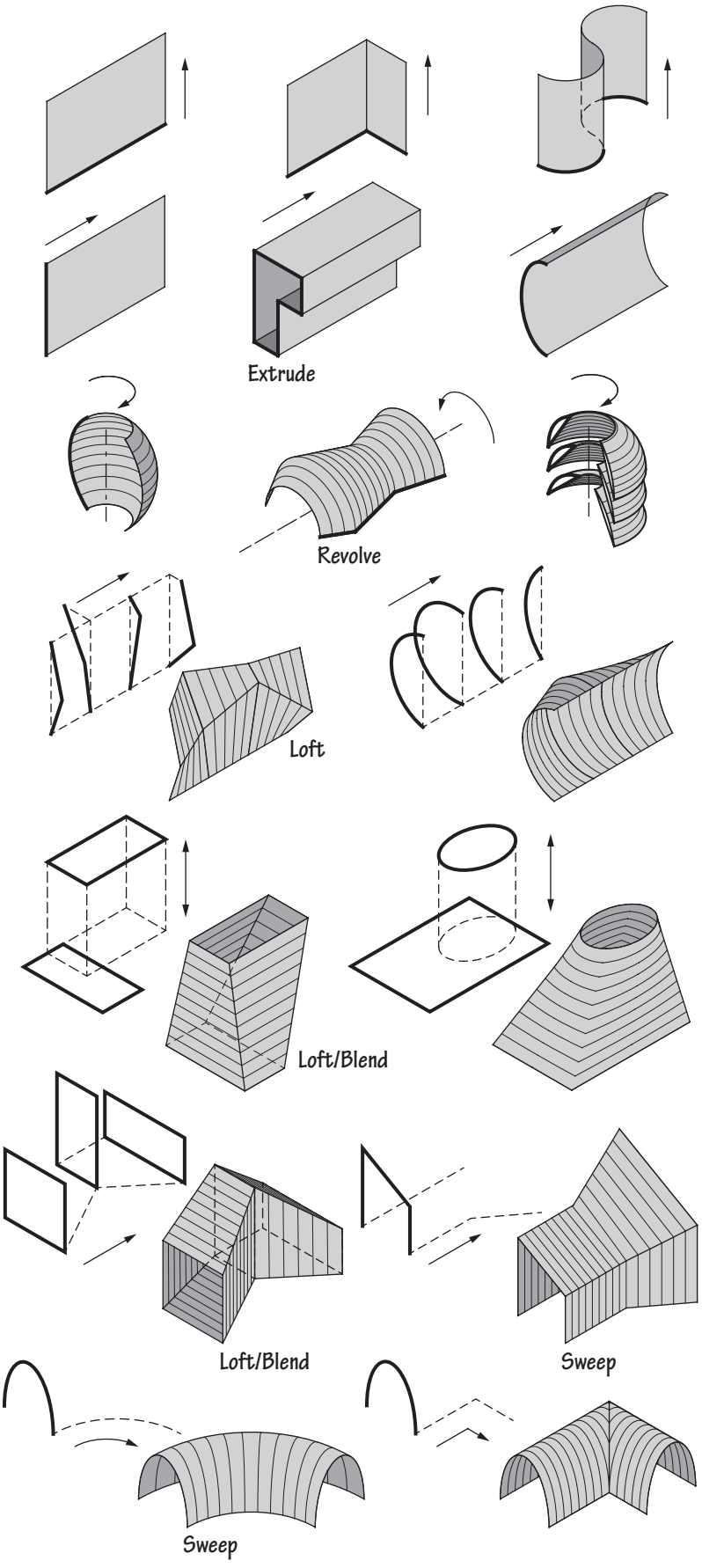
- **Boolean union** is an additive process that combines two or more individual and separate solids into a single new solid that consists of both the common and uncommon volumes of the selected solids.



- **Boolean difference** is a subtractive process that removes or carves out the common volume from either one or the other of the selected solids. Note that subtractive forms can also be created by directly manipulating points or surfaces of the original form.



- **Boolean intersection** is a process that creates a new solid based on the common volume shared by two or more selected solids.



Digital modeling uses a range of operations that can transform lines or shapes into surfaces and solids. Some of the more common modeling operations include the following:

Extrude

Lines and shapes can be extruded in any direction to create a surface or solid, whose result is determined by the profile of the original line or shape, the direction of the extrusion, and the distance specified. Directions are based on the x-, y-, or z- axis within the digital workspace, but extrusions can occur at any angle. While lines will be transformed into surfaces, a closed shape can become either a hollow or a solid extrusion, depending on the selections made in the extrusion operation.

Revolve

Lines and shapes can be transformed into surfaces and solids by revolving the extrusion process around a linear axis. The axis can be at any angle and does not need to be connected to the lines and shapes. The revolution of these elements can vary between 0 and 360 degrees.

Loft

Creating surfaces between multiple lines and shapes is achieved through the loft operation—also referred to as a blend in some applications. This operation connects the points within each line or shape to corresponding points in the adjacent lines and shapes, with the resultant surface stretching between those elements. The loft operation can be undertaken on dozens, even hundreds or thousands, of elements to create surfaces within the digital workspace. When adjacent elements have significant differences, such as a circular profile adjacent to a square profile, points will be added or deleted to interpolate the form of the surface.

Sweep

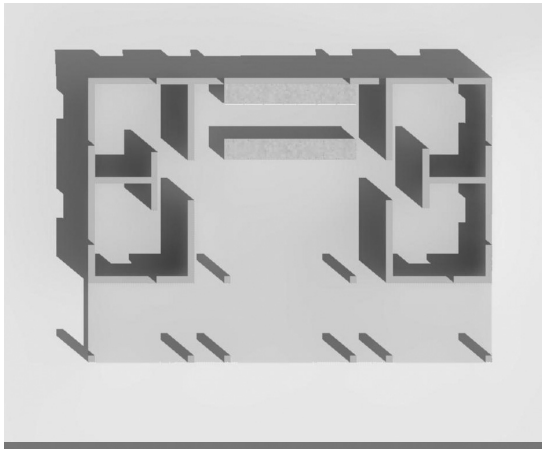
Similar in some respects to the extrude operation, the sweep command allows for a line or shape to be extruded along a nonlinear path, also referred to as a rail. The path can be curvilinear or can change direction at sharp angles.

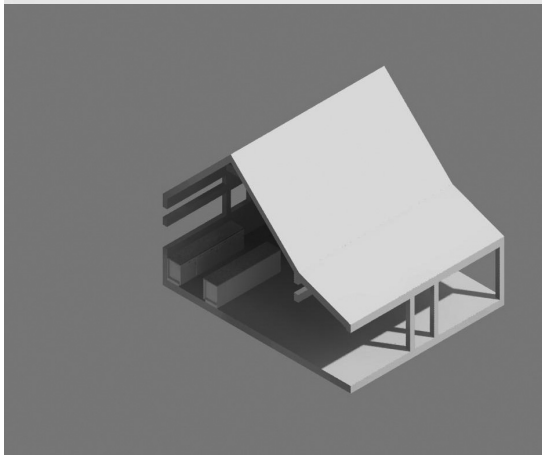
A second path can be added to the sweep operation that is nonparallel and/or nonplanar to the first path. This will allow the line or shape profile to retain its basic proportion and shape but will increase/decrease in size as the two paths move in different directions.

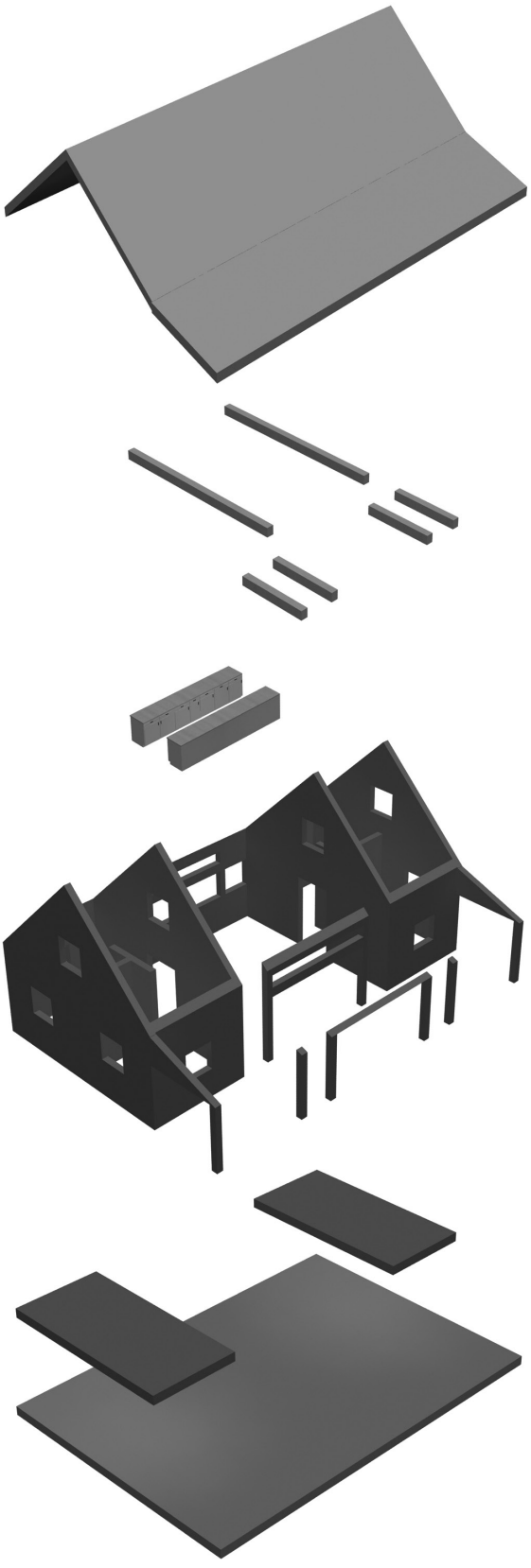
Modeling Views

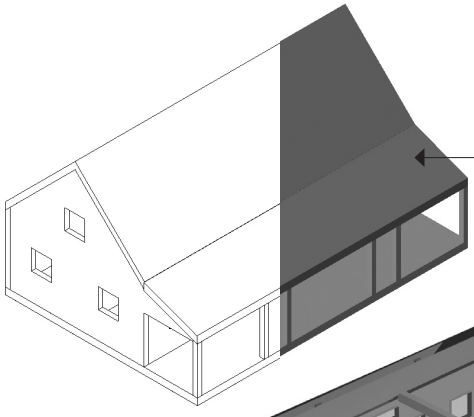
3D modeling programs encourage us to view the models we build in perspective, which is useful when studying the experiential aspects of a design. However, there are often aspects of a design, such as horizontal and vertical relationships, that should be studied in orthographic projection. To do this, we can extract from the 3D data set the traditional 2D plan and section cuts and elevations. The ideal set-up would be a modeling program that offers multiple views in different windows and a large enough monitor to see all of the views simultaneously. In this way, we could see how a change in one view—e.g., moving a wall in plan view—might immediately affect the quality of a space in a perspective view.

We can also produce cutaway views by turning different layers of the digital model on and off. We can export and reassemble specific views to describe a sequence of design or construction. These are two good reasons for organizing the data set of any digital model in a logical and coherent manner.





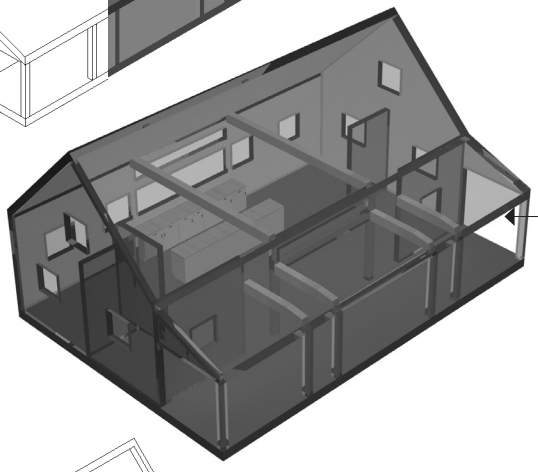




Most modeling programs provide a number of viewing options, each of which emphasizes certain aspects and de-emphasizes others in the model we are building.

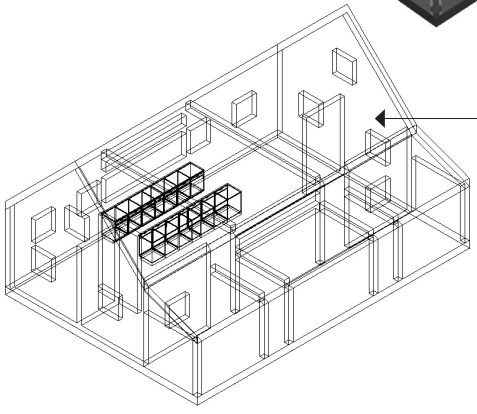
Solid Views

Solid views, also sometimes hidden-line views, display modeled surfaces as opaque elements, which is useful when studying massing and composition from an external point of view. Solid views are especially helpful in studying the exterior spaces formed by buildings in an urban context, for which a daylight source can be specified for a preliminary study of shade and shadows.



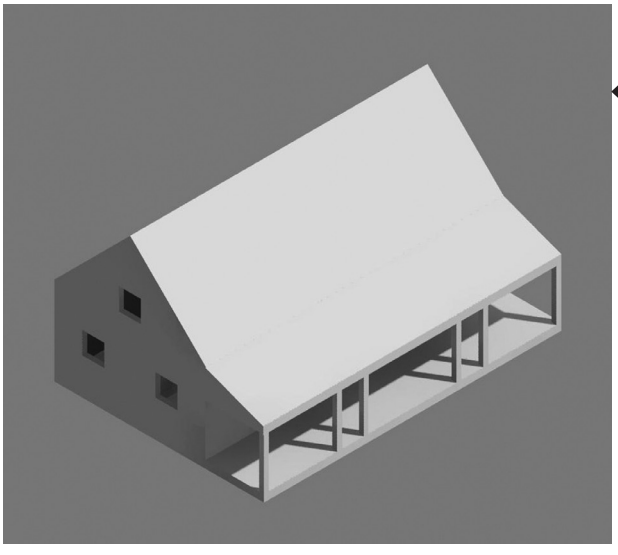
Transparent Views

Transparent views, also sometimes called ghosted views, show modeled surfaces as translucent planes, allowing us to see within, through, and beyond the object or composition. Transparent views emphasize the three-dimensionality and spatial qualities of digital models and can be used effectively as the basis for overlaying studies of solid-void relationships.



Wireframe Views

Wireframe views show modeled surfaces as completely transparent, allowing us to see all of the edges that make up each plane or facet of the object or composition. Wireframe representations can be ambiguous and lead to multiple readings. This ambiguity, however, can be seen as an advantage when it allows us to see other possibilities other than what we intended when we built the model.



Rendered Views

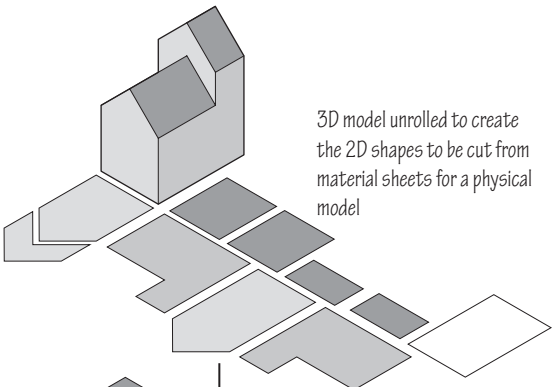
Rendered views apply specific materials to each surface of the digital model, allowing some objects and surfaces to be opaque while others remain transparent. Rendering a digital model is least useful during the beginning phases of the design process, when a level of abstraction and lack of specificity are desirable for open-ended thinking. The rendering of materials, therefore, should be reserved for latter stages in the design process when the model and the design it represents become more refined.

Shifting from the digital workspace to a physical workspace takes place when digital drawings and models are used for the digital fabrication process. Digital fabrication is a valuable iterative step in the design process and should be used from the outset.

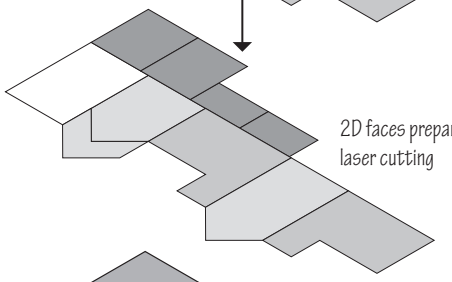
Laser Cutting, Plasma Cutter, Waterjet Cutting

Laser-cutting equipment uses two-dimensional digital drawings to determine the path that the laser, plasma torch, or waterjet will follow to cut through the stock material. These cut pieces are then assembled to make the physical model. To generate the 2D drawings, a 3D model can be unrolled to create a series of external faces. To minimize cutting time and material waste, outlines of the 2D shapes are usually made and nested together on a single sheet of material with overlapping lines deleted.

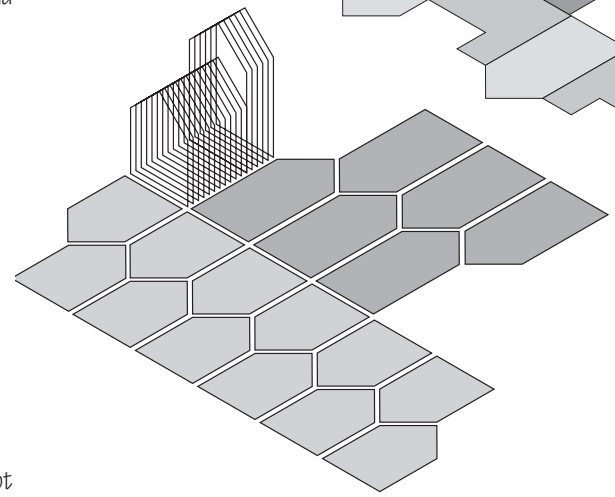
Another method draws a series of 2D section profiles or contours through the model. These profiles are assembled on a single plane and nested together. With complicated models involving many faces, the pieces are typically labeled to assist with the final assembly.



3D model unrolled to create the 2D shapes to be cut from material sheets for a physical model



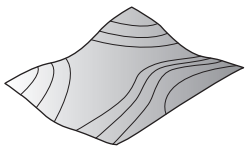
2D faces prepared for laser cutting



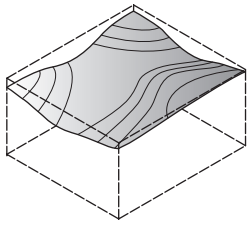
2D sectional profiles prepared for laser cutting

Computer Numerically Controlled (CNC) Milling

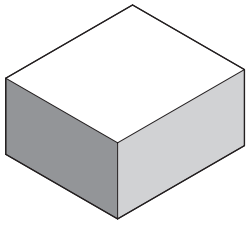
CNC milling is a subtractive fabrication process that mills out the digital model by carving away the stock material that is not contained inside the confines of the digital model. Typically, a CNC model requires a digital surface that serves as a boundary for carving away the physical material. Once all of the physical material has been milled away outside of this boundary, the material remaining will be the shape of the original digital model. Tool paths are created based upon the surface of the digital model and typically include rough tool paths that carve away large parts of the material, followed by finish tool paths using finer drill bits for the finished surface.



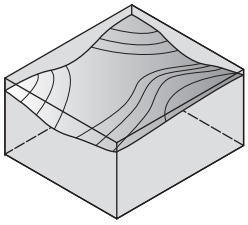
Digital surface



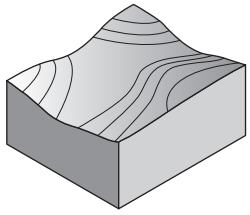
Bounding box



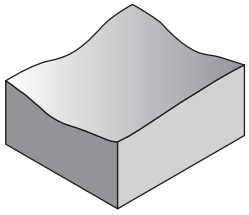
Stock material



Surface + material



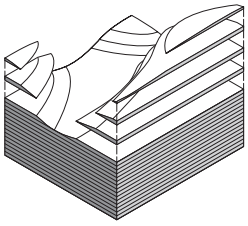
Rough tool path



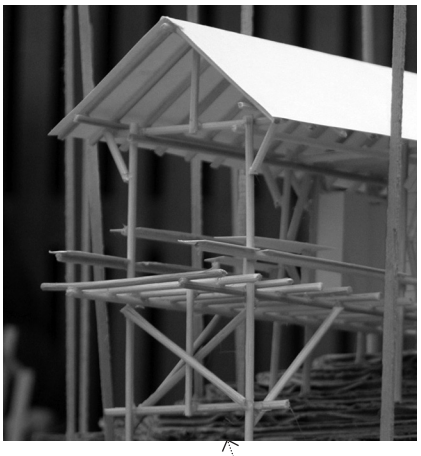
Final model

3D Printing

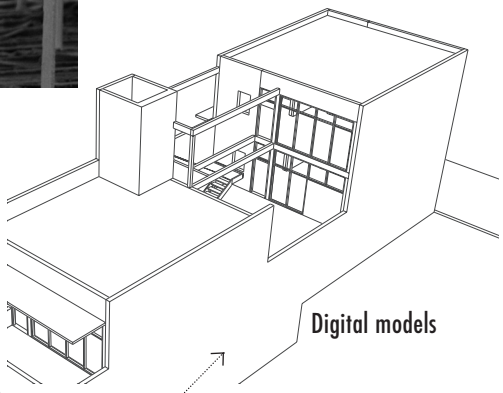
3D printing is an additive process that builds the digital model using powder, resins, plastics, metal, or glass. 3D printing builds the digital model through a series of layers in which materials are fused or hardened. Each layer thickness is a fraction of a millimeter, providing for high levels of detail and strength.



3D printing

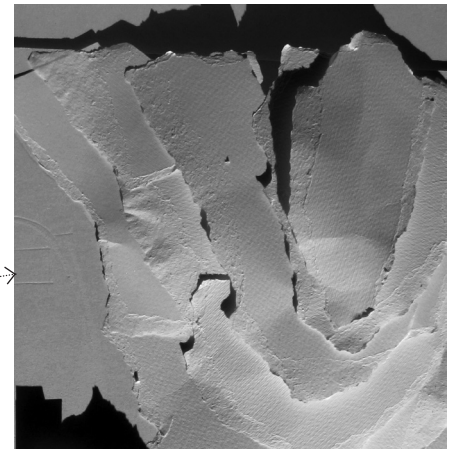


Physical models

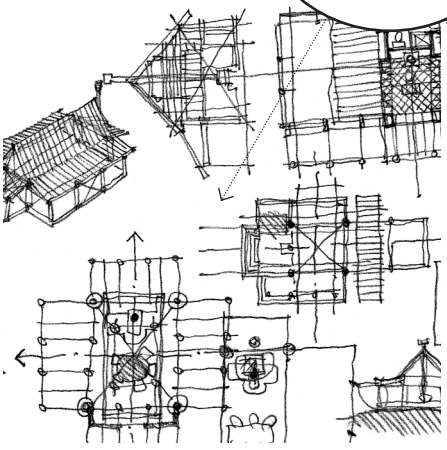


Digital models

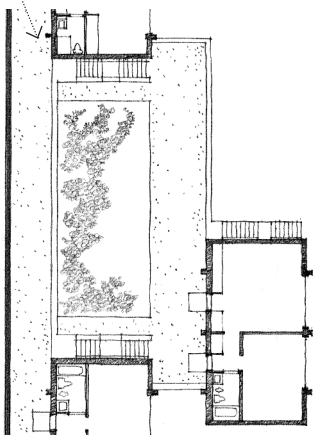
Ways to think about and develop a **Design Idea**



Physical collages



Hand drawings



Design Process

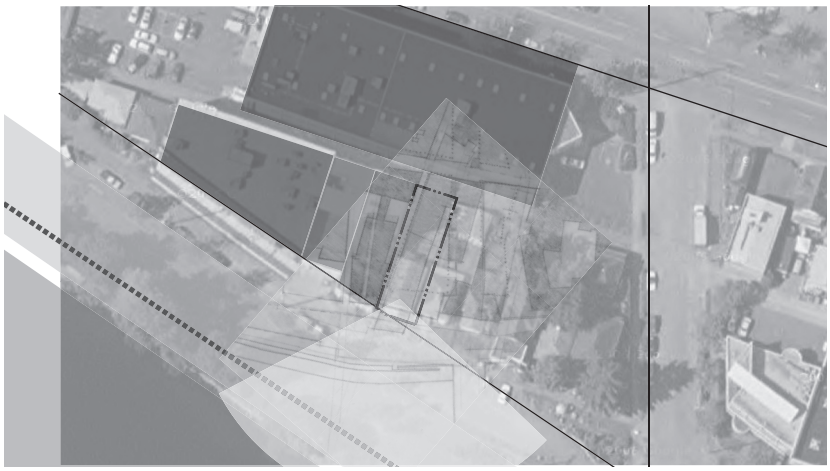
While the design process is typically presented as a linear series of steps, it is more truly a cyclical, iterative sequence of careful analysis of available information, intuitive synthesis of insights, and critical evaluation of possible solutions—a process that is repeated until a successful fit between what exists and what is desired is achieved. The design process can be compressed into a short, intense period of time or extend over several months or even years, depending on the urgency or complexity of the design problem. Design can also be an untidy process in which moments of confusion are followed by instances of exquisite clarity, interspersed with periods of quiet reflection. To work our way through this process, from diagramming to the development and refinement of design ideas, we rely on various modes of representation.

Modes of Representation

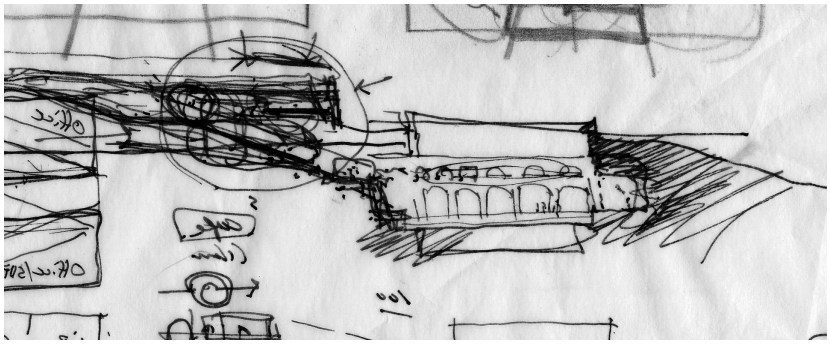
We can use various modes of representation to externalize and give form to our design ideas for study, analysis and development. These include not only the traditional drawing conventions but also photography, physical collages and models, and digital explorations and simulations, all means by which we can effectively nurture the life of a design idea. There is no one mode of representation that is best suited for any particular phase of the design process. Neither is there a best practice for the way each of us approaches the design process.

Knowing there are a number of viable visualization tools, each with its inherent strengths and biases, should be liberating. Depending on the nature of the design inquiry or exploration, we might choose to:

- Use tracing paper overlays or digital means to map on an aerial photograph the urban design forces that could influence the siting and form of a building.

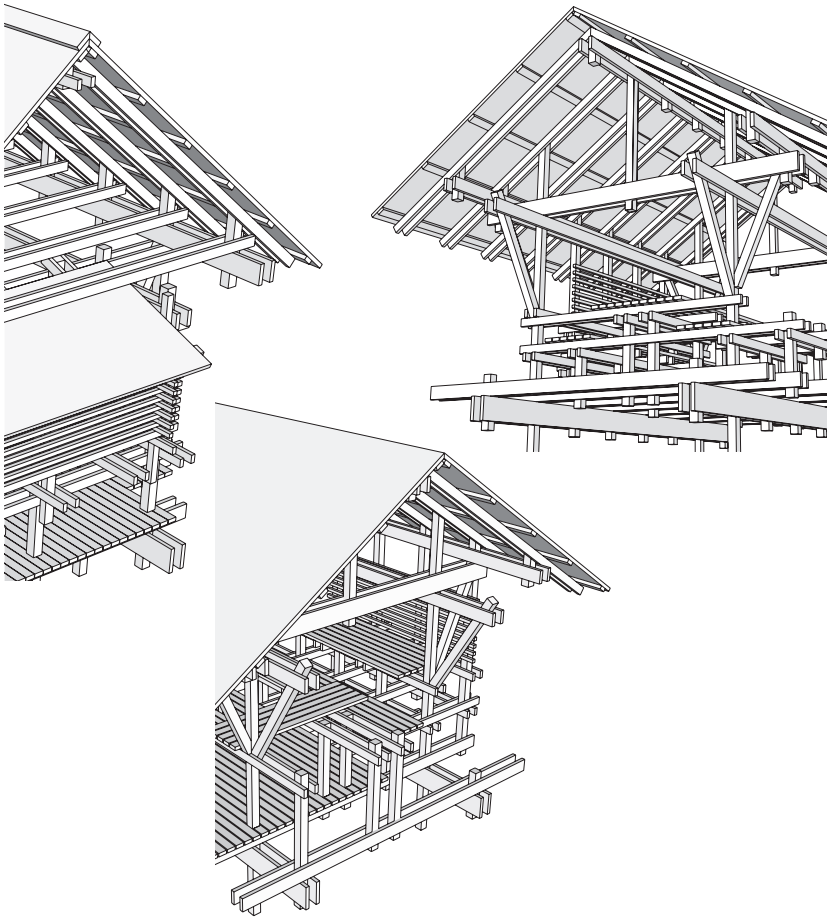


- Study the scale and vertical relationships of spaces with site and building sections.

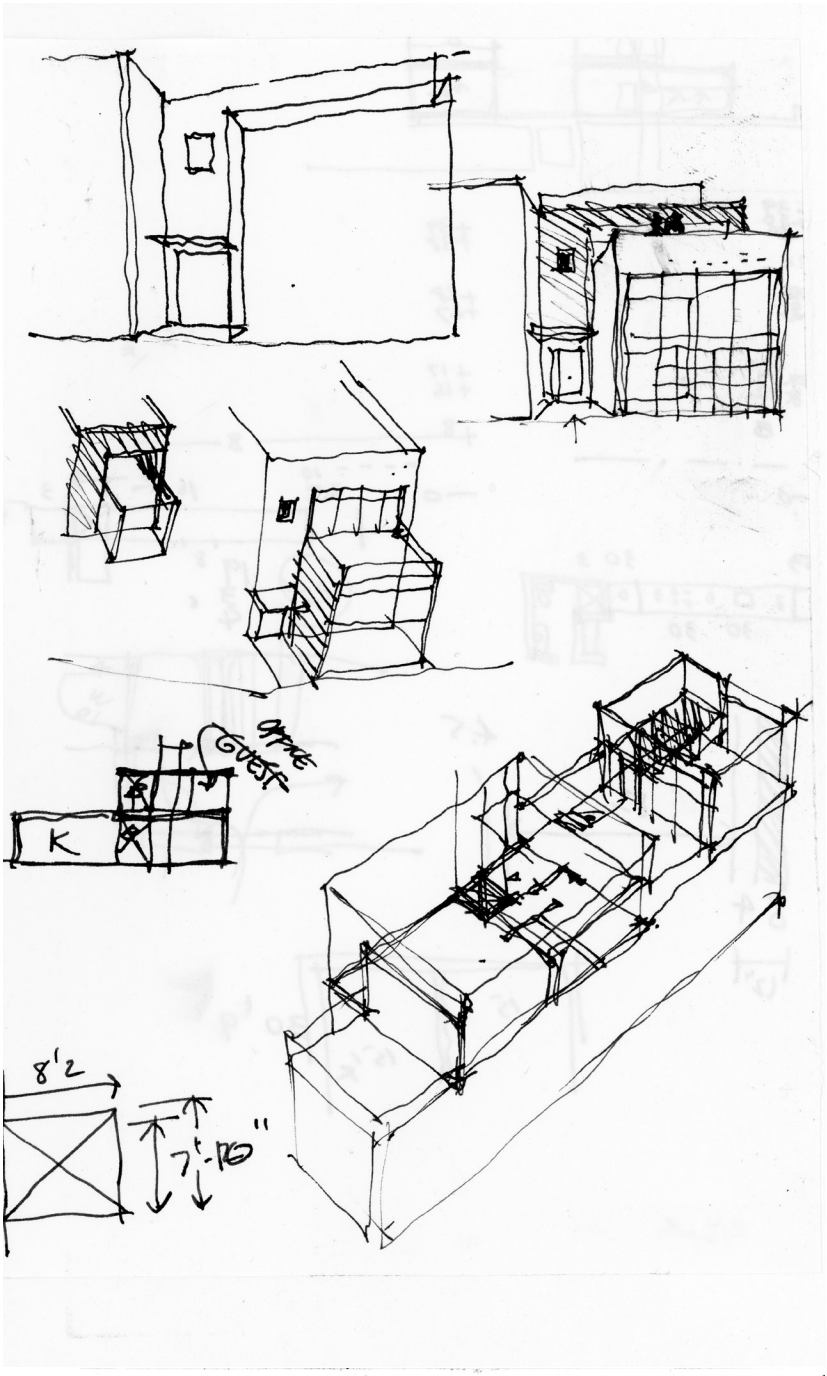


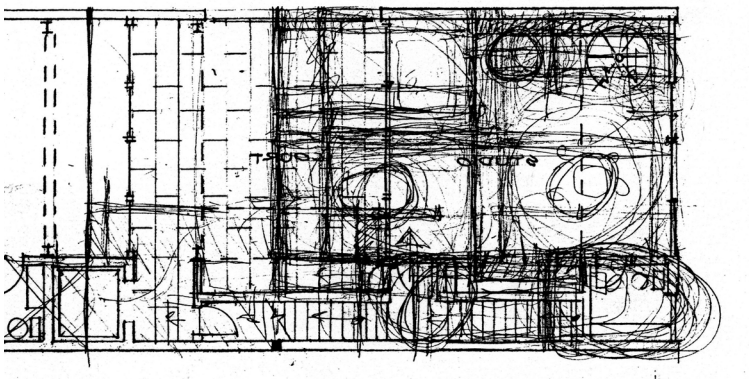
- Express aesthetic qualities with the material textures and relief of physical collages.

- Explore formal possibilities with physical or digital models.



Bear in mind that the range of our design ideas can be constrained to what we are able to represent, whether through hand drawings, our facility with digital media, or our ability to make physical models. The better our skills are in the various modes of representation, the more facile we will be in using these visualizing tools in exploring design ideas. And just as seeing from different points of view can help us be flexible in our thinking, switching back and forth between traditional and digital methods of visualization can also contribute to seeing a problem or idea in a different light and can lead to unexpected and new insights.

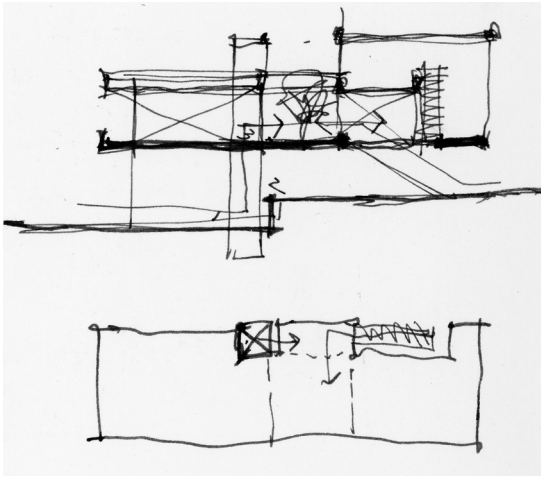




Process Drawings

Once an appropriate and fertile design idea is identified and clarified, we use process drawings to advance and evolve the idea from a diagrammatic concept to a firm proposal. As we do so, we should remind ourselves that design drawing is a language and that the three major drawing systems—multiview, paraline, and perspective drawings—provide alternative ways to thinking and expressing what we are envisioning. Each system presents a unique point of view and involves a built-in set of mental operations that directs our exploration of relevant design issues. In selecting one drawing system over another to study a particular design issue, we make conscious as well as unconscious choices as to which aspects of the issue will be revealed and which will be concealed.

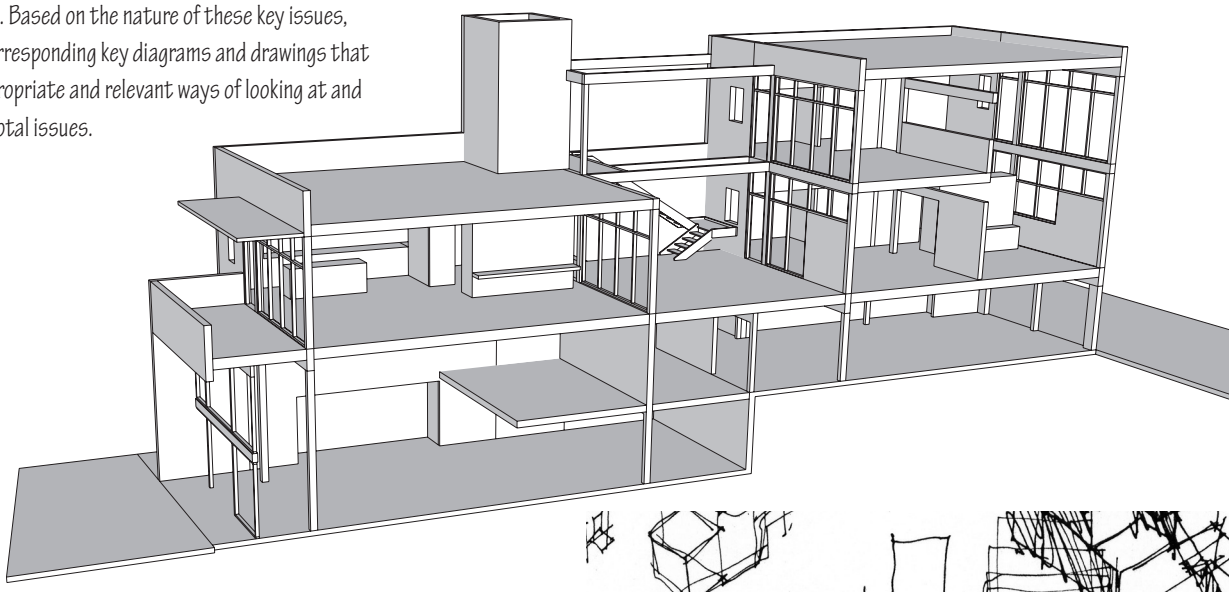
- When are the contextual and experiential nature of perspective studies useful?
- When are the holistic and scalable 3D views of a paraline drawing appropriate?
- When are the horizontal relationships revealed by a plan view most relevant?
- What advantages does a sectional view offer over a plan or paraline view?

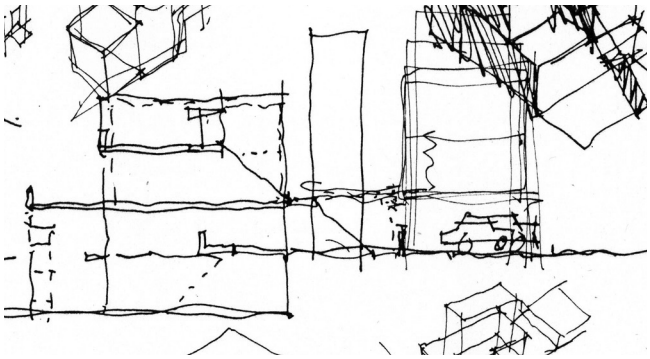


During this phase, it is useful to work as with the zoom lens of a camera, zooming in on specific areas to study them at a larger scale and in greater detail, and zooming out to be mindful of the overall scale of the scheme and its essential parts and relationships. As a design concept is clarified and developed, the drawings we use to represent the idea also become more definitive and refined until the proposal is crystallized.

Key Drawings

Generally speaking, all of the issues outlined on pages 344–345 are essential to the successful resolution of design problems. In any given situation, however, one or two of the issues may rise in significance above the others and form the core of a design idea or scheme, around which design solutions might be developed. Based on the nature of these key issues, one can identify corresponding key diagrams and drawings that offer the most appropriate and relevant ways of looking at and exploring these pivotal issues.

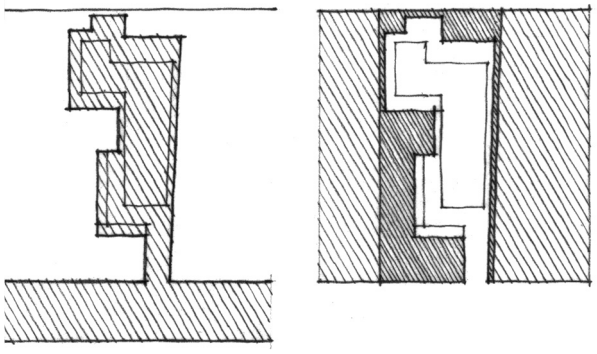


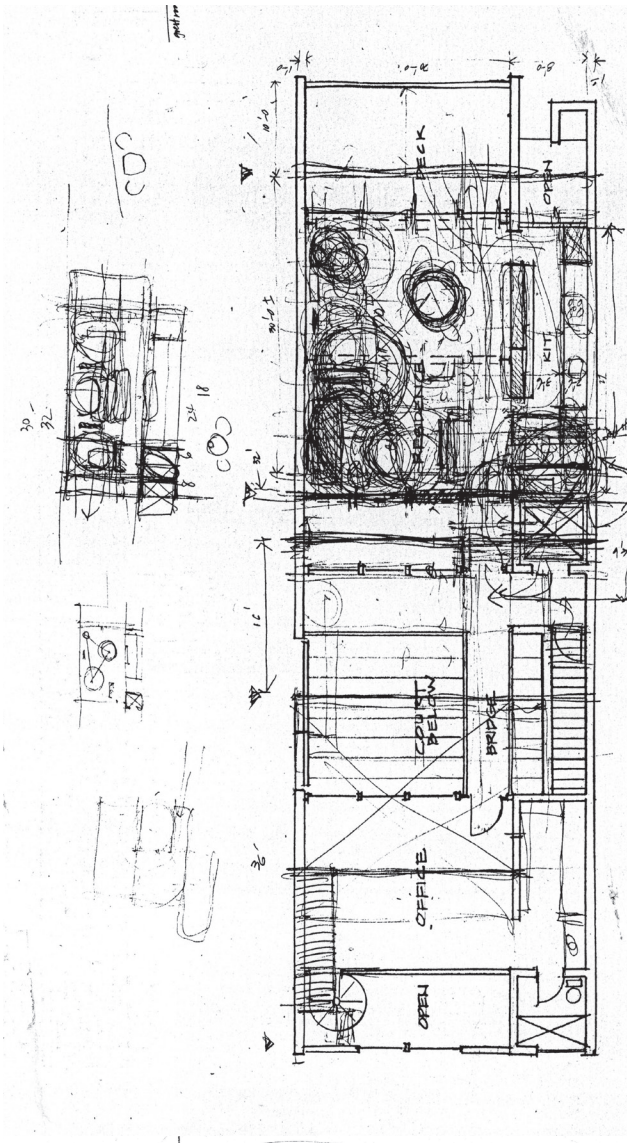


The key diagrams used in developing a design concept naturally lead to the use of the same key drawings in the presentation of the design proposal. In this sense, the presentation phase should not be seen as a separate and disconnected stage but rather a natural evolution of the design development process.

Site and Context Matter

Some design problems are dominated by site and context and are best explored through such representations as aerial photographs, site photographs, and site sections. In urban situations particularly, the analysis and synthesis of figure-ground patterns; paths of movement; locations of nodes, axes, and edges; the presence of historical remnants or artifacts; and perceptual lines of sight and view all call for a representation of existing conditions over which the analysis and synthesis of these urban forces can be played out. For topographically interesting sites, contour maps and site sections provide the best platform on which to study the implications of topography on site access and building structure and form.



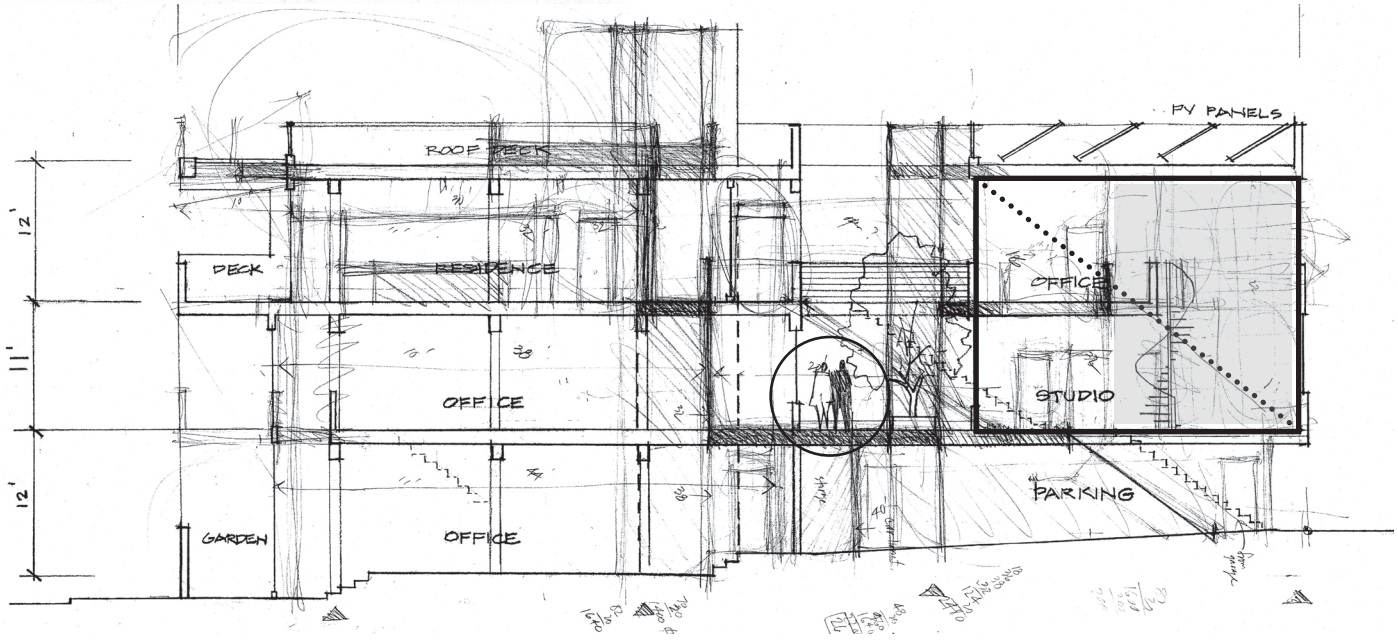


Programmatic Issues Matter

By outlining user and activity requirements, the design program gives life to a building design. In analyzing program requirements, we should be careful not to equate the ad hoc form of a bubble or relational diagram to the resulting form of a building design. In moving forward from any program analysis, we should rely instead on informing, infusing, or overlaying any program analysis with formal and structural insights.

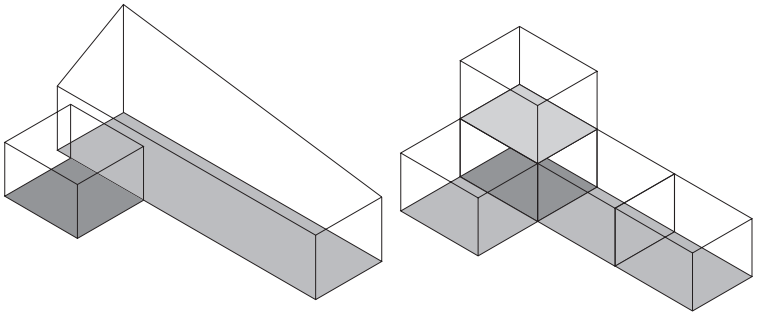
Size, Scale, and Proportion Matter

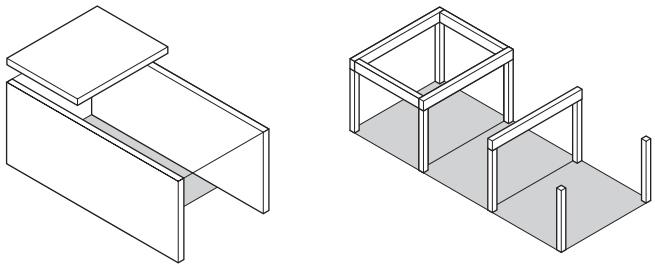
It is especially important to be mindful of size, scale, and proportion. The required size of a program space can be achieved in any number of ways. For example, a 400-square-foot space could be square, rectangular, or elongated into a gallery-like space. Or it could be irregular in shape or have curvilinear boundaries. Among all of these choices, how can we make a decision without referring to other factors, such as fit with other spaces, contextual opportunities and constraints, structural materials and form, and associated expressive qualities?

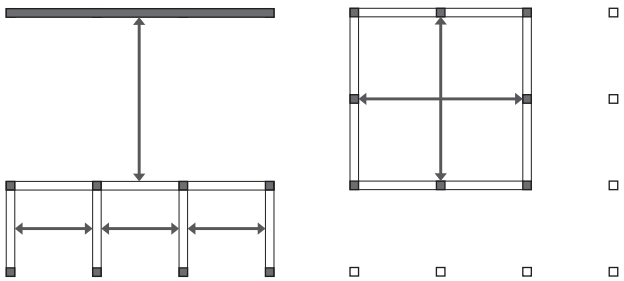


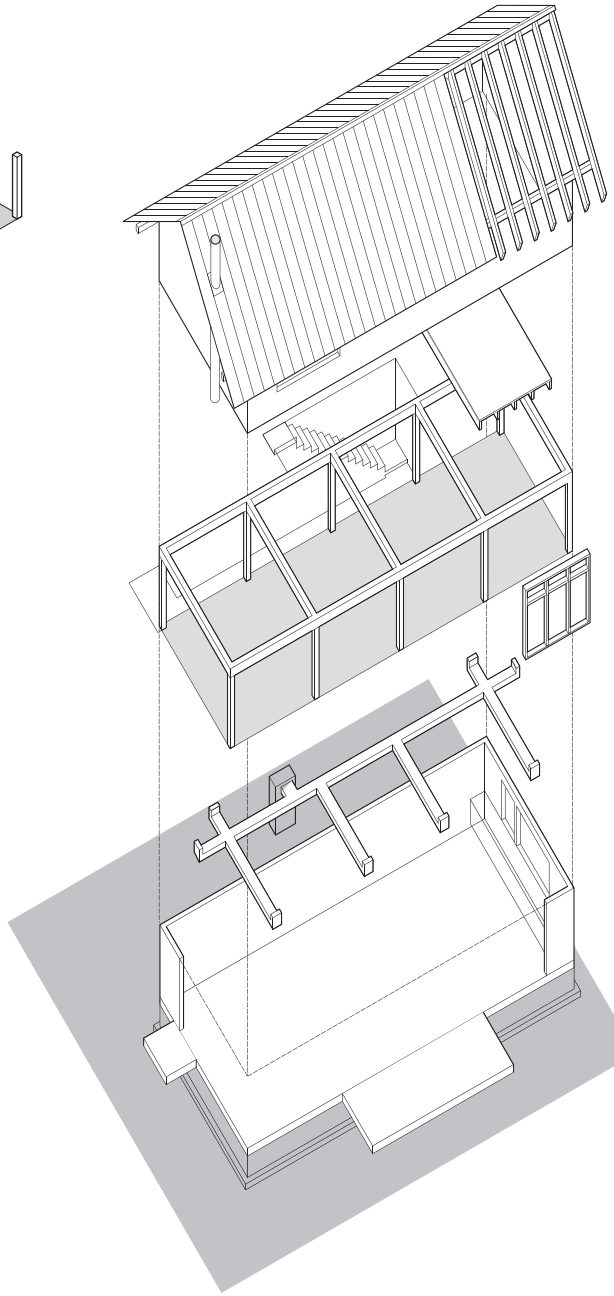
Structural Materials and Systems Matter

An understanding of how structural elements and systems resolve the forces acting on them, along with a knowledge of how materials are assembled and buildings are constructed, serves as a guide when fleshing out the form and substance of a building design. Appreciating the form-generating capabilities of structural materials and systems—the skeletal frameworks of timber, steel, and concrete, the planar vocabulary of masonry-bearing walls and concrete plates, and the volumetric possibilities of advanced diagrid systems—all of these inform the potential of a design scheme for certain formal and expressive qualities.







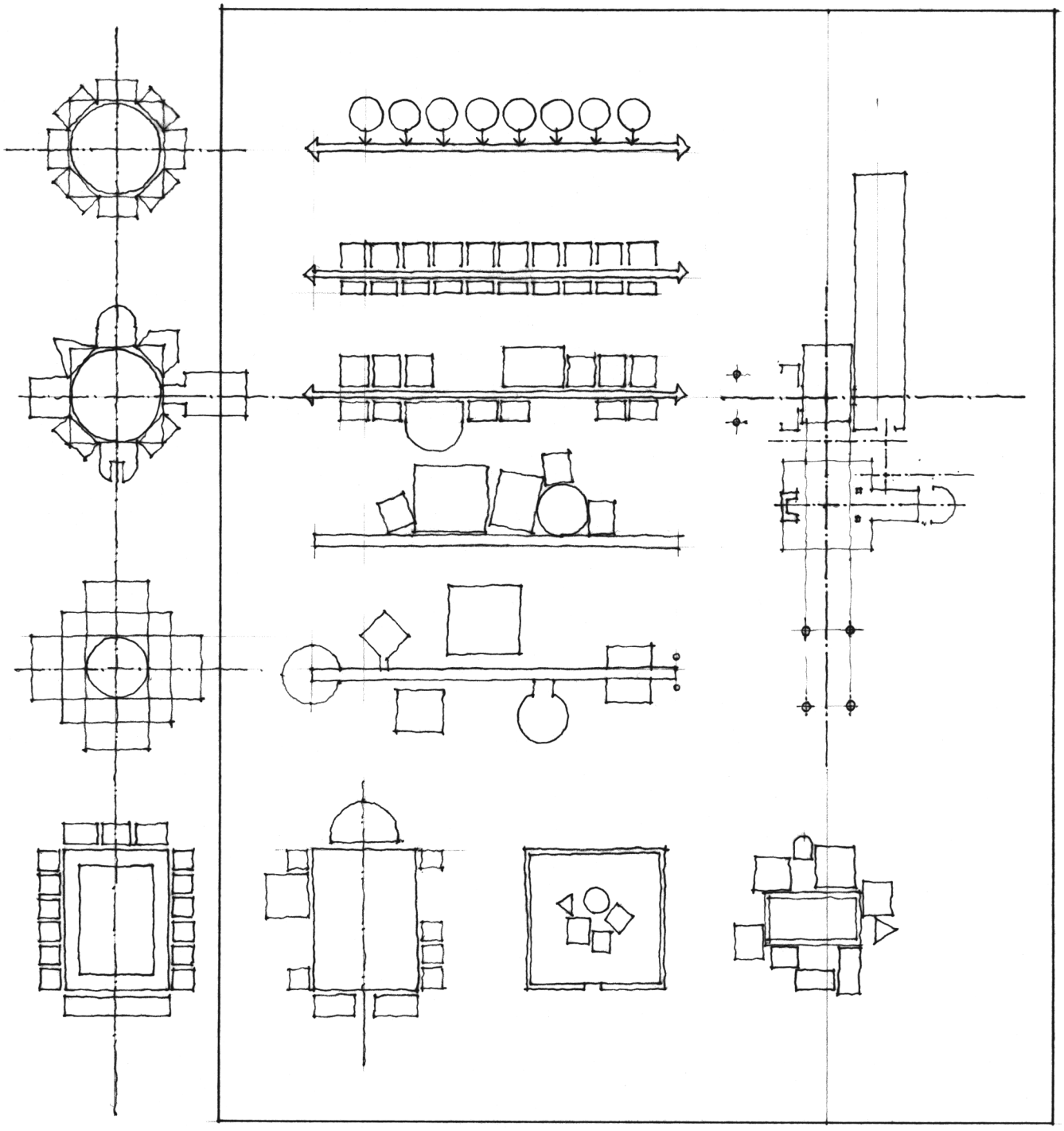


Systems Integration Matters

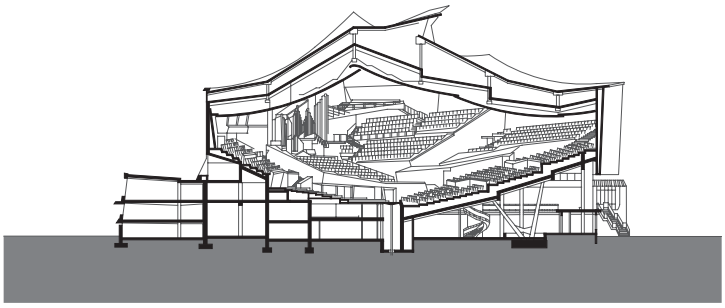
The successful layout of all systems of a building design, from the technical—structural, lighting, and environmental controls—to the spatial, requires that we continuously think about how they are related and integrated in three dimensions. We can do this by overlaying plans and sections, or more holistically with paraline views.

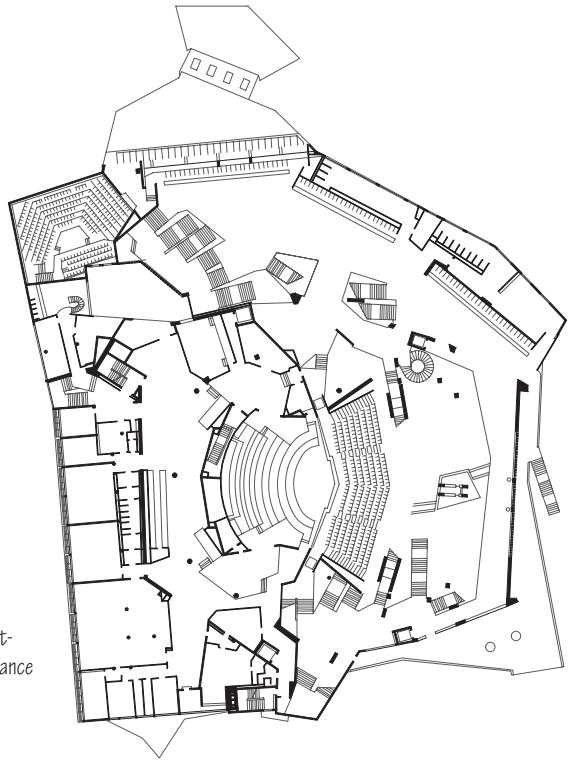
Formal Issues Matter

As we diagram the contextual, programmatic, structural, and constructional issues relevant to a design problem, we should be mindful that the formal qualities of the resulting drawings are natural by-products of the process. We cannot ignore what a diagram looks like, nor what it might express in formal terms.

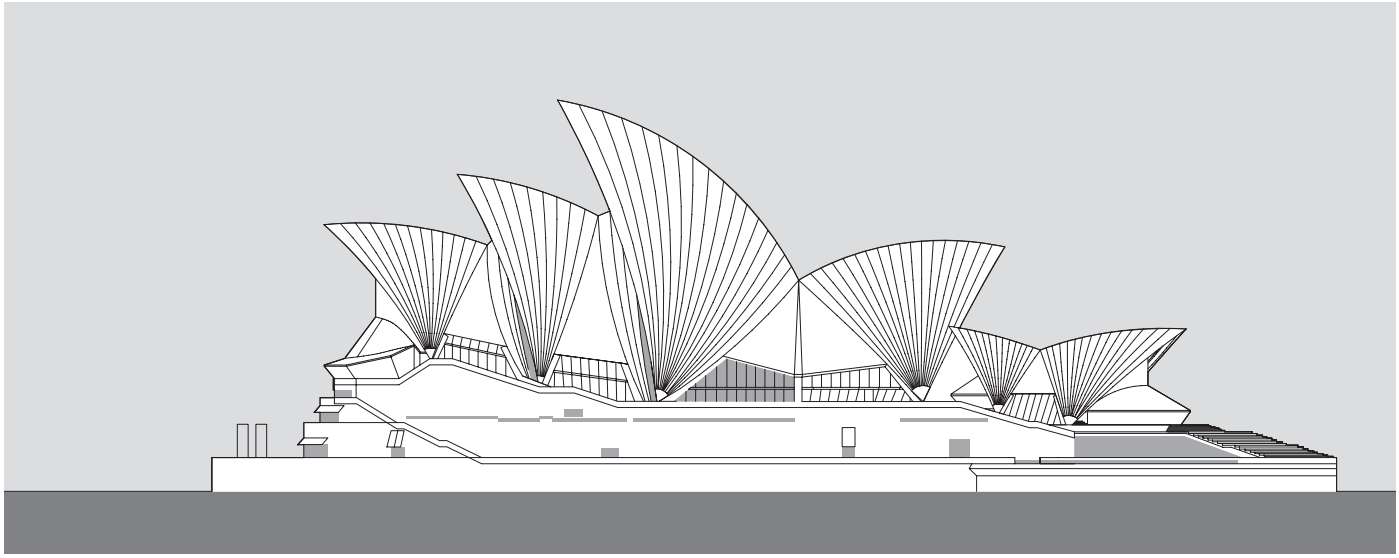


Just as our diagramming of relationships informs the composition of a design, our formal intentions should inform the diagramming process. There are even situations where specific formal qualities might be themselves primary drivers of the design process, as in the linear nature of transportation facilities, the verticality of high-rise structures, or the expansive nature of a suburban campus. Therefore, by overlaying contextual, programmatic, structural, and constructional possibilities with certain ordering principles, such as repetition, rhythm, or symmetry, we can make the adjustments necessary to clarify the essence of a design scheme.

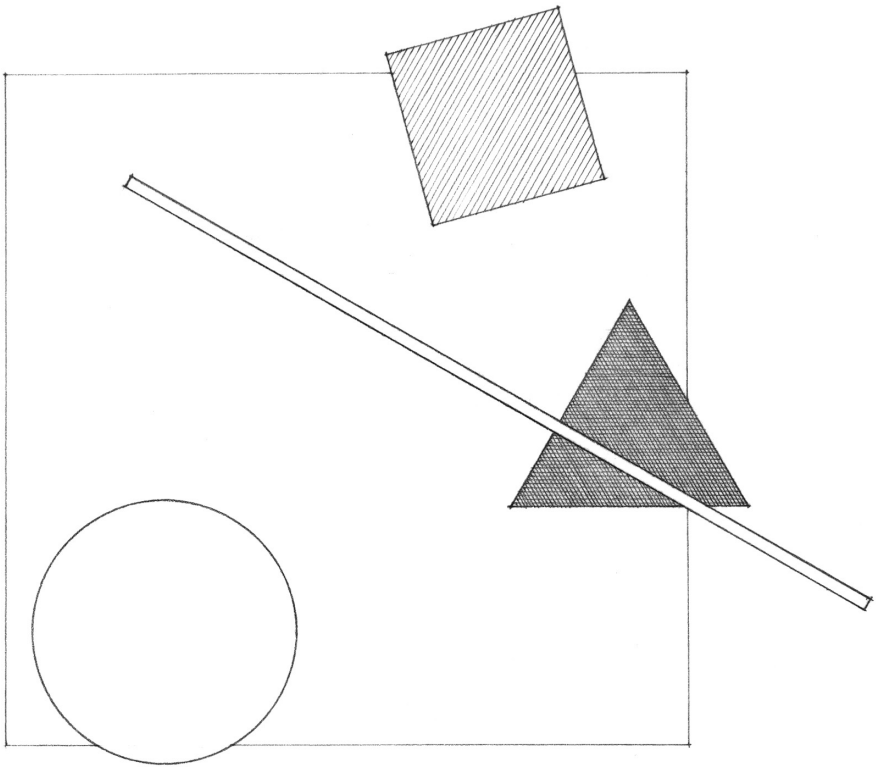




Philharmonic Hall, Berlin, Germany, 1960–63, Hans Scharoun. An example of the Expressionist movement, this concert hall has an asymmetric structure with a tent-like concrete roof and a stage in the middle of terraced seating. Its external appearance is subordinate to the functional and acoustic requirements of the concert hall.



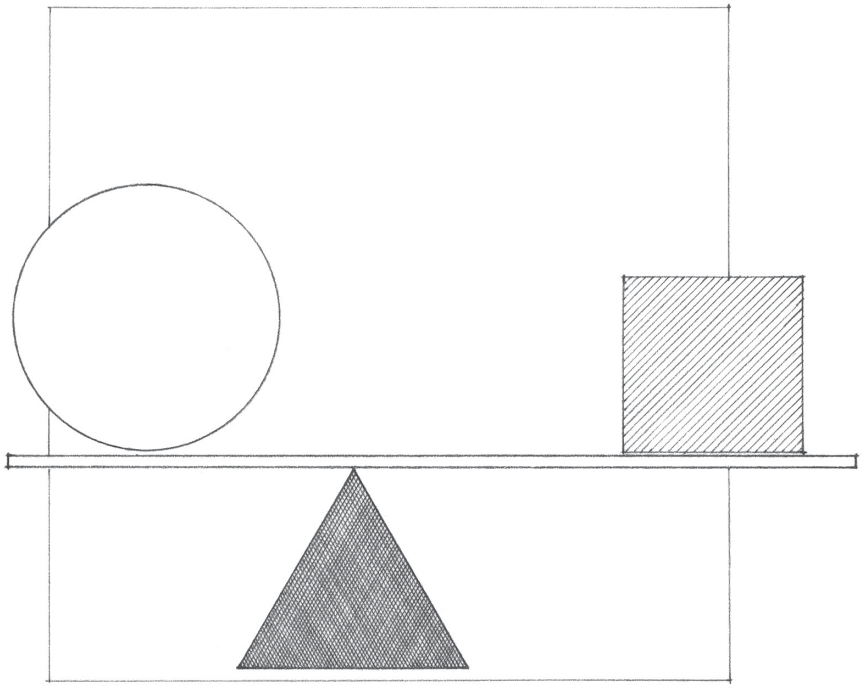
Sydney Opera House, 1973, Jørn Utzon. Iconic shell structures consist of prefabricated, cast-onsite concrete ribs.



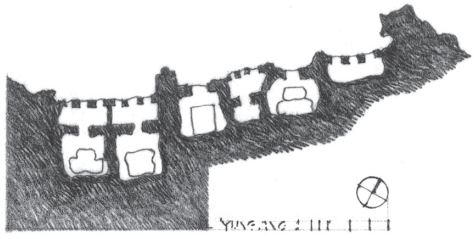
11

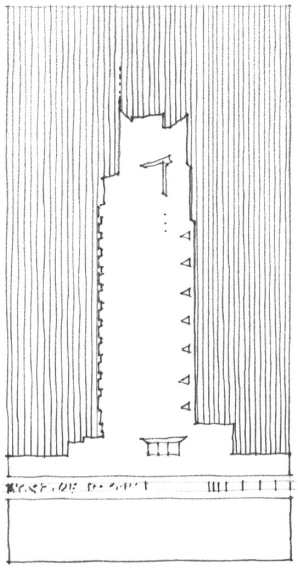
Drawing Composition

Drawing is a system of design. Neither the appropriate choice of viewpoint nor beauty of technique is sufficient without a concern for composition. In composing a drawing, we manipulate the fundamental graphic elements of line, shape, and tone into figure-ground patterns that are coherent and convey visual information. Through the organization and relationship of these elements, we define both the content and the context of a drawing. Planning this composition is therefore critical to the message it communicates.



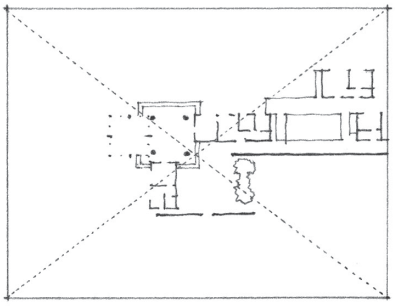
DRAWING FIELD

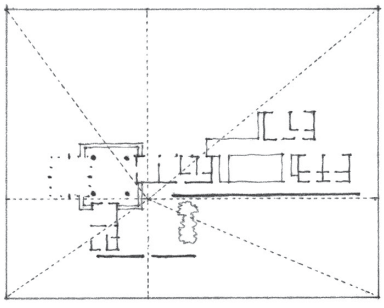


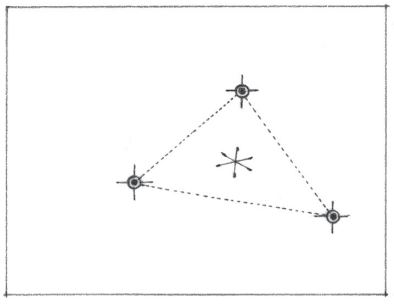


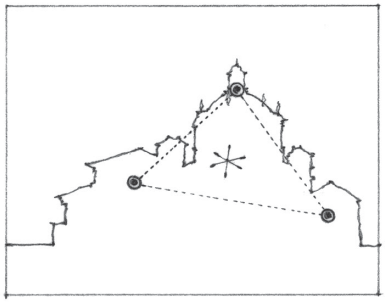
The first step in composing a drawing is to determine the shape, size, and proportions of its field relative to the dimensions of the drawing sheet or board. This field should be large enough to incorporate a portion of the design context as well as space for the drawing title, graphic scale, and associated symbols.

The field of a drawing may be square, rectangular, circular, elliptical, or irregular. Rectangular fields are the most common and may be oriented either vertically or horizontally. Regardless of the shape of a drawing's field, certain fundamental principles apply to the organization of elements within it.

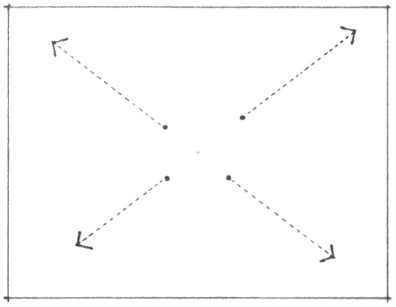


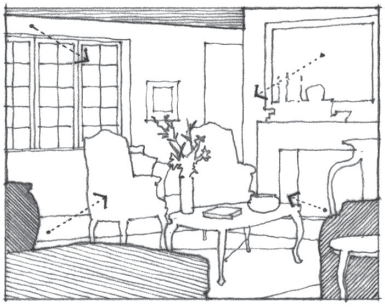


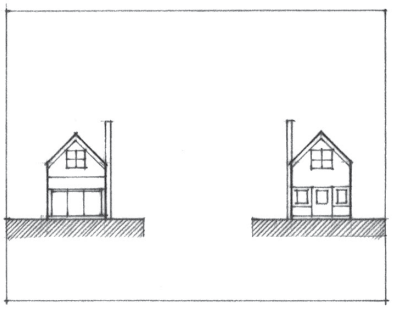


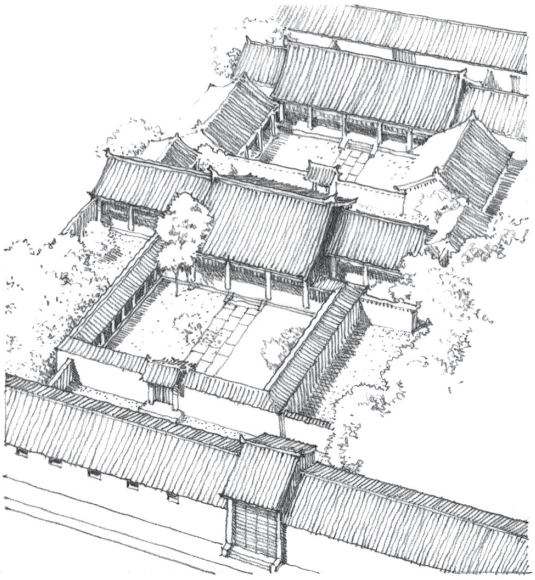


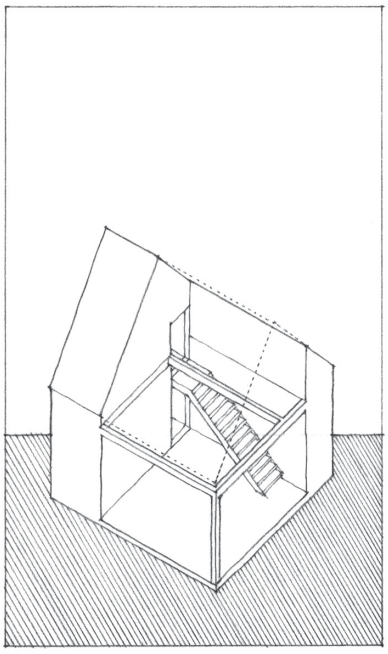
- To create visual interest and movement, place the focal point of a drawing off-center, somewhere in the middle third and not too close to the edges of a field. Placing the focal point in the exact center of the field can lead the eye past important points in the drawing.
- When multiple centers of interest lead the eye through and around the field of a drawing, there is a balance point or visual center of gravity, which should be located near the center of the drawing field.
- The eye follows lines of force established by centers of interest. Avoid diagonal lines that lead the eye to the corners of a drawing field. Establish instead concentric lines of force that keep the eye within the field of a drawing.
- Avoid placing two centers of attention close to opposite edges of a field, thereby creating a center space devoid of interest.

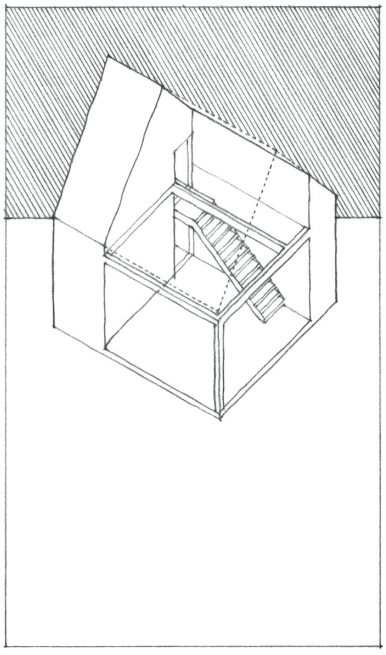




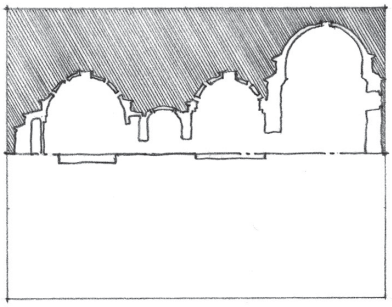


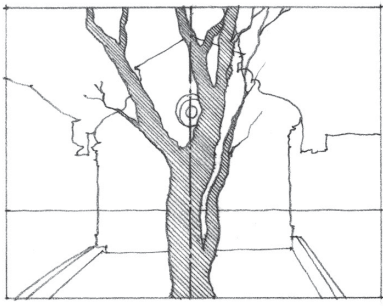


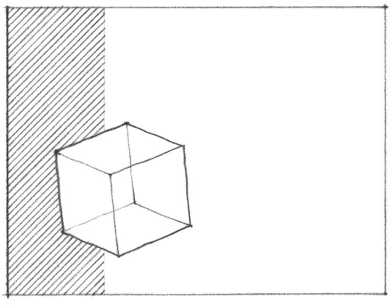


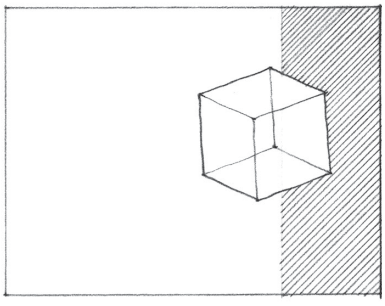


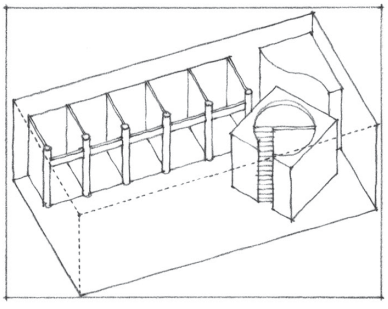
- Dominance of the lower portion of a composition, especially the lower left region, leads to a reading of stability and grounding. On the other hand, dominance of the upper region of a drawing leads to a sense of levity and weightlessness.
- Avoid dividing the field of a drawing into equal halves. The resulting symmetrical division can lead to bland and uninteresting compositions.
- We read from left to right and therefore tend to expect information to begin on the left-hand side of a page. Placing information or a focal point on the right-hand side of a field creates tension, which may require redirecting the eye back into the field of the drawing.
- Allowing certain graphic elements to break through the boundaries of a field can enhance the dynamic quality and emphasize the pictorial depth of a drawing.

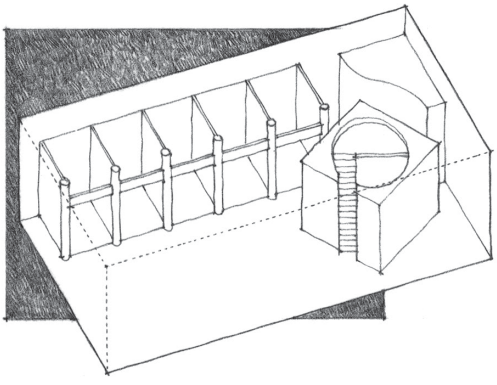




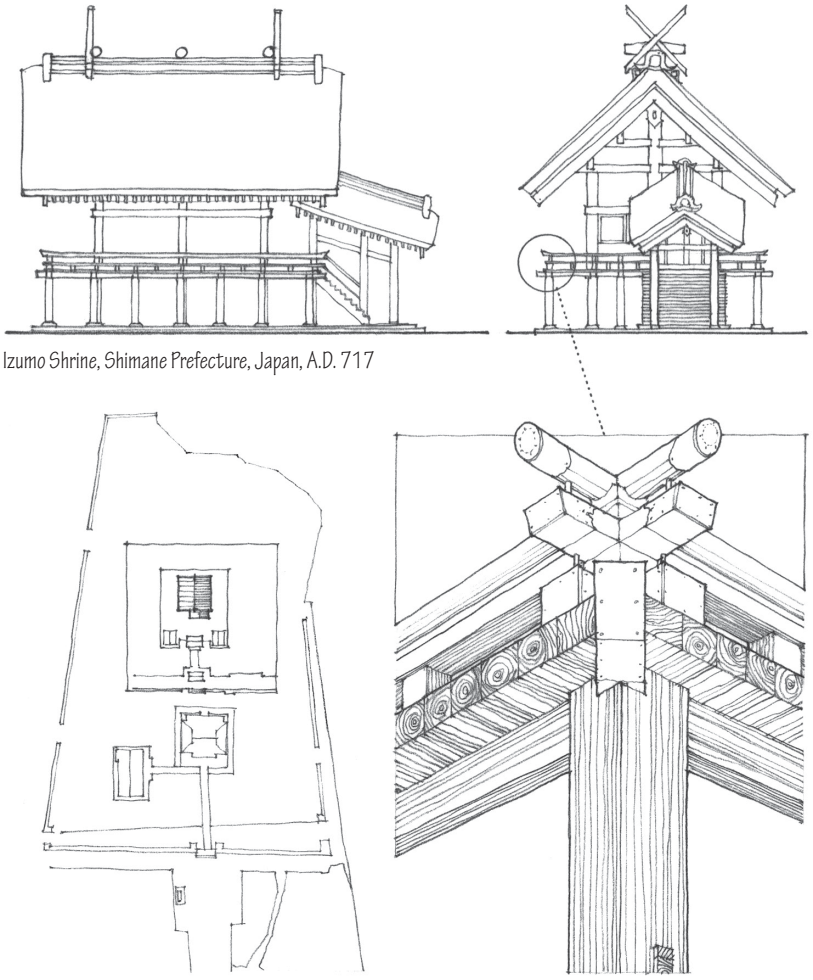








DRAWING SIZE



Izumo Shrine, Shimane Prefecture, Japan, A.D. 717

Design drawings are reduced versions of full-size objects or constructions. In selecting an appropriate scale for a drawing, there are several factors to consider.

First, there is an obvious relationship between the scale of a drawing and the size of the drawing surface. The larger a design, the smaller its representation on the sheet or board; the smaller the design, the larger its scale can be. Also influencing drawing scale is the manner in which drawings are laid out in a presentation. For example, when plans, sections, and elevations comprise a set of cross-referenced information, their scale must enable the entire set to fit on a single sheet or board.

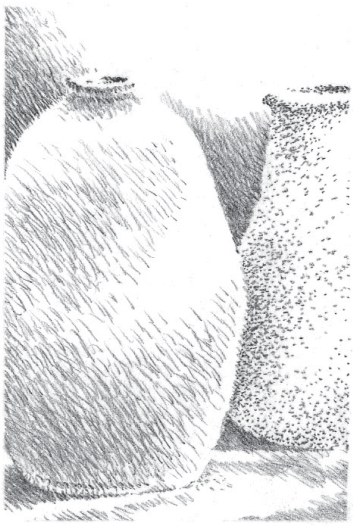
Second, the scale of a drawing regulates the perceived distance between the mind's eye of the viewer and the representation of a design. Close-up views provide a detailed look at the features of the subject. Small-scale drawings increase this perceptual distance but enable the entirety of an idea to be grasped quickly. At the same time, these distant views minimize the amount of detail that can be depicted.

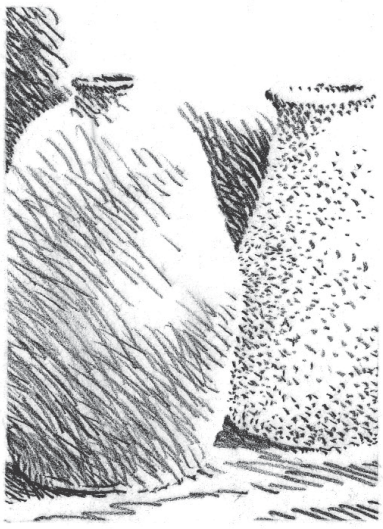
Large-scale drawings, on the other hand, are close-up views that allow a greater degree of detail and complexity to be revealed, as well as a greater range of tonal values to be rendered. As the scale of a drawing increases, the amount of detail required for legibility and credibility also becomes greater. Not including enough detail at larger scales can make a drawing look sparse and diagrammatic.

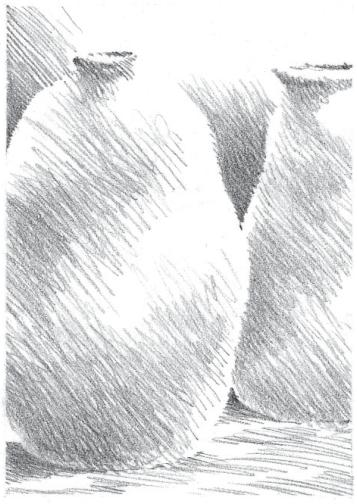
Finally, the scale of a drawing influences the type of drawing tool and technique we use. Fine-tipped instruments, such as pens and thin-lead pencils, encourage drawing at a small scale and enable us to focus on fineness of detail. Broad-tipped tools, such as color markers and charcoal, promote large-scale drawing and discourage the study of small-scale features.

Resolution refers to the ability of our visual system to resolve or distinguish two objects—from the scale of an on-screen pixel to a truck driving down a highway—even though they are very close together in our field of view. In drawing, our ability to resolve distinctions in a composition of lines, shapes, and tonal contrasts is important to our reading of the image, which ultimately depends not only on how the image was created but also its size and the distance from which we view it.

The interaction between drawing medium and surface determines the relative smoothness or coarseness of a hand-drawn image; the results are immediately discernible to the eye and can be evaluated for proper levels of contrast and detail. Knowing the nature of the subject matter, the size of our drawing, and the distance at which it will be viewed, we can determine how smooth or coarse the graphics can or should be. For example, our eyes can resolve the textural qualities of the charcoal dust collected on the rough surface up to a certain distance, beyond which the distinctive pattern of darks and lights begins to blur and forms, to the eye, smoother tonal gradations. On the other hand, the details of a small drawing done with a fine-tipped ink pen must be scrutinized from a relatively close distance to be appreciated.



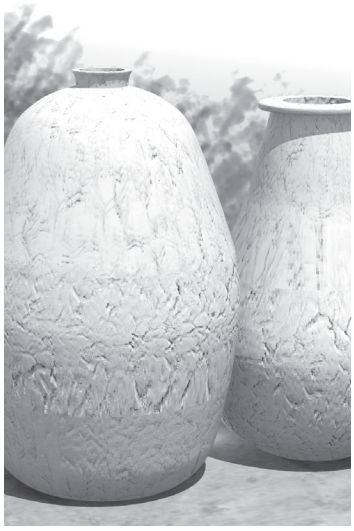


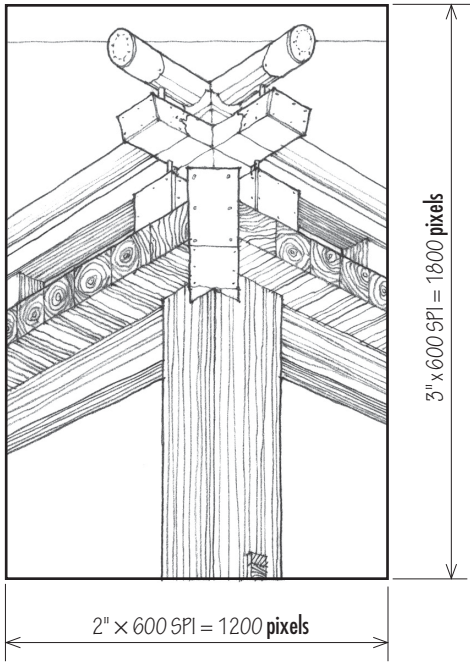


Digital Resolution

While the size and resolution of an original hand drawing are self-evident, a digital image can vary in both size and resolution, depending on how the image is captured and the method by which it is output for viewing. This relationship between size, resolution, and visual texture is an important issue to understand when using digital images for a presentation. Depending on whether we are scanning, displaying, or printing, we measure and express digital resolution in terms of samples, pixels, or dots per inch.

The following section refers specifically to raster images, which are made up of a rectangular grid of pixels and are resolution-dependent. Vector graphics, on the other hand, use mathematically based geometric primitives such as point, lines, curves, and shapes to construct digital images. Vector images are resolution-independent and can be scaled more easily up to the quality of the output device, whether a monitor, projector, or printer.





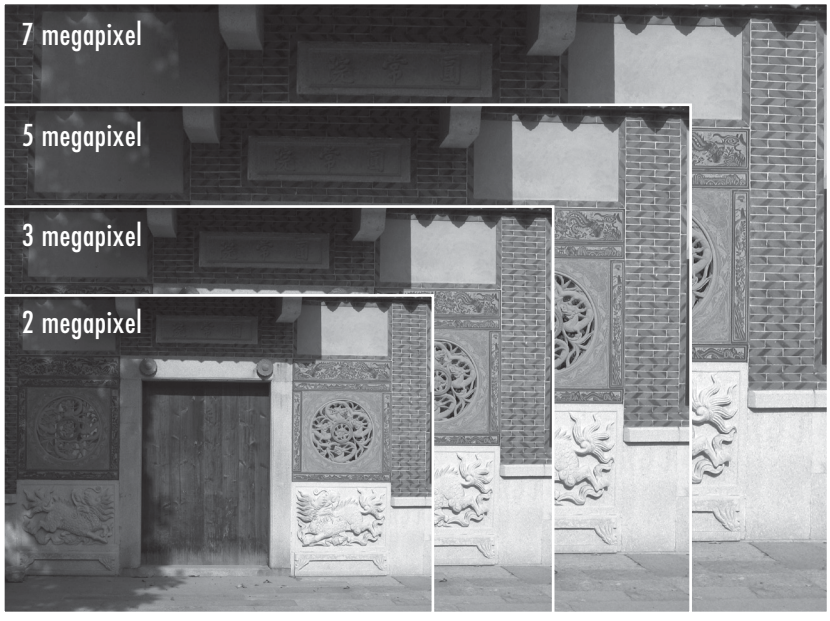
A 3" × 2" image scanned at 600 SPI or DPI would produce a digital image that is 1800 pixels high and 1200 pixels wide.

Scanning Resolution

To reproduce an image, a scanner uses a charge-coupled device (CCD) or other sensor to sample portions of the original image. The higher the samples per inch (SPI), the higher the resolution of the scanned image and the more faithful the scan is to the original. Many manufacturers use dots per inch (DPI) in place of SPI in specifying the resolution capability of their scanners, but technically there are no dots in the scanned image until it is printed.

When scanning a hand drawing or photograph, we should know the final output method to ensure that we scan at the proper resolution. For example, a scanning resolution that may be acceptable for posting on the web could result in poor-quality printed output.

Scanners produce raster images whose scanned resolution can be resized and resampled using image editing software. Because most scanned images require some type of image editing, scanning at a slightly higher resolution is often advantageous. It is easier to delete unneeded resolution after scanning than it is to restore lost resolution during editing.



This illustration shows the relative sizes of images recorded from 2 through 7 megapixels.

Camera Resolution

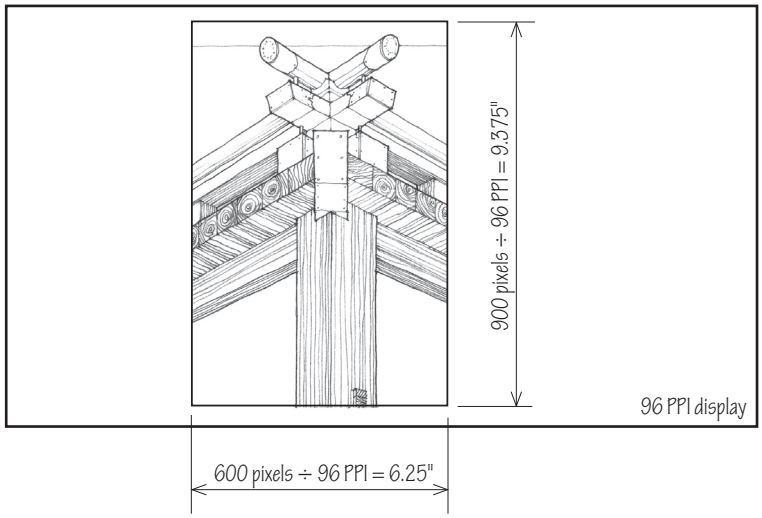
Digital cameras, like scanners, use an electronic sensor to capture images. Camera resolutions are usually expressed in terms of megapixels or how many millions of pixels it can record in a single image. For example, a camera that captures 1600 × 1200 pixels produces an image with a resolution of 1.92 million pixels, which is rounded up to 2 megapixels for marketing purposes.

- A 7-megapixel image with a resolution of 3072 × 2304 pixels can produce a photo-quality print up to 20" × 30".
- A 5-megapixel image with a resolution of 2560 × 1920 pixels can produce a photo-quality print up to 11" × 14".
- A 3-megapixel image with a resolution of 2048 × 1536 pixels can produce a photo-quality print up to 8" × 10".
- A 2-megapixel image with a resolution of 1600 × 1200 pixels can produce a photo-quality print up to 5" × 7".

Higher camera resolutions provide more pixels to work with when creating large prints or cropping images.

Screen Resolution

When creating images for on-screen display or posting on the web, we should be thinking in pixels per inch (PPI). Computer monitors typically display images at 72 or 96 PPI but high-resolution monitors may display more pixels per inch. Creating and scanning images beyond the screen resolution of a monitor is a waste of image data if the image will never be printed and unnecessarily increases file sizes and download times. If an image is to be printed at the same size as the original or larger, then increasing the scanning resolution of the image will provide us with the additional image data needed to maintain good-quality output resolution. Note, too, that the same picture on a low-resolution monitor looks larger than it does on a higher-resolution monitor because the same number of pixels are spread out over a larger area.



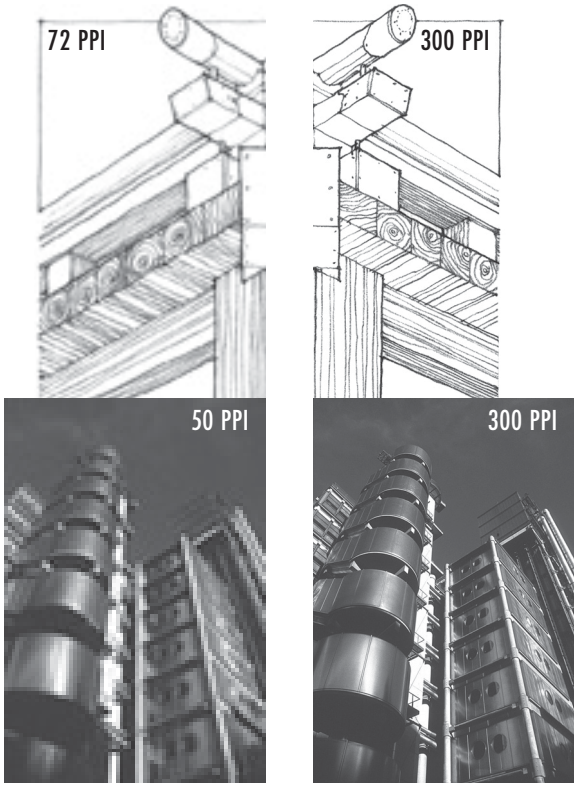
The same image on the previous page scanned at 300 SPI would produce an image that is 600 pixels wide and 900 pixels high. When viewed on a 96 PPI screen, the image would take up an area of 6.25 × 9.375 inches (600/96 × 900/96).

Print Resolution

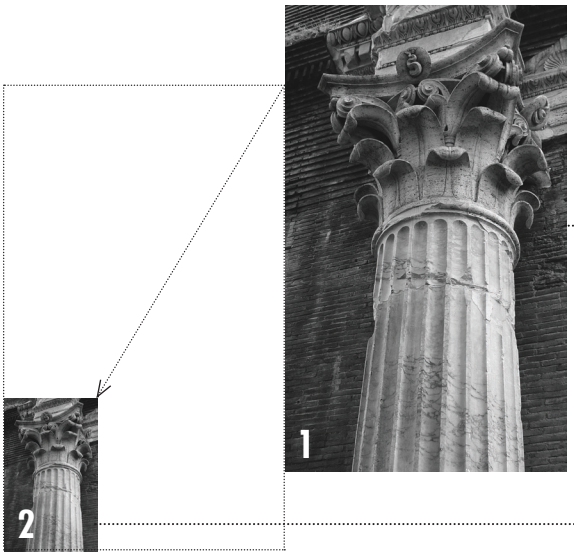
Print resolution, measured in dots per inch (DPI), refers to the dots of ink or toner an imagesetter, laser printer, or other printing device can place within an inch to print text and graphics. Most printers print the same number of dots horizontally and vertically. For example, a 600 DPI printer will place 600 tiny little dots across one inch horizontally and 600 vertically.

In general, the more dots per inch a printer is capable of outputting, the sharper and clearer the printed image. Correspondingly, the lower the DPI of a printer, the less fine detail it can print and the fewer shades of gray it can simulate. Because screen resolution is typically lower than print resolution, low-resolution images that look fine on-screen will almost always print poorly.

The quality of printed output depends not only on the resolution of the printer but also the type of paper used. Some types of paper absorb ink more readily than others, resulting in the ink dots spreading out (dot gain) and effectively reducing the DPI of the image. For example, because ink spreads more on newsprint, the ink dots must be farther apart than on high-quality coated paper, which can accept more closely spaced ink dots.



A visual comparison of low-res and high-res images printed at the same physical size and resolution.



On-screen images

How SPI, PPI and DPI Are Related

In practice, SPI and PPI are often used interchangeably, and DPI is frequently used in place of one or both terms. However, each sample, pixel, or dot in a digital image behaves differently, depending on whether it is scanned, viewed on screen, or printed. When working with digital images, a particular challenge is reconciling the difference between the size and resolution of a scanned image, how the image appears on-screen, and how it will print.

To illustrate this:

- Scan a 3" × 5" (physical size) photographic image at 600 SPI or DPI (scan resolution).
- The size of the scanned raster image is 3" × 5" or 1800 pixels wide × 3000 pixels high, and the file size is 5.15 megabytes (MB).
- It would take a screen having a resolution of 96 PPI that is 31.25" (3000 pixels ÷ 96 PPI) high to display the image at full size.

1. If we use image editing software to downsample the 600 DPI image to 300 PPI but retain its 3" × 5" physical dimensions, its pixel dimensions would decrease to 900 × 1500 pixels, which would require a 96 PPI screen that is only 15.625" (1500 pixels ÷ 96 PPI) high to display the full-size image.

2. If we downsample the 300 DPI image to 96 PPI but retain its 3" × 5" physical size, its pixel dimensions would decrease to 288 × 480 pixels. The on-screen image will appear even smaller than the 300 PPI image because the monitor displays in pixels and the 300 PPI image, which contains more pixels, takes up more screen space than the 96 PPI image.

3. If we do not downsample the original scanned 600 DPI image but reduce its resolution to 300 DPI, its physical dimensions will increase to 6" × 10" because its pixel dimensions remain 1800 × 3000 pixels. [(1800 × 3000 pixels) ÷ 300 DPI = 6" × 10"]

When printed at 300 DPI, the first two digital images produce the same 3" × 5" prints but the 300 PPI image will look better than the 96 PPI image because it squeezes in more dots per inch. A 6" × 10" 300 DPI print of the third image spreads the same number of dots as the first image over a larger area. This is a method for producing a larger print size of an original image while maintaining an overall sense of quality.

When printed at 600 DPI, the three digital images produce prints that vary greatly in size.

1. When printed at 600 DPI, the first image produces a 1.5" × 2.5" image because the same number of pixels are printed at a greater density. [(900 × 1500 pixels) ÷ 600 DPI = 1.5" × 2.5"]

2. The second image printed at 600 DPI would produce a 0.48" × 0.8" image. [(288 × 480 pixels) ÷ 600 DPI = 0.48" × 0.8"]

3. When printed at 600 DPI, the third image produces the same 3" × 5" image as a 300 DPI print of the first image because both contain the same number of pixels. [(1800 × 3000 pixels) ÷ 600 DPI = 3" × 5"]

The first two cases produce smaller but much cleaner images on paper.

Print images

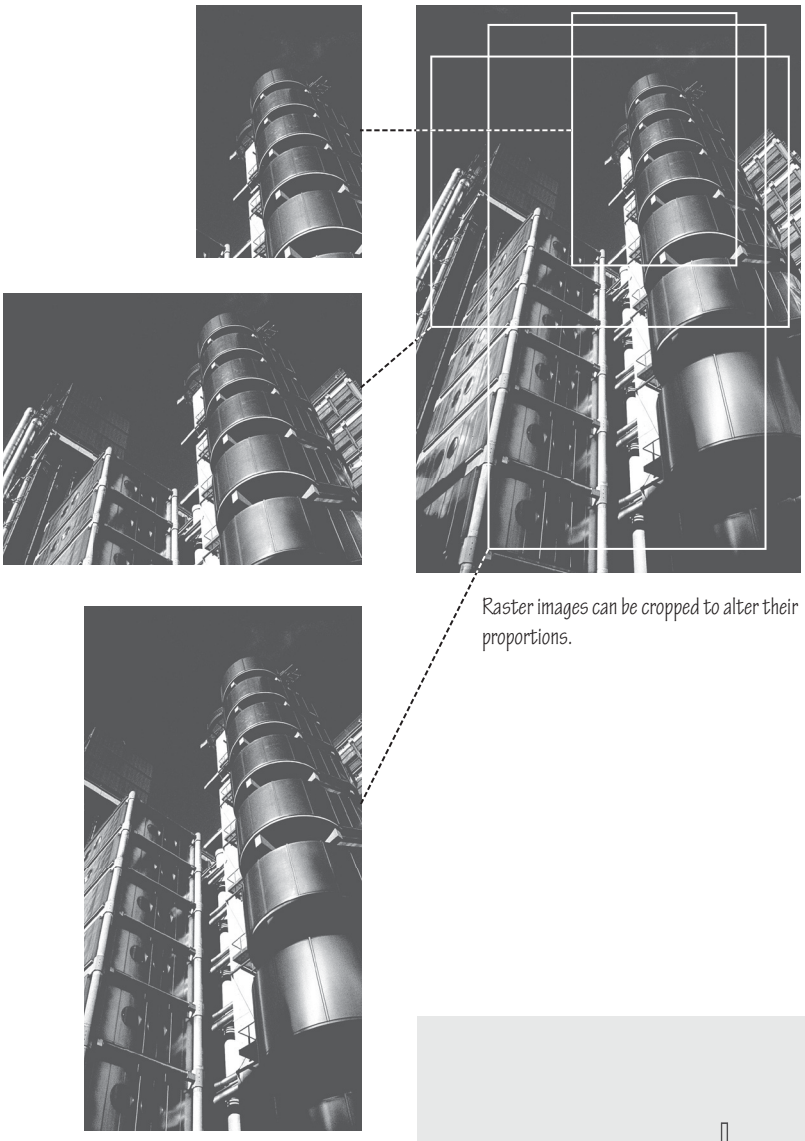
How Much Resolution Is Enough?

When printing presentation sheets or boards, a range of resolutions from 150 to 300 DPI will produce good- to high-quality output. Resolutions higher than 300 DPI would increase the print quality but the degree of enhancement may not warrant the larger files sizes. On the other hand, resolutions less than 150 DPI may result in coarse or blurry images that lack detail and subtle variations in color and tone. The range of 150–300 DPI, therefore, is a general guideline and can be adjusted depending on print size and method of printing.

Presentations that are to be viewed on-screen or posted to a website can have a lower resolution than for print because the majority of displays have a pixel density of between 72 and 150 PPI. These monitors would not be able to display any additional pixel information beyond their native screen resolution. Although advancements in technology are increasing the pixel density of monitors, image resolutions between 100 and 150 PPI are generally enough for good image quality. For presentations designed to be projected as a slide show or animation, the resolution should match the resolution of the digital projector.

Note that digital resolution also depends on viewing distance. An image that looks pixelated when viewed up close might appear to be of high quality if large enough to be viewed from a greater distance.

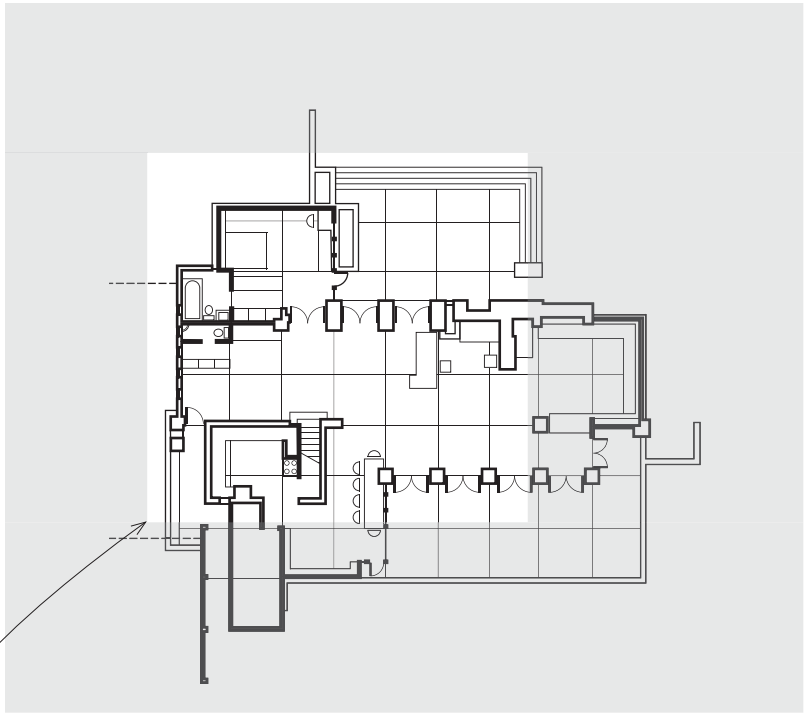
CROPPING AND MASKING IMAGES



Raster images can be cropped to alter their proportions.

In addition to adjusting the resolution of a digital image, we can also crop the image to alter its size, proportions, and figure-ground relationships. Cropping a digital image retains the desired portion of the image and cuts the remainder. Masking, on the other hand, involves creating a window through which we view a selected portion of the image. The size, shape, and position of the opening controls what we see and do not see of the original image.

Raster images are usually cropped, while vector images are typically masked. Once cropped, a raster image cannot regain the material that was cut. A masked vector image is more flexible since we can manipulate and adjust the size, shape, and position of the mask.



The size, shape, and position of the mask determines what is seen of the original image.

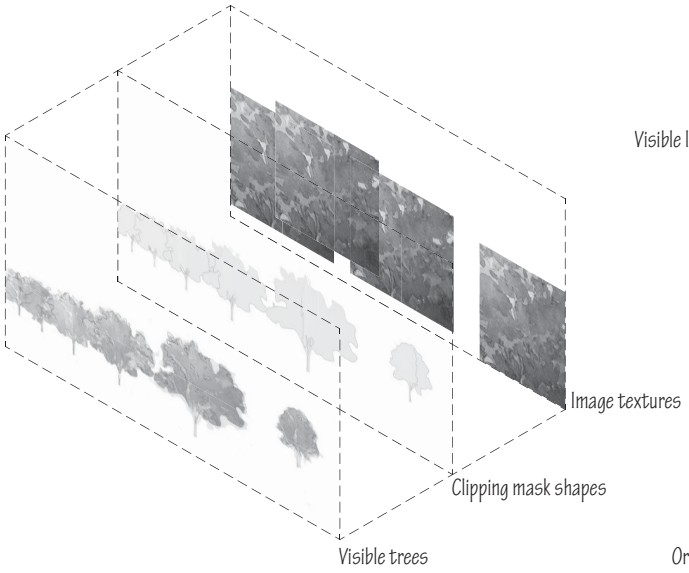
When developing hybrid drawings, the use of cropping or masking within each layer provides flexibility and, if done in a nondestructive editing manner, the edited digital information can be restored to its original state. Hybrid drawings rely upon multiple layers to add backgrounds, crop building edges, and place vegetation and figures.

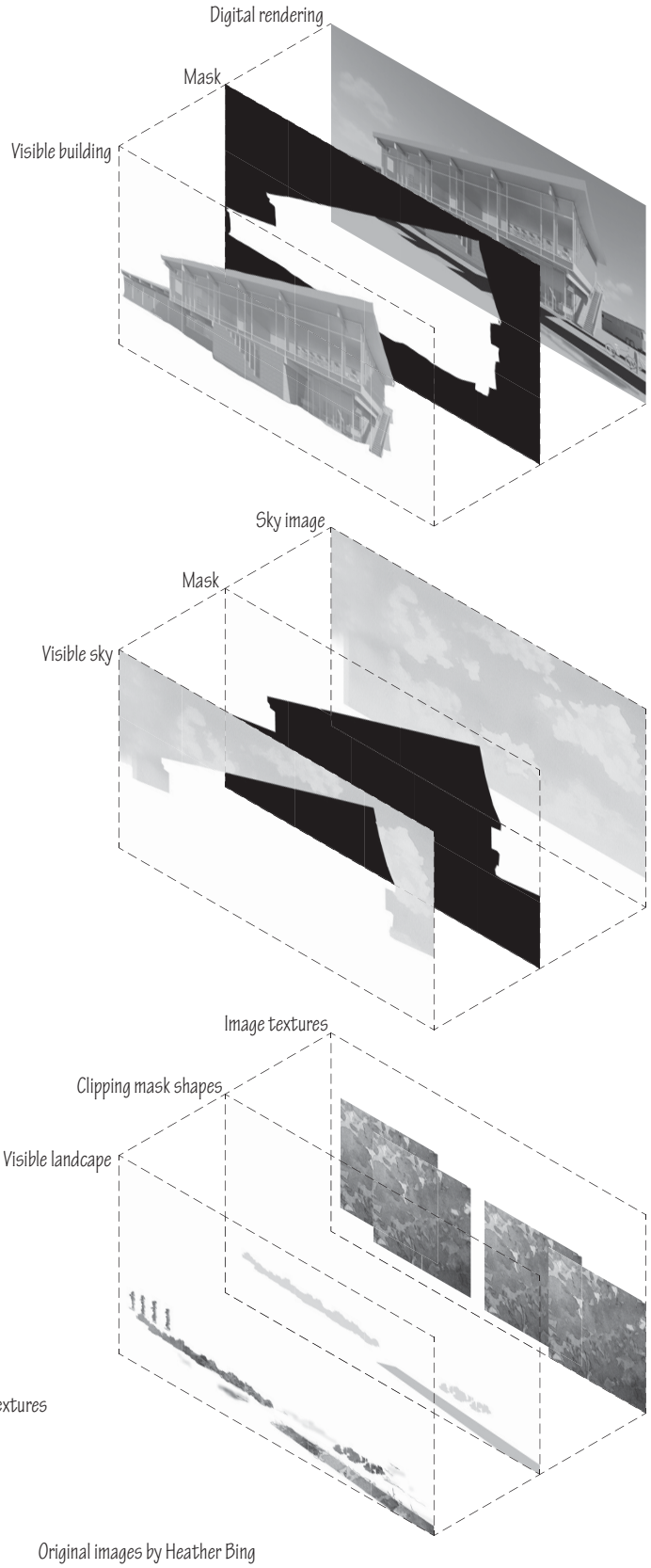
With a layer mask, black areas block portions of the image while areas of white allow the image to remain visible. When using a clipping mask, a shape is drawn that determines what portion of the image is visible. Multiple layers can use the same clipping mask.

Often a hybrid drawing will begin with a digital rendering that contains elements a designer wishes to delete. Using selections to trace the perimeter of the building, a mask shape of the building is created and used to display only the building image.

A similar process is used to place sky or background context into a drawing. Sky images should be appropriate to the rest of the drawing. Sky images that are overly saturated, or that display a different weather type or excessive detail, can distract from the primary intent of the image. If the background extends down to the horizon line in the drawing, the sky image should meet the ground in an appropriate manner.

While landscaping elements can be pasted into a drawing, clipping masks can also be used. By using an outline of a tree or shrub to draw the clipping mask shape, the mask is applied to image textures, which may include prior drawings or paintings of landscaping and photographs, effectively creating landscaping elements within the clipping mask shape.





Original images by Heather Bing

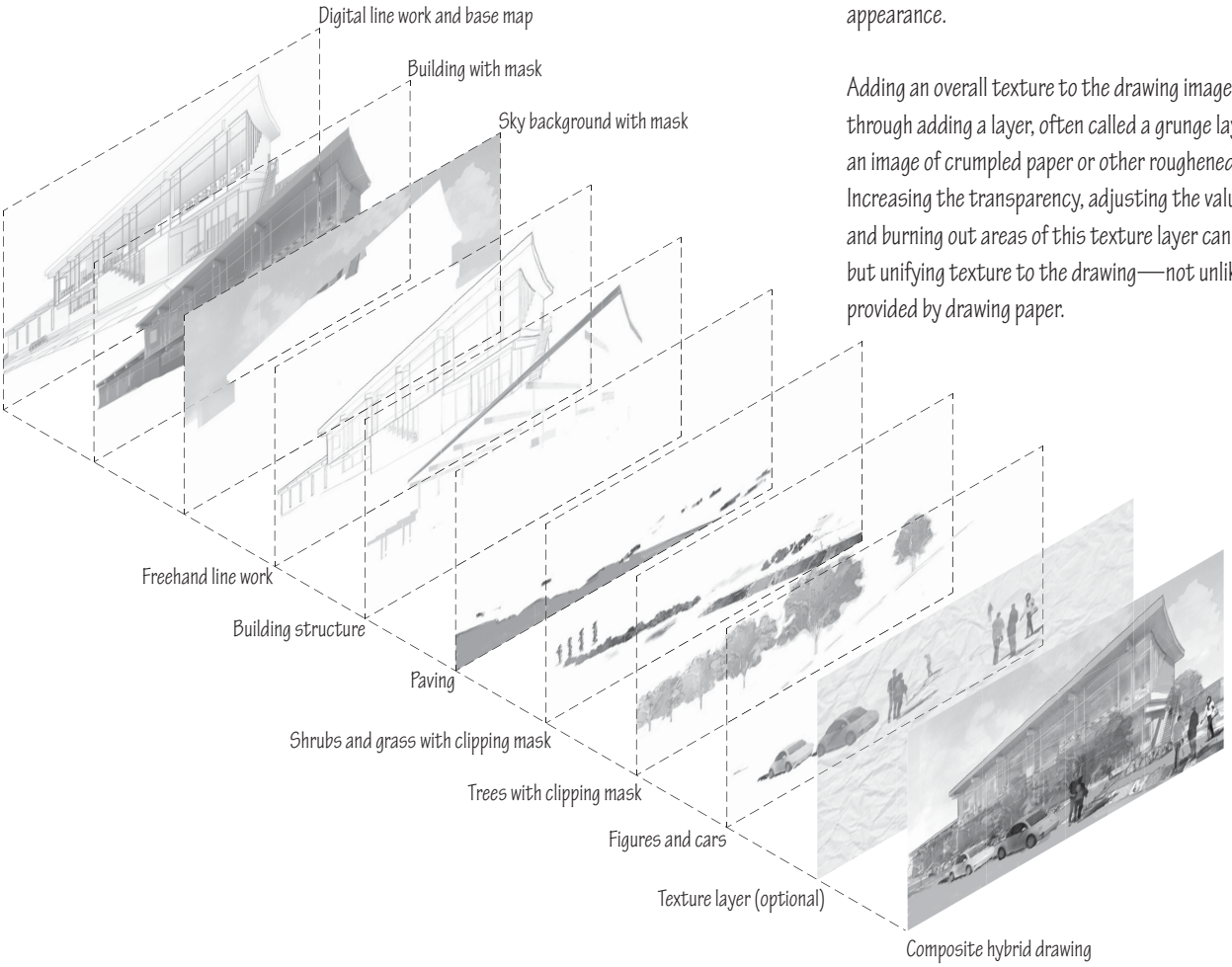
Original drawing by Heather Bing

Once masked, the building, background, and vegetation layers are combined with other layers that provide additional detail to the drawing. The original rendering image serves as a base map for adding different colors or tones to a range of elements, including the glazing, structure, roof, or wall planes. By making adjustments to each of these elements on separate layers, color, value, texture, and transparency can be incrementally adjusted for each element—similar to how a hand drawing is slowly and incrementally developed.

Additional layers can be added to enhance the visual quality of the hybrid drawing. For example, the line drawing from the digital model can be placed in this composite image, providing for a sharp edge to the brush strokes in the image. The transparency of this layer can be adjusted to soften or harden the edges it provides.

Alternatively, the digital model lines can be traced by hand, scanned, and placed in the drawing, creating less defined edges to the elements. In some cases, a wireframe of the digital model is placed on a layer. With a high level of transparency the wireframe lines can give the building elements a ghosted appearance.

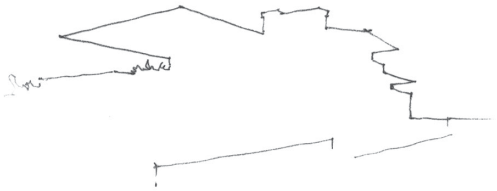
Adding an overall texture to the drawing image is often done through adding a layer, often called a grunge layer, with an image of crumpled paper or other roughened surfaces. Increasing the transparency, adjusting the value, and dodging and burning out areas of this texture layer can provide a subtle, but unifying texture to the drawing—not unlike the texture provided by drawing paper.



The size of a graphic image relative to the size of its field determines how we read the figure.

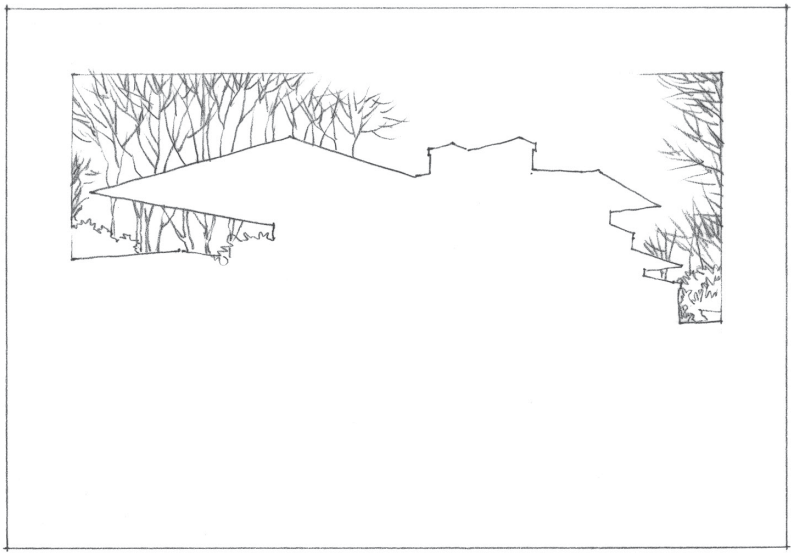
Vignette

Situating the drawing in a large field emphasizes its individuality. The space between a drawing and the edge of a sheet typically should be similar to or larger than the dimensions of the drawing.



Interacting

If we enlarge the drawing or reduce the size of its field, its figure begins to interact visually with its background. The field begins to have a recognizable shape or figural quality of its own.

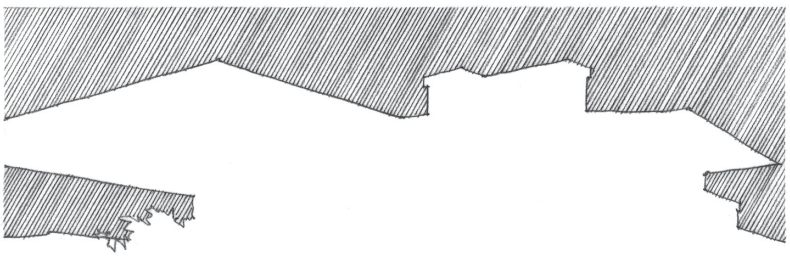


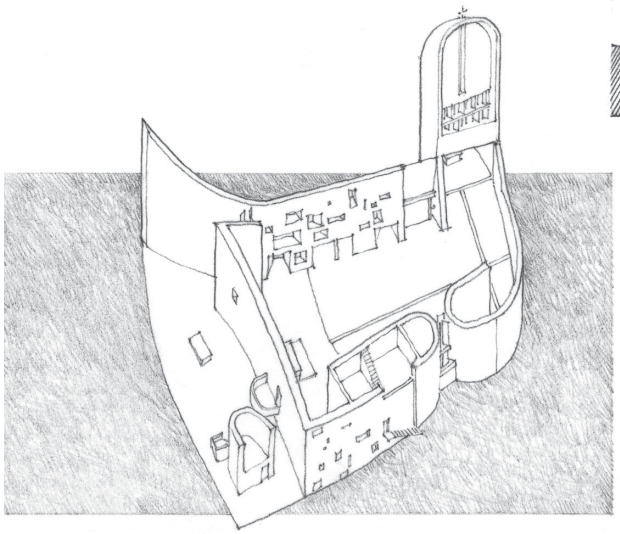
Ambiguous

Enlarging the drawing or reducing its field still further establishes an ambiguous figure-ground relationship in which the field elements can also be seen as figures.

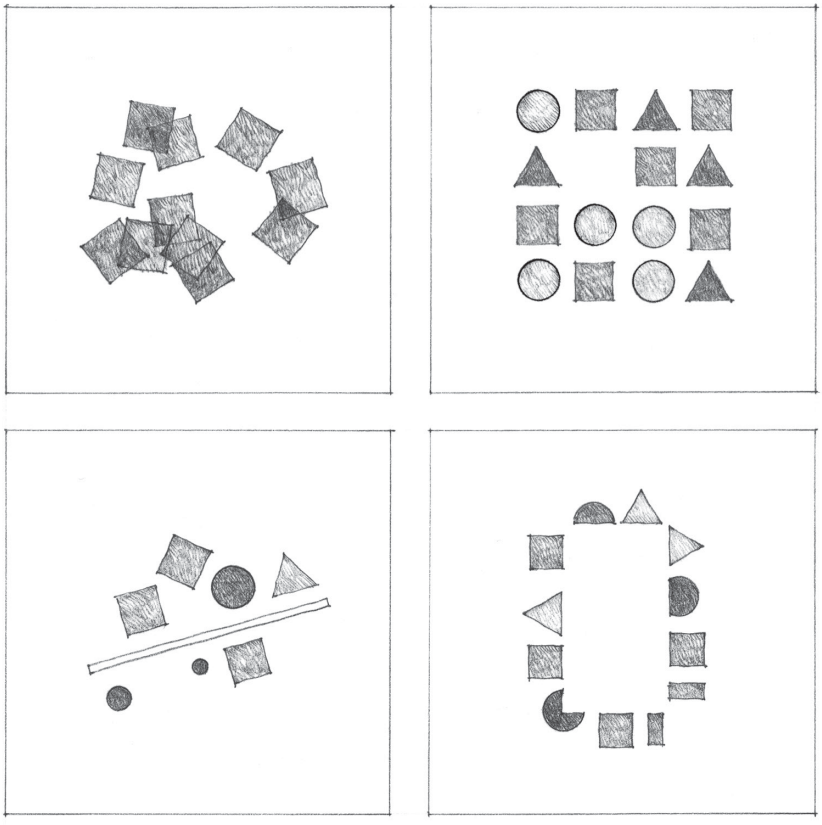
When a paraline drawing, perspective drawing, or other graphic image does not have a rectangular shape, it tends to float in its field. We can stabilize the image with either a title block or a horizontal band of color or value.

When framing a drawing, avoid using a double or triple mat. Doing so can create the impression of a figure on a background that itself has a background. Therefore, attention would be diverted away from the figure, where it belongs, to the frame around it.





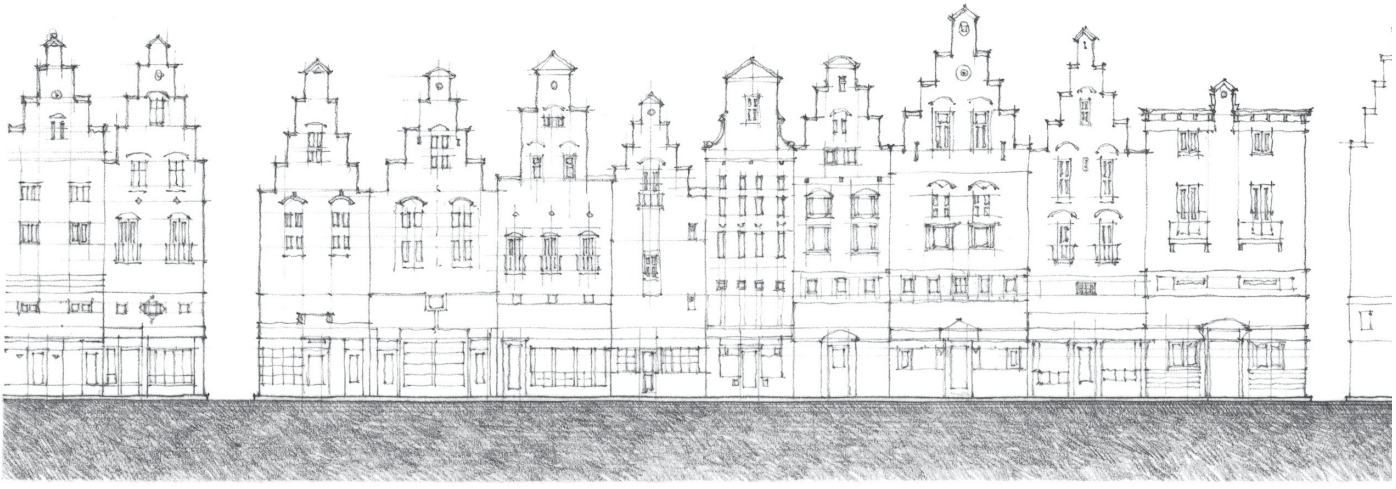
Notre Dame Du Haut, Ronchamp, France, 1950–55, Le Corbusier



Drawing composition concerns the relationships among the parts of a graphic image rather than the rendering of any particular part. We can apply certain principles of visual design to regulate the organization of a drawing composition to promote a sense of order and unity.

Unity and variety

The following ordering principles, in promoting unity, do not exclude the pursuit of variety and visual interest. Rather, the means for achieving order are intended to include in their patterns the presence of dissimilar elements and characteristics.

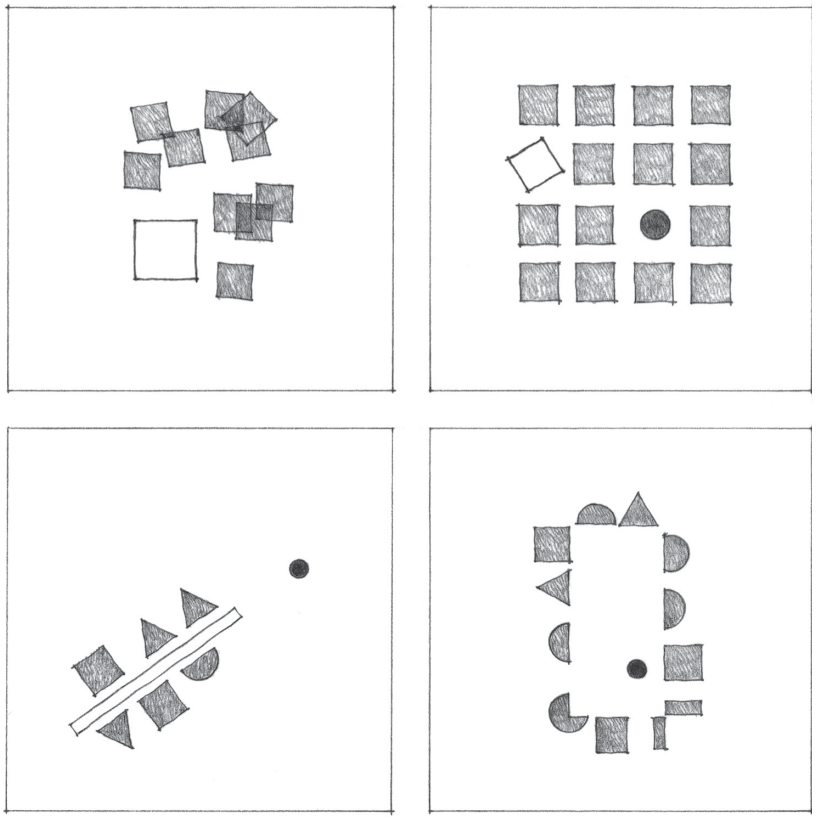


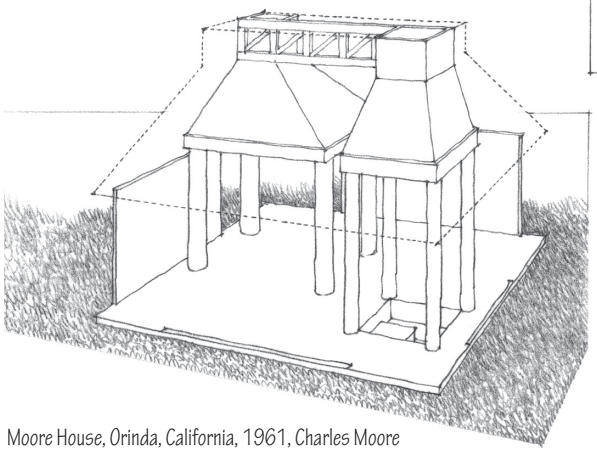
In scanning an image, the eye is attracted to certain graphic elements. The eye seeks out areas of:

- exceptional size or proportion
- contrasting or unusual shape
- sharp tonal contrast
- finely resolved or elaborate detail

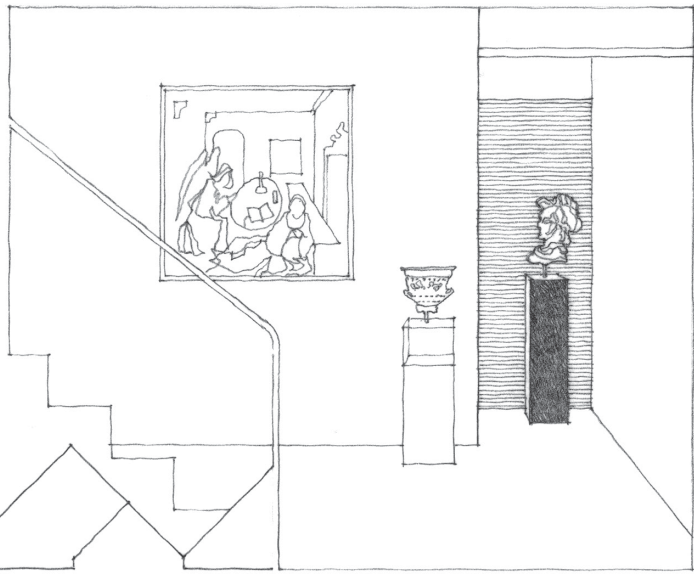
We can also stress the importance of an element by isolating it within the drawing composition. We use these points or areas of interest to define the focus of a drawing. In each case, a discernible contrast must be established between the dominant element and the subordinate aspects of the composition. Without contrast, nothing can dominate.

There may exist not one but several focal points in a drawing. One may dominate while others serve as accents. We must be careful that multiple centers of interest do not cause confusion. When everything is emphasized, nothing dominates.

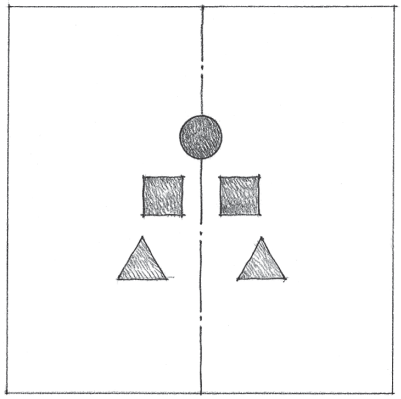


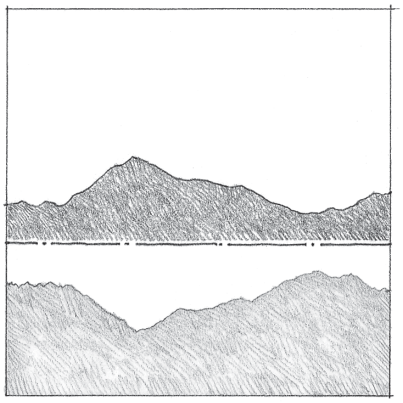


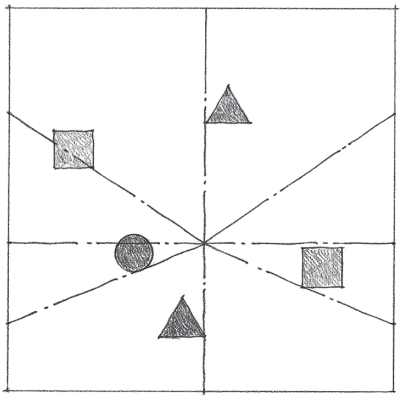
Moore House, Orinda, California, 1961, Charles Moore

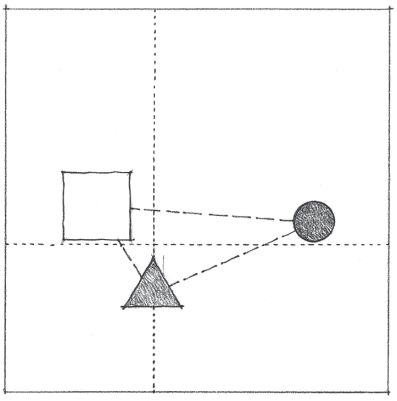


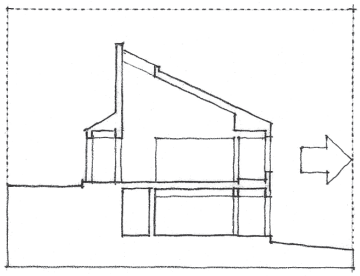
BALANCE

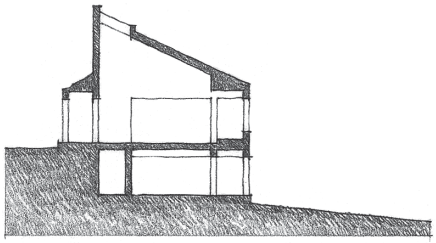


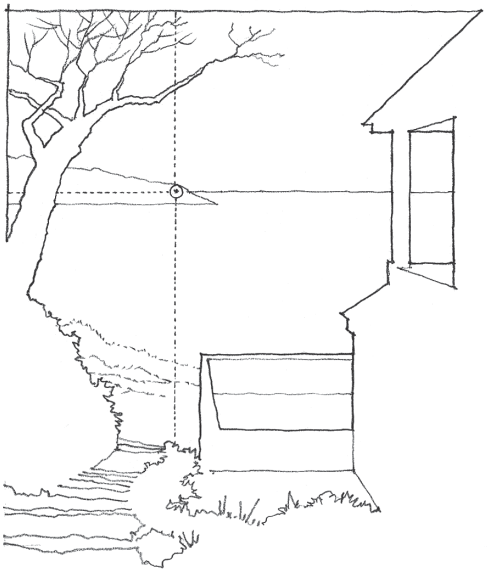










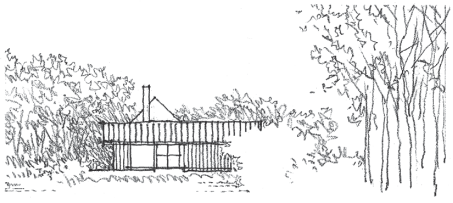


In any drawing, there will naturally be a mix of shapes and tonal values. How we organize these elements should result in a visual sense of balance. Balance refers to the pleasing, harmonious arrangement of elements or proportion of the parts in a design or composition. The principle of balance involves reaching equilibrium among visual forces of weight, compression, and tension in a drawing.

There are two principal types of balance: symmetrical and asymmetrical. Symmetry refers to the exact correspondence in size, shape, and arrangement of parts on opposite sides of a dividing line or axis. Bilateral or axial symmetry results from the arrangement of similar parts on opposite sides of a median axis. This type of symmetry leads the eye to the mediating axis in a quiet manner.

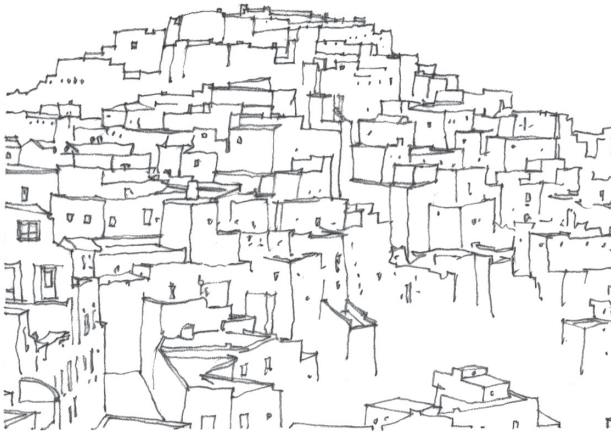
Radial symmetry results from the arrangement of similar radiating parts about a center point or central axis. This type of symmetry stresses the centerpoint or middleground of a composition.

We recognize asymmetry by the lack of correspondence in the size, shape, or tonal value of elements in a composition. To achieve visual or optical balance, an asymmetrical composition must take into account the visual weight or force of each of its elements and employ the principle of leverage in their arrangement. Elements that are visually forceful and attract our attention must be counterbalanced by less forceful elements, which are larger or placed farther away from the center of gravity of the composition.



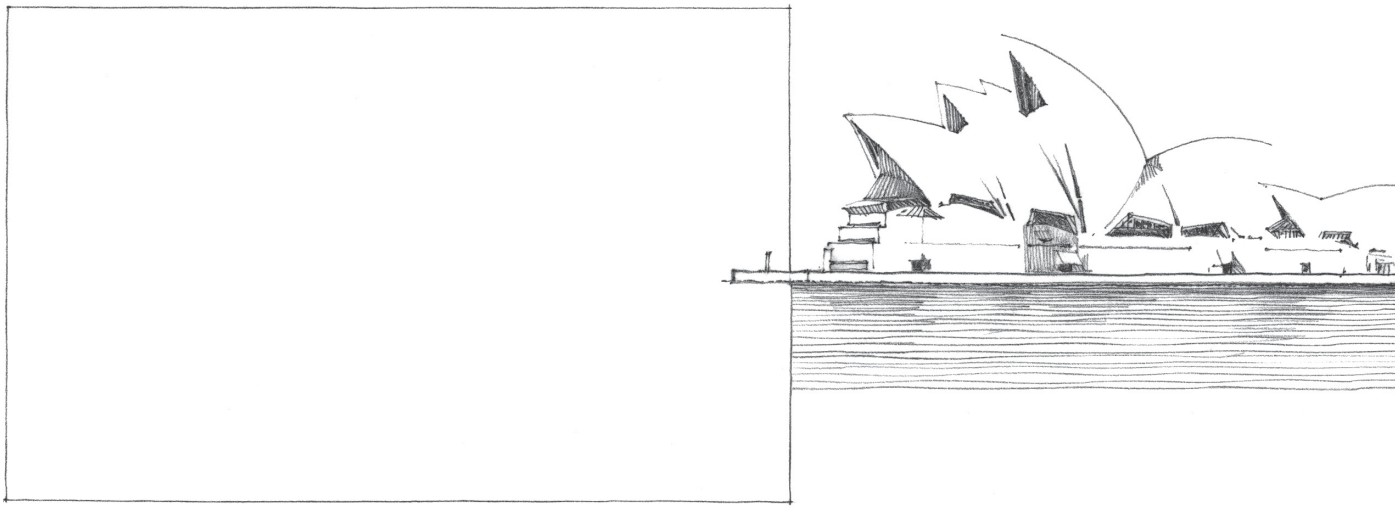
Exercise 11.1

Explore ways to compose this fragment of a Spanish town within a larger drawing field. How could you compose the view to emphasize the town's position atop a hill? How could you alter the composition to stress instead its relationship to a distant mountain range?



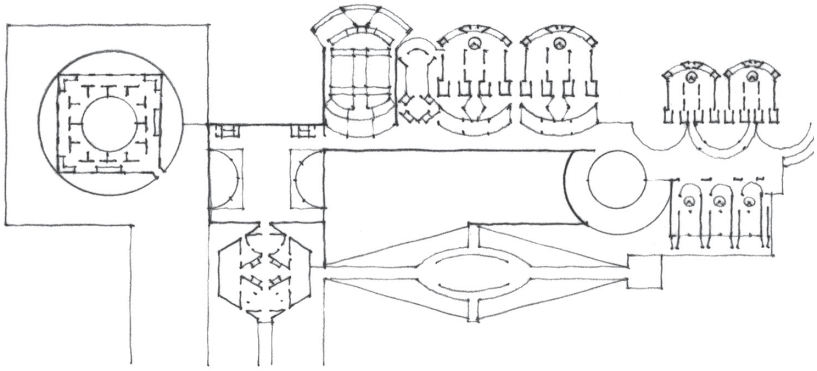
Exercise 11.2

Explore ways to compose this view of the Sydney Opera House, designed by Jørn Utzon in 1956, within a larger square or rectangular field. How could you place the structure to emphasize its soaring roof forms as well as their relationship to the harbor on which they front?

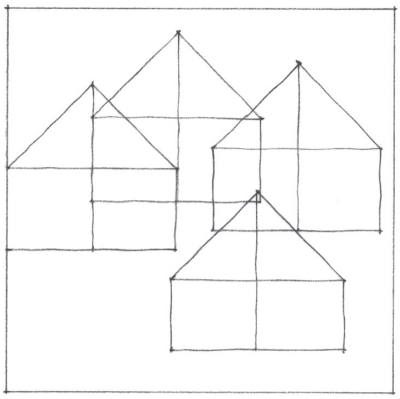


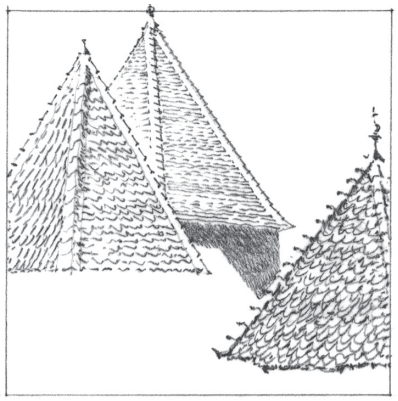
Exercise 11.3

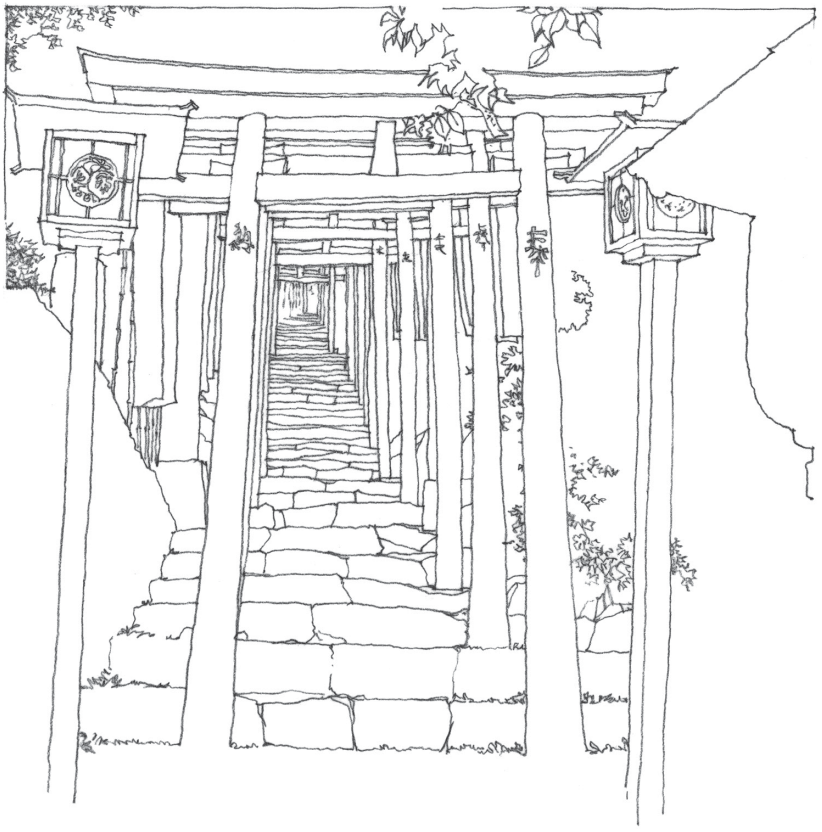
Shown is a plan diagram of the Capitol Complex at Islamabad, Pakistan, designed by Louis Kahn in 1965. Explore how you could achieve a balanced composition within a rectangular field. How could you maintain the same balance within a square field? How would rotating the plan 90° affect the compositional possibilities?



HARMONY





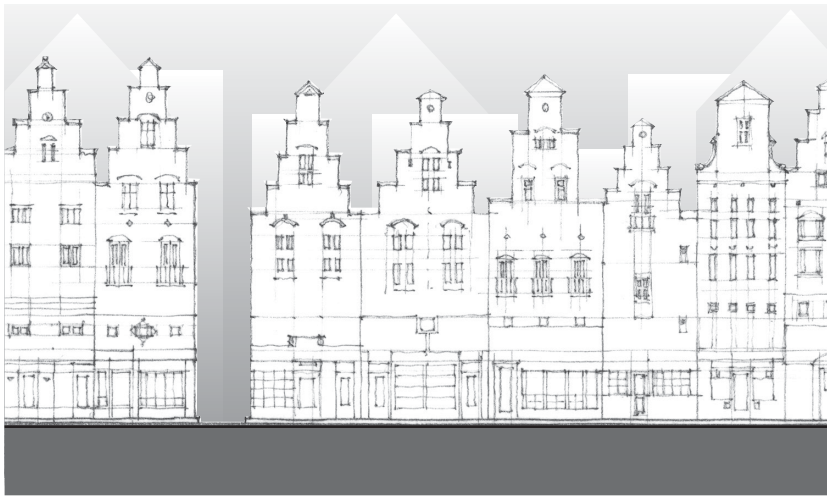


Harmony refers to consonance—the pleasing agreement of the parts in a design or composition. While balance achieves unity through the careful arrangement of both similar and dissimilar elements, the principle of harmony involves the careful selection of elements that share a common trait or characteristic:

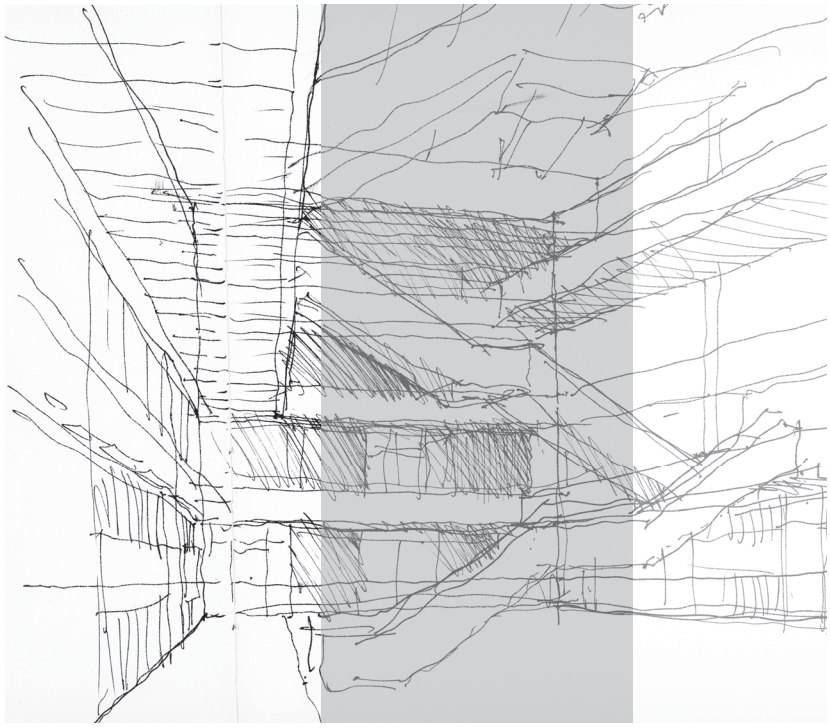
- common size
- common shape
- common tonal value or color
- similar orientation
- similar detail characteristics

Perhaps the most natural way to produce harmony in a drawing is the use of a common medium and technique throughout the composition. Employing the principle of harmony too rigorously can result in a unified but uninteresting composition. Drawings need diversity as an antidote to monotony. But variety, when carried to an extreme for the sake of interest, can result in visual chaos and a fragmented message. It is the careful and artistic tension between order and disorder—between unity and variety—that enlivens harmony. Stability and unity emerge from stimulating the action of contrasts as well as the union of similarities.

There are times when we may want to combine both a hand drawing and a digitally created representation into a single composite image. When doing so, we should be careful to control the style, range, and contrasts in line weights and tonal values to ensure a harmonious relationship exists between analog and digital drawings.



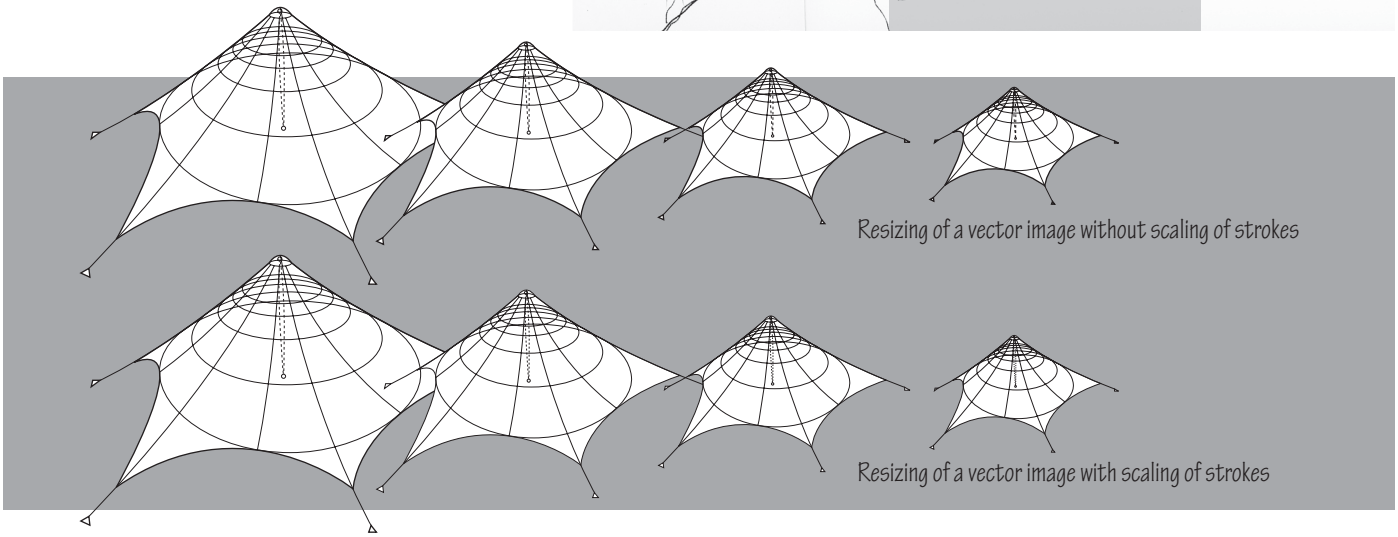
- While analog and digital styles should not compete in an aggressive manner, we can use a subtle contrast in style to maintain emphasis on the topic of a drawing and subduing its context or background.

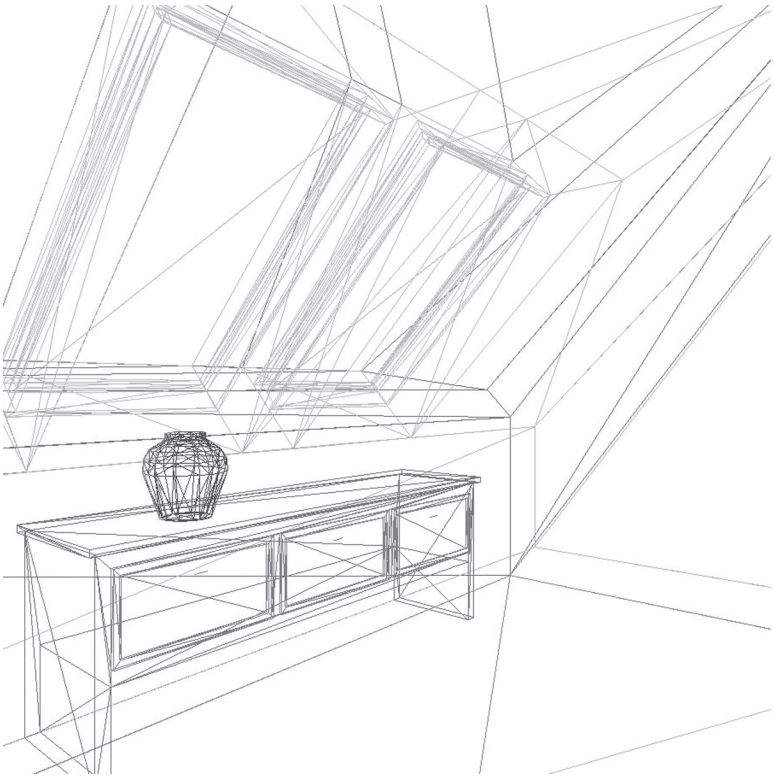


- Importing the scan of a hand drawing into an image-processing program gives us the ability to modify its color and range of tonal values.

- When a scan of a hand drawing is to be reduced or enlarged, the line work in the raster image will also be reduced or enlarged, which can result in losing sight of lightly drawn lines or exaggerating the boldness of heavy line weights.

- The line weights of a vector graphic, however, can be enlarged or reduced either with or without simultaneous scaling of the line weights.





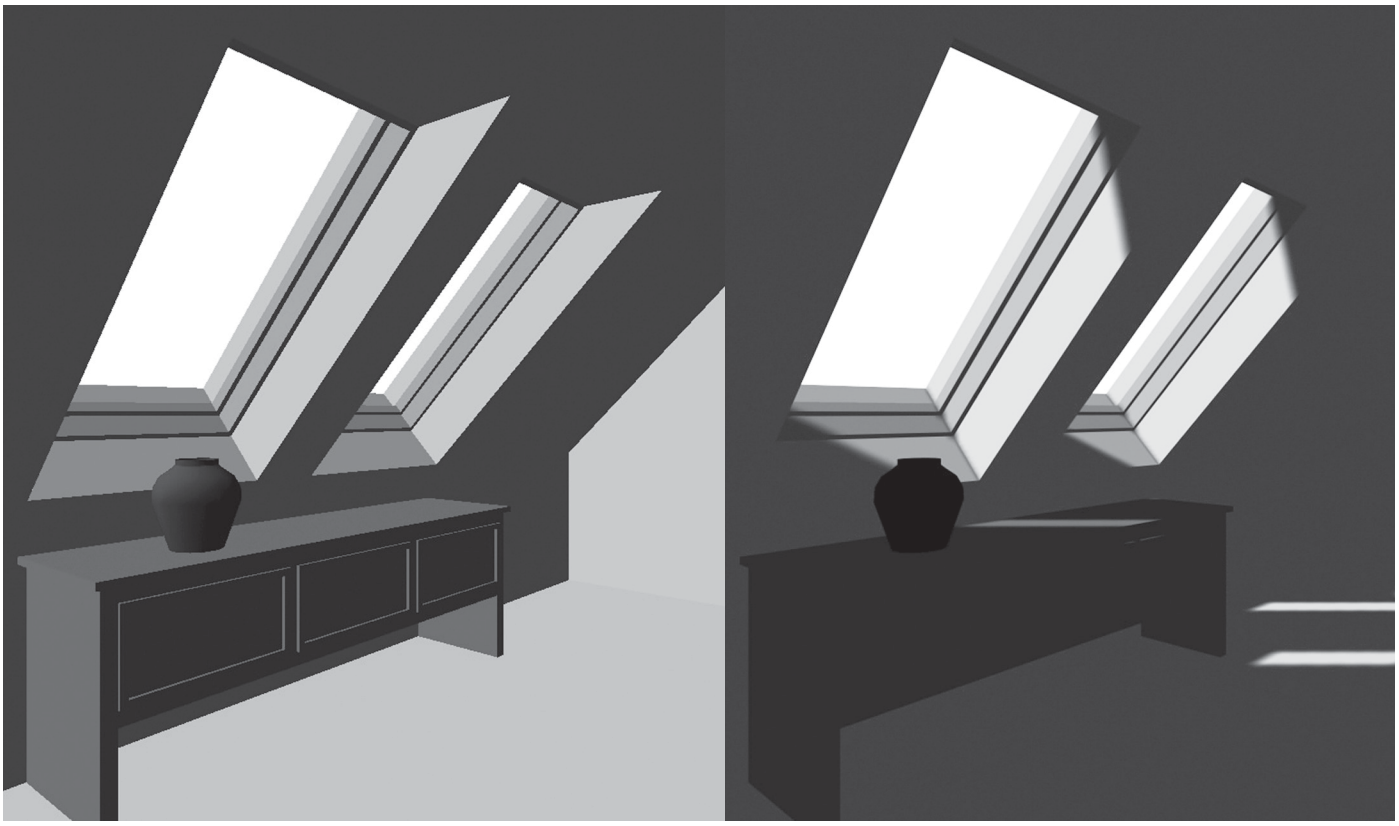
Digital Lighting

A range of digital techniques exist for modeling and simulating the lighting of three-dimensional forms and spaces. The simplest approach is ray casting.

Ray Casting

Ray casting is a technique that analyzes the three-dimensional geometry of forms and determines the illumination and shading of surfaces based on their orientation to an assumed light source. The primary advantage of ray casting is the speed with which an illuminated three-dimensional image or scene can be generated, often in real time. This makes ray casting a useful tool in preliminary design to study the solar consequences of the massing and composition of building forms and the shadows they cast. See pages 235–236 for examples.

Ray casting, however, does not take into account the way light travels after intersecting a surface and therefore cannot accurately render reflections, refractions, or the natural fall off of shadows. For this, ray tracing is necessary.



Basic shading model without lighting

Ray casting with direct light

Ray Tracing

As a ray of light travels from its source to a surface that interrupts its progress, it may be absorbed, reflected, or refracted in one or more directions, depending on the material, color, and texture of the surface. Ray tracing is a digital technique for tracing these paths to simulate the optical effects of illumination.

Local illumination is a basic level of ray tracing that is limited to direct illumination and the specular reflections of light rays. While local illumination does not take into account the diffuse inter-reflection of light among the surfaces in a three-dimensional space or scene, some ray tracing programs can approximate this ambient light in their lighting algorithms.

Local illumination: ray tracing with direct and approximated ambient light

Global Illumination

A better predictor of how a space would be illuminated by any number of light sources is global illumination. Global illumination techniques use sophisticated algorithms to more accurately simulate the illumination of a space or scene. These algorithms take into account not only the light rays that are emitted directly from one or more sources. They also track the light rays as they are reflected or refracted from one surface to another, especially the diffuse inter-reflections that occur among the surfaces in a space or scene. This enhanced level of simulation comes at a cost, however. The process requires time and is computationally intensive, and should therefore be used only when appropriate to the design task at hand.

Global illumination: ray tracing with direct and ambient light

Original images by Claire Pepper.

When using color in design drawings, we should be careful to consider the range of hues, intensities, and values and how they are distributed across an image. Among these properties of color, value is the most critical in how we perceive an image's compositional elements and relationships. Areas of high contrast attract our attention more emphatically than areas of low contrast. High-key images having a predominance of light values appear delicate, airy, and ethereal. Low-key images having a predominance of darker values impart a moody, earthy feel.

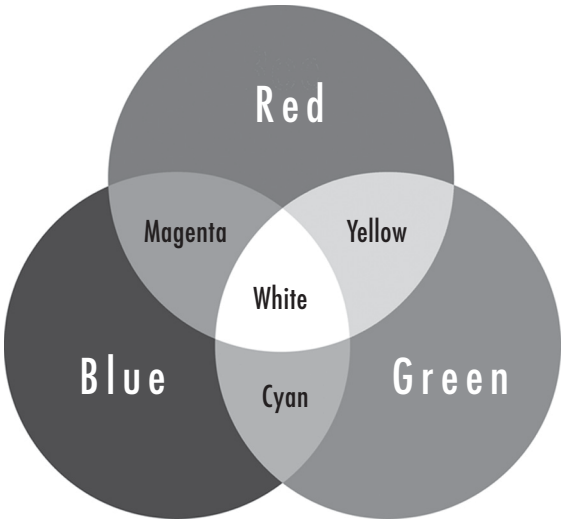
The intensity of hues should be in proportion to the scale of the image or model. Just as a full-size image is scaled down to fit the size sheet or board, the intensity of colors should also be toned down in a model.

Digital Color

When specifying colors in a digital environment, it is important to consider the type of output for which we are designing. For digital monitors and projectors, the array of colored lights is produced in an additive manner. For printed output, the color pigments produce the range of colors through a subtractive process.

RGB Color Model

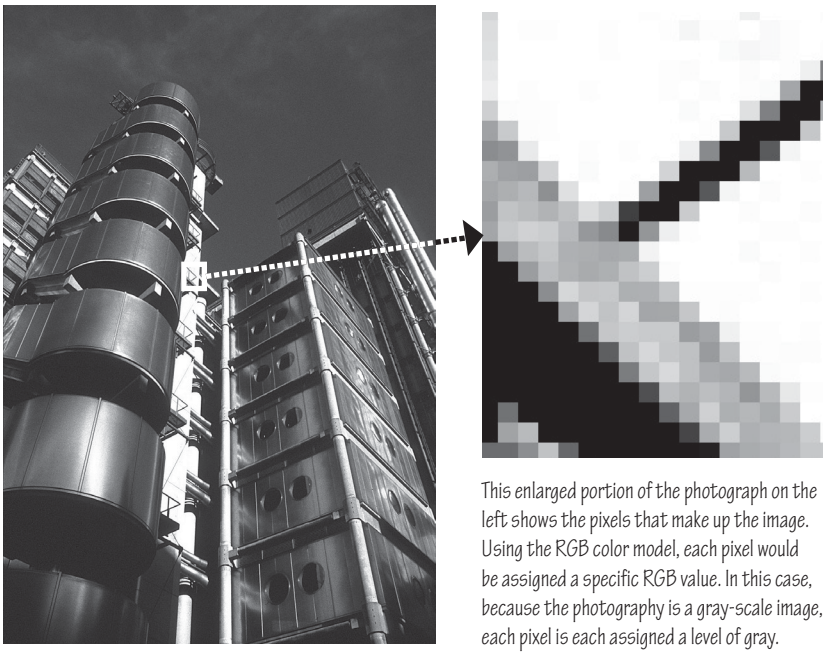
RGB is an additive color model in which white is reproduced by the superimposition of the three primary colors of light—red, green, and blue—and black is the absence of light. Red, green, and blue lights can be added together in various ways to reproduce the spectrum of colors we see. The main purpose of the RGB color model is for the sensing, representation, and display of images in electronic display systems, such as digital cameras, scanners and projectors, computer monitors, and televisions.



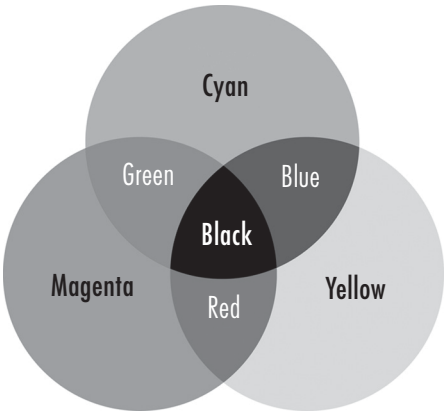
The RGB color model

When we enlarge a digital image, we can see that the image is in fact made up of a large number of pixels, each with their own color and value, which is determined by the intensity and optical combination of the three sub-pixel colors: red, green, and blue. Varying the intensity of these three optical primary colors will produce the full range of colors we use within the digital environment. Typically, the intensity of each color is divided into 256 levels of intensity—calibrated along a scale from 0 to 255. An intensity of 0 represents no intensity of the color, while a level of 255 indicates full intensity. As such, an RGB value of 0, 0, 0 would result in the color black (no light intensity for any of the colors) and an RGB value of 255, 255, 255 would result in the color white (full intensity for red, green, and blue). Each color in the digital spectrum is assigned a specific RGB value, which indicates the intensity of each of the three optical primary colors.

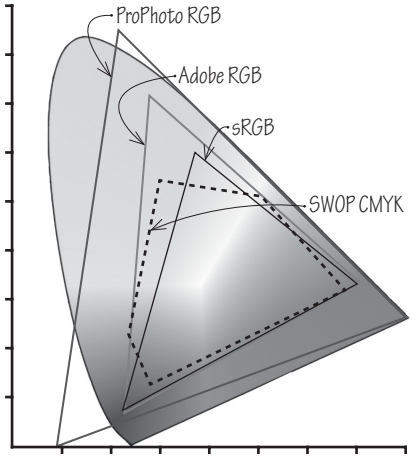
RGB is a device-dependent color space—different devices detect or reproduce a given RGB value differently, since the color elements (such as phosphors or dyes) and their response to the individual R, G, and B levels vary from manufacturer to manufacturer, or even in the same device over time. Thus an RGB value does not define the same color across devices without some kind of color management system.



This enlarged portion of the photograph on the left shows the pixels that make up the image. Using the RGB color model, each pixel would be assigned a specific RGB value. In this case, because the photography is a gray-scale image, each pixel is each assigned a level of gray.



The CMYK color model



Overlaid on the CIE 1931 xy chromaticity diagram are various RGB color spaces, indicated by the solid-line triangular boundaries, and a CMYK color space, indicated by the dashed pentagonal boundary.

CMYK Color Model

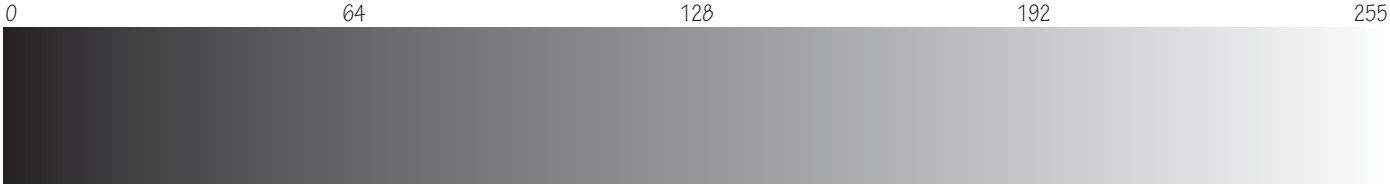
CMYK is the acronym for the four colored inks used in the printing process—cyan, magenta, yellow, and black. CMYK is a subtractive color model because these inks subtract brightness from the typically white background of the paper after printing, with black resulting from the full combination of colored inks. Each of these colors absorbs certain wavelengths of light, with the colors we see being the colors that are not absorbed. By using a halftone of dots for each color, the full spectrum of printed colors can be achieved.

RGB to CMYK Color Space

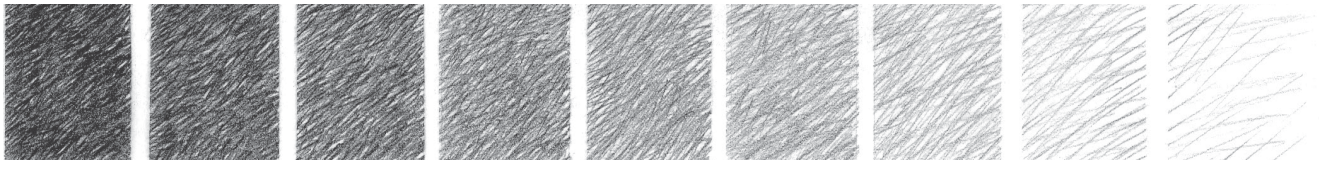
Printing from a digital workspace involves moving from an RGB color space to a CMYK color space. Both color spaces are limited in the total color gamut that they can display in comparison to the total range of colors visible to the human eye—represented by the CIE 1931 xy chromaticity diagram shown to the left. In all instances, the RGB and CMYK color spaces do not overlap completely nor do they include all of the colors visible to the eye, requiring that translations in color be made when moving from RGB to CMYK color spaces. Allowing the software to make this translation will lead to better color representations.

Gray Scale

In the digital environment, tonal values are displayed in either an additive manner using light on a monitor or in a subtractive manner using the pigment from a printer or plotter. On a display screen, the intensity of light shown in a pixel will determine the tonal value. There are 256 levels of light intensity, which create a corresponding 256 distinct tonal values of gray—with an intensity level of zero corresponding to black and a level of 255 corresponding to a color of white (full light intensity).



Digital gray scale showing the 256 tonal values of gray

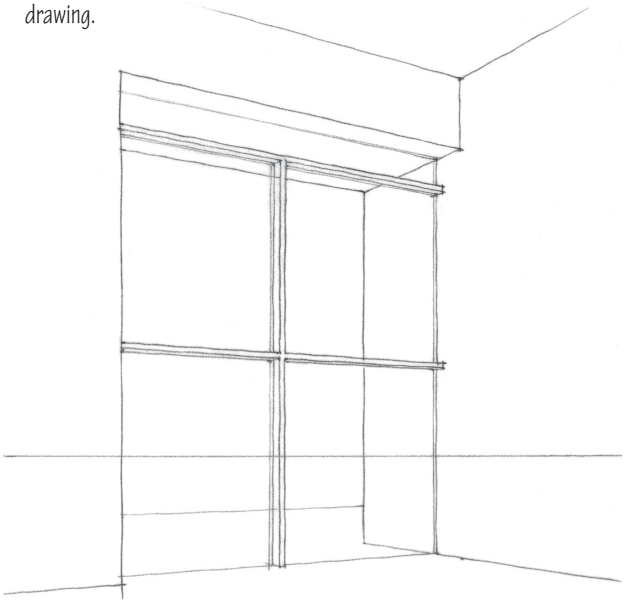


Hand-drawn ten-step gray scale

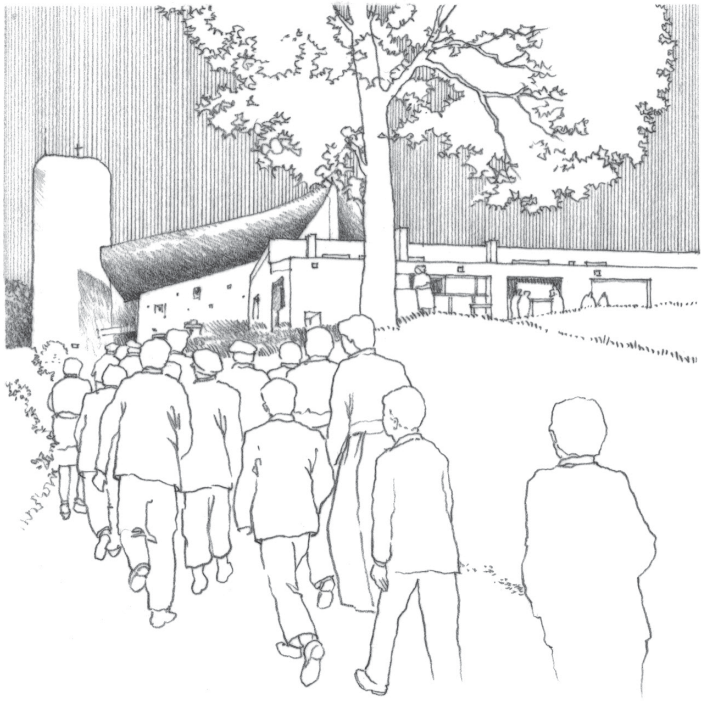
Since we design and evaluate architecture in relation to its environment, it is important to incorporate the context in the drawing of a design proposal. In each of the major drawing systems, we do this by extending the ground line and plane to include adjacent structures and site features. In addition to the physical context, we should indicate the scale and intended use of spaces by including human figures and furnishings. We can also attempt to describe the ambience of a place by depicting the quality of light, the colors and textures of materials, the scale and proportion of the space, or the cumulative effect of details.

These elements are simply parts of a greater whole, and the amount of interest and attention we give them should be proportional to their importance in the overall composition. Therefore, the following guidelines apply to the drawing of contextual devices:

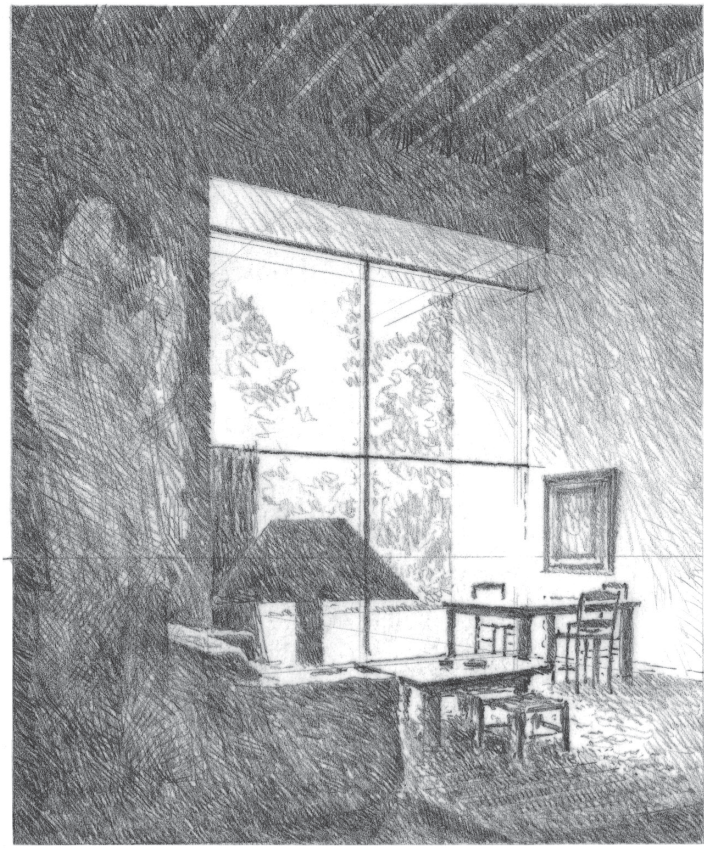
- Use only those contextual devices necessary to communicate context, scale, and use.
- Draw contextual devices simply, with an appropriate level of detail, and in a graphic style compatible with the rest of the presentation.
- Never obscure important structural or space-defining elements and their relationships with the placment of contextual devices.
- Consider the shape, size, and tonal value of contextual devices as important elements in the composition of a drawing.

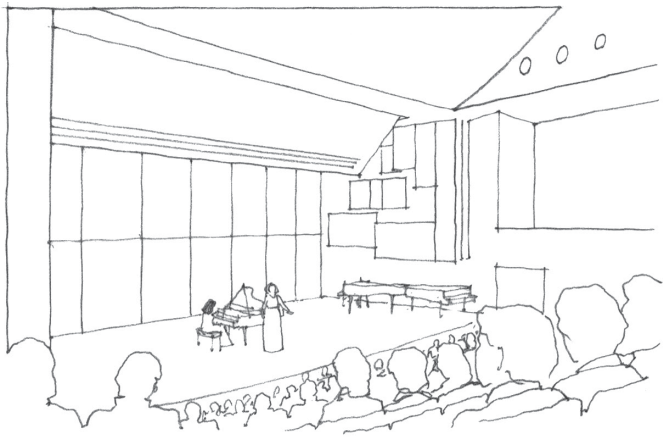


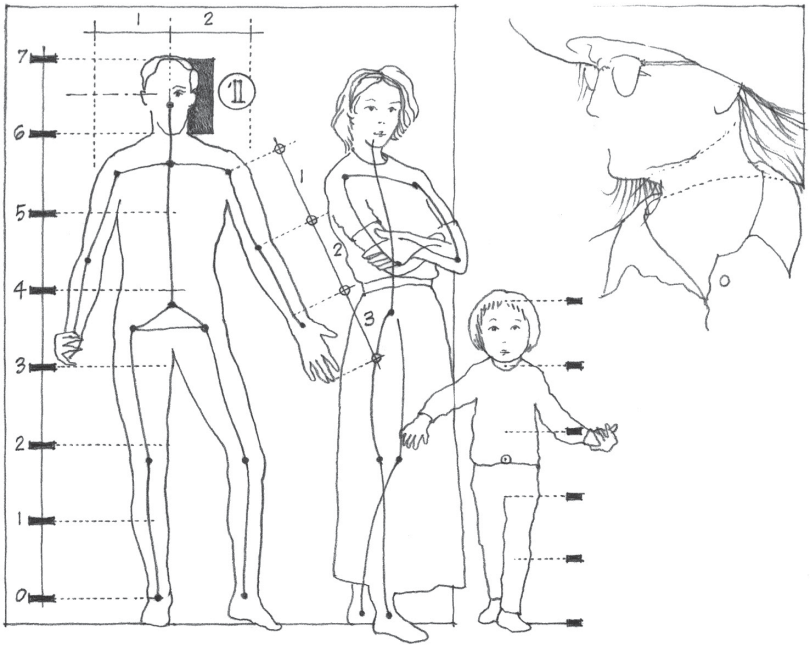
Interior of Barrágan House and Atelier, Tacubaya, Mexico City, 1947, Luis Barrágan

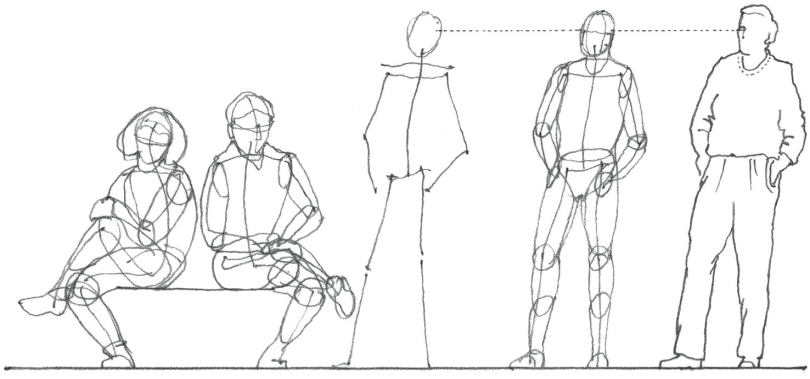


Approach to Notre Dame Du Haut, Ronchamp, France, 1950–55, Le Corbusier









The viewer of a drawing relates to the human figures within it, becomes one of them, and thus is drawn into the scene. Therefore, in the drawing of architectural and urban spaces, we include people to:

- indicate the scale of a space;
- express spatial depth and changes of level;
- animate a space with signs of life and habitation.

Scale

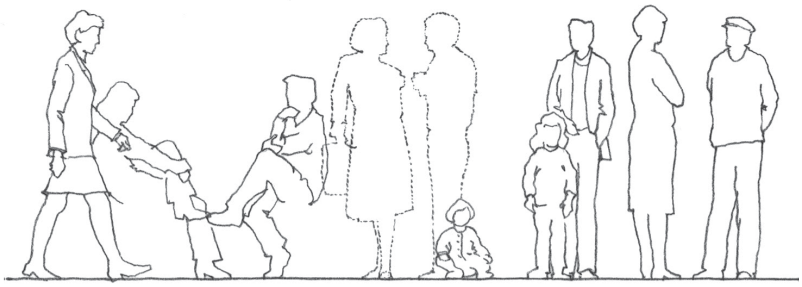
The figures we use to populate a drawing should be in scale with the environment. Therefore, we need to draw human figures in proper size and proportion. We can divide the standing human figure into seven or eight equal parts, with the head being $^1/_7$ or $^1/_8$ of the total body height.

- Establish the height of each figure and the proportions of the parts, the most critical being the size of the head.
- The jaw line leads to where the head joins the spine.
- The back of the neck is usually higher than the jaw.
- The shoulder slopes from the nape of the neck down to the arms.
- The heights of the nose and the ears are equivalent.
- Use glasses to suggest eyes.
- Stop short of drawing eyes and mouth; imply their presence by subtly shading their undersides.
- At the scale of most architectural drawings, the drawing of fingers is not necessary and is almost always distracting.
- Hands extend down to almost touch the knees.

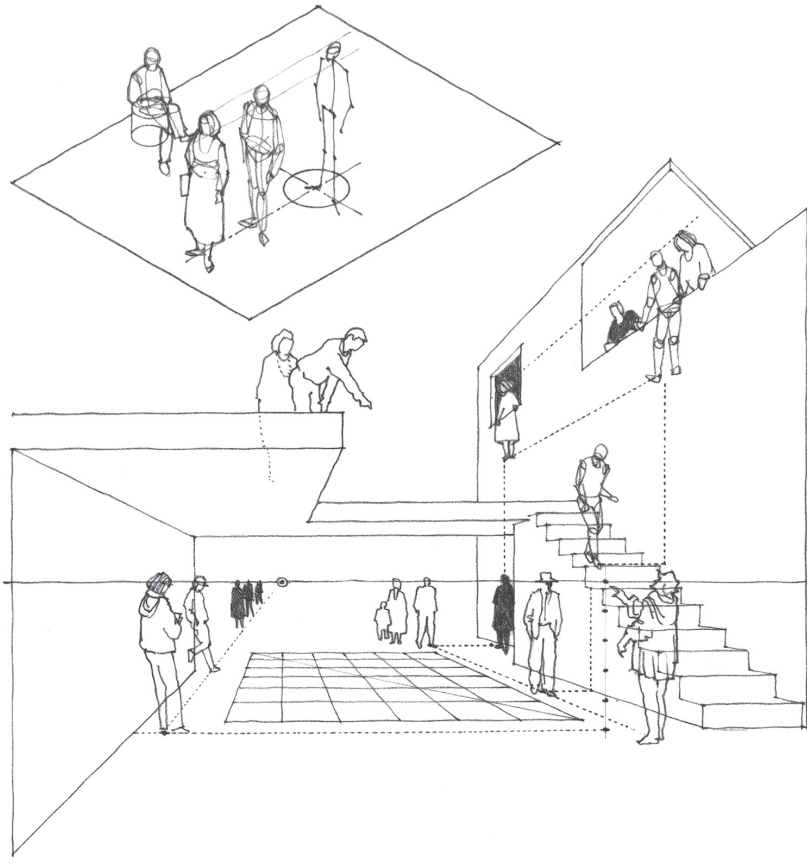
- Give the figures a sense of volume, especially in paraline and perspective views.
- Avoid drawing outlined frontal views of people, which too often appear like flat, cardboard cutouts.
- Clothe the figure appropriately, avoiding unnecessary details that might distract from the focus of the drawing.

- Establish attitude and gesture, paying particular attention to the contour of the spine and support points for the body.
- Use the relative proportions of body parts as a guide when drawing different postures and gestures.
- Show people gesturing with their arms and hands.
- Use the chin and nose to direct attention.

In orthographic multiview drawings, we can simply scale the five- or six-foot height. Remember that in orthographic projection, the height and width of elements remain constant regardless of their depth within the projected view. We can also scale the height of human figures in paraline views. Since the view is downward, the figures should have some degree of roundness to indicate their volume.



In perspective drawings, the placement of human figures can indicate not only spatial depth but also changes in level. It is generally easiest to begin by locating where each person is standing. Then extend this spot vertically and place the eyes of the head of each figure on the horizon line. Once the height of a figure is established, we can use the principles of linear perspective to shift the figure right or left, up or down, or into the depth of the perspective. Figures above or below the level of the spectator should first be sized as if on the same level, and then shifted up or down as required. When drawing people in a sitting position, it is usually best to first draw a person standing alongside the chair. Then use the established proportions to draw the same person sitting down.

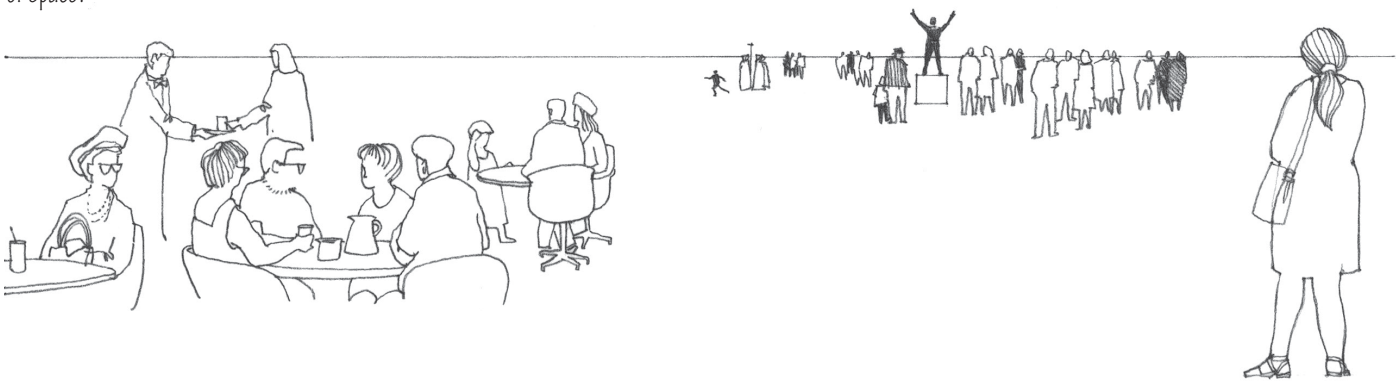


Disposition

The human figures we employ to indicate scale and use also become important elements in a composition and should not conceal or distract from the focus and essential features of a drawing. Employ both groups and solitary figures and the principle of overlap to convey depth.

Activity

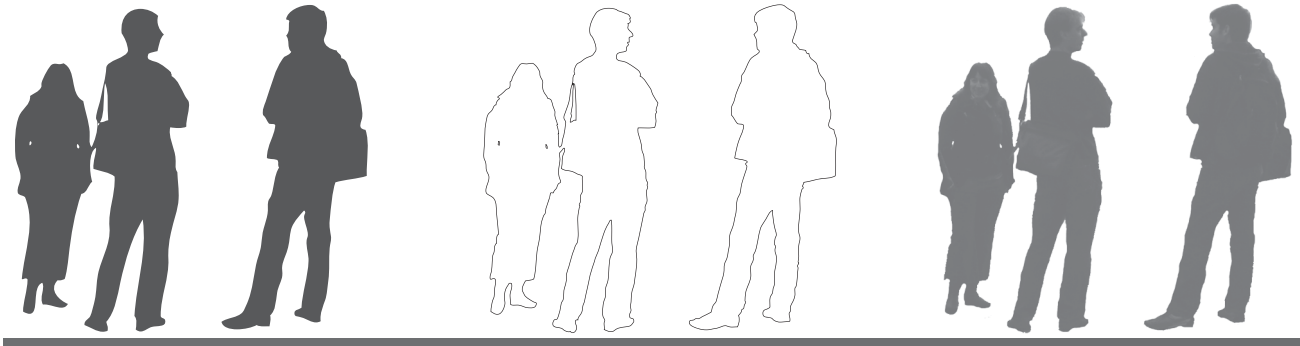
We indicate activity in a drawing by the number, disposition, posture, and dress of human figures. The figures should convey the nature of the activity and be appropriate to the place and setting. The manner in which we draw them should answer the fundamental question: What activity should go on in this room or space?



Digital Figures

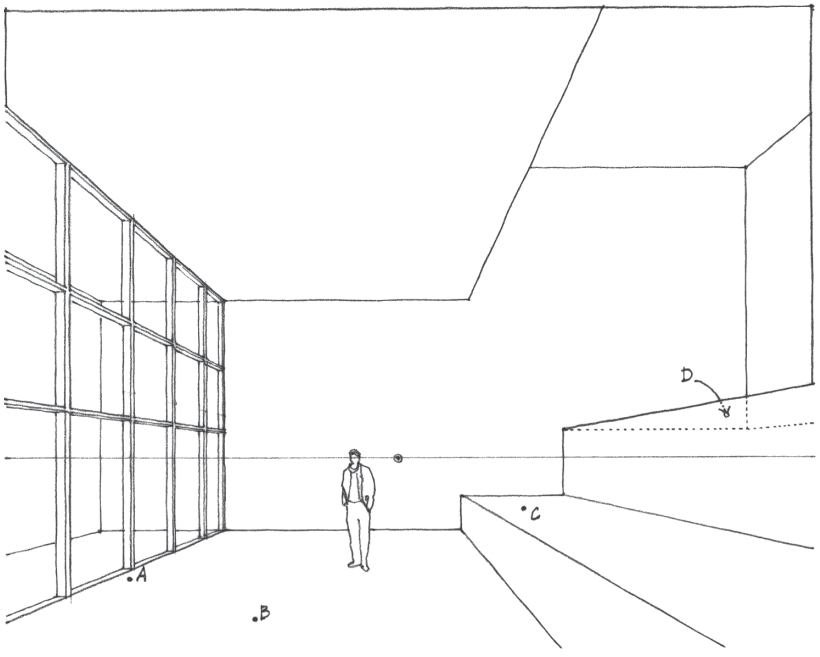
We can create digital figures from photographs using image-processing software or retrieve them from online resources. The same principles that govern the scale, clothing, placement, and gesturing in hand drawing should apply to the use of digital images of people in architectural settings.

The ability to produce photorealistic images of people is seductive. Keep in mind that the graphic style with which we populate architectural drawings should not distract or detract from the architectural subject matter. The figures should have a similar level of abstraction and be compatible with the graphic style of the drawn setting.



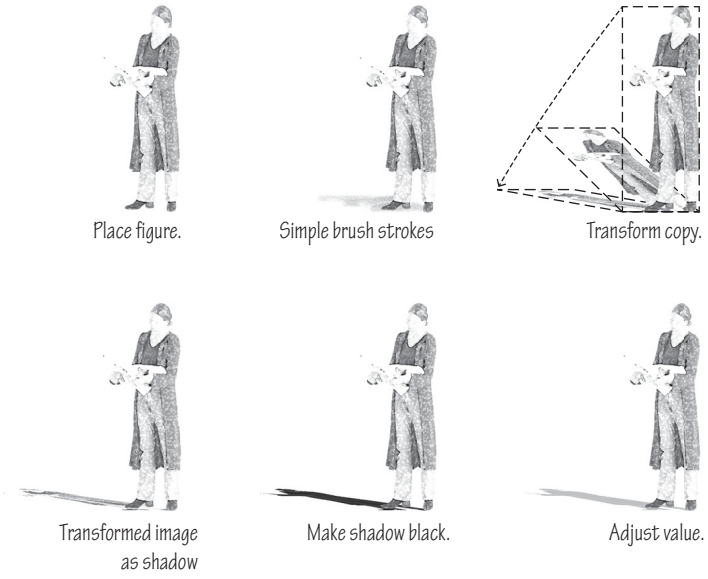
Exercise 11.4

Bring a pen, pencils, and a sketchbook to a public place where people gather. Practice drawing the people you see. Draw people standing as well as sitting; sketch small, distant figures as well as closer ones. Begin by working out the structure, proportions, and gesture of each individual, then build up a sense of volume, and finally add necessary details. Start slowly in the first session. In each succeeding session, gradually shorten the time you take to draw each figure and reduce the amount of detail accordingly.



Exercise 11.5

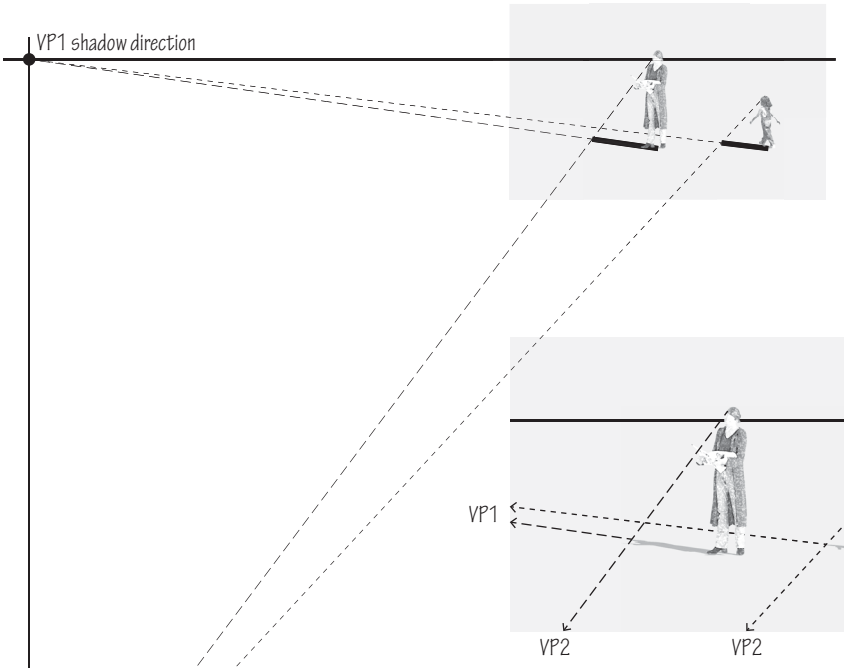
In this linear perspective, use analytical lines and the principles of convergence to transfer the human figure to locations A, B, C, and D.



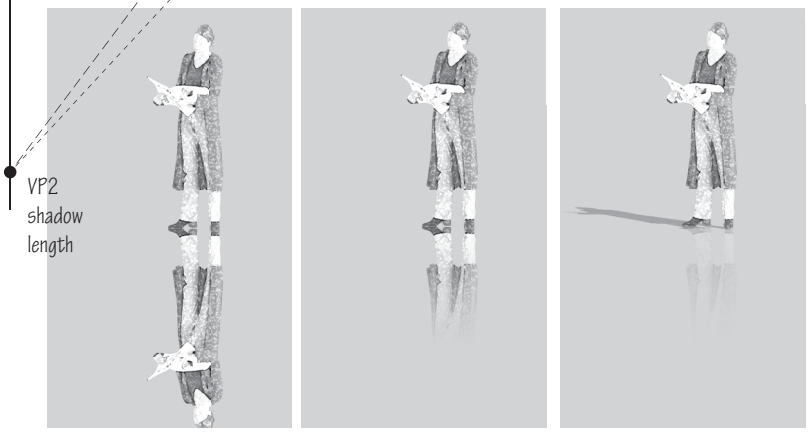
Shadows and Reflections

Shadows serve to ground figures in a drawing, keeping them from appearing to float within a space. When people are placed in a digital model, a rendering program will cast the shadow for each figure based upon the time and date settings of the rendering setup. However, images of people are often placed within images after a rendering process is completed, requiring that shadows also be added post-production. This process requires the size of each figure to be accurately determined based upon a figure's location in the image. Construction lines can be temporarily drawn to assist with making these adjustments. Similarly, the shadows for each individual figure can be created using construction lines and a clear understanding of perspective principles.

One method for creating shadows is to draw the shadow as an undefined area at the figure's feet—simulating light conditions on an overcast day. Another method involves copying of the figure and using transform tools to skew the image copy extending from the figure's feet in the desired direction of the shadow—opposite the direction of the sun. This transformed image can then be turned into a solid black value and its transparency adjusted to create the desired shadow value. The transparency will allow for the ground plane surfaces to remain visible beneath the shadow.



The direction of shadows from multiple figures will have a common vanishing point on the horizon. The length of each shadow is determined by extending a construction line from the head of each figure to a common vanishing point located on a vertical trace above or below the shadow direction's vanishing point.

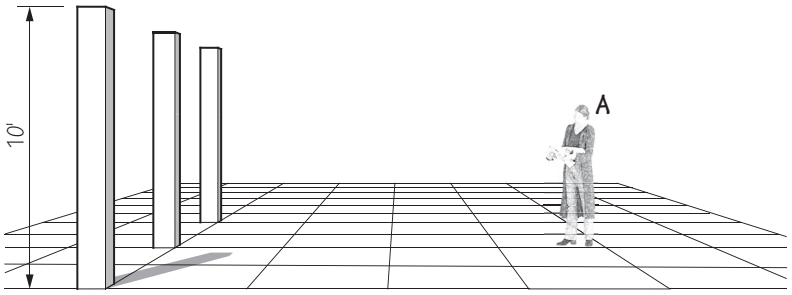


Figures standing on surfaces with a polished finish will have different levels of reflections. The reflections can be simulated post-production by copying and mirroring the figure. Use a gradient mask to hide and feather the reflection. Transparency can be added to adjust the intensity of the reflection to correlate with the expected level of reflection in the surface's finish.

Exercise 11.6

Scan or digitally recreate the scene on the right. Create a shadow for figure A based upon the existing column shadow in the scene. Locate the horizon line (HL), shadow direction vanishing point (VP), and the shadow length VP.

Scan the images of figures B, C, and D on this page and place them in different locations on the gridded ground plane. Crop images as needed to remove their background. Adjust the image heights of these figures according to their location relative to figure A on the perspective grid. Create a shadow for figures B, C, and D, based on the direction and length of the column and figure A's shadow.



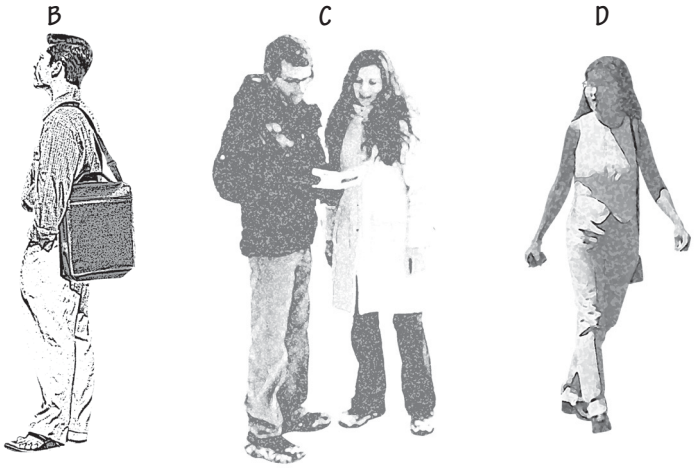
Exercise 11.7

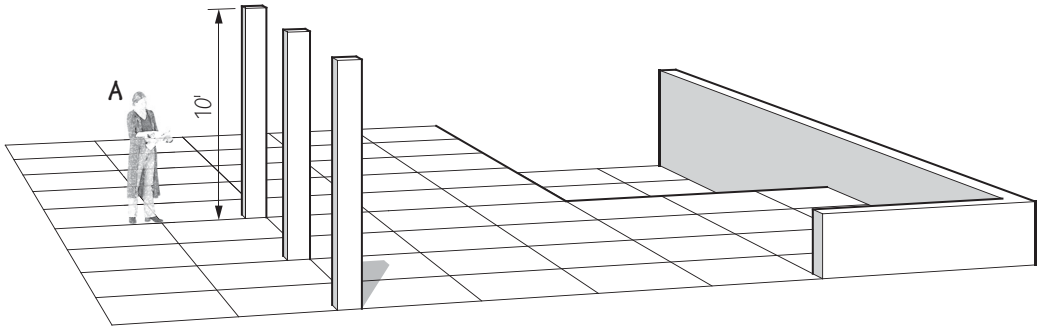
Scan or digitally recreate the scene below. Create a shadow for figure A based on the existing column shadow in the scene. Locate the horizon line (HL), shadow direction vanishing point (VP), and the shadow length VP.

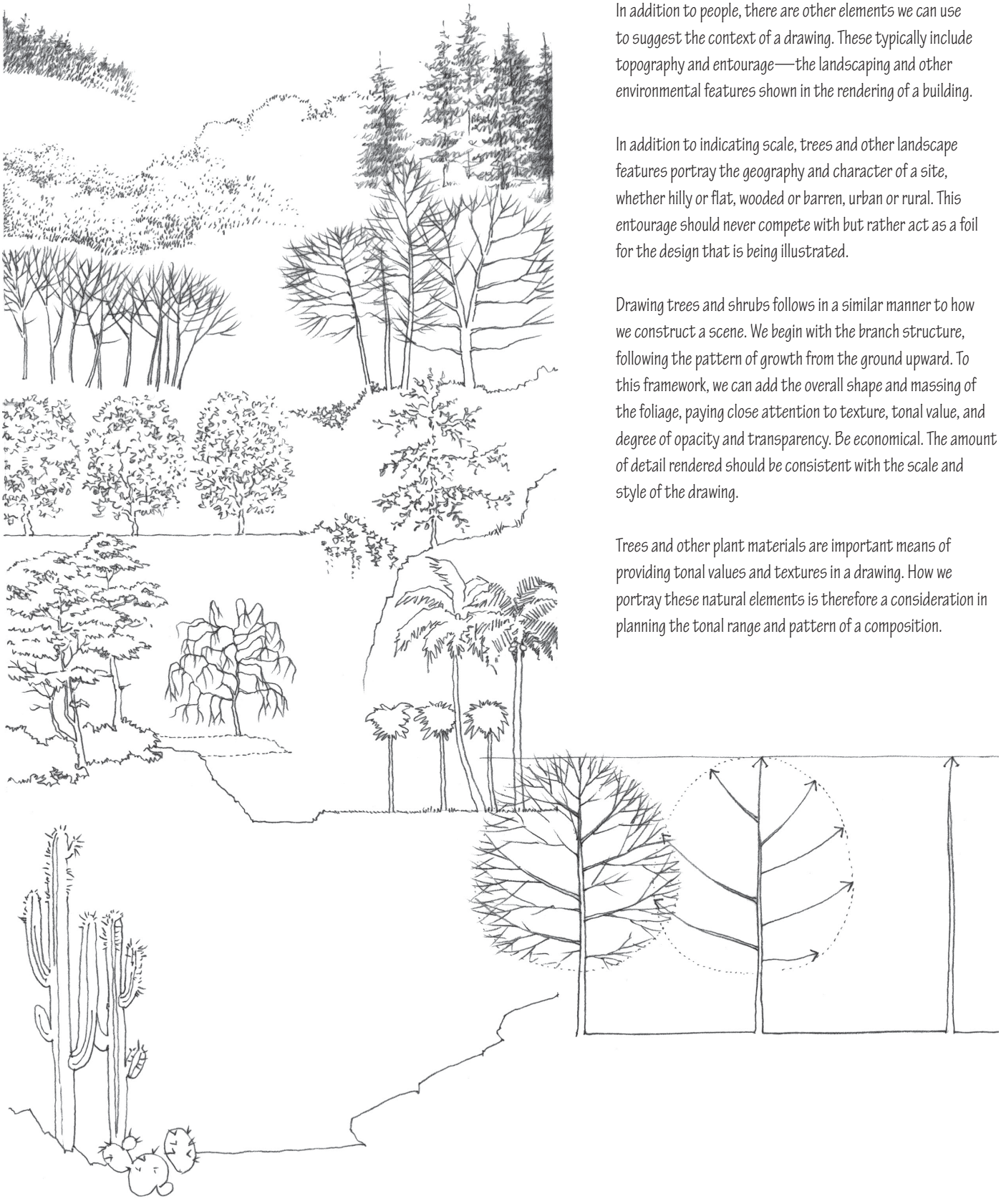
Scan the images of figures B, C, and D on this page and place them in different locations on the gridded ground plane. Crop images as needed to remove their background. Adjust the image heights to match the height of figure A. Keep in mind that since this is an aerial perspective, each figure's vertical location in the visual field will vary based upon where you place them on the ground plane.

Place one figure on the lower level of the ground plane. Use cropping or masking to hide the portions of the figure blocked from view.

Create a shadow for figures B, C, and D that matches the direction and length of the column figure A's shadow.







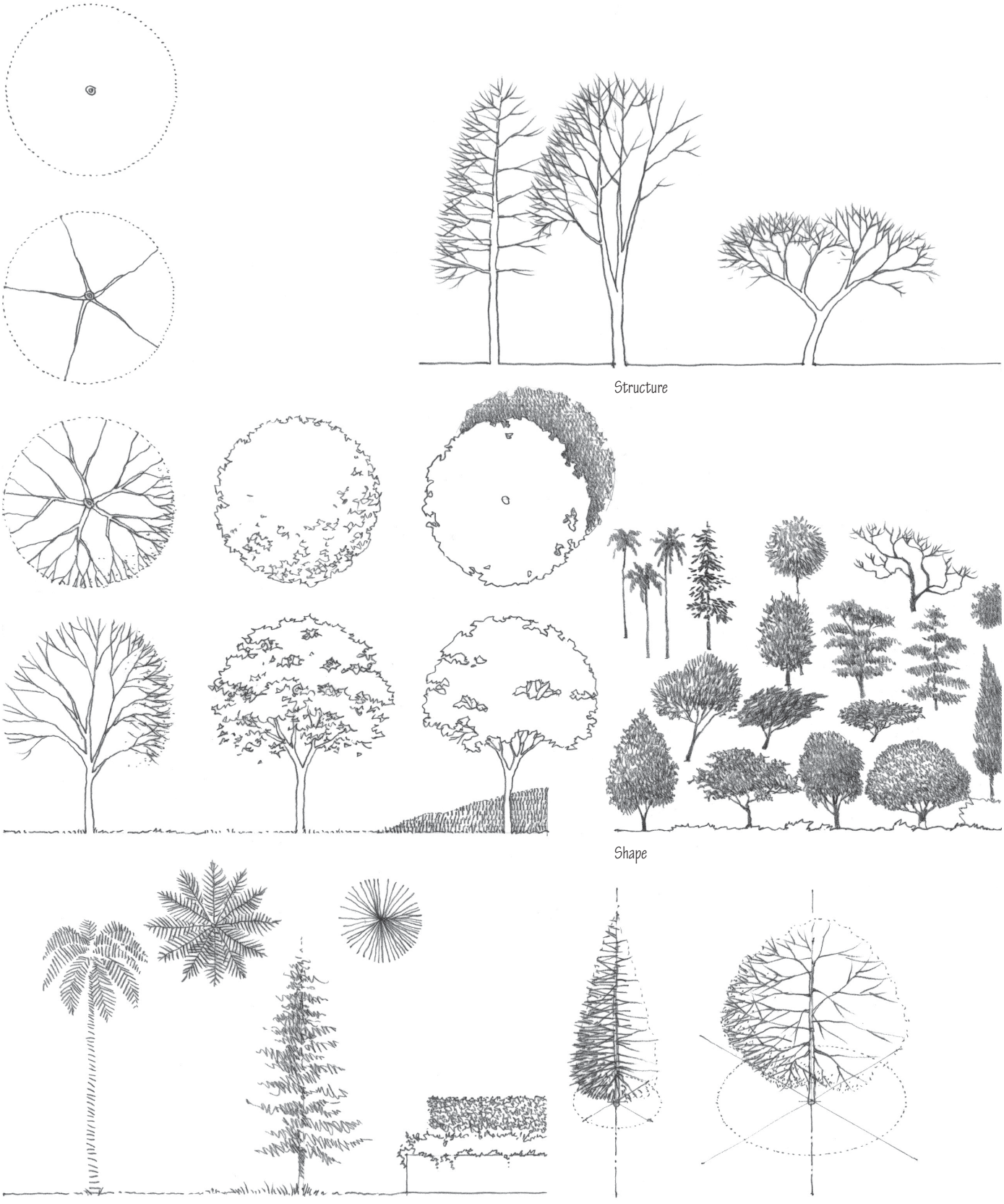
In addition to people, there are other elements we can use to suggest the context of a drawing. These typically include topography and entourage—the landscaping and other environmental features shown in the rendering of a building.

In addition to indicating scale, trees and other landscape features portray the geography and character of a site, whether hilly or flat, wooded or barren, urban or rural. This entourage should never compete with but rather act as a foil for the design that is being illustrated.

Drawing trees and shrubs follows in a similar manner to how we construct a scene. We begin with the branch structure, following the pattern of growth from the ground upward. To this framework, we can add the overall shape and massing of the foliage, paying close attention to texture, tonal value, and degree of opacity and transparency. Be economical. The amount of detail rendered should be consistent with the scale and style of the drawing.

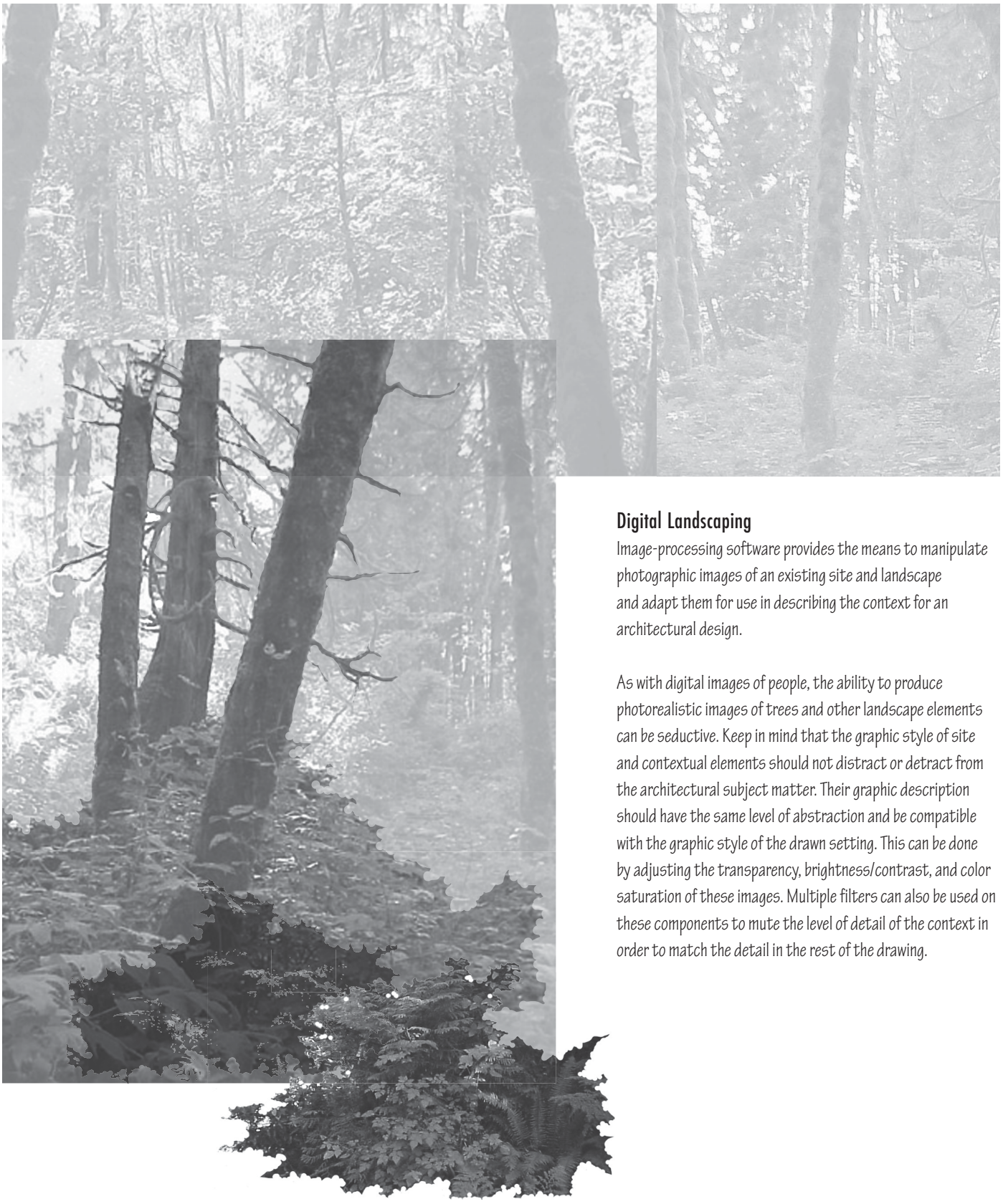
Trees and other plant materials are important means of providing tonal values and textures in a drawing. How we portray these natural elements is therefore a consideration in planning the tonal range and pattern of a composition.

When drawing trees, pay attention to structure, shape, scale, and purpose.



Structure

Shape



Digital Landscaping

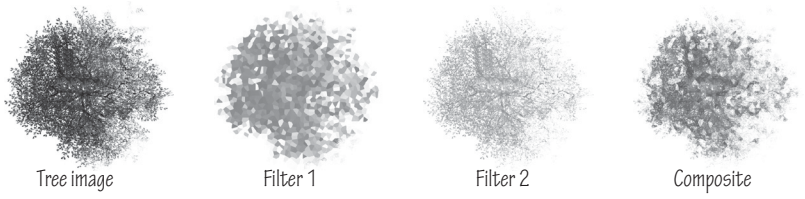
Image-processing software provides the means to manipulate photographic images of an existing site and landscape and adapt them for use in describing the context for an architectural design.

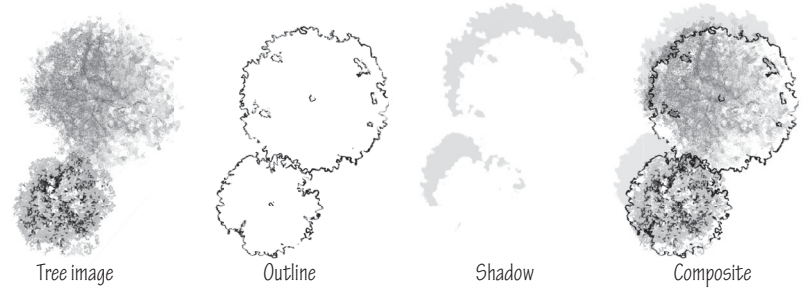
As with digital images of people, the ability to produce photorealistic images of trees and other landscape elements can be seductive. Keep in mind that the graphic style of site and contextual elements should not distract or detract from the architectural subject matter. Their graphic description should have the same level of abstraction and be compatible with the graphic style of the drawn setting. This can be done by adjusting the transparency, brightness/contrast, and color saturation of these images. Multiple filters can also be used on these components to mute the level of detail of the context in order to match the detail in the rest of the drawing.

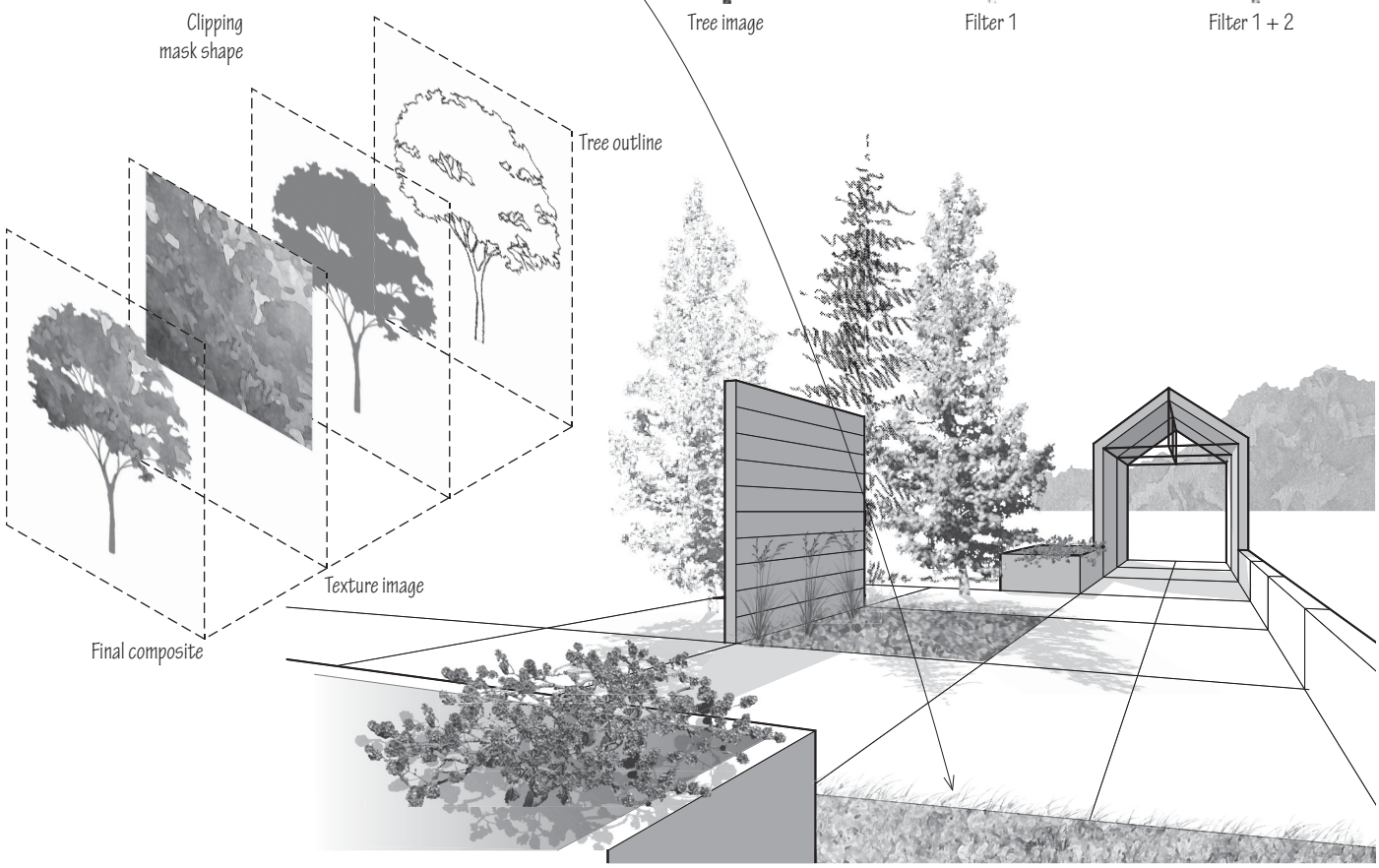
Adding landscaping elements in the post-production phase allows for flexibility in establishing the design intent and refining the drawing composition. As with other elements, the photorealism-versus-sketch nature of landscape elements should be appropriate to the rest of the image and the intent of the drawing.

Stock photographs of landscape elements in plan and elevation are available and can be modified by applying multiple filters and/or modifying edges to provide variety and avoid the monotonous use of a single tree or shrub in every location. Outlines and shadows of trees can be combined with the modified images to achieve a balance between photorealism and sketching. Clipping masks can be used to take images and textures and create a range of trees or shrubs based upon hand drawings.

When placing grass on a surface, edge conditions are important to consider. When a hard surface, such as a sidewalk, is in front of grass, the dividing edge will generally be a sharp line. When the sidewalk is behind the grass, the grass tips will extend above the sidewalk edge, creating a rough edge. This same condition exists where building walls or posts meet the ground.







Exercise 11.8

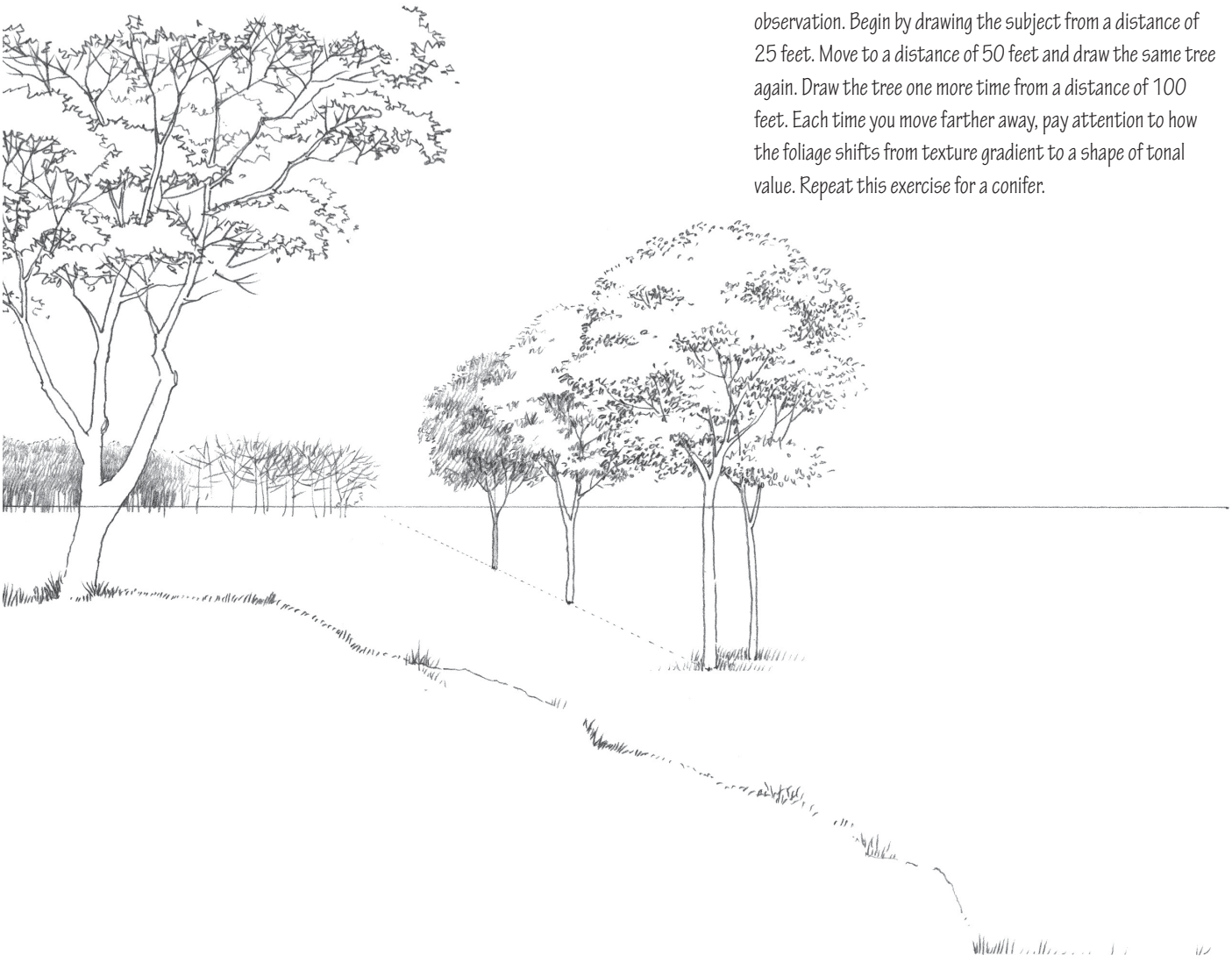
Bring a pen, pencils, and a sketchbook to a public park. Practice drawing a variety of trees and other plant life you see. Draw small, distant trees as well as closer ones. Begin by blocking out the branch structure of the subject. Over this framework, build up the shape, texture, mass, and tonal value of the foliage.

Exercise 11.9

Draw a series of timed sketches of a deciduous tree from direct observation. Begin with a 5-minute drawing, then do a 3-minute sketch, and end with a 1-minute sketch. Build up each drawing from structure to shape and tonal value. Repeat this exercise for a conifer.

Exercise 11.10

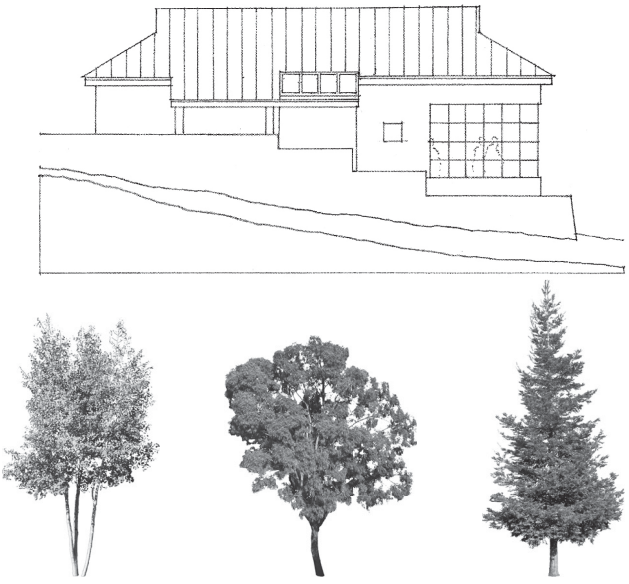
Draw a series of sketches of a deciduous tree from direct observation. Begin by drawing the subject from a distance of 25 feet. Move to a distance of 50 feet and draw the same tree again. Draw the tree one more time from a distance of 100 feet. Each time you move farther away, pay attention to how the foliage shifts from texture gradient to a shape of tonal value. Repeat this exercise for a conifer.



Exercise 11.11

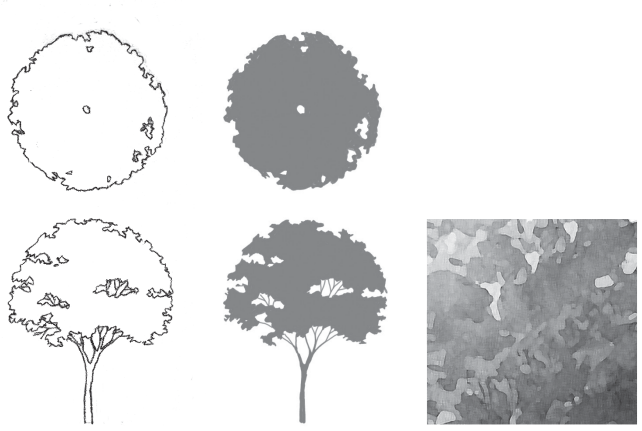
Scan or freehand draw the elevation to the right. Scan the tree images A, B, and C. Crop images as needed to remove their background. Modify these trees using a variety of filters appropriate to the drawing.

Place the trees in the building elevation. Adjust the height of the trees as appropriate to the scale of the building. Place some of the tree images behind the building and crop or mask those portions of the trees that will be hidden from view. Adjust the base of the tree to reflect how it should meet the ground. Make copies of the trees and modify them to create additional variety in the trees shown in the image.



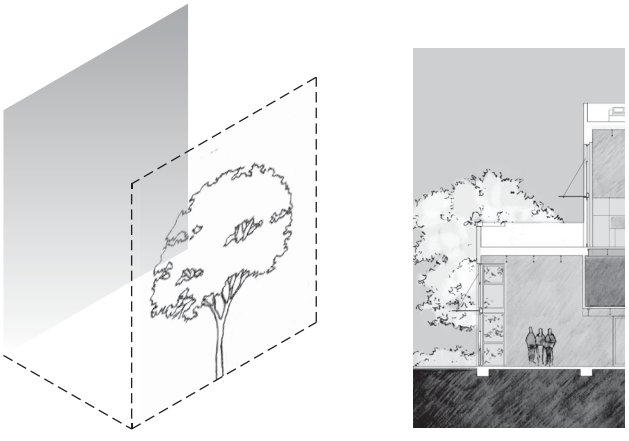
Exercise 11.12

Draw a freehand outline of a tree in plan and elevation. Use this outline to create a clipping mask shape of the tree. Create a watercolor or color-pencil texture pattern. Scan both the hand-drawn outline and the texture pattern and place each of them on different layers in the digital workspace. Apply the texture pattern to the tree-shaped clipping mask. Place this tree in an elevation or perspective view.

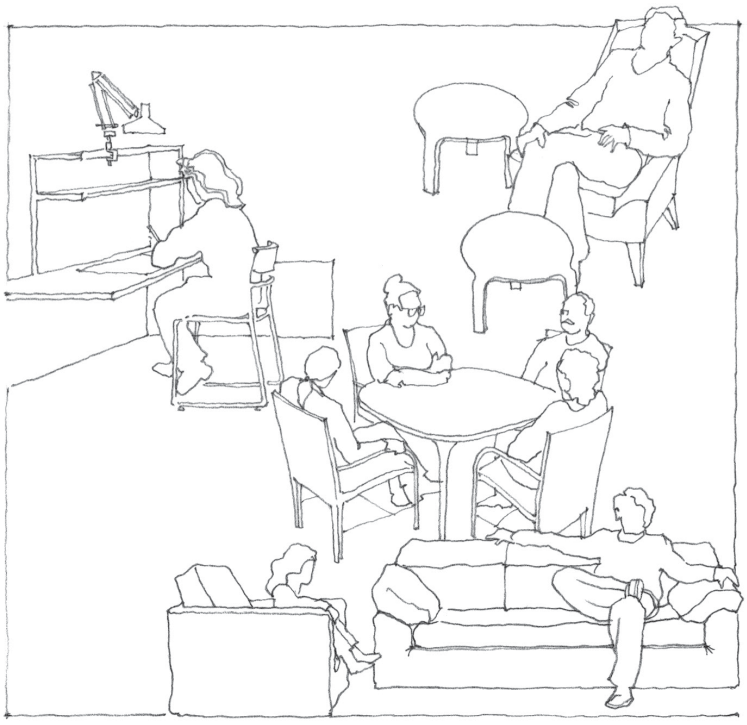


Exercise 11.13

Place the scanned tree outline from Exercise 11.12 on a layer above a color or gray-scale gradient as shown to the right. Create a mask on the gradient layer and use a white brush to hide the background color, effectively drawing the tree and bringing it to the foreground.

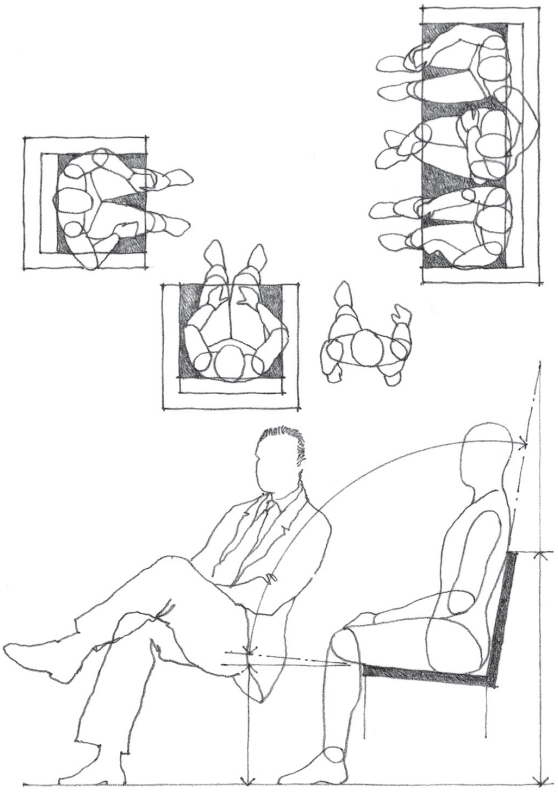


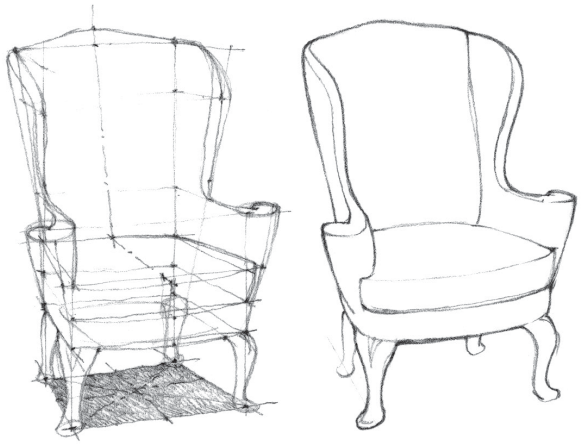
FURNITURE



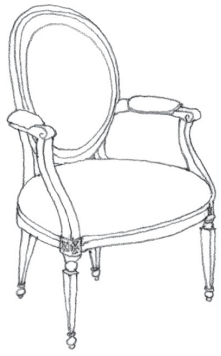
The type and arrangement of furnishings are important indicators of use and activity in a space. Their placement reminds us that there should be places on which to sit, lean, rest our elbow or foot, or simply touch.

Drawing furniture in conjunction with people helps establish their scale and maintain the proper proportion of their parts. Except when furniture is the subject of a design, use real, well-designed examples, and proceed from their geometric basis. Once the structural framework for the form is established, we can add indications of material, thickness, and details.





Traditional Wing Chair

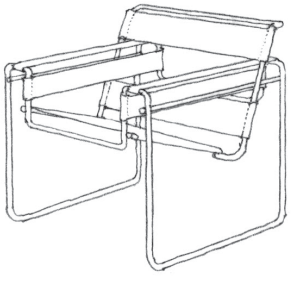


Louis XVI Armchair

Bar Harbor Wicker

Shaker Ladderback

Thonet Bentwood



Wassily Chair—Marcel Breuer

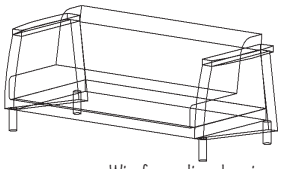
Manufacturers have developed digital libraries of furniture, casework, and lighting fixtures. Lighting fixture models simulate specific lighting characteristics within the digital workspace, adding to the quality of digital renderings. With hybrid drawings, furniture and casework models can add a high level of detail to a drawing and in some cases will serve as an underlayment for tracing furniture elements by hand. Placing furniture in the digital model is an efficient strategy for placing dozens of elements that can provide a strong sense of foreground in a drawing.

When using a digital model more extensively in a hybrid drawing, furniture components can be modified to complement the overall drawing strategy. Line drawings can be exported from digital models and included as a layer in the hybrid drawing process. Wireframe drawings can be extracted and their transparency adjusted to suggest a ghosted or analytical quality to the rendered shape.

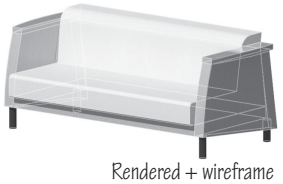
As with other context elements, the rendered furniture image can be modified through the use of filters to find the desired balance between photorealism and sketch. Combining layers of filtered images, line drawings, and shaded views provides a range of drawing strategies that can complement the overall image.

Adding shadows to furniture is an important element to include in a hybrid drawing—whether a soft ambient shadow within a diffuse lighting environment or a crisp shadow edge found when daylight streams through a window. A shadow will help to ground the furniture piece and keep it from appearing to float in the space. Shadows can be rendered in the digital workspace and brought in as a separate and adjustable layer. Conversely, a diffuse shadow can be added to the base of the furniture with a few digital or hand brush strokes.

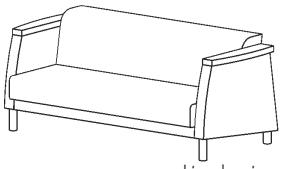
Rendered image



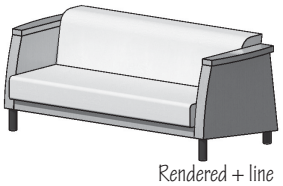
Wireframe line drawing



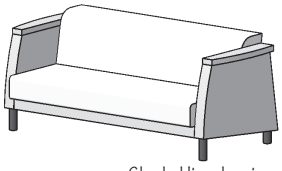
Rendered + wireframe



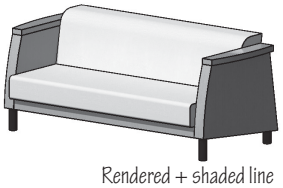
Line drawing



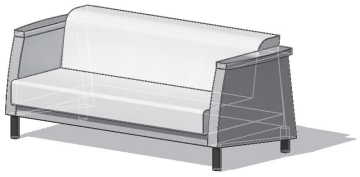
Rendered + line



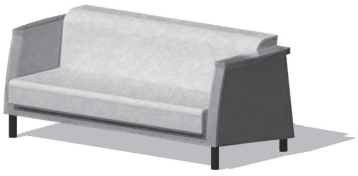
Shaded line drawing



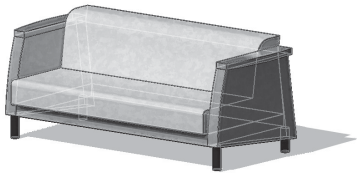
Rendered + shaded line



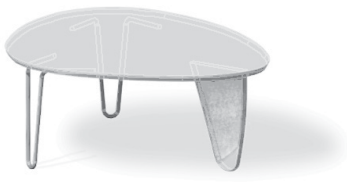
Rendered + wireframe + line



Multiple filters on rendering

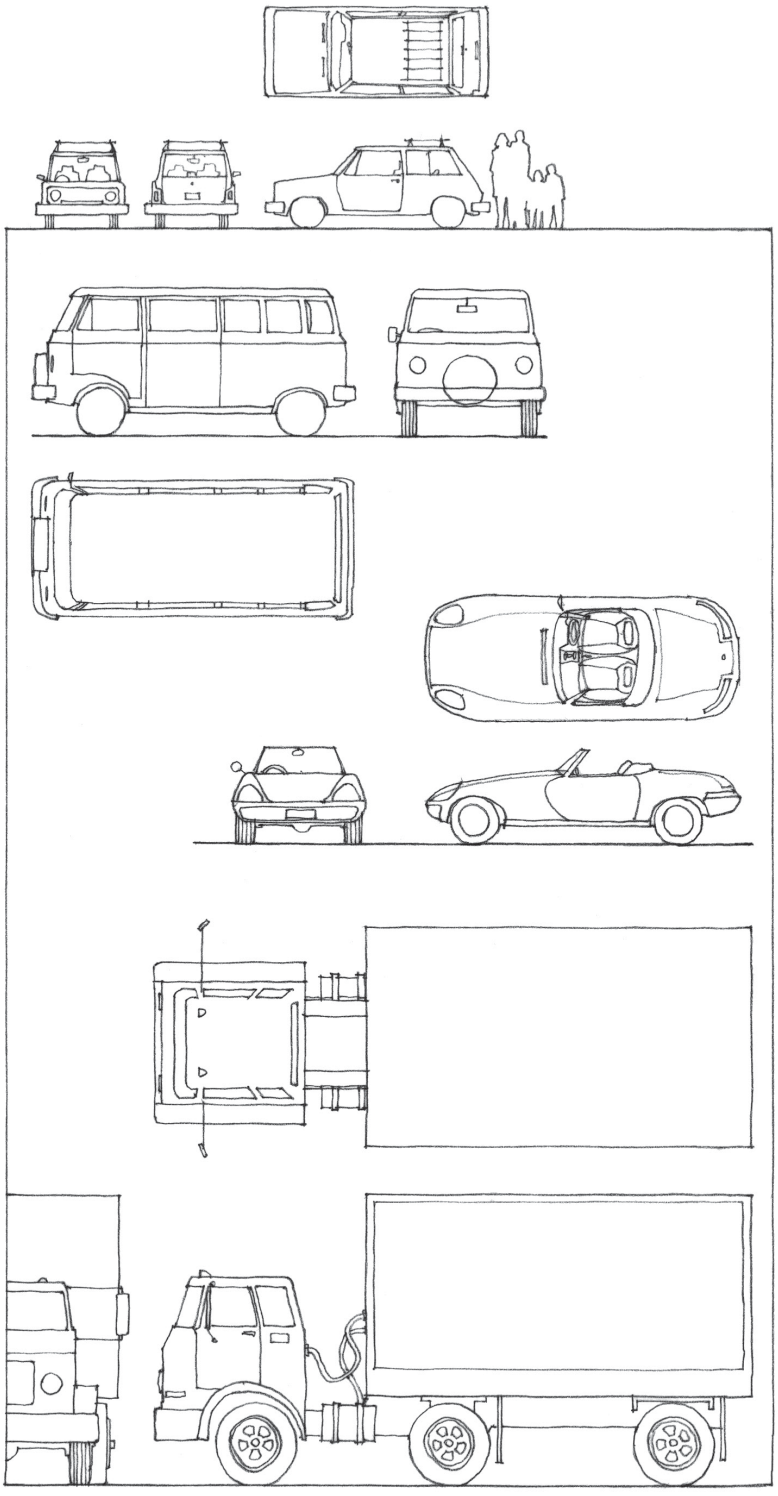


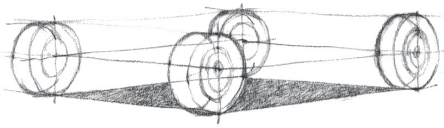
Rendered + filters + wireframe + line

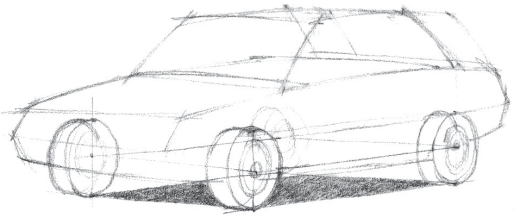


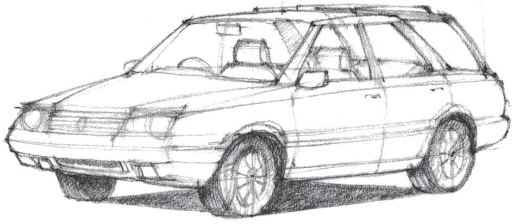
We include a variety of vehicles—cars, trucks, buses, and even bicycles—to indicate roadways and parking areas in exterior scenes. Be realistic with their placement and scale.

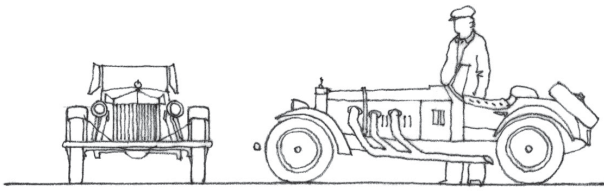
Drawing vehicles in conjunction with people helps establish their scale. Use real examples whenever possible, and as in the drawing of furniture, proceed from their geometric basis. If we overdraw these elements and include too much detail, they can easily distract from the focus of a drawing.







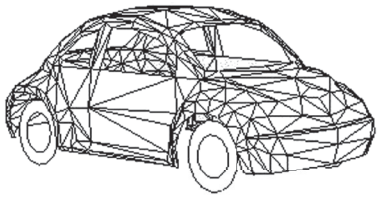




Digital models of automobiles, trucks, and bicycles can provide additional context in a hybrid drawing and reinforce the activities taking place within a design proposal. They can be placed directly into a 3D model and be accurately scaled and placed.

Wireframe, hidden-line, shaded, or rendered views of a digital model can be layered to create a composite vehicle image consistent with the other drawing elements. If desired, rendered or shaded views of vehicles can be modified using a variety of filters to obtain a more sketch-like quality. As with other contextual elements, the level of realism depicted should be consistent with the overall style of a drawing.

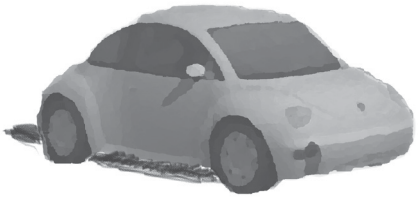
Instead of a 3D model, a 2D image of a vehicle can also be added to a drawing. When adding vehicles in this manner, it is important that the perspective and scale of the vehicle image match the perspective and scale of the overall image.



Wireframe base

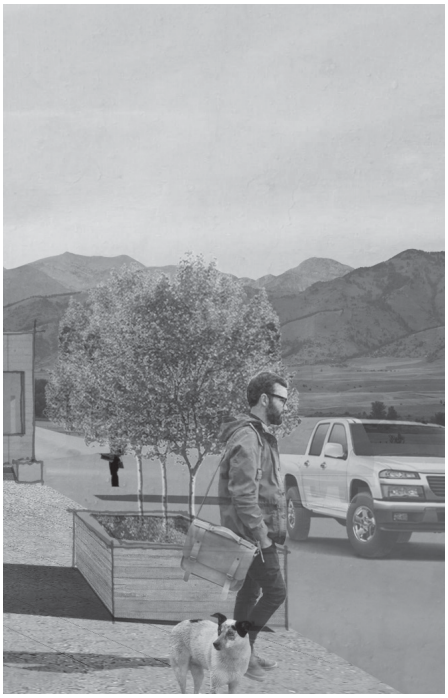
Digital rendering

Multiple filters and brushes over rendering

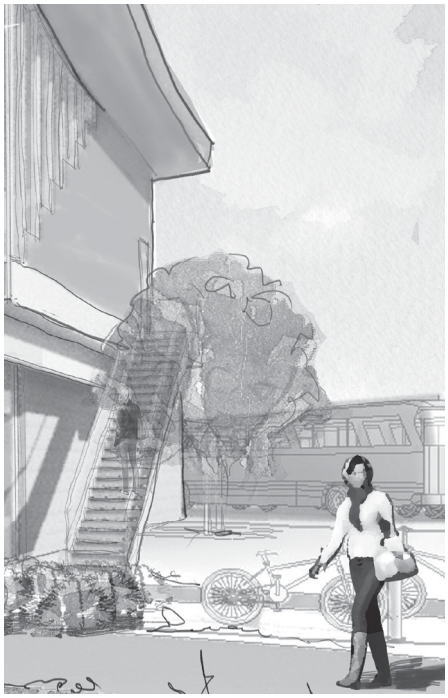


Shadows, whether added through a rendering program or the use of simple brush strokes, serve to ground the vehicles within a drawing.

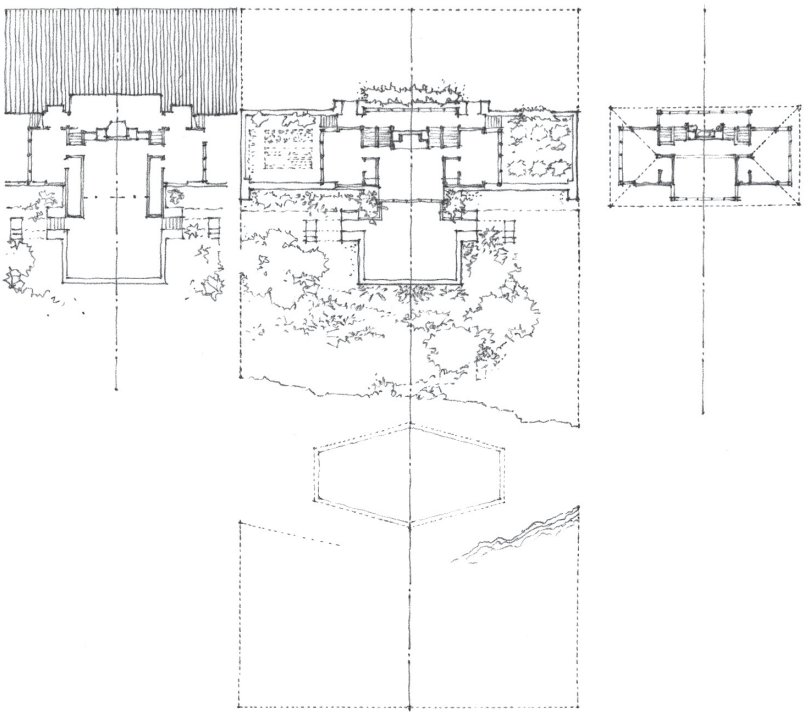
Example of a vehicle used as a foreground element (Image by Heather Bing)



Vehicles placed as middleground elements should not be the focal points of a drawing. (Image by Robin Wilder)

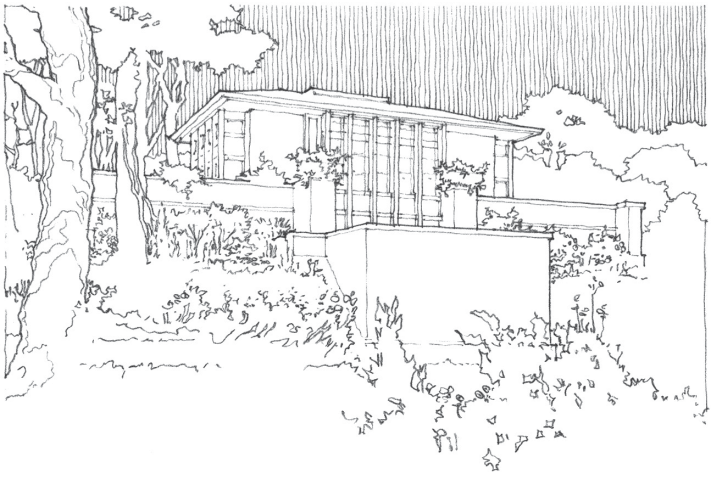


Vehicles in the background add depth to a drawing. (Image by Heather Bing)

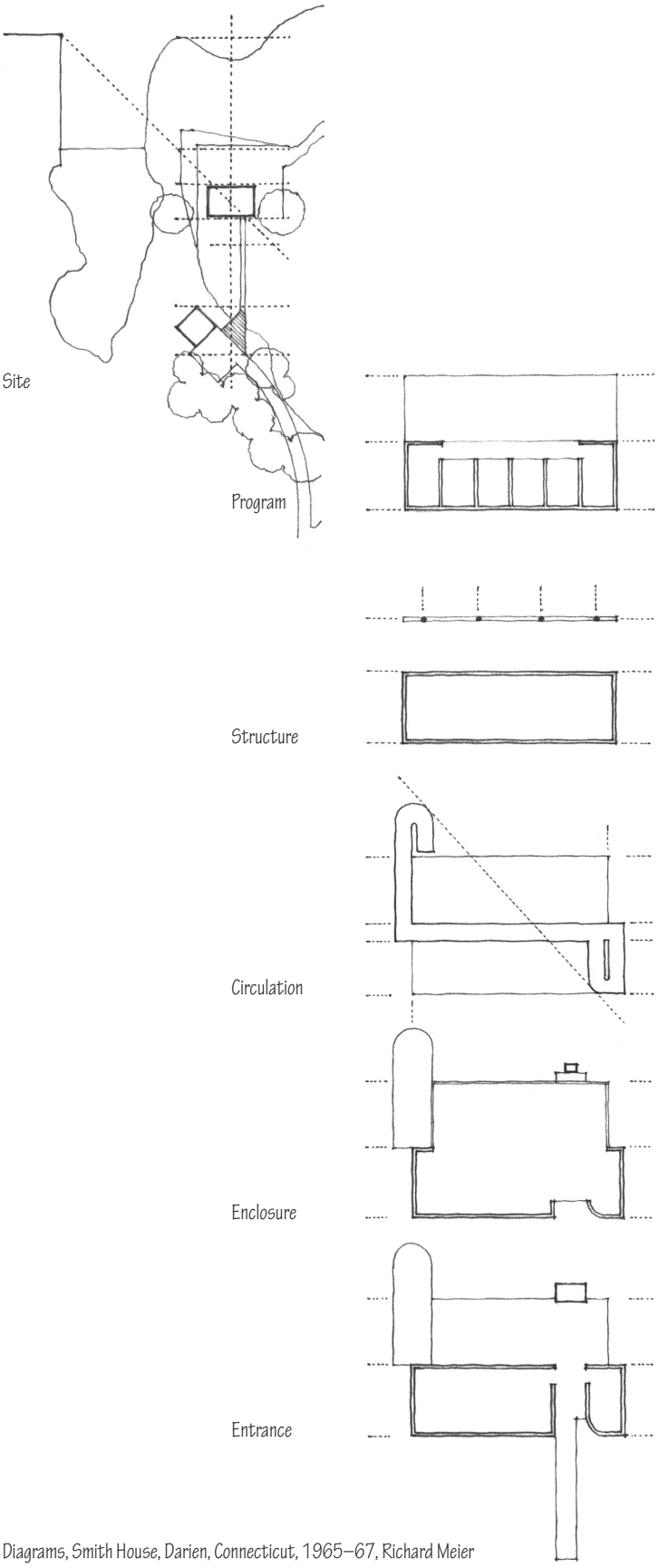


12
Presentation Drawing

Presentation drawings are those we typically think of when the term *design drawing* is used. These drawings describe a design proposal in a graphic manner intended to persuade an audience of its value. The audience may be a client, a committee, or merely someone browsing for an idea. Whether produced to assist the client's imagination or to obtain a commission, either privately or through a competition, presentation drawings should communicate as clearly and accurately as possible the three-dimensional qualities of a design. Although the drawings that comprise a presentation may be excellent two-dimensional graphics worthy of an exhibition, they are merely tools for communicating a design idea, never ends in themselves.



Hardy House, Racine, Wisconsin, 1905, Frank Lloyd Wright



Diagrams, Smith House, Darien, Connecticut, 1965–67, Richard Meier

Unless presentation drawings are comprehensible and persuasive—their conventions understood and their substance meaningful—a presentation will be weak and ineffective. An effective presentation, however, also possesses collective characteristics that can enhance the readability of the individual drawings themselves.

Point of View

Be clear about design intent. A presentation should communicate the central idea or concept of a design scheme. Graphic diagrams and text are effective means of articulating and clarifying the essential aspects of a design scheme, especially when they are visually related to the more common types of design drawings.

Efficiency

Be economical. An effective presentation employs economy of means, using only what is necessary to communicate an idea. If any of the graphic elements of a presentation become overly expressive and ends in themselves, the intent and purpose of the presentation can be obscured.

Clarity

Be articulate. At a minimum, presentation drawings should explain a design clearly and in enough detail so that people unfamiliar with it will be able to understand the design proposal. Eliminate unintended distractions such as those caused by ambiguous figure-ground relationships or inappropriate groupings of drawings. Too often, we are blind to these glitches since we know what we want to communicate and therefore cannot read our own work in an objective manner.

Accuracy

Avoid distorting or presenting incorrect information. Presentation drawings should accurately simulate a possible reality and the consequences of future actions so that the decisions made based on the information presented are sound and reasonable.

Unity

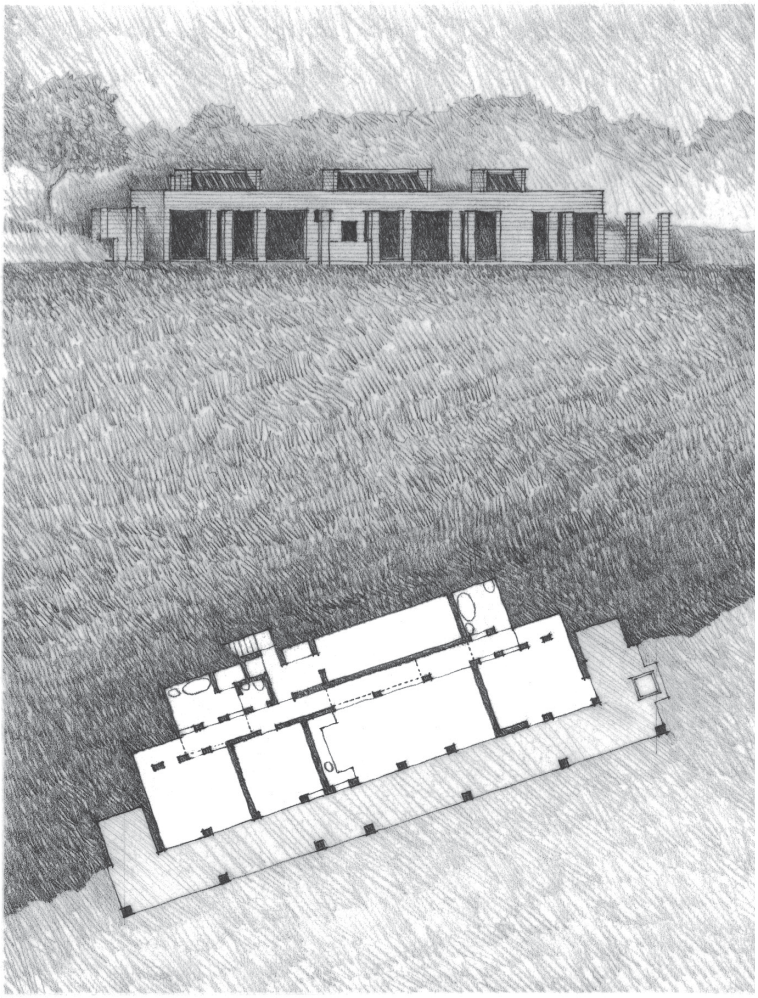
Be organized. In an effective presentation, no one segment is inconsistent with or detracts from the whole. Unity, not to be confused with uniformity, depends on:

- a logical and comprehensive arrangement of integrated graphic and verbal information;
- a synthesis of format, scale, medium, and technique appropriate to the design as well as to the place and audience for which the presentation is intended.

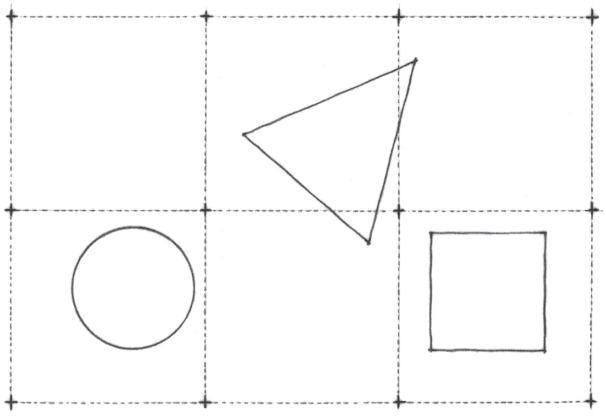
Continuity

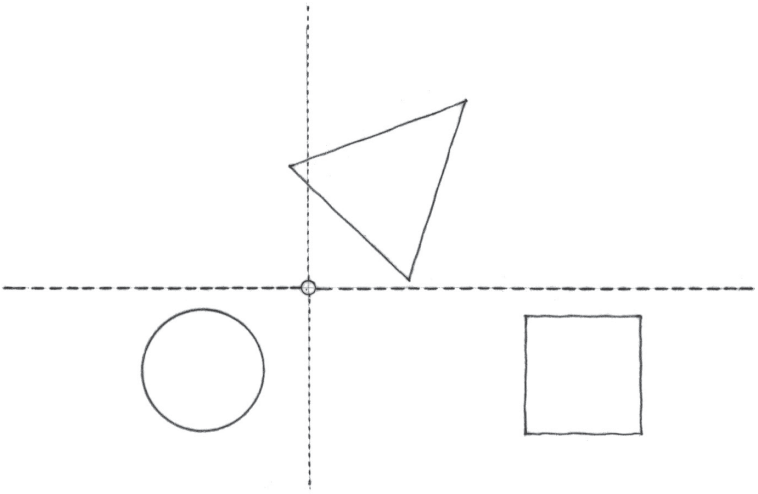
Each segment of a presentation should relate to what precedes it and what follows, reinforcing all the other segments of the presentation.

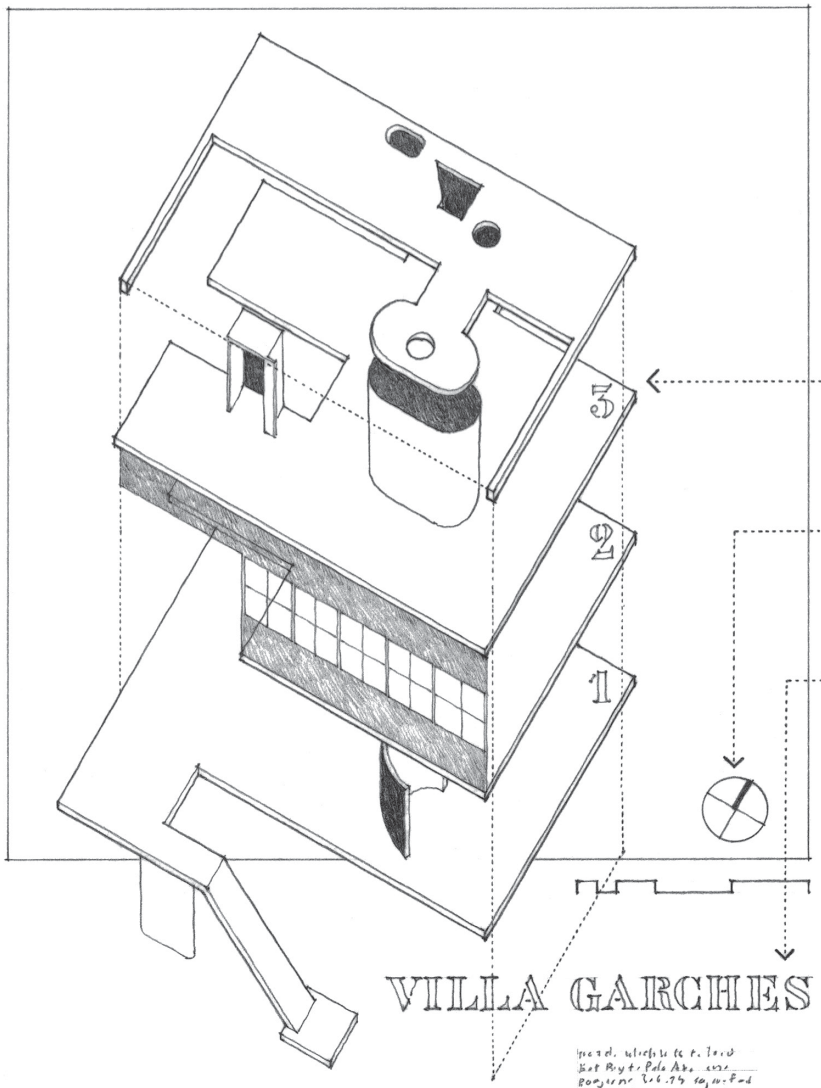
The principles of unity and continuity are mutually self-supporting; one cannot be achieved without the other. The factors that produce one invariably reinforce the other. At the same time, however, we can bring into focus the central idea of a design through the placement and pacing of the major and supporting graphic and verbal elements comprising the presentation.



Anti-Villa, Napa Valley, California, 1977–78, Batey & Mack







A single drawing cannot fully explain a design. Only through a coordinated presentation of related drawings can the three-dimensional character and form of a design be communicated. But a presentation consists of more than a series of drawings. To explain and clarify aspects beyond the scope of the drawings, we also require diagrams, graphic symbols, titles, and text. In any design presentation, therefore, we should carefully plan the sequence and arrangement of all of the following elements:

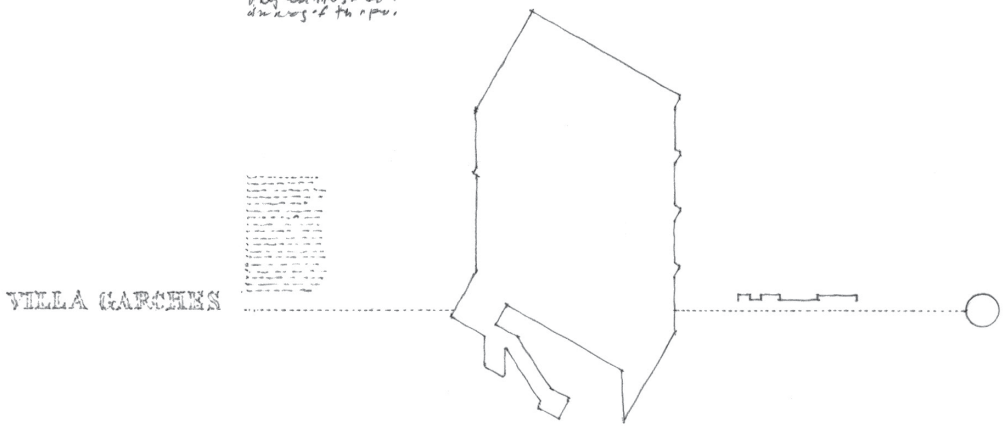
Graphic Images
Drawings
Diagrams

Graphic Symbols
North arrows
Graphic scales

Lettering
Titles
Legends
Text

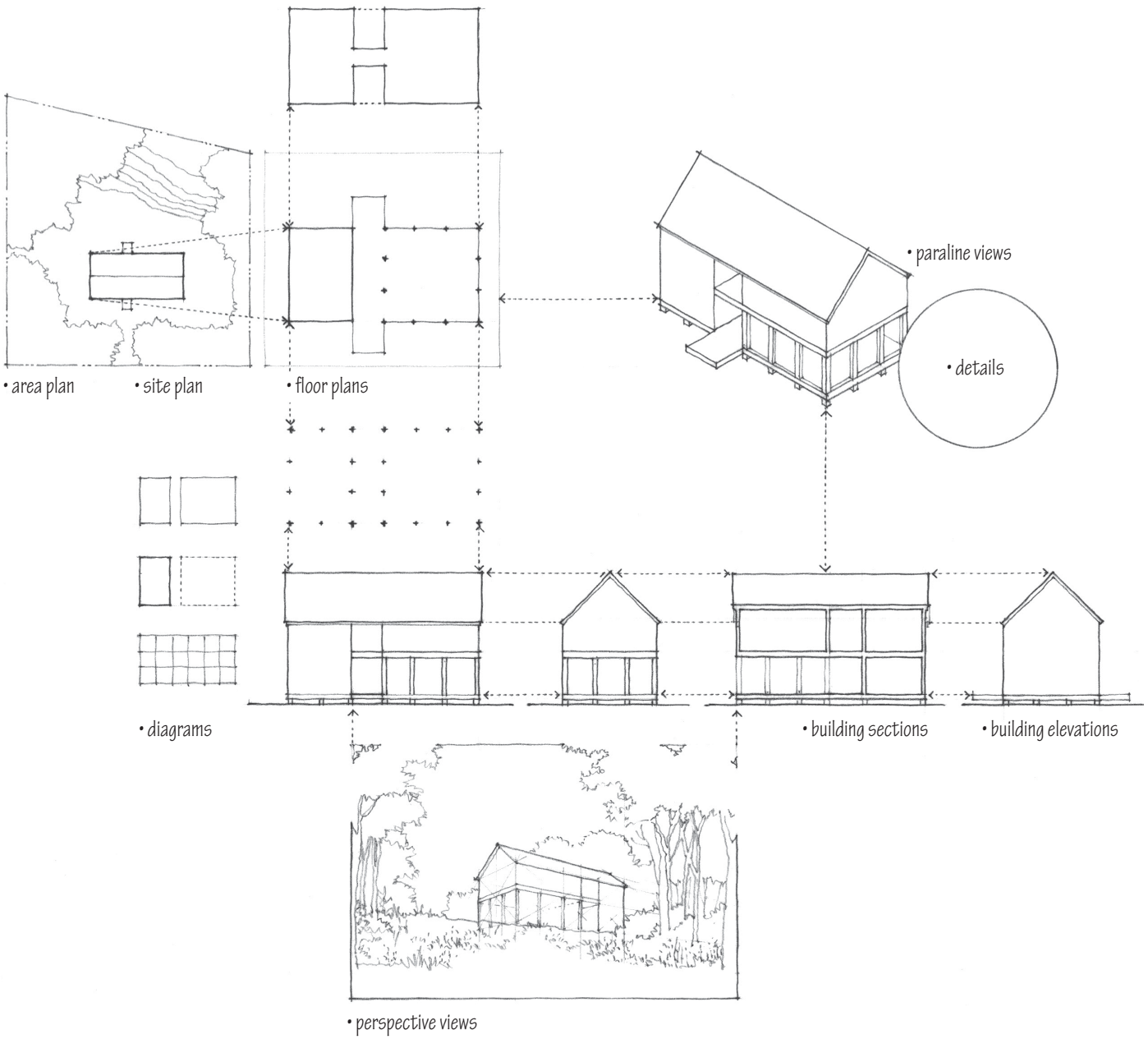
All of the above elements have the following properties, which must be considered in composing a visually balanced presentation:

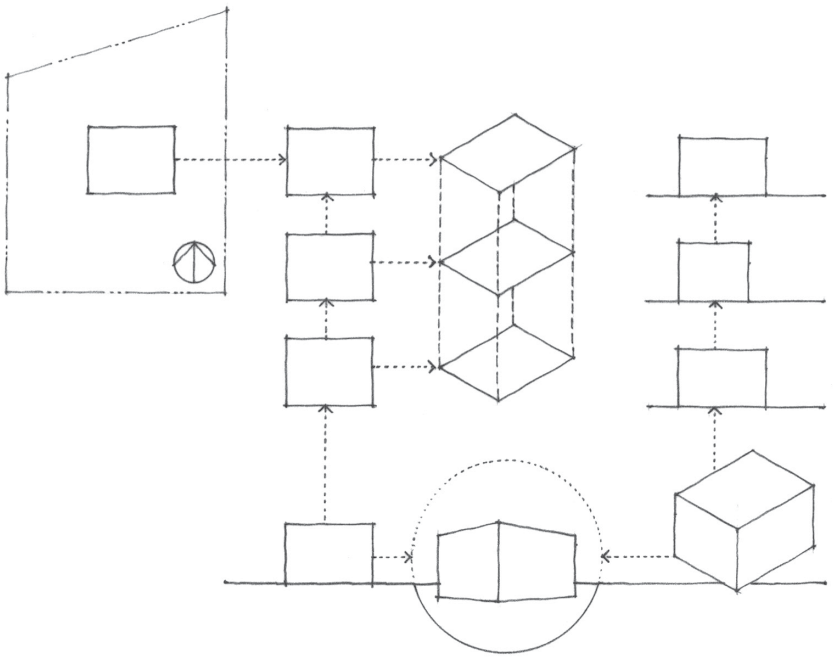
- shape
- size
- tonal value
- placement
- direction
- interval



Villa Garches, Vaucresson, France, 1926–27, Le Corbusier

We generally read design presentations from left to right and from top to bottom. Slide and digital presentations, however, involve a sequence in time. In either case, the subject matter presented should progress in sequence from small scale to large scale, and from the general or contextual view to the specific.

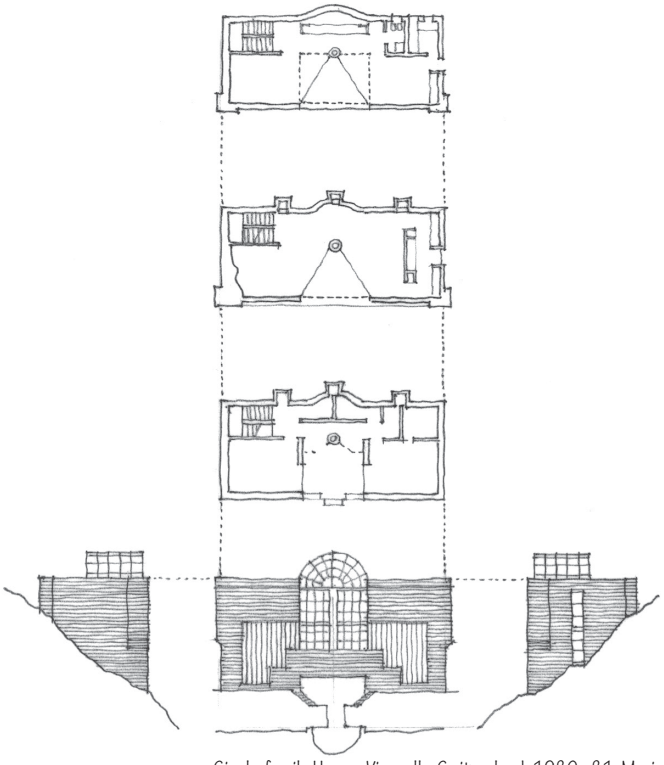


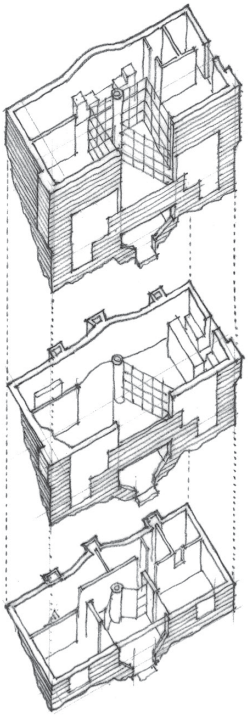


Drawing Relationships

The sequence and alignment of design drawings should reinforce their projected relationships.

- Orient all plans in a similar manner. Whenever possible, orient plan drawings with north up or upward on the sheet.
- Position floor plans of multistory buildings either vertically or horizontally, preferably along their longer dimensions.
- Arrange building elevations either vertically or horizontally, correlating them whenever possible to the floor plans.
- Likewise, organize building sections either vertically or horizontally and relate them whenever possible to the floor plans or building elevations.
- Lay out a related series of paraline drawings vertically or horizontally. When each drawing successively builds on the preceding one, work from the bottom up or proceed from left to right.
- Relate paraline and perspective drawings as directly as possible to the plan drawing that best shows their context.
- Include people and furniture to show the scale and use of spaces in all drawings.





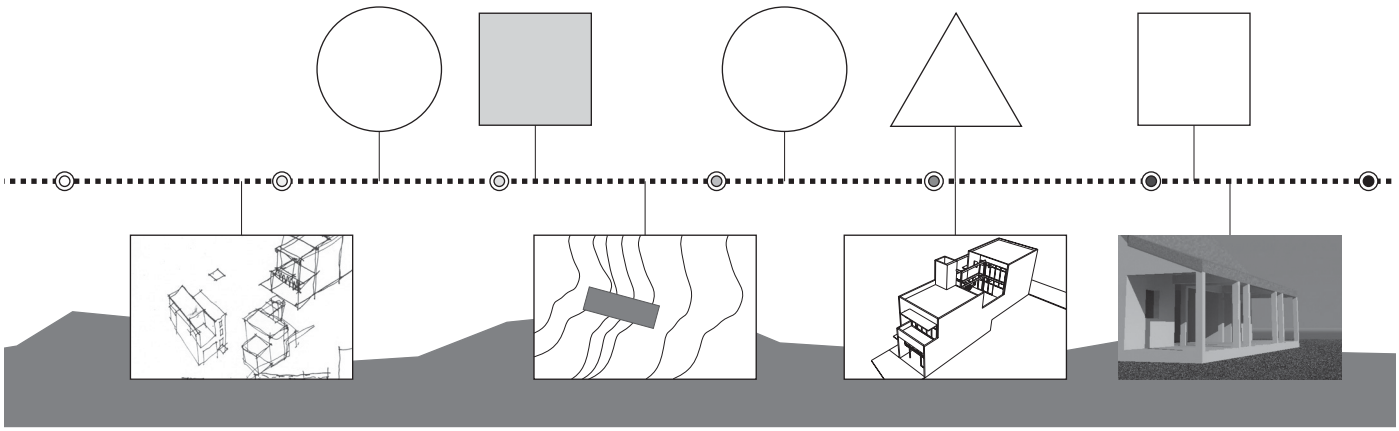
Single-family House, Viganello, Switzerland, 1980–81, Mario Botta

Key Sequences

In addition to the inherent projected relationships of the various drawing types, the visual or narrative nature of certain sequences can guide the manner in which we organize presentation drawings.

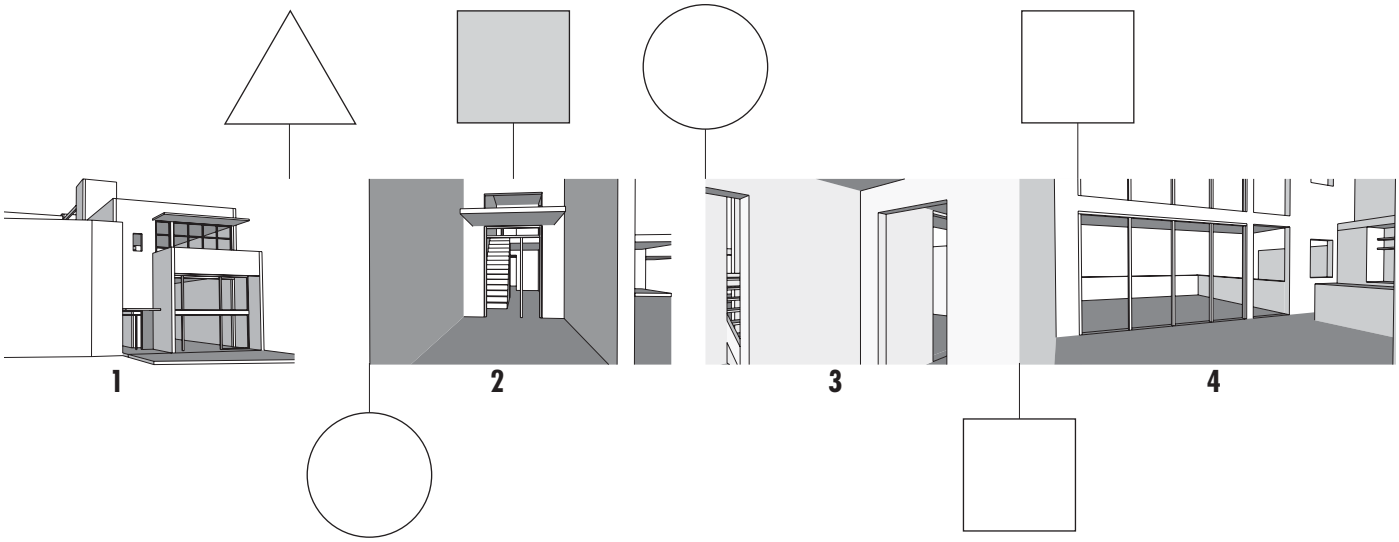
Sequences of time

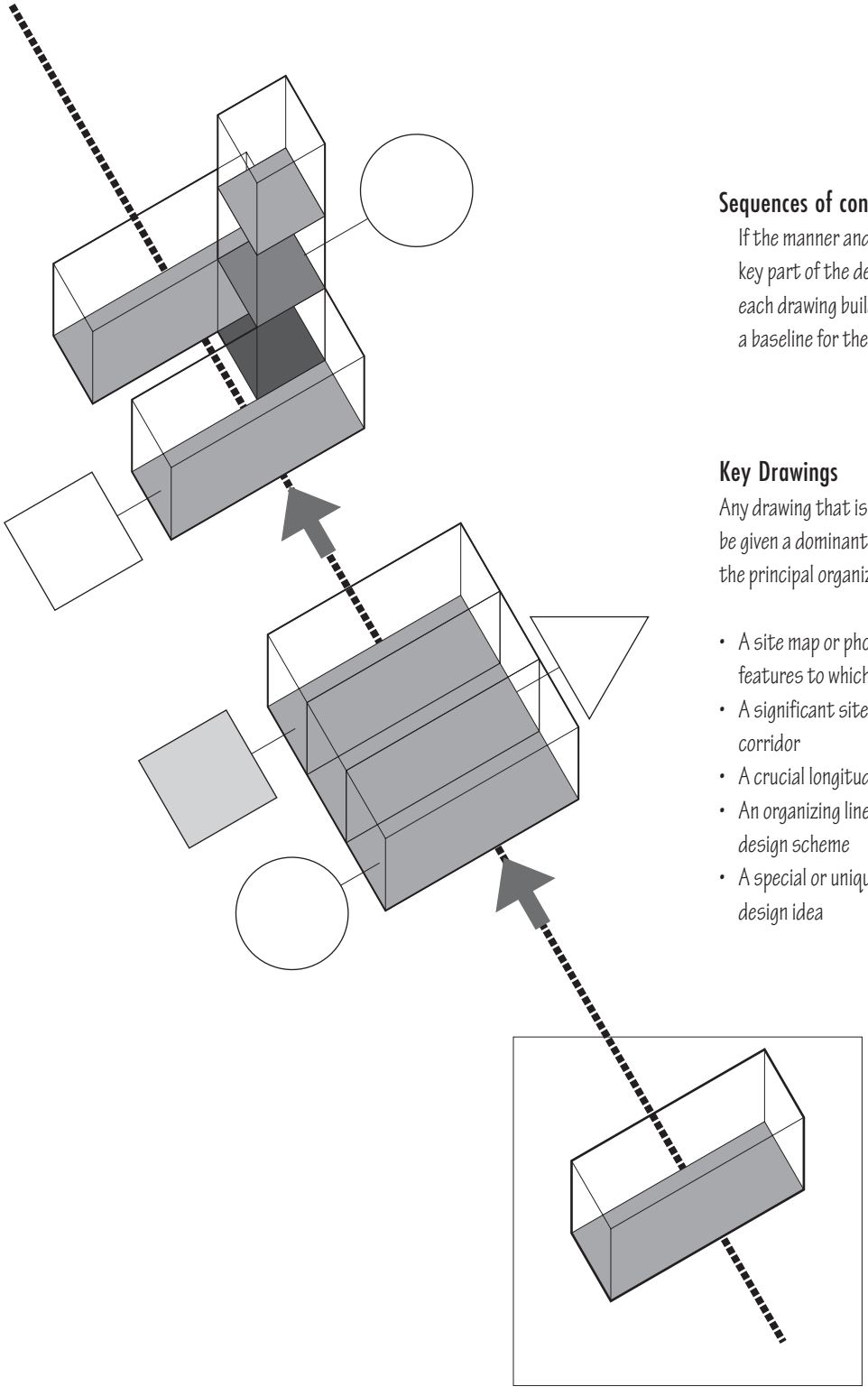
Timelines can serve as a datum for a series of drawings intended to convey the idea of growth, expansion, or transformation over time.



Sequences of experience

A linear series of perspective views that conveys the experience of moving through a built environment can serve as an index for the other drawings in a presentation.





Sequences of construction

If the manner and method of how a project is to be built is a key part of the design concept, a construction sequence—each drawing building upon the previous one—can serve as a baseline for the other drawings in a presentation.

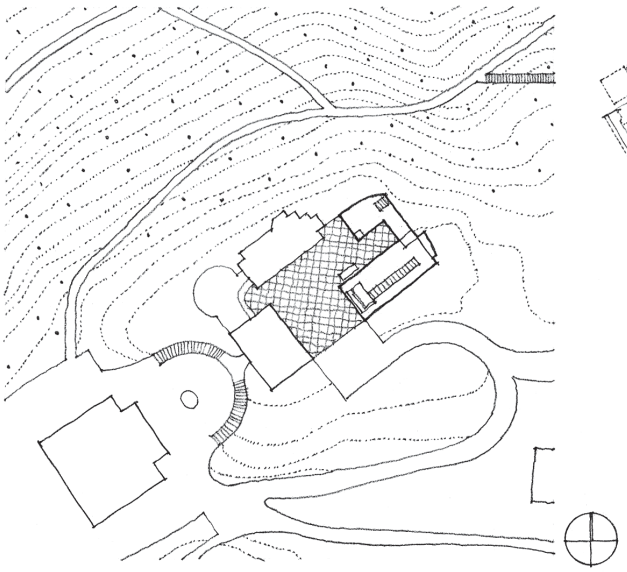
Key Drawings

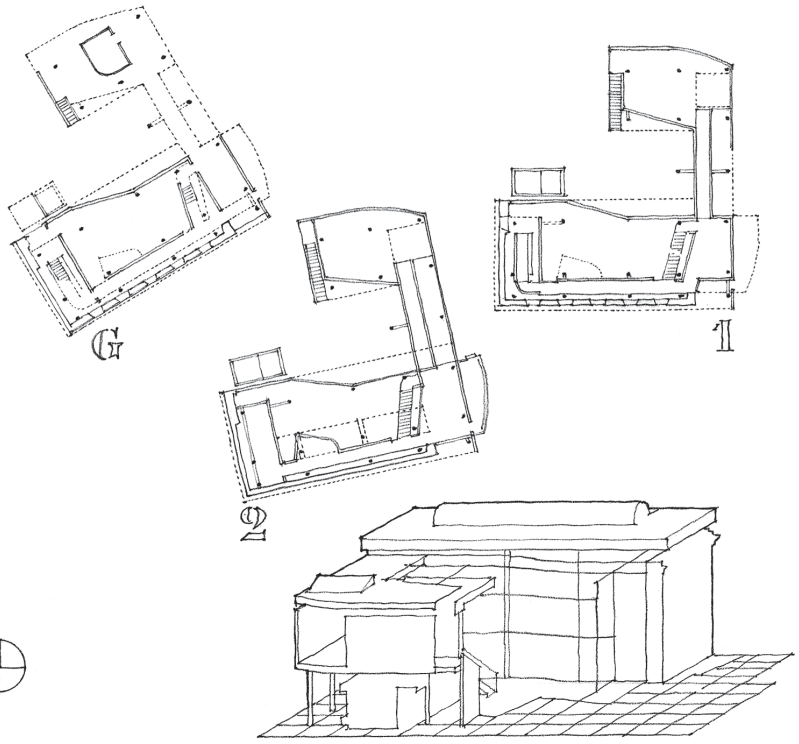
Any drawing that is vital or central to the design concept can be given a dominant position in the presentation and serve as the principal organizing element in the sequence of drawings.

- A site map or photo that illustrates important contextural features to which a design scheme responds
- A significant site feature, such as a significant slope or view corridor
- A crucial longitudinal section of the design scheme
- An organizing line or path of movement through the site or design scheme
- A special or unique structural form that expresses the design idea

Exercise 12.1

Develop two different presentation layouts for the site plan, floor plans, and paraline drawing, one based on a horizontal format and another based on a vertical format.

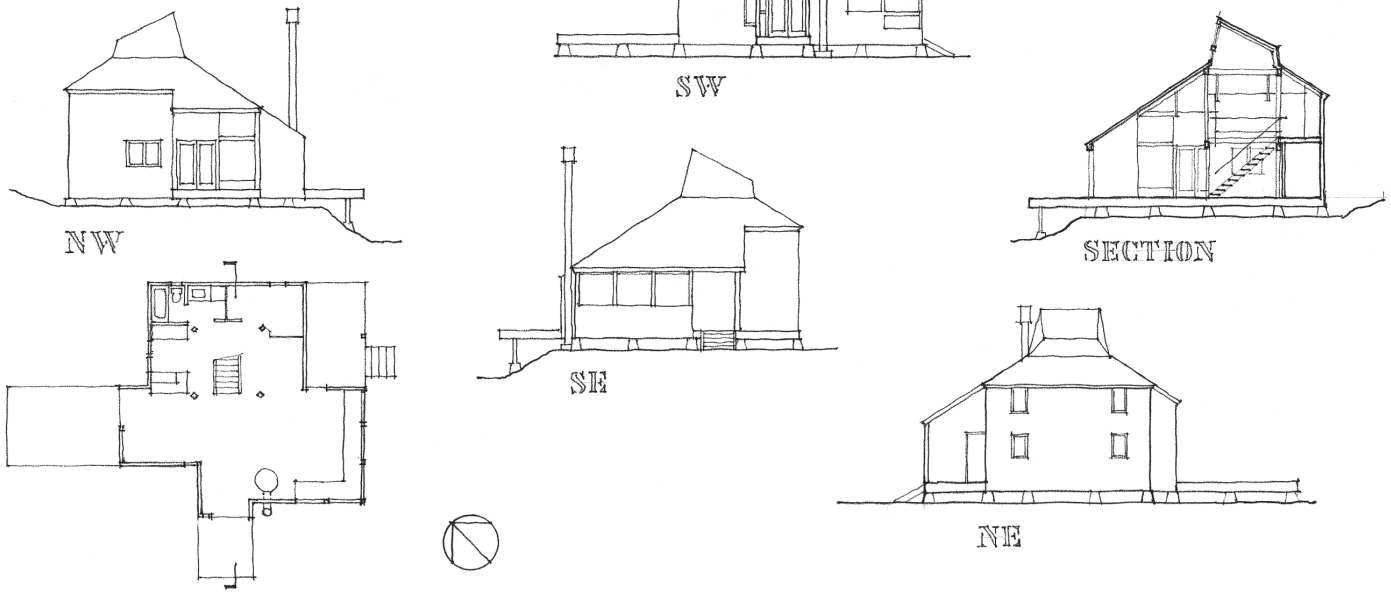




Museum of Modern Art at the Villa Strozzi, Florence, Italy, 1973, Richard Meier

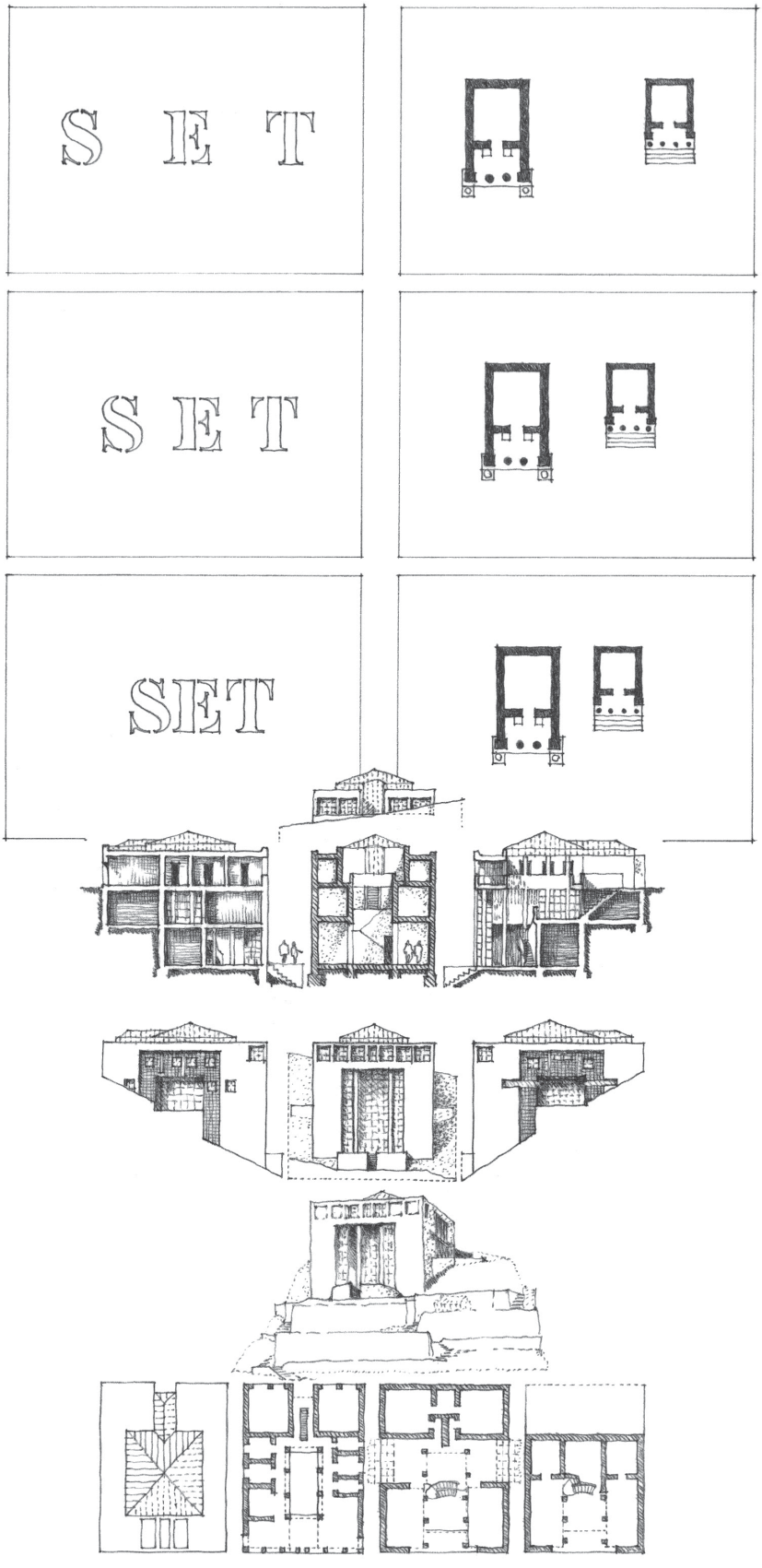
Exercise 12.2

Develop two different presentation layouts for the plan, section, and elevation drawings, one based on a horizontal format and another based on a vertical format.



Jobson House, Palo Colorado Canyon, California, 1961, Charles Moore

VISUAL SETS OF INFORMATION



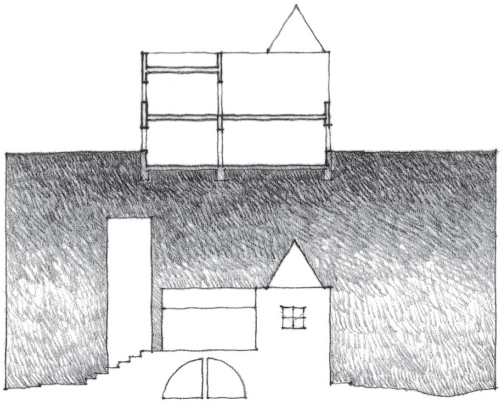
Project for Weidemann House, Stuttgart, Germany, 1975, Rob Krier

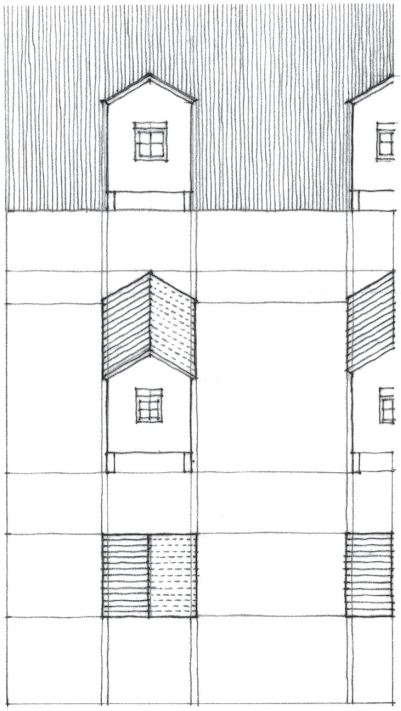
We usually present design drawings as a related set or group of figures. Typical examples include a series of floor plans for a multistory building or a sequence of building elevations. The spacing and alignment of these individual drawings, as well as similarity of shape and treatment, are the key factors in determining whether we read these drawings as a set of related information or as individual figures.

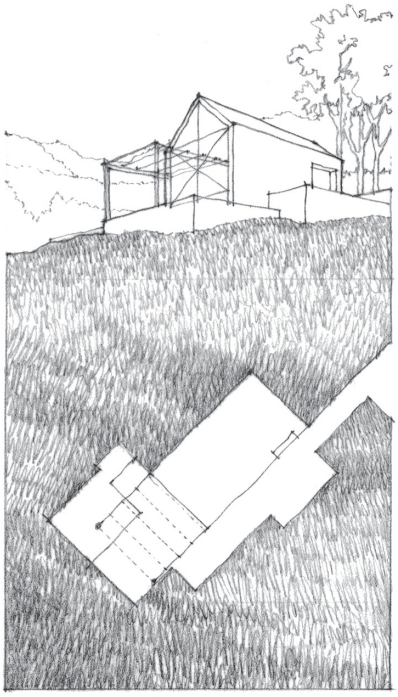
- Use white space and alignment to reinforce the organization of the graphic and verbal information of a presentation. Do not fill up white space unless absolutely necessary.
- If we want two drawings to be read as individual figures, the space between them should be equal to the space between each drawing and the nearest edge of the field.
- Moving the two drawings closer together causes them to be read as a related group.
- If we move the drawings closer still, they will appear to be a single view rather than two related but individual views.

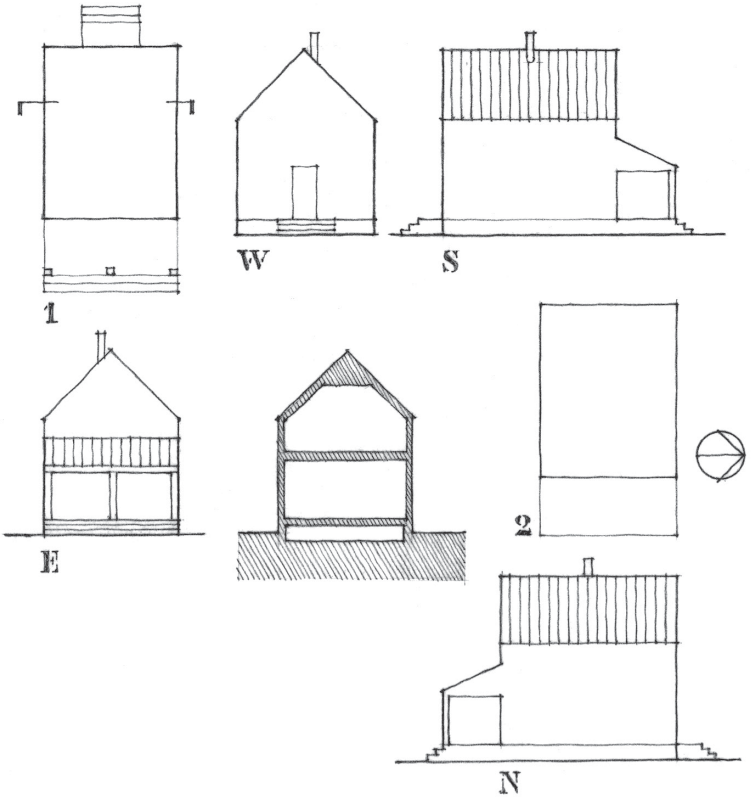
- Drawings that are properly related to form a visual set can themselves define an edge of a field for another drawing or set of figures.
- Lines can serve to separate as well as to unify, to emphasize, and to outline. Avoid using lines, however, when spacing or alignment can achieve the same purpose.
- Boxes can establish a field within a larger field or within the boundaries of the sheet or board. Be aware, however, that using too many frames can establish confusing figure-ground relationships.

- We can use a tonal value to define a field within a larger field. A darker background for an elevation drawing, for example, can merge with a section drawing. The foreground for a perspective can become the field for a plan view of the building.



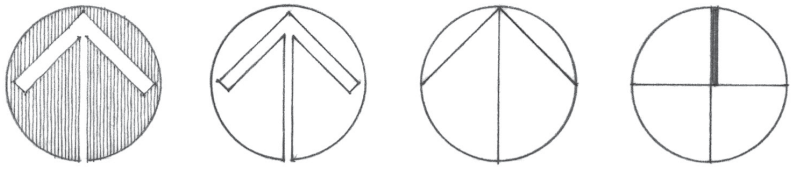


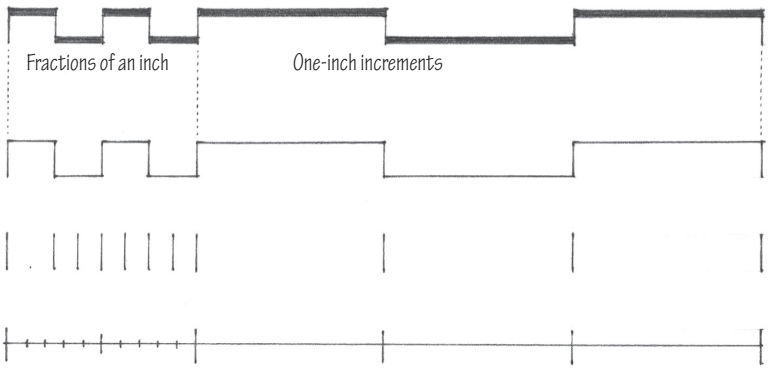


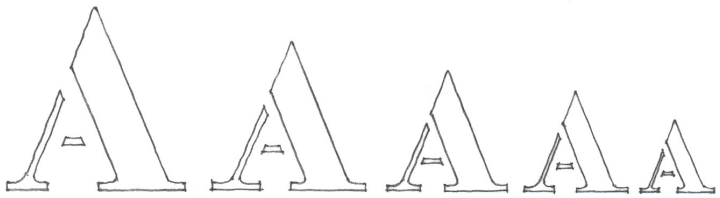


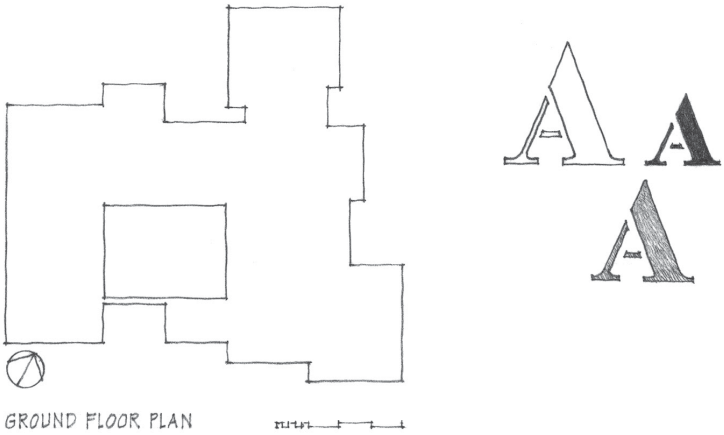
Exercise 12.3

Develop two different strategies for laying out the plan, elevation, and section shapes in order to form three distinct but related visual sets of information: a plan set, an elevation set, and a section set. How could a field of tonal value be used to create or reinforce one or more of the visual sets?









Graphic Symbols

Graphic symbols help the viewer identify the various aspects and features of a drawing or presentation. Two principal types are the north arrow and the graphic scale.

- North arrows indicate the major compass points on architectural plans so that the viewer is able to grasp the orientation of a building and its site.
- Graphic scales are graduated lines or bars representing proportionate size. These scales are especially useful because they remain proportional when a drawing is enlarged or reduced.

Graphic symbols rely on conventions to convey information. So they are easily recognizable and readable, keep them simple and clean—free of extraneous detail and stylistic flourishes. In enhancing the clarity and readability of a presentation, these devices also become important elements in the overall composition of a drawing or presentation.

The impact of graphic symbols and lettering depends on their size, visual weight, and placement.

Size

The size of a graphic symbol or lettering should be in proportion to the scale of the drawing and readable from the anticipated viewing distance.

Visual Weight

The size and tonal value determines the visual weight of graphic symbols and lettering. If a large symbol or typeface is required for readability but a low value is mandatory for a balanced composition, then use an outline symbol or letter style.

Placement

Place graphic symbols, titles, and text as close to the drawing to which they refer. Whenever possible, use spacing and alignment instead of boxes or frames to form visual sets of information.

Lettering

The most important characteristics of lettering are legibility and consistency. The character of the typeface we use should be appropriate to the design being presented and not detract from the drawings themselves. A wealth of well-designed typefaces and digital fonts are available. Therefore, we should spend time on the appropriate selection and use of fonts rather than trying to design new ones.

- We space letters by optically equalizing the areas between the letterforms rather than by mechanically measuring the distance between the extremities of each letter. Digital illustration and layout programs often include the ability to adjust kerning—adjusting the spacing of two particular characters to correct visually uneven spacing; tracking—regulating the overall spacing of a word or body of text, which affects the density and texture of the text; and leading—specifying the distance between adjacent lines of type.

- Lowercase lettering is appropriate if executed consistently throughout a presentation. Body text consisting of upper and lowercase lettering is generally easier to read than text consisting of all capitals because the differences among lowercase characters are more distinct and recognizable.

- Serifs are the fine lines used to finish off the main strokes of a letterform to enhance its recognition and readability. Avoid mixing serif and sans serif typefaces in heading and titles.

- The use of guidelines to control the height and line spacing of hand lettering is essential. The maximum size for a hand lettering is $^{3}/_{16}$ of an inch. Beyond this size, the strokes require a width beyond what a pen or pencil is capable of producing.

- Determine the range of lettering sizes by judging the distance from which the audience will view the presentation. Keep in mind that we may read different portions of a presentation—project overviews, diagrams, details, text, etc.—at different distances.

Correct spacing of equal areas

Incorrect spacing of letterforms

Lowercase lettering is particularly appropriate for bodies of text.

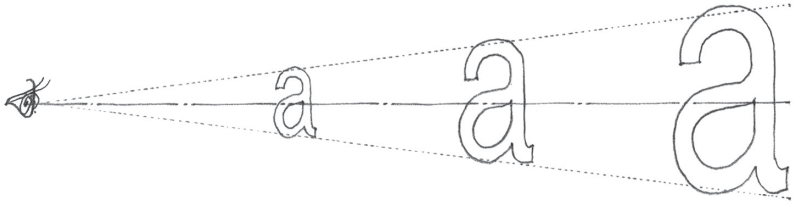
Serifs enhance the recognition and readability of letterforms.

TRADE GOTHIC is a very legible typeface.

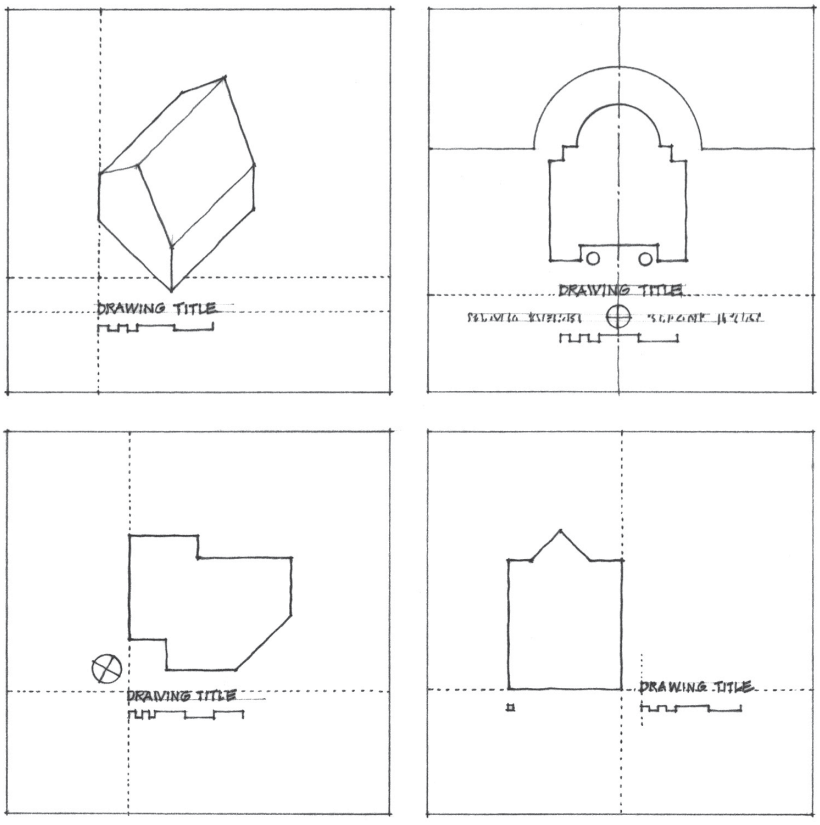
NARROW or CONDENSED fonts are useful when space is tight.

GARAMOND is a classic example of a typeface with serifs.

CASLON has slightly broader proportions than Garamond.



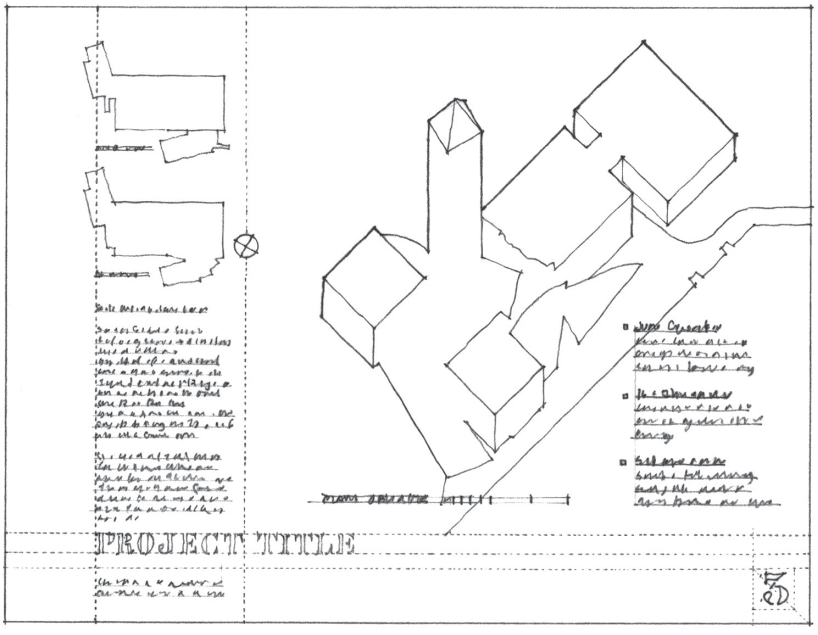
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ 1234567890 abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz



Lettering in a design presentation should be carefully integrated into the composition of drawings on each sheet or board.

Drawing Titles

Relate titles and graphic symbols that identify and explain the contents of a specific drawing to that drawing. By convention, we always place titles directly below a drawing. We can also sometimes align a title with the bottom and off to one side of a drawing. In these positions, titles can help stabilize drawing fields, especially irregularly shaped ones. Use symmetrical layouts with symmetrical drawings and designs. In all other cases, it is usually easier to justify—align vertically—a drawing title with either the drawing itself or its field.



Text

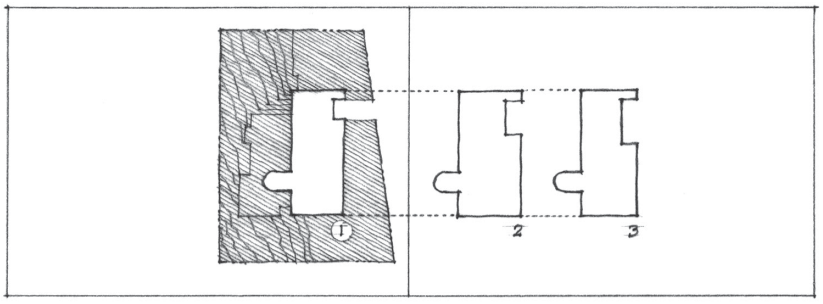
Organize text into visual sets of information and relate these sets directly to the portion of the drawing to which they refer. The line spacing of text should be from one to one-and-a-half of the letter height used. The space between blocks of text should be equal to or greater than the height of two lines of text.

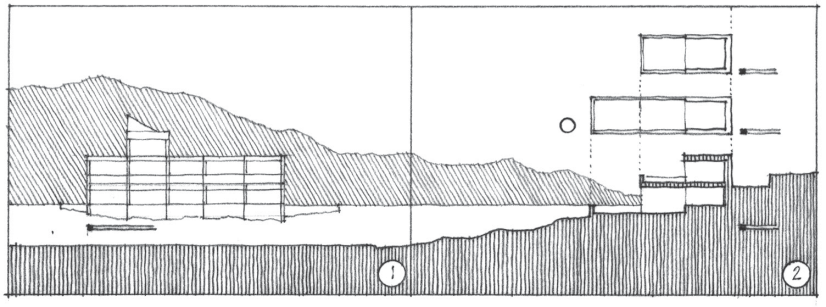
Project Title

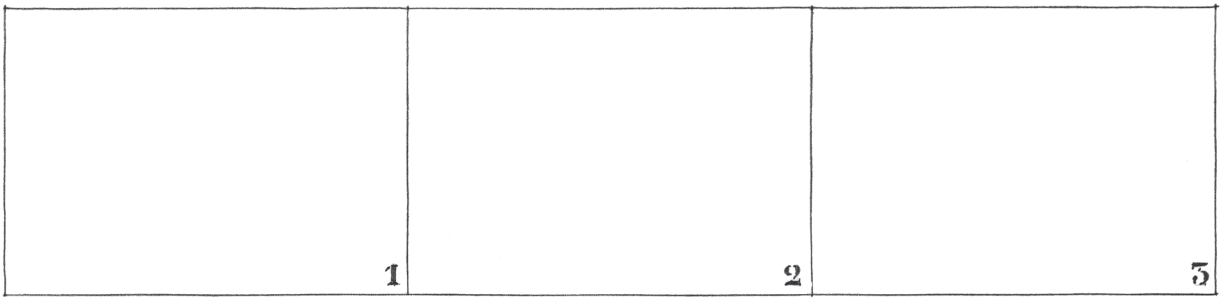
The project title and associated information should relate to the overall sheet or board, not to any single drawing within the field of the panel.

A set of related drawings may by laid out in a vertical, horizontal, or grid format. In planning the layout for a presentation, we first identify the essential relationships we want to achieve. Then we use a storyboard or small-scale mock-up of the presentation to explore alternative drawing arrangements, alignments, and spacing prior to beginning the final presentation drawings.

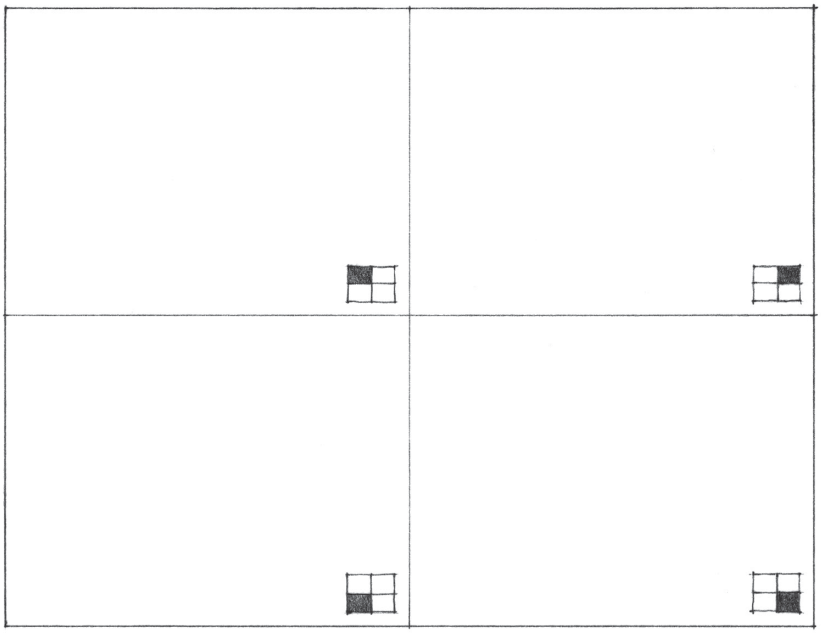
- Remember to explore potential relationships between the sheets or panels.
- Maintain horizontal continuity across sheets with a ground line or by the alignment of drawing titles.
- Do not include dimensions or employ borders and title blocks; these are conventions for construction or working drawings.



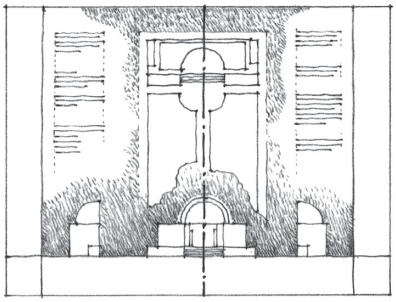


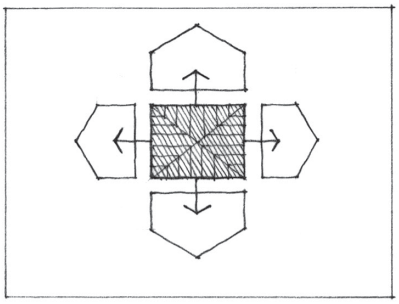


When a presentation consists of more than one sheet, board, or panel, identify each panel by a number. This information should be in the same relative position on each panel. If the panels of a presentation are to be displayed in a specific manner, we can use more graphic means to identify the relative position of each panel in the display.



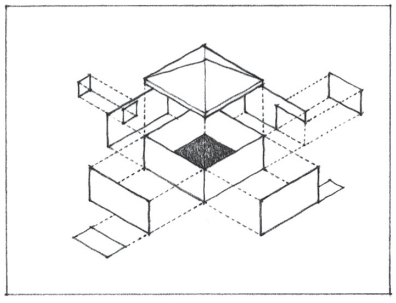
PRESENTATION LAYOUT

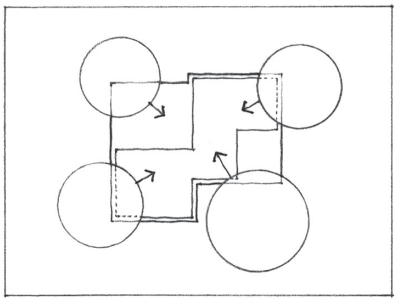


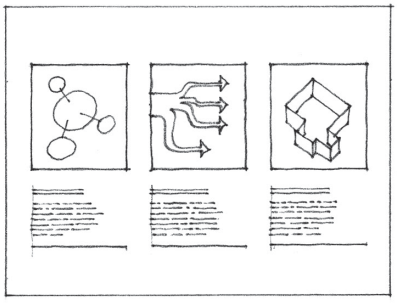


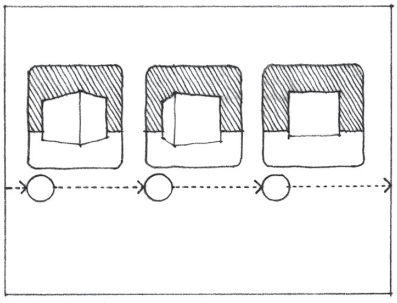
A symmetrical layout works best in presenting symmetrical designs.

Centralized formats are suitable when presenting a plan surrounded by elevation views, an expanded paraline drawing, or a key drawing surrounded by detailed portions drawn at a larger scale.

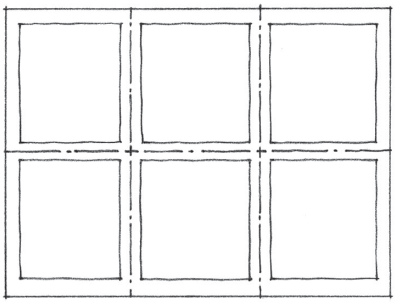


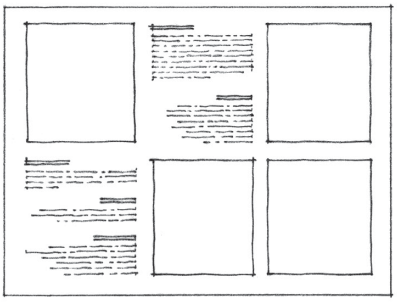






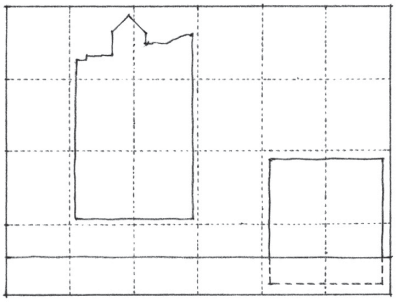
If a series of related drawings are treated in different ways or are of different types, we can unify them by framing or boxing them in a uniform manner.

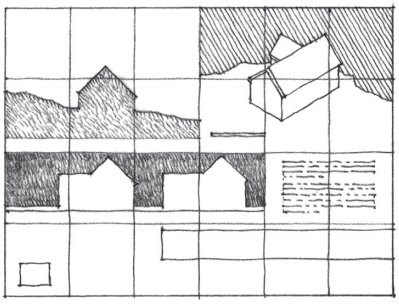




A grid provides the greatest flexibility for laying out a series of drawing and informational text on a panel or series of boards. The underlying sense of order created by the grid allows a great variety of information to be presented in a uniform manner.

- The grid may be square or rectangular.
- We can display drawings, diagrams, and text in individual boxes or frames.
- We can display drawings horizontally with text below each drawing to form related columns.
- An important drawing may take up more than one box or frame.
- Graphics and text may be integrated in an organic manner.



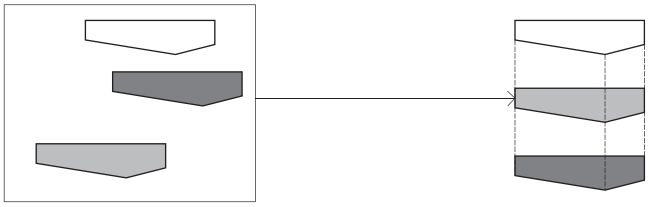


Digital Layouts

Preparing a presentation by hand and drawing directly onto a paper or board surface is a design problem that requires careful planning, establishing the proper drawing relationships, and storyboarding the possibilities before commiting to a layout. While this time-proven method requires a good deal of forethought and allows little room for error, the results can be stunning.

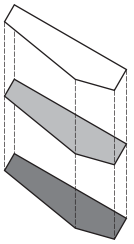
On the other hand, using digital software to lay out a presentation offers several advantages over drawing directly onto a paper or board surface. The primary advantage is the ability to try out alternative layouts before deciding on a final composition. This can be achieved via the grouping and layering capabilities of digital software to organize images and other layout elements and move them around freely before deciding on a final layout. If necessary, we can save and work on copies of a digital layout file and retrieve prior versions if newer attempts do not achieve the desired results.

While raster-based programs are ideal for manipulating images through cropping, filtering, and tonal/color adjustments, vector-based drawing and page layout programs that use linked-file features rather than embedded files are better suited for laying out a presentation. The linking of image files allows us to mix a variety of media—scans of hand drawings, digital photographs, vector images, and raster images—into a single presentation. Another benefit of using linked image files is that if any original image is manipulated, that image can be updated in the layout file by reloading the original but now altered image.

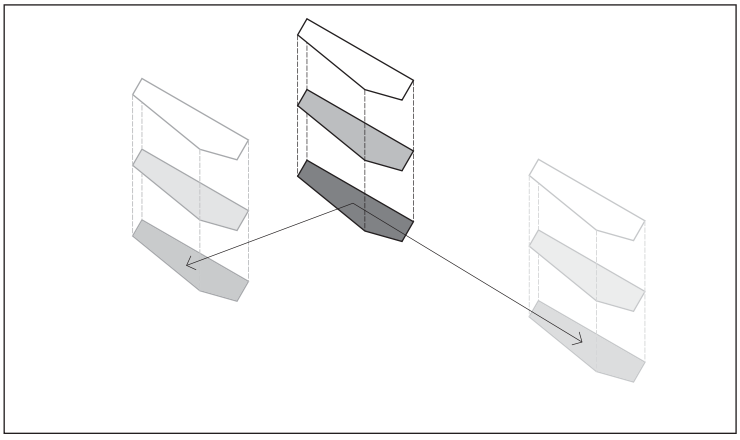


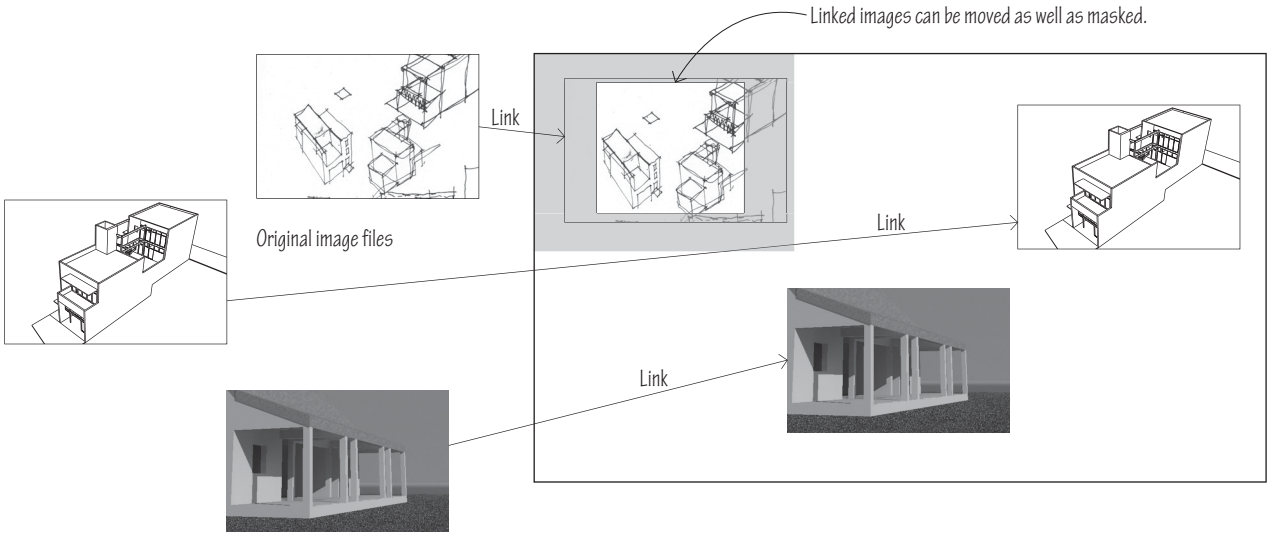
Three digital images can be aligned, spaced evenly, and then grouped before being linked to or placed in the layout program file.

If desired, the images can be rotated first and then aligned and spaced evenly before grouping.

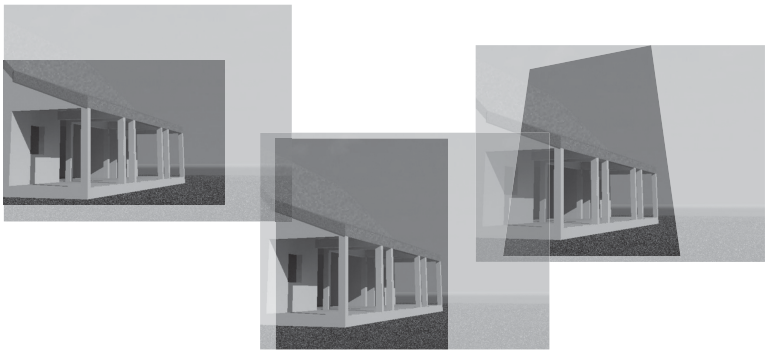


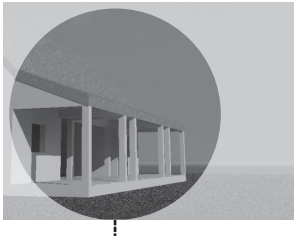
Once linked, the grouped images can be moved around until the desired fit and arrangement is achieved.





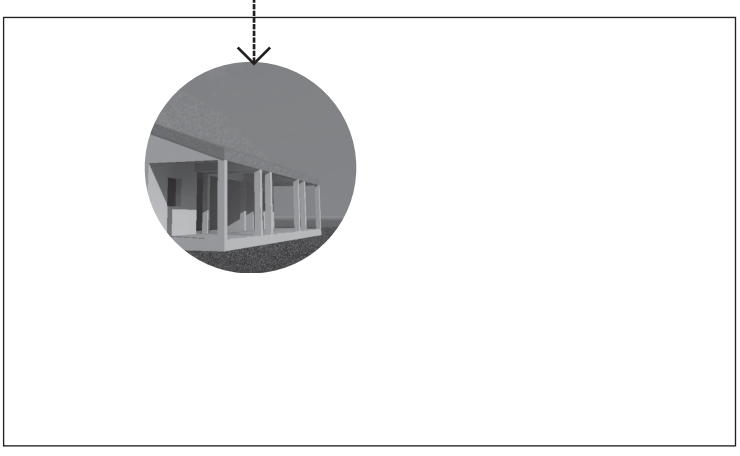
PRESENTATION LAYOUT





Digital masks can vary in size and shape.

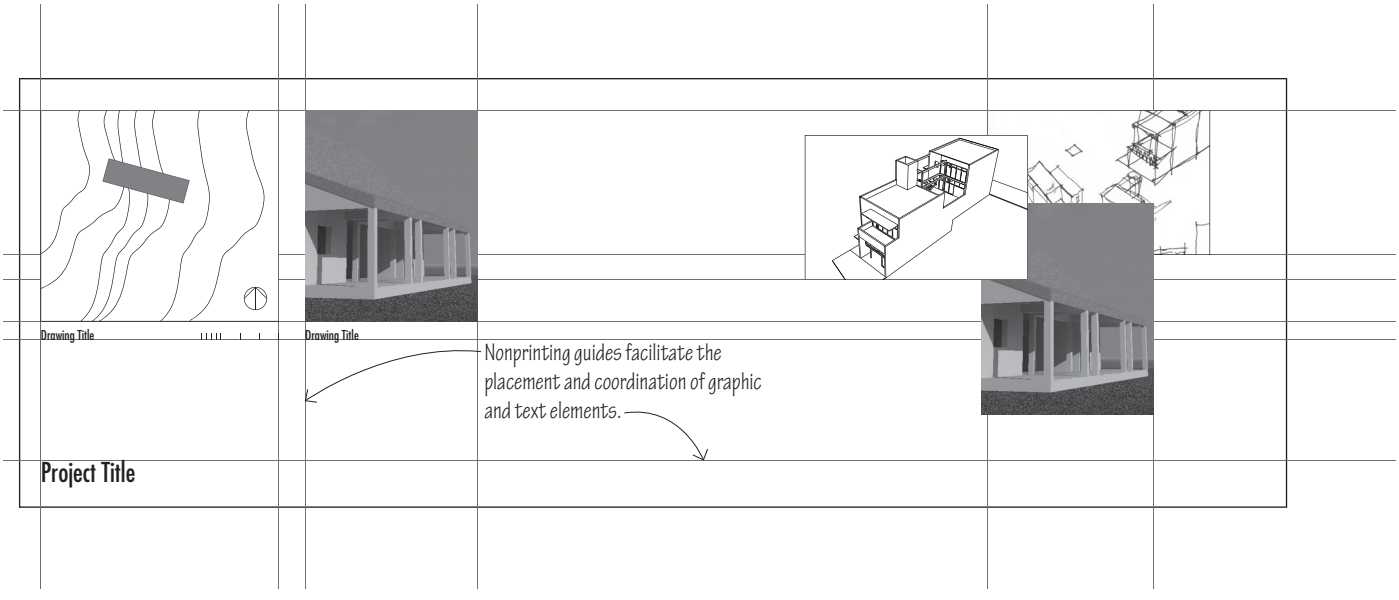
Link



In vector-based drawing and page layout programs, frames act as placeholders into which the various graphic components of a presentation can be placed or linked. Each frame is like a window through which we view the placed image. The original image is masked, not cropped as would happen in a raster-based image manipulation program. The portion of the image displayed is determined by the size and shape of the opening we create in the drawing or layout program. Once placed or linked, we can freely move the image and its aperture to different locations in the presentation layout, as well as resize or rotate the image to enhance the overall composition of the presentation.

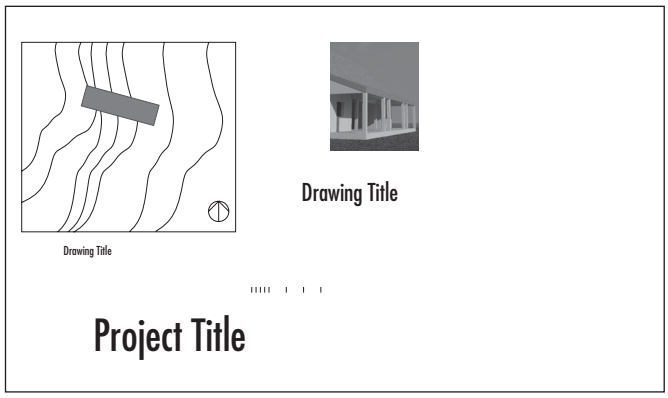
Similarly, we can add other presentation elements, such as lines, shapes, and text, to the layout and move, resize, or rotate them to best contribute to the composition of the layout and reinforce the visual sets of information being established. We can also use nonprinting guidelines to help us align and coordinate the visual sets of information and to maintain consistency in layout from one sheet, board, or panel to the next.

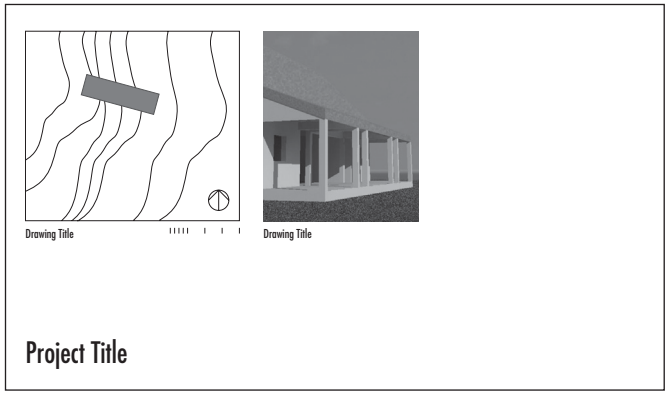
The layering capabilities of digital graphic programs enable us to pull certain elements forward and push others back, which can be especially useful in developing the proper foreground-background relationships in elevation, section, and even paraline drawings.

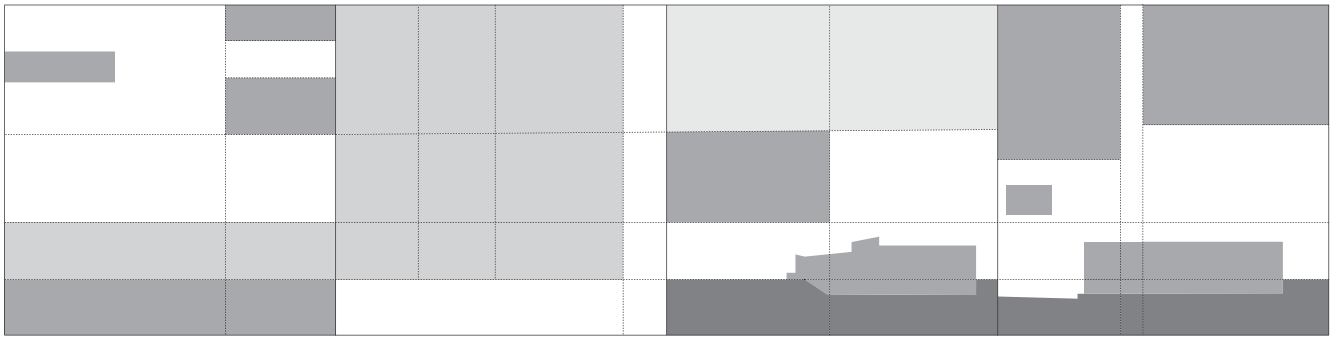


When preparing a presentation in a digital environment, we should carefully consider the sizes of images, lettering, and graphic symbols relative to each other as well as to the entire layout. Because we can easily zoom in on a portion of our presentation or zoom out to view it in its entirety—and often see it at a reduced size on the computer screen—it may be difficult to ascertain whether any of the presentation elements—particularly text—are too small to be read when printed or plotted, or too large in proportion to the other elements of the layout. Printing or plotting all or a selected portion of a presentation at its actual size can provide valuable feedback prior to executing the final print or plot.

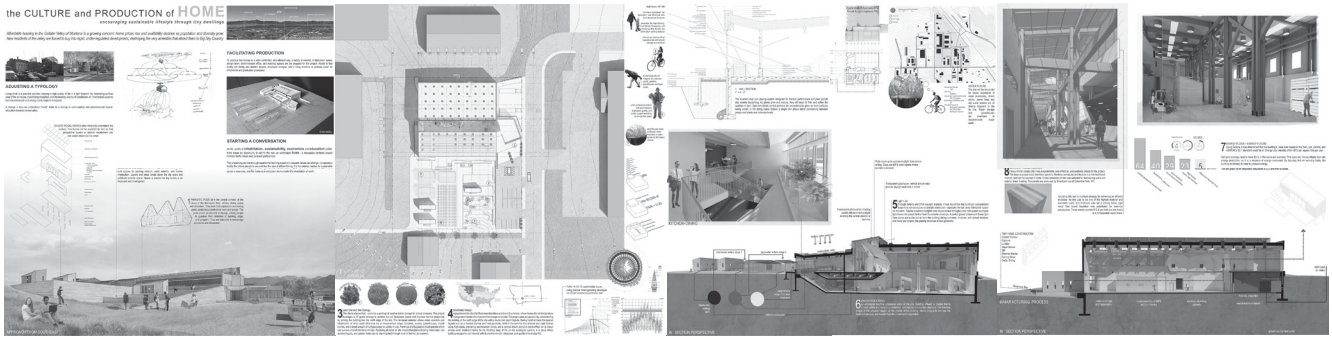
In either case, any drawing we expect to be viewed by others should work at varying distances. When viewed as a whole, a drawing should have a compelling figure-ground composition; when viewed more closely, an appropriate level of detail should emerge.







Digital board layout grid



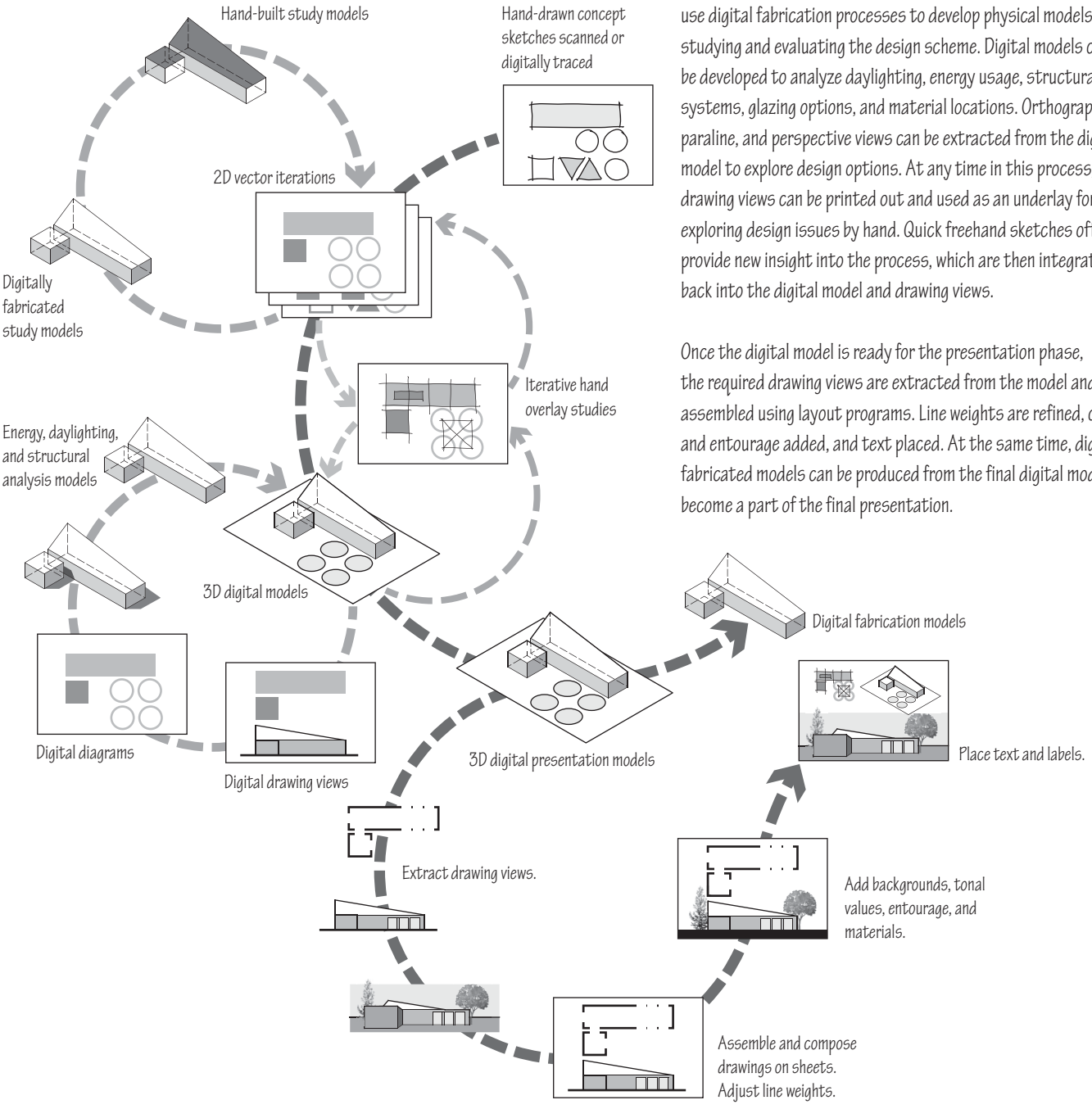
Digital board layout and images by Robin Wilder

Hybrid Layouts

Moving from a design concept to a hybrid presentation is an iterative process that flows freely between digital and analog workspaces. Initial concept sketches may begin with hand drawings that are scanned into the digital workspace and then traced to create 2D vector drawings. Once in the digital workspace, further iterations of the design drawings can be developed with more 2D vector drawings or new 3D digital models.

During this design process, digital drawings can be exported to use digital fabrication processes to develop physical models for studying and evaluating the design scheme. Digital models can be developed to analyze daylighting, energy usage, structural systems, glazing options, and material locations. Orthographic, paraline, and perspective views can be extracted from the digital model to explore design options. At any time in this process, drawing views can be printed out and used as an underlay for exploring design issues by hand. Quick freehand sketches often provide new insight into the process, which are then integrated back into the digital model and drawing views.

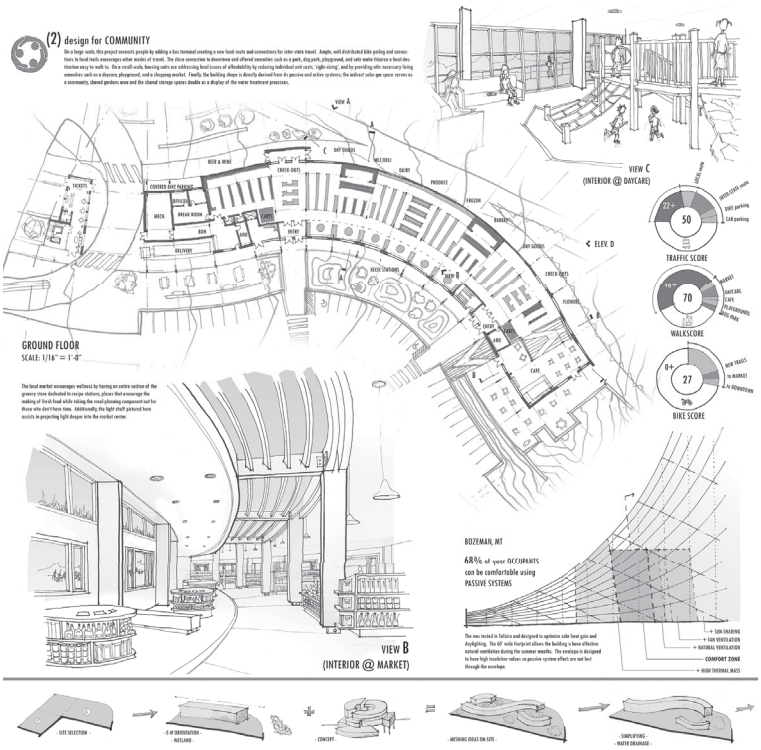
Once the digital model is ready for the presentation phase, the required drawing views are extracted from the model and assembled using layout programs. Line weights are refined, context and entourage added, and text placed. At the same time, digitally fabricated models can be produced from the final digital model and become a part of the final presentation.



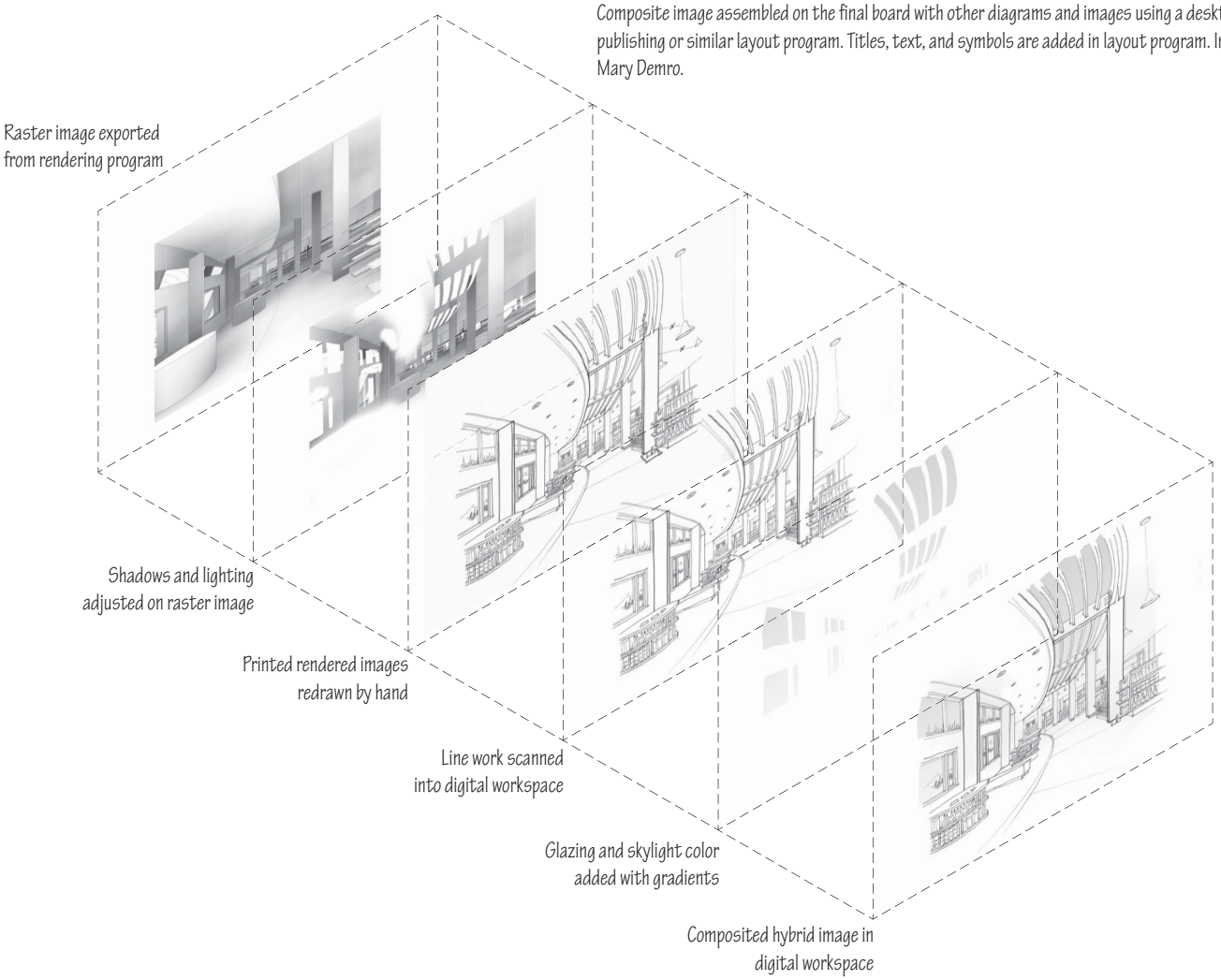
Moving from a digital workspace to an analog workspace requires that the digital drawing or image be printed out, often at the desired scale for the final drawing. Tracing or drawing paper is laid over this digital image—often on a light table—and the image is traced by hand. Line weights are added or adjusted and the appropriate level of detail is incorporated in the drawing.

Once the hardline or freehand drawing is completed, it can be scanned back into the digital workspace so that brightness and contrast level can be adjusted, areas of tone and color added, and other compositing techniques applied. Once completed, this digital image can be linked to the presentation board through a layout program.

In some cases, the hand drawing will not be scanned back into the digital workspace—such as when the hand-traced drawing will be used for a watercolor drawing.



Composite image assembled on the final board with other diagrams and images using a desktop publishing or similar layout program. Titles, text, and symbols are added in layout program. Image by Mary Demro.



PRESENTATION LAYOUT

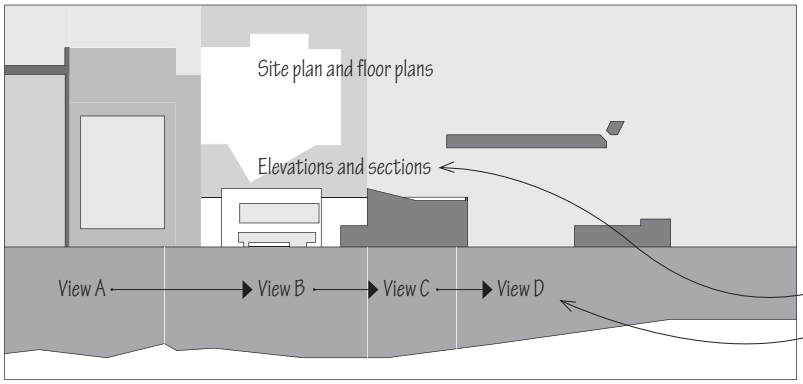
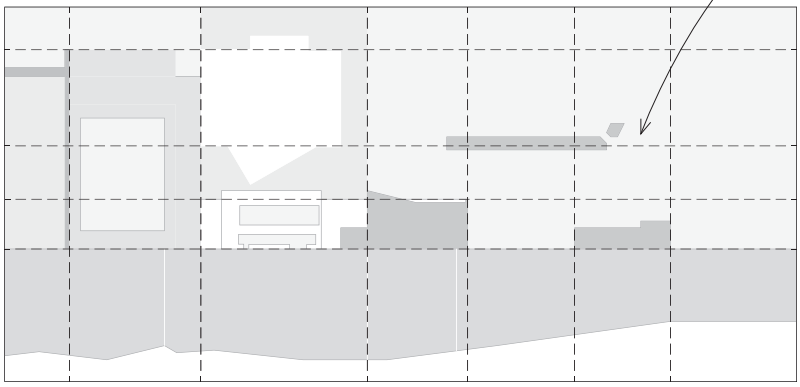
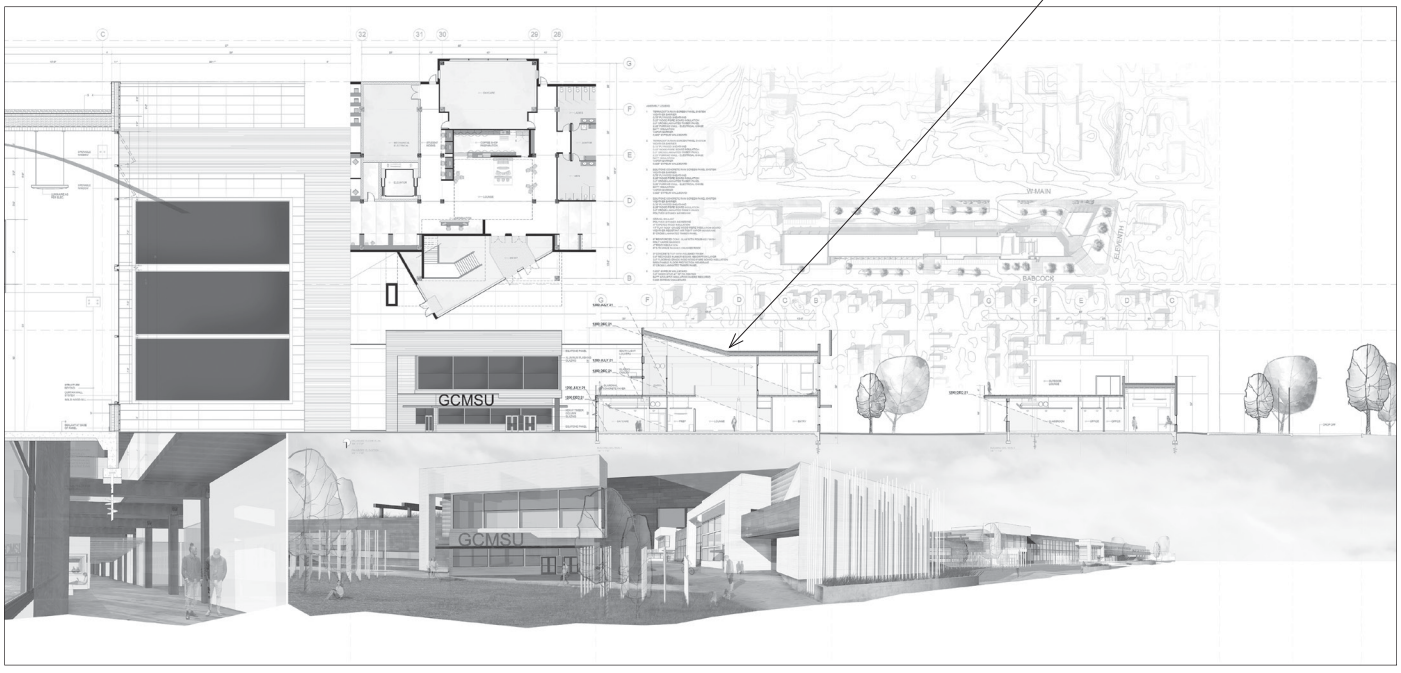


Diagram of presentation layout. Thumbnail studies of possible layouts are always an efficient means to explore a variety of layouts and determine which option will best communicate the design intent.

In composing the graphic images and text in hybrid layouts, the same attention should be paid to sequencing, composition, and clarity as with hand-drawn and digital layouts. A hierarchy of size and placement should exist for both images and text. Take advantage of the flexibility provided by layout programs in moving images and text around to:

- arrive at the right sequence of images
- identify key drawings and sequences
- create visual sets to simplify the reading of information
- use an underlying grid to organize the visual information





Text should be seen as strong visual elements of the presentation layout and, when combined with the use of negative space, can serve as the connective tissue between the graphic elements.

Presentation board by Piper New

Exercise 12.4

Handletter the following quotation using one-eighth-inch-high letters and text lines spaced one-quarter of an inch apart.

> "From the age of six I had a mania for drawing forms of things. By the time I was fifty I had published an infinity of drawings, but all I have produced before the age of seventy is not worth taking into account. At seventy-five I learned a little about the structure of nature—of animals, plants, and bees, birds, fishes and insects. In consequence when I am eighty I shall have made a little more progress. At ninety I shall certainly have reached a marvelous stage, and when I am a hundred and ten, everything I do—be it but a line or a dot—will be alive."
>
> —*The Manga*, Hokusai (1760–1849)

Exercise 12.5

Design a page layout using your handlettered copy and the image of the *Mad Poet*.

Index

Aalto, Alvar, 168, 197, 306, 307, 344, 347
abstraction, drawing as, 335
accuracy, 410
Adam, Robert, 341
additive geometric forms, 78, 80
aerial viewpoint. *See* plan drawings
Alice in Wonderland (Carroll), 312
altitude, 199, 233
ambiguity
  composition and, 379
  of shapes, 32
  for speculative drawing, 310–311
analytical diagrams, 337
analytical drawing, 70–73
anchor points, 138
Ando, Tadao, 232
angled lines
  for drawing process, 134
  for line drafting, 131
  in orthographic projection, 150
angle of view, in perspective drawings, 250
Anti-Villa, Napa Valley, California (Batey & Mack), 411
architect's scales, in pictorial systems, 128
area diagrams, 336
array, 139
arrows, 340
Asplund, Erik Gunnar, 188, 345
asymmetry, 382
atmospheric perspective
  in building elevations, 178, 179
  depth cues and, 92–95, 97
audience, for presentation drawing, 409
auxiliary views, for orthographic projection, 147
axial lines, 209
axial symmetrical composition, 147
axonometric drawings, 212–218
  axonometric projections, defined, 212
  defined, 207, 212
  dimetric projection and drawings, 216–217
  isometric projection and drawings, 213–215
  trimetric projection and drawings, 218
  types of, 127
azimuth, 199

backlighting, 55
balance, 382–383
Bar Harbor wicker chair, 404
Barnes, Edward Larabee, 344
Barrágan, Luis, 391
Barrágan House and Atelier, Tacubaya, Mexico City (Barrágan), 391
Batey & Mack, 411
bearing, 199, 233–234
bézier curves, 140
bilateral symmetrical composition, 147
bisecting a line, 134
blend modeling concept, 354
blind contour drawing, 19
blur, perspective of, 93, 180
Bookstaver House, Westminster, Vermont (Gluck), 337
Boolean operations, 353
Boring, E. G., 5
Botta, Mario, 344, 414
boundaries. *See* edges
Bradley, Charles, 154
Breuer, Marcel, 404
brightness, of color, 41
brilliant light, 54
bubble diagrams, 336
building elevations. *See* elevation drawings
building of drawings, 99–111
  adding details, 110–111
  composing views, 100–101
  establishing structure, 102–104
  layering tonal values, 108–109
  scale and, 105–107
  as sequential, 99
building sections, 185–196
  defined, 185
  digital, 191
  exercise, 194
  hybrid, 192–193
  interior elevations, 187
  locating section cut, 186
  multiple, 196
  orientation of, 187
  poché, 189–190
  scale of, 187, 195
  section cut, 188
butt cap, for drafting lines, 132

cabinet projection, 221
Café in Arles (van Gogh), 323
cameras
  drawing vs., 112, 120
  location of, 253–254
  resolution, 372
  RGB color and, 389
  zooming with, 360
cap conditions, for drafting lines, 132
Capital Complex, Dacca, Bangladesh (Kahn), 328
Capitol Complex, Islamabad, Pakistan (Kahn), 383
Carré House, Bazoches-sur-Guyonne, France (Aalto), 168
Carroll, Lewis, 312
casting edge, 199
cast shadows, 54–56
Cathedral of Mallorca (Gaudi), 307
cavalier projection, 221
ceiling plans, 167
centerlines, for line drafting, 131
center of vision (CV), 241
central axis of vision (CAV), 240
chair designs, 404
chance, for speculative drawing, 316–321
charge-coupled devices (CCD), 372
circles
  geometry, perspective drawings, 264–265
  paraline drawings, 210
circular arcs, drawing tangent to, 134
circulation, diagramming, 344
circulation diagrams, 336
clarity, of presentation drawings, 410
clipping masks, 377
closure, of shapes, 35
CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, black) color model, 390
color
  for atmospheric perspective, 92
  composition and, 388–390
  creating values, 42–47
  tonal value and value scale, 41, 48
compass points, building elevation orientation and, 176
composition, 367–408
  balance of, 382–383
  color and value of, 388–390
  context for, 391
  cropping and masking images for, 376–378
  drawing people and, 392–397
  emphasis in, 381
  exercises, 383, 395, 397, 402, 403
  field of drawing and, 368–369
  figure-ground relationships in, 379
  furniture and, 404–405
  harmony of, 384–385
  landscaping and, 398–403
  lighting and, 386–387
  planning, 367
  resolution and, 371–375
  size of drawing and, 370
  vehicles and, 406–407
computer numerically controlled (CNC) milling, 357
concept diagrams, 342–345
Concert and Convention Hall, Helsinki (Aalto), 306, 307
cone of vision, 240
constructing of views, for orthographic projection, 148
construction, sequences of, 416
context
  for composition, 391
  concept development and diagramming, 361
  See also composition

continuity, in patterns, 34
continuity, of presentation, 411
continuity of outline
  of an object (overlap), 86
  in building elevations, 179
contour, 17–22
  blind contour drawing, 19
  cross-contour drawing, 22
  defined, 17
  drawing, 18
  exercises, 21
  modified contour drawing, 20–21
  of site plans, 170
contrast
  for conveying texture, 64
  in diagramming, 339
  for emphasis, 381
  resolution and, 371
  in tonal value, 86
"Control of Complexity, The" (Habraken), 312
convergence, 90, 244–245
Coonley Playhouse, Riverside, Illinois (Wright), 341
Corbusier, Le (Charles-Édouard Jeanneret), 166, 337, 379, 391, 412
corners, drafting by hand, 130–131
creative process, speculative drawing as, 307
Crime and Punishment (Dostoyevsky), 323
cropping, 376–378
cross-contour drawing, 22
crosshatching, 42, 44
cubes
  for conveying three dimensions, 76
  exercises, 77
  See also geometric forms
curved lines, in pictorial systems, 140, 150
curves, in paraline drawings, 210
cutaway views, 227

darkness of tonal values. *See* light and lighting; tone and texture
dashed lines, for line drafting, 131
datum (data), of contour, 170
Demro, Mary, 172, 429
density, for tonal value, 42, 46
depth and depth cues, 86–98
  atmospheric perspective, 92
  in building elevations, 178
  exercises, 89, 91, 95, 98
  object constancy, 87
  overlap, 86
  paraline views and, 229
  perspective drawings, 90
  perspective of blur, 93
  shift of texture (linear spacing), 96
  in site plans, 169
  texture perspective, 94
  transition between light and shade, 97
  vertical location of object, 88
depth measurement (linear/perspective drawing)
  conveying depth with paraline views, 229–232
  diagonal point method for measuring, 271
  extending depth in perspective drawings, 260
  measuring, in perspective drawings, 257
  subdividing, in perspective drawings, 258
design drawing, 409. *See also* presentation drawing
design process, diagramming and, 358
diagonal point method, 269–273
  establishing diagonal points, 270
  exercises, 273
  fractional diagonal points, 272
  measuring depth with, 271
  multiple diagonal points, 272
  perspective setup, 269
  uses of, 269
diagonals, perspective drawings measurements method, 258
diagramming, 335–366
  analytical diagrams, 337
  concepts of, 342–345
  developing concepts with, 358–365
  digital tools for, 350–351
  drawing as abstraction, 335
  elements of, 338–339
  exercises, 341, 343, 347, 349
  formal issues of, 364
  layout and, 430
  modeling concepts and, 352–357
  principles of, 346–349
  relationships, 340–341
  types of diagrams, 336
  uses of, 335
diffused light, 54
digital building sections, 191
digital color, 388
digital figures (people), 394–395
digital fills, for tonal value, 47
digital floor plans, 160–161
digital guides, 135
digital landscaping, 400–401
digital layout, 425
digital lighting, 386
digital multiplication, 136
digital scale, pictorial systems, 128
digital site plans, 172–173
digital subdivision, 136
digital tools
  combining hand drawings with digital tools, 385
  concept development and diagramming, 362
  for diagramming, 348–351
  digital resolution and, 371–375
  for layout, 425–427
  2D raster-graphic software, 350
  2D vector-based digital drawing programs, 131, 350
  3D printing, 357
  See also hybrid drawings; 3D modeling software
dimetric projection
  defined, 127, 207, 216
  diametric drawings, 217
diminuition of size, 246
direction (of stroke), for tonal value, 42, 43
direct projection method, 242–243
distance. *See* depth and depth cues
dodge and burn techniques, 47
dominant hand, drawing with, 21
doors, in floor plans, 164. *See also* building sections
Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, 323
dots, stippling as, 42, 46, 62
dots per inch (DPI), 372, 373, 374
drawing
  from imagination. *See* composition; diagramming; presentation drawing; speculative drawing
  from observation. *See* form and structure; line and shape; space and depth; tone and texture
  systems. *See* multiview drawings; paraline drawings; perspective drawings; pictorial systems
drawing operations, 134–139
drawing process, 1–11
  defined, 1
  drawing techniques, defined, 123
  imagining and, 7, 9
  process of, 3
  for representing, 10–12
  seeing for, 3–6, 14
  uses for design drawing, 2
  visual perception and, 5
  visual thinking and, 8
  See also building of drawings
drawing surfaces
  for conveying visual texture, 63
  for tonal range, 60
drawing systems, defined, 123
Dürer, Albrecht, 29

edges
  casting edge, 199
  hard vs. soft, 49
  in orthographic projection, 149
  for perspective of blur, 93
  of tonal value patterns, 59
efficiency, 313, 410
elevation, of contour, 170
elevation drawings, 174–183
  arrangement of, 176
  building elevations, defined, 175
  building sections and perceptual quality of, 185

defined, 174
depth conveyed with, 178–180
digital and hybrid building elevations, 181–182
exercises, 183
multiview drawings, defined, 143
orientation of, 175, 176
principal views of orthographic projection, 145
scale of, 177
See also orthographic projection; plan drawings; section drawings
elevation oblique, 127, 222
ellipse, 202, 265
engineer's scale, pictorial systems, 128
expanded views, 228
extrude modeling concept, 354

field of drawing, 368–369
figure, defined, 68
figure-ground relationship
in composition, 379
defined, 24
organizing shapes for, 32
visual environment as, 25
See also shape
fill, of digital shapes, 137
first-angle projection, 144
Fisher House, Hatboro, Pennsylvania (Kahn), 159
Flagg House, Berkeley, California (Maybeck), 346
flexibility, for speculative drawing, 323–329
floor plans
arrangement, 166
building sections and, 186
digital, 160–161
doors and windows, 164
drawing scale of, 165
exercises, 157, 159
hybrid, 162–163
orientation, 166
plan cut of, 156, 164
plan drawings, defined, 154
poché, 158
stairs, 164
uses of, 155
fluency, for speculative drawing, 313–315
focal point, 381
fold line, 145
foreshortening, 247
form and structure, 67–82
analytical drawing of, 70–73
exercises, 73, 77, 81
form, defined, 68
geometry of, 76–81
proportion of, 74–75
volume and, 69
Fort Wayne Fine Arts Center, (Kahn), 308
"Fourth Place" (Demro), 172
fractional diagonal points, 272
fractional measuring points, 287
framing, of drawings, 379
freeform shapes, in paraline drawings, 210
freehand drawing
combining hand drawings with digital tools, 385
for drawing on location, 115
drawing with dominant hand vs. unfamiliar hand, 21
eye-mind-hand-movement, 72
See also hybrid drawings; pens/pencils
frontal plane, 145
frontlighting, 55
frottage, 63
furniture, 404–405

Gaudi, Antonio, 307
geometric forms, 76–81
additive forms, 78
for analytical drawing, 76
complex forms, 80
for conveying light, 52
cubes, 76–77
exercises, 77, 81
subtractive forms, 79–80
geometry, in perspective drawings, 262–266
circles, 264–265
exercise, 266
inclined lines, 262–263
vanishing trace (VT), 263
Gestalt psychology, 24, 34
Giacomo da Vignola, 197
Gibson, James J., 85
global illumination, 386
Gluck, Peter L., 337
gradient, for digital fills, 47
grain, 59
graphic images, for presentation drawings, 412
graphic metaphors, 336
graphic symbols, 420
gray scale, 48, 390
grids and grid method
freeform shapes in paraline drawings, 210
grid lines for line drafting, 131
layout of, 424
one-point perspective, 274–275
three-point perspective, 295
two-point perspective, 290–293
ground cut, for building elevations, 182
ground cut, for building sections, 189
ground line (GP), 241
ground plane (GP), 241
grouping
drawing operations with, 138
for paraline views, 230–231
patterns, 34, 36
for speculative drawing, 330
grunge layer, 378
guides, digital, 135

Habraken, John, 312
hard edges, for modeling form, 49
Hardy House, Racine, Wisconsin (Wright), 319, 409
harmony, 384–385
hatching technique, 42–44, 62
Haystack Mountain School of Arts and Crafts, Deer Isle, Maine (Barnes), 344
height, depiction of, 154. *See also* plan drawings
height measurement, in perspective drawing, 256, 282–283
hidden lines, 133
high-key images, 388
highlights, 59
Hines House, Sea Ranch, California (MLTW), 346
Hirabayashi Residence, Yamada, Japan (Ando), 232
Hokusai, 431
Holl, Steven, 157
horizon line (HL), 241
horizontal plane, 145
hue, 41
human scale
exercises, 107
techniques, 106, 392–393
See also people
hybrid drawings
building elevations, 181–182
building sections, 192–193
floor plans, 162–163
layouts, 428–431
site plans, 172

imagination
drawing from, 7, 9
reproductive vs. creative, 303–304
sighting from, 31
See also composition; diagramming; presentation drawing; speculative drawing
inclined lines, 262–263
Institute for Problems of Information Transmission (Moscow), 4
intensity, of color, 41
interaction, figure-ground relationship and, 379
interior elevations, of building sections, 187
International Metric System, drawing scale, 128
interval, contour, 170
intuition, for speculative drawing, 312
isometric projection
defined, 127, 207, 213
drawings, 214
exercises, 215

Izumo Shrine, Shimane Prefecture, Japan, 370

Japanese house (traditional), 343
Jeanneret, Charles-Édouard (Le Corbusier), 166, 337, 379, 391, 412
Jobson House, Palo Colorado Canyon, California (MLTW), 319, 417
journaling, 116–119

Kahn, Louis, 159, 308, 328, 343, 345, 383
key drawings, 361, 416
key sequences, 415
Klee, Paul, 67
Krier, Rob, 418

landscaping, 398–403
  context and, 398
  digital landscaping, 400–401
  exercises, 402, 403
  masking images of, 377
  structure, shape, scale, and purpose, 399
  tonal values and textures, 398
laser cutting, 357
layering
  cropping and masking, 376–378
  for paraline views, 230–231
  for speculative drawing, 317, 330
  for tonal value patterns, 59
layout, 423–431
  digital layout, 425
  features of, 424
  hybrid layouts, 428–431
  of related drawings, 423
Le Corbusier (Charles-Édouard Jeanneret), 166, 337, 379, 391, 412
Leonardo da Vinci, 38
lettering, for presentation drawing, 412, 420–422
Library of Mount Angel Benedictine College, Mount Angel, Oregon (Aalto), 347
light and lighting
  in building elevations, 180
  color and value, 41
  composition and, 386–387
  for conveying texture, 64
  conveying with modeling, 52–53
  light rays, 199, 200
  light source in shade and shadows, for section drawings, 199
  tonal value and light/dark patterns, 40. *See also* tone and texture
  transition between light and shade for depth, 97
  using shade and shadow for, 54–57
  See also shade and shadow
line, pictorial systems
  curved lines, 140
  drafting lines, 130–131
  line types, 131
  projectors, 125
line and shape, 15–38
  closure and, 35
  contour and, 16–22
  contour lines of site plans, 170
  convergence principles, 245. *See also* perspective drawings
  created from dots/points, 15
  defined, 16
  exercises, 21, 27, 33, 37
  lines in diagramming, 340
  in orthographic projection, 149
  patterns of, 34
  receding lines in oblique projection, 220, 221
  regulating lines, 70–71
  shade line, 199
  shadow lines/shadow of a line, 199, 201–202
  shape and, 23–37. *See also* shape
  thickening of, 20
  vertical and horizontal lines as reference, 31
  See also edges; line weight; shape
linear gradient, for digital fills, 47
linear perspective, 90. *See also* perspective drawings
linear spacing, 96
line weight
  in building elevations, 178–179, 183
  for contour drawing, 20
  of curved lines, 140
  in floor plans, 156–160, 163
  harmony in vector images, 385
  in paraline views, 229–232
  in pictorial systems, 132–133
  in section drawings, 188–189, 193
loft modeling concept, 354
Lord Derby's House, London (Adam), 341
Louis XVI chair, 404
lowercase lettering, 421
low-key images, 388

Mad Poet, 431
Manga, The (Hokusai), 431
mapping, for tonal value, 58
masking, 376–378
matrix diagrams, 336
Maybeck, Bernard, 346
measurement for perspective drawing, 256–261
  depth, 257–258, 260
  exercises, 261
  height and width, 256
  measuring line (ML), 256
  method of diagonals, 258
  method of triangles, 259
measuring point, in two-point perspective, 286
medium (media) for drawing. *See* digital tools; pens/pencils; 3D modeling software
Meeting House, Salk Institute of Biological Studies, La Jolla, California (Kahn), 343
megapixels, 372
Meier, Richard, 410, 417
metric scales, pictorial systems, 128
midpoint of image, finding, 30
Millowners' Association, Ahmedabad, India (Le Corbusier), 337
MLTW (Moore, Lyndon, Turnbull, Whitaker), 197, 319, 346
modeling concepts, diagramming, 352–357
modeling form
  exercises, 50, 51
  techniques, 49
modified contour drawing, 20–21
Monge, Gaspard, 144
Moore, Charles, 319, 417
Moore, Henry, 304
Mosque of Sultan Hasan, Cairo, Egypt, 343
Mountain Church, Winkelmoosalm, Germany (Wiedemann), 195
Mount Angel Benedictine College, Mount Angel, Oregon (Aalto), 347
multiple diagonal points, 272
multiple views, for speculative drawing, 331
multiplication, digital, 136
multiview drawings, 143–206
  building elevations, 175–183
  building sections, 186–196
  ceiling plans, 167
  defined, 126
  elevation drawings, defined, 174
  exercises, 152, 153, 157, 159, 171, 183, 194, 205
  floor plans, 155–166
  orthographic projection for, 143–151
  plan drawings, defined, 154
  projection systems for, 127
  reading, 152–153
  section drawings, defined, 184
  shade and shadows, 198–205
  site plans, 168–173
  site sections, 197
  uses of, 143
Museum of Modern Art, Villa Strozzi, Florence, Italy (Meier), 417

Natural Way to Draw, The (Nicolaïdes), 13
Nefertiti, queen of Egypt (bust), 4
negative shapes
  defined, 26
  exercises, 27
  shape constancy and, 28

network diagrams, 336
New, Piper, 430
Nicolaïdes, Nicole, 13
nonaxial lines, 209
Notre Dame Du Haut, Ronchamp, France (Le Corbusier), 379, 391

object constancy, 87
oblique projection, 219–225
  cabinet projection and, 221
  cavalier projection and, 221
  defined, 125, 126, 207, 219
  elevation obliques, 222
  exercises, 223, 225
  plan obliques, 224
  receding lines in, 220, 221
  solidity of three-dimensional objects suggested by, 219–220
  types of, 127
observation, drawing from. *See* form and structure; line and shape; space and depth; tone and texture
one-point perspective
  defined, 267
  diagonal point method and, 269–273
  one-point perspective grid, 274–275
  perspective drawings and digital viewpoints, 252
  plan perspectives, 278
  projection, 127
  section perspectives, 276–277
  uses of, 268
ordering principles, of composition, 380
origin point, 138
orthographic projection, 125–127
  arranging views for, 146
  auxiliary views for, 147
  constructing views for, 148
  defined, 144
  exercises, 152, 153
  first-angle and third-angle projections for, 144
  number of views for, 147
  principal planes of, 145, 149
  principal views of, 145
  principles and techniques of, 149–151
  reading multiview drawings and, 152
  See also elevation drawings; plan drawings; section drawings
overlap, 86, 179

paraline drawings, 207–238
  approaches to, 208
  axial lines, 209
  axonometric drawings as, 212–218
  circles, 210
  conveying depth with paraline views, 229–232
  curves, 210
  defined, 207
  exercises, 211, 215, 223, 225, 232, 237
  freeform shapes, 210
  nonaxial lines, 209
  oblique projection as, 219–225. *See also* axonometric drawings; oblique projection
  paraline view techniques, 226–228
  as pictorial system, 126
  projection systems for, 127
  shade and shadows with paraline views, 233–237
parallel lines, drawing, 134, 135
parti, 342
patterns
  in lines and shapes, 34
  projection to find meaningful patterns, 36
Pavilion of Supreme Harmony, Taihe Dian, Forbidden City, Beijing, 345
pens/pencils
  contour drawing with, 18
  for creating tones, 41–46
  digital fills vs., for creating tones, 47
  for drafting by hand, 130–131
  drawing size and, 370
  freehand drawing techniques, 21, 72, 115, 385
  as sighting devices, 29
  See also hybrid drawings
people
  activities of, 393
  digital figures, 394–395
  disposition of, 393
  drawing composition of, 392–397
  drawing vehicles with, 406–407
  exercise, 107
  exercises, 395, 397
  human scale, 106–107, 392–393
perception
  drawing process and visual perception, 4–5
  Gestalt psychology on, 24, 34
  of proportion, 74–75
  tonal value and, 40
  See also viewer orientation
Perception of the Visual World, The (Gibson), 85
perpendicular lines, drawing, 134, 135
perpendicular lines, in orthographic projection, 149
perspective
  atmospheric perspective, 92
  drawing from observation and, 113
  perspective of blur, 93
  perspective projection, 125–127, 240–241
  sequence for presentation drawings, 413–417
  size perspective (object constancy), 87
  texture perspective, 94
  three-point perspective grids, 295
  two-point perspective grids, 290–293
  See also depth and depth cues; size perspective
perspective drawings, 239–301
  defined, 239
  direct projection method, 242–243
  exercises, 255, 261, 266, 273, 275, 277, 285, 289, 293, 298
  geometry used in, 262–266
  linear perspective, defined, 90
  perspective measurement for, 256–261
  pictorial effects of, 244–247
  plan perspectives for, 278
  projection systems for linear drawings, 127
  reflections in, 299–301
  shade and shadows in, 296–298
  variables in, 248–255
  See also one-point perspective; three-point perspective; two-point perspective
phantom views, 226
Philharmonic Hall, Berlin, Germany (Scharoun), 365
photographs, drawing from, 112
physical study models, 352, 358
pictorial systems, 125–142
  categories of, 126–127
  curved lines in, 140
  drawing operations, 134–139
  drawing scale, 128–129
  exercises, 141
  line weights in, 132–133
  projection, defined, 125
  projection types, 125
picture plane (PP), 241, 251
pixels, 372
pixels per inch (PPI), 373, 374
placement, of graphic symbols/lettering, 420
planar corners, 133
plan drawings, 154–173
  building sections and conceptual quality of, 185
  ceiling plans, 167
  defined, 154
  elevation drawings vs., 174
  exercises, 157, 159, 171
  for floor plans, 155–166. *See also* floor plans
  multiview drawings for, 143
  principal views of orthographic projection, 145
  site plans, 168–173
  See also elevation drawings; orthographic projection; section drawings
plane(s)
  frontal plane, 145
  ground plane (GP), 241
  horizontal plane, 145
  in orthographic projection, 145, 149
  picture plane (PP), 241, 251
  principal planes of orthographic projection, 145
  profile plane, 145
  shadow plane/shadow of a plane, 199, 202

plan oblique, 127, 224
plasma cutters, 357
poché, 158, 189–190
point, shadow of, 200
point of view, 410
positive shapes
  defined, 26
  exercises, 27
  shape constancy and, 28
presentation drawing, 409–431
  audience for, 409
  communicating information in, 410–411
  elements of, 412
  exercises, 417, 419, 431
  layout and, 423–431
  sequence for, 413–417
  visual sets of information for, 418–422
principal planes, of orthographic projection, 145, 149
principal views, of orthographic projection, 145
print resolution, 373–375
process drawings, 360
profile plane, 145
programs, diagramming, 344
projecting cap, for drafting lines, 132
projection
  defined, 36–37, 125
  exercises, 37
  to find meaningful patterns, 36
  types of, 125–127
property lines, for line drafting, 131
proportion
  concept development and diagramming, 362
  field of drawing and, 368–369. *See also* composition
  for form and structure, 74–75
proximity, 34

radial symmetry, 382
raster images
  cropping, 376–378
  layout of, 425, 429
ray casting, 386
ray tracing, 386
receding lines, 220, 221
recombining, 317
reference point, 138
reflected ceiling plans, 167
reflections, 299–301, 396–397
regulating lines, 70–71
relationships
  reinforcing, 414
  related drawings, 423
  See also figure-ground relationship
rendered views, for modeling, 356
representation modes, for diagramming, 358
reproductive imagination, 303–304
resolution, 371–375
revolve modeling concept, 354
RGB (red, green, blue) color model, 389, 390
Richards Medical Research Laboratory, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia (Kahn), 345
Riola Parish Center, Bologna, Italy (Aalto), 197
Riva San Vitale residence, Lugano Lake, Switzerland (Botta), 344
roof plans, 169
rotating, 325
round cap, for drafting lines, 132

St. Ignatius Chapel, Seattle University (Holl), 157
Salk Institute of Biological Studies, La Jolla, California (Kahn), 343
samples per inch (SPI), 372, 374
San Lorenzo Maggiore, Milan, Italy, 341
scale
  of building sections, 187, 195
  changing, for speculative drawing, 328
  changing, in drawing operations, 139
  composition and, 370
  concept development and diagramming, 362
  for conveying texture and distance, 64
  drawing scale, 128–129
  of elevation drawings, 177
  for floor plans, 165
  human scale, 106–107
  mechanical scale, 128–129
  of site plans, 168
  visual scale, 105
scanning resolution, 372
Scharoun, Hans, 365
schematics, 336
Schwartz House, Two Rivers, Wisconsin (Wright), 156
screen resolution, 373–375
scribbling, 42, 45
Sea Ranch Condominium, Sea Ranch, California (MLTW), 197
section cut, locating in building sections, 188
section drawings, 184–205
  for building sections, 185–196. *See also* building sections
  defined, 184
  elevation drawings vs., 174
  exercises, 194, 205
  multiview drawings, defined, 143
  principal views of orthographic projection, 145
  shade and shadows in, 198–205
  site sections, 197
  See also elevation drawings; orthographic projection; plan drawings
section perspectives, 276–277
"sensory shifts," 85
sequence, for presentation drawings, 413–417
serifs (lettering), 421
shade and shadow
  in building elevations, 180
  for composition of people, 396–397
  to convey light, 54–55
  definitions, 199
  for furniture, 405
  in paraline views, 233–237
  with paraline views, 233–237
  in perspective drawing, 296–298
  rendering exercises, 57
  rendering techniques, 56
  in section drawings, 198–204
  shade line, 199
  shadow line, 199
  shadow plane, 199
Shaker ladderback chair, 404
shape, 23–37
  defined, 23, 68
  digital shapes, 137
  drawing shapes, 28
  exercises, 27, 33, 37
  figure-ground and, 24–25
  organizing shapes, 32–33
  patterns of shapes, 34
  positive and negative shapes, 26–27
  projection and, 36–37
  shape constancy, 28
  sighting for, 29–31
sidelighting, 55
sighting
  defined, 29
  from imagination or memory, 31
  techniques for, 30–31
  tools used in, 29
sightline, 240
signs, 338–339
similarity, 34
Single-Family House, Viganello, Switzerland (Botta), 414
single-view drawings, 207. *See also* paraline drawings
Site Plan, Carré House, Bazoches-sur-Guyonne, France (Aalto), 168
site plans
  concept development and diagramming, 361
  conveying depth of, 169
  defined, 168
  diagramming sites, 344
  digital, 172–173
  hybrid, 172
  orientation of, 168
  roof plans, 169
  scale of, 168
  site contours, 170
size perspective
  concept development and diagramming, 362

defined, 87
diminuition of size, 246
of graphic symbols/lettering, 420, 421
size of drawing and, 370
sky images, 377
Smith House, Darien, Connecticut (Meier), 410
snapping features, 330
soft edges, for modeling form, 49
solid digital fills, 47
solid lines, for line drafting, 131
solids, shadows of, 203
solid views, for modeling, 356
space and depth, 83–121
adding details to, 110–111
building drawings as sequential process, 99
for composing views, 100–101
for conveying three dimensions, 83
depth cues for, 86–98. *See also* depth and depth cues
drawing from direct observation, 112–121
for establishing structure, 102–104
exercises, 89, 91, 95, 98, 101, 104, 107, 109, 111
human scale for, 106–107
journaling, 116–119
layering tonal values for, 108–109
pictorial space, 85
scale for, 105
spacing, for tonal value, 42
spacing, of lettering, 421
spatial depth cues, in building elevations, 179
spatial edges, 133
speculative drawing, 305–334
chance and, 316–321
as creative process, 307
developing fluency for, 313–315
exercises, 309, 311, 314, 315, 319, 321, 323, 326, 327, 329, 332, 333
flexibility for, 323–329
for generative and developmental stages of design, 306
relying on intuition for, 312
speculate, defined, 305
thinking digitally and, 330–333
tolerating ambiguity for, 310–311
visualizing, 308–309
stairs, 164
station point
defined, 240
distance of, to object, 249
establishing, 253–254
height of, 248
Stine, Nicole, 348
stippling
for textures, 62
for tonal value, 42, 46
structure establishment, 102–104
subdivision
digital, 136
subdividing a line, 134
subtractive geometric forms, 79–80
sun angle, 199
surface lines, 133
sweep modeling concept, 354
Sydney Opera House (Utzon), 365, 383
symbols
for diagramming, 338–339
for presentation drawings, 412, 420
symmetrical composition
balance and, 382–383
in building elevations, 176
in building sections, 186
defined, 147
in paraline drawings, 186, 216, 227
systems, of drawing, 123. *See also* multiview drawings; paraline drawings; perspective drawings; pictorial systems
systems integration, 363

tactile texture, 62
Taj Mahal, Tomb of Mumtaz Mahal (Agra, India), 159
tangent, drawing, 134
tangrams, 37
text. *See* lettering, for presentation drawing
texture
in building elevations, 180
defined, 39, 52
exercises, 65
grunge layer for, 378
shift of texture (linear spacing), 96
techniques, 62–64
texture perspective, 94
for tonal value, 42
visual vs. tactile, 62
See also tone and texture
Theater, Seinäjoki, Finland (Aalto), 344
third-angle projections, 144
Thonet Bentwood chair, 404
three-dimensional form
conveying, 68–69, 76–77, 83, 207. *See also* form and structure; orthographic projection; paraline drawings; pictorial systems; space and depth
oblique projection to suggest solidity of, 219–220
perspective drawings and, 239
3D modeling software
diagramming with, 350, 352–357
diagramming with, and disadvantages, 351
digital shade and shadows in paraline views, 235–237
perspective drawings and digital viewpoints, 252
speculative drawing with, 330–333
3D printing, 357
three-point perspective
defined, 267, 294
grid, 295
projection, 127
three-quarter lighting, 55
time sequences, 415
titles, 422, 427
tonal value
in building elevations, 178, 181
defined, 40
for defining fields within larger fields, 419
exercises, 61
for floor plans, 158, 161
techniques, 60
tone and texture, 39–66
color and value in, 41, 388–390
conveying light, 52–53
conveying texture, 62–65
creating values, 42–47
exercises, 50, 51, 57, 61, 65
layering tonal values, 108
layering tonal values, exercises, 109
light, shade, and shadow, 54–55
mapping values, 58
modeling form, 49–51
rendering shade and shadows, 56–57
texture, defined, 62
tone, defined, 39
tone for atmospheric perspective, 92
value pattern, 59
value scale, 48
See also texture; tonal value
toplighting, 55
topography
diagramming, 344, 349, 351
landscaping and, 398
site plans and, 158, 171–172
trace, 145
tracing paper, 359
traditional wing chair, 404
transformation
digital, 137
in speculative drawing, 320
transparent view, for modeling, 356
triangles, perspective drawings measurements method, 259
trim, 139
trimetric projection, 127
2D raster-graphic software, 350
2D vector-based digital drawing programs, 131, 350
two-point perspective
common method of, 280–285

two-point perspective (*continued*)
defined, 267, 279
exercises, 285, 289, 293
grid, 290–293
perspective drawings and digital viewpoints, 252
perspective plan method, 286–289
projection, 127
uses of, 279

unity, 380–381, 411
Unity Temple, Oak Park, Illinois (Wright), 194
U.S. Customary System, drawing scale, 128
Utzon, Jørn, 365, 383
value, tonal. *See* tonal value
van Gogh, Vincent, 323
vanishing point (VP), 244, 281, 286
vanishing trace (VT), 263
variety, as ordering principle, 380–381
vector-based drawing programs, 131, 350
vector images
composition and, 376–378, 385
layout of, 426
in pictorial systems, 137
vehicles, 406–407
vertical location of object, 88
view, composing, 100–101
viewer orientation
of building sections, 187
dominance in composition, 369
of elevation drawings, 176
emphasizing images, 381
floor plans, 166
monocular vision, 239. *See also* perspective drawings
seeing and drawing process, 3–6, 14
sequence for reading design presentations, 413
of site plans, 168
visual perception and, 4–5
See also cameras; composition
viewfinders, 29
viewpoint, shifting, 324
vignettes, 279
Villa at Vaucresson, France (Le Corbusier), 166
Villa Garches, Vaucresson, France (Le Corbusier), 412
Villa Giulia, Rome (Giacomo da Vignola), 197
Villa Strozzi, Museum of Modern Art, Florence, Italy (Meier), 417
visualization
exercises, 309
speculative drawing for, 308
visual sets of information for presentation drawings, 418–422
See also diagramming
visual scale, 105
visual texture, 62
visual weight, of graphic symbols/lettering, 420
volume, 69

Wassily Chair (Breuer), 404
waterjet cutting, 357
Weidemann House, Stuttgart, Germany (Krier), 418
width
depiction of, 154. *See also* plan drawings
measuring, in perspective drawings, 256
Wiedemann, J., 195
Wilder, Robin, 348, 427
windows, in floor plans, 164. *See also* building sections
wing chair, traditional, 404
wireframe views, for modeling, 356
Woodland Chapel, Stockholm, Sweden (Asplund), 188, 345
Wright, Frank Lloyd, 156, 193, 319, 341, 409

Yarbus, Alfred L., 4